

VII F  
IBRAHIM.

OR THE  
ILLVSTRIOVS  
BASSA.

AN EXCELLENT  
NEW

ROMANCE.

THE  
Whole Work,

In Foure Parts.

Written in FRENCH by *Monsieur de Scudery*,

AND NOW ENGLISHED

BY

HENRY COGAN, Gent.

LONDON,

Printed for *Humphrey Moseley*, at the Princes Armes in *St. Pauls*  
Church-yard; *William Bentley*, and *Thomas Heath*, in *Cavent-*  
*Garden*. M. DC. LII.



LIBRARY

OF THE

ILLINOIS

ASSAULT

AND EXCELLENT

NEW

ROMANCE

THE

Whole Work



Printed by Messrs. G. & J. Smith

AND NOW ENGLISHED

HENRY GODDARD

LONDON

Printed for J. Smith, at the Sign of the Anchor, in St. Paul's Church-yard, near the North Gate, in the City of London.



TO THE HIGH  
AND EXCELLENT LADY  
MARY,

Dutches of *RICHMOND* and *LENNOX*.

Madam,

**M**Y Author, having in this his Work represented a Lady, transcendent in all perfections, both of body and minde, in the person of his incomparable *Isabella*, selected out of all the choicest beauties of *France*, the great and vertuous Dutches of *Roban*, as her nearest parrallel, to dedicate it unto. In imitation of whom I have presumed, from amongst the most accomplished Ladies of *England*, to make choyce of your Grace to present this Illustrious Princess of *Monaco* unto, as the true picture of your self, wherein you may behold lively pourtrai'd forth all the many rare, and excellent graces and vertues, wherewith Heaven hath so happily beautified you. Be pleased then, great Dutches, to accept thereof, not according to the unworthiness of the presenter, but according to the merit

*The Epistle Dedicatory.*

of the present, which exhibites to the view of the world, besides many other remarkable passages, all that is most eminently desirable in that Sex, whereof your Grace being one of the chief, will no doubt, out of that innated goodness, and sweetness of disposition, which is naturally incident thereunto, vouchsafe graciously to receive this mean, but hearty offering of

*Madam*

Your Graces most humbly  
devoted servant

*Henry Cogan.*



THE





## THE PREFACE.

**I** Do not know what kind of praise the Antients thought they gave to that Painter, who not able to end his work, finished it accidentally by throwing his pencill against his Picture; but I know very well, that it should not have obliged me, and that I should have taken it rather for a Satyre, than an Elogium. The operations of the spirit are too important to be left to the conduct of chance, and I had rather bee accused for sayling out of knowledge, than for doing well without minding it. There is nothing which temeritie doth not undertake, and which fortune doth not bring to passe; but when a man relies on those two guides, if he doth not erre, hee may erre; and of this sort, even when the events are successfull no glory is merited thereby. Every art hath its certain rules, which by infallible meanes lead to the ends proposed; and provided that an Architect takes his measures right, he is assured of the beauty of his building. Beleeve not for all this, Reader, that I will conclude from thence my work is compleate, because I have followed the rules which may render it so: I know that it is of this labour, as of the Mathematicall Sciences, where the operation may fail, but the art doth never fail; nor doe I make this discourse but to shew you, that if I have left some faults in my Book, they are the effects of my weakeness, and not of my negligence. Suffer mee then to discover unto you all the resorts of this frame, and let you see, if not all that I have done, at leastwise all that I have indeavored to doe.

Whereas we cannot be knowing but of that which others do teach us, & that it is for him that comes after, to follow them who preceed him, I have beleeved, that for the laying the ground-plot of this work, we are to consult with the Grecians, who have been our first Masters, persue the course which they have held, & labour in imitating them to arrive at the same end, which those great men propounded to themselves. I have seen in those famous Romanzes of antiquity, that in imitation of the Epique Poem there is a principall action whereunto all the rest, which raign over all the work, are fastned, and which makes them that they are not employed, but for the conducting of it to its perfection. The action in Homers Iliades is the destruction of Troy; in his Odysses the return of Ulysses to Ithaca; in Uirgill the death of Turnus, or to say better, the conquest of Italy; neerer to our times, in Tassio the taking of Jerusalem: and to passe from the Poem to the Romanze, which is my principall object, in Heliodorus the marriage of Theagines and Cariclia. It is not because the Episodes in the

## The Preface.

one, and the severall Histories in the other, are not rather beauties, than defects; but it is alwaies necessary, that the adrefs of him which imployes them should hold them in some sort to this principall action, to the end, that by this ingenious concatenation, all the parts of them should make but one body, and that nothing may be seen in them which is loose and unprofitable. Thus the marriage of my Justiniano and his Isabella, being the object which I have proposed unto my self, I have imployed all my care so to doe, that all the parts of my work may tend to that conclusion; that there may be a strong connexion between them; and that, except the obstacle which fortune opposeth to the desire of my Heros, all things may advance, or at lestwise endeavor to advance his marriage, which is the end of my labor. Now those great Geniuses of antiquity, from whom I borrow my light, knowing that well-ordering is one of the principall parts of a piece, have given so excellent a one to their speaking pictures, that it would be as much stupiditie, as pride, not to imitate them. They have not done like those Painters, who present in one and the same cloth a Prince in the Cradle, upon the Throne, & in the Tombe, perplexing, by this so little judicious a confusion, him, that considers their work; but with an incomparable adrefs they begin their History in the middle, so to give some suspence to the Reader, even from the first opening of the book; and to confine themselves within reasonable bounds they have made the History (as I likewise have done after them) not to last above a year, the rest being delivered by narration. Thus all things being ingeniously placed, and of a just greatness, no doubt but pleasure will redound from thence to him that beholds them, and glory to him that hath done them. But amongst all the rules which are to be observed in the composition of these workes, that of true resemblance is without question the most necessary; it is, as it were, the fundamentall stone of this building, and but upon which it cannot subsist; without it nothing can move, without it nothing can please: and if this charming decoiver doth not beguile the mind in Romanzes, this kind of reading disgusts, in stead of intertaining it: I have labored then never to eloigne my self from it, and to that purpose I have observed the manners, customes, Religions, and inclinations of people: And to give a more true resemblance to things, I have made the foundations of my work Historicall, my principall personages such as are marked out in the true History for illustrious persons, and the warres effective. This is the way doubtless, whereby one may arrive at his end; for when as falshood and truth are confounded by a dextrus hand, wit bath much adoe to disentangle them, and is not easily carried to destroy that which pleaseth it; contrarily, when as invention doth not make use of this artifice, and that falshood is produced openly, this gross untruth makes no impression in the soul, nor gives any delight: As indeed how should I bee touched with the misfortunes of the Queen of Gundaya, and of the King of Astroba-cia, when as I know their very Kingdomes are not in the Vniuersall Mapp, or, to say better, in the being of things? But this is not the only defect which may carry us from true resemblance, for we have at other times seen Romanzes, which set before us monsters, in thinking to let us see Miracles; their Authors by adhering too much to wonders have made Grotesques, which have not a little of the visions of a burning Feaver; and one might demand of these Mes-

## he Preface.

*Messieurs with more reason, than the Duke of Ferrara did of Ariosto, after he had read his Olando, Messer Lodovico done diavolo havete pigliato tante coyonerie? As for me, I hold, that the more naturall adventures are, the more satisfaction they give; and the ordinary course of the Sun seemes more mervailous to me, than the strange and deadly rayes of Comets; for which reason it is also that I have not caused so many Shipwracks, as there are in some antient Romanzes; and to speak seriously Du Bartas might say of these Authors,*

That with their word they bind,  
Or loofe, at will; the blowing of the wind.

*So as one might think that Æolus hath given them the Winds inclosed in a bagg, as he gave them to Vlysses, so patly doe they unchain them; they make tempests and shipwracks when they please, they raise them on the Pacificque Sea, they find rocks and shelves where the most expert Pilots have never observed any: But they which dispose thus of the winds, know not, how the Prophet doth assure us, that God keeps them in his Treasures; and that Philosophy, as clear sighted as it is, could never discover their retreat. Howbeit I pretend not hereby to banish Shipwracks from Romanzes, I approve of them in the workes of others, and make use of them in mine; I know likewise, that the Sea is the Scene most proper to make great changes in, and that some have named it the Theater of inconstancie; but as all excess is vicious, I have made use of it but moderately, for to conserve true resembling: Now the same design is the cause also, that my Heros is not oppressed with such a prodigious quantity of accidents, as arrive unto some others, for that according to my sense, the same is far from true resemblance, the life of no man having ever been so cross. It would be better in my oppinion to separate the adventures, to form divers Histories of them, and to make persons acting, thereby to appear both fertile, and judicious together, and to be still within this so necessary true resemblance. And indeed they who have made one man alone defeat whole Armies, have forgotten the Proverb which saith, not one against two; and know not that antiquitie doth assure us, how Hercules would in that case be too weak. It is without all doubt, that to represent a true heroeall courage, one should make it execute some thing extraordinary, as it were by a transport of the Heros; but he must not continue in that sort, for so those incredible actions would degenerate into ridiculous fables, and never move the mind. This fault is the cause also of committing another; for they which doe nothing but heap adventure upon adventure, without ornament, and without stirring up passions by the artifices of Rhetorique, are irksome, in thinking to be the more intertayning. This dry narration, and without art, hath more of an old Chronicle, than of a Romanze, which may very well be imbelished with those ornaments, since History, as severe and scrupulous as it is, doth not forbear imploying them. Certain Authors, after they have described an adventure, a daring design, or some surprising event, able to possess one with the bravest apprehensions in the world, are contented to assure us, that such a Heros thought of very gallant things, without telling us what they are; and this is that alone which I desire to know:*  
for



## The Preface.

For how can I tell, whether in these events fortune hath not done as much as be? whether his valor be not a brutish valor? and whether he hath born the misfortunes that arrived unto him, as a worthy man should doe? it is not by things without him, it is not by the caprichioes of destinie, that I will judge of him; it is by the motions of his soul, and by that which he speaketh. I honor all them that write at this day; I know their persons, their workes, their merits; but as canonizing is for none but the dead, they will not take it ill if I doe not deifie them, since they are living. And in this occasion I propose no other example, than the great and incomparable Urfé; certainly it must be acknowledged that he hath merited his reputation; that the love which all the earth beares him is just; and that so many different Nations, which have translated his Book into their tongues, had reason to doe it: as for me, I confess openly, that I am his adorer; these twenty yeares I have loved him; he is indeed admirable over all; he is fertile in his inventions, and in inventions reasonable; every thing in him is marvelous, every thing in him is excellent; and that which is more important, every thing in him is naturall, and truly resembling: But amongst many rare matters, that which I most esteeme of is, that he knowes how to touch the passions so delicately, that he may be called the Painter of the souls; hee goes searching out in the bottom of hearts the most secret thoughtes; and in the diversity of natures, which he represents, every one findes his own portrait, so that

If amongst mortalls any be  
That merits Altars, Urfe's he  
Who can alone pretend thereto.

Certainly there is nothing more important in this kinde of composition, than strongly to imprint the Idea, or (to say better) the image of the Heroes in the minde of the Reader, but in such sort, as if they were known to them; for that it is which interesteth him in their adventures, & from thence his delight cometh; now to make them be known perfectly, it is not sufficient to say how many times they have suffered shipwrack, and how times they have encountered robbers, but their inclinations must be made to appear by their discourse: otherwise one may rightly apply to these dumb Heroes that excellent mot to of Antiquity, Speake that I may see thee. And if from true resemblance, and inclinations, expressed by words, wee will pass unto manners, goe from the pleasant to the profitable, and from delight to example, I am to tell you, Reader, that here vertue is seen to bee alwaies recompenced, and vice alwaies punished, if he that hath followed his owne unruliness hath not by a just and sensible repentance obtained grace from Heaven; to which purpose I have also observed equality of manners in all the persons that do act, unless it be whereas they are disordered by passions, and touched with remorse. I have had a care likewise to deal in such sort, as the faults, which great ones have committed in my History, should be caused either by love, or by ambition, which are the noblest of passions, and that they be imputed to the evill counsell of flatterers; that so the respect, which is alwaies due unto Kings, may be preserved. You shall see there, Reader, if I be not deceived, the comeliness of things and conditions exactly enough observed; neither have I put any thing into my

Book,

## The Preface.

Book which the Ladies may not read without blushing. And if you see not my Hero persecuted with Love by Women, it is not because he was not amiable, and that he could not be loved, but because it would clash with civility in the persons of Ladies, and with true resemblance in that of men, who rarely shew themselves cruel unto them, nor in doing it could have any good grace: Finally, whether things ought to be so, or whether I have judged of my Hero by mine own weakness, I would not expose his fidelity to that dangerous tryall, but have been contented to make no Hilar, nor yet an Hipolitus of him. But whilst I speak of civillie, it is fit I should tell you (for fear I be accused of failing therein) that if you see throughout all my Work, when as Soliman is spoken unto, thy Highness, thy Majesty, and that in conclusion he is treated with thee, and not with you, it is not for want of Respect, but contrarily it is to have the more, and to observe the custom of those people, who speak after that sort to their Sovereigns. And if the authority of the living may be of as much force, as that of the dead, you shall find examples of it in the most famous Othomans, and you shall see that their Authors have not been afraid to imploy in their own Tongue a manner of speaking, which they have drawn from the Greek and Latin; and then too I have made it appear clearly, that I have not done it without design; for unless it be when as the Turks speak to the Sultan, or he to his inferiors, I have never made use of it, and either of them doth use it to each other. Now for fear it may be objected unto me, that I have approached some incidents nearer than the History hath shewed them to be, great Virgil shall be my warrant, who in his divine Æneads hath made Dido appear four Ages after her own; wherefore I have beleev'd I might do of some moneths, what he hath done of so many years, and that I was not to be afraid of erring, as long as I followed so good a guide. I know not likewise whether some may not take it ill, that my Hero and Heronia are not Kings; but besides that the generous do put no difference between wearing of Crowns, and meriting them, and that my Justiniano is of a race which hath held the Empire of the Orient, the example of Athenagoras, me thinks, ought to stop their mouths, seeing Theogines and Charida are but simple Citizens. Finally, Reader, such Censors may set their hearts at rest for this particular, and leave me there, for I assure them, that Justiniano is of a condition to command over the whole Earth; and that Isabella is of a House, and Gentlewoman good enough, to make Knights of the Rhodes, if she have children enough for it, and that she have a mind thereunto. But setting this jesting aside, and coming to that which regards the Italian names, know that I have put them in their naturall pronounciation. And if you see some Turkish words, as Alla, Stamboll, the Egira, and some others, I have done it of purpose, Reader, and have left them as Historicall marks, which are to pass rather for imbellishments than defects. It is certain that imposition of names is a thing which every one ought to think of, and whereof nevertheless all the world hath not thought: We have oftentimes seen Greek names given to barbarous Nations, with as little reason as if I should name an English man Mahomet, and that I should call a Turk Anthony; for my part I have beleev'd that more care is to be had of ones labour, and that upon this subject men and bookes are to be consulted with;  
and

## The Preface.

and if any one remarks the name of Satrape in this Romanze, let him not imagine that my ignorance hath confounded the antient and new Persia; and that I have done it without Authority, I have an example thereof in Vigenere, who makes use of it in his Illustrations upon Calchondila; and I have learned it of a Persian, which is at Paris, who saith, that by corruption of speech they call yet to this day the Governours of Provinces, Sol-tan Sitripin. Now lest some other should further accuse me for having improperly named Ibrahim's House a Palace, since all these of persons of quality are called Seraglioies at Constantinople, I desire you to remember, that I have done it by the counsell of two or three excellent persons, who have found as well as my self, that this name of Seraglio would leave an Idea which was not seemly, and that it was fit not to make use of it, but in speaking of the Grand Signior, and that as seldom as might be. But whilst wee are speaking of a Palace, I am to advertise you, that such as are not curious to see a goodly building, may pass by the gate of that of my Heroe without entring into it, that is to say, not to read the description of it; it is not because I have handled this matter like to Athenagoras, who plays the Mason in the Temple of Jupiter Hammon; nor like Poliphile in his dreams, who hath set down most strange terms, and all the dimensions of Architecture; whereas I have employed but the ornaments thereof; it is not because they are not beauties futable to the Romanze, as well as to the Epique Poem, since the most famous both of the one and the other have them; nor is it too because mine is not grounded on the History, which assures us that it was the most superb the Turks ever made, as still appears by the remains thereof, which they of that Nation call Serrau Ibrahim. But to conclude, as inclinations ought to be free, such as love not those beautifull things, for which I have so much passion, may (as I have said) pass on without looking on them, and leave them to others more curious of those rarities, which I have assembled together with art and care enough. Now, Reader, ingenuity being a matter necessary for a man of Honour, and the theft of glory being the basest that may be committed, I must confess here for fear of being accused of it, that the History of the Count of Lavagna, which you shall see in my Book, is partly a Paraphrase of Mascardies; this Adventure falling out in the time whilst I was writing, I judged it too excellent not to set it down, and too well indited for to undertake to do it better; so that regard not this place but as a Translation of that famous Italian, and except the matters, which concern my History, attribute all to that great man, whose Interpreter onely I am. And if you finde something not very serious in the Histories of a certain French Marquis, which I have interlaced in my Book, remember if you please, that a Romanze ought to have the images of all natures; that this diversity makes up the beauties of it, and the delight of the Reader; and at the worst regard it as the sport of a melancholick, and suffer it without blaming it. But before I make an end, I must pass from matters to the manner of delivering them, and desire you also not to forget, that a narrative stile ought not to be too much inflated, no more than that of ordinary conversations; that the more facile it is, the more excellent it is; that it ought to glide along like Rivers, and not rebound up like Torrents;



## The Preface.

Torrents; and that the less constraint it hath, the more perfection it hath; I have endeavoured then to observe a just mediocrity between vicious elevation, and creeping lowness; I have contained my self in narration, and left my self free in orations, and in passions, and without speaking as extravagants, and the vulgar, I have laboured to speak as worthy persons do.

Behold, Reader, that which I had to say to you, but what defence soever I have employed, I know that it is of works of this nature, as of a place of war, where notwithstanding all the care the Engineer hath brought to fortifie it, there is alwayes some weak part found, which he hath not dream'd of, and whereby it is assaulted; but this shall not surprize me; for as I have not forgot that I am a man, no more have I forgot that  
I am subject to erre.



Beatrix C. Knappe  
Her Book given her  
by her mother, Rebecca  
In the Fall of our Lord 1722.

The Place

I have been thinking of you very much lately, and wondering how you are getting on. I hope you are well and happy. I have been very busy lately, but I have managed to find some time to write to you. I have been thinking of you very much lately, and wondering how you are getting on. I hope you are well and happy. I have been very busy lately, but I have managed to find some time to write to you.



# IBRAHIM, OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

The First Part.

*The First Book.*



Scarcely had the first beames of the Sun dissipated the darknes of the night on the *Bosphorus* of *Thrace*, when as a great voyce of Trumpets and Atabales awaked every one in the Imperiall Citie of *Constantinople*, and made them known that the Triumph of great *Soliman* was then beginning. All the people ran instantly to the *Hipodrome*, and the least curious would see the magnificent entry of that Prince, who returned conquerer from *Persia*. *Roxelana* the *Sultana* Queen, followed by all the rest, parted from the *Seraglio* in Chariots of Scarlet imbroidered with gold, and went to the stately standing prepared for her. All the Christian Princes Ambassadors took their places there; first that of the Emperor; then that of *France*; next to them sate those of *Spain*, and *Poland*; and after them the *Baglions* of *Venice*, and *Rhagonsa*. But those of the *Mahometan* Provinces, as being of the same belief with *Soliman*, were on the left hand, which amongst the Turkes is alwaies the place of honour: That of the *Tartars* appeared there with a barbarous pomp in a Cap and Roab of Sables, all his Train clad with the skinnes of Beares, Foxes, Wolves, and Tygers: And those of *Morocco*, and *Fez*, were there too, with all the magnificence, and gallantry, that Moores make profession of. As soone as each one had taken his place, the Governor of *Constantinople*, whom the Turkes call *Capitan Bassa*, and as one of the four prime Officers of the Empire, went out of the City to the *Seraglio Daut*, an house of pleasure of the Grand Signiors, some two miles off, for to advertise his Higness, who was come thither the night before, that all things were in a readines to receive him. *Soliman* gets immediately to horse, and this great Emperour after so glorious a conquest goes to revive the stately seat of his Empire. Fifty Trumpets, and fifty Atabales, attired in Cassocks of Damask, imbroidered with gold, appeared first in the *Hipodrome*, and made all the Citie to ring with



the warlike harmony of their silver instruments. They were followed by two thousand Archers on horseback, in liveries of carnation sattin, laid thick with gold lace. Bowes of ebony in their left hands, and ivory quivers hanging on skarfes. Fifty Hoboys, and fifty players on Cimbells, followed this first troupe, habited after the Greek fashion, in blew velvet imbroidered with silver. The *Aga* of the *Janizaries* marched on foot alone after them in the head of six thousand of his companions, having on a robe of cloth of gold, a jewell of rich stones, and a plume of Hearons feathers in his Turbant, with a China battoon in his hand, which is the marke of his Charge: All this Troop was clothed in that kind of roabe by them called *Doliman*, with scymitars by their sides, and muskets on their shoulders. They were followed by fifty Drummes, and fifty Fyfes, attyred in short coates of white taffeta, wrought with lively flowers set out with gold. After them an hundred black Slaves, with chaines of silver, and braslets of the same about their armes and legges, carried *Tachmas* the Sophy of *Persias* Throne of massy gold, which had been found in *Tanris*; and all the rich vessell of Agate, and Turqueys, wherewith that Monarch was served. Next to them were twelve Elephants, and twelve Camells led, laden with silver, gold, jewells, and precious stones, which had been taken out of the Sophyes Treasure. A great Chariot, drawn by twelve Barbies, followed, where hung an hundred displayed colours, which the Turkes had gained from the *Persians*; in the midst whereof was a stately Trophie, composed of Curiaes and Murrians of silver engraved; Targets of gold and Turqueyses; Scymitars and Poignards, whose hilts and scabbards were of Agates and Cornalines; Bowes of Ebony inlaid with gold; Quivers of gold set with pearl; Pikes, Darts, and Arrowes of Cedar wood, and Indian Cane; all intermingled with a disorder so agreeable, & so full of art, and a confusion so rich and beautifull, as nothing could come neere to the magnificence of this Trophry. Thirty Satrapes, sumptuously apparelled after the Persian manner, with their *Cushebas*, or red Turbants, went after that Chariot, tyed two and two with golden chaines, their hands behind their backs. These illustrious wretches were followed by five hundred Volunteers, which the Turkes call *Dellis*, mounted on horses barbed and caparisoned with Lions skinnies, having the tail of that generous beast on the frontstalls of them, in stead of a feather; their habits were of the skin of a Bear, their bonnets of that of a Leopard exquisitely spotted; in those bonnets the trayne of an Eagle, and on their Targetts the wing of the same bird; they had scymitars by their sides, battelaxes at their saddle bowes, and Launces in their hands, at the end whereof was an Eagles feather in stead of a pennon. This fantastick troop was followed by a mixture of Trumpets, Attabales, Hoboys, European Drummes, Cimbells, and Fyfes, which composed a musick little less extravagant, than the equipage of those that preceded them. An hundred Pages rode after these same, mounted on white Barbies, and suited in white velvet, studded with silver. Behind these Pages twenty Azapes lead in their hands ten Horses, royally harnessed, whereof the last, which was called the Horse of the Body, or the Horse of Battaille, had the bitt of the bridle, and the stirrups of massive gold, all beset with precious stones; the Saddle white all over with pearles, and sparkling with diamonds; the Sektans Target hung at the Saddle bovy by strings of gold; at the ends whereof great tasselles of Orientall pearles traile to the ground. Next to these horses marched even together the *Tubemer Aga*, and the *Chiodar Aga*, who carried the Turbant and Manele Imperiall. Behind them *Ibrahim Bassa*, the the Grand Visior, rode alone, mounted on a black Barbe, whose furniture was of velvet of the same color, as well as the habit of that illustrious *Bassa*, all imbroidered with great pearles, he carried in his hand, & without a Scabbard, the Scymitar Imperiall. The hundred Peikes, or footmen of the Grand Signior, followved next, but in order, with bonnets of massive silver on their heads, in the midst whereof white feathers of an extraordinary greatness stuck in a quill covered with precious stones. Fifty Archers on foot went after them, with bowes & arrowes in their hands, in the midst of whom was *Sultan Soliman*, arrayed in a robe of cloth of gold, imbroidered with pearles, and diamonds; his Turbant was adorned with five plumes of Hearons, and as many great jewells of rich stones; and the furniture of his Horse was all covered

covered over with Eméraults and Rubies. He was followed by all the Bassaes and Beglierbies of the Empire. After whom a Boluch Bassa marched in the head of two thousand Janizaries, which were the last Troops of this stately Entrie. After that this marvelous Triumph had made a turn about the Hipodrome, all ranked themselves on the right and left hand, and the Sultan went and lighted at a Tent of cloth of Gold, vvhich had been pitched for him under the windows of the Sultana Queen. All the Grandees of the Port stood on both sides; *Ibrahim* alone was set at his Highness feet, on a Cushion of cloath of Silver. When every one had taken his place, the Bassa of the Sea, who that day exercised the Charge of the Master of the Ceremonies, advertised the Ambassadors that they might go to the Baïse-main, and offer their presents, which they had no sooner done, and were returned to their seats, but the Musi appeared, sitting on a Throne that was carried on the back of a Cammell, and holding in his hands the Book of the Alcoran. He was waited upon by all the Alfaquis, Calenders, and Dervis of the City of *Constantinople*; all these Religious men cried and howled with a dreadfull noise, and to accompany their voices, and their dance, they beat upon kettles and basons, and rung little bells; so that this modest Clergy resembled not a little the Orgies of ancient *Greece*, and the Bacchanals of old *Rome*. When they were before the Sultan they stood still, made prayers for the prosperity of his Highness, offered him a Book of their Law, covered with Gold and Turquesyes; and after they had slashed their arms and their faces with great knives, for the love of their Prophet, and the Sultan, they retired, and gave place to those that were to succeed them. The Turkish, Christian, and Jewish Merchants appeared then richly attired, and in the midst of them a Chariot drawn by twelve *Cupids*, crowned with flowers, upon the which was erected a shop of cloth of Gold, and Persian Tapestry, which they presented to the Sultan. The Goldsmiths followed them with a Cupbord of Gold Plate ingraven, upon a frame of unpolished Silver, dravvn by four white Horses, which they gave to his Highness. Every Trade appeared one after another, each of them making shew of some rich piece of workmanship of their profession; but with so extraordinary a diligence, that before the turn of the place was finished, the Present was in estate to be offered to great *Soliman*. He received them all very graciously, and instantly gave them to his dear *Ibrahim*, to whom he said they were justly due, since it was by his courage and conduct, that he had obtained the Victory, and this Triumph. After that all these liberall Troopes were past, as *Turkie* is the onely place in the World, vvhere the most Juglers and Tumblers are, there appeared above two thousand of them, vvho in the presence of the Grand Signior did all, that the sleight of the hand, and all, that the address and force of the body, could naturally permit men to. Next to them vvvas seen the great Frame, representing the City of *Tauris*, vvhereof the Towers vvvere covered vvith Persian Colours, as vvvas knovvn by their ancient Images of the Sun, vvwhich they all had; it vvvas follovvved by two hundred Slaves, belonging to the Bassa of the sea, half of them armed after the Turkish, and half after the Persian manner, vvith scimitars and bucklers of Silver; vvho to the sound of fifty Hoboys danced that vvwhich the *Greeks* called the Pirrhique dance, and that vvwhich might be termed an armed dance; the blowvs vvvere given and received in a due cadence; the changing of figures therein, represented the advantages, and flight vvwhich fall out in battels; and the noise of bucklers and scimitars marked out the measure of paces vvith as much even time, as the instruments. Amongst these Slaves there vvvas one in the Turkish Troop, vvwhich by his good aspect and behaviour, drevv the eys of all the beholders upon him; the Grand Visier no sooner perceived him, but he trembled vvith amazement and joy, no way doubting but that it was he whom he thought he knew: In the mean time the Frame, and the two Troops, having made a turn about the place, the City was set down just against the Grand Signior, and the Persians cast themselves into it; Then at the sound of all the Trumpets, Atabales, Drums, Hoboys, Fifes, and Cimbals in the Assembly, the Turks gave an assault to that feigned City of

*Tauris*: If the assault were vigorous, the defence was no less; the Persians were seen to give ground; the Turkes were also seen to be repulsed; and this false linage of of war had all the appertances of a true fight: But at length, after a great resistance, the well-made Slave forced the gates, mounted first on the wallee, and plucking down the Sophyes Colours for to set up those of the Sulcan, his valor and address were the cause, that the Moon made the Sun to be eclipsed; his victory was seconded with a great shout of the Janizaries, and of all the people, and nothing was heard over all the Hipodrome, but long live Sultan *Soliman*. In the mean time *Ibrahim* Bassa, who knew his friend no less by his address, than by his face, was ravished to see, that all the glory of this action could not be disputed with him. When the noise of so many voices was dispersed, there appeared a Troop like to Christians, and observed for such by the Crosses, which were seen in their Colours; they represented certain Christians, who living under the Empire of the Sophy thought they were obliged to defend that Prince, though he were not of their Religion, and indeed had fought so generously for him, as they had been the first in the war, and yet the last that were vanquished. This feigned Troop had order from the Bassa of the Sea to resist for some time that of the Turkes, which came at that very instant out of the City, and then to suffer themselves to be vanquished; and they that were attired like Turkes were commanded to chain them, and to trail their Colours on the ground. But when the fight began, that generous Slave, who had drawn the eyes of all the Assembly upon him at the taking of the feigned City of *Tauris*, fell suddenly from jesting into a more serious thought, and being carried away by the zeal of his Religion, he passed from the Turkish Troop into that of the Christians, and by changing of party made the face of things to change: The Turkes, whom he had left, laboured to vanquish him with the rest, but he beat them back to the very gates of the City; and albeit they made three fallies more upon him, he repulsed them all the three times, even to the same gates. All the world was surpris'd with this adventure, and *Soliman*, not being able to comprehend the matter, demanded of the Bassa of the Sea, what it meant? But the Bassa, casting himself at the feet of his Highness, assured him that this criminall action came not from his order, but that it proceeded from the Insolencie of his Slave; whereupon a motion of choler seizing on the mind of the Grand Signior, he commanded that this Slave should be instantly impaled. But the grand Visier, rising from the place where he sat, and falling on his knees, besought the Sultan that he would not mark the day of his Triumph with blood; but remember that clemency is properly the virtue of the Victorious; that in saving the life of this inconsiderate he should be assured, that he would lose it for his service; and that he was of a birth and humor never to be ingratefull; that knowing him as well as himself, he would be responsible for him to his Highness; and that being so far obliged unto him as to dye for to save him, he besought the Sulcan to take his life instead of his, if his fault could not obtain pardon. *Soliman* reached out his hand to the illustrious Bassa, and in raising him up, said unto him, that were the Lightning in his hand, his prayers should arrest it; and that being unable to refuse him any thing, he granted him both the life and the pardon of that rash man. *Ibrahim* cast himself again at the feet of the Sultan for to render him thanks, and after he had obtained of the Bassa of the sea that this slave should come and pass the night with him, he sent him a commandment to attend him. All the magnificences of this Triumph being finished, *Soliman* was going to rise, and to prepare himself for his return unto his Seraglio, when as he perceived *Osman*, the Bassa of the seas only sonne, who breaking through the press, and leading a woman in his hand, came and threw himself together with her at his feet. I know well, my Lord, said he unto him, that my presumption is extreme, but withall I know too, that thy goodness is infinite; nevertheless I have no other need of it in this encounter, than that thou wilt be pleased to permit me to acknowledge thee for a Judge, and to obtain of thee, that in a day wherein thou receivest such glorious marks of thy Valour, thou wilt render us



one of thy Justice. The Bassa of the sea knowing that he was the most interested in the matter in hand, approached near to the Grand Signior for to beseech him with a great deal of earnestness not to give ear to the complaints of a man, who had been so bold as to come and interrupt his Triumph; that for his part, although he were his souné, he would crave no favour of him for his fault, but contrarily he should be obliged to his Highness if he would give him a chastisement, that might punish him, not only for his crime, but for all others whereof he was also culpable. A discourse so violent, and so far distant from the apprehensions of a father, made *Soliman* willing to be cleared therein, being loth in a day of his glory his people might say, that he had refused to hear the complaints of the oppressed. Howbeit he would first demand the advice of the grand Visier *Ibrahim*, who having no other aim but the glory of his Master, said unto him, that in a time wherein Heaven had done him justice in giving him the victory over his Enemies, he should in some sort be unjust to deny it to them that craved it of him. The first sence of *Soliman* having been confirmed by the counsell of a man, who might do all things with him, he commanded the Bassa of the sea to hold his peace, and the woman whom *Osman* had brought to his feet, to tell him what interest she had in the fortune of that man; to the end that understanding the matter from a person that seemed least capable of disguising it, he might also give a more equal judgement therein. That woman then having heard this commandment, could not for all that resolve to obey it, before she had looked on *Osman*, as it were to demand permission of him to answer unto it; but he having made a sign unto her that he desired it, she turned her self towards *Soliman*, with both a modest, and a confident countenance, which began already to obtain for her the good-will and attention of all that could hear her. *Alibech*, so was this woman called, was young and fair, and one might have said that her beauty had been without compare, if her complexion had not been a little tanned with the Sun; she had a stately look, but without pride; and such ingenuity in her face, as could not permit one to doubt of her words. After that by *Osman*'s countenance she knew he had permitted her to speak, she began in these terms; for though she was originally of *Persia*, yet spake she perfectly the *Turkish* tongue, which she made use of in this occasion.

### The History of Osman and Alibech.

I doubt not, my Lord, but thy Highness will find it strange, said this woman, her eyes full of tears, that in a day wherein tears of joy are to be shed, I begin my discourse with tears of sorrow; but the cause of it is so pressing, that it is impossible for me to retain them; for, my Lord, thou seest before thine eyes, said she, shewing *Osman*, two of the most unfortunate persons that ever were; we have enemies whom we cannot, whom we ought not hate; to whom we owe respect; to whom we owe obedience; to whom we owe affection; enemies, I say, to whom we owe our lives, and for whom also we would lose them with joy if there were occasion for it: Nevertheless it is against such dear persons, my Lord, that I am to speak at this time; and for obtaining the justice which we demand of thee, and whereupon depends the happiness or unhappiness of our lives, I must discover the cruelties of my father, and *Osman* must accuse his: Judge then, my Lord, whether my tears be not just, and whether loving our enemies, as we do, we be not exposed to an extreme misfortune in being thus constrained to publish their shame, to accuse them, and to demand justice against them. *Alibech* found her self so oppressed with sorrow, that she stood a good while unable to speak. But *Soliman* having commended so sweet a resentment in her, and having commanded her once again to let him understand their differences, she continued her discourse. Since I must, said she, obey, and that I cannot conserve my husband without discovering the misfortunes of my father, I must, I say, let thy Highness know, that his name is *Arfalem*, that he was born the subject of the Sophy of *Persia*; and that in

the

the time he was in that Court he was Satrap of *Aderbion*, and so considerable vvith *Tachmas*, as there was not any person in that Empire, vvho vvvas more than he; but vvhereas his humour hath been alvvayes violent in every thing, being become desperately in love vvith a maid of excellent beauty, of great vertue, and of much spirit, he espoused her, though she were of base condition: And vvhereas the Laws of the State do not permit a Gentleman to mary a vvife that is not noble, they also vvill that the great ones, vvvhich commit such like offences, shall lose the honors and charges they possess, and be declared ignoble, and uncapable of all manner of dignities. My father was not ignorant of this custome and law; but he was persvvaded that *Tachmas* vvould have infringed it for his sake; and, if he vvould not, that want of affection vvould be a reason strong enough to oblige him to make the Province revolt, vvhere he commanded, and vvhereof he believed he vvvas absolutely the Master; howbeit the matter succeeded not so, for the enemies vvvhich my Father had made him by his vvviolences, meeting vvith so fair an occasion to hurt him, they represented unto the Sophy, that if he pardoned him this fault, it vvould make him the more insolent for the future, yea and that it vvould even overthrow all that Empire, the glory and force vvwhereof consisted in the valour of noble persons, vvwherevvvith it is replenished; at length they vvrote in such manner, that my Father vvvas declared guilty, as contravening the fundamentall Laws of the State, and constrained to vvundergo the chastisement, vvvhich I shall come to speak of, by reason that the Province, vvwhere he commanded so absolutely vvwhen he vvvas in gráce, vvrevolted against him, and left him not scarcely the liberty to seek a refuge othervvwhere; for I forgot to tell thy Highness, that the same Law vvvhich commanded the utter ruine of my Father, commanded also that he should pass his life in a perpetuall prison, and the person vvvhom he had married in another, for fear that living together, and having children, it might one day cause disorders in the State. My Father seeing himself in so pitivfull a fortune, vvvent not about to move the heart of *Tachmas* vvwith payers and submission, but contrarily sent him vvword, that deserving not to be served by a man of his courage and valor, he vvwould go out of his Estates, vvwith an intention never to re-enter into them again, but to bring vvwar along vvwith him. Being then in *Mingrelia*, he bought a Man of War, vvwherein he imbarqued himself on *Mare major*, vvwith his vvwife, vvwho as she vvvas the cause of his misfortune, so vvwould she not abandon him in his exile. They continued some time in this sort, not knowing vvwhat resolution to take, nor having any other design in the course that they held, than to eloin themselves from *Persia*; my Fathers great heart not permitting him to go and seek unto the enemies of *Tachmas* for a place of retreat; for though he be somewhat cruell, yet is he notwithstanding generous; neither vvould he likewise address himself to the Princes that vvvere allied to our Empire, for fear he should not be favourably received by them. In the mean time these irresolutions having no end, the provisions of the ship diminished daily: The Pilot vvvas vvwell hoped up to ask him vvwhere he vvwould land, vvwhen as he found no place in the vvwhole univervsall Map vvvhither to go. Six moneths past avvvay in this sort in running over all the Seas of the *Levant*; and vvwhereas my mother vvvas vvwith child of me, at such time as she imbarqued her self, she vvvas not far from the term vvwherein I vvvas to see the light, vvwhen as *Arsalons* vvvisuallvvvly utterly failed him; and having imployed all his money in the buying of the Vessell, and such provisions of War, and for the mouth, as he had laid into her, he knew not vvwhat part to repair unto for the supplying of himself in so adverse an adventure. The souldiers and Mariners consulted together, and having gained the Pilot, they vv wrought so vvwith him, that vvmaugre the command my Father had given him to the contrary, he steered directly to an Island vvvhich they had discovered; vvwhereupon *Arsalon* being in a rage to see his authority contemned, vvvent and pushed away the Pilot so rudely for to make him abandon the helm, as the poor vvretch fell into the Sea; and my Father becoming his own Pilot, he took his scimitar in his right hand, and the vv whip of the rudder in his left, and menacing them that vvwould oppose his vvwill, he made his Vessell take a quite contrary course, vvchoosing rather to die by

famine,

famine, than expose his misery to the eyes of the world, fearing nothing so much as that *Tachmas* should come to understand his misfortunes. He had already lost sight of that Island, which he had beheld as a rock, and his souldiers being no longer retained but by the tears of my Mother, might at length peradventure have been carried to some strange resolution, without an adventure that befell them, which was, that my Father discovered a Vessell coming towards his, which bore a Flag of *Persia* in her top, as he thought, and as indeed it proved to be: Upon the sight of her he began to think, that he should be revenged of *Tachmas* in revenging himself upon his Subjects; and this desire of revenge, joyned to the present necessity, made him propound to his souldiers the attacking of that Vessell, who animated more by the fear of famine, than by their courage, resolved to obey his pleasure. After my Father had shut up my Mother in the Captains Cabin, where with fright she was brought to bed of me by the assistance of her Nurse, who had never abandoned her, they set upon the Vessell, and after two hours fight rendred themselves absolute Masters of her, wherein they found extreme riches, and abundance of Victuall. This victory gave new life to his souldiers, who for the valor which my Father had shewed in this occasion, grew so devoted unto him, as they craved pardon of him for resisting his will, and swore never to forsake him; he to win them the more, divided the booty amongst them, reserving nothing for himself but the glory of having vanquished. After this, my Lord, he took a resolution to have no other Countrey but his ship, and to pass all the rest of his life upon all the Seas of the world, to seek out all occasions of fighting, and to take all the Vessells that should carry the Colours of *Persia*, or all that belonged to the Enemies of our Religion, which are the Christians: He propounds this design to his souldiers, who approve it, and albeit my Mother withstood it, he settled this resolution at last. Behold, my Lord, in what sort my Father hath lived for the space of eighteen years that I have been in the world, and that which hath gotten him so much fame under the name of *Arsalon* the Pirate throughout all the Seas that are known to us. I have not for all that been always brought up in so wild an element, for whereas he divers times arrived at Islands to sell off the commodities which he had taken, he left me from the age of six years untill fourteen, at which time he took me to him again, under the government of a woman of the Isle of *Cyprus*, who truly had a great deal of care of me. Thy Highness may be pleased to displease with me for the relating to thee all the sad victories which my Father hath obtained in so long a time, and withall wilt pardon me if I have extended my self in this discourse more than I ought, for to make it appear, that the life which my father hath led, hath rather been an effect of his great heart, and of his despair, than of the baseness and viciousness of his mind: But, my Lord, to come unto that which directly regards me, it was not full six dayes after my Father had taken me away from the Isle of *Cyprus*, whenas my Mother fell sick, and died in my arms; this loss no doubt was very sensible unto me, and *Arsalon* was so afflicted with it, as no man could be more; howbeit this grief produced very different effects in us; I shed tears, and he spilt blood, for melancholy being joyned to his violent humour, he sought no other remedy for his affliction than to make others miserable like him self. We ran then over all the Archipelago, and all the Sea of *Tuscany*; and during that voyage he made many fights, and took many prizes, amongst the rest a little Barque, where a man of a good aspect, and that was an *Italian*, defended himself so courageously, that *Arsalon*, vexed at his resistance, had peradventure caused him to be slain, if I had not obtained his life. When he was in the hands of my Father, he was chained amongst those whom he judged were handsome enough to be sold in places where he had accustomed to traffique; but he soon changed this design, for this new Slave having given him to understand by an Interpreter, which my Father had, who spoke most languages, for the commodity of his Commerces, that he was a man of quality, he agreed with him on a price for his ransom, and gave him his word, that if the sum which he had promised, were paid him at the Isle of *Cyprus*, he would set him at liberty:

This



This Slave having confirmed this promise unto him, my Father permitted him to write unto the place whence he said he was of, and so going to the Isle of *Cyprus*, he gave this Letter to Merchants, with whom he held correspondence, that undertook to cause it to be delivered; my Father promising this Slave, that within three moneths he would return thither for an answer of it; but in the mean time that he must for his security go along with him: This man not knowing what to do, but to follow the Law of the Vanquisher, resolved to submit to that which he could not avoid. Not long after we encountred a great man of War, in whose Flag my Father observed half Moons; and whereas all his prizes were seldom or never made of any save of *Persians*, or *Christians*, he purposed not to meddle with her, but contrarily commanded his Pilot to quit his course, that so he might decline her; but whereas *Arsalon* was taken for a Pirate, and this change of course seemed to be a flight unto him who commanded that Vessell, he made up with full sayls unto us, the better to discern ours, and having well discerned her, he came presently and graped himself fast unto us. I cannot say, my Lord, what this fight was, because the fright I was in kept me from marking it, howbeit I know that at the very first, they of that Vessell leaped into ours; and whereas there were many of my Fathers souldiers sick, they might peradventure have rendred themselves Masters of her without the valor of the *Italian* Slave, who seeing that they which attacked us were not *Christians*, demanded leave of *Arsalon* to fight, who having given him arms, gave him wherewithall to gain us the victory; for he performed such marvellous things in this fight, as after he had repulsed the enemy, he leaped into their Vessell, followed by my Father, and some of his, put very neer all that he met with there to the sword, rendred himselfe Master of her, and with his own hand, after a long resistance, took *Osman*, who commanded her, and who by his Fathers order was going to *Alexandria*. After this brave exploit, this Slave was the favourite of *Arsalon*, of which grace notwithstanding he was not much sensible; for though my Father caressed him extremely, yet left he not to be exceedingly afflicted, when as he knew that the reward of his victories should be a perpetuall slavery; for albeit my Father had promised to give him his liberty, when as he should have received his ransom, he had resolved nevertheless to break his word with him, for that he might not, said he, part with a man which could make him invincible by his wonderfull valor. In the mean time, my Lord, *Osman* finding himself wounded, and my inclination having always carried me to the comforting of others miseries, I visited him whilst he was ill, and more for the care that I had of his person, as long as he was so, than for any beauty vvas in my face, he bare an affection to me; and if I dare say it, the knowledge vvhich I had thereof, together with his merit, and the compassion I had of his misfortune, very much disposed me to accept of it; the constancy which he shewed was partly the cause of my weakness, if at leastwise one may call an affection so, which hath no other object but vertue. As soon as *Osman* was taken, he told *Arsalon* what he was, who gave him the means to let the Bassa of the Sea understand what ransom he was set at, and how he might deliver him; in the mean time, his hurts being cured, he contracted a great friendship with that generous Slave, speaking a certain corrupted *Italian* unto him, which, they say, is very much in use here in *Constantinople*. As for me, after I parted from the Isle of *Cyprus*, my chiefeft entertaimens was to talk with the Interpreter, whom my Father carried always along with him, and by the continuall conference which we had together, touching the diversities of Languages, I had almost learned two or three, if not for to speak them well, at leastwise to understand them perfectly; and whereas the *Turkish* and *Italian* were of that number, I did also many times converse with those two unfortunate ones, thinking I had passed away the day exceeding well, vvhhen I could avoid the company of those men of blood and slaughter that followed my Father. Thus I spent most of my time, either in the Captains Cabbin vvvith my Mothers Nurse, or in their conversation. They knew vvell enough by my sadness, that the life vvhich I led vvas grievous unto me, yet had they the goodness not to speak to me

of

of it but modestly, nor to complain of their own misfortunes in consideration of me: This compliance and advisedness of theirs made me to esteem much of them both; and the belief I had that I was beloved of *Osman* possessed me both with joy, and with unquietness; for I perceived sufficiently, that his heart yielded not without resisting, and that he was ashamed to wear the fetters of a Pirats daughter: This generous disposition of his for all that displeased me not, and making great account of him already, I interpreted every thing to his advantage; I found that he had reason to revolt against himself, and not to give way to a passion unworthy of him, yet forbore I not to make vows in secret, that he might know how far my disposition was from that of my fathers, but yet I durst not bring any care to justify my self therein, because I could not do it without blaming him that gave me life. Wee lived in this sort with some delight, and a great deale of unquietness; the Italian Slave was afflicted to see my father break his word with him, and seemed also to be so for that he could have no tydings of a friend of his whom he infinitely regretted; as for *Osman*, and my self, we knew not what to wish for; he was grieved for that he could not hear from his father, and yet feared to quit me; I likewise made vows for his liberty, and yet feared nothing more. What, said I to my self sometimes, shall I pass my whole life with men, whose cruelty is all their vertue? shall I alwaies be exposed to tempests? Shall I never see other than miserable wretches? And it may be too after that I shall die the Slave of a Pirate. I vow to thee, my Lord, this thought was a torment unto me; and albeit the conversation of *Osman* gave me some pleasing houres, yet could I say that I was most unhappy: But I was a great deal more a little after, because the term, which my father had given the Bassa of the Sea for the redemption of his sonne, being past, he was treated more harshly than before, and kept in the rank of those Slaves, which he meant to sell in Christian land. This resolution, being known to *Osman*, and me, wrought a strange effect in us, and the love which we bore one to another, and which we had both of us concealed as much as we could, began then to break forth. I could not speak to him of my fathers designs but with tears in mine eyes, nor could he talk to me of an eloignement, which he believed to be inevitable, without declaring his affection openly unto me; I believed, my Lord, that it was true, thinking it was not a time fitting to dissemble in; he assured me that his irons did not seem heavy unto him, as long as he was with me, but the thought of being separated from me for ever, and to be constrained to carry chaines otherwhere, was insupportable to him; he sware to me further, that he had not desired his liberty but to obtain of his father, against whom he had never so much as once murmured, the meanes to deliver me out of the hands of mine. A discourse so obliging found not an ingratefull soul, and I resolved to do what I could to keep my father from executing so ignoble a design; I cast my self then at his feet, I begged this grace of him with teares, but for all the effect of my request I got nothing, save an expresse inhibition never to speak to him more of it. After that he alwaies treated me ill; I had no longer the libertie to entertain *Osman* as before; and wee were all three for a long time together the most unhappy persons that ever were. This constraint for all that kept me not from letting him know at length, that if he would promise to marry me I would endeavour to deliver him, so as he would be ruled by me: *Osman* answered thereunto very obligingly, that loving me so much, as to hazard his life for to make me his, I was not to doubt, but that meeting with two such great benefits together, he would do whatsoever I would have him for to obtain them. After he had sworn more than once to me, that if I would procure him his libertie, and would follow him, he would receive me for his wife, I required some time for the execution of my design; but whereas I could not finish it without betraying in some sort my father, it is certain that I almost repented me of my ingaging my self therein: I was perswaded notwithstanding that vertue and reason were of my side, and that regarding *Osman* as my husband, I might be permitted to follow him, desiring nothing of all my fathers riches, than this only Slave, which I robbed him of. Being well confirmed then in my design, I examin, I consid-

der the difficulties of it, and find no other way to execute it, than to stay till we came to the Isle of *Chio*, whither my father was to goe, and there to cast anchor; for whereas he had caused the Captains Cabbins to be divided in the midst, to the end that I should lie on the one side, and he on the other, and that *Osman* also was every night locked up with a key, which *Arsalon* himself alwaies kept by him, I resolved to steal it as softly as I could from him; but the difficulty was, that ever since he purposed to retain the Italian Slave, he for to favour him, but indeed to assure himself of him, made him to lie with him. I resolved then to propound unto him his escaping out of my fathers hands; at first he doubted it was but to try him, that I spake so to him, and withall his own generosity withstood it, but having acquainted him with the truth of the matter, he believed me, and said, that seeing my father had broken his word with him, he might fail in his fidelity to him also; and on condition that *Osman* would promise him his freedom, he would expose himself to any thing for my sake. I assured him of what he desired, and having so good a second it was not hard for me to finish my enterprize. But without importuning thy Highness, my Lord, by a long relation, let it suffice to say, we were no sooner at the road of *Chio*, where *Osman* had some acquaintance, but night being come, and my father asleep, I went and stole away the key of the Cabbins, wherein *Osman* was locked; and the generous Slave, having shut up my father in his, where he soundly slept, came along with me to unloose his friend, snatched away a sentinells armes that would have cryed out, and having killed him, as well as the Pilot, we got into the skiff, and for the more surety, the generous Slave with a blow of his scimitar cut asunder the cable that held the vessell at anchor, which by the light of the Moon we saw fall away from us, and float at the pleasure of the wind, without a Pilot, or any man awake in her. In the mean time *Osman* and that Slave rowed with such speed, as wee soon approached to land, where we happily arrived; and meeting with a sanctuary in the house of one, who knew *Osman* at *Chio*, we in a little time found the meanes to come unto *Constantinople*, leaving *Arsalon* no doubt in an extreme rage at our flight, which was made with much the more security, for that my father seldom suffered his great Vessell to enter into any Port that was suspected unto him, but sent a Barque in for the dispatch of such business as he had to do there, and upon that it was that I had grounded my enterprize. Now, my Lord, after I had delivered *Osman* with the help of the generous Slave, and had brought him back to his paternall house, when he would have made good his word which he had given us, this incensed father hath intreated me as an infamous person, and a vagabond, and hath put that Slave into irons, to whom his sonne oweth his liberty, since that without him I could not have executed that which I had promised; it is that Slave, my Lord, whom thou hast so lately pardoned, and of whom the Illustrious *Ibrahim* hath undertaken the protection. Behold, my Lord, the difference that is between the Bassa of the Sea, and his sonne, whose sense I will not deliver, for fear I should be suspected to interpret it too advantageously for my self; wherefore it is for thy Highness to understand it from his own mouth, and absolutely to dispose of my happiness, or of my unhappiness, of my life, or of my death. *Alibech* having given over speaking, a confused noise was heard, which seemed to judge the matter for her advantage; but *Soliman*, desiring to render equall Justice, commanded the Bassa of the Sea to speak his intentions. I have no other, my Lord, said he, than to chace from my house a woman, that ought to be driven from all the earth, and whose disposition is so base and unjust, that she could love a captive, when she knew him not for that which he was, and betray her father; a woman descended from a Pirate, nourished amidst blood and cruelty, brought up amongst wicked villaines whom the earth cannot bear, and the daughter of a Persian thy Highness enemy: Behold what this woman is whom my sonne will marry, and for all her estate brings nothing with her but infamy; he will tell me, it may be, that he owes his liberty to her, and I will answer him, that it is a good which she hath not done him, but to doe it for her self; she knew he was the sonne of a Bassa, that he had

Palaces



Palaces, that he was rich, and that he was honored with thy Highness favors; she betrayed her father to possess them, and hath not so much followed my sonne, as she hath sought after his good fortune; and then who knows whether her hatred to *Arsalon* is not rather the cause of her flight, than her love to *Osman*? She was weary of living in a continuall prison, and to speak truly of things, she owes her liberty rather to *Osman*, than my sonne doth owe his to her, since that at length a ransom might have redeemed him, whereas nothing could have drawn her out of her fathers hands. What assurance can one place in a person, that gives no markes of her affection but treasons; that stifles all the motions of nature, to follow those wherewith she is inspired by a disordinate love; and that begins her marriage vvith an impiety? Believe me, *Osman*, said the Bassa beholding him, she that hath been so audacious, as to betray her father for to follow a Slave, may yet more easily betray an husband for a man of free condition; she that could so cunningly steal away the keyes of a sleeping father, may peradventure, being become the more daring by the happy success of her former designs, stab a dagger into the heart of an husband, when as she shall be as weary of him, as she vv as of her father. And then, my Lord, said he, turning himself to *Soliman*, who knows whether all that she hath said be not a trick, and that being the daughter of a *Persian*, she comes not hither to observe what is done here, and seek occasion to hurt us? Howsoever it be, I find that she ought to be suspected of us, and that in this encounter my particular interest is the same with the publique. As for the freedom of the Slave, whom thy Highness hath been pleased to pardon, I have no more to say, for to make it appear, that I am not obliged to render it unto him, than that he is the cause of all the pain I am in, seeing that he alone, as this woman her self saies, made *Osman* the slave of *Arsalon*; let my sonne keep his word with him, if he can, but as for me, I have promised him nothing; I will retain him in irons, not only as a Christian, not only as a Captive, but also as an enemy. Behold, my Lord, what my sense is in this occasion, which, as I think, is not far from reason. *Soliman* seeing that the Bassa of the sea had done speaking, told *Osman* that he was to declare his mind. I am very sorry, replied he, that I must be constrained to contradict a man to whom I owe my life, and to have that cross conformity with the vertuous *Alibech*, as to have a father as inexorable as hers is cruel; but, my Lord, since the prime duty ought to prevail over all others, and that reason will have me speak without fear in this occasion, I will beseech thine Highness to consider, whether I can without ingratitude, and without being the basest of all men, abandon a person, who hath abandoned all for me, and that, as one may say, hath made herself a slave to deliver me, since that remitting her self to my conduct, and relying on my word, it was no longer in her power to alter her mind, but was necessarily to follow my will. Can I consider, that even at this present I should be laden with Irons, exposed to the insolency of Pirates, and the cruelty of *Arsalon*, if this woman had not broken my chains, and not have for her all the affection, and all the acknowledgment whereof I am capable? As soon as I was a captive, she began to do me good; I was wounded, she had a care of me, with her charitable offices she healed the wounds which her father had given me; I no sooner saw her, but I knew her vertue; she comforted the afflicted, took care to relieve them; and to say all in a word, she bewayled the Victories of her father, because she beleevved them not to be just. I confess ingenuously, that the beauty of her mind moved me more, than that of her face; and finding my self surprised by the lustre of so great a vertue, I engaged my self in such sort unto her, as nothing can be able to change it: But if vertue be the foundation of the love I bear her, that which she bears me hath had no less noble a cause: She saw me constant enough in my misfortune, she saw me wounded, a captive, and ready to be sold into a strange Country, and knew, though she seemed to be ignorant of it, that I loved her much; the gorgiousness of my clothes did not win her; for they were all torn in the heat of the fight; I was wan and disfigured; she saw me abandoned of my father, of whom I had no news; ill-entreated by *Arsalon*, because he had lost the hope of my ransom; and finally,

in a more deplorable estate than ever man was seen : Love then did not enter into her heart by voluptuousness, but I can say it was introduced thereinto by goodness, acknowledgement, and compassion ; for if she had not been pittifull, she had not assisted me when I was ill, she had not loved me ; if she had not been acknowledging, she had despised the love of a slave, that had not the liberty to do her any service ; and if her heart had not been tender, she had not been moved with my misfortunes, nor given an end to them. It is true, that she is the daughter of the Pirate *Arsalon*, that she hath quitted her father to follow me ; that she hath been brought up amongst cruell and bloody men ; and that she is the daughter, not only of a Pirate, but of a *Persian*. But, my Lord, all this, which seems to make against me, makes for me in this occasion : for what greater mark can one desire of a solid and immoveable vertue, than to see a woman of eighteen years of age, whose inclinations are not corrupted amidst so many vices ; and whose innocencie is preserved so entire, as she could not so much as excuse cruelty in her father ? It is true, that she hath followed me, but it was to see no more murders, nor fights, and because she saw a juster temper in my mind : She hath not betrayed her father to follow a slave, but she hath quitted the Pirate *Arsalon* to deliver a husband ; for having promised to be so unto her, nothing but death alone can keep me from it. Moreover, my Lord, she is not to be suspected of thy Highness, for though she be the daughter of a *Persian*, it is of a *Persian* the enemy of *Tachmas*, who hath for these eighteen years waged War against him. I will not stand to say, that this woman, albeit the daughter of a Pirate, is for all that of a noble extraction, because the *Mussulmans* make Nobility personall, and beleeve that it ought not to pass unto children ; but I vwill only say, that in the estate wherein my fathers fortune now is, all that can be desired in a woman is contracted in this same ; she is fair, she loves me, and she is vertuous. It is true, that she is without wealth, and without parents, but she hath lost them for the love of me ; and whereas by thy bounty my father hath no need, either of support, or of riches, what can I wish for more in a Wife ? If I take one that is rich, it may be she will abandon me if I should happen to fall into misery, but this that I have chosen will be the companion of all my misfortunes, without any fear that ever she will quit me. I know that I ow a great deal of respect to my father, but I know that I ow my life and my liberty to this woman ; I must then love both the one and the other, or keep my word which I have given her ; for if my father will not suffer himself to be perswaded, we will go voluntarily into banishment ; we are already accustomed to misfortune, and the misery that we shall endure together will no doubt be more supportable to us, than greatness and riches would be if we were separated. As for the generous Slave, to whom I have promised liberty, I know not by what reason my father can pretend any right to deprive him of it ; he is neither his slave nor mine ; and by the severest law of War he can lay no claim at all unto him : He is a Christian I acknowledge, but all the Christians here in *Constantinople* wear not fetters ; he is a captive, but that is to *Arsalon*, and not to him ; and a captive too, who after a breach of promise might with justice break his chains ; nor hath he sought for liberty but to give it me, and that is it peradventure that hath made my father his enemy. It is true also that he took me, but it was in a just fight ; by that reason I am his slave, rather than he is mine. Let thy Highness so order it, if it be possible, that I may acquit me as I ought. Behold all the crimes, my Lord, that I have committed ; my father would have me perfidious and ingratefull, and I had rather my father should hate me with injustice, than love me unjustly. The generous *Alibech* seeing that *Osman* had made an end of speaking, and having observed by the *Bassa* of the seas countenance, that the discourse had rather incensed, than perswaded him, turned her self to *Osman*, with tears in her eyes, and conjured him to obey his father ; I will not, sayd she unto him, have you faulty for the love of me ; and since our affection cannot be innocent, extinguish it in your heart, and leave me the care of conserving it in mine ; remember that you are the sonne of the *Bassa* of the sea, and that you are not yet my husband ; you cannot dispense with your self for that first duty, and fortune doth dispense

dispense with you for the other; I hold you acquitted of the promise which you cannot perform to me without a crime, and I desire nothing of you but a will to obey your father; when I shall see you resolved so to do, I will get me away alone. Alas! said *Osman*, interrupting her, in what part of the World couldst thou find a place of refuge? All the Elements are contrary to us; the sea hath no security for us, nor is the land more favourable unto us; thy father and mine do banish us from them both, and nothing but death alone can finish our miseries. *Soliman* being touched with the pity of such tender apprehensions, would not leave them long in pain; and though the Bassa of the sea would have replied, he forbade him to withstand his pleasure; but whereas he knew, that the true reason wherefore he opposed the passion of his sonne, was avarice, so ordinary amongst the *Turks*, he told him, after he had consulted with *Ibrahim*, that the vertue of *Alibech* had charmed him in such sort, as he would adopt her for his daughter, and how in that quality he would give her three hundred thousand Sultannies in marriage with her, commanding him to receive her for the wife of his sonne, and to intreat her as if she were his daughter, assuring him that he would hold the place of father unto her, and that he would interests himself in all that regarded her. That for the Slave whom he had already pardoned, it was his pleasure, that he should remit him into the hands of *Ibrahim* to dispose of him as he would. The Bassa of the sea, who indeed had found no other defect in the vertuous *Alibech*, than poverty, seeing her to be rich by the bounty of the Sultan, changed his choler into giving of thanks, and assured *Soliman* that he should be obeyed. *Osman* and *Alibech* rendered him such acknowledgement as was answerable to the favour they had received, and went away with as much satisfaction, as they had had sorrow: But it was *Soliman's* pleasure, that *Alibech* should first go and kiss the Robe of *Roxelana*, who was still at the standing, where she had seen the Triumph. In the mean time, the day being near to an end, the magnificences of this Triumph ended also by a volley of Musket-shot discharged by the Janizaries, which was answered by all the great Ordinance of the seven Towers, and that of all the Gallies. Great *Soliman* then retired to the Seraglio, with the Sultana Queen, attended upon by all the Troups, which afterwards conducted the Grand Visier to his, he that by his valour and prudence had been the only cause of *Soliman's* Triumph.

**IBRAHIM:**



# IBRAHIM, OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The First Part.

### The Second Book.

**I**brahim Bassa, being unable to vanquish the secret melancholy which he carried in his breast, could not amidst all his Victories, and all the honours he had received, keep it from being as visible in his eyes, as it was sensible to his heart. The Conquests which he had made of the *Persians*, the Battails which he had won against the Rebels of *Asia*, had indeed filled the whole extent of the Empire of the *Mussulmans* with gladness: but this generall rejoycing made not his particular; neither were utility and glory considerations strong enough to give unto his mind only that first motion which precedeth joy. He was not ignorant, that fortune had not abused him, but to raise him infinitely; howbeit he knew likewise, that she had given him that which he desired not at all, and that she had taken from him the only thing which made up all his desires, and all his ambition; he perfectly knew, that the more happy he was for another, the more unfortunate he was for himself; and a news which he had heard the day before from *Arsalons* slave, had stirred up so great a trouble in his mind, and agitated it with so much violence, as forgetting all things to abandon himself to grief, he remembered not that he was obliged to be present at the rising of great *Soliman*, of whom he was beloved with so much tenderness, as he alone had permission to enter into the *Seraglio* as often as he pleased, a favour so extraordinary, that it had never been granted to any person. He had also made choice of our Illustrious Bassa to be not only his Grand Visier, but to repose himself upon him for all the affairs of the Empire. It was he that commanded the Armies; it was he that made the Sangiacs, and gave them the Government of Provinces; it was he that presided in the Counsell of State, and that alone formed the resolution thereof in the Sultans Cabinet: *Ibrahim* was so powerfull, that he wanted nothing but the sole name of Emperor, to be the chief of all the Orient. In the mean time these favours of fortune could not keep him from holding himself the wretchedest of all men; it was in this irksom thought that the *Agas* of the Janizaries found him, when as he came to tell him, that the Grand Signior complained of his sloth, and that it was his pleasure he should come away unto him. *Ibrahim*, surpris'd with this commandment, which made him see the fault he had committed, did what he could to conceal his grief from the *Agas*; howbeit he perceived that there was some unquietness in his mind; *Ibrahim* told him notwithstanding that he would go straightway and justify himself to his Highness, and that if he durst he would rejoyce for having committed this offence, since thereby

thereby he received so notable a favor. After this complement he went to the Seraglio, where at first when the Sultan saw him, he observed some extraordinary matter in his face; and whereas the Bassa had past the night without sleeping, his countenance seemed to him to be changed, he appeared to him very melancholick, and his humour being more unquiet than usual, he pressed him to let him understand the cause thereof; but perceiving that *Ibrahim* answered not precisely, he demanded of him whether he had any ill news to tell him? Whether the Provinces which he had conquered were revolted? Whether the forces which he had left in the Frontiers of *Persia*, were defeated? Or whether he had discovered any conspiracy against the State, or against his Person? To all these things the grand Visier answered from point to point; that thanks be to Heaven, he had nothing to tell him that could be displeasing unto him; that the Provinces which his Armies had conquered were peaceable; that his Camp had nothing to fear, it being unlikely that the reliicks of two Battells, which the Enemies had lost, should be of so sufficient power, as to dare to present themselves before an Army victorious, as his was; that for the Conspiracies whereof he spake, he besought his Highness to believe that his Empire was so well settled, as there was no force able to shake so great a Body; that for that which regarded his person, his Government was so just, as all strange people beheld it with envy, and all his Subjects with joy. The Bassa had no sooner made an end of speaking, but the Sultan said unto him very obligingly, Why then, *Ibrahim*, since thy melancholy proceeds not from any thing that regards me, it must needs be something that concerns thee in particular, and as I am no less sensible on that side, than on the other, I will know absolutely of thee, what it is that troubles thy minde; for though thou hast laboured to put on a joyfull countenance in answering me, yet hast thou not for all that destroyed the opinion which I have conceived. *Ibrahim*, seeing himself so neerly prest, could not forbear blushing, and thinking on what he was to say, he cast down his eyes, and seemed to be stricken dumb, which the Sultan having observed, embraced him, and said, No, *Ibrahim*, do not seek to disguise the truth unto me, I will know it of what importance soever it may be: Look not on me in this confidence, as on thy Sovereign, but as on *Soliman*, that is to say, as on a man that will partake with thee in all the good, and in all the evill that can arrive unto thee; thy courage hath made thee shed blood enough in my service to oblige me to pay it with some tears, if it be so that I cannot bring other remedy to thy grief. The Grand Visier casting himself at the Sultans feet, rendered him thanks for all the bounty he had shewed him; and whereas he had leisure during *Soliman*'s discourse, to invent a pretext for his displeasure, he besought him to pardon him, if in obeying his Highness he should say something, that would clash in some sort with the respect which he owed him. After that the Sultan had made him to rise, and had sworn to him, that he would not be offended with any discourse he should use to him, *Ibrahim* began to speak in this manner; I know well, my Lord, that my melancholy is criminall; that the cause of it is unjust; and that thy Highness cannot know it without condemning me; but since thy Majesty hath commanded me to discover it, I must confess that I never turn mine eyes to behold the baseness from whence thy Almighty hand hath drawn me, but I tremble with amazement; the place where thou hast set me is so high, as it is not altogether without reason that I fear to be precipitated from it; and I find myself in the view of so many people, as I hold it almost impossible, but that the malice or envy of some should make me lose that which thou alone hast given me; nevertheless I am not ignorant that the same hand, which hath lifted me up, can sustain me; but, my Lord, if the respect which I owe to thy Highness, would permit me to represent unto thee the most remarkable changes which have hapned in this Empire, thou wouldst acknowledge, that having received far more than I have merited, I have reason to apprehend that that may be one day taken from me by justice, which thou hast given me by bounty. The pitifull adventure of *Achmat* under *Bajazet* the second, hath furnished matter for all those that have

have succeeded in his dignitie, never to think themselves secure : He had confirmed the Throne of *Bajazet* ; he had been the only man that mounted him into it ; in the mean time for a recompence of all his services he was strangled by two Slaves. But, my Lord, not to go so far to seek for examples, that of *Chassan Bassa*, Visier under the reign of an Emperor, who could not be but great, seeing he hath given birth to thy Majesty, is not he able to strike fear into the firmeſt and moſt innocent ſoul ? ſince for giving good counſell, which had not been ſucceſſful if it had been followed, he loſt that life which he had ſo many times hazarded for the ſafety of this Empire : I ſhould not have been ſo bold, as to have ſpoken of this adventure in this occurence, had I not remembred, that I have heard thy Highneſſe bemoan the miſfortune of that great man : Now therefore demand no longer of me the cauſe of my grief, ſeeing thy Maſteſty knows it as well as my ſelf ; but if it be true that I am beloved of thee, as I cannot doubt of it without a crime, pardon only my weakneſs, and believe not that the diſcourſe which I have made is an effect of my ambition. I know too well, my Lord, that I cannot go higher, and for that reaſon it is that I fear the inſtancy of fortune, who being unable to raiſe me more, ſhall be conſtrained to deſtroy me for to follow her naturall inclination ; it is an order which ſhe hath kept in all ages, and I dare not hope that ſhe will break it in favor of me. But, my Lord, were I aſſured that ſhe would be contented with bereaving me of all the honors, which I have received from thy Greatneſſe, and that ſhe would leave me heavy laden with chains, as I was when it pleaſed thy Highneſſe to free me of them, provided (I ſay) that ſhe would not deprive me of thy Grace, I ſhould be untroubled, and live more happily being thy Slave, than now I do being full of glory and favors. The Sultan having hearkened to this diſcourſe with a great deal of patience, could not at length forbear interrupting him ; I thought, *Ibrahim*, ſaid he, that I had opened my heart ſo well unto thee, and ſo thorowly ſhewed thee my Love, as there reſted nothing more for thee, either to fear, or to deſire ; but ſince I am deceived in my conjectures, I will pardon thy weakneſs, and if it be poſſible I will cure thee of it. I could, if I would, find ſome excuſe for the violences which my predeceſſors have uſed during their reignes, and tel thee, that in an Empire which was not as then well ſettled, it was in ſome ſort convenient to lean rather towards rigor, than towards clemencie ; but I will not undertake to make their apologie ſerve my turn againſt thee ; that which was juſt in their times, would not be reaſonable in theſe ; wherefore I will imploy other remedies, which, if I be not deceived, will make thee know, that *Soliman* can tell how to chain up fortune when he pleaſeth, and that he is reſolved, to meaſure thine with his life. The Baſſa would have answered to ſo obliging a ſpeech, but the Sultan ſtaying him ſaid ; I think, *Ibrahim*, thou haſt not forgotten, that it is by the meanes of the Sultana, my daughter *Aſteria*, that I have the commodity to ſee thee in my ſervice. I ſhould be too ingratefull, replied the Baſſa, if I ſhould not remember, that I ow my life unto her, and that which is yet more precious unto me, I ow her the honor of ſerving the greateſt Monarch of the world. That being, ſaid *Soliman*, thou needeſt not doubt, that the deſign which I have, ſhould not pleaſe her ; ſeeing that in a time, when as ſhe knew thee not but by thy good aſpect, ſhe judged thee worthy of her care ; but to clear my thoughts unto thee, and to diſſipate the fear that maſters thee, know, that I am reſolved to place thee in our illuſtrious alliance, by making thee marry *Aſteria* ; and to leave thee yet a more precious gage, receive the word which now I give thee, (thou knowſt, being what I am, that it is inviolable and ſacred) remember then, that I ſwear to thee by *ALLA*, that as long as *Soliman* ſhall be living, thou ſhalt not die a violent death ; judge now whether I can doe more, and whether thou haſt not been too blame to doubt of the firmneſs of my affection. It is true, my Lord, ſaid *Ibrahim*, that I am the moſt ingratefull, and the moſt faulty of all men ; but, my Lord, — and as he would have proceeded, he was ſuffocated in ſuch ſort with grief, as it was impoſſible for him to ſpeak in a long time. The Sultan, ſurpriſed with this unexpected emotion, knew not whereunto to attribute the cauſe



cause of it. In the mean while, *Ibrahim*, being somewhat come to himself again, resolved no longer to conceal the truth of his History; casting himself then once again at the feet of great *Soliman*: I know well, my Lord, said he unto him, that if thy Highness be just, thou wilt hate me as much as thou hast loved me; for after I have been so daring, as to disguise my thoughts unto thee; after I have been yet more in now telling thee that I am not in a condition to accept of the honor which thou presentest unto me, I dare not hope for so much patience from thy moderation, as to hear that, which might render me excusable. It seems to me, *Ibrahim*, answered the Sultan, that after all the graces which I have conferred on thee, thou oughtest to expect any thing from me, and yet to add one more to that which thou hast craved of me, I promise thee to suspend my judgement, and not to think any thing to thy disadvantage, till I am forced therunto by thine own confession; prepare thy self then no longer to conceal any thing from me, that concerns thee: Thou knowst that I have divers times endeavoured to oblige thee, punctually to recount unto me, both thy birth, and thy adventures; but having alwaies observed how that discourse did not please thee; I have had so much goodness, as to speak to thee no further of it; but now that there is question of thy rest, and my satisfaction, thou must make a recitall to me of it with as much truth, as thou hast used dissimulation heretofore. It is true, my Lord, replied *Ibrahim*, that all that I have told thee hitherto is but a fable; but it is true also, that all that which thy Highness is now to understand is the very truth: I cannot chuse but blush to think, how I am going to discover all my weaknesses; and if I did not know, that Love doth oftentimes become the tyrant of the greatest spirits, and that thy Highness hath not been alwaies insensible of that passion, I should not be so inconsiderate, as to acquaint thee with my miseries. The Sultan, desiring that none should come to interrupt this narration, went from his chamber into his Cabinet, where sitting down on Cushions of cloth of Gold, *Ibrahim* began to speak in these termes.

### The History of Iustiniano and Isabella.

**T**HE City, where I took beginning, and that gives name to our Republique, is situated on the bank of the Sea, which the ancient Romanes called *Ligustique*, and is at this day termed the River of *Genova*; this goodly City, I say, whereunto for the magnificence of Palaces of marble, Jasper, and Porphyrie, is given, and that with reason, the title of Superb by all the people of *Italy*; is built on the bending of certain high and barren Mountains, which are so unfruitful, as all the industry of agriculture, joyned to the heat of the Sun, the serenity of the air, and the sweetness of the dew, cannot make one tree to grow, one flower to spring, or so much as one herb to come up there. But if as nature had taken pleasure to shew contraries opposed, there is leading toward *France* a Coast, all amongst the which, *Final*, *Savonna*, *Saint Remo*, and *Monaco*, are seen, whose fertility is so great, that it produceth abundantly Dates, Oranges, Pomegranads, Lemons, and Mirtle. The many Rivers, and Fountains, which are there, make not the least beauty of those places, for those waters are so pure and quick, as they furnish sufficient coolness to temper the extreme heat of the Sun. It is on that Coast, about two miles from *Genova*, in going out of a Gate called the *Lanerna*, that a Borough stands, by the Italians named *Arena*, where one may say that winter never comes, since it is certain, that the Spring, and Autumn, reign there alwaies together; the first causing flowers continually to spring, and the other fruites to ripen in it: But before I ingage my self to a more particular description of the deliciousness of a place, that hath been the occasion of so much misfortune unto me, it will not be from the purpose to make an abridgment of the Government of *Genova*, to thy Highness, to the end thou maist the more easily comprehend what the persons are, of whom I am to speak in my History. It is to be known then, that about two hundred yeares since the *Genoveses* elected a Duke, according to the

the manner of the Venetians, who after he had conquered the Island of *Cyprus*, taken the King and Queen thereof prisoners, and performed many other brave exploits, died at length in the warres. After him they elected two more, whereof the first acquired by his valor the Isle of *Mileline* to the *Genoveses*; but at length after the death of the last they put themselves into the protection of *Charles* the seventh King of *France*, of whom being weary, they not long after chose the Duke of *Milan* for their Defendor; who having not given them full satisfaction, it obliged them to chuse a Duke once again; but that proceeding being not equally agreeable unto all, because some held the party of *France*, and others that of *Milan*, it hapned that this disorder returned them absolutely under the Dominion of the French, which commended them, untill the time that *Andrea Doria*, who is of one of the most illustrious races of *Genova*, put our City into the estate which now it is, namely under the Government of the Nobility. I have made known unto thy Highness the divers mutations which have befallen our Republique, to the end thou maist with the least difficulty comprehend that, which hath made all this Commonalty be divided a long while since into two principall factions; the Heades of these two parties are the *Fregozes*, and the *Adornes*, engaged, as well as all the rest of *Italy*, in two opposite factions, so known and famous under the name of the *Guelphes*, and *Gibelins*, with whom the *Fiesques*, the *Dorins*, the *Spinolles*, the *Grimaldies*, the *Justinianoes*, and all the other illustrious Families of *Genova* have taken part. But to come to that which regards me directly, I will not fear to tell thy Highness what my birth is, being confident of thy generosity: Thou maist be pleased to understand then, that I am of the illustrious race of that unfortunate prince, from whom the valor and fortune of *Mahomet* the second, thy great Grandfather, took his Empire, and his life, and who interred himself with all his glory, and with all that of the *Paleologues* under the ruines of this famous City of *Constantinople*: Thou art not ignorant, my Lord, that after so great a subversion of that State, and in so generall a destruction, all that remained of the Princes of the Imperiall House were dispersed over all the earth, and not able to conceal their unhappiness in generall, some of them concealed themselves by changing a too famous name for their present fortune; *Justiniano Paleologue*, of whom I descended, was of that number; for seeing he had saved out of that shipwrack wealth enough for a particular, but not enough for a Prince of so illustrious a blood as his, he retired to *Genova*, retaining but the name of *Justiniano*, which since hath been the surname of our House, the very same with that of a Popular Family, which was before in the same City: And that poor Prince desiring to accommodate his quality to his misfortune, shut up that secret within his Family, and in this sort, though we be in effect Princes, yet have we past ever since for Gentlemen. That which obliged him to chuse *Genova* for his retreat, rather than any other place of *Italy*, was, for that he knew how the *Genoveses* had alwaies been well affected to that Empire; how they had mightily succoured *Michaelo Paleologue*; and how in case it should happen that he should be known for that which he was, he should be in a place of safety: And truly he had some reason to fear it, for he had rendered himself so remarkable by the gallant actions which he had performed, and had so signalized himself on the day of the taking of *Constantinople*, as he was the last that was seen to defend the breach; but at length beholding the City taken, the Emperor *Constantino Paleologue* dead, and the whole Empire subverted, he stole away his person from the victory of his Enemies, and being retired almost alone he took the resolution which I have delivered. I know very well, my Lord, that it is too much temeritie, in the estate wherein things are, for me to let thee understand, that I am of a blood, which gives me some right to pretend to the Empire that thou possessest at this present; but, my Lord, I am to tell thee, that in the disposition wherein I am for thy Highness, I would prefer my former chaines before the Empire of my Ancestors; and that if I were the distributor of Crownes, I would set them all upon thy head, reserving nothing for my self, but the onely glory to obey thee. *Solimam*, not able to indure that

that a discourse so generous should continue longer without an answer, took *Justinian*'s hand, and wringing it with a great deal of affection, I have alwaies indeed believed, said he unto him, that thy birth was as high as thy mind, and I am glad that I have not been deceived in my conjecture; and without knowing the right which thou couldst pretend to this Empire, I have at least rendred thee all the justice that I could render thee; for I protest unto thee by all that is most holy, and most sacred unto me, that if the convenience of things would permit me to yield thee up the title, as well as I have given thee the power of it, I would do it with joy, out of the knowledge which I have of thy virtues, and out of the affection I bear thee. But continue, I pray thee, the relation of thy adventures unto me. *Ibrahim* would fain have answered to these civilities of *Soliman*, but being kept from doing so by him, he proceeded in this manner. That last of the *Paleologues*, and that first of the *Justinianes*, had a sonne, called *Philippo*, who retaining something of his birth, had an imperious spirit, that would give place to no man; this *Philippo Justiniano*, my great great Grandfather, finding himself alwaies opposed to one *Arsolpho Grimaldi*, the one having ever followed the party of the *Fregozes*, and the other that of the *Adornes*; it was his hap also to be a pretendant to the Charge of the Generalissimo, as well as he; so that their secret intentions breaking forth in this occasion, they fell to quarrelling so outrageously, that they engaged all their kindred, and all their friends in their interests; and as their ambition was extreme, so also was their violence. But without anusing myself in recounting this trouble some History to thy Highness, it shall suffice me to say, that following the detestable custom, which is observed over all *Italy*, that particular and personall hatred passed even to my father, who yet could never approve of that habit in his heart, that will have ore receive with his life, the hatred of his Predecessors enemies, which being just for them, becomes unjust in their children, since it is addressed to innocence; but at length to follow the custom, rather than his inclination, *Ludovico Justiniano* (so was he called that gave me being) had never any commerce with *Rhodolpho Grimaldi*, the chief of that other Family; contrarily knowing that his enemy was of an haughty humor, and that he might draw some advantage from his goodness, he always took care to conceal it from him, and both on the one, and the other part, they did all that an irreconcilable enmity could suggest to two vindicative and powerfull men. Behold, my Lord, the order wherein I found things at my coming into the World; but without speaking of my infancy to thy Greatness, I will only say, that as soon as I had attained the age, wherein strength began to permit me to travel, I obtained of my father the means to content the extreme desire I alwaies had of going to admire the pompous ruins of the antient *Rome*, and the grandeurs of the new; away I went then with an Equipage answerable to my condition; but my curiosity not being limited by the view of one only City, I resolved to give no obedience to the commandment which I had received to return unto *Genova* within six moneths after my departure; and as if fortune had taken pleasure to favour my design and inclination, she wrought so, that the Emperor of the Christians came to *Lucca*, where I then being for to see the interview of the Pope, and that Prince, I understood that preparation was making for the War of *Algier*; I will not feare my Lord, to confess unto thy Highness how joyfull I was to meet with an occasion, whereby I might learn a trade, which I was resolved to exercise all my life; I will therefore acknowledge freely, knowing thy generosity, that he, who would now spend all his blood for thy service, was thine enemy in that action. This resolution taken, I had not much ado to execute it; for whereas *Andreu Doria*, Prince of *Melphi*, was powerfull with the Emperor *Charles*, he did me the honour to make me known unto him, and promised me to write unto my father, for to get him to be pleased with my design; the care that he took thereof was not in vain, for as soon as he was advertised of it, being good and generous, he furnished me with means to perform that voyage with magnificence. I will not tell thee the lamentable success of that War, because the tempest which shipwrackt our Army, was not of so



small importance, but that it may be imprinted in thy memory; the loss of two hundred vessels, and above fifteen thousand men, that were all swallowed up of the waves, or dashed in peeces against the Rocks, was so dreadfull an adventure, as the only remembrance of it strikes horror into me: At length, my Lord, I escaped that danger, after I had an hundred times seen death, for which I have been very sorry I know not how often since; but whereas we had scarce any leasure to have other enemies to fight with than the winds and the seas, I could not resolve to return to *Gowda*, before I had found some opportunity, that might make me known, whether I was worthy to carry the name of the *Justinians*; so that the relicks of our Army parting from *Bugis*, where they had sought for a shelter, I would not follow them that were discharged; contrarily I imbarqued my self with the Emperor of the Christians, who took the way of *Majorica*, and from thence went and landed at *Carthage*. But hardly was he arrived there, when as he saw himself constrained wholly to quie all his designs of *Africa* for to think of defending himself from the *French*. It would be unjust to abuse thy patience with the recitall of a War which no way serves to my discourse, it will suffice then that I say, how I followed him three whole years together, except when he was at *Gowda*, whither I would not go for fear of being retained by my parents. But at last, after I had been a witness of all the brave actions which he performed in *Navarre*, in *Germany*, in *Luxemburg* against the Duke of *Cleves*, and in *Guelderland*, I received expresse order from my father to come home to him, vvhich I presently did, though the Emperor was loth to let me go. But, my Lord, what cause of misfortune hath that return been unto me? Ah! how much better had it been for me that I had dyed in the Wars, than to have gone to a place where so many grievous adventures were to befall me! It was not, for that I was not received with joy, caressed by my kindred, imbraced by my friends with all kindness, and if I dare say it, regarded by the enemies of our house with more esteem, than that inveterate hatred, which had been long between us, would permit; but contrariwise it seemed, that the Fates had resolved to let me taste all the content of a quiet and delicious life, for to make me feel at once, both the privation of the good, and also the evil which was prepared for me. After I had then bestowed some time in receiving the caresses of our family, and that I had answered all the questions which my father made me touching the War, and my Voyages, after, I say, I had recounted unto him an hundred times over all the occasions wherein I had been present, I desired to make it appear, that War and Gallantry were not incompatible, and that after having been three years in slaughter and blood, I was not returned from thence, nor more wild, or more uncivill; I took care then to inform my self from my friends, whether there were not some Assembly shortly to be, where I might make comparison between the Beauties of our Ladies, and those which I had seen in *Spain*? Thereunto they answered me, that I might in a little time content my curiosity, for that in three or four dayes the Nuptials of two persons of quality in our City would be solemnized. I further demanded of them whether a Niece of *Andrea Doria* held not still the Empire of beauty? Or whether since my departure some other had not bereaved her of that advantage, which had been given her with so much justice? They told me, that she was fair, as I had seen her, but as for the prime place, she had been constrained to yeeld it up to a springing beauty, which made all that came near it to dy for love; and that they accounted me most happy for not being exposed to that danger. But when as I demanded of them by what false consequence they conjectured that I was insensible of love? they answered me then, that *Isabella Grimaldi*, the only daughter of *Rhodolphe*, was that same admirable person, who could not be sufficiently praised, and of whom they had spoken unto me; and that knowing the terms wherein we stood, they believed that I was so generous, as I would not suffer my self to be vanquished by mine enemy. This discourse stirred up such an emotion within me, as hath made me to understand since, that there is a supreme power which forceth us, whether we will or no, and without the aid of our knowledge, oftentimes to love a person whom common reason forbids us

to regard. And consider, my Lord, the extravagancy of my adventure, I took a resolution then carefully to seek out all occasions to see the incomparable *Isabella*; and to shew that there was already something extraordinary in this motion, I concealed my curiosity, and my design from my friends, and I made a secret and a mystrie of a matter, wherein according to all likelihood there would never be any; and indeed soon after I quitted them, and without further delay I went and passed two or three times before the windows of mine enemy. It was not because I knew not well enough that I should not see her; for it is the custom of *Italy*, as well as of *Constantinople*, that all the windows of the Ladies have an iron-grate before them, which permits them to see, but suffers them not to be seen, unless they will draw up the grate, which is a grace they seldom shew, and was not to be expected of me; howsoever I went thither, because I could do no otherwise. The next morning I failed not to be more diligent than I was wont, and I did all that possibly I could to encounter her, for knowing her mother, I was certain that I should have no need to ask her name; but whether it were, that whilst I was in one place, she was in another, or that fortune would defer my captivity, I could not meet with her any where, how careful soever I was to do it. I demanded of my reason an hundred times over, what aim I had in this design; but after I had reflected on this inquietness, I condemned myself, and resolved patiently to attend the hap of encountering her, who was to content my curiosity. I past some dayes then after this manner in all the entertainments of a man of my age, and quality; the conversation of my friends, walks, and musick were my occupations, and the last quiet pleasures that I have tasted in my life. But, my Lord, since I must recollect my undoing to thy Greatness, and let thee see the field of my defeat. I must say then, that *Arena*, whereof I have already spoken, is a Burrough where all the persons of eminent condition have houses of pleasure, the least whereof may strike admiration into them that understand gallant things; for all that is beautifull in Architecture, all that is excellent in Painting, and all that is marvellous in Sculpture, are there to be seen in such perfection, as neither the eye nor the wit of the most skilfull can find any thing to reprehend therein. The Terraces, the Grots, the Water-works, the Galleries, and Balustrades, are there so superbus one can hardly beleve the first time that one beholds such wonders, but that they are of those enchanted Palaces, whose descriptions, though fabulous, leave not for all that to please our imagination. To conclude, all that Art, and Magnificence can adde to a place, whereunto Nature hath given all her beauties, are eminently found in this same. It is here so near unto the City, whither all the women of quality use to go and walk, their liberty being far greater at *Rome*, than in all the rest of *Italy*, the neighborhood of *France* having contributed a part of their customs to it. It hapned then one day, that one of my dearest friends incited me to go and hear a consort of Lutes and Voyces, which was to be the next day at an house he had in that delicious abode; and whereas I have alwaies been touched very sensibly with Musick, I failed not to be there accordingly; it is certain nevertheless, that I came thither with a secret melancholly, which doubtless advertised me of the misfortune that was to betide me there; but I was not able to make any profit by this involuntary motion, whereof the cause was unknown to me; I suffered my self notwithstanding to be charmed with the sweetness of the harmony, and as it was at that time the only passion that mastered my mind, me thought it had dissipated my heaviness, and roused up my joy; this agreeable transport was the last moment that preceded my ruin. For, my Lord, when as the Sun was so low, as it could no longer incommode either with his rays, or with his heat, the Master of the house told me, that before I went down into the Garden, he would let me hear a marvellous Echo, which he had found out a little before, and which one of his neighbors had given him without thinking of it; how he had done him that good office, by causing a Grot to be made just against the windows of his Cabinet, and hollowed in the mountain in the form of a half Moon, which collected, and returned back the voice so admirably

rably, that the seventh repetition vvhich the Eccho made, was distinguished perfectly. Scarcely was this discourse ended, but that devancing all the company I entered alone into the Cabinet, resolving to try the Eccho first of all; howbeit, my Lord, I had no sooner opened the window, but instead of obliging the Eccho to answer me, I my self lost the use of my voice; by the rapture vvhewithall I was seized, in beholding the fairest creature that ever Nature made; she vvas leaning on a Balustrade of Jasper and Porphyrie, which formed a Quadrant, in the midst whereof stood a Fountain, wherein four Nymphs of white Marble seemed to play together in bathing themselves; for by a marvellous artifice there parted from their hands in different actions, an abundance of water, which wetted them, and made one believe that they cast it upon one another, making withall a very pleasing noise. If I had never seen this Fountain but in this encounter, I should not have heeded it so much, as to be able to describe it; for I vvas so surpris'd with the charms of this unknowvn fair one, as I had no eyes but for her: I changed colour twenty times in a moment, and hiding my self for fear of being perceived, I considered her with all the attention that a man could have, who from admiration was already pass'd even to love; it being most certain, that from the very first instant I savv her, I felt my self forced with too much violence to love her, as I then fully resolv'd to dye, or to possess her. As I was in this estate all the company arriv'd, and shew'd me that they were sorry I had quitted them so soon, because there had been a dispute about the nature of the Eccho, which would have pleas'd me very much; after I had heard this discourse, vvhithout answering unto it, I ask'd whether there were any that could tell me the name of that fair one, who sate musing on the brim of the fountain, which I saw in the midst of the Garden; in saying so, I softly opened the window, which I had half shut, and praying them to make no noise, I shew'd them that prodigy of beauty: I had no sooner made an end of speaking, but by an hidden knowledge, which prevented their answer, I felt something within me, that told me how it was the divine *Isabella*; scarcely had this thought excited some trouble in my mind, when as one of my friends confirm'd this truth unto me, and demand'd of me, if it was possible that I should not know mine enemy? Why, said I, interrupting him, is she that I see, the daughter of *Rhodolpho*? I spake this so loud, that I made her turn her face towards the place where we were, so that having perceived us she pulled down her veil, and began to go away unto two women that were walkieg in an Alley a good way off. To tell, my Lord, what became of me in this occasion, would be a difficult matter; my reason prov'd so weak, and my passion so strong, as little wanted, but that forgetting all kind of good manners, I had at the very instant departed from a place that had been so fatal unto me, as to let me see in one onely person the object of my hate, and of my love: But at length, the spight and the shame of being seen with so much weakness, made me resolve to try to conceal it; I said then to him that had spoken to me, that I was ravish'd with having so fair an Enemy, and that though she had arms which would easily render her victorious of all them that she would subject, yet was I generous enough, for to combat a person by whom one might be vanquish'd without shame. After this they amus'd themselves in seeking out the beauties of the Eccho; those of the company who had the worst and the hoarsest voyces, forbore not forcing this Eccho to reproach them with their defect; in imitating them: As for me, who had it not unpleasing at that time, it was impossible for me to sing, and howsoever I constrain'd my self, I could not call to mind so much as one air, albeit I knew many. This entertainment lasted so long, that at length, the hour of our departure being arriv'd, I return'd to *Genova*, but so sad and melancholick, that to conceal my unquietness from my Father, I resolv'd not to see him all that evening: I retir'd then to my chamber as soon as I was come home, and gave my people order to say, that finding my self somewhat ill I was gone to bed, having first expressly charg'd them to make no noise: After this I went into my Cabinet, vvhich I vvas no sooner alone, but the pourtrait of *Isabella* presented it self again before mine eyes; my imagination

figur'd



figured her so perfectly unto me, as I began to believe that this adorable Phantasm appeared to me by the force of some charms; but after I knew that it was a pure effect of my memory, and of my love, I past from that thought to another, and regarding her no more as my Mistress, I considered her as the daughter of *Rhodolpho*; What, said I, to my self, shall I love mine enemy? Shall I choose for the object of my affection, her, who ought to be the object of my hatred? Shall I be so unworthy as to give all my services and my cares to a person, whose father employs all his for the ruine of my house? No, no, I am more sensible of mine honour than of my passion; and how charming soever *Isabella* is, glory is yet more. When this resolution seemed to me to be well enough settled in my mind, I called a Groom of my chamber, whom I had stayed to attend me, and leaving my self to be made unready, without knowing what I did, I laid me down in my bed; but alas! it was in vain that I sought for rest there, for whereas my thoughts were divided all the day by the diversity of objects, silence and obscurity made them amass all their forces to persecute me; and the same reason that had opposed my love, began to speak in favour of my passion: It represented unto me, that *Isabella* was not guilty of her Father's crimes; that there was injustice and cruelty in going about to eternize hatred; that a more noble occasion to make it cease could never present it self; that my design would be always approved of by wise men; that after all it concerned my content, and not that of others; that we live not for another, but for ourselves, and that by consequence I was not to forget any thing that might give me satisfaction. This reasoning seemed so just unto me, that I spent the rest of the night in thinking on the means to execute it; but the more I considered this enterprize, the more I judged it impossible; the arrogant honour of *Rhodolpho*, and the generosity of my father, seemed two obstacles very difficult to be forced; but that which put me into further despair, was the thought that *Isabella* her self would be inflexible to my Love: For, said I, is it possible that a maid, who hath been brought up with the hate of the *Justinian*, who no sooner opened her eyes, but she beheld my house as her enemy, can resolve, I do not say, to love, but only to endure that I should adore her. These divots agitations troubled me in such sort, as I could not form any design; but whereas love cannot subsist without hope, I think that in the end I had surmounted my passion, and broken my chains, if that fatality which will have me ruined, had not exposed me once again to a new danger. I was scarcely out of my bed, when as my people told me, that I was invited to the Wedding of one of my Father's Friends, who was to be married to a maid allied to *Isabella*; this news filled me with extreme joy, and preparing to go thither, I took more care of my self, than ever I had done in all my life before: But being resolved to see the arrivall of mine enemy, I got me in good time to the place appointed for the Ball; I was no longer there than to make the complements, which are usuall in such like occasions; when I saw *Isabella* enter with such a dazzling Majesty, as imposed silence to all the company, and it seemed that she had inspired every one with modesty and respect: After that this dumb admiration had continued a while, there was a confusable heard of acclamations and praises, which were given to her beauty; and the truth is, that envy it self could not find any thing in her to be adorned. She hath a stature so advantageous, and a port so majestically, as never was there woman seen of a better presence: Her hair is of colour brown, but so beautifully as all those threads of burnished gold, wherewith our Poets use to describe such, cannot represent them; they fell that day carelessly upon her cheeks, and thence descended in thick curls down her neck and bosom, but with a negligence so replenished with address, that it defaced the handsomest curiosity of all the women of the Assembly: She hath a complexion so white and vive, as there is no whiteness that seems her fallow unto it; but the same is mingled with so dainty a Carnation, which is shed as broad in her cheeks, that the mixture of Lillies and Roses, of Cyopel and Snow, could make but a slight *Tan* of her beauty: Her eyes are black; but full of spirit and sweetness, as it is impossible to behold her, and not be taken with them;

yet are her looks so modest, and so far from all artifice, as it is very easie to know that they are innocent of all the evils which they make one endure. She hath a mouth neither too great nor too little, but so composed, and of so Vermillion a hew, as there is no corall that comes near it. Her teeth are so evenly set, and so white, as never were smiles so full of charms as hers; and her bosom so delicate and so comely, as imagination cannot represent it to it self such as it is: There is also a gracefulness mingled amongst all these marvell, which cannot be express, and which renders her more amiable than all that which I have delivered. To conclude, be it for the whole form of the face, or for all the features of it in particular, or for the air in general, it is the most perfect beauty that ever Nature produced. But, my Lord, had the souldiers that took me, left me the picture which I had of her, and the Letters which she had written to me, I could have made thy Highness see the truth of my words, and that the graces of her mind do no whit give place to those of her beauty: It was then, my Lord, that *Isabella* with all those allurements, appeared in that Assembly. She was apparelled in a Gown of Carnation Sattin, imbroidered with gold and pearls, whereof the sleeves were buttoned up with great Diamonds; the rest of her habit was of cloth of silver, imbroidered with Pearls and Emeraulds intermixt. She appeared so charming unto me in this estate, as I could not for all that evening take mine eyes from off her; and as I carefully observed her, me thought she perceived that I did not behold her as an enemy, and to render my joy yet more accomplished, I marked how she blushed every time that we met together in the same Brawl, but in a fashion which perswaded me, that it was neither for hate, nor for anger. And whereas it is the custom of *Gomara* not to converse with the women of an Assembly, but in leading them to dance, I took out one of my kinswomen, whom I had seen all the evening with *Isabella*, and that I might oblige her to speak to me of her, I said unto her, that I found it very strange she should hold such intelligence with mine enemy; but without giving me leave to finish my speech, she answered me that the talk they had together was so advantageous for me, as I had no reason to complain of it; and that as the praises which are given us by our enemies, are more glorious for us, than others, because they cannot be suspected of flattery, I was no longer to doubt of my good meen and address, since *Isabella* her self had judged of it in favour of me, upon speaking of the grace and dancing of every man of the Company. This discourse ravished me in such sort, as I could not forbear looking on *Isabella*, as if I would thank her for so favourable a judgement; and as she hath a quick and piercing wit, she knew both by my demeanor and joy, that my kinswoman had given me an account of their talk, which posselt her with so much confusion, as it was impossible for me all the rest of the evening to incounter her eyes. At length, my Lord, the company being separated, I returned home, but so full of joy and hope, that my reason found not it self any longer strong enough to oppose my passion. But not to stand on the recitall of these first proceedings of my affection, wherewith I have already but too much importuned thy Highness, it will suffice to let thee understand, that in the continuance of this happiness I saw *Isabella* in two or three Assemblies more, from whence I alwayes went still better satisfied; and after I had been so hardy, as to write divers times unto her, and ready enough to finde the means to do it, I knew at length that my vows were not rejected, and that my temeritie should not be punished. I obtained then the permission to serve her, provided I were discreet, and that neither by my actions, nor by my discourse, I should give any cause of suspecting our intelligence: I observed this order so religiously, that albeit there passed not a day wherein I saw her not at her window, or an evening wherein I had not a Letter from her, or the from me, yet was no body ever aware of our commerce. And to render my good fortune more accomplished, it hapned that the people being fallen into a mutinie in the Isle of *Corfica* for some Contribution that should have been established here, the Signioria deputed *Rhodolpho* for to go and appease that disorder; but whereas his wife, named *Julia*, had been extreme sick, he would have her for the recovery

recovery of her strength to pass the time of his absence at the Borrough of *Arena*, where the purity of the air would restore her to her health sooner than at *Genova*. I was advertised of this resolution the very same day that it was taken; but at first this news so grieved me, that I could not answer *Isabella*, who had sent it to me, for I imagined that I should be deprived of all the means of seeing, and of being seen of her. As I was profoundly musing on this adventure, all on a sudden I began to call to minde the window of the Cabinet where I had lost my liberty, which made me think, that if *Isabella* would permit me to discover one part of my design to the Master of that house, who, as I have already said, was the dearest of my friends, I should be the happiest of all men; since I might not only see, and be seen, but talk with her as long as she pleased. I wrote instantly unto her then to propound her my design, but with tears so full of love, and with such strong reasons for the prevention of all might happen to us thereby; as at length she consented unto it, though, as she told me afterwards, it was not without much repugnancy. I no sooner received her answer, but I went to seek out my friend, of whom I desired leave to go and pass some time at that house of his; but whereas he pressed me to tell him, whether his presence would not be necessary for me there, I believed, that for the obliging of him to be faithfull and secret, I was to confide in his discretion and fidelity; wherefore I acquainted him that I desired his house, only to receive *Isabella's* Letters by the Cabinet-window, which opened towards the Grot of the *Eccho*, and that in the same place I hoped to see and speak with her. He was so surprized with this discourse, that he stood a good while beholding me without making any answer; but to keep him from endeavouring to oppose my passion, I intreated him to give no ear to any reason that could speak to him against me, but to hearken to my request; and seeing that it was by his means that I was undone, he was obliged to have pity of the evil which he had caused; I likewise recounted unto him all that had befallen me, so that judging by the violence wherewith I spake to him, that I was too far engaged in this design to be diverted from it, he promised to yeeld a blind obedience to all that I would desire of him. In this sort we parted, and albeit *Isabella* had not permitted me to make use of the Cabinet, but only to give her Letters, to receive hers, and to speak to her at such times as we could not be heard, yet I purposed not to rest there, and without advertising her of it, I caused a ladder of silk to be made, that thereby I might descend into the garden when I thought fit, being out of hope of ever meeting with a more favourable occasion to talk with her of my love. But not to lose time; as soon as I knew that *Rhodolphe* was departed, and that *Isabella* was at *Arena* with her mother, I resolved to go thither the same evening; now to do that secretly, I told my Father, that having made a match with *Cesar Doria*, (for so was that friend of mine called) we intended to go and pass away some time at an house which he had neer to *Gavi*, to hunt the wild Bore, and to enjoy all the delights that the fields and solitude could give us. He approved of my resolution, told me that the season was too fair to be passed wholly in the City, and permitted me to go away that very day; I went then and found out *Doria*, who for his part had taken care to make the same thing to be believed; and having but one Groom of the chamber with us, we took the way of *Gavi*, but as soon as we were out of the sight of *Genova*, we crossed the Mountain to get to *Arena*, where, notwithstanding all the hast we could make, we did not arrive till ten of the clock at night; for whereas we kept no way, we strayed three or four times. As soon as I was come into *Doria's* house, and that he had commanded the Keeper thereof to silence, I left him in his garden, for to go with much impatience to his Cabinet, where I no sooner was, but I heard the voyce of *Isabella*, who indeed imagining that I would not fail to be at the window, had for a pretext to get thither, and be alone there, taken a Lute, saying that she would at leisure study an air, which she had not very perfect, therewith to divert her Mothers melancholy. She was then leaning on the same Ballustrade, where I had seen her before; but if at the first time she charmed me by the eyes, at the second she charmed me by the ears; I was



so ravished to hear her, that notwithstanding the desire I had to speak to her, yet would I not interrupt her, though I infinitely feared lest she should be called away before I had been seen of her; but in the end the fruition of a present pleasure prevailed over the fear of an uncertain evil. I heard her then with all the admiration I was capable of: For, my Lord, she hath a voice so strong, so clear, so sweet, and so charming, as she inspires the minds of those that hear her, with the same passions which she expresseth by the airs she sings; and whereas night and silence are the friends of Musick, there rested nothing more to make my contentment perfect, than to add to the delight of hearing, that of seeing distinctly: I was not long without enjoying that happiness; for the Moon, which had been a pretty while up before, made an end of dissipating of the shadow that had reigned all over the Garden, and in rendering me that good office, she made me also to be perceived of her, so that she presently gave over singing, and approached to the place where I was, but with so much circumspection, and so much fear, as made me greatly to pity her. She prayed me with a trembling voice to give her a Letter if I had any, and that the next day, if I would let her down a string, she would fatten her answer to it. After I had laboured to assure her as much as possibly I could, she made me to understand, that we could not have any long conversation in that same place without being discovered, because if we spake softly it would be unprofitable unto us, not being able to hear one another; and if we raised our voices, it were to be feared that we should be over-heard from a close ally that was not far off. I consented then to be contented with seeing her, and receiving her Letters by the way she had propounded unto me; but whereas I had my design concealed, I besought her to tell me in what part her lodging was, to the end I might at leastwise have the pleasure to imagine to my self the place where she would be writing. But before she answered me, she looked round about, to observe whether she might not be over-heard; after which she demanded of me, if I did not see on my left-hand a Turret athwart the trees, which was joyning to the end of a Gallery, that made up one front of the Garden, and that answered to another altogether like unto it? and having told her that I saw it, she added that her chamber was of an even floor with that same place; and that the perron of it was just against the end of the close alley, from whence she feared to be over-heard; and that if I would advance forth my head a little, I might see the grates of her window. As soon as she had said this, she went away, having first assured me, that such evenings as she could not come her self to receive my Letters, she would send a mayd to me that lay in her chamber, in whom she absolutely confided. After she was retired, and clean out of sight, I went presently and found out my friend, to whom I gave an account of our conference. But, my Lord, seeing I must obey thy Greatness, in recounting all my adventures unto thee; I must say, that after I had been three or four dayes obedient to *Isabella's* pleasure, one evening she sent me that mayd which she made use of, with a Letter, desiring me to excuse her if she came not her self; for that being somewhat ill in the morning, she could not invent a pretext to obtain permission to come into the Garden according to her custom. This news grieved me exceedingly, and so thoroughly confirmed me in my design, that to execute it, I enquired whether *Isabella* were retired to her chamber? The mayd told me, that she had left her at her window, staying till she returned, which she was instantly to do, because the doors would suddenly be shut, for the keys were to be carried to her mother, who had commanded that to be exactly observed. I threw her down my Letter then, and having dismissed her, I went and desired *Doria* to assist me in the resolution I had taken to descend into the Garden. He did all that he could to hinder me from it, but after I had told him, that I exposed my self to no danger, seeing that *Rodolpho* was not there, that *Julia* was sick, and that in conclusion, I should enter into an house where there were none but sleeping Women, the rest of the train being at *Genova*, or gone with *Rhodolpho*; I entreated him that he would only attend for me at the window, to the end that if by ill fortune I were seen, I might save my self before they had time to open the

the door for to follow me. Our contestation lasted long enough to perswade me that it was shut, but yet I believed that *Isabella* was not gone to bed, and that my Letter would entertain her untill such time as I should come unto her, because by good hap it was very long. So I began to fasten my Ladder, and *Doria*, more vanquished by my intreaties, than by my reasons, set himself also to help me; and whereas I feared nothing in this enterprise but *Isabella's* displeasure, I never thought of mine own safety, howbeit *Doria* made me take a brace of Pistols, and my sword with me, whereupon I descended into the Garden, and calling to mind that the close alley was corresponding to *Isabella's* lodging, I went along through it, for fear of being perceived, either from the Gallery, or the mother's chamber; when I was arrived at the end of the alley, I observed that there was no light in all that Turret, but in one window that had a grate, which I imagined to be *Isabella's* Cabinet; I approached thereunto then as softly as possibly I could, and whereas the window was low, I might easily see all that was done in the room through the glass, so that I perceived *Isabella*, but with so much grace in the negligence wherein I saw her, as I knew well, that art added nothing to her beauty. She was leaning on her left elbow upon a little table, where my letter lying open before her, she had her eyes fixed on it, whilst *Feliciana* (so was the mayd that served her called) undoing of a string that tyed up her headgeer, covered her almost all over with her hair; but *Isabella*, coming as it were out of a dead sleep, and putting it aside with her hands, told her she would not go to bed yet, for that she was resolved to write unto me first. It were better, said I unto her, pushing the casement that was not shut, that you would grant me the honor to entertain you a while. She was so surprised with seeing me in that place, as she could not forbear screeking out, whereupon she would have passed into her chamber, but not able to open the door thereof so quickly, I had leasure to tell her, that if she put me into despair, I was apt enough to kill my self before her window: She fell down then upon the cushions not able to speak, which gave me time to crave pardon of her for my boldness; I besought her to remember the discretion I had always used since the day she had permitted me to serve her; that this was the onely disorder whereunto my passion had carried me; and that if she would take the pains to consider it, she would not judge this fault irremissible. Do you believe then, said she, in approaching to the window, that to put my glory and your life in hazard is a crime of small importance? But at length, after I had made her to comprehend, that there was less danger in speaking with her, when all the World was retired, than at such time as she of her goodness had granted me, I got her to consent, that from thenceforward I should alwaies see her in that sort. Our conference was so long, as the awaking of the birds made me know, that it was time to let her go to sleep; but before I left her she gave me her picture, which she had drawn in imitation, by beholding her self in a glass; for this divine person is skilfull in all excellent Arts and Sciences: She also permitted me to kiss her through the grate, a favour which I may well say, was the onely privacy that ever she accorded me during all the nights which I have past in entertaining of her. I withdrew then by the same way I came, but so satisfied with the wit of *Isabella*, that I began to love her more for her vertue, than for her beauty. I found my friend in an extreme impatience for my return, and ready to come and seek me out for to know whether any misfortune had befallen me; but to recompence him for this pain, I recounted unto him all that *Isabella* had the most obligingly said unto me; the vows she had made to love me everlastingly, and absolutely to renounce the world rather than be any others than mine; and that whereas I would have perswaded her to suffer her self to be carried away for the avoyding of our fathers tyranny, who would be forced to agree together rather than lose us, she had withstood it with so much prudence and sweetness, as I was constrained to confess, how strong soever my passion was, I could not merit *Isabella*. It was in this manner then, my Lord, that I past away that lucky absence of *Rhodolpho*; but at length his return changed the order of things, and *Isabella* went back to *Genova* with her mother, as melancholick,

lancholick, as I was afflicted; we had been so accustomed to see and speak to one another, that the privation thereof was insupportable to us; and although I went every morning to receive a Letter at her window, and to give her one of mine; yet could we not comfort our selves against the constraint wherein we lived. And as if it were not enough that we were persecuted by our own misfortune, *Isabella* saw her self also troubled for a mishap of her fathers, who in executing the Commission which he had to go into *Corfica*, had procured unto himself the enmity of the family of the *Spinolaes*, by saying at his return, that the Governor, who was of that house, had contributed in some sort to the mutiny of the people, and that if he would he might have hindred the sedition that was raised there: This report obliged the Signiora to cite the Governor to come and give an account of his actions, which made *Isabella* to fear that this mans revenge would fall heavy upon her father. As for me, who had no other interest than that of the incomparable *Isabella*, I was even mad for that I durst not offer my sword to *Rhodolpho*, who was at that very time plotting my death; for whether it were, that he was advertised how I went every night about his house, or that he knew of my being at *Arena* by some way unknown to me, one evening, as I was alone with my sword under *Isabellaes* Window, he came thundring upon me, with eight men armed, in such fury, as I had hardly the leisure to put my self into defence; now though it was very dark, yet chanced I to know him, and thereupon resolved, rather to be killed, than dip my hand in the blood of the father of *Isabella*: I did nothing therefore but ward the blowes which he laid at me; but two of his advancing towards me, I had not for them the same respect that I had for him, so that collecting all my forces together to oppose their violence, I extended them dead at my feet; the rest, who saw this so sudden an execution, made a little stand, during the which I got me to the end of a narrow street, that was not above two or three steps from me, for fear of being inclosed, where I fought a good while without receiving any more than two wounds, which I got because I would not strike *Rhodolpho*; but at length I should have fallen in this unequal combat, had it not been for a succour that arrived unto me. And consider, my Lord, the strangeness of my adventure; that which should have been the cause of my undoing, was the cause of my making: for it hapned, that at such time as I was pressed most by mine enemies, the same offended Governor, of whom I have already spoken to thy Highness, came, accompanied with fifteen or sixteen, and assaulted them behind. In this disorder I never stood doubting which part I should take, but siding my self with *Rhodolpho*, I said unto him, that I was come to lose that life for him, which he would have taken from me. And whereas I fought then for *Isabella*, since it was to save her father, I found my forces redoubled, and my courage increased; whereupon being to imploy my best endeavour in the action, I attacked the chief of the enterprise with such ardour, as albeit he were one of the valiantest men of our age, yet by the good fortune of arms I surmounted him. As soon as he fell, one of his followers cried out, that his Master was slain; this voyce put all that troop into such disorder, as they thought of nothing but flying, although they were in a condition to have destroyed us; for whilst I was engaged with their Chieftain, they had killed three of *Rhodolphos* men, who in the heat of the fight had observed how I had guarded him with mine own body, and that by my hand his enemy lost his life. After I had pursued them that fled a good way off, for to keep them from making head again, I saw *Rhodolpho* come towards me with open arms, and as soon as he could embrace me, he demanded of me, whether after I had been so generous as to save his life, I could be so likewise for to pardon him; and how, if that might not be, he judged himself unworthy to live; how he knew well enough that he had committed a barbarous and cruell fact against me, but how I knew also that he was the father of *Isabella*: He said this to me with so much resentment and tenderness, as being no longer able to keep me from interrupting him, I assured him, that I should never be mindfull of any thing hereafter but of the goodness which he had shewed me; that the grace which he did me in promising me his friend-



friendship, was far greater than the outrage I had received; and that on the contrary one might say, he had done an act of justice in going about to punish my temerity; and that now he did one of clemencie, in accepting of the service which an enemy had rendred him. This while *Rhodolpho*'s people would have carried away their dead men, hoping that they which were in this fight, should not be discovered, if no mark thereof were left in the street; but *Rhodolpho* commanded that they should not touch them, for that he was resolved to complain the first; and observing that I did not bear up very well, he asked me whether I were hurt? I answered him that I thought I was, but it was slightly, and that when I had put him into a place of safety, I would go home and see how it was with me. No, no, my sonne, said he imbracing me, it would be unjust, that the father of *Isabella* should be the cause of your hurts, and she not be your Chirurgion. In saying this he made me enter in at his gate, where I no sooner was, but, the loss of blood having extremely weakned me, I swooned in his armes, whereat *Rhodolpho* cryed out so loud, as I understood afterwards, that his wife and daughter believed his enemies were still pursuing him into his house; they ran in then affrighted in all hast: but whereas they knew not the particularities of that which had past, they were mightily astonished to see me in that place, and in that estate. *Isabella* believed at first, that her father, having gotten some notice of our love, had brought me thither to put me to death before her eyes, but she was mightily surpris'd, when as she heard him give order for the speedy fetching of Chirurgions, and beheld me led to his chamber, and he himself helping to sustain me. *Isabella* was so skared with that she saw, as if her mother had not held her up, she had fallen down by me. Her father seeing her in that case, said to her weeping, as I was told afterwards, you have reason, daughter, to love the most generous of men, and if I be so unfortunate as to be the cause of his loss, I consent that you shall hate me as much, as I have hated him; but without further lamenting, let us endeavor to succor him. The voice of *Rhodolpho* having brought *Isabella* to her self again, she would have made some excuse, but enjoinning her to silence he commanded her to follow him to his chamber, whither I had been carried before. As soon as they had laid me on a bed I began to open mine eyes; and consider, my Lord, what my apprehension might be, when I saw my self between *Rhodolpho*, *Isabella*, and *Julia*, who came to know, by one of those that were in the action, that I had saved her husbands life, it was so great, that I thought I should have swooned again, but the Chirurgians, being arrived, applyed remedies that kept me from it. After they had searched my wounds, they assured them that there was no other danger in me but loss of blood, so that if I were suffered to rest they hoped to cure me very speedily. As soon as I was drest, and that *Rhodolpho* had been acquainted with their report, he came to me with a smiling countenance, and said, that seeing he was assured of my life, he was not in despair of recompensing me for the service I had done him; that in the mean time he would go and advertise my father of all that had past, to the end that after they had imbraced one another, they might conjointly think of what they had to doe. But having told him, how I held it not fit, that he should go forth, I besought him to permit me to write two or three words to *Doria* for to come to me, and that when he was come we would send him to my father. *Isabella* approved this counsell, so as it might not incommode me; and having assured her that I found my self strong enough for it, she gave me paper, wherein I wrote, without seeing that which I did, so weak I felt my self, when I tryed to lift up my head. But *Rhodolpho*, desirous exactly to observe what the Chirurgians had enjoined, gave order to *Julia* and his daughter to keep me from speaking, to draw my curtaines for fear the light should annoy me, to have as great care of me as of him, and not to leave me till I was in a better estate. I besought him then to permit me to say one word more unto him; whereupon he approched to me, and pressed me to give him some occasion to serve me. I answered him, that the grace which I desired to obtain was, that he would not speak, either to *Doria*, or to my father, of our first incounter, but would be pleased to say onely, that good fortune had brought me by chance

chance into the street where he was set upon. *Rhodolphe* was so ravished with this discourse, as he could not forbear embracing me, and saying aloud, that as the conservation of his honor was more dear unto him, than that of his life, the care I took to deface the stain which he had made in it, obliged him more streightly, than the blood I had shed to save his. As I would have answered, he stayed me, and went away to give order for all that he thought was necessary, both for his safety, and mine. And whereas *Doria* dwelt not far off, he came not long after into the chamber where I was, but so surpris'd, and so amazed, to hear that I was wounded, to see me in *Rhodolphes* house, and to find *Isabella* and *Julia* sitting by my beds side, that he was a long time in a doubt, whether he was well awake, or no. *Rhodolphe*, having been advertis'd that he was arriv'd, came and entertained him with so much civility, and spake so advantageously of me, as I was constrained to pray him to change his discourse, and to think rather of the necessity of our affaires, than of praising me unjustly. *Doria* was instructed then in the estate of things, and of our intentions; *Rhodolphe* desired him to tell my father, that he would have gone home to him, if I had not hindred him; to crave pardon for all that had past betwixt them, and to intreat him to think well of it, that his daughter might be the reward of the combat, which I had so happily undertaken for his defence; how he was not ignorant, that *Isabella* had been more equall than he, in esteeming of me as soon as she knew me; and that for him he was not so ill informed of my designs, but that he had been advertis'd of those which I had for his daughter; in the end so to do, said he to *Doria*, that the Families of the *Justinianos* and the *Grimaldies* may be united with an indissoluble knot: More than this I have not to say, *Lodovico* knowes the Nobility of my House, understands the riches of it, and cannot doubt but that the Principality of *Monaco* will one day be *Isabellars*. *Doria* promised to employ all his address to make the matter succeed according to our desires: *Rhodolphe* instantly request'd him, I earnestly conjured him, and *Isabella* with her eyes only intreated him thereunto. He went then to my Father, who was so surpris'd with every thing that *Doria* imparted unto him, as he divers times asked of him, whether he had not lost his understanding: what, said he, as I knew afterwards by *Doria*, in one very hour hath my sonne saved the life of his enemy? hazarded his own by the wounds which he hath received? killed the enemy of *Rhodolphe*? made peace between the *Justinianos* and the *Grimaldies*? and for a conclusion, hath *Isabella* and the Principality of *Monaco* been offered him by *Rhodolphe*? No, no, *Doria*, all that you tell me is far from all likelyhood; you talk to me of blood, of murder, of slaughter, of reconciliation, and nuptials all at once; how doe you think that I can accord all these things, and can joy and grief be compatible? But in the end, my Lord, that first transport being over, *Doria* assured the matter so seriously unto him, as he was constrained to make no longer doubt of it. I confess that in this incounter I was more happy than I hoped; for as soon as my father was perswaded to this truth, *Doria* found his mind in the terms that I desired. I think, my Lord, I have already told thy Highness, how *Lodovico* never approved of that unjust hatred, which passeth with the succession of Kinsmen, and that was the reason why he was so easily carried to what I wished. He came then accompanied with *Doria* and some of his servants; to the house of *Rhodolphe*, who received him with a free and open countenance, and with such strong protestations of acknowledgement and amity, as it was easie to observe, that his eyes and his mouth expressed the meaning of his heart; and as my father would have been very sorry, that his antient enemy should have surpass'd him in curtesie and generosity, he returned his complements with so much civility, as it would have been hard to imagine, that those two men, who so kindly embraced one another, had been mortall enemies all their life-time before. *Rhodolphe* having brought *Lodovico* to my bed-side, said unto him, that he was much griev'd to render him his sonne in that estate wherein he saw him; but to repair that misfortune, he besought him to accept of a present that he would tender him; whereupon he caused *Isabella* to approach, and presented her to my father, who beheld her with so much ad-

admiration, as I doubted not but that he approved of the choice I had made of her; and presently speaking he assured *Rhodolphe*, that though he and I had hazarded our lives a thousand times over for his service, yet could not all that counter-vail the price and merit of so fair a maid. *Rhodolphe* interrupting him, said, that giving himself together with *Isabella*, and all his estate, yet should he be infinitely indebted unto me, that my modesty forbade him to extend himself on the obligations wherein he stood engaged unto me, but how that could not hinder him from resenting them as he ought; in the mean time he requested him to receive *Isabella* for his daughter-in-Law, upon such conditions as he pleased, so the end that after he had his word for it, they might think of that which was necessary to be done for their safety. My father turning himself then to me, said, that hee held it superfluous to ask my advice in a matter that was so glorious for me, and that I had so happily resolved upon without him; so that, said he, taking *Isabella* by the hand, it is on you that the conclusion of this important affair doth depend. But *Rhodolphe* seeing her blush, without daring to answer, told *Lodovico*, that his daughter could no better express her consent, than by that shamefastness, which made her to blush and be silent; the modesty of her sex, and of her disposition not permitting her to testify her joy, but in such a manner. *Rhodolphe* and my father then promised an inviolable friendship one to another, and ordained us to do the like in their presence; and for a gage of this promise, *Lodovico*, who ordinarily wore a rich ring on his finger, took it to me for to give to *Isabella*, as a pledge of the faith which we had promised to each other. I observed this ceremony with so much pleasure, as spite of my miseries and hurt I never felt the like before, nor since; but as long as after this happy accord, they retired into another chamber to think of what they should do. My Father was of the opinion, as well as *Rhodolphe*, that he should tend to make his complaint as soon as the Council should be assembled; but that he held it not fit either for him or me to stay in his house; that the Family of the *Spinolas* were powerfull enough to keep themselves from having any manifest injustice done them; and that albeit their kinsman had been the aggressor in that fight, yet the Laws would have the dead always to be favoured; and that he which had killed any one should be always punished; that for this reason he was to retire to his Principality of *Monsie*, where he might attend safely and commodiously the success of things; that place being in a situation so advantagious, and so well fortified, as it could keep out a Royall Army; that as for me, I should finde an inviolable sanctuary in the Army of the Emperor *Charles*, whom I had already served; but whereas I was not in an estate to travel, by reason of my wounds, which peradventure would keep me a long time in my bed; and for that also he could not go out of the City presently, because the gates were shut, he advised that without further delay, and before the day appeared, I should be transported into some other house, whereof the Master was so much respected, as no violence might be feared there. *Rhodolphe* and *Doria* approved of this proposition, and began to bethink them what place would be proper for the same; but *Lodovico* told them, that he was not troubled about it, for that the Palace of *Sinibaldo*, Count of *Luvigne*, chief of the Family of the *Fiesques*, would be an assured retreat for them; that the high rank which those of that House had held in *Genova* for so many ages, would not permit that either the insolency of their enemies, or the rigor of justice, should enterprize any thing upon them; that for the rest he doubted not but that he should obtain that grace of them as soon as he should demand it; that they had alwayes favoured him in all things; and that generosity was so naturall unto them, as in all times their Palaces had served for a retreat to all worthy persecuted persons. It was then resolved, that *Lodovico* should go immediately and intreat him thereunto, *Doria* went also along with him, and they found him fast asleep; but my Father having told his people, that he was necessarily to be awakened about an important affair, they knowing *Lodovico* made no difficulty to do it. As soon as he saw my Father by his bed-side at such an hour as then it was, he doubted



doubted that some urgent matter had brought him thither; wherefore he demanded of him, whether he were so happy as to be able to serve him? Then my father recounted unto him in few words all that had befallen me; wherevith he was so strangely surpris'd; but without giving him leave to make his request he told him, that he was too blame in not causing him to be brought to his house. And when my father answered him, that he durst not doe it before he had intreated him thereunto, *Simbaldo* seemed to be offended vvith that circumspection, but since the fault was done, he vvould pardon it upon condition, that himself might go and help to convey me thither. And so calling to his servants he commanded them to make him ready vvith all speed. My father did all that he could to stay him from going; but could not prevail, for *Simbaldo* told him, that the *Spinolars* were violent, and that peradventure meeting them in the street a second misfortune might happen; that when he should be present with all his train, he could not believe they would be so daring, or so strong, as to set upon us. My father then consented to what he pleased, and he being quickly ready, they parted instantly to go to *Rhodolpho*, who in the mean time had settled his domestick affaires. When *Simbaldo* was arrived, and had represented to *Rhodolpho* how glad he was of our reconciliation, he prayed my father and him to arm all their people, and to give order for whatsoever was necessary for the transporting of me, during the which he approached to the bed where I lay, exceedingly afflicted to see them going to separate me from *Isabella*, who was withdrawn to the other end of the chamber, when as *Simbaldo* entred; but as soon as he perceived it, he told me that he would not deprive me of an happiness, which I was so suddainly to forego, and that he should have leasure enough at home to commend my valor; that if he durst he would have desired *Isabella* to return thither again, but that he thought it fitter to leave us at liberty together; herewith he went forth vvithout giving me time to answer him; and he was no sooner out of the chamber, but putting by the curtain I saw that *Isabella* was alone there; for the confusion, wherein the house then was, had so busied *Julia*, as she never thought of that civillie; I besought her then to come nearer unto me, that I might bid her adew; at that word the teares came into her eyes, and my speech failed me; she came then and sat down by my bed side, vvith so much sadness painted in her face, as much augmented mine; but after I had inforced my self to speak, I said unto her: At length, my dearest *Isabella*, fortune hath joynd us, and fortune doth separate us, but what rigor soever she doth exercise towards me, she cannot longer keep me from dying vvith glory, now that I have the honor to be yours; she may indeed separate our persons, and it may be for a long time, but she cannot disunite our hearts, if so it be true, that your affection is answerable to mine. You may judge, said she interrupting me, whether a maid, that hath not feared to offend her glory, in loving her enemy against the will of her Parents, be capable of change to a man that exposeth his life for her sake, and to save her fathers; believe then, and vvithout ever doubting, that all the powvers of the earth, opposed against my design, shall not so much as make me waver; and that *Isabella* will be absolutely yours, or never vvill be any bodies. Her sighes suffocated her in such sort, as it was impossible for her to say more; and as I was about to give her thanks for so obliging a speech, and mingle my teares vvith hers, *Simbaldo*, *Rhodolpho*, *Julia*, *Doria*, and my father came again into the chamber, so that all I could do, was to say unto her, wringing her hand, that she should alwaies remember her promises, and that then she should be most assured, that nothing but death should separate us. Immediately hereupon they, which had order to carry me away, approached to my bed, and by the commandment of *Simbaldo*, seated me in a chair, that was prepared for me. *Rhodolpho*, who most tenderly loved his wife, and daughter, began then to bid them farewell: *Isabella*, who till that instant had kept her self from weeping, seeing she had a fit opportunity for it, shed so many teares, and fell a crying in that manner, as moved all the assembly to pittie: I knew for all that, mauger my sorrow, that I shared therein vvith her father; who, willing to shew some constancie in this occasion, bad

bad her to come unto me; and give me her hand. To tell thee, my Lord, what I felt in the moment of our separation would be impossible for me; since it is certain that I had never so much grief, as I had at that time, in eloigning my self from *Isabella*, but in the end I was to resolve for it; and after I had kissed her hand without speaking to her but with my eyes, I was carryed away, so lost, as I do not remember the order that we held in the streetes; howbeit I was told afterwards, that *Sinibaldo* divided his men into two parts, and that I was placed in the midst of them, where *Rhodolpho* and *Doria* had in charge not to abandon me, whatsoever should arrive; *Sinibaldo* put himself into the head of the Troop, and my father marched in the rear, to the end that on what side soever they were assaulted, a man of command and courage might still be there. But whereas the *Spinolaes* knew not that we were retired to *Rhodolphoes* house, they never thought of lying in wait for us, so that we got to *Sinibaldoes* without any bad encounter; After I was laid in bed, he and my father advised, that it would be easier for *Rhodolpho* to get away to *Monaco* as soon as it was day, than if he stayed longer, because his enemies had not had leisure yet to think and consider of all, that might hurt, or help them; to that purpose they judged it fit to disguise him like a Mariner, and to put him into a Feluca, which might easily carry him to that place of safety. *Rhodolpho* consented to whatsoever they thought good, and *Sinibaldo* took upon him the care of dispatching the business: He sent then to the Port as soon as day began to appear, to hire a Feluca, upon condition it should part presently, and that the Master of it should lend one of his habits; the money which was offered to this man, was so much, as ravished with this encounter, and without further inquiry, he said that he was ready to part, and that for one of his habits he would lend it, so as he might be permitted to goe home to his house, because he had none there. He that made the bargain agreed he should do so, but for fear he should discover any thing he would goe with him. The Master of the Feluca, who thought of nothing but his gain, was contented with it; away they went together to fetch that habit, and that done, he left that man in the guard of one of his fellows, whom he had brought thither with him, and came and rendred an account of his voyage. Immediately *Rhodolpho* disguised himself, and seeing it pretty far day he took his leave of *Sinibaldo* and my father, who both of them promised him to doe in his name all that they had resolved on, and whatsoever else they judged would be requisite to procure his liberty. *Lodovico* and he shewed so much generosity in this separation, and spake so obligingly one to another, as *Sinibaldo* could not forbear telling them, that *Spinola* could not have been lost more profitably for the Common-Wealth, seeing his death had served to make two so great and excellent men become friends. When they had answered to this civility, *Rhodolpho* came to me, with so much kindness, and such testimony of acknowledgement and friendship, as I was sensibly touched therewith: He assured me once again with oaths, that his daughter should be the reward of the blood which I had shed for him, provided I did not change my resolution. The weakness wherein I was, did not keep me from rendring him thanks, as I ought, for so obliging a discourse; but at length he went away to find out the Master that waited for him: *Sinibaldo* did not let him go without a guard; he caused six of his servants to follow him a loof off, and he himself went to the Port for to see him part. *Rhodolpho* was so fortunate, that he crost through the City without meeting any one that knew him; he imbarqued himself then with all possible speed, and in a little time arrived safely at *Monaco*, where he was received by his subjects with joy. As soon as the Councell was set, they would have complained in *Rhodolphoes* name, but they found themselves prevented by the space of a quarter of an hour onely; and that the father of him whom I had killed, had accused me for the death of his sonne: for though our fight was in the night, yet was I known by my voice, and the followers of him that was slain had marked, how he and I were engaged in a particular combat. This accusation appeared at first so unlikely to the Judges, as they gave no credit at all unto it; and whereas they were not ignorant of that

inveterate hatred which was between the *Justinianoes* and the *Grimaldies*, they could not comprehend how I should be induced to fight for mine enemy. As they were in this pain, my Father presented himself to demand justice of them for the violence had been done me, and to colour the matter he told them, that passing by chance along the street, I had seen *Spinola* set upon *Rhodolpho* with so much advantage, as my generosity not able to indure it, I presently resolved to labour the hindring of that mischief, or if I could not, to side with the weaker party, as I have done; that in this occasion I had been dangerously hurt; that nevertheless knowing the power of the *Spinolæ*, and fearing lest the Senate should be misinformed of the truth of the matter, I had absented myself till such time as justice was done me. My Father made this discourse with such earnestness, and so advantageously for *Rhodolpho*, as it was easie to discern that he was no longer his enemy. But whereas the affair was important, in regard it concerned three of the principall Families of the City, they resolved nothing for the present, but referred the matter to the next day, with order notwithstanding to the *Spinolæ* to cause their witnesses to be examined the day following. This news was instantly spread over all the City, with so much admiration and astonishment, as no body could believe it the first time they heard it; contrarily all those of *Genova* said openly, how it could not possibly be, for that the hatred which passeth successively into the minds of men cannot be extinguished in a moment, and that by consequence it was not credible, that I could pass from one extremity to another in an instant, and that I should render to the greatest of mine enemies all that the dearest of my friends could expect from me. But as nothing can be long concealed, it was quickly known, that love had begot friendship, and that the passion which I had for *Isabella*, was the noble cause of this adventure. In the mean time the whole Common-wealth was divided; and although the faction of *Simibaldo* were the stronger and most considerable, and that it was absolutely for us, yet could it not hinder the passing of an expresse order for the searching out, and apprehension of us. And whereas the dead party is alwayes regarded, all the grace we could obtain was, that the affair should not be precipitated, and that it should be prolonged as much as the forms of Justice would permit. Whilst things past in this manner, I wrote every day to *Isabella*, who answered me with so much wit and sweetness, as I could not be but happy in the constraint wherein I lived. But at length my wounds being cured, I was ashamed to remain shut up in a house at a time wherein I might make use of my courage, and shew my Judges that I was not a man to be cast away; howbeit I felt an extreme violence for the executing of this resolution; for though I were deprived of the sight of *Isabella*, as well within *Genova*, as if I had been further off, yet found I for all that some content, in thinking that we were within the inclosure of one and the same City; but sense was to give place unto reason, and I was to follow the will of *Isabella*, which served much to make me depart the rather, for knowing the violence of my passion, she imagined that being thoroughly well, I would have much adoe to keep my self from stealing unto her some evening; according to the proposition I had made her to that purpose; so that to avoid the mischief that might arrive to me thereby, she pressed my departure: I propounded it to my Father, who approved of it; the difficulty was to get forth of *Genova* without danger; but whereas *Simibaldo* never found anything difficult to serve his friends, he told us, that he had an infallible means for to do it; that I should but only get me in the night to his Galley, which being ready to set sail, to go and joyn with the Squadron of *Corsea*, should for my occasion take the course of *Sofra*, where I should be received as in a place that depended on him, and from thence I might easily go to *Ligorne* in a Tartana. This order was exactly observed, but before my departure I desired to confer with *Doria* in private; I conjured him then to take a speciall care to send me news of *Isabella*, as often as possibly he could; and that he should not fail to write me punctually even the least things that concerned her. *Doria* promised to satisfie my desire all that he might, and to forget nothing that he thought would content me; I intreated him



him also to go from me to *Isabella*, for to give her my last farewell, and to receive her commands to me, foreseeing well that *Sinibaldo* would make me depart as soon as it was night, without permitting me to go to *Rhodolphoes*. He so worthily acquitted himself of his commission, that *Isabella* had leasure to write me a large Letter, wherein she represented the necessity of my voyage so well unto me, and gave me such assurances of her affection, and of her fidelity, as I departed almost without grief, such an absolute power hath she ever had over my mind. I took my leave then of *Sinibaldo*, and of my father, and followed the order they had prescribed me; as soon as it was night I was conducted to the Galley in the habit of a simple souldier; and whereas the Captain was acquainted with the business, he made me enter into his Cabbin, from whence I came not forth till he had cast Anchor at *Seftra*, under pretext of taking in fresh-water. I was no sooner ashore, but I went and delivered a Letter, which I had for the Governour of that place, who presently provided me a Tartana, that carried me to *Ligorn*, where I was so fortunate as to encounter a vessell ready to set sail for *Cap d' Istria*; there I quitted the sea to cross through the Country of the *Grifons*, and having put myself in a fitting Equipage in a reasonable good Town, vvhether I stayed certain dayes, I past into *Germanie*, where the Emperour *Charles* the fifth was then employed in the War against the Protestants. I speak of all these things to thy Highness, without further clearing them unto thee, knowing well enough, contrary to the custom of the *Othomans*, thou understandest the Universall History; that there are no people so far distant, of whose Religion, Interests, Warres, and the least particularities of their Countrey thou art ignorant; nor any Prince whose Exploits or Designs are unknown to thee. To conclude, my Lord, I can tell by long experience, that thy Greatness hath extraordinary lights for all that may be comprehended by a humane spirit; and it is out of this knowledge, that I have have not explained my self more at large in many places of my narration, which certainly are not intelligible in all the extent of thy Empire, but which cannot be ignored by the most knowing, the most mighty, and the most victorious Monarch of the World. *Soliman*, not able longer to endure these praises, given him by *Ibrahim*, sayd unto him smiling, that hee had not permitted him to speak, but onely of his Adventures, and that to obey him exactly, he was to pursue his discourse without flattering him. The Bassa, returning no other answer, but a low obeysance, continued the course of his History in this sort: I came then my Lord, to the Emperour of the Christians, vvho received me, I dare say, with joy and kindness; he remembred still the services I had him, and in consideration thereof vvould have given me imployment in his Army: But whereas I was uncertain of the continuance of my voyage, and was rather well assured, that if my business was dispatched at *Genova*, I should instantly be gone, I excused my self the best I could, and went and served amongst the Voluntiers. I lived then after this manner without any other unquietness, than what absence brings along with it, which though it be somewhat harsh to a man that is passionately in love, yet tollerable to me through the pleasure that I had done in receiving Letters from *Isabella*: but I was not long in this condition; for three moneths after my departure I understood the death of *Rhodolpho*; I knew that *Julia* and her daughter were at *Monaco*; and to take all comfort from me, my father wrote me, how that all the grace that could be obtained of the Senate, was the banishing of me for ever from all the Territories of the Republicque, and that upon pain of losing my head if I were found in any part of them. I received the news with so much anguish of mind, as I thought I should have dyed with grief: but of all these things, that whereof I was most sensible, was the affliction of *Isabella*, which I saw so well described in a Letter that she wrote me, as I forgot mine own misfortune to lament hers. I knew the sorrow she was in for her father; I knew the haughty humor of *Julia*; I knew that my banishment destroyed all our hopes; and even then I found her tears so just, and mine flowing in such abundance, as there was no room left to obey the commandment she had layd

upon me to comfort her, and not to think of going to *Monaco*, till I heard from her; but at length, after I had a while deferred writing unto her, I sent her word, that I would alwaies very exactly follow her directions; that I besought her for all that to consider, how I could not do better, seeing she could not dispose of her self, than to come to *Monaco*, where, without fearing the violence of our enemies, we might live and rest in safety; that the *Spinalaes* were not powerfull enough to raise an Army for to set upon us there, and that the Republique would not of a particular interest make a generall cause; that for the rest, time, it may be, would change the order of things; that sometimes sentences had been revoked less unjust than that which banished me, and for men that were not of the family of the *Justinianoes*, and that peradventure were not more profitable for the publique good: In the end I did all that I could to obtain permission to come unto her; I wrote also unto *Julia*, with so much resentment of that loss, which was more considerable to me, than it was grievous unto her. As for my father, I sent him word, that I would buy out my liberty with my blood, being resolved to perform such brave things in the Wars, as my Judges, and mine enemies themselves should wish to see me again; but that for the executing of so noble a design, he was to permit me first to go and marry *Isabella* at *Monaco*; and that if my life were dear unto him, I prayed him to sollicite *Julia*, when her tears were dried up, to accomplish *Rhodolphoes* promise. For *Doria*, I conjured him again to be carefull in curiously informing himself whether *Isabellae* mind were as firm in this incounter, as she had made me hope it would be; for I well foresaw, that *Julia*, who, notwithstanding our reconciliation, had never loved me, would bring some obstacle to my design. After I had dispatched away my pacquet, I remained in so extraordinary an unquietness, that I could not settle my mind on any object, but such, as being ingenious to persecute me, offered every minute to my thoughts the image of a new misfortune; but how interitive soever it was, I could not foresee that which arrived unto me. As I was in this deplorable estate, I understood by a Letter from *Doria*, that my father being infinitely afflicted for my banishment, was dead of a Fever, the very same day that he wrote this to me; and that to secure his estate unto me, he had past it over to the Count of *Lanagna*, who questionless would conserve it faithfully for me. I must confess, my Lord, that the loss so shook my constancy, as it was ready to fail, and I proved in this occasion, that the apprehensions of Nature are more powerfull than all others; and to leave no place for me to doubt of it, I had almost forgot *Isabella* in this my first transport; but after that reason had combated with grief, and that I was able to look upon my distemper with a calmer eye, I found it yet far greater than at first I had believed it to be: I saw all at once, both the loss of my Father, and that too of my Mistis; no way doubting but that it would be hard for me to carry *Julia* to that I desired, there being no body now that had any interest to make her keep her word. Certain daies after this sad news I received onely a ticket from *Isabella*, wherein contrary to her custom I perceived some confusion, with an absolute command not to hazard my self as yet to come to *Monaco*, because her mother had told her, that having much wealth in *Genova*, she would give some order to her affairs, for fear of losing it, if she should so soon receive me into her State and alliance; after this she made me a protestation of fidelity, but in such terms, as made me judge that she had not expressed all her thoughts: Yet was it not this ticket, that begot my despair and my fury; a Letter from *Doria*, which I had received the same way, cleared this enigma most cruelly for me; by it I learned, that the Prince of *Masferan*, whose state is situate between *Piedmont*, *Montserrat*, and the *Millanese*, being imbarqued at *Villa-Franca* to pass unto *Naples*, where he had means, and business, had been caught by so furious a tempest three Leagues from the Port, that all the Pilots skill could not keep him from suffering shipwrack before *Monaco*, where this Prince had been so fortunate as to save himself by leaping into the boat, just at the same instant when as his vessell was beaten to peeces against the point of a Rock: It told me further, that this Prince having gotten to some houses vvhich

were on the sea shore, had sent to demand permission of the Princess, that he might stay a while in that place, for to gather together as much as he could of the remains of his vessell, which was not sunck, and whose men for the most part had escaped with swimming, or by the assistance of a Barque, that by chance was then near unto them. Moreover *Doria* advertised me, that *Julia* had received him magnificently; that not long after it was bruted in *Genova*, how that Prince was become inamored of *Isabella*; and how the very same day that he wrote me this, he was told that he had put himself into mourning for to please the Princess. All this troubled me not so much as *Doria's* conclusion, how that the Letter he had sent me from *Isabella*, had been delivered to him by an extraordinary way, and how by a note which she had written unto him, she ordained him to send her no more Letters till such time as he had a new order from her. I no sooner read this displeasing circumstance, but my mind was posselt with so much fury, as I was no longer capable of reason; I found my self seized at once, with love, jealousy, anger, grief, and revenge: I would at one instant reproach *Doria*, complain of the infidelity of *Isabella*, revenge my self of the treason of *Julia*, and punish the temerity of my Rivall. Amidst the divers passions wherewith my soul was agitated, I framed an hundred designs, whereof the execution was impossible; but after I had disputed with my self, I resolved to go in person to *Isabella*, and demand a reason of her, why she had not acquainted me with her new conquest; for in the end, said I, I will have the satisfaction to adore her innocent, or to hate her guilty. But as the body and the mind are so straitly allyed together, that the one cannot suffer without the other, I fell sick the very same day I was to depart, and so violently, as the Emperors Physicians, who by his order visited me every day, were out of hope of saving me; and verily had I not had a spark of hope remaining, that *Isabella* was not inconstant, I had refused all the remedies which were given me, and that were powerfull enough to recover me thoroughly. But as if the health of the body had not been bestowed on me, but for the better supporting the walls of the mind, I received my death wound by a Letter from *Doria*, which gave me to understand, that *Isabella* had married the Prince of *Masseran*, and that to put it out of all doubt, he had learned it from *Felicianas* own mouth, who not enduring her Mistresses infidelity, without shewing her resentment thereof, had been turned away out of the Princesses service; he wrote me also, that since the last Pacquet which he sent me, he never had received any news from that inconstant one; that *Julia* had made a journey to *Genova* a little before that unlucky wedding, without her daughter in her company, where she had published that that marriage should suddenly be solemnised; that having been advertised of it, he had gone to her for to demand of her, whether she would dishonor her self in rendring so little respect to the ashes of her dead husband, as to fail the promise which he had made me? That her daughter was no longer hers, seeing I had bought her with my blood, and the life of *Rhodolpho*; that it was a payment, and not a grace, which he required of her; and that at last he was resolved to carry things to extremity rather than indure to have this injustice done me; that to all this she had answered peremptorily, how her daughter should never marry a man that was banished from his Country, and that if I would have promise kept with me, I should come and solicit the performance of it at *Genova*; and that after she had said so, how she had left him, and would not hear him speak a word more, I leave it to thy Highness to imagine the deplorable state, whereinto this adventure put me, it was so strange, that all my passions reducing themselves into one, I had nothing but fury remaining; and despair so fully seized upon my soul, as I thought no longer of revenging my self of *Julia*, nor resenting the outrage which I had received from the Prince of *Masseran*, nor of punishing the infidelity of *Isabella*, but my design was wholly then to make away self, and to exercise upon mine person all the cruelty which the crimes of others had deserved. This deadly thought was so deeply settled in my heart, as if my Religion had not with-held me, I had killed my self; but at length I resolved to go and die like a man of courage, and in a place where I should never hear *Isabella* named



named, and where *Doria* should not find me: I concluded then to pass into *Swethland*, whose King was at that time in War vvith the *Dane*, vvith a purpose to expose my self to so many perils, as I might dye nobly in some one of them; resolving yet further, that if fortune should work a prodigie in preserving me, to go and confine my self into the horrid deserts of *Finland*. I stole away then secretly, and without taking leave of the Emperor I imbarqued my self upon the Baltique Sea, where I had not been three daies, but they of the Vessell, wherein I was, discovered the Fleet of that valiant King of *Algier*, *Chairadin Barbarossa*, whom a dreadfull tempest had driven into that Sea. This incounter gave me as much joy, as it caused fear in them with vvhom I vvvas; for I verily believed that I should soon set a period to my paines, by finding on the Sea that, which I went seeking for on the land: And whereas I perfectly spake the German tongue, I represented unto them, that since there was nothing left to our choice, but death, or slavery, being not able to fly, for that the wind vvvas contrary to us, it vvvas better generously to resolve for the first, than to submit our selves to the other; that the loss of liberty being more grievous and shamefull, than that of life, they were at the least to sell it dearly: In the end, my Lord, I animated them in such sort, as against all apparence they resolved, not onely to fight, but to goe and board the first vessell that should advance. This resolution was no sooner taken, but *Chairadin* loosed two of his Fleet to come up unto us; when they were within cannon shot we discharged one against another vvithout much effect, but suddainly they separated themselves to inclose us, which observed by us we vvould have retired, but the vvivest of the vvvo having fetched us up, I presently boarded her; it vvvas there, my Lord, that I fought against my ovvn good fortune, and that I laboured to lose a life, vvvhich thou hast rendred precious unto me, in preserving it since by a goodness that never had example, and which thy power hath made happy in despite of the malice of my destinie: I did then, my Lord, all that I could in this occasion to deprive me of the honor of being thy Highnes creature; but fortune, being resolved to save me, was adverse to us, for to be favourable to me; for *Chairadin*, whon was unwilling to have this victory cost him dear, and that saw well how we fought like desperate men, advanced with all his Fleet: As soon as those of our Vessell perceived it, their weapons fell out of their hand, and I was he alone that did not render my self, though it be true, that I left not for all that to have the same fate, for having been wounded in four places, the loss of blood weakened me in such sort, as I fell down like one dead on the hatches; my swooning lasted so long, that I came not to my self again till I had been carried to another Vessell, where all the hurt men were laid; there I was drest amongst the rest, and intreated after the same manner, untill we came to *Algier*, where soon after I was sold to the Bassa *Sinan*, together with three hundred others, which were destined to thy Highnes; and so within a few dayes we were imbarqued for *Constantinople*, where I had the honor to be made thy slave, and to wear chaines, which have been more glorious to me, than the possession of an Empire, and which I would alwaies prefer before liberty. After this, my Lord, I have nothing else to say unto thy Highnes concerning that which regards the rest of my fortune, seeing it is the work of thy hands, and that I could not bring it again to thy remembrance without offending thy modesty, knowing well enough by experience, that the image of thine own vertues makes thee cast down thy lookes, and change colour: I will not tell thee then by what meanes thou hast dravvn me out of irons for to raise me up to the greatest commands of thy Empire, but I will onely say, that in the midst of this pomp, and of this glory, I am in one day become the most wretched of men; and not to keep thy Majesty any longer in suspence, may it please thee to know, that the generous slave, to vvhom thy Highnes hath given his life, is the same *Doria*, vvhom thou hast heard so often mentioned in my adventures, that dear confident of my loves, and the most faithfull of my friends; *Soliman*, having interrupted him, demanded, whether he had not see him at liberty; but *Ibrahim* answered, that he alone could give it him, and that because he would doe nothing of his own private authority, after he had talked

talked with him a little, he had returned him to the Bassa of the Sea, instructing him to use him kindly till such time as he heard further from him, not knowing whether his Highness did intend to grant him his full liberty. The Sultan then commanded him to break his chains forthwith, and to prosecute his discourse. *Ibrahim* would have fallen on his knees to have thanked *Soliman* for that grace; but he not suffering him to do so, enjoyned him once again to satisfy his desire; and therefore exactly to obey him, the Bassa continued in this sort. The triumph being finished, I was no sooner in my Palace, but I shut up my self in my Cabinot with that dear Slave; I will not tell thee, my Lord, the taking that *Doria* and I were in, since it is a thing that may be more easily imagined than spoken: *Doria's* amazement was so great to see me alive, to find me in the habit which I wear, and to observe me in the rank which I hold, as his reason above an hundred times gave his eyes the lie. As for me, I was no less surpris'd to see him at *Constantinople*; and to embrace him in the habit of a Slave, than he was to behold me with a Turbant. Our first motions of joy being over, I confess, my Lord, that my first thought was for *Isabella*; well now, said I unto him, my dear *Doria*, hath the Prince of *Masseran* triumphed over all my hopes, and hath he render'd himself possessor of an happiness which he did not deserve, and which I thought I had been Master of? I had not so soon made an end of speaking, when as *Doria* fell to demand pardon of me, to accuse himself of too much precipitation, to commend the constancy of *Isabella*, and to blame my despair; but because this discourse was obscure, I requested him to clear it unto me. Whereupon he told me, that *Julia* was no longer amongst the number of the living, that the Prince of *Masseran* was dead, and that *Isabella* was never his wife; but to particularize this unexpected event, thou mayest be pleas'd to understand, that as soon as *Julia* perceived the Prince of *Masseran's* love to *Isabella*, she resolv'd, seeing the authority wholly in her self by the death of her husband, to make that secret hatred she had always born me to shew out; wherunto also may be added, that this woman being ambitious, it may be the Title of a Sovereign blinded her, and carried her to that evill design of destroying all our pleasures; to attain the more easily thereunto, she thought it would be fit utterly to break off our commerce, which was not very hard for her to do, for *Monaco* is seated on the height of a great Mountain, almost inaccessible on the three sides; the other which looks to the Sea is so steep, as one cannot behold it without horror; there rests then but one winding way which leadeth to the Port, so that whereas this Town hath but one onely avenue, and hath alwayes a Garrison in it, it was easie for her to keep the Prince's from receiving any intelligence from me, or giving me any; without doubt it was the fear of this rigorous proceeding that oblig'd the Prince's to write unto *Doria* to send her no more Letters. In the meantime *Julia* said openly to all the world, that the Prince of *Masseran* was going to marry *Isabella*, and whereas the Prince's suffred her self to be seen of no body, so no body was aware of the deceit; for I have been inform'd by *Doria*, that as soon as she observed the passion which she had begot in the Prince of *Masseran*, and that she perceived how her mother would force her to this unjust marriage, she feigned her self sick to the end she might with the more civility decline the visits of this new Lover, who divers times was upon the point of renouncing his pretensions through the rigors of *Isabella*; but *Julia* assur'd him so effectually, that she would vanquish her obstinacy, provided he would be ruled by her, as he resolv'd to yield her a blind obedience. He went then to *Genua* by her counsell in that manner, which the *Grandees* of *Malis* do often make use of, whenas they travell, and which they call *Incongnito*. This custom permits them to live as they will, and dispenseth others from rendering them the honors which are due to their quality; it was then in this sort that the Prince of *Masseran* was at *Genua*, to the end, that being freed from receiving, or rendering the ceremony of visits, he might only make some believe, that he was the husband of *Isabella*, not in precisely saying that he had married her, but in giving way for them to think so, that spake to him of his abode at *Monaco*: For the design of

Julia

*Julia* was to perswade every one that this marriage was accomplished, to the end that if I were advertised thereof, I might be capable of some extreme resolution, either upon mine own person, or on that of the Princes, or on hers; which I could not execute without going into a place where I should lose my head if I were found there. This design was so well carried, that all they of *Monaco* beleev'd it themselves, and made others to beleve it. This universall error, it may be, had not for all that been fastned on *Doria*, if *Julia* had not taken a particular care to make him beleve what all the world beleev'd; and indeed to speak the truth, no body could have exempted himself from this imposture: For this woman, having suborned *Feliciana* with gifts and great hopes, made a shew of chafing her away with violence, and to make the matter be published the better, she sent her back to *Genova*, where she was no sooner come but she repaired to *Doria* all in tears. I think thy Highness remembers, that this mayd had alwayes been *Isabellae* confident, thou wilt not find it strange then if *Doria* did not doubt of her discourse, when she assured him with a feigned sorrow, that the Prince of *Masseran* having married the Princess with her own consent, and not being able to forbear telling her of the promises which she had made to mee, she had been ill-intreated both by the Mother and the Daughter, vvhich had driven her away outrageously. It was by this artifice, my Lord, that *Doria* was deceived; and whereas this newes troubled him, and posselt him with fury, he wrote it unto me as soon as he heard it, as I have already declared unto thy Highness. But this man, whose high and generous spirit makes the interests of his friends more sensible to him than his own, understanding that the Prince of *Masseran* was at *Genova*, resolv'd to punish him, and revenge me; and for this effect he carefully inform'd himself of the place where most commonly he was, but fortune, that intermeddles with all things, favoured his enterprize, by letting him know, that the day following he was to go and see the stately Palace of *Andrea Doria* his near Kinsman, and whereas it was out of the City, he judg'd this opportunity too advantagious to be neglected, imagining rightly that he would go thither with little company, since, as I have before delivered, he was at *Genova* unknown. The matter failed not to fall out even as he had conceived it; for he was advertised that the Prince of *Masseran* was in this walk attended but with two of his servants; he went forth then speedily with the like number, and overtaking him in a place where few persons could be witnesses of his action. As soon as he was so near him, as he might speak to him, he asked him whether he knew my name, and whether it were possible he should be ignorant that *Isabella* could not lawfully be his, because she was mine? but since the thing was done, he must at least render himself worthy of so noble a conquest by the loss of his life, as I had bought it with my blood; in saying so they both drew out their swords, and *Doria* without attending the Prince of *Masseran*, answer, attacked him so vigorously, as he was constrained to give ground: They that accompanied him would have oppos'd themselves to this fury, but they that followed *Doria* would not suffer them so to do; and whereas they were equall in number, they began a just combat, whereof the modesty of my friend kept him from telling me the particulars, but in the end, notwithstanding whatsoever the Prince of *Masseran* could perform, the victory sided with reason, and *Doria*, after the receiving of a slight hurt, press'd his enemy with so much courage, as he ran him into the body in four severall places, which made him fall down as if he were dead: A minute after, Nature doing her last devoir, he opened his eyes, and seeing *Doria* coming from parting their followers, and giving order to his help to carry him to some place, he had yet so much strength, as to call him, and before he expired to crave pardon for the outrage he had done me, and to pray me to consider the power of *Isabellae* eyes for the excusing of his fault; moreover he conjured him to tell me that the Princess had kept her faith inviolable to me; then he acquainted him in few words with all the violences of her mother, with all the resistances which she had made thereunto, and at the last swore that he was not her husband, but that

*Julia*



*Julia* had used this artifice, in hope to make me away, as I have already told thy Highness, not doubting but that if I were dead she should have carried her daughter to all that she had desired. Scarcely had that infortunate Prince made an end of speaking, but he dyed in *Doria's* armes, who with sorrow remitted him into the hands of his servants, to goe and provide for his own safety; so that without losing time, and before this combat was divulged, he sent to hire a Feluca, and without returning into the City he imbarqued himself for *Naples*; for in the uncertainty of the event of the combat he had brought mony enough about him to mak his retreat into that place, and had left a letter in his Cabinet, which instructed one of his friends with the order hee would have taken in his affaires. He departed then safely away in this sort, but the next day he incountred the Pirate *Arsalon*, and in the manner, which thy Highness understood yesterday, he came to *Constantinople*. But my Lord, to make all the rigor of my destiny known to thy Majesty, I am to tell thee further, that not long since *Doria* hath met with a slave of *Monaco*, who hath related unto him, that as soon as *Julia* knew of the death of the Prince of *Masseran*, anger and grief seized so upon her, as she died therewith in a little time; so that *Isabella*, seeing she was Mistress of her self, had sent a man into *Germany* to desire me to come and take care of her State, and to receive her person for a reward of my fidelity: For she knew nothing, either of my jealousy, or despair, which having carried me far enough from the place, whither she had sent to seek me, beguiled all her hopes, and destroyed her felicity, by the fruitless return of him she had employed unto me; since that she lived in a very austere and melancholick solitariness, saying openly, that she was resolved to renounce the world, as soon as she knew, that I was no longer in it. And whereas there ran a bruit in *Genova* about a year ago, that I had been seen in *Naples*, she dispatched away this man for to goe and see if it were so; having made a vow, if his voyage proved vaine, to shut her self in a Cloister for all the rest of her life; but whereas fortune hath never done any but extraordinary things in my adventures, she so wrought, that this man, putting himself into a French Barque to pass over thither, was taken by a Pirate, whose vessels lay under the covert of a Rock, which is near to a place by the Italians called *Porto Hercoles*. And whereas he had a great number of Slaves, he stayed not long from going to sell them at one of the Islands of the *Archipelago*, from whence by divers accidents this man came to *Constantinople*, where *Doria* by chance knew him, as having at other times seen him in *Rhodolpho's* service. After all this, my Lord, it will not be difficult for thy Highness to imagine the deplorable estate wherein I find my self by thy bounty, and by the proposition which thou hast made me concerning the Sultana *Asteria*. I should not be so hardy as to speak to thee in these termes, if I did not call to mind, that the charmes of the divine *Roxelana* have been of sufficient force to vanquish the most victorious Monarch of the world; and that for this reason I may hope to see thee sensible of my misfortune, to obtain pardon for my ingratitude, and to be heard in my justifications. It is true indeed, that to excuse my fault I need no more than to beseech thy Highness to consider, that if I could even banish from my heart the image of *Isabella*, forget her affection, her oathes, and her constancie; become the most ingratfull of men to his Princess; cause her death by my change, which she would quickly know; prefer my Master before my mistress, and my duty before my love; the Religion I profess, prohibiting me the plurality of wives, which that of the Mahometans doth permit, I could not dispose of a faith, which I have already given, seeing I am a Christian under the habit of *Mussulman*, although I be not believed to be so in all the extent of thy Empire: But whereas for all that it is not just that my temerity should be vanquished, deprive a man of thy favor, who refuseth an alliance, which a great King ought to receive on his knees: Banish from thy sight and Court a man, whom so many benefits, whom so many greatneses, and to say all, whom thy affection cannot make perfectly happy; and to satisfie the Sultana *Anferia*, I am ready to reenter into the irons from whence she drew me, and to die her Slave, since I cannot live her husband: Or if thy Highness

will render my end more profitable and glorious, command me to seek out death in the midst of thine enemies, and I shall not be long without testifying by the loss of my life, that I am not ingratefull; but because I cannot be acknowledging. And to incense thy just wrath, I will say farther, that the chastisement, which I demand, will be instead of grace to me, since that in depriving me of light, I shall no longer be sensible of all the misfortunes wherewith I am so heavily oppressed; I shall cease to live, but I shall cease also from being rebellious to thy pleasure; I shall restore the life which I owe to the incomparable *Asteris*; and I shall dye for the glory of *Isabella*. In brief, my Lord, since I cannot be *Asteris*, because my love doth oppose it, and my Religion doth forbid it; and since I cannot likewise live for *Isabella*, because my duty doth tie me to thy service, both by a generall right, and by a particular obligation, death is the only remedy that remains for me to get out of so many miseries. If thy goodness had not broken off my fetters, and that I were still thy slave, now when that I know that the constancy of *Isabella* hath triumphed over the artifice of our enemies, that I reign still in her heart, and that on me alone her felicity or her happiness doth depend, I would employ all my endeavour to free me of my chains by a ransom. But my Lord, I am tyed to thee by stronger bonds; the obligations wherein I am engaged to thy Highness, the benefits which I have received from thee, the honours thou hast done me, and the last degree of glory wherunto I am mounted, are too certain proofs of thy love, and of thy confidence, for me not to be retained in my duty: It is then by these sacred bands that I am tyed unto thee, and which I cannot break without sacrilege. Finally, my Lord, the thoughts of liberty, which pass for a just desire in the minds of all men, were an horrid crime in me; and I may well promise thy Highness, that I will never so much as dream of it: And as I am generous enough not to doe any thing that may blemish my love, so am I yet more not to doe any thing that may wrong my duty. There is no need then of guards to keep me from going out of thy Empire, being fully resolved to sacrifice all my pleasures, rather than doe any thing unworthy of the name which I carry, and the choice which thy Highness hath made of my person, for to be the first in thy favour, as I am in thy Estates. But without further deferring pronounce the sentence of death, so just, and so much wished for. *Ibrahim* having given over speaking, *Soliman* rose up, fell to walking a great pace, and with his eyes fixed on the ground continued in so deep a muse, as the *Bassa* doubted that he should obtain the effect of his request; but he was not long in this uncertainty; for the Sultan standing still, and beholding him in a manner that testified more grief than anger, and more compassion than wrath, said unto him with all imaginable kindness, that he held himself infinitely unhappy, in that possessing so great an Empire, that being so victorious and triumphant, and that being able to give felicity to so many people, yet could not render the only man whom he could love, happy. Upon this so obliging a discourse, *Ibrahim* would have fallen on his knees, but he would not suffer him, saying unto him, that he would fain have obtained so much resolution of himself, as to part for ever from a man, who was so dear unto him; that he had debated the same in his mind, when as he walked in that manner, as he saw; but that at last the affection which he bore him had surmounted his generosity, and that it was impossible for him to resolve on so grievous a separation; that he conjured him to excuse the effects of his friendship, as he excused those of his love; and to testify unto him, that as well as himself he did all that he could, he would permit him to goe and see *Isabella*, provided he would pass his word unto him to return again within six monthes; with this promise also, that if during his absence he could accustom himself to this privation, he would give him his liberty wholly and intirely. The *Bassa* was so surpris'd, and so transported with joy, as having cast himself at the feet of the Sultan, he was a good while without speaking; but at length, after he had recovered the use of his tongue, he rendered him thanks for so notable a favor, and told him, that none but *Soliman* could vanquish *Soliman*, that this victory which he had gotten over himself, was so glorious to him,

as all that he had done till then, was nothing in comparison of it; that battles were gained by the valour of Captains and Soldiers, but in this occasion he owed this victory to one, but his own proper virtue. As for the rest, if he would permit him to go to *Monaco*, he would engage his faith to render himself at *Constantinople* within the time that he had prescribed; and that he was not to fear that he would break his word with his Highness, since he would keep it with his very enemies. After this assurance, the Sultan told him, that he did not doubt of it, but that which obliged him to require an oath of him for it, was the knowledge that he had of the force of the passion which reigned in his heart; and that his friendship would be secured against this enemy of its content. *Ibrahim* swore then solemnly, that nothing but death alone should keep him from accomplishing his promise. That done, *Soliman* told him, that he would not have consented to his voyage, knowing that his affairs were not composed at *Genova*, had he not had the means to have the sentence revoked, which had been given against him. And when as *Ibrahim* besought him to let him understand, how he thought to perform so unexpected a thing; the Sultan told him, that to comprehend his design, he was but to remember, how one of his *Chaux*, returning out of *France*, and staying at *Genova*, had been murdered in the streets, by a popular commotion; so that having been advertised thereof by one of them that accompanied him, who instantly imbarqued himself away, he had caused all the Vessells of the *Genoveses*, that were found in his Ports, to be arrested; and that for the better favouring of his design, an Ambassador was the day before arrived from his Republick, whom he had caused to be put in prison at *Pera*; being perswaded that he had done nothing unworthy himself therein, since the *Genoveses* had first violated the Law of Nations in the person of his *Chaux*; how it was for to communicate this affair unto him that he had sent for him in the morning, but the sadness which he had observed in his countenance, had hindered him from it; and carried him into another discourse. The Bassa then cast himself at the feet of the Sultan, to assure him, that he would never establish his content on the ruins of his Country. *Soliman* told him, that his generosity would not contradict his intention, and that so favourable an occasion might not be lost; he would send back this Ambassador with all the Vessells which he had caused to be stayed, for to redeem his liberty; and that of *Doria*, who had suffered so much for him. That he would write a letter to his Republick; which should be conceived in such express tearmes, as they would without doubt be enforced by fear to accord him more difficult things, than those which he desired of them; besides that, giving them back the life of their Ambassador, and returning them so great a number of the richest, and most precious commodities of the Levant, they would be yet far more indebted unto him. But in the end he was glad, that the blood of one of his servants might at least serve to restore *Ibrahim* to his Country. The matter being thus resolved, *Soliman* commanded the Bassa to go and deliver *Doria*, and the Slave of *Monaco*, and not speak of this design; for he would have no inkling of the matter, but for the better concealing of it, he ordered him to say, that he was going upon a secret expedition, to the end they should not marvel if they saw him no longer at the Port. After this *Ibrahim* withdrew himself for to give order to his affairs; and although the passing of his word for his return begot some melancholick thoughts in him, yet joy held the Empire of his soul, and the onely imagination of seeing *Isabella* again dissipated all his heaviness. At last his passion was so strong, that if he had been even sure to die, as soon he came ather, yet would he not for all that have left to goe. He returned then to his Palace, followed by those multitude of Courtiers, whom the favor of Kings renders inseparable with them which possess it.



# IBRAHIM, OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The First Part.

### The Third Book.



He grand Visier was no sooner at home, but he sent the command of the Grand Signior to the Bassa of the Sea, to return him the Slave, with whom he had talked the day before; but as he was generous and liberall, he caused twelve Watches, the fairest that ever had been found in all the shops of Constantinople, to be carried unto him; for besides the difference of the inventions of them, their cases were so marvellous, as the Emeralds, Rubies, and Diamonds, made up the least part of their beauty, the art far surpassing the matter: And whereas this curiosity is the greatest with persons of quality amongst the Turks, having met with an hundred of them in a certain shop, *Ibrahim* could not choise any thing that was more gallant, more beautifull, or more agreeable to him, who was to receive them; but to render this present yet more magnificent, he put these twelve Watches into a little coffer of Murre, garnished with Gold and Turquoise, and sent them unto him by six Slaves: As for that of *Monaco*, because he was not a man of any great quality, he sent him a thousand Sultans for his ransom. After which he shut himself up in a lodging apart, that was a good way from his own, which was too much frequented with people, there to receive *Doria* at more liberty: The Palace of the Bassa of the Sea was not far from *Ibrahim*, so that it was not long before they brought him his dearest *Doria*, to whom the Bassa in requitall of that gallantry which had been used towards him, had in exchange of his fetters given him a chain of Diamonds. It was in this interview, that these two friends felt all those joyes and pleasing raptures, which true friendship causeth in the soules of two persons, who for so many years had been in despair of ever seeing one another; their hearts were at one instant so replenished with pleasure and admiration, as not able to express together their amazement and their joy, they remained a good while embracing one another, without the ability to speak; but at length, *Ibrahim*'s passion being the stronger, it obliged him to open their first discourse by *Isabella*, in calling *Doria* his Preserver, in giving him thanks for exposing his life to deliver her, and revenge him; and craving pardon of him for the pains he had suffered in his captivity, as counting himself the innocent cause thereof. *Doria* answered to all those things with as much kindness as could be; but whereas love is more powerfull than friendship, and as this passion reigns imperiously over all the rest, *Ibrahim* returned still to *Monaco*, he would have *Doria* particularize again that which he had already told him the day before; he demanded of him whether

it were true indeed that the Princess loved him still? He would know of him, whether the Prince of *Moscow* was an handsome man? And as if his friend could have known what was done over all the earth, he conjured him to tell him, whether he did not believe that *Isabella* would be rapt in Nun when they should arrive at *Genoa*? In the end, after he had asked an hundred questions, whereunto *Doria* had no leisure to answer, he perceived his error, and desired him to pardon him for it with so much earnestness, as he could not choose but smile at it. But amidst all these mutual caresses, there were some moments wherein *Doria* was surprized with marvell, and which reason began to repossess its place in the mind of *Abraham*, he was aware of it, and seeing his eyes fastened on his habit, he easily apprehended, that he did not express all his thought; wherefore not to leave him any longer in this uncertainty, he said unto him, that for the renewing of their friendship in as true a manner as formerly it had been, it was fit to tell him in few words, that he was still *Soliman* under the name of *Abraham*, and that although he were the servant of *Soliman*, yet was he for all that the enemy of *Abraham*; that he desired him therefore not to suspect him lightly, since he could not do so without wronging him; that if he had not been too much pressed by the affairs which he was to communicate unto him, and which required speed, he would have recounted to him, even at that very instant, the wonderfull progress of his fortune, but he would do that at leisure whilst they were in their voyage together; that in the mean time he should firmly believe how nothing was able to shake his faith, and that he would live and die in the Religion of his Fathers. Upon this discourse *Doria* confessed unto him ingenuously, that he had been strangely surprized with finding him Grand Visier, and the Sultans Lieutenant-Generall throughout all the extent of his Empire, since to be that and a Christian seemed to be two things incompatible; but in regard of that which he had told him, he would afterwards forbid his reason to judge any more upon appearances: How it was notwithstanding true, that he had believed that he was not absolutely culpable, but how it was certain also, that being unable to conceive this adventure, he had been troubled to think in what terms he should dare to inform him, clear himself therein. *Abraham* answered, that he would easily forgive him this injury, seeing he himself could not in a manner conceive by what means, or by what wayes fortune had conducted him to the point wherein he then was: That in the mean space wor to lose time, which was to be so precious unto him, it was fit he should tell him, that *Soliman* had been so good as to permit him to go and see *Isabella*; and that he might do it with glory and safety, the Sultan had found out an undoubted expedient to cause the Sentences which had been pronounced against them, to be revoked. But whereas *Doria* could not easily believe that which he heard, *Abraham* recounted every thing unto him from point to point, just as it had been resolved in the Sultans Cabinet; but he did not discover unto him, that he had engaged his word for his return within six months, for fear he should be afflicted at it; for as for his fidelity he no way miscounted it. *Doria* finding that he purposed to return out of hand to *Genoa*, told him, that he had lost a very affectionate friend in the person of *Simbulo*, who was dead of sickness, as the Slave of *Moscow* had informed him, but that he had left a sonne behind him, the heir of all his vertues, and one that promised great matters. If he not called *Abraham*, replied *Abraham*, after he had bemoaned the death of *Simbulo*? Yes, said *Doria*, and he was not above a dozen years old when you went away, and yet then there was great hope of him. Hereupon one brought *Abraham* words, that the Slave of *Moscow* was come, which made *Doria* represent unto him, that being to return to *Genoa*, he held it not fit that this Slave should see him in the habit he wore, because he could not possibly forbear publishing of it, which might prejudice him much, or at leastwise oblige him to make a publick manifestation of his adventures. *Abraham* agreed with him therein, so that he charged him, who brought him that message, to carry this Slave to the quarter where the Officers of his house were lodged; which was a great way off from his own, with order to use him well, and not to let him go out

out of his chamber without his expresse command. That done, he returned himself to *Doria*, and desired him to work in such sort, as he might have the Letter which the Princeſs had wrote to him by this man, to the end he might be assured of her fidelity. *Doria* told him, that the matter was not very difficult, and that to oblige him to deliver it, he need but let him know, how he was still alive; and because also hee was to see him during their Voyage, it was requisite to tell him, that hee had been a slave as well as they, and freed in the same manner, that he might not be surpris'd when he should see him aboard the vessell. *Abraham* approved of this counsell of his friend, and prayed him to go instantly and labour to bring him that precious treasure, which was able to make him happy. *Doria* condescending thereunto, the Bassa caused him to be conducted by four slaves to the place where that of *Monaco* was, who, a good while would not part with *Isabella's* Letter, till he saw *Justiniano*, because he could not beleieve, that a man whom he had gone to seek for at *Naples*, should be at *Constantinople*; but *Doria* swore to seriously unto him, that *Justiniano* was alive, and that he should see him within a few daies, as at length, knowing him to be a man of great quality, and *Justiniano's* friend, he suffered himself to be perswaded, and delivered him *Isabella's* Letter, which he had with much ado preserved all the time of his captivity; presently whereupon *Doria* returned to *Abraham*, who attended him with extreme impatience; as soon as he perceived him, and that they which conducted him were retired, he lovingly imbraced him, and conjured him no longer to defer his happiness, but *Doria* without answering him, rendred him that precious gage of *Isabella's* fidelity, which possessed our Illustrious Bassa with such joy, that he could hardly obtain so much tranquillity from his mind, as to read this Letter: But at last, after he had kissed it with transports that cannot be imagined but by those who know the force of this noble passion, which reigned in his heart, he opened it, and saw that it was thus.

### The Letter of *Isabella* Princeſs of *Monaco* to *Justiniano*.

Since it is not enough for the felicity of *Isabella* to know that you are living, but that she must also know whether she still liveth in your memory, I have sent the Lieutenant of my Guard to inform himself thereof, and so clear it unto me, so the and that by his return, and by his answer, I may regulate the rest of my daies, conserve my self for you if you be faithfull, or punish my self for loving you, if you be faulty: being fully resolved, if you love no longer for me, to live no longer for the World, and so deprive my self for ever of it, as soon as you shall have deprived me of the hope of seeing you again. I do not undertake to paint forth all the miseries which I have suffered by the persecutions of my Levers, and of mine Enemies, by my Parents, and by your absence; since if it be true, that it hath been able to destroy in your soul a love which ought to last eternally, it would but add more to my confusion, and to your crime; raise up a trophy my self to mine Enemy, follow voluntarily the Chariot of the Conqueror, and serve for ornament to the triumph of some stranger, who it may be hath vanquished you. But if, nevertheless, it should happen that my fear and suspicions should render me faulty towards you; that you should be always *Justiniano*, as I am always *Isabella*; that this so noble, and so pure a passion which I had given a being unto in your soul, should reign there still, as it doth still reign in mine; I dare beseech you, if *Monaco* seem too weak to defend you, or too near to *Genova* to live there in quiet, to let me understand in what place of the earth you will have us live together; for in fine I shall always quit my State without regret for to conserve unto my self the Empire which you have given me over your heart, Let me know then what I am to expect from my fortune, with a promise, that so far that I have no longer a place in your remembrance, never to murmur more at my misfortune, but excuse my defects for your change, and since I cannot live for you, never to be any bodys but to die in a Cloyster. This is all the grant which is demanded of you by this

Your Isabella  
Hardly



Hardly could *Ibrahim* retain his teares in reading *Isabella's* letter, which had made him change colour more than once, according as it was either more or less obliging; and as jealousy and fear are undoubted markes of strong affection; what which the Princess testified unto him gave him at one instant both grief and joy; he was grieved that *Isabella* should suspect him of infidelity; he was not sorry that she was afraid to lose him; and as if he had not read it well, he began to run it over again, and after he had made an end of reading it, he looked on all sides of the paper, to see if nothing else were there written: He read the superscription of it, he considered it even to the very seal; and in the end he thought he should have committed a crime if he had lost so much as one syllable of that precious pledge of *Isabella's* love. This letter so mightily increased his flame, that his uneasiness grow to be half so much more than it was. The discourse of the Princess seemed to pressing unto him, so he begins to fear in good earnest, lest she should take some extreme resolution, before he could get to *Monsieur*; he concluded therefore to forward the matter as much as he could, and for a beginning he left *Doria*, after he had caused bookes to be given him to entertain the time withall, and commanded some of his servants to wait near unto him for to serve him; the rest of the day he bestowed in giving order for all things necessary for his voyage; he commanded a Christian Slave, in whom he much confided, to cause an habit after the Italian fashion to be secretly made, and gave him more money than need, both to pay for it, and to procure the fidelity of the Jewes, who should sell it unto him; for it is from those kinds of men, that the great diversity of Nations which people *Constantinople* and *Pera*, are furnished with all things necessary for them, be it household stuffe, apparell, or Jewells. That done, he caused the principall Officers of his house to be called unto him; and having told them, that the Grand Signior sent him upon a secret expedition, from whence he should not return in six monthes, he commanded them that during his absence they should obey, as himself, a man, who was as it were the Steward of his house; and that they should cause all the rest that depended on them, to obey him in like manner; he assigned meanes also for the maintenance of his Train, as it used to be; and after he had promised them recompences if they continued in their duty, and chastisements if they did otherwise, he went to his dear *Doria*; and being somewhat late, they separated themselves; *Ibrahim*, nor willing that his people should observe so strict a union betwixt them, got away to bed, after he had made a light supper, though he had eaten nothing all the day before. As for *Doria*, he was served in private, but with a great deal of magnificence. The next morning, according to the order he had received for it, *Ibrahim* went to the Seraglio; and whereas he had a particular permission to come thither at all times, whensoever he would, he went into the Sultans chamber, who was not ready. *Soliman*, seeing him come in, said unto him, how he was glad to observe in his countenance that the remedy, which he had found out for his grief, was not in vain; but to make an end of healing him speedily he had commanded over night that the Ambassador of *Genova* whom he had caused to be made a prisoner at *Pera*, should be brought unto him; the Sultan told him further, how he had given order, that the Ambassador should come without ceremony, because if the ordinary custom had been observed, *Ibrahim* then, as the chief Bassa, must have presented him, which he not thinking fit, for that so he would have known him, he chose rather to hold this course; besides also that sending to have him received at the gate of the City, and causing him to be presented with an horse; and robe of cloath of gold, according to the use, he engaged himself consequently to give him publique audience, which he would not doe, to the end he might speak more openly to him concerning the matters he desired of him. The Sultan was no sooner ready, but he was advertised by a Capigibassa, who is one of the Capitaines of the Port, that this Ambassador was arrived, whereupon he commanded, that a Bassa should go to receive, and bring him unto him; and that *Ibrahim* might hear what he said unto him he made him enter into his Cabinet. A little after this Ambassador appeared with a Turkish robe on, which had been given him without any ceremony

remony at his departure from *Pera*; for it is the custom of the Sultan to receive no Ambassadors but such as have one of them on, according to the manner of the Country. He was sustained under the arms by two Capigibassi; the Bassa that conducted him, marched two paces before him to present him to the Sultan, who received him with some civility: when as he had saluted the Grand Signior, he delivered the Letter that the Republique had written to him, which *Soliman* gave unto a Dragoman, who interpreted it unto him for forms sake only, for he understood it better than he. No sooner had he done hearing him, but he caused the same Interpreter to tell the Ambassador, that the injury which he had received in the person of his *Chaoux*, was so great, that if he had followed his just fury, his head had answered for that violence; how it was for that he had caused him to be arrested, but that he had since changed his mind at the intercession of a Christian slave, who had been a tutor to him for it, and that had found grace before his Highness, but that for returning him back, as he was going to do, together with all the vessels which he had caused to be stayed in his Ports, and for forgetting also the outrage that he had received from his Republique, they were to accord him one thing, which he desired of them. And when as the Ambassador had answered him, that the thing should be impossible if they did it not, he told him, how all that he would have was, that the Senate should revoke the Sentence which they had pronounced against *Justiniano*, and that *Doria* should be no more troubled for the death of the Prince of *Masseran*; that it was *Justiniano* to whom *Genova* owed her safety, and to whom he was to render thanks for his life; that he remitted both him and *Doria* to his conduct, for the putting of that in execution which he desired; but that he should take good heed they sayed not therein, because if that should happen, nothing should be able to keep him from making War upon *Genova* it self with all the forces of his Empire. This Ambassador was so surpris'd with hearing the Sultan speak of *Justiniano* and *Doria*, as it had divers times like to have made him forget the respect which he owed him, for to interrupt him, but at length after *Soliman* had given over speaking, he answered him, that the thing he desired was so beneficiall to the Republique, as his Highness need not fear to be refused; that the merit of those two excellent men was so generally known, as the Senate had not obeyed the Laws but with grief, and that doubtless they would be extremely joyfull of so just and specious a pretext to infringe them. After this *Soliman* dismissed him, and told him yet once again, how he should remember, that in this occasion they were to satisfie him, or to have him their enemy; howbeit he somewhat caressed him in bidding him farewell, and excused the not receiving him with all requisite Ceremonies for some reasons which he might not tell him; that in the mean time he should prepare himself for his departure, and that he should have his dispatch. When he was retired according to the custom, that is, without turning his back to the Sultan, *Ibrahim* came forth of the Cabinet, and cast himself at his feet, to give him thanks for so many testimonies of the affection which he received every minute from his Highness. But *Soliman* took him up, and told him, that eight years service well deserved that acknowledgment; that withall likewise in labouring for his good, he should establish his own felicity, which would never be perfected till he saw him contented; that the impatience he was in for his departure, was occasioned by the desire he had of his return, and that it might no longer be deferred, he was to go and make an end of taking order for his affairs, and that immediately after noon he should come and bid him adieu, and bring *Doria* with him. *Ibrahim* answered to all these things with as much generosity, as kindness; and for a conclusion, he deeply protested never to think himself acquitted of the infinite obligations wherein he was engaged to his Highness, but in sacrificing his life for his service. He would have proceeded further, but the Sultan interrupted him, and once more commanded him to have no other thought than of going to see the incomparable *Isabella*, and of giving life again to *Soliman*. After this the Grand Visier durst not make any reply, but retired homewards to go unto his dear *Doria* whom he had not seen since the evening before, and he encountered him in the Hipodrome,

Hipodrome, so intente in observing the stately structure of his Palace, as the Bassa was fain to speak to him before he would heed him, or be drawn out of so sweet a contemplation: But when as *Doria* seemed to be unwilling to stir from thence, till he had at leasure considered that Master-peece of Architecture, *Ibrahim* told him he was contented he should, so as he stayd not long about it, for that having goodlier things to shew him, and not having much time to spare, they were to mannage so much as they had, till dinner was made ready, in letting him see all the beauties of the Palace which he had caused to be built: That whereas he was skilfull in Painting, in Perspective, in Architecture, in rarities, and in all parts of the Mathematicks, he should be glad to know, whether according to his judgement all the rules of those fair Arts, and of those excellent Sciences, were found to be observed there, as according to his they were. But first, sayd *Doria* to him, I would fain know, how in so little a time you could make up a building, which for its greatness, and for the magnificence of its structure, would require the whole life of a man, and the treasures of a great Prince. This last, replied *Ibrahim*, is the only necessary thing, for with it is done in a small time, what whole Ages, and all the industry of man could not do without it; and both to answer you, and to take from you the means of troubling me with new objections, I am to let you know, that having a purpose to build this Palace, I easily found out a way to do it, as well speedily, as magnificently: For disposing of all the Revenue of the Empire, I could want nothing save Artisans to execute my design, but fortune sent me them; for good luck would, that a great Architect, two Painters, and two Sculptors, having put themselves in company together for to pass out of *Italy* into *Spain*, from whence they had been sent for to make a stately Palace for the Emperor, were taken by Pirates, who afterwards sold them here at *Constantinople*; and whereas I have alwaies been very carefull to inform my self of places where any Christian slaves were, that I might relieve them, I met with these same, knew what they were, and employed them for two whole years together; after which I sent them back in a vessell laden with riches. You have peradventure heard say, that the *Turks* do not suffer the image of any living thing to be made, and that the *Alcoran* seems to forbid it; but as in all Religions heresies do from time to time arise, this same, which is composed of nothing but absurdities, hath not been wanting therein; for some remedy whereof they one day cast into the River of *Adaxellia*, that runs by *Damascus*, two hundred Camels lading of Books of the different opinions of their Religion, retaining but six of them, which since have produced many others, whereof one maintains upon this Article, that the rest have misunderstood that passage, where their Prophet had no other meaning, but to forbid them the worshipping the images of men, of beasts, and of plants, and not the making of them for the ornament of houses: And indeed this opinion hath been followed chiefly by the Grandees. The Seraglio hath its Galleries full of Mosaicque work, where are seen great store of interlaced foliage, and birds represented by suitable peeces of differing Marble. The Emperor *Selim* could paint himself, and he sent a Battel, drawn with his own hand, to the *Venetians*; and *Soliman* his son hath his Fathers Picture alwaies hanging by his bed-side; so that after such illustrious examples I have adorned this Palace, but with pictures and statues, wherein it may be you will find wherewith to satisfie the knowledge which you have in those excellent arts.

### The description of Ibrahims Palace.

W Hilst the Bassa was talking in this sort, he and his friend came still nearer to the Gate, where *Doria* stayed to consider the superb front of a great Pavillion, which rose up into a Dome over the Gate, and that equally divided a long wall of white Marble, which made the inclosure of that great and marvailous fabrick. *Doria* could not sufficiently admire three orders of columns of different Marbles, which adorned that Portall, whereof the basis and capitall, were of Brass,

H

but





but wrought with so much art, that neither the *Greeks* nor the *Romans* have ever shewed any fairer; some were wreathed, some fluted, and others so artificially twined about with fillets, as they seemed to press down the foliage, wherewith it was enriched, over the Corniches and Friezes of half relieve, which were garnished with leaves of *Acantes*, were nothing but Chaplets of Triumph, Cornucopiaes, and Trophies of Arms. Finally, the magnificence of the Palace was so great, that the very gates of it were of Ebony, with mouldings so curiously proportioned, as the great silver nails wherewith they were studded all over, made the least part of their beauty. *Doria* was not yet resolved to quit so rare an object, had not the *Bassa* forced him to enter, that he might observe the Vaulting which sustained the Pavillion, whose key-stone was an Onix of a prodigious bigness, and whereof the Artist had so well contrived all the colours, and made such use of them, as he had thereof formed a Coronet of flowers, so admirably well done, that it beguiled the sight: The rest of the Vaulting was all of white Marble, the better to set off so fair a work, but so well joyned and polished, as it seemed to be made of one entire stone. After he had sufficiently considered so rare a thing, *Ibrahim* caused *Doria* to observe, that opposite to the Pavillion, which he so much admired, was another just like unto it; but before he went further *Doria* stayed to consider a great low covered Gallery which compassed the Court about, and whereof the roof served for a Terrace, with a rail and balluster of a leaning height; it was sustained with pillars of white and red Marble, and paved as the Court with white and black. But whereas *Ibrahim* knew that there was somewhat yet more marvellous to be seen, he made his dear *Doria* to pass along under the second Pavillion, and although the vaulting of it was fairer than the other that he had already seen, yet did he not make any stay there, so much was he ravished with the magnificent Fore-front of *Ibrahim's* Palace, which wholly discovered it self from thence; and truly I must confess, that he had reason so to be, since all that art and materials can contribute to the beauty of a work, was eminently found in this same. There appeared a great Building that took up the whole breadth of the Court, which was retrenched some thirty paces from the House by a Ballustrade of Jasper and Porphyre, and raised on the Palace-side the height of four steps, which formed in the middle an half pace of the same matter. The pavement of this Court was gray and white Marble, and in the midst of it was a Fountain, whereof the bole was of Orientall Alabafter, transparent as Christall, and six foot Diameter, born up by a pillar of divers-coloured Marble; the out-side of the bole was enriched with little Sea-Monsters of half relieve, admirably well done. Round about the pillar were four Harpies of Brass, their paws reaching to the depth of the Cistern, and their backs turned opposite the one to the other to uphold the pillar; the tips of their wings extended also to the bottom of the Alabafter bole, as seeming to bear it up; they had womens faces, but Serpents writhen tails finishing in antick foliage, which met together on the top of the pillar just against the Center of the bole, whereunto likewise it served for an ornament: In the midst of this bole was a Vase reverse, made also of Orientall Alabafter, which on its foot sustained a round basis, whereupon were set the three Graces, almost quite naked, made of *Corinthian* metall; they stood back to back, ejecting water out their breasts, and each of them holding a Cornucopia, which met all together a little above their heads; out of the flowers and fruits, which were represented there with suitable pieces, made of Agates, Onixes, Turquoise, Carnalines, Topazes, and Emeraulds, issued six spouts of water, which fell down into the bole, and disgorged themselves into the Cistern through the muzzels of six Lions that were seen on the outside thereof. As for the six others, which issued from the breasts of the Graces, and that did not spin out, they fell just into the heads of six Dragons of brass, which were on the brim of the bole, and that rendred them again through their mouths: These Dragons seemed to strive to get out of it, holding the brim with their talons; the rest of their bodies, except their heads, and the tips of their wings, seeming to be hidden therein; so that those twelve spouts of water, comming to cross  
one

one another, made so pleasing an object and murmure, as both sight and hearing found at one and the same time wherewithall to be satisfied. The Cistern of this Fountain was of Marble, but wrought with such art in Mosaique work, as there appeared in the bottom through the water fishes, so admirably well represented, that one might be deceived by them at the first sight; this Cistern had also round about it a little Balustrade of Jasper, for one to rest, and meditate upon. After that *Doria* had well admired this Fountain, he gave his whole mind and attention to observe the beauties of this marvellous frame; he saw then, that from each side there went a wing of building, which extended even to the Balustrade of Jasper and Porphyrie, and whereof the structure and symetrie was suitable to the middle front: Each of these wings, as well as the grand fabrique, had a Copola, covered over with sheets of brass, whereof the moiety having received an impression of fire, it had rendred them of a mixt colour between purple and blew, which the Painters cannot well represent, and which shewed a wonderfull object, being opposed to the other sheets, whereunto had been given a tincture of gold. The rest of the roof was covered in the same manner, as well as the Pavillions, whereof I have spoken; but when as *Doria* came to cast his eye a little lower, and to observe that all the ornaments of this Fabrique were of Jasper, Chalcedonie, Agate, and Onix, he was so surpris'd, as he could not forbear demanding, whether this which he saw was not enchantment: But though the abundance of Festons, of Trophies of Armes, Arabesques, Vases of incense, Frizes, Corniches interlaced with Drapery, extinct Torches, Cornucopias, and Chaplets of triumph, gave him a world of admiration, yet was he far more surpris'd to behold four and twenty Columnnes of Touch, which seem'd to sustain the first Order, and which were plac'd by two and two in equall distance, between each window; the basis and capitalls of them were of white and red marble, in correspondencie to the body of the building, which was wholly constructed thereof; but to preserve these Columnnes, and to render them withall the more magnificent to the eye, they were twyned about with the leaves of Acanthes of brass gilt, which yet was no hindrance, but that one might distinctly discern of what stone they were made, so as the beauty of them might be admired for their prodigious greatness. Over the Entrata was a statue of *Soliman* on horseback in base relieve; and on each side between those Columnnes were six Niches, filled with six great statues of women, habited a *L'antique*, and representing the divers Nations subjected to *Soliman*, who with one hand seem'd to offer him their Crowns, and with the other leaned on the Scutheons of the armes of the Kingdomes, which they represented. After he had well observed all these marvelles of Art and Nature, *Ibrahim* told him, that having yet many things to shew him, which it may be deserved his approbation, as well as those he had already view'd, it was requisite they should make a turn in the Garden, that all the outside might be considered before he let him see that the inside was not ill understood; he made him pass then under a great Vaulting, which traversed the whole body of the House, from whence one descended to the Garden by a large half pace of Porphyrie. This Vaulting was all of Mosaique work, compos'd of different Marbles and Jaspers; upon a ground of Alabaster, but so wonderfully wrought, as an excellent Painter could not with a pencill interlace a foliage more artificially, better observe the lights, and the shadowes, nor make a fairer piece with liquid colours, which by his mixture of them he renders such as he pleaseth, than this excellent Artisan of so beautifull a work had done with suitable pieces, whereof the colours were all simple and naturall, and the joyning of them together imperceptible to the clearest sighted eyes. *Ibrahim*, whose impatience was extreme, and who imagin'd, that every moment employ'd by him any other way, than in thinking of his departure, was an outrage to his love, and a crime towards *Isabella*, press'd *Doria* so much, as he made him descend into the Garden; howbeit he stay'd a little on the top of the half pace the better to consider the beauty and extent of it. He saw upon the first sight of it four great parterres, in the midst whereof was a Round of an extraordinary

dinary bigness, about the which were seen upon the bases of green Jasper six figures of fisher-men, as big as the life, whereof there were three that held each of them a Trident in his right hand, with the arm lifted up for to dart it; and the other three testified by their action the joy which they felt, for having hurled theirs so rightly, as that they had therewith struck a Sea Monster, which was represented in the middle of the Round, lying half along on his side, his head and his tail out of the water, and with so much art, as he seemed to be somewhat pained with the hurts which the three Tridents had given him, and from whence issued three ejects of water, that were in stead of blood to him. Just opposite to the half-pace and the Round was a Grot, admirably fair, both for the matter whereof it was formed, and for the art wherewith it was made, so that *Doria*, being much taken with this object, seconded the grand-Visiers design, and went on as fast as he desired him; the Bassa, not to lose time, caused him to observe in going along, that on each side of his Garden was a close arbor, erected vvith porticoes of verdures, where the Gardiner had made it well appear, that he was not ignorant of all the beauties of Architecture, since it had not any ornament there, which was not of the same proportion, and of the same symetry, as was observed over all that stately Palace. He made him also cast his eye to both the sides of the Grot, from whence there ran a Balustrade of Jasper, beyond the which was seen on the right hand a Labyrinth, so artificially contrived, that it might be called a prison without a gate, it being most certain, that without at the least a prodigious chance, or being taught by him that made it, one could not get out of this *Dedale*, what care soever a man took to mark how he went, into it: *Doria* would fain have gone and made tryall of it; howbeit *Ibrahim* would not suffer him, but obliged him to look toward the left side of the Balustrade, where vvas seen a Grove of Orange, Citron, Pomegranate, and Mirtle trees; and although the prospect of this place was delectable, and the sent of it odoriferous, yet *Doria* past by them to admire the mervailles of the Grot, whereunto they were then near; but whereas the description of it would be too long, it shall suffice to say, that it was of an Octangular form; that although it was of a just depth, yet it was for all that so lightsom, as all which the Orient hath of most rare was there to be seen: And to conceive a light Idea of it, one must imagine, that he beholds together all the master-pieces, or to say better, all the miracles of Nature; one must then figure unto himself great rocks of Christall, of Emeraulds, and of Rubies, where there was seen in some of them, that the Sun had not leisure to finish his work, being without colour in divers parts; one must also paint forth to his imagination that wonderfull ennamell of Orientall Shells, whereof the diversity is so agreeable, be it for their formes, or for their lively colours, so well mingled, and so well sorted, that of all naturall things they are the fairest, and most perfect; one must likewise conceive that in his mind, which all the Painters cannot represent, I mean those great Conques of *Nacre*, where the beames of the Sun leave so beautifull an impression of their light, as neither Opales, nor the Rain-bow have any colours that are not surpassed by the luminous Argent whereof they are formed, and which makes me name them with reason the favorites of the Sun. But after all these things one must imagine yet an infinite number of great branches of Corral, of all colours which Nature hath produced, namely of all the Carnations, white, black, and of the colour of fire. There must be further added to all these mervailles the fairest congelations, and the rarest petrifications, whereof Philosophers, or Historians have ever spoken to us: After this, I say, one may conceive part of those things which *Doria* beheld in this Grot, vvhere all the artifices of vvater vvere seen admirably vvell executed; there vvas a fall vvich ran from a rock of Christall, and vvich lost it self presently under another, whereof the noise vvvas so charming, as there is not a heart so light, nor a humor so fullen, in vvhom this murmure vvould not have excited a pleasing fancie; and that there may no doubt be made of the agreeableness of this enchanted Grot, I will say no more, but that *Ibrahim* himself, howsoever he vvvas pressed by his passion, could not chuse but be surprised by a thought



of *Isabella*, which gave *Doria* the more leasure to see all that I have spoken of, and a thousand other rare things, which would be too long to relate. At last, after *Doria* had cried out an hundred times miracles, miracles, and that *Ibrahim* was come out of his amorous contemplation, they went out of the Grot to return to the Palace, but still *Doria* looked to the place from whence they were parted, and his imagination was so taken up with that he had seen, as he was at the Round before he ever thought of considering the front of the Palace on that side; he saw then that it was wholly like the other, unless it were for a Balcone, which projected from the rest of the work, and whereof the Balisters were of Copper gilt. Having seen this they re-entred into the Palace, and ascended by a great stair of white and red Marble, that had a rail and balister of the same; at the top they found a Lobby, whose ceiling and walls were adorned with an Arabesque of Gold and Azure, inlayed with little peeces of Christall, like to Mosaique work, which yeelded both a goodly and magnificent object. From thence they went into a spacious Gallery, which was on the right wing of the Palace, where *Ibrahim* had made a Library of all the curious Books of the Orientall Languages, and of all the choicest and rarest in the Greek, Latin, Spanish, and Italian; but whereas the grand Visier did alwaies joyn magnificence to curiosity, all his Books were bound up in plates of Gold, enamelled with white and green, and placed in order upon shelves of Ebony, which were bordered with a dentile of Goldsmiths-work, enammeled with the same colours. There were also in this Gallery between the windows a great number of Maps, both universall and particular; and upon a Tablet over the Books a many of Globes and Spheres, different from one another, according to the divers opinions of all them which have treated of such matters. In the same order likewise he had placed all sorts of Mathematicall instruments, the fairest and the best made that ever were seen; as concave Mirrors, Clocks, Olomestres, Circles of proportion, and Astrolabes. But whereas *Ibrahim* contented not himself with necessary things, but would also have those that were for delight, he had there a number of those paintings, which by optically reasons do make such excellent and charming illusions; for that purpose then he had Cilinders of severall greatnesse, and to refresh the sight of them which read, he had of those Christall Triangles, which by the effect of a marvailous reflection do take and give all at one time the colours of the Rainbow to all the objects that are seen through them. He had also divers magnificent Desks, Prospective-glasses, and before the middle window a Table of Ebony, garnished with Gold, and enammeled as the shelves, with a Standish upon it covered all over with Emeraulds, some dark, some clear, which made a foliage admirably well represented. At the end of this Gallery that looked upon the first Court, was a door which opened to the Terrace, whereof I have spoken, and which answered to the Pavillion in the middle, where the Grand Visier had made a Cabinet of Arms, which he would needs have his dear friend to see; he led him then by the way which I have noted, but *Doria* at his entrance into it was exceedingly amazed and surprised; for the very first object that his eye met withall, was a Trophy of Arms, sustained in the air by the prodigious vertue of a great Adamant, which was the Key-stone of the roof of this Cabinet, wherein were seen together, and in order, all the different Arms, both antient and modern, of all the Nations of the World; but so fair, so magnificent, and so enriched, each one according to its use, as one would have sayd, that they were the Master-peeces of all the excellent Artisans that ever wrought in Arms; But amongst the rest those of *Persia* were the richest, and most sumptuous; all the Scymitars had their Hiltes and Scabberds of Gold, all covered over with pretious stones; and whereas that Country doth abound with Turqueyses, there were Targets and Quivers set all over with them, and Bows and Arrows answerable to the glittering beauty thereof. Now though the sight of all these things were wonderfully pleasing to *Doria*, yet gave he over beholding them, as soon as *Ibrahim* shewed him three Harquebuses of a miraculous artifice; whereof the first, which he caused him to make tryall of, shot off without fire, by the means of an in-

closed

closed wind which coming to issue forth expelled the bullet with the like impetuosity; the second performed the same thing with water; and the third, but the most marvellous, by the means of that powder which is called white, shot off, not only without fire, but also without noise. If *Doria* had followed his humour, he would have stayed a long time in Philosophy on all these secrets, by maintaining, that neither water nor wind, could ever have the same activity with fire, and so by consequence that which he saw could not be without enchantment; but *Ibrahim* told him they would speak of it at leisure during the voyage they were going to make, and without harkening to him further, he made him go forth at a door opposite to that whereby they had entered, and which gave upon the same Terrace that answered to the end of the Gallery on the left wing, where the Illustrious Bassa had caused all the Turkish Emperours to be drawn, from *Othoman*, who was the first, to *Soliman* then reigning. But whereas he was not contented with having their faces represented, but would have the *Othoman* History also painted, there was in this Gallery fourteen great Tables, in each of which was an Emperor as big as the life, and within the same frame all the principal actions of his Reign; but the same so well done, so distinctly, and so well ordered, as *Doria* was ravished therewith, and plainly swore to *Ibrahim*, that he would not stir out of that Gallery till he had considered all these Pictures attentively, and that he had expounded them unto him. The Bassa declined it as much as he could; but at length seeing his friend persist in his obstinate curiosity, he resolved to satisfy him, upon condition nevertheless, that he should not stand to particularize all that he saw in those Tables: And whenas *Doria* had shewed him that he was contented therewith, he requested him to pardon him, if in the prosecution of those painted Histories he saw a number of victories gained over the Christians, which much against his mind he had suffered to be there, but that in the end he durst do no otherwise. This said, making use of an Indian Cane, which he ordinarily carried in his hand, the better to make *Doria* observe what he was going to shew him, he began to speak in these terms.

*The Pourtrait of Othoman the first Emperor of  
the TURKS.*

YOU see, my dear *Doria*, in this first Table, which you shall not see above once again in all the rest, I mean a Prince replete with all virtues, and absolutely exempted from all vices, who owed his fortune to his own proper valour, and who alone laid the foundations of this great Empire: And indeed his memory hath been so revered, that even to this day all his Successors have held it for a glory to carry his name. You may observe in his Physiognomy that he was a Prince as prudent, as the rest of the Table will shew him to be courageous. This battell which you see afar off, is that which he obtained against the *Teggin* of the Town of *Prussia*; but mark a little how the industrious Painter hath so done it, as all these figures seem to move, and that in this disorder one may know the victorious party; he hath done it so too, that *Othoman* is easily discerned there: But if this fight be well represented, this assault of that Town of *Prussia*, and where he afterwards established the seat of his Empire, will not seem less marvellous unto you. This pane of the wall, which you see fallen down, and which lets you perceive them plainly that defended it, is it not admirably well done? These other Towns which you behold so distinctly, are those of *Sinopa* in *Galatia*, of *Angauri* in *Phrygia*, of *Sebastia* in *Capadocia*; and these which you see further off towards those Rocks, are the rest which he gained on *Mare major*. As for this Land-skip, set thick with Towns, which you see beyond *Prussia*, it is of *Natolia*, that he wholly conquered; and this Army which seemeth to march, and whereof all the souldiers are laden with booty, is the first that ever passed into Europe, and that made strange havoc under this excellent enemy. But without staying to consider the rest, let us pass on to this other Table.

*The*

The Pourtrait of Orchan the second Emperor  
of the TURKS.

**T**His Prince was the truly worthy sonne of *Othoman*, continued *Ibrahim*, infortunate nevertheless in this particular, that he was forced to be the first, who began to make war on his Brothers, and wholly to exclude them from all pretension to the Empire; but if he were unhappy in this encounter, fortune recompensed him otherwayes; his conquests having extended their limits on the one side to the *Hellespont*, and on the other to *Marè major*. These Towns which you see neereest hand, are those of *Nicea*, and *Nicomedia*; and this Army in disorder, where the Painter hath so well represented fear and amazement, is that of the Emperor *Pa-leologue*, which was routed by *Orchan* neer to *Philocratia*, as you may discern as far off. As for this great extent of Countrey, and this number of Towns, which take up all the rest of the Table, it is *Misia*, *Licaonia*, *Caria*, and *Phrygia*, except the Towns of *Gallipolis*, and *Philopoli*, which you see on the right hand, and which were his last conquests, for he died soon after. But let us behold the next.

The Pourtrait of Soliman the third Emperor  
of the Turks.

**I**F the life of this Emperor had been longer, he would have yet surpassed his Father, both in valor, and in prudence, and we should have seen the Table of his victories filled up more than it is; but whereas his reign indured but two years, he had no more time than to take *Andrinople*, conquer a great part of *Thrace*, and bring also under his subjection the Towns of *Pergama*, *Edeura*, *Zemonaqua*, and some others, as well on this, as on the other side of the *Hellespont*, which you see here running athwart this Table. But this other piece will furnish us with more matter to speak of than this same.

The Pourtrait of Amurath the fourth Emperor  
of the Turks.

**T**O describe unto you the humor of this Prince, before I speak of his Triumphs, I must tell you that he had together both force and weakness, curtesie and cruelty, and agility in his age; that he was both terrible and loving; that he was insatiable in shedding of blood, and that nevertheless he never put any one to death but most justly. It was as well by these according contrarieties that he rendered himself admirable to Posterity, as by his valor, which being seconded by fortune made him take *Pheren*, the capitall Citie of *Macedonia*, conquer *Misia* from *Dragus*, and Mount *Rhodope* from the *Pordan*, two valiant and mighty Princes, and the most part of *Armenia* from the Greek Emperor. *Cirathin* a great Captain, conquered for him also the Towns of *Cheralest*, *Seres*, *Marelia*, and the renowned *Thessalonica*, which the Painter hath made to be seen more distinctly, than those I have already shewed you, as being of more importance. *Doria* could not then forbear interrupting *Ibrahim*, for to pray him to let him know whether those millions of armed and fighting men which he saw in this Table, were not the picture of all the Battells that were given during the reigns of all the Emperors. You have reason my dear *Doria*, answered the Illustrious Bassa, to be amazed at the prodigious number of men which this Table doth shew you, where the Art of the Painter hath as well eternized his own glory, as that of *Amurath*, by representing seven and thirty battells which he won: And that which is yet more marvellous therein is; that he died triumphing in the last. See you not, continued *Ibrahim*, this Army discomfited?



fited? And this great heap of armes in the midst of the place of battail, upon the which a dead man appeares, holding nevertheless a scymitar still in his hand, and upon whom Victory, which you may see here represented in the air, throws down Crownes; it is the body of Victorious *Amurath*, whose death was worthy of envy, and whose life would have defaced the glory of all them that preceded him, had it not been blemished with cruelty: But if the death of *Amurath* deserved to be envied, that of *Bajazet* will give you cause of pity.

*The Pourtrait of Bajazet, the fifth Emperor of  
the TURKS.*

**T**He nature of this prince cannot be well represented but by the lightning, which terrifieth universally, which ravageth indifferently, passeth in a momant, and perisheth in an instant; all of them qualities admirably befitting *Bajazet*, surnamed by his subjects *Guilderum*, that is to say, the lightning of Heaven. But whereas the remembrance of his life strikes me with horror, by reason of the unheard-of cruelties which he exercised, it shall suffice to tell you, that after he had gotten some battailes, which you see presented in this Table, taken the Town of *Eritza*, and those of *Hispalis*, *Iconium*, *Casura*, *Migdia*, and *Assara* from the *Caraman*; and gained also by armes from a Greek, named *Theodorus*, the Town of *Damacia*, and that of *Delphe*, which you see here near hand; after he had, I say, sacked all *Hungaria*, *Bosnia*, and *Craetia*; defeated the French, Burgingnians, and Hungarians, in that memorable battail of *Nicopolis*; after he had, I say, filled the whole Universe with terror, put all the Provinces where he passed to fire and sword, he lost in one onely battel his Empire, and his glory, serving *Tamerlan*, who had vanquished him, all the rest of his daies; and at last was constrained, for his getting out of misery, to make his tomb of his prison, by beating out his braines as against the iron barres of the cage, wherein he was inclosed; An action so strange, it is impossible not to be moved with it. But let us see how the eldest of his children began to reestablish the disorders of his father.

*The Pourtrait of Iosue, the sixth Emperor of  
the TURKS.*

**I**T is easier to conquer, than to reestablish; to increase ones felicity, than to retire from a misfortune; of a petty Sovereign to become a mighty Monarch, than to remount into a Throne from whence one is descended. It is no little glory to *Iosue*, after the utter dissipation of his fathers Sate, to have been the first in raising up again that mighty Empire, by regaining from *Tamerlan* the City of *Prusia*, which you have already seen, as having been before the chief seat of their Empire, and very near all that his Predecessors had possessed in *Asia*. He did the like in *Europe*, as you may see in this Table; and when he was returned into *Asia*, his brother *Musulman*, fortified with the succor of the Greeks, incountred him in *Cappadocia*, gave him battail, which he won, and taking him prisoner caused him to be strangled, after he had reigned four yeares. But this cruelty was repaid unto him, as you will quickly understand.

*The Pourtrait of Musulman, the seventh Emperor  
of the TURKS.*

**A**lthough that *Musulman* shewed himself exceedingly couragious before he vanquished his brother, yet shall you see but two battailes in this Table:  
That

That which you see a far off is the same, whereof I have spoken; and the other which you see near hand, is one that he obtained against a brother of his, called *Moyfes*, who had established himself in *Greece*: And truly the History doth declare, that *Musulman* did in his own person perform miracles at that battel, whereof he had all the glory, and all the advantage; but as soon as he saw that he was peaceable in his State, he abandoned himself in such sort to voluptuousness, as he became more cowardly, than he was valiant before, so that *Moyfes* having rallied his forces, which were dispersed by his defeat, gave battel again to *Musulman*, who shamefully fled, was taken, and brought to his brother, that quickly revenged the death of *Jesue* by taking away his life. But let us behold the sequel of the History of this third Sonne of *Bajazet*, which will not be long.

*The Pourtrait of Moyfes, the eighth Empe-  
ror of the TURKS.*

**M***oyfes* having reigned but three years, you may not expect the sight of many conquests, in this Table; all that he could doe was to give some rest unto *Asia*, to spoil the Country of the *Bulgarians*, take the Town of *Spenderovia*, reduce the *Pogdan* to his obedience, and win the battel which his Nephew *Mahomet* presented him with, who not long after rallied his forces, and came upon him with a fresh charge, where *Moyfes* had the worst, by being abandoned of his Souldiers in this fight, so that he was taken in a marish with one of his hands cut off, whereof they soon cured him by putting him to death. Now though this Table be not much filled, yet certainly it is none of the meanest; the colours of it are so Vive, the digesting of it so beautifull, this order of the Architecture so well understood, as it may be said in viewing this piece, that the art of the Painter hath supplied the defect of the matter.

*The Pourtrait of Mahomet the ninth Emperor of  
the TURKS.*

**A**T length after so many Losses, Captivities, Sackings, Massacres, Fratricides, and civill dissentions, the Turkish Empire began to reassume its antient lustre under the conduct of *Mahomet*, who after he had repulsed all them that had attacked him, conquered *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, and all those other Provinces, which the Painter hath so well represented a far off; his armes were also victorious in divers incounters under the leading of *Amurath* his Eldest sonne. *Mahomet* subdued likewise *Servia*, *Valachia*, a great part of *Sclavonia*, and *Macedonia*; chased all the petty Kings out of the lesser *Asia* to establish a Beglierbey there, which is as much to say, as a Vice-Roy; at last, after he had performed a thousand brave exploits, for a recompence of his vertue, he reigned a long time; and dyed peaceably in his State of a naturall death, exceedingly regretted of all his Subjects. But before we pass on I must cause you to mark one address of the Painter, that peradventure you have not heeded, which is, that to make one know the diversity of Provinces, and Armies, which you have seen throughout all these Tables, he hath alwaies observed the attire, armes, standarts, and briefly all the particular things of every Nation: After this advertisement the rest of these pieces will give you more contentment yet, than the other have done. Let us see then, whether *Amurath* was the worthy successor of his father.

*The Pourtrait of Amurath the second, the tenth Emper-  
ror of the TURKS.*

**T**He Physiognimy of this Prince is not deceiving, and although it doth promise us much, wee shall yet find more: After then that this Prince had defeated *Mustapha*, the last sonne of *Bajazet*, whom the Greeks had made to rise up against him, as also another *Mustapha* his brother, whom the same Greeks had likewise protested, he turned the fury of his armes against them; taking from them the City of *Thessalonica*, which the Painter hath represented unto us as fair as the Historians have described it, and whereof the perspective is so marvellous, as one hath much adoe to believe that the running in of this gate is not effective. But let us return to the Victories of this Prince, who spoiled the higher *Misia*, took the Town of *Senderovia*, conquered the Countries of *Sarmian*, and of *Sargan*, two mighty Princes of the lesse *Asia*, and the Town of *Coni* from the *Caraman*: The Hungarians having in the mean time broken the peace which they had contracted with him, he returned into *Europe*, and was so fortunate, that the Christian Gallies, which lay at the streight of *Helespont* to hinder his passage, were constrained by foul weather to retire; he in the mean while came to that memorable plain, which gave name to the famousst battel that ever was heard spoken of. And see you not how the Painter hath been pleased to represent it? Mark this Squadron a little which gives ground, and this other which is broken; consider the left wing which is routed; observe this close Battalion, which is going to attacque this other that is ready to fly: As for the body of the Battail, where you see so great a disorder, and such a confusion of dead horses, men overthrown, blood spilt, and armes broken, it is here in this place, where the Painter would represent the death of *Ladislaus*, which arrived in this battel, with the loss very near of all the Nobility of *Hungary*; some fighting to revenge the death of their Prince, and others to recover his body; but to shew clearly that the victory was on *Amurath's* side, the Painter hath represented Renown, which seems to fly over his Troopes for to advertise them of it. Howbeit not to stand longer hereupon, it shall suffice to say, that after the battel of *Varnes* he conquered *Peloponnesus*; that he dismissed himself absolutely from his Empire, which to took upon him again soon after, for to obtain a battel against the valiant *Huniades*; he made the King of *Bosnia* also his Tributary, which was his last victory: For the couragious *George Scanderbeg Castriot*, King of *Albania*, who had been his Slave, and that had acquired unto himself with so much justice the glorious title of the Buckler of Christendom, opposed all his enterprises with such valour, as this great Prince, seeing himself forced so raise his siege from before *Croya*, dyed with grief and spight at it.

*The Pourtrait of Mahomet the second, the eleventh  
Emperor of the Turks.*

**I**T was not without some cause that this Prince would be surnamed *Bovi*, which is to say, Great, or the Terror of the World, seeing all his actions have been so great, and high, that if his excellent qualities had been without blemish, this Prince had been incomparable. He was great in his enterprises, great in courage, great in conduct, great in prudence, a great Politician, great in conquest, great in beauty, and in subtilty of wit; but he was also great in impiety, in dissoluteness, in revenge, in perfidiousness, and in ambition. The greatness of his courage, and of his enterprises, carried him against the *Greeks*, *Hungarians*, *Trebisondians*, *Misians*, *Valachians*, *Transilvanians*, *Bosnians*, *Albanians*, *Rhodians*, *Venerians*, and divers other people. In conclusion, my dear *Doria*, this Prince had to do with all the Warlike Nations of the World; but this Table contains too many things to be



explained particularly unto you, wherefore it shall suffice, that you only do admire the exquisite ordering of it, and that I tell you in generall, how *Mahomet* conquered, in two and thirty years that he reigned, twelve Kingdoms, and two Empires, that of *Trebisond*, and that of the *Greeks*, together with this mighty and renowned City of *Constantinople*; as also that of *Croya*, and all *Albania*, *Valachia*, *Bosnia*, *Scodra*, *Peloponessus*, and the Town of *Oiranto*. He reduced the *Caraman* under his obedience, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Synope*, the Iland of *Metelin*; and after the battell which he gained against *Musuccassan*, he constrained him to seek his amity. Howbeit he was not equally fortunate, for the valiant *Huniades*, and the valorous *Scanderbeg*, vanquished sometimes in him the Vanquisher of all others. And whereas ambition was the predominant passion in the heart of *Mahomet*, it followed him even to death, ordaining that upon his Tomb there should be set, after a long narration of all his Victories, in the Turkish tongue, this subscription in Latin

*He had a purpose to ruin Rhodes, and superb Italy.*

But the divine justice extinguished his desires with his dayes.

*The Pourtrait of Bajazet the second, the twelfth  
Emperor of the Turks.*

THE life of this Prince is so replenished with divers adventures, as it cannot be defined certainly, whether he had more good than bad fortune. The beginning of his Reign was established by three Battels which he obtained against a Brother of his, who was constrained to fly unto *Rhodes*. When he was at peace he conquered *Caramania*, did great spoyle in *Moldavia*, took the Town of *Chilum*, together with the Castle, and that of *Moncastro*, the chief of the Province; he took also *Lepanto*, *Modon*, *Coron*, and *Jangua* from the Christians, whom he defeated in a Navall-fight, as you may behold in this Table, where the Painter verily hath done prodigies. See you not, continued *Ibrahim*, these two vessels grappled together? consider a little with what ardour the assailants seem to go to the fight, and how one of these Janizaries striving to leap aboard this small vessel is repulsed by this Christian, how in falling he hath seized on his enemy, whom he drags along with him. Behold also on the left hand this vessel, which the *Turks* had invested, and how that rather than they would yeeld, they have blown up themselves; observe withall these flakes of fire, which light upon this other vessell, whose tackle and sayles already begin to burn; and how this great cloud of smoke, which steals away the rest of the Army from our eyes, is an address of the Painter, who wanting room hath repaired that defect by this invention. But without standing on the last disorders of this Prince, which were strange, whether for the violent deaths that he caused, or for that which he received, let us pass on to this other piece.

*The Pourtrait of Selim, the thirteenth Emperor  
of the Turks.*

THIS gloomy physiognomy, and this haughty look, do not ill paint forth unto us the ambition and cruelty of *Selim*, but they conceal from us his virtues which certainly were very great. He was prudent, and advised amidst dangers prompt and vigilant in his enterprises, indefatigable in War, of an invincible courage, a reasonable Justice maver his cruelty, extremely liberall; and that which is of most marvail in this Prince is, that he was never vanquished after he

was Emperor. He loved the reading of History, he made verses in his own tongue, was very skillfull in Painting, and even to the point, that he sent, as I have already declared, the Battell which he obtained against the Sophy, drawn with his own hand, unto the *Perians*, who conserve it still unto this day in their Treasure. There is also a great number of his works to be seen in the Seraglio: He was very Eloquent, and nothing curious of the magnificence of Apparell; and that which I most admire in him, is, that he alwayes refused those adorations which are accustomed to be rendered to the Turkish Emperors, never suffering any to cast themselves on the ground in speaking to him, nor to do him reverence on their knees. And truly if this Emperor had not blemished his glory by that prodigious desire of reigning, which carried him to take away the life of him, from whom he had received his; to cause two of his Brothers, eight of his Nephews, and as many of his Bassas to be strangled, he had been excellent in all things. But to pass over his Victories lightly, because time doth press us, I will onely tell you in few words, that he won a famous Battle of the Sophy at *Zalera*; that he took *Tauris*, which he kept not long; and *Kerman* at his return; he rendered himself Master of *Aladulia*, after he had vanquished King *Ustagen*; he passed into *Siria*, where he defeated *Campson Gauri*, Sultan of *Cairo*, in a battel neer to *Aleppo*, which was rendered unto him, as well as *Damascus*, and all the rest of *Siria*; from thence going to *Jerusalem*, he conquered all *Palestina* by the valour of *Sinan Bassa*, who obtained a Battel neer to *Gaza*; whereupon *Selim*, having passed the deserts of *Egypt*, fought a battel vvith *Thomembey* hard by *Macharea*, and constrained him to retire to *Cairo*, where was given the most memorable battel of our Age, for it lasted three dayes and three nights in continuall fight; but in the end *Selim* was victorious, and forced the *Mamelucks* to abandon the City unto him; and having recovered new forces, they were utterly defeated, and *Thomembey* taken prisoner. After he had given the pillage of *Cairo* to his souldiers, as you may see in this Table, where this dreadfull disorder is so well exprest, he went and took also *Alexandria*, *Damietta*, *Tripoli*, and all the rest of *Egypt* and *Arabia*: One of his Bassas obtained likewise a great Victory against the *Persians*. But at last, after he had been in so many fights, won so many battails, and conquered so many Provinces, in less than two years, as he thought to return triumphant to the seat of his Empire, he dyed at *Chinurli*, in the very same place where before he had given battel to his father; after he had reigned only eight years.

*The Power and of Soliman the second, the fourteenth  
Emperor of the Turks.*

**T**HE Victories of great *Soliman* are so universally known of all the World, that upon the least considering of this Table, you will bring them unto your memory again, it being impossible but that same hath acquainted you with them: You will easily then know *Belgrade* and the Isle of *Rhodes*, where this Emperor stood in need of all his conduct, and of all his valour. This Battel which you see a far off, is that of *Mohacs* vvhich he gained against the *Hungarians*, wherein dyed *Lewis* King of *Hungary*. This City, which here I shew you (continued *Ibrahim*) is *Bagader*, where *Soliman* was crowned King of *Persia*; but though I have some share in this War, as well as in that of *Nasolia*, vvhich you may see also in this Table, I will refer this narration to another time, that may be more opportune for us. I know, my dear *Doria*, that this proposition displeases you, but you must obey me, for you vvill not be the strongest at *Constantinople*; and though you may absolutely command *Iustiniano*, yet must you at this time follow the pleasure of *Ibrahim*. Let us make an end then of running over the Victories of *Soliman* again, and without particularising every one, it shall suffice me to tell you, that *Assyria*, and *Medopotamia* do obey him; that he hath taken *Sirigonia*, and *Alba Regalis*; that he hath made six expeditions into *Hungary*; that he hath subdued *Aladulia*, and

and the Kingdom of *Aden*, with many other Towns on the red sea; that he hath rendred *Argier* Tributary; that he hath also subjected *Piallis*, *Tripoli*, and *Gerbes*: But after all these things, that which I find to be most excellent in the life of this Prince is, that he conquered a Kingdom for to restore it unto him to whom it appertained, by rendring unto him again all the strong places that he had in his hands, which he performed in the person of *John* King of *Hungary*; and I more esteeme of him for having surmounted this ambition, which is naturall to all Monarchs, than I commend him for all his Victories: And whereas I make more account of the gifts of Nature than of the presents of Fortune, I had rather make you an Elogium of his person in particular, than speak further to you of his Conquests, which are already but too great on Christendom side. Behold then, my dear *Doria*, this Majesticall face, and this vertuous physiognomy; did you ever see a more goodly man? or one of a better aspect? There appears in his eyes a vivacity of spirit, and a sweetness which charmeth hearts, and in the air of his face a certain tranquillity, which sufficiently sheweth that this Prince is master of his passions, and that without doubt he hath no interior trouble; I know not whether my affection to him doth blind or dazle me, but I see something of such state in his port, and of so much majesty over all his person, as I hold it impossible for one to look upon him, and not to love him: Furthermore this goodly apparance is not deceitfull, and the qualities of this Princes soul are so noble and vertuous, that if he were a Christian he would be of all men the most perfect. He hath together, both much valour, and much conduct; he is infinitely just towards his own people, and exceeding clement towards his enemies; he is so rigorous an observer of his word, as he would resolve rather to lose his Empire, than not to keep it, when once he hath given it: He is great in spirit, great in judgement, and great in memory; he understands the Mathematicks, and the universall History, so admirably, as nothing can be propounded to him touching those matters which he resolves not upon the place. Finally, he is a Prince that possesseth all virtues, and that hath never been vanquished save by one only passion; but whereas it is the noblest of all others, I think you will pardon him this weakness; he hath been then passionately amorous of divers women, but amongst the rest of the Sultana *Roxelana*, whom he would needs espouse, to the end she might partake with him in that supreme greatness which the *Orthoman* Princes do not lightly bestow, and which to conserve wholly to themselves, they never, or seldom marry; howbeit love was stronger in *Soliman*, than either reason of State, or the example of his Predecessors. Behold, my dear *Doria*, a simple draught of this great Emperor, whom ere it be long you may compare with the originall, that so you may judge, whether I have robbed him of any thing, or flattered him; for this great Prince hath commanded me to bring you to the Seraglio, when as I go thither to take my leave of him; in the mean space, since we are pressed with time, let us make an end of viewing this house.

In saying so, *Ibrahim* opened a door, which gave upon the Lobby, whereof I have already spoken, but before they past on, *Doria* testified to *Ibrahim* how glad he was of the hope he had given him that he should present himself to the Grand Signior; he rendred him thanks also for having so punctually explained all those peeces, by abridging unto him the History of so great an Empire, which he had never understood but very confusedly before. He would have said more, if our illustrious Bassa would have suffered him, but his impatience appeared so visibly in his eyes, that *Doria* without further stay went out of the Gallery smiling into the Lobby, from whence they past through three outward chambers, which were all of a floor, before they came to *Ibrahim*'s: the ceiling of them were very magnificent, and the meanest of the Hangings were of cloth of Gold, of Tinsell, or Persian Tapestry; the floors, as of all the rest, were made of suitable peeces of severall Marbles, and in proportionable divisions. After he had stayed a while to consider all these things, they entred into the Bassas chamber, where *Doria* was surpris'd with the furniture of it, both for the richness, and fashion thereof; for it was hanged



hanged with black Velvet, set all over with tears and flames imbroidered in pearl: Here it was where *Ibrahim* desired his dear *Doria* to remember the things which he should see in this chamber, more particularly than all the rest of the Palace, to the end he might testifie to the incomparable *Isabella*, that she had always reigned in his heart, and that to conserve the memory of her, he would never open his eyes in waking, without beholding some marks of his love; he caused him then to observe, that in the feeling of this chamber were five great Ovals, in each of which was a Table, & between every of them hung festons of flowers and fruits, all gilt; the rest of the feeling being done with cornishments, whereof some were of azure, some of burnished gold. In the middle piece, which was greater than the rest, was a woman represented, whom *Doria* presently knew, because she had somthing of *Isabella* in her, although it was a very imperfect resemblance; for *Ibrahim* having lost her picture, could do no more but instruct the Painter with the colour of her hair, with the form of her face, with all the features of it in particular, with the vivacity of her complexion, with her stature, and with her besome; for as for the air and gracefulness, which cannot be exprest, but in calling it the soul of beauty, it is a thing that cannot pass from our Imagination to that of another, and that consequently did not permit *Ibrahim's* Painter to make any marvellous picture of *Isabella*; but in conclusion it was resembling enough for to cause them, who knew her, to judge that she was thought of when this piece was made. This imperfect resemblance having entertained them a while, *Doria* considered all this Table, and saw (as I have already declared) a woman sumptuously apparell'd, who trampled under her feet honor, vertue, and love, which were seen represented with the marks whereby they are known; and that with her right hand, lifted up on high, she took from fortune, who appeared over her in the air, a little Crown, which she seemed to receive very contentedly, with this Motto, *All for her*. *Doria* easily comprehended this Embleme, and no way doubted, but that the Bassa had caused it to be made out of the opinion he had, that *Isabella* had despised her love, her promises, and her constancy, to espouse the Prince of *Masseran*, who was but a petty Sovereign. After he had commended the art of the Painter, and the invention of the design, the Bassa leading him towards one of the corners of the chamber, the better to view the second Oval, demanded of him whether this other Table would be as intelligible to him as the first? *Doria* approaching to it, and considering it, beheld a Love, in whose face choler and fury were so well painted, as it was easie to imagine that he himself had burst his bow, broken his arrows, thrown away his quiver, and torn his head-band, which were seen scattered about him; and that which better expressed his despair, was, that having nothing left him of all the marks of his Divinity but his torch, he plunged it, all flaming as it was, into a fountain to extinguish it, with this Motto, *I cannot*. *Doria* was so ravished with this Table, as he could not forbear considering all the beauties of it, and vvhenceas the explication of it was easie, he told the Bassa, that he would pardon him for that he would have extinguished so fair a fire as that vvhervvith he was inflamed, at such a time as he thought it to be unjust, but that he held him happy for that he could not do it, and for having conserved a flame, vvhich he could not put out vvithout a crime: After this he admired the Art of the Painter, and principally of the torch, vvhich this Love plunged into the fountain, vvhence the excellent Workman had so vvell represented that naturall antipathy betvvixt vvater and fire, as never did any one behold a thing better imitated: This fountain seemed to boil vvith choler to see her enemy so neer her; and this flame desiring to eloin it self from that which would destroy it, seemed exceedingly to strive to get from it, and rising up on high in wreathing about the torch, melted so great a quantity of wax, as all the fountain seemed to be covered over vvith it. *Ibrahim* not suffering *Doria* to admire this piece any longer, constrained him to look upon the third, desiring him howsoever not to bestovv much time in it, because that Table did outrage *Isabella*, as vvell as another vvhich he should see afterwards: He shewed him then the same vvoman he had seen before, but in a different habit; for here the Painter

Painter had given her a robe of changeable Taffeta, vvhere all colours reigned equally; this vvoman vv as on the brink of the Sea, the agitation vvhereof she beheld vvith delight; in one hand she held a Crescent, vvith the other she seemed to point at a Camelion, vvwhich vv as at her feet, and that leaning his body on a part of her robe had assumed all the colours of it; the rest of that creature vv as grayish like to the earth vvhereon it stood, vvith this Motto, *Yet more.*

After that *Doria* had seen this piece, he told the *Bassa*, that he had reason to say it did outrage *Isabella*, in accusing her of inconstancy, but since this crime had been committed through the malice of fortune, he should one day obtain his grace for it: This said, they passed to the other end of the chamber, and beheld in the fourth Table, a proper man, and of a good aspect, that seemed very sad; he had on the one side the same *Isabella*, whom they had seen before, and on the other, death, vvith this Motto, *The one, or the other.*

Now although this piece vv as admirably well done, yet vvould not *Doria* stay to consider it, but onely told the *Bassa*, that the noble despair vvich he had shewed in this Table, rendred him vvorthy to be put, at his return to *Genova*, into the possession of an happiness, vvich he could never lose again but by death alone; howvvbeit in the mean time he vv as most assured, that albeit this picture did not fill the imagination vvith a fair Idea, yet vvould it be more pleasing to *Isabella*, than that other, vvwhere the Painter had given her a robe of all the colours of the Rain-bovv. The *Bassa* then vvith him to the other side of the chamber, told him, that this, vvich he vv as now going to shew him, vvould not like enough please her ere a vvhit more, if she had not the goodness to consider, that his love had howvvsoever been so strong, as to make him conserve vvith some delight the very marks of her contempt, and inconstancy, vvich he had believed to be true; he caused *Doria* then to behold the last picture of this feeling. It vv as a Land-skip, vvhere the Prince vv as seen again holding an heart in her hand, that vv as all of a flame, and not far from her a great fire of stravy, vvhere the Painter had so vvell imitated nature, as it vv as easie to perceive, that howvv vive soever this flame vv as, yet could it not long indure: There vv ere also flashes of lightning seen darting at her head, vvith his Motto, *Less durable.*

*Doria* then accused *Ibrahim* of injustice, and told him, that if this piece had been less excellent, he should hardly have pardoned him the wrong he did *Isabella*, but he vv as so ravished to see those vvaving flames, vvwhich came out of a cloud, and that spread themselves over all the piece, leaving an impression of fire and light, vvich seemed even to redouble, and lessen, as if the cloud had opened, and shut it self, that he ceased to accuse him, for to praise the Painter, vvich he did vvith so much aggregation, as *Ibrahim* vv as constrained to urge him more than once to view a picture, vvich he had caused to be set over his Chimney: Now he had no sooner cast his eye upon it, but he vvowed it vv as the best of them all; the ordering of it vv as rare, the design extraordinary and new, the colours most agreeable, the perspective excellent; in conclusion this Table vv as drawn vvith so bold an hand, as it might well be called a Master-piece of this art. A rock vv as seen there in the midst of an enraged Sea, vvich the Painter had done so vvell, as those foaming vvaves, that brok themselves against the rock, seemed to have some motion: There vv as seen also a little from thence the wrack of a Vessell, vvhereon the thunder fell, vvich vv as seen to issue like a torrent of fire out of the cloud, that seemed to rive asunder vvith such violence, as little lacked but that one sense deluded did not deceive the other, in making it to imagine that it heard that, vvich vv as seen so vvell represented. This mervailous Artisan had likewise so vvell painted that confused mixture, vvich is seen in the air during a great tempest, vvhere rain, vvind, snow, hail, flashes of lightning, and obscurity, reign all at once, that one could not behold it vvithout some terror: Vpon the top of this rock vv as an open tomb seen, vvhereunto a man, vvary, and vvet all over, advanced in great hast, holding a Love in one hand, and vvith the other pointing to the tomb, vvith this Motto, *Let us save our selves there.*

You

You will without doubt find another sanctuary, said *Doria* to the illustrious *Bassa*, who, answering him no otherwife than with a sigh, made him enter into his Cabinet, the door whereof was on the right hand of the chimney, not far from his bed, which after the custom of the Country was rolled up in a great Persian tapestry Counterpoint of silke and gold. But if *Doria* had admired all that he had seen in this Palace, he beheld with astonishment the magnificence of this Cabinet, whereof the embowed roof and walles were enriched with a foliage of pretious stones, upon a ground of black marble, where birds, flowers, and fruites, were seen so admirably well done, that the art surmounted the matter, although Topazes, Jacints, Opales, Emeraulds, Rubies, Diamonds, and Carbuncles were the colours wherewith all these things were represented. Round about this Cabinet were shelves of Ebony, sustained by curtroles of gold, which projected out of the wall wall by equall distances, the edges, and uper part of these shelves, were enriched with Orphéury, enameled onely with white and black, the better to set off those things which were upon them; but to speak that in few words, and confusedly, which would be too long to describe in order, one might see there Caskets of different Ambers, great Vases of Christall of the rock, of Cornaline, and Agate, with branches of Corral, which might rather be called trees, by reason of their prodigious greatnes: Finally, all that *Persia*, *China*, *Japon*, and all the Orientall Countries do produce of most rare, rich, and beautifull, were found amass'd together in this place. After that *Doria* had said all, that admiration, and amazement can make them say, who love, and know rarities, they repass'd through the chamber, to go unto a door that was opposite to that of the Cabinet, whereby one entered into *Ibrahims* Bath, who, being accommodated with all exterior things, according to the custom of the Country where he lived, did not fail in having a goodly and magnificent one. It was a place spacious enough, in form Octangular, invironed about with seates, whereunto one ascended by four steps of Jasper, and Chalcedony, whereof the two lovvermost vvere covered vvith vvater even up to the brim of the third, the fourth being vvholly out of the vvater: At each of the eight angles vvas a Colum, after the Corinthian manner, of Jasper mingled vvith divers colours; the Columnnes were planted on the fourth step, which served them for a pedestall, with their Bases, Capitalls, Frizes, and Corniches; the Frize was carved in half relieve, where naked children were seen, who seemed to combat in the water with little Sea Monsters, and to wrastle with them, with efforts so agreeable to their yeares, as the workman deserved no little glory for the same. All these figures were so lively set forth, as they seemed to move, so easily may the imagination be deceived by things that are well represented; over the Frize was the Cornish, and above that just perpendicular to every Colum rose up a twyning wreath of Oaken leaves, laid one upon another, made of green Jasper, and bound with filets of gold, mounting up on the ribbs of the vaulting, and meeting the middle in the form of a Chaplet of Triumph. All the walls were overlaid with a compound stone, called *Aventurina*, and whereof they seemed to be framed, so excellently was this work contrived. But amongst all the beauties of the place the greatest was, that between those eight Columns, whereof I have already spoken, there were as many Niches, four of which were filled with great Vases of gold, that served to lay the perfumes in, and other things necessary to the Bath; the other four, which separated those former, were filled with four Nimphes of white marble, so admirably fair, as Nature hath never made any thing more beautifull, than the Idea of this excellent workman: These figures were all in different actions; some of them seemed to uncloth themselves for to enter into the Bath; others to come out of it, putting on their cloathes again; but all with such art, as *Doria* confessed, that Sculpture had never shewed any thing more perfect. He considered also that the water, which was seen in the Bath, fell into it through two Vases of Christall, which were held by two men, laid along on the brim of the Bath, and represented as Rivers use to be painted: Out of one the Vases issued hot water, and out of the other cold, to the end one might by that mixture find that



that just mediocrity requisite for those that bath. After he had seen all these things, the grand Visier made *Doria* go forth at a secret door, and pass down by a back stair to one of the doores of the Hall; and though it be the custom of the Turkes in generall not to be very costly in their dyer, yet as the Grandes do not use to follow the common fashion, so *Ibrahim* left not to be in that particular, as in all other things. *Doria* saw in the middle of the Hall a great Persian Carpet extended on the ground, with a Table-cloth after the manner of the Country, upon which were set a many of silver Chargers, where in each of them were seen twelve great dishes of that which we call the essence of porcelain, replenished with divers sortes of meates; for it is the custom of the Turkes never to eat in any metall; howbeit they are not without great store of silver vessels, onely for magnificence; and indeed the grand Visiers Cabbord of plate was so sumptuous, as Europe hath not a King that can shew so fair a one. *Doria* then beholding that prodigious amass of Basons of gold engraven, great Vases of sundry formes and of divers bignesses, Flaggons, wyater Pots, and Cisternes of gold, with Lions muzzles and Dolphins half imbolls, could not forbear telling *Ibrahim* that *Isabella* would dye for joy, if she certainly knew at what rate he bought the possession of her; but the Bassa returning him no other answer therunto than a sigh, told *Doria* it was time to dine, that they might afterwards go and take their leave of *Soliman*; that in the mean space, whereas their exterior ceremonies were different, although their minds were not, he had given order that he should be served in his chamber. *Doria* went out then of this Hall, after he had observed, that the Persian Carpet was set all about with great Cushions of cloth of Gold, upon Carpets of the same stuff, for *Ibrahim* and the Officers of the Empire which did eat with him, to sit upon. The Bassa would have conducted his dear *Doria* to his lodging, but he would not suffer him, so that he was constrained to leave him in the hands of an Italian slave, to whom he confided for all things. These two friends were not long at meat, for at this time love and friendship produced the same impatience in them both; the Bassa came into *Doria*'s chamber just as he was going out, having taken a resolution together to go immediately to the Seraglio, that they might part away the night ensuing. The Italian slave assured the Bassa, that in the evening he should have such an habit as *Doria* wore; for *Ibrahim* had caused him to quit that of a slave, as soon as he was at liberty, and by the means of those Jews, of whom I have already spoken, procured him one of the Italian fashion. They went away then to the Seraglio, where being arrived, *Ibrahim* made *Doria* put on a Turkish robe, no stranger being permitted to speak to the Sultan but with this ceremony. The Bassa entered in first, to let his Highness know, that according to his order he had brought his dear *Doria*; *Soliman* shewed himself much satisfied therewith, howbeit though he were somewhat impatient to see him, yet would he for all that speak once more to *Ibrahim* without witnesses, wherefore he caused him to pass along with him into his Cabinet, whether he was no sooner come, but looking on our illustrious Bassa with eyes where generosiey combatted grief, and retaining the tears which kindness and amity would have shed in this hard separation, he spake unto him with such obliging terms, as *Ibrahim* was not long without partaking with him in his melancholy, so certain it is that passions do easily pass from one spirit to another, as well in friendship, as in love. The Sultan having observed by the change of the Bassa's countenance, that his soul was moved, desired his pardon for having troubled his pleasure, and accused himself of inhumanity for not letting him part without shewing his grief, to the end he might not have excited him; but to excuse him in this encounter he was onely to consider, that the love he bare him was so strong, as he would with less pain divide with him his Empire, than be separated from him; that nevertheless he was generous enough not to repent him of the grace which he had granted him, albeit the execution of it was more difficult than he had thought it to be; but to comfort him in his absence, he prayed him not to take it ill, if he desired one oath more from him, which might assure him he would within six moneths return to *Constantinople*. *Soliman* had no sooner done speaking, but the Grand Visier,

who never gave place to any man in generosities, cast himself at his feet, and protested unto him, that he would not depart before his Highness had testified that he would rely on the word he had given him to return precisely within the time prefixed; that he esteemed himself very unhappy in not being known to his Highness for that which he was, and that being neither base, ingratefully, nor a liar, he was for all that suspected of those three crimes by a Prince, for whom he would sacrifice his life with joy, who reigned in his heart far more absolutely, than over his people; and who touched his soul with so much tenderness, as he plainly felt that he could not turn his steps towards *Isabella*, without turning his eyes towards *Soliman*. *Ibrahim* pronounced these last words with such earnestness, as the Sultan no way doubted but that he had truly expressed his heart; he raised him up, then embracing him, and promised him that he would live in some order of this assurance of seeing him again; that in the mean time it was not just to let *Doria* stay any longer without, and that therefore he should go and fetch him in. *Ibrahim* obeying this commandment, called him at the door of the Cabinet; as soon as he appeared *Soliman* spake to him in his own language, for, as I have already said, this Prince understood it perfectly, and made him such an Elogium of our illustrious *Bassa*, as caused him to blush more than once; he spake of his valour, of his prudence, and of his conduct in great matters; finally he assured him, that he was as good a General of an Army, as he was a good and faithful friend; he told him further, that he desired him to receive his friendship, as he already possessed his, having begun to love him as soon as *Ibrahim* had made known to him, by the recital of his adventures, what his merit was, and the affection which he bore him; moreover, that as all the interests of *Ibrahim* were his, so he gave him thanks not only for all the services he had rendered him, but for all those which he should render him in time to come; and for a mark of the obligation wherein he would stand engaged to him for it, he conjured him to accept of a *Seymitar* which he gave him, whereof the hilt and scabbard were all covered over with Diamonds. *Doria* answered to all these things with all the respect that he owed to so great a Prince, and being fallen on his knees to receive that precious gage of *Soliman's* liberality, he was with a great deal of sweetness and civility taken up by the Sultan, who prayed him to assure *Isabella*, that the constancy of her *Justino* had been so firm during the time that he believed her to be unfaithful, as he durst swear for him, that he had never sought after, nor affected glory, but out of the hope of dying more nobly; he entreated him also to present her from him with a box of Gold, set with Emeralds, which was filled with two Chains, the first was of Diamonds of an excessive greatness, and the second of Pearls, so big, so round, so even, and so clear, that the Orient hath never shewed us fairer. *Ibrahim* would have spoken to render *Soliman* thanks, and to have made himself the bearer of that Treasure, but he imposed silence on him, and said, that it would be enough for him to entertain *Isabella* with his own affairs, without charging himself with a complement from another. But at last the Sultan being unwilling that *Doria* should see him capable of any weakness, and feeling that this conversation could not long endure without his falling again into melancholy, he told the *Bassa* that he had given order unto the *Tesqueregi-bali*, who is the Grand Signiors principall Secretary, to make up the Ambassador of *Genova* dispatch; that his Letter was conceived in such pressing terms, as that Republique durst not refuse what he desired of it; that in the mean time, since he must resolve to see him depart, he thought it fit that he should go and give order to his affairs, to the end he might as soon as it was night repair to the Ambassador of *Genova's* vessel, which he had caused to come from *Pera* to *Constantinople*, and would attend for them at the Port. This said, he dismissed *Doria*, after he had testified much affection unto him, and retained *Ibrahim* for one moment more to take his last farewell of him; it was at this instant that *Soliman* shewed the greatest marks of his good-will to the Grand Visier, since it is most certain, that silent sorrows, though they be not so eloquent as others, yet are they at the least more persuasive. When *Doria* was gone the Sultan embraced *Ibrahim*, but who-

howsoever he forced himself, he could say no more, than go my dear *Ibrahim*, restore *Isabella* to life again, but when you shall have revived her, come and preserve mine. This discourse touched the Bassa so vively, as all the answer he could make was, that his return should quickly justify his departure; after which *Soliman* made a sign to him to be gone. He went avay then to his dear *Doria*, who stayed for him in another chamber; in their way back they talked of nothing but great *Soliman*; *Doria* was so satisfied of him, as he was constrained to confess, that he should want common sense if he were not charmed by the rare qualities of so excellent a Prince. *Ibrahim* answered hereunto with so much melancholy, as *Doria* was fain to speak of the Princess to him for to draw him out of it; wherefore he dextrously told him, that *Isabella* would be astonished at the present which she should receive from him. At this sweet name *Ibrahim* began to take heart again, and somewhat dissipating his heavyness, he turned all his thoughts to his departure. As soon as he was at his Palace, he entred with *Doria* into his chamber, where having sent for the Italian slave, he understood by him, that his habit was ready; whereupon he called the principall Officers of his house once more before him, and told them that he was going to depart away upon that occasion wherewith he had acquainted them before, and therefore they should give order to the Porter of his Palace, that he might not be troubled for the rest of the day, but to send such as came about generall affairs to the Bassa of the Sea, who during his absence was to deal for him: After this he commanded them to withdraw, and remained alone with *Doria*, and the slave that had brought him his habit. Now the night beginning to approach, he held it time to think of parting, and this slave being of counsell with them, was appointed by him to go and take that other of *Monaco*, and conduct him to the Port, whether they would come to them. *Ibrahim* having put on his habit, took some Jewels with him, in case hee should stand in any need upon the way by some unexpected encounter, and perceiving it to be dark enough for them to go forth without discovery, he caused *Doria* to descend by a back-stair, which brought them to a door that opened into the Garden, the passage out of the which not being far distant from the Port, gave them the commodity to get thither easily without being seen. And whereas *Ibrahim* knew precisely whereabout the Christian vessels lay, and especially those of Ambassadors, he went directly to the place, where he was attended for by the order of the Tesqueregibassi, who when he gave the Ambassador his dispatch, had ordained him to be as soon as it was night at the Key, there to receive the two slaves of whom he had been spoken unto him at such time as he had audience from his Highness: According hereunto, *Ibrahim* (whom we will hereafter call *Justiniano*) after he had overtaken the slave of *Monaco*, found out the Ambassador, who waiting for him, received him and *Doria* with transports of joy that cannot be exprest; he could not comprehend how two men, who were beleevd to be dead so long before, should be met withall at *Constantinople*: But if his joy were excessive, that of our two friends was not less, for they knew him exceeding well, as being of the Illustrious family of the *Lomelines*. *Justiniano* thought then that he began already to breath the air of his country; but the place being nothing commodious to complement in, they embarqued themselves, and a little after, when the Moon was up they weighed Anchor, and hoisting up their sayls, they made towards the West, with so favourable a wind as the Art of the Pilot was almost unprofitable in this encounter. This prosperous beginning of Navigation made the Mariners to shout for joy, and gave them hope, that they should see the coast of *Genova* ere it were long. But amidst the common gladness, *Justiniano* could not forget that he went from *Constantinople* without quitting it utterly, and that by an invisible chain, which retained him there, he was to return unto it a slave from *Isabella*; this troublesome thought for all that lasted not long, and his imaginations flattered him so sweetly, in making him see that he was every minute drawing near unto the Princess, as losing the sight of *Constantinople*, he also lost the remembrance of all his misfortunes, and abandoned himself wholly to joy.



# IBRAHIM, OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The First Part.

### *The Fourth Book.*



Ever was voyage more prosperous, than that of *Justiniano*, never did the winds more justly second the desires of the Pilot, and never was the Sea more constant in calmness of weather, than it was in bringing this Lover back again to the Haven, from whence the tempest had driven him. But to favour the impatience he was in to be with *Isabella*, let us only say, without particularizing his course, that after he was come to all the Vessells, which the Grand Signior had caused to be arrested, and drawn out of captivity all the Christian Slaves which were found in the severall Ports where they touched, by vertue of an absolute power that he had from the Sultan; after, I say, that he had passed the Archipelago, and left *Ciprus* on the left hand, this prosperous Fleet arrived in a few dayes within sight of the Land of *Genova*: There it was where the Ambassador began to reap the fruit of his voyage, by the pleasure he took in thinking that he was going to enter into his City, as it were in triumph, by bringing thither again those so many Vessells which restored to the People their kindred and friends, to the Nobility their children and their riches, and to the Senate the Grace of the Grand Signior, and the lives of two Illustrious Citizens. As for *Doria*, he felt that motion in his soul, which Nature gives to all those who see their Country again after a long exile, and that not troubled by the unruliness of passions following without resistance the thoughts wherewith she inspires them; he had then an extreme pleasure, but yet it was a quiet pleasure. But for *Justiniano*, it was not so with him, he did not look upon this Land as the place of his birth, but as the residence of *Isabella*, and in an instant he passed over again in his memory all that had arrived unto him there; and his transport was so great, that joy produced some effects of grief in him; he changed colour divers times, he was unquiet and musing, and if *Doria* had not forced him to speak, and express his minde by his discourse, it was to be doubted in beholding him, whether it were hope, or whether it were fear, that agitated his soul; whether he regretted *Constantinople*, or desired *Genova*; so certain it is that violent passions pervert the use of the senses. Tears, which ought not to be but the marks of sorrow, serve sometimes for joy; and silence, which seems so proper for sadness, is often the effect of an extreme pleasure; but as we come to one and the same place by divers wayes, they were made contented by different causes, and expressed their joy in severall manners. In the mean time they came still neerer to *Genova*, but not holding it fit that *Justiniano* and *Doria* should enter into  
the

the City before the deliberation of the Senate was known, the Ambassador caused his Vessell to cast anchor three miles from *Genova*, and going to pass into another, after he had assured them that he would obtain their liberty, or be exiled with them, he observed that *Alphonso Spinola*, Captain of one of those redeemed Vessells, and brother to him whom *Justiniano* had slain in defending *Rhodolpho*, hung back, and would not follow him; whereupon he would needs know the cause of it; but *Alphonso*, whose generosity was extreme, seeing himself obliged for his life, and for his liberty to *Justiniano*, who during the voyage had testified unto him with much resentment the grief he had had for the misfortune wherein he had been engaged; and knowing likewise that the death of his brother had hapned with some justice, he besought the Ambassador not to think it strange if he did not attend upon him to *Genova*, being absolutely resolved never to enter into it without his Deliverer; that knowing his Father, as he did, he was well assured that he would with all his power oppose them that would revoke the Sentence which had been given against *Justiniano*; so that to hinder his violence, he purposed to write unto him, that if he would have his sonne again, he must pardon his enemy; that his fortune was conjoynd with his, and that he would never have such a reproach laid upon him, as that a man, who had drawn him out of fetters, and brought him back into his Countrey, should not enjoy the liberty which he had given him. *Alphonso* pronounced this speech with so much earnestness, as all that heard him were ravished with his resolution; and *Justiniano* was so charmed therewith, that not able to forbear imbracing him, and not suffering him to say more, he conjured him that he would not force him to be ingratefull; that if nothing but his blood would satisfie the revenge of his kindred, he would be most ready to shed it for his sake, but having some hope to serve them more profitably in his person, when occasion should present it self, he would spare no care nor good office for it, so as it might be done without offence to his honor; that he had performed a gallant action in desiring to stay with him, but that he should do an unworthy one, and full of inhumanity if he should consent unto it; and that therefore it was more just, that he should go and dry up his fathers tears, and moderate his fury by the joy which his sight would bring him, than to do a thing that would procure him his hatred. *Alphonso* did not yeeld at first to the desire of *Justiniano*, but the Ambassador and *Doria* siding with him, he was constrained to submit to their sense, and to let his inclination be overcome by anothers reason. These illustrious friends parted with so much adoe, as if *Doria* had not perceived by *Justinianos* watch, that the time of the Senates Assembly pressed the Ambassador to depart, if he would have audience as soon as he should arrive, they would have spent a great part of the day in this noble contestation, whereof all the glory consisted in obliging his enemy. But whilst this Fleet resumed their course to aboard *Genova*, let us go to the Port, and see what the people think of it, and whether this agreeable surprize will make them send forth shouts of joy in answer to those of the Mariners. As soon as these Vessells began to appear, a confused noise was heard amongst those that were present on the shore, whereby it appeared that they expected not so happy a success of their Ambassadors voyage; the one said that the Senate was to be advertised of it; others, that Merchants Vessells came not in so great a number together; some, that Pirats durst not approach in that manner if they were not followed by the body of an Army; and all of them together, that the best was to give intelligence thereof, to the end some might be sent to discover them; there were those likewise whose imagination was so troubled with fear, as they verily believed that they distinctly saw Turkish Gallies, and half Moons. In the mean time, whereas the Fleet came still neerer, they might easily discern, that it was the Standard of the Republique which these Vessells carried, the sight whereof dissipated their fear, but it took not from them their amazement, being not able to imagine how they should be so neer unto them, whom they believed to be in chains and slavery; but at length the first of these Vessells being come to the shore, and the Ambassador, who was seen on the poop, being known of the people, which were already gathered

thered together in a very great number, and they no longer doubting but that these vessells, which now they knew, brought them back both their brethren, and their children, such a noise of acclamations arose on the suddain, as they all spake without understanding what they said themselves, and without being understood of others; wives called for their husbands; fathers inquired after their children; some ran into the City to advertise their friends of it; others ran out of it with their whole families; they in the Vessells cried to let them know whether all were well at home; at last so great a noise was formed of all these cries and murmures, as the Ambassador had much ado to make his orders be understood: He commanded all the Chieftaines to accompany him to the Palace, and particularly *Alphonso* not to be far from him; they traversed the City in this sort, followed by the popular multitude, who ceased not from testifying their joy, both by their teares, and by their acclamation. When they were at the Gate of the Palace, the Ambassador advanced three or four steps before his Troop, that he might the better surprise that honorable Company. At his first appearing they sought to know the success of his voyage in his face, but as soon as they perceived all the Commanders of their Vessells, the gravest and most moderate amongst them could not chuse but shew signes of their amazeement, and joy; and when this first emotion was appeased, the Ambassador, having made a low obeisance to the Duke, and the like to the whole assembly, began to speak in this sort.

*The Oration of Antonio Lomelino to the Duke and  
Senate of Genoua.*

**I**F the prosperous success of my voyage had been an effect of my conduct, of my care, and of my address, I should without doubt have had so much modesty as to declare in few words the estate of things, for to attend from so honorable an Assembly the praise which a service of such importance would have deserved, without giving them to my self; and I should also have been so generous, as to have been fully satisfied with the onely thought of having been profitable to my Country; but whereas I have no part in the glory of this action, but contrarily I my self am obliged for my life to the Deliverer of so many illustrious Slaves as I have brought you back, and which are all, either your kinsmen, or your friends, it behoves me, both that I may not be ingratefull in my particular, and that also I may keep you from being so in generall, to report fathfully unto you how the matter hath past, to the end that by understanding all the circumstances you may the better know, how it is the interest of the Republique, which makes me speak with so much earnestness.

You are to understand then, my Lords, that whereas the Emperor *Soliman* believed, that the Law of Nations had been violated in the person of his *Chaoux*, he thought that he might doe the like in that of your Ambassador, so that as soon as I was arrived at *Pera*, and that according to the custom I had demanded audience of his Highness, I saw my self constrained to pass by his order from my Vessell into a streight prison, without telling me the cause thereof, in such sort as he that came to obtain the liberty of others, saw himself deprived of his own, and laden with chains. I was two dayes intreated in this manner with a great deal of rigor, and I very well perceived by the countenance of them which guarded me, that they believed my head was the onely price of my liberty. As I was in this unquietness I saw the Aga of the Janizaries enter, who caused me to be told by Dragoman of the grand Signiores, whom we call an interpreter, that his Highness willing to give me audience had commanded him to conduct me to *Constantinople* without any ceremony; this mutation surpris'd me so much the more, for that I could not imagine the cause of it, having been well enough informed, that *Soliman* doth not easily change his resolutions, and that repenting is a motion of the soul which is almost unknown to him: In the mean time I beheld my fetters broken off, without seeing the



the hand that delivered me, and in this uncertainty I attributed that to the inconstancy of Fortune, which I owed her not at all. But, my Lords, why should I longer conceal this mighty and generous hand which hath delivered me? The impatience which I see in your looks, to know the name of our Deliverer, invites that also which is in me to tell it you; wherefore I must interrupt my order, and without going to *Constantinople* to paint forth unto you the resentment, the choler & the menaces of the Sultan, I say unto you, that he man whom you owe the returns of your vessels, the lives of your children, and the peace of this Republick, was not carried to this brave action by a sense of acknowledment; it is a man who could have revenged himself, instead of serving you, without committing an injustice; it is a man whom you have exiled because he withstood a violence; it is a man whom you have chased away because he had been so generous as to save his enemies life; it is a man whom you have banished because he shed his blood to take part with the weaker, and who by misfortune killed one of your Citizens, not only to secure his own person, but to assist an undefended man; finally, my Lords, it is by *Justiniano* that we are living; it is by him that we breath the air of our Countrey; it is by him that we do not see an Army of an hundred thousand men at your Gates; and it is also by his liberty, and that of *Doria*, who is enjoin'd to his fortune, that you may pay our ransom, as the only price which great *Soliman* hath set to redeem us: It is in preserving this illustrious person that you may preserve the glory of the Senate; and it is upon this condition, that according to the power which I had for it, I have engaged the Publique Faith for the revocation of a Sentence which you signed with regret, and which you accorded rather to the tears of *Philippo Spanola*, whom I see here in this renowned Company, than to Sovereign equity: It is not because I will condemn in him the apprehensions of Nature, but contrarily I purpose to stir them up in his heart; by letting him see that if by misfortune *Justiniano* hath deprived him of one sonne, the same *Justiniano* hath restored him another, in bringing him back *Alphonso*, who with tears in his eyes begs of him by my mouth the grace of his Deliverer. They which are sensible of outrages ought to be so likewise of benefits, especially when injuries have not been done by a premeditated malice, and the services are voluntary: one may tell me peradventure, that the satisfaction should at leastwise be equall to the crime, for the defacing of it out of an incensed spirit, and that *Justiniano* having taken away the life of a child of *Philippos*, it is not enough for obtaining the pardon thereof, that he hath restored his only sonne to his liberty; but grant it were true, that *Justiniano* had done no other thing than break the chains of *Alphonso*, this objection could not be received but by base and weak souls; it being most certain, that a generous man will always prefer the conservation of his liberty before that of his life: It is a good so generally known of all the world, as there is no Nation that hath not made war to conserve it. The most honourable Servitude hath ever found some rebellion in the minds of those who have imbraced it; and if the Religion which we profess, did not prohibit us, from disposing of our selves, there is not a Slave amongst the Turks that would not make himself away with joy, to get out of the miseries which he indures; for if one hath seen at other times both men and women to have recourse to this extreme remedy, because they were for one day only to follow the Charlot of the Victorious, bound with chains of gold, what ought not men do, who laden with irons are sent to the prisons of the black Sea, where it may be said that they enter alive into their graves, being put into deep holes where horror and darkness, which always reign there, are the least of their pains? They feel the rigor of hunger, they are beaten and tormented in their bodies, yea and persecuted in their minds by the injuries and blasphemies which they daily hear from the mouths of their torturers: It is, my Lords, from this dreadfull place that *Justiniano* hath drawn out *Alphonso* to bring him back into his Countrey, for to speak the truth, he could not avoyd the feeling of the miseries which I have represented unto you, or of dying cruelly; his Sentence was pronounced, as well as of that of his companions, and if we had tarried

carried but one day longer before we arrived at the place, where he was retained; *Soliman's* Order had come too late to work that which he had formerly given, and the succour of *Justiniano* had been in vain; Now I leave it to be judged, whether the reparation be equal to the crime; and whether *Philippo* hath reason to oppose the return of *Justiniano*. But not to conceal one important thing that may lead him to a good sense, I must say further, that *Alphonso*, who cannot be worthily enough praised, and whose presence keeps me from speaking more of it, knowing how far he is oblig'd to *Justiniano*, is absolutely resolv'd to follow the fortune of his Deliverer; it is by his order that I speak, and his silence doth sufficiently prove this verity unto you; it is not but to confirm what I say, that he is come hither, & to obey *Justiniano*, who would not let him stay with him as he desired. At last, my Lords, if *Philippo* will preserve his son he must join his prayers to those of all the people, who conjure you to accord the grace of him who hath fill'd your City with abundance, & all the families of *Genova* with joy; all the acclamations of gladness, which you hear at the Palace gate, speak to you for pardon and mercy; but if you oppose the severity of the Law to prayers so just, so pressing, and necessary for the public tranquillity, I have to answer you, that it is not to offend them, but to satisfy justice, which ought to be the rule of them; and that the same Lawes, which will have a crime punished, will also have virtue recompensed. If there be need of examples of Sentences that have been revoked, all antiquity will furnish us therewith: *Aristides* was banished by the Ostracisme; and repealed within three yeares after; *Cimon* was exiled from *Athens*, and intreated to return, even by those that had driv'n him away; at *Sparta* one *Leontidas* was used in the same manner; amongst the *Lacedaemonians* *Philoxenus* had the same fortune; and if we will go to *Rome*, we shall find, that *Seneca* was banished by *Claudius*, and called home again by him for some praises which he had given him in a letter of consolation; that he wrote to *Palibius* his favorite; judge now my Lords, whether flattery spoken with a good grace may enter into comparison with the service that *Justiniano* hath rendred you. But to pass from antiquity to the modern age, have we not seen amongst the Venetians *Hortensio Contarini* condemned to a perpetual banishment, who returned into his Country a little after with the same honors which he formerly had there? And without going to seek for authorities amongst our neighbors, which we may find amongst our selves, hath not one seen *Antonio Fregozo* exiled for ever from his Country, who nevertheless was by a decree from the Senate restored to his former liberty in *Genova*? I could also find many other particulars in History to confirm my proposition, but I think it may suffice, that *Greece* and *Italy* have marked you out the way, which you may follow without fear of failing, after so many illustrious examples. Howbeit you will peradventure say, that albeit you could infringe your Lawes in favor of *Justiniano*, because he hath done you such great services, yet *Doria* cannot pretend to the same grace, seeing he himself oweth his liberty to our Deliverer; but I am to answer you for the glory of this disinterested friend, who hazarded his life by a generosity without examples, to revenge the outrage which the Prince of *Masseran* did to *Justiniano*; that this action seemed so gallant to *Soliman*, when as *Justiniano* recounted it unto him, that he hath judg'd *Doria* worthy of his protection: Besides do you not imagine that the interests of these two illustrious persons can ever be separated. And to tell you all that I think in this encounter, prepare your selves to execute what I have promised, or resolve to lose at the same instant all the commanders of your Vessells, who have every one, as well as myself, solemnly sworn never to enjoy the liberty which *Justiniano* hath gotten us, unless he be partaker of it with us. As for me, who doe certainly know of what importance this affair is for the publique good, I should think that I should betray my Country, if I should conceal the eagerness which I observed in the mind of *Soliman*, when as he told me that one of his slaves having found grace in his sight, had besought him to pardon us; and that he had consented thereunto, provided that you should revoke the Sentences, which you had given against *Justiniano* and *Doria*; wherein if you failed, he swore in fury,

that

that he would come with all the forces of his Empire to destroy our Republique. It is no longer then, my Lords, a particular interest; it is no longer the merit of *Justiniano*, that is to be considered in this occasion; it is not for the hope of brave things that he will doe hereafter, that this grace is to be accorded him; it is not for our ransom that he is to be received with joy; it is not because I have promised it that it is to be resolved on; it is not because reason doth counsell it; it is not because justice doth ordain it; but it is because necessity will have it so. You will say to me, it may be, that the success of this War would still be doubtfull, but, my Lords, if you consider the inequality of your forces you will not doubt at all, especially in a time wherein all the Princes of Christendom are not in a condition to assist their Allies. Shall it be from the Emperor that you will be protected in this occasion, who findes himself too much intangled in the War with the Protestants, and in the affaires of the Councell of *Trent*, for to think of yours? Shall it be from the Kingdomes of *Naples* and *Sicily* that you look for succor, they that are exhausted both of men and money for the Emperor their Master? Shall it be from the *Switzers*, or the *Grisons*, that we shall be assisted in this incounter, they that are engaged in all these Warres, and that are more likely rather to side with the stronger party, than to succor the weaker? It may be that the French will furnish us with that vvhich we cannot find elsewhere, but, my Lords, were they not in War with the Emperor, yet would they see us perish with joy, and the Armies of the Turks could not doe that amongst us, which they would not do here with theirs, if they were in an estate to be revenged on us for our changing. You will tell me further, that the Republicques of *Florence*, *Sienna* and *Lucca* are not so far off, but that one may be succoured from them, but they are so engaged in those two parties, as they have not the liberty to dispose of their forces. The Duke of *Savoy* might also do something for you if he were peaceable in his State, but he himself is so busied in preparing to hinder the passage of the French, as he cannot minde the extremities of his neighbors. I know very well in like manner, that *England* is full of armed men, but, my Lords, it is not to defend us, nor will *Queen Mary* abandon the siege of *London*, which is to put her in possession of her Kingdom, to come and oppose our enemies. Neither will *Scotland* disfurnish her self of her men or War, having such mighty Armies at her frontiers, wherefore we are not to turn our eyes that way. *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Moscovy*, are too near unto the Turk for to imbroil themselves with him. And *Swedishland* and *Denmark* are too far off for any succor to be hoped from thence. At last, my Lords, to leave nothing unsaid, the death of *Julius* the third, and of his successor, falling out in so little a time, permit not his Holiness, who is not yet well established, to think of affaires abroad. And to take all hope from you, the *Venetians*, desiring to conserve that which they hold in the Archipelaglo, will not break the Treaty they have made with the Turk to succor you. You see then, my Lords, that all Christendom doth abandon you, and that there is nothing resting in your choice, but the burning of your City, and the utter destruction of this State, or the return of *Justiniano* and *Doria*. But to justify the ardor of my Zeal, and to mak it appear, that my fear is not without ground, I do here deliver into your hands the Grand Signiors letter, which it may be will carry you more easily to my sense, and reason.

This oration was heard by the Senate with a great deal of attention, amazement and joy; and when the Duke had taken the Grand Signiors letter, he commanded an interpreter to come and expound it; in the mean time a confused voice arose in this Assembly, which made *Philippe Spinola* conjecture, that the grace of *Justiniano* would soon be granted: Never was there heart agitated with so much violence, and whereas this man was sensible and generous, the designs of pardoning or punishing so equally divided his soul, as not knowing vvhich side to turn him to, hee seemed to seek for in the eyes of *Alphonso* wherevwith to fortifie his reason. He vvept all at one instant both for grief and tenderness, the remembrance of the dead, and the return of the living, excited in his mind, both a calm and a tempest; and in this disorder of passions, and apprehensions of nature, vvhich combatted



one with another, and successively destroyed themselves, he was going to be the prey of despair and sorrow, had not the sight of his Sonne been at length found more powerfull, than the image of his past misfortune: He knew so distinctly the sense of *Alphonso* by the motions of his face, as being ashamed to be less generous than he, he let his resentment be surmounted by so noble an example, which presently appeased all the troubles of his spirit; so that feeling himself in a more peaceable estate, and seeing the Duke about to speak, he to prevent him besought him with teares in his eyes to restore that unto *Justiniano*, which his prosecutions had taken from him; it being just, since he had rendred him a sonne, that he should render him his liberty. This discourse so ravished the whole Assembly, that contrary to their custom, and the respect of the place, they sent forth cries of joy, which did not cease very soon; but amongst the rest the young Count of *Lavagna*, together with *Alphonso*, who were present, thought they should never have been silent again; the first could not sufficiently commend this action, and the other could not forbear saying, that he was more obliged to his father for vanquishing himself, than for giving him life. But after every one had praised *Philippe* as much as he deserved, they betook them to their places and gravities again, for to hearken to the Letter, which the Interpreter expounded in this sort by the commandment of the Duke.

*I that am by the grace of the most High, and by the abundance of Miracles of the Chief of his Prophets, Emperor of the Victorious Emperors, King of Kings, Lord of Lords, Distributer of Crowns and Scepters to the greatest Princes and Monarches of the Earth: The servant of the two most Holy and Sacred Towns of Mecca and Medina: Lord of Europe, Asia, and Africa, Conquered with our Victorious sword and dreadfull Lance; to the Duke and Senate of the Republique of Genoua.*

If one of our Slaves had not found grace in our sight, we should soon have made you feel the force of our terrible sword, and our clemencie had not returned you, as it hath done, your Vessells, your goods, your people, & your Ambassadour; but is upon condition that you cause the sentences to be revoked, which were given against *Justiniano*, and against *Doria*, and that they may fully enjoy their liberty, and their goods, as heretofore: For otherwise be you assured, that with all the power of our flourishing Empire, our Highness will come, and abase your pride, make himself be obeyed in Person, and destroy your Republique.

Given at our Imperiall City of *Stambol*, in the year of *Egira* nine hundred and sixty, the twelvth day of the month *Ramadham*.

*Soliman.*

This Letter inspired all them that heard it with fear, justified the Ambassadors Zeal, and confirmed all the Assembly in the resolution to receive *Justiniano*, as the Deliverer of the Republique; so that when the Duke had propounded the matter, and that according to the custom he should have gone to collect the voyces in particular, they sayd all, that in affairs where opinions might be divided, it was good to hold that course, but now, that the whole company had but one and the same voice, they were not to amuse themselves about this superfluous ceremony; it being fitter to go with all speed, and assure *Justiniano* and *Doria*, that they were still Citizens of *Genoua*, for fear lest they should by this retardment imagine, that they had been hardly drawn to sign their grace. They advised then what order they

They were to hold, and they judged, that to take away all suspicion from *Justiniano*, they were to send him a publique Act, signed by the Duke and all the Senate, whereby he should be assured of the revocation of his sentence : but the Ambassador having told them, that *Justiniano* would rely on his word, they changed their purpose, and commanded *Janmetin Doria* to take a Galley in the Port, for to go and receive him as far from the City as possibly he could: They ordained also that the Ambassador should put himself into a Feluca, to the end he might go before, and advertise *Justiniano* that he was attended with impatience, and should be received with joy. And whereas it was resolved that some should accompany *Janmetin* who represented *Andrea Doria* his Uncle, that was Generalissimo, and absent from *Genoua* at that time, the Count of *Lavagna* would be one of them, that he might renew his acquaintance, for he was not much more then a child when *Justiniano* went away. The Commanders of those vessels whom he had redeemed, would not go home to their houses before they had conducted their Deliverer into their City, to the end that as in the ancient Triumphs, the Victorious were followed by the Princes whom they had vanquished, so *Justiniano* should be accompanied with the Citizens which he had delivered, but with this glorious difference, that the one touched them with compassion which looked on them, and that the others inspired all them that beheld them with joy; the former were freemen that were made slaves, and these were slaves to whom liberty was given : And if heretofore at *Rome* he was crowned with glory that saved the life of a *Roman* Citizen, what crown, and what glory was not *Justiniano* worthy of, who by his generosity hindred not onley the death of so great a number of men, but the utter destruction of his country? And indeed he was received with so many acclamations, as never was so universall a joy seen in *Genoua* before. This while the Ambassador being set forth in a Feluca with *Alphonso* and some others, and having a good way out-gone *Janmetins* Galley, made with all speed to *Justiniano*, who since they parted from him had scarcely spoken to *Doria*, so much was he taken up with the thought of *Isabella*. As soon as they were near enough to be understood, they began to talk to him of triumph and glory, not having the patience to stay till they were aboard the vessel to let him know the happy success of their voyage. *Doria* answered this interrupted discourse with cries of joy; but *Justiniano* made it appear by the moderation of his, that his liberty was not the term of his desires; he received his friends for all that with a great deal of civility, and without attending their further relation, he would have rendred them thanks for their care and affection, but they had too much to say to permit him to speak. The Ambassador would have discharged the Senates Commission; *Alphonso* would have acquainted him with the generosity of his father; another would have described unto him the extasie of the people; and murther the coldness of the Nation, the impatience they were in to speak all together, made a confusion amongst them, which yet kept not *Justiniano* from clearly perceiving, that his generosity was acknowledged, and his grace signed. But whereas the Galley still approached, *Justiniano* sayd, that it was not just they should stay from going to meet those Illustrious friends, who came to restore him to life, in restoring him to his liberty : He commanded them to weigh Anchor, which being presently executed, they made towards the Galley, that, carryed along with sayls and oares, reached them in a little space. There it was where *Justiniano* felt an extraordinary emotion upon the sight of the young Count of *Lavagna*, whom the Ambassador shewed unto him; he whose father had alwaies been the protector of his house : This sight gave him a great deal of joy, but mingled with grief, by the remembrance of *Sinibaldos* death : Now as soon as his vessel came close to the Galley, he instantly, without attending *Janmetins* order, leaped from the battes into her, and after he had complemented with the Delegates of the Senate, he embraced the Count with so much testimony of affection, as it was easie to know, that absence destroyes not a friendship, which is solidly established in a generous soul; for at the very time when he rejoiced to see him, he lamented his fathers death. The Count on his part assured him that he would have the same respect

for

for him as *Sinibaldo* had had; and conjured him to shew him the same favour. On the other side *Doria*, though he were not well satisfied with *Andrea* Prince of *Melphi*, nor with *Jannetin* his Nephew, yet carried he himself courteously unto him, and then went and received the civilities of his friends. During all these caresses, *Jannetin* desiring to give some mark of esteem and joy to *Justiniano*, caused a largess to be distributed amongst the slaves, to the end they might row with the more speed. *Justiniano* received this gallantry very civilly, and withall assured the slaves, that when he came home he would remember that they had brought him to the Port, as accordingly he sent them the next day two thousand Crowns. As soon as they approached to *Genova*, all the vessels that were in the Port, having received a commandment to shoot off all their Cannon when *Justiniano* should appear, failed not to salute him; the Galley answered them with four peeces of Ordnance, and a volley of Musket-shot, and the like did all that were on the walls. If one would describe the number of Citizens that were at the Port, the acclamations of joy, the thronging that was there to see these resuscitated men, the tumult that was amongst them in striving who should come nearest to their Deliverer, it would almost take up a volume that should treat of nothing else; it were better then, that amidst this popular crowd we should conduct *Justiniano* to the Senate, followed by the Count of *Lavagna*, *Jannetin*, *Doria*, *Alphonso*, and all the Commanders of the vessels, as also the slave of *Monaco*, whom *Justiniano* had enjoined not to budge from him. When first they appeared, the Duke out of more than an extraordinary favour advanced to receive him, after which he appointed all the Senators to take their places, and then commanded the Register of the Senate to deface the Sentences which had been pronounced against *Justiniano* and *Doria*, and to read the abolition of them, which was conceived in such gentle and advantageous terms, as it plainly appeared, that even their crime deserved more glory than punishment: The reading whereof being ended, the Duke began to assure *Justiniano* in the name of the whole Assembly, that after they had satisfied the pleasure of *Soliman*, yet held they not themselves for all that acquitted towards him; that the Senate in generall, and they all in particular, were resolved not to stay there, but to testify unto him with more utility, that they were not worthy of the benefits they had received from him; that they desired him also to raze out of his memory, as he was razed out of their Records, the remembrance of the sentences which had been given against him and his friend. To this *Justiniano* answered, that in banishing him they had satisfied Justice, and that in repealing him they had rather shewed their clemency than their equity; that the service which he had rendered to the Republique, was not considerable, seeing he had done it but to satisfy his duty; and that also, in acknowledgement of the grace it had done him, he swore solemnly alwaies to hazard both his fortune and life for the interest and glory thereof, so often as occasion should present it self for it: This sayd, he turned him to *Philippo Spinola*, and intreated him to pardon *Alphonso* for his friendship towards him, and to beleve that it could never have found place in his heart, had he not perfectly known during his voyage, that the death of his brother had made him shed more tears, than he had lost blood; that if his generosity would permit him utterly to deface out of his mind the resentment of that unlucky accident; he besought him to adopt him for his sonne, and to attend from him the same services, and the same obedience, as he could have desired from him of whom he was so unfortunately deprived; but if that contrarily the apprehensions of Nature did still invite him to revenge, he promised to banish himself voluntarily; and if that were not yet enough, he would submit to the greatest rigor of Justice. *Philippo* was so moved with this discourse, as if he had not already signed the grace of *Justiniano* in consideration of his son, he could not have forbore doing it, and embracing him; so true it is that vertue hath powerfull charmes for a generous soul. That venerable old man answered him with teares in his eyes, that he would never oppose *Alphonso's* friendship to him; that it was too just to be condemned; that owing him his life, and his liberty, he owed him all things; & that not being so unreasonable as to remember an injury, & not remember



benefits, he assured him that these last should take from his minde all the bitterness of the other; that he would receive him; for his sonne; that he would have all the tenderness of a Father for him; and that all the satisfaction he desired of him was, that he would forget his prosecutions, and his hatred, and pardon them to an afflicted Father. There past besides so many obliging speeches between them, as all that were present had much adoe to retain their teares; but at the last the Duke arising, all the Assembly did the like: Then it was that they embraced *Justiniano*, every one striving who should come soonest unto him to testifie his joy; after which the Count of *Lavagna* carried him home to his house, there to abide till his own was made ready to receive him; for he had been Administrator of it ever since the death of *Sinibaldo*, unto whom the Father of *Justiniano* had left his estate to conserve it for his sonne; and though all the world beleaved, that *Justiniano* was no longer alive, yet had not the Count changed the order of his affairs, being absolutely resolved not to confer his estate upon his heirs, before he was certainly assured that he was dead. As for *Doria*, the Count could not get him to go along with him, though he would have been glad to have past the rest of the day in the company of his friend, but his kinsmen carried him much against his will away with them, having first conducted *Justiniano* as well as all the rest, to the Counts Palace, where every one departing, except some few whom he retained at dinner with *Justiniano*, he led him to the chamber of *Leonora* his wife, who received him with a great deal of curtesie, and so did *Sophronia*, *Leonoras* sister, which was there with her. But as soon as civility permitted him to retire, he turned all his thoughts to *Monaco*; and vvh whereas he saw that the necessity of good manners would hold him three or four days at *Genova* to receive and to return the visits of his friends, he resolved to send thither the same day, the rather for that he judged it fit to understand the Princesses pleasure before he went to her; he proposed his design then unto the Count, and desired him to let him have one of his servants for to execute it, and to put into his hands the Princesses Officer, whom he had found a slave at *Constantinople*. The Count could not refuse him so just a request, but only told him that he was to dine first: Whilst they were at table their conversation was no other than asking *Justiniano* questions concerning his fortune, vvhich unto he still answered vvvith so much address, as vvithout saying any thing against the truth, he discovered nothing that might prejudice him; howbeit he recounted unto them his grief, and despair, vvhenas he believed in *Germany* that *Isabella* had married the Prince of *Masseran*, as also that having taken a resolution to die, he went and imbarqued himself upon the Baltique Sea; that there he was made a slave, was carried to *Constantinople*, and given to the Grand Signior, vvhere *Doria* arrived afterwards by an adventur almost like to his; that his good fortune had so vvrought, as his Highness having found something in his person, which touched his inclination, his slavery had not been very hard, if his Friends, his Mistress, and his Religion had not been obstacles to his felicity; but he would not let them know that he had been Grand Visier, nor how in that Charge he had mightily served Christendom, for fear lest this action should have been ill interpreted by them, that could not dive into the bottom of his heart. Dinner being done, *Justiniano* desired the Count to permit him to go and write in his Cabinet before he was hindered by company, which no doubt would be with him ere it were long. The Count, who was not willing that his own pleasure should destroy that of his friend, opened him the door, and told him, that he was infinitely obliged to the Princess of *Monaco*, who, ever after she had power to dispose of her self, had been sought unto by all the Princes of *Italy*, vvithout so much as once harkning unto them; but that contrarily she had openly published, how she had resolved to renounce the world, as soon as she certainly knew that he was no longer in it; that she had often had business at *Genova*, where her presence was necessary, but would never come thither, so much did she fear the sight of them that might condemn her resolution. *Justiniano* was so ravished vvith the constancy of *Isabella*, that if the Count had not left him for to return unto the company, this talk had kept him

him a long time from drawing up his Letter; but in the end after he had written all that which his respect, his joy, and his passion had inspired him with, he gave his packet to a Gentleman, whom the Count had assigned him for it; he prayed him to go, and come again from *Monaco*, with all the speed that possibly he could; and to add moreover to that favour the observing the actions of *Isabella*, at such time as she should understand of his return, and that she should see him, whom he had sent her back; that Officer of hers too he caressed exceedingly, and assured him that he would acknowledge the pains which he had suffered for his consideration. *Justiniano* had no sooner ended his dispatch, but that all the illustrious persons of the City came to visit him, with an extreme impatience to learn from his own mouth the success of his adventures. But whilst he is satisfying the curiosity of so fair an Assembly, and telling them things which we know as well as he, let us go and content ours at *Monaco*, and see with what eye, and in what manner the Princess will receive the agreeable newes of her Lovers return. When these happy Messengers arrived the next day at *Monaco* it was very neer night, so that although one of them belonged to the Princess, yet was he not known, nor would he discover himself, the better to surprize her: It was only told then to *Isabella*, that a Gentleman from the Count of *Lavagna*, and another, who were newly arrived in a Barque, desired to speak with her, and that they had order to deliver their message to none but her self. She was at that time in her Cabinet, where she had shut up her self that day to read over all the Letters which she had received from *Justiniano*; she was vexed then to be interrupted in an employment, that made up together both her joy and her grief; she commanded notwithstanding that they should be brought in: But when she came to know him, whom she had sent to seek *Justiniano*, she was so surprized, and so amazed, out of the opinion she had that his voyage was in vain, as the apprehension thereof keeping her from speaking, gave the Counts Gentleman opportunity to tell her, that *Justiniano* had given him in charge, to present her with a Letter from him. This discourse revived her spirits for a while, but fearing she had not understood him well, she made that agreeable name which touched her heart so sensibly, to be spoken to her once again; whereupon the Gentleman told her, that the paper he had presented to her would satisfy her better than he could. She cast her eyes then upon the Letter, which assured her that it was *Justiniano's* hand, so that in an instant she abandoned her self over wholly to joy, and with an extreme precipitation broke up the seal of the Letter for to read that which follows here.

### The Letter of Justiniano to the Princess of MONACO.

AT last fortune hath made a truce with me, and how constant soever she hath been in persecuting me, my love hath vanquished her cruelty, and forced her to permit me to see you again. I know well, that the suspicion which I have had of your fidelity, makes me unworthy of this grace; but I know well also, that my cruellest enemies have pardoned me for it, and that you have a soul too generous not to do as much for a person that voluntarily accuseth himselfe of a crime, which in my opinion is the greatest mark of love that ever I have rendred you. If the possession of you had not been so precious unto me, my resentment had not been so great; and if my passion had been less perfect, hate had succeeded to my love: But to what transport soever that imaginary misfortune hath carried my mind, yet have you alwayes reigned in my heart. I have hated your inconstancy, but I have alwayes loved your person; I have separated the crime from the criminal; I would never have extinguished so fair a flame, but in extinguishing my life, and with the most passionate sense that love can inspire into me, I have even adored you in the arms of a Rivall, and conserved my soul entirely for you at that very time when as I believed I had lost you for ever. After all this I dare hope, that my crime shall not be an obstacle strong enough to keep you from according me the permission to come and render you an accompt of my

my misadventures, to comfort me with your sight for my past miseries; to let me understand from your own mouth, that absence hath not diminished your affection; that mine is still considerable with you; and that at last you desire I should eternally be your

Justiniano.

Never was there heart more replenished with joy, than that of *Isabella*, after she had read this Letter; nor ever had an amorous spirit sweeter transports, than this Princess felt in thus understanding all at once the life, the return, and the fidelity of her Lover: But her satisfaction augmented yet more, when as she knew in what manner he had been received at *Genova*, no way doubting now but that her felicity was settled for the rest of her life. After she had spent two hours at least in hearing these persons relate unto her what they had known concerning *Justiniano*, she gave order that they should be very well treated, and that the next morning the Counts Gentleman should repair unto her. As soon as she saw her self alone, she called a kinswoman of hers, which lived with her, and not able to contain her joy, she imparted the cause of it to her, but in such passionate terms, as it was easie to perceive, that she lived not so much in her self as in *Justiniano*: And that she might no longer defer her answer unto him, she caused paper and ink to be brought her: but though she had a fertile wit, though she were accustomed to express her self very easily, and not to have any need to correct her first by her second thoughts, yet was it almost impossible for her to satisfy her self in this occasion: She could not conceive that the words of pleasure, of felicity, and joy, could sufficiently express hers; that those of constancy and steadfastness were significant enough; nor that those of passion, and love, were powerfull enough to paint forth to *Justiniano* that which she had in her soul: Howbeit in the end, after she had blotted out lines, and torn whole Letters, she was constrained to be contented; and whereas it was late, she got her to bed without eating any thing, notwithstanding her womans perswasion to the contrary. She passed the night in such agreeable thoughts, as albeit sleep be a sweet and a mighty enemy, yet could it not for all that surprize the fair eyes of *Isabella*, so that as soon as the day appeared, her impatience caused her to command the fetching of the Counts Gentleman unto her, hoping that the sooner he returned, the sooner she should see *Justiniano*; and to oblige him to make hast, she sent him a Diamond worth five hundred Crowns. This liberality failed not to make him diligent; hee came presently to the Princesses Chamber, both to render her thanks, and to receive her commands: shee gave him her Letter, and desired him to present her complements to the Count his Master, and to assure *Justiniano* that he was attended with a great deal of impatience. This Gentleman, according to *Isabellæ* desire, made all the hast that possibly he could to *Genova*, where being arrived he found *Justiniano* ready to enter into his own house, accompanied with ten or eleven of his friends, for the Count had been so carefull that no mark of his banishment should be remaining, as in two dayes it was thoroughly furnished. As soon as he saw this Gentleman, he separated himself from the troupe for to speak with him, and receive *Isabellæ* answer, which he took with such a panting of his heart, as if he had doubted that it had not been favourable. In the mean time the Count perceiving *Justiniano*'s disorder, caused all the company to enter, by entering first himself, so that by this address he gave him means to steal aside to read in liberty the Princesses letter, which he opened with a great deal of respect, and found that it was thus.

The



## The Letter of Isabella to Justiniano.

THE greatest crime that you are guilty of towards me is, that you came not to tell me that you self, which you have written unto me; I know well notwithstanding that the necessity of your antient misfortunes hath constrained you to carry your self in this sort; but I am not ignorant also, that love is not accustomed to make such satisfaction to sovereign reason; the desires, which it begets in an amorous soul, seem alwaies just unto it, and how reasonable soever we be, it is a pain to us to condemn that which pleaseth us; find it not strange then, if I should wish, that you had seen my first transports, they would have pained out so well unto you my fidelity, as I should no longer be troubled to assure you, that time hath not changed my heart; that death alone can break my chains; and that if I had the Empire of the whole world, I would pray you to accept of it with as much affection, as I offer you my State: it is a reward which I owe you, and not a grace which I do you; and the onely grief which I have at this instant is, to see that I can do nothing, whereunto I am not obliged; so that all that I can do in this encounter is, to protest unto you, that did I not owe it to the life of my father, which you preserved; to the promise which he made you of it; to that which you received from me; to so many miseries which you have endured for my consideration; yet do I owe it to mine own felicity, seeing it is certain, that I cannot be perfectly happy if I be not so with you: it is a necessity that love hath imposed upon me, and which reason doth not disapprove of. Come then, my dear Justiniano, to testify unto me, that my hopes are not ill grounded, that your constancy is immovable, that you still love your

Isabella.

They who know by experience the effects of love, will easily imagine that which the sight of this Letter wrought in the soul of Justiniano; he had for all that a domestique enemy, which went alwaies traversing his pleasures, by putting him in mind that he was yet a slave at Constantinople, though he appeared a freeman at Genoa. In the mean time the Count sent him word how he beleev'd he had forgotten, that he was in his own house, and that it was he which was to entertain and honour his friends there. This reproach of gallantry obliged him to go in unto them, who all left him a little after, except Doria, to give him liberty for to think of his affairs; but whilst he was settling his house, the Count sent him all the money which he had received of his estate in his absence, with order to his Steward to render him an accompt of it. Justiniano was so amazed, both at his own riches, and the generosity of his friend, as he had much ado to resolve to take that which was his own; howbeit fearing to do an outrage to the Count, instead of doing him a civility, he received his money, but would not suffer the Steward howsoever to particularise any thing of his affairs; telling him only, that provided he could assure him he gave him nothing of another bodies, it should suffice for the making up of his accompt; that in the mean time to make some acknowledgment for the care he had taken to enrich him, he gave him twelve thousand Crowns. This man fearing a check from his Master, play'd the generous as much as he could, and labored exceedingly not to accept of a thing which he earnestly desired: but at length he must obey the pleasure of Justiniano, who thinking of nothing but Monaco gave order for the making him clothes against the next day; and not to loie time, after he had desired the Counts Officer to provide him attendants, to make up his Train with all possible care and speed, he went forth with his dear Doria to render the most important of his visits, to the end he might the day following satiate his desires. They imp'oyed all that day then in ceremonies; they were at the Palace to do their duty to the Duke; they were at Andrea Doria's to visit Jannetin; they returned to the Count; and to be wanting in nothing Justiniano would goe home to Philippo Spinola, where he was received with so many testimonies of generosity, both by the father and the sonne, as all his civility could not answer it. Evening be-  
ing

ing come, he returned back with *Doria*, where he found a man attending him from the Generalissimo, who being come home had understood of his going to *Monaco*, and therefore had sent to assure him, that the next morning he should have a Galley waiting ready to carry him thither. *Justiniano* accepted of this curtesie with a great deal of respect, and prayed the man to let his Master know, that he would not part away without thanking him for it: And whereas his amorous impatience made him desire to be alone, that he might at the least think of the Princess, though he could not yet see her, he was much surpris'd, and exceedingly vexed, to finde as great a company in his chamber, as that which he had met with abroad; for although it was compos'd of none but his friends, yet would he fain have preferred solitude before their conversation; howbeit he must resolve to comply with them, and hear a Serenado of Lutes and Voices which the Count gave him, upon remembrance that he had heard say, how the first passion of *Justiniano* had been by musick: The Count also presented unto him a French Gentleman, whom he dearly loved, and desired him to esteem of him for his sake, untill such time as he should make himself worthy of it by the knowledge of his merit, which without doubt would not be long first. This complement being finished, every one retired save *Doria*, who would not abandon our Lover, untill he had restored him into the arms of his Mistress. The night past away with a great deal of unquietness and impatience for *Justiniano*; but whatsoever resolution he had taken to be gone by the break of day, he could not get out of *Genova* before it was almost noon. In the end he imbarqued himself in the Galley which had been prepared for him, taking no more with him than his dear *Doria*, and some of the Counts people for to serve him: He had at that instant so extraordinary a joy out of the thought that the term of so short a navigation should be the sight of *Isabella*, as it reflected in his face, was seen in his eyes, appeared in his discourse, shew'd it self in all his actions; and one would have thought, that he went out of slavery in going out of *Genova*, and that *Monaco* was not only the place of his birth, but that he was attended there to be declared the Conqueror of all Nations, to receive the honor of a Triumph, and to mount into a Throne; that he was also expected by the Princess for to be crown'd, not by the hands of fortune, but by those of love. And whereas he had not so much ambition, as desire to be beloved, the Empire of all the Earth could not have given him a joy so sensible, as that of the heart of *Isabella*. This Princess imagining rightly, that *Justiniano* would not be long before he came to see her, had given order at the Port, that as soon as a Galley should be discovered from *Genova*-ward, she should be advertis'd of it, being perswaded that they would not let *Justiniano* come in a Feluca; so that when he appeared, notice was thereof given the Princess, and at the same instant all the wall was set on fire with a volley of Musquet shot; all the great Ordnance likewise was discharged, the dreadfull noise whereof could not keep *Justiniano* from being pleasingly assured, that those flames were an effect of them which love had kindled in the heart of *Isabella*, who presently dispatched away the principall of her servants, and the most considerable of the Inhabitants of *Monaco*, to go to receive him, and present him with the keyes of the Town-Gates. This obliging ceremony so mightily surpris'd *Justiniano*, when it was done unto him, that he could hardly finde terms to express his resentment thereof; and the confusion whereinto this so gallant and extraordinary favour had put his spirit. He besought those that were sent from *Isabella* to excuse him, if he did not accept of that which they offer'd him, since it would not be just, that he, who would hold himself too much honoured to be their Princesses subject, should do an act of their Sovereign; that for the incivility which he committed in refusing a thing that came from her, he conjured them to conduct him where she was; that he might give her thanks, and crave pardon of her both at once. They were a pretty while in this dispute of curtesie on either side; but at last *Justiniano* remained firm in his resolution. They began then to take that winding way which leads to the Town, and where all the souldiers of the Garrison were ranged into two files for him to pass

thorough the midst of them, and so he marched till he came to the Portall of the Castle, where the Princess attended him. When as first he appeared she advanced to receive him, so that to save her some steps, and to follow his inclination, he went as fast as possibly he could, and kissed her roab. It was at this instant that those perfect Lovers felt that which cannot be exprest; and albeit they had resolved on both parts to contain themselves, and had also prepared their minds for the making of some complement to one another in this incounter, their silence, and then their interrupted discourses, made it apparent to all that beheld them, that excess of pleasure excited such a trouble in their soules, as would not permit them to exprest all that they thought; but to conceal this agreeable transport from the eyes of her subjects, the Princess caused *Justiniano* to enter, after she had saluted *Doria* with a great deal of civility: When they were arrived at *Isabella's* chamber, all that had accompanied them were obliged by respect to withdraw, two or three excepted, which remained to entertain *Doria*, whilst the Princess talked with *Justiniano*. Never were two hearts replenished with so much joy; never had two spirits more charming transports; and never did two amorous persons so perfectly exprest the motions of their soules by their onely looks; they said both of them together, and at one instant, that they had alwaies loved one another; that they still loved one another; and that they would love one another eternally: But after this dumb language had made all their apprehensions to pass from one heart to another, *Justiniano* began to render the Princess thanks for all her goodness towards him; but she, not able to suffer the continuance of this discourse, conjured him to remember, that their interests could not be separated, and that owing him all things it was unjust to thank her; especially having done nothing for him, than what she could not chuse but doe; namely to weep for his absence, to fear his changing, to apprehend his loss, and to renounce all the pleasures of this life, since she could not have that of seeing him. *Justiniano* answered thereunto, that this necessity, which she had imposed upon her self, was so fair a mark of her affection, and so glorious for him, that unless he should be the most ingratefull of men, he was obliged to thank her eternally: As for the rest, her teares being of so inestimable a price, she must not find it strange, if being unable to render her any service that could merit that honor, he resolved at least to tell her often, that he knew well he was unworthy of it. This conversation was interrupted by the Sergeant-major of the Garrison, who according to the commandment which the Princess had given him for it, came to demand the word of *Justiniano*; this Gallanterie surprised him as pleasingly, as the former which had been done him upon his landing at the Port; and as he was no less civill, than *Isabella* was obliging, he said unto her with a low voice, and beholding her with eyes full of love, and respect, that a man, who knew not how to rule his desires, and that would die her Slave, was not in a state to command others: But what reason soever he could allege, he must obey *Isabella's* pleasure; yet was it not for all that but upon condition, that she should give the word as well as he, and that he should not, but after her, finish this mystrie of Warre, which at this time was absolutely guided by love. For as if these two illustrious persons had agreed together about this gallanterie, the word, which the Princess gave to the Sergeant-major, was found to be *Justiniano*; and that which *Justiniano* gave, after he had long refused to doe it, was the fair name of *Isabella*. This conformitie of spirit and thought was equally pleasing unto them; for though they knew not what each of them had said, yet did they understand it by a complement betwixt them; for *Justiniano* assured the Princess, that murther her curse if *Isabella* should reign still at *Monaco*; and the Princess assured him, that murther his modesty and resistance *Justiniano* was Master of the Town. One part of the evening was spent in a sumptuous feast, which *Isabella* made him



him in the great Hall of the Castle ; and for the rest of it all their conversation was nothing but promises of loving one another eternally ; and joy possess them in such sort ; as there came not so much as one thought unto them of their misfortunes. But whereas it was late, *Iustiniano* lead the Princess back to her chamber, followed by *Amelia* her kinswoman, and all her women ; as for him he was conducted by the Officers of *Isabella* to a lodging, which she had caused to be prepared for him, and where the riches of the furniture made it appear, that she had omitted nothing for the receiving of him magnificently. The image of *Isabella* so fully possessed his mind, as that of *Constantinople* never came into his thought ; the remembrance of what was past, nor the fear of that to come, could not trouble his pleasures ; and his present happiness so enchanted his reason, as without considering that this supreme felicity, occasioned by the sight of *Isabella*, would precipitate him ere long into an extreme misfortune, he past the night without any other unquietness, than that which he received by the impatience he was in to see day, that he might see *Isabella* again. *Doria* was also conducted into a chamber which was little less stately than that of his Illustrious friend, who to entertain himself more commodiously in his amorous fancies had desired to lie alone.



# ABRAHIM, OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The First Part.

### The Fifth Book.



**I***Sabella* was no sooner awake but she thought of *Justiniano*, and to entertain him with the more liberty, she sent to demand of him by way of complement, whether he would be pleased to go and pass away a part of the day in a fair Garden, which the Princes of *Monaco* have on the Sea-side; and whereas he had no other will than that of the Princess, he answered him who came from her, that so as he might have the honor to see her he would obey her with joy, her presence having this particular charm, that she rendered all places alike agreeable unto him, because he never considered any thing therein but her. This match being made, this fair Troop, as soon as dinner was done, began their walk; *Justiniano* lent *Isabella* his hand for to support her down to the Garden, whither one may easily go on foot, *Doria* did the like to *Emilia*, and the rest of the women together with the Princesses chiefest Officers followed after. Their journey being short, they quickly arrived whither they were to go; whereat first their talk was of the beauty of the place, of the situation thereof, of the ornaments which had been added to its naturall graces, and other indifferent things; but as soon as the Princess had handsomely drawn *Justiniano* a pretty way from the Troop, she conjured him to acquaint her with his adventures, and no longer to defer the satisfying her curiosity, in recounting particularly unto her all the circumstances of a life wherein she had so much interest, as to make it thenceforward the felicity of hers. This discourse surprized *Justiniano* at first, he would have excused himself for that day, beseeching the Princess not to deprive him so soon of the delight he had in hearing her talk; but at length, seeing that this reason did not content her, he yeelded unto it. They entred then into a great green Arbor, which on the one side looked towards the Sea, and whereas *Isabella*, being set down on a seat of green Turf, perceived that *Doria* would out of respect have withdrawn as well as the rest of the Troop, she stayed him, and said, that as he had been the testimony of their first flames, it was but just that he should be so too of their last adventures: She made him sit down by *Justiniano*, and when the rest of the company were retired a good way from *Isabella*, she summoned *Justiniano* to the performance of his word; who, after he had besought her to pardon him, if the disorder of his fortune did make some at any time in his discourse, began to speak in this sort.

## The Sequels of the History of Iustiniano.

THE cause of all my miseries being a crime which you have pardoned, I think you will have so much goodness as not to oblige me to confess once more unto you, that which I have written to you heretofore: I will not tell you then how after I had by an hundred apparent reasons confirmed my self in the belief that you lived no longer but for the Prince of *Masseran*, despair seized so strongly on my spirit, that death was the term of all my desires; but to get far away speedily from a place, where I could suspect the most constant person that ever was of infidelity, suffer me to tell you in few words, that quitting *Germany*, I embarked my self on the *Baltique* Sea, to seek out an honourable death in the war of *Sweden*; that on the way I was taken prisoner by *Chairadin* King of *Algier*, who sold me soon after to the *Bassa Sinan*, which caused me instantly to be conducted to *Constantinople*, with three hundred other Slaves, whereof he meant to make a present to the Grand Signior. It is in that place, Madam, where fortune hath done such strange, and so unlikely things, as albeit they arrived unto me, yet do I doubt many times, in thinking of my adventures, whether it be not an effect of my depraved imagination that represents them so unto me, or a faithfull report of my memory; but not to lose time in exaggerating the phantasticalness of fortune, which hath been but too well known by all Ages, and all Nations, and to give you an extraordinary proof of it in my person, you shall understand, that after I was come to *Constantinople*, laden with iron, as well as my companions, without any difference betwixt us, but that they tried every day to break their chains, and that I bore mine with a tranquillity of minde, yet melancholick withall, which made them perceive that life and liberty were not the object of my desires; this knowledge which they had of my apprehensions during the voyage, was the cause that they concealed from me the resolution they had taken, when we were come to *Constantinople*, of killing their Guard, that so they might save themselves ere they should be presented to the Grand Signior; and they carried their design so well, as it was not discovered above two hours before it should have been executed. And whereas amongst the Turks the desire of liberty is a capitall crime in a Slave, unless it be in paying a ransom for it, this enterprize being proved against them, the *Bassa Sinan*, a violent man, and that saw how in one only night he was like to have lost three hundred Slaves, without examining the circumstances of the matter, without distinguishing the guilty from the innocent, condemned us all to be exposed to the cruellest punishment of that Countrey. This Sentence was received diversly, according to the diversity of minds, but at last, though there were some generous souldiers amongst that great number of Slaves, yet heard they all this wofull news with grief: As for me, who did not desire to live longer, because I saw my self constrained to live without you, I beheld the end of my life as an assured port to shelter me from all the storms wherewith I was agitated; so that though it had been easie for me to have exempted my self from this perill, by letting the *Bassa* know what ransom I could have paid him, yet had I no purpose so to do. Howbeit this generall consternation indured not long, for the *Bassa Sinan* comming to consider that he could not satisfie his revenge and his avarice both together, resolved not to lose that himself which others would have taken from him; and therefore for examples sake only, he commanded that we should draw lots, and that the tenth part of our number should expiate the crime of the rest. This grace was received with joy by all the company; and albeit fear had still some place in their souls, yet was hope the powerfuller, and perswaded them all in particular, that the misfortune should not fall upon them: In the mean time the lots were drawn, and chance having decided the matter, I was of the number of the thirty that were to die. It was then that I well observed, how human weakness is the cause why every one is in some sort comforted by having companions in his misery; for when we were all condemned, I

saw



saw nothing but tears of sorrow, but as soon as the lot had separated the fortunate from the infortunate, these last changed their sorrow into rage, and choler so transported them, as they could not endure the sight of them that were delivered: Yet was it not they whom destiny reserved for this supreme disgrace; for the Bassa, having moderated his fury, would have our lives once more depend absolutely upon the capriciousness of fortune; he ordained then, out of thirty which we were, no more than three should suffer; and the lot so favoured the desire I had to die, that I was one of those unhappy men, according to the sense of others, though in mine own heart I was of a contrary opinion. The two that proved my companions in this sad adventure, were without doubt the worthiest of all the slaves, they were young, handsome, and courageous, and even such as the very Executioners themselves, who were to take away our lives, had some regret to see, that chance had made a choice so unjust according to their thinking, so that one of them moved with compassion, went and advertised the Bassa, that in losing us he would lose the properest slaves that were in *Constantinople*, and the fittest to make a present of to his Highness. The Bassa, who repented him already of his violence, in regard of his own interest, and yet desired that some one of us should be punished, resolved at length for the last cast, that of we three but one should dye, and that according to the first order, chance should still be the absolute master of our life or of our death. The lot was not more favourable to me in this last encounter, than in all the former, and I was the sacrifice destined for the publique safety; I was then pretently bound more straitly than before; they made me myself carry the preparations of my punishment; and without boasting I can avow, that I faced death with tranquillity enough: I dare not almost say, that in this wofull estate you were the only object of my thought, yet it is true how I imagined, that this obstinacy of fortune, in chusing me still to be sacrificed, was an effect of your desire, and that she did not judge me unworthy to live, but because you judged me unworthy of your affection. In the end I received this sentence, as if it had been pronounced by you, and in that thought I went to my punishment with so much resolution, as bred wonder and compassion in them that beheld me. As for myself, I was far from being afflicted at mine own proper miseries; I had some delight in my fetters and chains; and the very sight of death could not keep me from having some happy moments; for my love, doing its last and uttermost indeavour, in following me to the grave, perswaded me, that if you had seen the same *Justiniano*, upon whom at other times you had accumulated glory, be ready to yeeld up the ghost in adoring you, with the most cruell torments that the rage of tyrants bath ever invented, you would at leastwise have breathed forth some sighs, and shed some tears. The Princess, not able to endure that he should continue this discourse any longer, so much trouble did this deadly image excite in her soul, assured him with a great deal of tenderness, and her eyes full of tears, that this narration touched her so sensibly, as albeit she could not doubt but that he had escaped this perill, yet could she not chuse but be in fear for him, and feel such a grief in her mind, as she was not able to express. *Justiniano* was no less moved with the tears of the Princess, than she had been by his relation; and when he had rendered her thanks for so generous an apprehension, *Doria* told him, that he could not better acquit himself of that devouire, than to acquaint her by what enchantment he got out of this adventure. *Isabella* having testified by her action, that *Doria's* impatience was here, *Justiniano* prosecuted his History in this manner. Since your Excellency will know how I was delivered, I am to let you understand, that to go from the place where my doom had been pronounced, to that where it was to be executed, we were of necessity to pass by one of the faces of the Seraglio, and my good luck would have it, that when we came to that part, the Sultana *Asteria*, great *Solimans* daughter, was leaning at a window, whereof she had pulled up the grate, and seeing a far off the multitude of people which accompanied me, and who seemed by their carriage to take part with my misfortune, it chanced that she cast her eye upon my face, and that she found something in it which begot a curiosity

fity in her, whereupon she commanded them that conducted me to stay, and demanded of them what crime I had committed; I knew afterwards (for then I understood not the language very well) that one amongst them told her I was innocent, and recounted unto her by what mishap I was in that estate, by aggravating with a great deal of vehemency the obstinacy of fortune in chusing me still, and the constancy which I had shewed in this encounter. As long as this discourse lasted I observed that she considered me very attentively, so that perceiving by some words which I had already learned during the voyage, and by her gesture, that she spoke of me, and that she pitied me, I saluted her with a profound respect. At length, Madam, the young Sultana *Astoria* was so compassionate and generous, that after she had asked, and knew of what Nation I was, she expressly charged them that conducted me, not to stir from thence till they had order from the Grand Signior her father. They, who knew both the rank and credit, which the Sultana had with *Soliman*, were carefull not to fail in obeying her; in the mean time she went to the Emperor her father, who was then very luckily in the old Seraglio, where she was, and which is not inhabited but by the Mothers, Sisters, Daughters, and Aunts of the Grand Signior: There she besought him to grant her the life of a slave, that was an Italian, and innocent, whom the Bassa *Sinan* had purposed to have presented unto him, but now would put him to death onely to serve for an example. After she had obtained the effect of her prayer, she rested not there, for she reported so many things of my constancy and resolution to *Soliman*, as it begot a desire in him to see me; so that sending a command to deliver me, I received order by a Trucheman to go unto the Grand Signior. To tell you, Madam, what this change wrought in me would be to no end, since it is easie for you to judge, that he, who so much despised life, received it not with much joy; and I dare say, that I stood in more need of constancy to resolve to live, than another would have had to resolve to die: Howbeit I went to his Highness, and whatsoever aversion I had from life, yet did I not forbear rendring him thanks for granting it to me. When first I appeared before *Soliman* he began to speak to me; for whereas he knew before that I was of *Italy*, he beleaved that I would understand a language, which at *Constantinople* they call the *Franks* tongue, and spoken there by every one for the commoditie of commerce, and which also I understood perfectly, because it is no other than a corrupted Italian. It was not, for that this Prince, out of an extraordinary curiosity proper to those of his Nation, is not acquainted, not onely with all the *Oriental* tongues, but with the *Spanish*, the *French*, and the *Italian*; howbeit in regard he doth not exercise them, he understands them only, without being able to speak them with facilitie: nevertheless I must for the present except the last, which in consideration of me he learned afterwards very perfectly. It was then in that language, whereof I have spoken, that he demanded of me whence I was, what was my birth and profession, and by what adventure I came into the power of the Bassa *Sinan*. I answered him that I was a poor *Italian* Gentleman, whose life had nothing remarkable enough wherewith to entertain so great a Prince; and that the only chance of War had made me a slave at *Argier*, where the Bassa had bought me not long after. I confess I had somewhat ado to disguise the truth, but being resolved that I would never be heard spoken of more, I did not tell what I was, for fear if it had been known, and that it had been discovered how I could have given a sufficient great ransom, intelligence would have been sent to *Genova* of my being at *Constantinople*. *Soliman* told me then, that I had something in the air of my face, that shewed me greater than I had delivered my self to be, and that all the rules of physiognomy were false, or I had not spoken sincerely unto him. I received this discourse with a great deal of respect and modesty; after which he talked to me of the customs of my country, of war, of fortifications, and when he perceived by my answers that I was not absolutely ignorant, though in this occasion I was not forward to shew my self very knowing, or of any great wit; there is not any good art, or excellent science, which he did not discourse with me about, for the space of two hours that I had the honour to bewith him. At last, Madam, this great

Prince

Prince was so satisfied of me, as he sent word to the Bassa *Sinan*, that having understood he meant to present me unto him with three hundred slaves, he remitted unto him not only his three hundred slaves, but assured him that he would give him also as many more for a recompence of the service he had done him, in bringing me under his obedience: And when he had ordained that care should be taken of me, he did me the grace to tell me, that I had so neerly touched his inclination, as after he had given me my life, he would have given me me my liberty too, if he could have resolved to deprive himself so soon of a person, which was agreeable to him. I must confess that this generosity came near my heart, and that I was almost ashamed to receive so extraordinary a favour with so little testimony of joy; I retired then infinitely satisfied of this Prince, and I was conducted to the quarter of the Slaves that were destined to his Highness, although I was not treated like them, having no other pain than that of wearing my irons. This revolution of fortune seemed so strange unto me, when I came to consider it, as I remained all the night in the admiration of this prodigious adventure: (What said I to my self) hath destiny resolved then, that I shall pass from one extremity to another? It cannot indure mediocritie in my happiness, nor in my unhappiness; and out of an obstinate rage to persecute me, when it sees that I am resolved for the greatest misfortunes, and that death passeth with me for a sovereign good, it withdrawes me from that Port, which I held to be most secure, to expose me to the tempest again by apparent felicities: But it may be too (said I further sighing) that there is some justice in its cruelty; the temerity which I have had to love, and to hope to be beloved of the most admirable person that ever will be, is not yet sufficiently punished; grief, despair, exile, imprisonment, and certainty of death, are not torments proportionable enough to my crime, which being infinite, demands also an eternall chastisement: Let us suffer then (continued I) since the incomparable *Isabella* is not satisfied, and let us accept of the life, which is given us for a punishment, and not for a grace. It was after this manner, Madam, that I resolved to receive all that fortune prepared for me, with a design no longer to oppose my reason against her humors, and blindly, and without resistance, to obey this invincible power, which mocks all human prudence; which puts us into the Port upon the point of suffering shipwrack; which precipitates us from the top of happiness into the abyss of misery; which overturnes Thrones; which destroyes Kingdomes; which causes Kings to die; and to say all in a word, which sovereignly disposes of the whole Universe. This resolution being strongly established in my mind, I found more tranquillity in my self; and though I was alwaies infinitely sad, yet for all that it is certain, that my melancholy was more sociable; and to speak truth, it was in some sort necessary that I should find my self in this estate; for *Soliman* failed not to send for me the next day to talk with him; and this second conversation having satisfied him more than the first, there past not a day after that, wherein I had not the honor to confer with him: History, War, Geography, the Mathematicques, Painting, and Musick were the subject of these entertainments: And whereas this Prince loves the Sciences passionately, and that the Orientall people are not at this day addicted to them, he was ravished to see that one of his Slaves was not ignorant in all these things; so that I may say with truth, that there was not a man in all his Empire, whom he esteemed more than my self. In the meantime I am to let your Excellencie understand, since you will know all my fortune, that in *Galatia*, in the same place where was heretofore *Angori*, which the Antients called *Senlencia*, and which the Turkes at this present name *Gielu-il*, by corruption of speech, there is an infinite multitude of *Mahometan* Religious men, called *Dervissars*, comprehending under that name all the divers kinds of those Solitaries, which are found amongst them; but amongst the rest there are of them, which are termed *Calenders*, who are of a different sect from the *Dervis*, and that make a more particular profession of continencie and austeritie: Of the number of these *Calenders* was one *Zellebis*, that is to say, a Noble man, descended from *Chaz-Bekkas*, or *Chaz-Hassen*, who lived in the time of *Orchan*, second Emperor of the Turks,



Turkes, and that in his religion had been the Disciple and Sectarie of one *Edebal*, who was the first institutor of all those *Mahometan* devotions, which prophesied the Empire to *Othoman*, and his successors; and who in his time had been held for a man of a very holy life: So that this *Calender Zellebis*, of whom I speak, a stirring and active man, relying on the reputation of his Predecessors, began to gain unto him all those of his sect, which were no small number; and under the name and pretext of liberty, he made almost all *Natolia* to revolt. *Soliman*, being advertised thereof, failed not in sending a mighty Army thither; but the chance of War so favoured those revolters, as they defeated it in divers incounters, and also killed some Sangiaes, or Governors of Provinces, who would have opposed themselves to this sedition, which under the pretext of the sanctity of those that raised it, might at length have proved dangerous to the Turkish Empire. The news of the last defeat of the Grand-Signiors Troopes was brought him a little while after I had the honor to belong unto him: And whereas the bad success of this Civill War touched him more vively, than the loss of a battel in a strange War would have done, he resolved to go in person to punish these rebels. And whereas he did not believe, that these seditious were so daring, as to oppose him, he gave not himself the time to raise one of those puissant Armies, which strikes terror into all the word, but contented himself with joyning his ordinary Guard, and some other Troops, which he took out of the Garisons, whereby he passed to those that had rallied themselves together after the last defeat. When he was ready to depart, he commanded me to follow him, though none of the rest of the Slaves besides had order to go: I will not tell you, Madam, all the particulars of this War; for whereas I recount mine own History, and not that of the Grand-Signior, I am to speak onely of those things, wherein I have some interest: You shall understand then, that *Zellebis*, the Chief of this sedition, being fallen sick, had forsaken the Camp, and was retired into the Capitall City of *Natolia*, with the best Troops of his Army; whereof *Soliman* having been advertised, he resolved to go and besiege him; not doubting but if he could get him into his hands he should easily prevail over all the rest. This design, having been approved of, was not long before it was executed; we marched directly to this City; approaches to it are made; trenches are cast up; batteries are raised; and in a few daies the avenues to it are so well closed up, as it is impossible for any body to goe in or out. At length, to abridge this narration, *Zellebis*, being in a short time recovered, defended himself so courageously, that after he had sustained three assaults with great loss of ours, the besieged were still in case to make sallies every day, which extremely incommodated our Army. During all these passages I had divers times besought his Highness to permit me to venture my life for his service, which I could not obtain, because a Slave is not suffered to bear armes: I lived then in this sort with a great deal of vexation, to see my self in a shamefull idleness at such a time, when as occasions were so often presented, wherein I might have dyed Nobly. As I was in this melancholy, the Grand-Signior, being much incensed to see this Town hold out so long, resolved that his Army should perish there, or carry it by force; and for that effect he caused a generall assault to be given: And though there were a body of the enemies Army in the field, he commanded nevertheless that they should not care so much for the guard of the Trenches, as for the attacking of the place; and the reason of this was, because the enemy had never appeared, nor had used indeavour, either to cast Troops into the City, or to raise the siege. In the mean time it happened, that an hour after the assault was begun, and that above twenty times there had been already lost, and regained, five or six foot of ground, which was to render *Soliman* Master of the Town, there was heard, notwithstanding the dreadful noise of Cannons, of armes, and of the cries of them that fought, towards the Grand-Signiors quarter a great volley of musket shot, which put much fear into our souldiers hearts. *Soliman*, who was present at this fight for to give direction in person, confirmed them the best that possibly he could, and after he had commanded the *Bassa-Siman* to continue the assault, he went to see what the matter was,

followed only by two thousand Janisaries, but he was quickly cleared in it, for he had not marched fifty paces, but that he saw the rest of his souldiers come in disorder, having avoided the fury of the enemy, who was pursuing them still. *Soliman* no longer doubted then but that this was *Zellebis* his Army which attacked his Camp; and being a Prince of a great and generous spirit, he purposed to fight with them: But as he was ready to march directly to the enemy, he was much surprized to behold from the Towns side, that not only his souldiers had abandoned the assault, but that *Zellebis* in the head of those of *Chientaya*, went beating them before him in a terrible disorder. As for me, who always followed the Prince without other arms than a light chain, which I wore on one of my legs, I assuredly believed that he was lost, as indeed without almost a supernaturall assistance it is certain that he could not have escaped: He was closed up in the midst of his enemies, his Army was dispersed, fear had seized upon his Troops, and if an advantageous plot of ground had not been met withall to put part of his Forces, and his Person in safety, this mischief had been without remedy. But, Madam, must I tell you how it was by my means, that this day, so unlucky in the beginning, had a glorious end? Yes, Madam, I must tell it you, and since my valor was but an effect of my despair, and that you were the cause thereof, it is just to let you understand how it was by you that I saved both the life, and the glory of great *Soliman*. Remember then, if you please, this verity in the process of this Narration, to the end I may not be accused of vanity in delivering things which I had not executed without you: I shall tell you then, Madam, that in this universall disorder I conserved so much judgement to observe, that on the left hand of that quarter where we were, there was a place which Nature had so well fortified, as with very little defence it was impossible to be forced; I advanced then boldly to the Grand Signior, and maugre the press I let him see what I had already noted, and caused him to perceive, that in attending the rallying of his troops he might be there not only in assurance, but in an estate to keep those of the town from joyning with them that were without. This advice having satisfied him, he commanded to go and seize on that plot; but as if the enemy had been acquainted with this design he advanced to dispute it with us. There it was, Madam, that I ceased to be slave for to be a soldier, for having taken a scimitar which I found amongst the dead bodies, I got into the head of our troops, with so much resolution, & so much good fortune, as I did things there which I dare not relate: in the end, Madam, I inspired our soldiers with such valor, as resuming courage we repulsed the enemy, & seized on the place, whereof I have already spoken to you. But when I saw *Soliman* in safety, I went and cast myself amidst some of our forces, which were fighting still with those that were come out of the City; and perceiving that our souldiers were preparing to flee, in hope to get to the place where *Soliman* was, I threatned to kill them if they returned not to the fight: This so extraordinary a discourse being seconded by some effects, which seemed marvellous unto them, they resolved to follow me: Behold me then the head of this couragious Brigade, whom I conducted so fortunately, as I made them carry that in two hours, which a whole Army could not do in six weeks before. At last, Madam, being resolved to perish, or do some great matter, I so hotly pursued the enemies, that after we had killed a great number of them, made the rest to flee, and put fear into all the remainder, I drove them even into their town, where being entred alone with them, certainly I performed things, which made me plainly see, that despair is more powerfuller than valor; but whatsoever I could have done, doubtless I should have fallen there if I had not called to minde, that the breach being abandoned, I might through that place cause our forces to enter, thither I made then with extreme speed, and finding none on the Ramparts but disarmed people, who were there assembled to see the success of the business, I easily got to it, and presently discovering those which had followed me to the City-gate, I cried unto them, Victory, Victory, for to oblige them to turn head towards me: When as they knew me by my slaves habit, they were so surprized to see me still living, as no way doubting but that I was a man sent by their Prophet to succour them,

them, they resolv'd to abandon me no more; and superstition mingled it self so happily amongst them to excite their valor, as I can say that I never saw souldiers more courageous: They came then unto me with incredible speed, and were no sooner mounted on the breach but I pulled down an Ensign, which the enemies had set up on the wall, to put one of *Solimans* in the place of it; and having left some for the guard of the breach, I went with the rest to seize on the gates of the town, and their Magazine of Arms. The people no sooner heard long-live victorious *Soliman* cried in the streets, but their weapons fell out of their hands, assuredly believing that their Army was defeated, and that the Emperors was in the City: In the mean time *Zellebis* used all his endeavour to put heart into his souldiers again, but seeing it altogether impossible, he resolv'd to flie, fearing nothing so much as to fall alive into *Solimans* hands. As soon as the people knew that their Defendor had forsaken them, we had no further resistance, except at the Gates, where some souldiers were still in the guard of them; this obstacle stay'd us not long, for whereas we fought then with hope that the victory vould fall to the juster side, vve redoubled our efforts vvith so much ardour, as at last vve became Masters of the place. Things being in this estate, and perceiving that I had not force enough to keep the people under, I thought fit to advertise *Soliman* of it, vvho in the mean vvhile had rallied one part of his Army, vvhich at length proved strong enough to vvithstand the Enemy, but not to repulse him, had not the happy nevvs vvhich I sent them redoubled their courage: *Soliman* caused the taking of the City then to be presently published amongst the Troops, and promised them the pillage of it if they performed their duty vvell. After this, Madam, they march'd vvith a resolution, vvhich certainly vvvas a presage of the victory had the enemies stood to it, but having turned their eyes to the City, and seeing on the walls an Ensign with the Arms of the Empire in it, their courage began to abate, and soon after to give place unto fear; for *Zellebis* upon his flying away had sent them word, that they should not hazzard a Battell, for that the Town was lost, so that they retired; and although that *Soliman* pursu'd them a while, their Chieftain was so cunning in his Trade, as it was impossible to ingage them in the fight, or to keep them from making an honourable retreat; for *Soliman* beholding from an eminent place, that they were going to take a wood, where it would have been dangerous to pursue them, and seeing likewise that it was almost night, he returned to the Camp: And whereas he had already sent me troops enough, that I might no longer fear the revolt of this people, I went to assure him that I had taken such order, as he might by the breach enter into this rebellious Town. To tell you, Madam, how this Prince received me vvould be an impossible thing; he caressed me with so much goodness, he commended me so highly, and said so many times that he owed both his life and his honour unto me, as his praise far surpass'd that which I had done: And observing that I had still a piece of the chain on, which I had brought back with me, from the fight, he commanded it instantly to be taken off. But seeing that he could not forbear speaking of me, and always asking me some particularity of this action, I besought him to think rather of conserving that which fortune had given him by my hand, than any further to commend a victory, for which he was more ingaged to his own good hap, than to my valour. This Prince grew suddenly silent hereupon, whereof I could not imagine the cause; but I was not long in this uncertainty, for *Soliman* after he had mused a little, began to speak, and tell me, how he was much troubled that his Religion would not permit him to give any command to such a man as I was, and that it forced him to do an injustice, and to shew himself ingratefull, by conferring that on another which I had acquired. I besought him then to believe, that if his Highness was satisfi'd, so was I, and that I aspir'd to no other glory than that of pleasing and serving him. He appointed the *Saniac* of *Narolia* then to go and command in the Town; and lest the fear of chastisement should carry the Inhabitants to any revolt, he charged him to keep the souldiers all night in Arms, and he ordain'd the same in his Camp, the Enemies not being so far off, but that it might be feared they might make use of the advantage



tage which the obscurity of the night gave them to come and beat up some of our Quarters. After this he made a sign for every one to withdraw; I would have obeyed like the rest, but he let me know that this Commandment extended not to me, and that he desired I should stay with him. It was then, Madam, that *Soliman* surmounted my insensibility, by forcing me to begin to serve him with amity, and not with a simple acknowledgement, as I had done before; and indeed to speak truth, one must have renounced all reason not to have been moved with so much generosity. He intreated me not as his Slave; he spake not to me as to his inferior; he caressed me not as his equal, but as if I had been an hundred degrees above him, both in my birth, in my merit, and in my valour: And to testify unto me that this discourse was not a flattery wherewith he meant to recompence me, he swore to me that it would be long of me if I did not reign in his Empire as absolutely as he himself, and conjured me to furnish him with the means for it, because without me he should be constrained to be ingratefull, fortune being so much his enemy, as he could not do good to the only man he loved, if I were not willing to it also. At last, Madam, after an hundred of the most conjuring protestations that can be imagined, and after he had prayed me above an hundred times not to think ill of him for the proposition he was going to make me, he undertook to persuade me to quit my Religion for to embrace his, because, said he, without that he must be ingratefull, I must be a slave, and he must likewise be the most unhappy of men, there not being a more cruell adventure (continued he) for a generous Prince, than not to be able to recompence a gallant action, and to be constrained to leave a person in servitude whom he loves, and whom he esteems so much, as to divide his Empire with him. After that this Prince had said all that generosity and affection could make one to say in a like encounter, I besought him not to afflict himself unjustly, since I was going to give him the means to recompence me, not only for the services I had rendered him, but for all those which I should render him in time to come. Hereupon such a joy appeared in his face, as fully assured me that he had expressed the meaning of his heart; but it continued not long, when as I humbly desired him to restore me my chains, and to leave me to the liberty of my Religion; that I demanded irons of him, to testify that I would not go out of his service; & that I besought him not to ask any more of me a thing, which I would not doe for the possession of the Empire of the whole world, for fear I should be forced to displease and disobey him. What I said *Soliman* unto me, shall I give chains to my Deliverer? shall I retain him still to be a Slave that makes me to reign? shall I bind the hands of him that hath crowned me? and with a strange injustice shall I make him a captive that hath made me victorious? No, no, it shall not be said, that I could not recompence them, that have served me, but with a shamefull servitude: The demand, which thou hast made me, is worthy of thy generosity, but this recompence would be unworthy of *Soliman*. He had questionless proceeded further, had he not observed my countenance to change, and fearing that he had displeased me, he began to ask me pardon, when as I perceived that I was wounded in the left arm by the blood that trickled out of the sleeve of my habit, so that doubting that I would fall into a swoon he called in company; and notwithstanding any thing I could say he would needs see my wound searched, which was not found dangerous, but which might have been so, had the dressing of it been any longer retarded. It is a strange thing that I did not perceive it, and if the proposition which *Soliman* made unto me, had not moved me so violently, as to make my wound burst out a bleeding, I believe that I had gone away without heeding it. *Soliman* caused me to be carried into a Tent, with so great a care, as one would have said, that on the conservation of my life depended that of his. I began then to be no longer regarded as a Slave, but as the favourite of the Emperor; every one observed and caressed me, and even he that had bought me, that had laid me in irons, and had condemned me to die, was one of the most carefull of my health. In the mean time *Soliman* entred the next day into the Town with all the ceremonies of a Prince, that is Vanquisher of his rebellious subjects:

jects: The principall inhabitants were brought before him bound in chaines, and prostrated with their faces on the ground; he informed himself presently of the quality of their crime; he distinguished those, that had revolted out of malice, from those that had been engaged in it out of weakness, and by a goodness quite contrary to the maximes of Tyrants, the lives of five or six of the most culpable satisfied for the offence of all the rest; and he shewed an example of clemencie, where others would have shewed one of cruelty under the name of justice. But whereas he had promised the pillage of the Town to the souldiers, he would not give them cause to complain in a time when as the enemy was still in the field; neither would he also let them charge themselves with booty, knowing well that the enriching of an Army is the destroying of it; so that to content them, he caused them to be told, that he was ready to keep his promise with them, but judging it not fit, *Zellebis* having escaped from his revenge, that they should load themselves with unprofitable lumber, since they could neither carry it away, nor sell it, being constrained to follow the enemy; he offered to give each of them three monthes pay, and promised them besides not to return to *Constantinople* without recompencing their courage. The souldiers accepted of this proposition, and that they might not have leisure to repent them, *Soliman* made them march away three dayes after, having left a strong Garison in the Town to hinder any new rebellion. He had the goodness to desire to know almost every hower in what estate I was, so that having been assured my wound would not keep me from following him, he testified a great deal of joy for it. We marched then directly to the enemy, having discovered by our scouts where he was: But whereas *Zellebis*, who had joyned himself to his Troops, would not hazard a battell lightly, he alwaies avoyded with dexterity every place, where he might be enforced to fight; and as he was cunning and malicious, so he invented a trick that succeeded happily with him. He saw well, that the Grand Signiors presence was the soul of his Army; that his very sight inspired valor into his souldiers; and that it would be hard to vanquish them, as long as he should be a witness of their courage; that he alone could heap wealth and honor on them: He sent then with all speed some of his faction to *Constantinople*, to sow a rumor there that *Soliman* was dead; that his Troops were defeated; & that he was declared Emperor; making no question, out of the knowledge he had of the *Janizaries* turbulent humor, which alwaies remained for the guard of the Seraglio, but that they would make some disorder, that might recall *Soliman* to *Constantinople*; as indeed this sad and false news was no sooner published there, but it presently begot a terrible confusion. The Grand Visier did all that he could, to learn from whence this rumor was come, to appease the *Janizaries*, assuring them that he had no notice at all of what they were made to believe; but that, which he thought to retain them by, did but incense them the more, and confirm them in their opinion. For (said they) if *Soliman* were not dead, the report of his victories would reach even higher; in conclusion, the whole Seraglio, and all the people were in teares, and all the *Janizaries* in arms: But when the Grand Visier, seconded by some of the people, and by some of the *Janizaries*, would have opposed them, they turned all their fury, according to their custom, against the *Jews* and the *Christians*, they plundered all their houses, they demolished their Chappells, they set some of them on fire, and in this confusion making no distinction betwixt a *Turk* and a *Christian*, little lacked but that they had pillaged all *Constantinople*, yea they almost durst enterprise to force the Seraglio. But in the midst of this disorder the Grand Visier received a Letter from *Soliman*, which advertised him of the happy success of his Armes, to the end he should advertise his Subjects therewith, so that being assured of the verity of the matter, he went into the streets, crying aloud, that *Soliman* lived, that *Soliman* was victorious, and that *Soliman* would be suddenly at *Constantinople*. He pronounced these words with so much joy, as they made some impression in the minds of the *Janizaries*; and having shewed the Grand Signiors Letter to some of them, this truth was no longer doubted of any body. The most seditious and the most insolent were the most amazed; the name of *Soliman* restored to them that respect  
whic

which avarice and violence had banished from them; they threw down their arms, and craved pardon; howbeit there were some of them, who fearing to render that which they had taken away, made strange Propositions: But the Grand Visier being wise and prudent, thought it would be better to make them hope for Grace, than to make them stand in dread of chastisement, for fear lest putting them in despair they should be carried again to some new violence. He promised them then to speak to the Grand Signior for them, and to assure him that the news of his death had so afflicted them, as not able to be revenged on those who they believed had caused it, they would at least be revenged on the enemies of his Religion: This discourse began to calm their spirits, and whereas this multitude seems always in such like encounters to have but one soul, which makes them operate, though they be composed of persons of different thoughts, they suffered themselves at length to be persuaded that their crime should not only be unpunished, but also be recompenced, as a mark of their zeal and affection. In the mean time the Grand Visier dispatched away with speed to *Soliman* to advertise him of this disorder, and to beseech his Highness if his affairs would permit it, to return unto *Constantinople*, for fear some new sedition should arise there; how it was unlikely, that the Christians, Jewes, and such Turks as had been plundered, should not complain of the outrage had been done them, and that these complaints should not be pursued with a new mischief: He informed him also, that the affairs of *Hungary* went not very well, and that his presence was necessary for the good of things. *Soliman* received this displeasing news with a great deal of grief, being sorry to leave the victory over *Zellebis* to another, howbeit he judged his return to be of too great importance to be deferred; so that after he had given the command of the Army to the *Bassa Sinan*, and instructed him with the order that he would have him to hold, we departed for *Constantinople* with as little company as possibly we could, to the end the Army might not be weakned, I say we departed, Madam, for since that fortunate day wherein my despair was so advantagious for me, I was inseparable from *Soliman*; I had a part in all his secrets, he told me all his thoughts, and my advices, and my counsells made up most of his resolutions. His return to *Constantinople* produced many effects there, he gave joy to the innocent, fear to the guiltie, and hope to the Jewes and Christians; and truly all these apprehensions were not ill grounded, for he rewarded those that had been faithfull unto him; he severely punished the seditious; he caused all that had been taken from the Jewes and Christians to be restored to them; he made their Chappells and their Houses to be re-edified; and for their goods which they had been robbed of, and could not be found, he paid them with his own money. After this, Madam, tranquillity was more solidly established in *Constantinople*, than it was before; yet did not the Emperor judge it fit to return into *Natolia* by reason the affairs of *Hungary* would not suffer him to be so far absented from it. During this intervall I had the honor to talk every day with *Soliman*, and to receive so many marks of his amity, as I could no longer refuse him mine; but whatsoever good will he bore me (if I may be permitted to speak so) he could not forbear persuading me to be of his Religion, whereunto I so strongly opposed my self, in letting him see the ridiculous errors which it teacheth, as not able to make him angry with me, I forced him many times to laugh at them. In the mean time it hapned, that one morning he sent an extraordinary exprefs for me, and just as I entred into his chamber, a *Bassa*, named *Rustan*, who hath married a daughter of *Solimans*, and is a cunning and dextrous man, entred in also with me: When I was come in, *Soliman* told me, that he had bought a picture of a Merchant, that was come from *Tauris*, which he would shew me, for to know whether he had not been cozened, and whether it were true that he had skill in painting: He gave me then a case covered with Diamonds, which I opened with so great a transport, as if *Soliman* had had a quiet spirit he had perceived it; for, Madam, if one may say, without blasphemy, that there is any thing in the world which doth resemble you, it is certainly this pourtrait; and whereas the picture which you gave me was taken from me, I believed at first that it was it,

and



and that to present it to the Grand Signior it had been put into a richer case; and that which served to deceive me too was, that as you had drawn your self like an *Amazon*, so was this also: But at length, after that this first trouble of mine imagination was appeased, I distinctly perceived that the eyes of the incomparable *Isabella* had a fire which did not appear in those of this picture, and that this resemblance was very imperfect. It is certain nevertheless, that the whole Orient hath never seen so fair a person; also when *Soliman* demanded of me, what I thought of it, I was constrained to tell him, how I did not believe that *Greece* had ever produced any thing so marvellous. Thou wilt not be astonished then, said he unto me, that *Soliman* is charmed with it, and that he is resolved curiously to inform himself whether the Originall be as perfect as the Picture; for if the Painter hath not flattered this maid, continued he, I am the most amorous of men, and I cannot live without possessing her. I confess that this discourse surprized me, for though it might have been said in a gallantry, yet I certainly knew by the manner of *Solimans* speaking that he had his heart touched. He would have me accord with him, that the Physiognomy of this person was spirituall; that it had a certain air of *Roxelana* the Sultana Queen, whom he had so much loved, and for whom he had still so much respect: I know well, said *Soliman* unto me, how it is incomprehensible, that he which hath the fairest women of the world in his power, should become enamoured, it may be of the imagination of a Painter, and that a mixture of colours, which cannot make but a dumb image, should force me to forget all the most perfect and the most charming that I have seen, yea, and *Roxelana* too, whom I love more than my life. I know well enough besides, continued he, that this person may be fair, and not be very amiable; that she may have defects in her minde and in her humour, which her picture doth not shew me; that this sweetness which is in her eyes, is not peradventure in her heart; that this majesty which appears in her face, doth cover it may be a wicked and base soul; and to say all, that she is quite contrary to that I believe her to be: But in the end I am compelled to this inclination by a superior power, which will not permit me to withstand my self: It is not because I know not well enough what is reason, but it is because in this encounter I cannot follow it: He prayed me that I would counsel him, so as it were according to his desire. I knew well by this discourse that this passion was too violent to be opposed, so as I only said to him, that the first thing which his Highness ought to do was to inform himself where the Merchant had met with this fair object of his love, to the end he might be assured the Painter had dealt faithfully. He told me then, how that man had already acquainted him that this person was named *Felixana*; that she was the daughter of the Governor of *Mazanderon*; that she lived with *Axiamira*, eldest daughter to *Tachmas*, Sophy of *Persia*, who it was thought was in love with her, but the report was, that *Felixana*, by reason of some secret inclination, or for some reason that was not known, did not receive the affection of that Prince favourably; wherefore this being so, he resolved to send *Rustan* in disguise for to see her, to offer her all the magnificences of the Seraglio; or if she would not receive them willingly, to bring her away by force, which would not be hard to do, because he had learnt by another, that the Princess *Axiamira*, with whom she lived, went almost every year to *Mazanderon*, which is situated on the bank of the *Caspian* Sea. I saw very well after this discourse, that being generous I was not to disguise my opinion in so important an occasion; I took then the liberty to say unto *Soliman* in the gentlest terms I could choose, that to use this violence was in some sort to violate the Law of Nations, and to be wanting to exact justice; and that if *Tachmas* was never so little sensible of it, the fire of his love might be likely to kindle that of war; and that peradventure his Highness might one day repent that a picture had caused the shedding of his Subjects blood. *Rustan*, who saw that by destroying the Emperors design I would take away his employment from him, assured the Grand Signior, that he would put *Felixana* into his hands without the Sophy of *Persia* ever discovering what was become of her; that he knew almost an undoubted mean to execute

execute that which he had said, provided he would give him a Vessell well furnished with all things necessary; that he would cause all his souldiers to be attired like Slaves, to the end they might be the less mistrusted; that as for him, he would also attire himself like a Merchant, and lade his Vessell with all that was most rare at *Constantinople* of the commodities of *Europe*, and most proper to touch the inclination of women; that after this he besought his Highness not to command him to say more, and to be contented with the Oath that he made him to return him his head at his feet, if he did not bring *Felixana*. This promise did so sooth the passion of the Emperor, as not able to keep himself from following it, he had the goodness to ask my pardon if he did not submit his sense to mine, telling me how I had at least this advantage, that he confessed I had reason, and that he would remember how his glory was dear unto me, since I had been so generous, as not to fear to offend him in opposing my self to the injustice of his design; that in the mean time we should deal in such sort as *Roxelana* might have no notice of it. In the end, Madam, *Rustan* had the equipage he required for this goodly conquest, and I had more civilities than I deserved. Howbeit *Soliman* was constrained a little after the departure of *Rustan* to interrupt his amorous thoughts, for to think of the affairs of *Natolia*, which since his return to *Constantinople* were very much changed; for as soon as *Zellebis* had been advertised by his Spies, that the Emperor was departed, he took as much care to joyn with his enemy, as he had used before to avoid him: And whereas *Sinan* had order to give battell, when occasion should serve for it, the two Armies were not long before they incountred together. If one should alwayes judge of the event of the fight by the number of the Souldiers, it is certain that the Bassa would have vanquished *Zellebis*, who had a great many fewer than he, but he was so unfortunate, and according to some, of so little understanding, that he let the enemies Army take all the advantages of the field, whether it were for the situation, or the wind, which drave all the dust and the smoke in the faces of ours, whereby they were extremely incommodated. It hapned also that when the Battell began, the Sun was covered with clouds, so that the Bassa *Sinan* not having observed on which side it was, or not having fore-seen that it might break forth, he placed his souldiers with their eys just against it, who soon after perceived that this light which blinded them, kept them oftentimes from being able either to strike their enemies, or to avoid their blows. At last, Madam, the Sun cleared the defeat of the Bassa, and the triumph of *Zellebis*, and the Emperors Army was so routed, as in above eight days after a thousand souldiers were not found together. This news very much afflicted *Soliman*, and whereas I was the only confident of his pleasure, and of his grief, I received order to come unto him; but I was scarcely entred into his Cabinet, when as he fell to asking of me, whether I would have him dishonoured? Whether I had resolved to let that be lost which I had gotten? Whether I had taken the Capitall Town of *Natolia* to serve for a retreat to a coward, which had blemished the glory of his Arms? For at length, said he unto me, the Bassa *Sinan* is retired thither, after he hath lost a battell, and after he hath let mine enemy take the Arms of the Empire: Now judge, *Ibrahim*, continued he, what I am to attend from thee; thy valor hath once already established my glory, it is again by thee that I must hold it; from thy hand it is that I will have the head of *Zellebis*, and from thy arm that I look for victory: Oppose thy self no longer then against my will; nor can I ever resolve that thou shouldst quit me; I love thee too well, or to say better, I love my self too vvell to give thee liberty to go out of my State. Resolve then for that vvhich I have so often demanded of thee, and vvhich I dare not almost express more clearly unto thee, for fear of grieving thee; at length *Ibrahim*, take a Turbant and a Scimitar, and after that, I make thee the chief of my Empire, mine enemies are subdued, and *Soliman* is contented. It is certain, that the manner wherewith this discourse was pronounced somewhat moved my minde, but it is true nevertheless that it never shaken my soul; I besought the Emperor not to hearken so much to the affection he bore me, but that he would also hearken unto reason; that the first blinded his judgement,

ment, in perswading him that I was capable of great things; but the second shewed him clearly, that he demanded of me a thing, not only unjust, but impossible to an heart as mine was: For, my Lord, said I unto him, our thoughts depend not upon our wills; that which we call faith amongst us, is a grace that comes from above, and is not acquired by naturall knowledge; it is a thing then which can not be forced; it is a present from Heaven which is to be conserved with the perill of ones life, and which is not under the dominion of Kings: Let thy Highness pardon me then if I refuse thee a thing which I would not doe for the possession of the whole Universe, no nor at the sight of a death, the most terrible and most dreadfull that can be. If I should refuse thee, continued I, either my blood or my life, which are the only things whereof I can dispose, I should think my self guilty of the blackest ingratitude that ever was; but being far from so base a thought, I most humbly beseech thee permit me to go and affront the Army of the enemy, to try, the first of all, his fury and his rage, and if it be possible to grapple with *Zellebis*, and sacrifice his life to thy vengeance, or mine to thy service. Thy Highness hath but too well made known unto me, how thou rememberst that when I was laden with chains I had the good fortune to vanquish thine enemies; do thou judge then by what I have done, of that which I will do in this occasion, whenas so many testimonies of affection render me indebted to thy Greatness, and that being no longer fettered with irons, I may make use of all my address, and of all my force: Let a Scymitar then, my Lord, be only given me, and let me be placed in the foremost rank of thine Army; and to oblige thy Highness from requiring that only thing of me which I can refuse thee, do but consider seriously, and consult with thy most secret thoughts, and then demand of thy self, if the good hap of Christendom had been such, as that thou wert powerfully perswaded of the truth of our Religion, whether thou wouldst be capable of changing it for the conquest of all the world: But it is too much importuning thy Highness to ask a just thing of thee with so many reasons; and it is, as it were, to commit a crime to make any doubt of obtaining it. *Soliman* heard me with a great deal of unquietness, and when I had done speaking he was a pretty while without answering me: And although the thoughts of men are hard to be known, yet I well observed, that choler, reason, and amity reigned successively in his heart; but at length, after he had disputed with himself, he said unto me with somewhat a more quiet countenance, That not being able to change his mind, nor being able likewise to rid himself of the affection he bare me, he had found out an expedient which I could not refuse him, unless I were resolved to incur his hatred; and which he would grant me, if the *Muphti*, who is the head of their Religion, thought he might do it without offending the Prophet. He propounded then unto me, only to take the habit of the Turks, to the end that being believed to be so, he might confer Charges upon me, and keep me about him: And to perswade the people that I had changed my Religion, he would so order it, that the *Muphti* should assure all the world, that he had performed the ceremony of it in private in the Mosque of the Seraglio; that he was confident this man loved his head too well to reveal a secret of so great importance; that in the mean time I might live a Christian under the habit of a Mussulman, and render him the happiest Prince of the Earth. I confess, that I had more ado to answer to this last proposition, than to the other; howbeit I requested him to remember, that dissimulation was not to go so far as to the Altars; that love and war did many times permit such things, but that Religion required much sincerity; and that in the same which I professed, there was an express Commandment to publish it openly. I would have proceeded, but choler so surmounted the Sultan, as I was constrained to hold my peace, for fear of incensing him further. I well enough perceived, that amity had still a place in his soul, maugre his fury; I saw tears of spight and kindness in his eyes, and how violent soever his discourse was he always intermingled things amongst it, which made me easily discern, that he had an affection for me which could never be destroyed. He said unto me then with a precipitated voyce, that I



should make no further reply unto him; that all the grace he could do me was to permit me to go and consult with the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and the Religious men of *Pera*, about an occasion wherein they had as much interest as I; for it may be, said he unto me, after I have favoured them so much in consideration of thee, I may very well destroy them for the same cause, and on them revenge my self of thy insensibility, and of the anger I am in for that I cannot leave loving thee, to the end thou mightst punish thy self: But go, continued he, and let me hear thy last resolution within two dayes: for otherwise I shall be able to take one which may make thee repent, that thou hast so ill acknowledged the affection that I still bear thee, maugre thy obduracy. When he had given over speaking, I withdrew with a profound respect, and considering with my self what I had to do, it seemed just unto me not to rely upon mine own proper sense in a matter of so great importance. Those menaces of *Soliman* would not have shaken me, had they been addrest to none save my self, but the fear of involving so great a number of innocents in a mischief, which ought not to have regarded any but me, made me resolve to have recourse unto the reason of others, mine not being free enough, nor sufficiently disinterested to operate justly in this encounter. The aversion which I had for life, being absent from you, helped to persuade me too, that my Religion permitted not that which was desired of me. I assembled then the Patriarch of the Greek Church, and his principall Calviers, for the Latin is not yet established in *Constantinople*; and whereas I had seen them oftentimes after I was there, I propounded the matter unto them, with all the circumstances which I believed was necessary to tell them, to the end they might the better understand the importance of the affair: I let them know the extreme affection which *Soliman* bore me; the menaces he used against them in consideration of me; the promises I had received from him if I did that which he desired; at last I exposed the matter sincerely unto them just as it had past, and without disguising my sense I gave them to understand, that provided they might be in safety, I should be glad they would find that I could not satisfy *Soliman* but with the loss of my life. They began a dispute then, which lasted a good while; they would not trust to their memories, but would look over their books, and not judge tumultuously of the affair. The opinions were divided for an hour and more, and either side seemed to have very strong reasons to maintain their party; but in the end the Patriarch told them, that as amongst us we daily see religious men sent forth in the habit of Merchants, or Cavaliers, for the converting of souls, so the same disguise might be permitted to one, provided it were for the same cause, and that the sole interest of Christendom carried me to this deceit, which certainly would bring me to happiness in heaven, and to glory on earth, if I could resolve to execute it generously; that the power which I had over the spirit of *Soliman*, might peradventure be so great, as to make him doubt of his Religion; that it may be his conversion might be reserved for me; and that if this should happen, it would render the greatest service to Christendom that ever was rendered unto it; that thereon peradventure depended the safety of an hundred thousand persons; and that in conclusion his advice was, that I could not fail in this occasion. This opinion being become general amongst them, they conjured me to submit my sense to theirs, in satisfying *Soliman*, and that they would ingage their consciences to me, that mine should be discharged of all fault in this encounter; so as I let not my self be blinded with greatness, and that the protection of Christendom were the only motive that carried me to this disguise. I did what I could to oblige them to change their advice; I made an hundred objections, and an hundred demands to them; I told them, that although I should not bear arms against Christendom, as I was fully resolved not to do, yet I should not alwayes forbear hurting it, if I served in other occasions, because I should still be augmenting the Turkish Empire. But they told me, so as I carried the war to the *Persians*, it would amuse *Soliman* unprofitably for himself, and profitably for the Christians; for that the conquests which the Turks made upon the *Persians*, could never, through a kinde of extraordinary fate, be con-

conserved by them; that in this sort occupying *Soliman* in that war, it would deprive him of the means of turning his Arms against Christendom; that of two evils the least was always to be chosen; and finally, that I should in my person answer for the miseries which should arrive unto them, if I did not yeeld a blind obedience to what they ordained, whenas I sufficiently knew that reason would have it to be so. I was forced then to follow their directions, and to go unto *Soliman*, after I had been instructed by them concerning all that I was to do. As for that Prince, when he had propounded the matter to the *Muphti* in such terms as testified that he desired it, he that made no other use of the Religion whereof he was the Head, but his own profit, failed not to tell the Sultan, out of the hope of a recompence, that the thing was not only permitted, but was also meritorious, seeing it conduced to the service of the Empire, which the Prophet had established. As soon as the Sultan saw me, he came to me, and beholding me with a fixed eye, he fought to know the thoughts of my heart by the motions of my face; but not giving him leave to speak to me, I assured him that I came to obey him, provided that his Highness would accord me three things which I desired of him. I had no sooner said this, but that without knowing what I would have, this Prince assured me that they were granted unto me; I besought him then to hear me first, to the end that precipitating nothing I might never give him occasion to complain of me. After he had given me the liberty to say what I would to him, I humbly requested him not to take it ill, that being his Slave I should be so bold as to capitulate with him, and give bounds to his Authority; for, my Lord, said I unto him, I do not consent unto this disguise, which thy Highness desires of me, but upon condition that thou shalt never speak to me to put that in effect, which I am going to do in shew; that thou wilt permit me to have always about me in the habit of a Slave, a Priest of my Religion, whom I will procure to come from one of the Islands of the Archipelago; and that which is the most important, that thou shalt never command me to bear Arms against Christendom: If any of thy Subjects, said I to him further, shall rebell, as *Zellebis*; if thou wilt conquer *Persia*; if any other of thy Neighbours that is not Christian, shall oblige thee to make war upon him, or if thou wilt render thy self Master of all the rest of the Orient, hold me for the basest of thy Slaves if I spare either my blood, or my life, for the glory of thy Arms. If thy goodness doth not refuse me this which I beg of thee on my knees, dispose of me as thou pleatest, I am resolved to follow thy directions exactly, and to obey thee in all things. *Soliman* was so contented with the obtaining of that which he desired, as he swore unto me above an hundred times, that the three things which I had demanded, should be inviolably observed. But not to lose time, said he unto me, I will have thy change published presently, to the end the people may not be surpris'd with it; in the mean space I will go and give order for the *Muphti* to come to me; and will command him to repair to thee eight dayes one after another, to make the world think that he instructs thee; and prepares thee for this Ceremony, which shall oblige thee to keep thy chamber the whilst, the better to make it be believed that it will be performed. At length, Madam, not to prolong this discourse with vain repetitions, the business was done as it had been propounded, and this dumb shew was so well carried, as no body believed it but to be so. As long as I kept the house I was visited by the chiefest of the Empire, who judged rightly, that the affection of *Soliman* having no other obstacle to hinder him from imploying me, would without doubt bring me into an estate able to serve them, as indeed it was not long before I perceived that their conjectures were true; for the second day after this imposture, I found, that I had an house, a magnificent train, rich clothes, and to conclude an equipage proportionable to the imployment which *Soliman* gave me, by making me General of the Army in the place of the Bassa *Sinan*: And to testify his amity the better unto me, he gave me wherewith to render secretly to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, and the rest that had counsell'd me, the Tribute which he had drawn from them the last three years, and caus'd also the foundation of a Palace to be laid, which afterwards

wards I finished. In the mean time he had taken care, that I should have troops ready to march, when I had satisfied the civilities of the Ceremony, so that at such time as I went first to salute him in a Turkish habit, I found that that, which I believed should have been one of my ordinary visits, was a farewell for me to go and command the Army of *Natalia*. I will not tell you, Madam, the joy which this Prince shewed in this occasion, it was so great, as my tongue hath not an expression powerfull enough to paint it forth unto you; but in the end to let you see in what estate I was with him, I have but to tell you, that after he had fully instructed me about the affairs of *Natalia*, and that he had commanded me to take upon me the Conduct of his Army, he told me, that to do me justice, and to punish the Bassa *Siman* both for the cruelty he had before times used towards me, and for the cowardise he had shewed, his pleasure was, that yeelding me his place, he should withall take that in my service which I had held in his; namely, Madam, that he should be my slave as I had been his. I must confess here, that without playing the generoso this proposition grieved me very much, and notwithstanding all the respect I had to *Soliman*, as soon as he acquainted me with his intention I cast my self at his feet, humbly to beseech him not to command me the doing of so extraordinary a thing, nor to require, that a man who had been my Master, should be reduced to misery and infamy; that for my part, I could never resolve to put him in chains that had commanded me, and who, it may be, was more unfortunate than faulty: I represented then unto him that the fate of war doth oftentimes mock at humane prudence; that force and number do not alwayes suffice to have the better; and lastly, that victory doth not always attend upon valor and justice. After all these reasons, which peradventure had not been potent enough to move him, I begged the liberty and fortune of this man for a recompence of all the services which I would render him, and besought him to be contented with absenting him from the Port, by sending him to be Governor of some one of his Provinces: *Soliman* resisted my request at first, but afterwards consented thereunto, upon condition that the Bassa should know how much he was obliged unto me; then he gave me a Letter for him, whereby he was commanded to remit the remainder of his Army into my hands, and straightly embracing me, Go, said he unto me, my dear *Ibrahim*, whither thy glory calls thee, where mine requires thee, and where victory attends thee: But when thou shalt be accumulated with honour, when thou shalt have re-established that of my Arms, and triumphed over mine enemies, come and receive the recompence that I shall prepare for thee, and quietly enjoy the fruit of thy labors. *Justiniano* having observed some change in *Isabellas* face, thought it was fit for him to say, I perceive, Madam, that this name of *Ibrahim* doth surprize and astonish you, but your astonishment will cease, when I shall have told you, that in changing of habit I did not change my name, and that this which I bear is the same with that of *Ibrahim* amongst the Turks. It is true, answered the Princess, that I was strangely surprized by this name, but it is true also, that my astonishment is not yet finished; for could it be possible that you should be that *Ibrahim* of whom the relations of the *Levan* hath told us such wonders? whose valour hath done such miracles, who hath conquered a part of *Persia*, gained so many great battails, caused *Soliman* to be crowned at *Bagdat*, and who passeih for so extraordinary a man, as it is not believed the Orient hath ever had the like? Now, I pray you, hold me no longer in suspence, but after you have cleared that unto me which I ask of you, pursue the sequels of your History, and acquaint me exactly with all that hath befallen you. I know very well, Madam, replied *Justiniano*, that after that which you have said, I should, if I were modest, disavow my self, but being true and sincere I must confess, that I am that *Ibrahim* whom fame hath so much flattered, as I cannot tell how to know my self by the pourtrait which your Excellency hath made of me by her report: Rely not then upon that which this deceiver hath told you, and to make you the Judge thereof, do but give ear to the procees of my adventures. As soon as I was arrived at *Natalia* with the Troops which the Grand Signior had given me to conduct thither, I went directly





to *Chientata*, from whence the *Bassa Sinan* had not stirred, since his retiring to it, having done nothing else but intamped the remainder of his Army neer to the Town, in attending either Forces, or a new Order: I sent him that which I had brought, by a *Captain*, which he executed very punctually; he consigned the Army into my hands, and gave me thanks for the obligations wherein he stood ingaged unto me; for he had understood by the *Sultans* Letter, that I had saved him from an extreme ill fortune. I comforted him the best I could, and promised him, that if the Emperor continued his favour to me, I would continue also to serve him. After this I employed all my care to carry my self in such sort, that the hopes which *Soliman* had of me might not be frustrated. I caused my Army to be mustered, and having put it into Battell Array, I went from rank to rank to visit all the Troops, and encouraging them to do well, (for I had learnt the language of the Countrey perfectly) I assured them, that in leading them to the fight, I would be the first that would be ingaged therein; that I would perform the part of the souldier, as well as of the Generall of the Army; that I would reserve my self nothing of all the booty which should be gotten from the enemy, but the sole pleasure of having enriched them. After this discourse, they made shouts of joy, which perswaded me that I was agreeable to them. Then came all the Commanders to take the Oath of Obedience to me, and so assure me that they would follow me to the death: That done, I marched directly to the enemy, who was not above fifteen or twenty miles from us; but whereas he had been advertised that the Slave which had taken *Chientata*, was Generall of the Army that was comming to attaque him, the remembrance of what had past made him to fear that which was to issue, and for that reason he discamped in hast, with a purpose to retire to a side of *Nasolia*, where it had been impossible to have forced him to fight. When I perceived his design by the way his Army took, I resolved to prevent him, by causing my forces to march a whole night with all possible speed: The matter succeeded so happily, that my Army having had leisure to rest three or four hours, began to see that of *Zellebis* appear, who being soon advertised of this warlike stratagem, entered into such despair for having been surpris'd in this sort, as he resolved to accept of the Battell which I presented unto him. I was glad to understand his design, and to inspire my Souldiers with the same thought, I assured them, after I had given order for all things, that the justice of the cause we defended was a presage of the victory; that it was easier to punish Rebels, who carried a domestique enemy in their hearts, which reproached them with their crime, than to vanquish men whose Arms were lawfull; that they whom we were to fight with, being resolved for it more by fear and necessity, than by valour, it would be but too easie for our glory to remain victorious: I represented also unto them, that the travail they had endured in going so fast, was not disadvantageous unto them, it being most certain, that they which fly are wearied more than they which pursue them; that the end of the War depending on this battell, I was resolved to vanquish or to dye; and that all the favour I demanded of them was, to follow the way which I was going to shew them. I had no sooner done speaking, but they testified unto me, both by their shouts and by their actions, their desire to fight; so that not suffering for noble a heat to cool, I marched on foremost to the Enemy. I will not stand, Madam, to particularize this battell, since it would be to abuse your patience, and be wanting in good manners, to entertain you so long with matters of war; it shall suffice then to tell you that which regards me directly, seeing you will have it so, although it be not without blushing. Wherefore I shall only say, Madam, that at first the enemies received us courageously, and that they repulsed us severall times with such ardour, as despair did more in them than valour in us; but after that the victory had hung ballancing on either side, and that the hope of carrying it had possessed each party more than once, it was my good fortune, maugre the confusion of the fight, to know *Zellebis* by the marks which had been given me of him. He was of a reasonable extraordinary bigness, and his custom was to carry alwayes two Scymitars in the wars; the one in his hand,

hand, and the other at his saddle-bow; he was also many times armed after the Persian manner, so as no way doubting but that it was he, I brake through the press to meet him, and calling him by his name, I told him, that the same Slave, who before had vanquished him in his chains, was come to make him satisfaction for that outrage in Arms; I spake to him in this sort, because I had understood that in a speech to his souldiers, after he had heard that I was Generall of the Army, he had told them in a jeering way, that I was still so tired with wearing of irons, as it would be easie for him to overcome me: Howbeit fortune disposed of it otherwise, not because he was not a more valiant man than I, but because I was more fortunate than he. As soon as he understood that which I have told you, he seconded my design; and that we might the better enter into a particular fight we freed our selves, as well as we could, from those that invironed us, and being separated from the rest, we began our combat. I doubt not, Madam, but you will be astonish'd with that which I am going to acquaint you with, since it is certain, that one will have much ado not to be surprized with a thing which hath no example in all Antiquity, and which your imagination would not fore-see. It hapned then, Madam, that some of ours having observed this action, and having told it to their companions, this rumour spread it self so suddenly amongst the two Armies, that as if those two great bodies had had but one spirit, which had animated them, they took both of them the same resolution, and confided so in the valor of their Chieftains, as they determined to be spectators of the victory, which they attended from them. They of my party said, that they would not share the glory of this day with me, and that I would carry it away well enough without their succour; and others muttered, that he who had known so well how to begin the war, knew also how to finish it gloriously. At length, Madam, the most earnest to fight, separated themselves to behold us; and as if there had been some enchantment in this adventure, every one retired to his own Ensign, and in an instant the field of our combat proved to be in the midst of two Armies in Battell Array. This event surpris'd me in such sort, as it had like to have cost me my life; for whereas, maugre the heat of the fight, I had conserved so much coldness and judgement, as to mark what was done, and to be astonish'd at it, going to turn about my head towards my souldiers to give them assurance that I fought for them, I furnished mine enemy with such an opportunity, as being loath to lose that advantage, he struck me so great a blow with his Scymitar upon my Turbant, as I was almost bereft of my senses, and if by good hap it had not turned in his hand, I had certainly been lost: Hereupon arose cries from both parties, which amidst their confusion testified their thoughts unto us; and whereas mine had observed, that I had received this blow by looking at them, they would have advanced, which I perceiving by the enemies countenance, I separated my self some dozen or fourteen paces from *Zellebis* to charge them not to stir, and to confirm them in that design I returned to *Zellebis* with such courage, as they were perswaded it would not be easie for him to surmount me. Howbeit we disputed this victory a long time, and verily this man combated with such heart, as gave me a great desire to save him; so that his horse having thrown him to the ground upon a blow that I unwittingly gave him, I told him that if he would render himself I would promise to get his pardon of *Soliman*; but being got up again with fury, and having answered me, that he would have the victory, or die, I would not combat him with advantage, so that being alighted from my horse we began a new fight, which was more unfortunate for him than the former: For feeling my self hurt in the left arm, the desire which I had to vanquish redoubled in such manner, as in a little time his death put fear in o his Army, and joy into mine. Some of his seeing him fall would have advanced to revenge his loss, or to recover his body, but they were so rudly repuls'd, as they were constrained to change that design into that of breaking and flying: I then commanded my men to cry out in pursuing them, that they should be received to grace which would render themselves; this voyce failed not to work its effect, for out of the despair wherein they were, for having lost not only the Generall of their Army, but the Au-  
thor

thor of all this war, many of them flung down their Arms; the rest were cut in  
 pieces, some excepted that retired into the revolted Towns; but I can say, that  
 they which escaped the pursuit of our Forces contributed not the least to our glory;  
 for they brought so great a terror to the places which they had chosen for their  
 retreat, as in fifteen dayes they rendred all to the obedience of the Grand Signior.  
 In the mean time to make good my word, and to follow the custom of those Coun-  
 treyes, I sent the head of *Zellebis* to *Soliman*, who doubtless was not so glad at the  
 death of his enemy for the interest he had in it, as he was because he believed that  
 this action was glorious to me: And whereas he had an extreme desire to see me,  
 I had order to return unto *Constantinople* as soon as *Natolia* should be peaceable, and  
 that I had secured all the revolted places. I was not long before I was in an estate  
 to obey him, for whereas *Zellebis* was the onely man that remained of the Race of  
*Chaz-hassen*, so considerable with the *Calenders*, and the *Dernis*, there was no one  
 found amongst them whom the rest would obey; the equality of their birth and  
 condition was the cause that never a one in particular would indure that another  
 should command, and this dissension put them into such disorder, as they were  
 more revolted amongst themselves, than against their Sovereign. I profited by the  
 advertisement I received hereof, for *Soliman* having sent me an absolute power to  
 pardon, or to punish, I commanded them to yeeld, promising to make their peace  
 with the Grand Signior, but threatening that if they did not accept of the pardon  
 which I offered them, to extirpate them utterly, and to cause all the *Dernis*, and  
 all the *Calenders* to be banished from out of the whole extent of the Turkish Em-  
 pire. This was done in a conjuncture so favourable, that they all with one voyce  
 resolved to render themselves; there was not a Town which did not open their  
 Gates, receive a Governor from my hand, and a Garrison strong enough to keep  
 them from rebelling another time; and for more surety, I caused all the *Dernis* and  
*Calenders* to be disarmed, representing unto them, that the profession of men of  
 Religion did not permit them to have Arms; and that their crime could not re-  
 ceive a lighter punishment, than to be contented that the means of their future of-  
 fending should be taken from them. At length, Madam, after I had set an order to  
 all things, I returned to *Constantinople*, where for a recompence of that little I had  
 done, *Soliman* made me Bassa, and Grand Visier, which is the prime Charge of  
 that Empire; for it had so fallen out, that he who possessed it died in my absence.  
 I did all that I could to refuse this honor, but in the end I was constrained to  
 accept of it, both by the Commandment of the Grand Signior, and by the coun-  
 sell of the Religious men of *Pera*, and of the Patriarch of the Greek Church,  
 whom I still acquainted with all that befell me, by a Priest disguised like a slave,  
 which always attended on me, alleging this reason to me for it, that the more  
 power I had, the more utile I should be for Christendom. Behold me then the first  
 person of the Empire next to *Soliman*, but with an Authority so absolute, as never  
 was there Subject seen so independent from his Sovereign. I was some time in-  
 structing my self in the Forms and Ceremonies that are to be observed in dis-  
 patches; after which *Soliman* reposed himself on me for the Government of his  
 Estates, except it were for so much as concerned the affairs of Christendom, which  
 I alwayes protected as much as possibly I could. In the mean season this Prince  
 thought many times on *Felixana*, extremely marvelling at the long voyage of *Ru-  
 ssan*, upon whose coming he had placed a great deal of hope; but fortune that  
 often delighteth in extraordinary things, and loves to give weak beginnings to the  
 most important affairs, had disposed of it in a fashion which *Soliman* did not fore-  
 see: And how prudent soever he was, he did not consider, that Love and Fortune,  
 who were to give success to this adventure, were two Deities too blinde to bestow  
 all that he desired on him, although he deserved it; and indeed he was deceived by  
 them both, for he was amazed to see *Russan* return very melancholick, without  
 Slaves, without Souldiers, without a Vessel, and without *Felixana*. At first  
 he believed that his design having been discovered all his equipage had been taken  
 from him, and that he had been ill intreated; but when he had commanded him



to give him an account of his voyage, he learned, that the business had past in another manner; for *Rustan* had been so dextrous, and so happy in his enterprize, as he had forcibly carried away the person whom the picture which *Soliman* had given him represented: But, Madam, this person was not *Felixana*, and this adventure is so deplorable, that although it be not intermingled with my fortune, yet only in regard it is the foundation of a war, which I am obliged to relate, yet would I let you understand it, seeing you will be acquainted with the whole course of my life, did I not fear to importune you with so long a Narration. The Princess interrupting *Justiniano*, desired him not to speak to her any more in this sort, and to tell her, not only all that which had befallen him, but all that which he knew concerning the life of *Soliman*; it seeming unto her, that this Princess loved him too well not to have his History joyned to his; whereupon *Justiniano* began thus.

### *The History of the Princess Axiamira.*

AS soon as *Rustan*, after he had quitted his Vessell in *Mingrelia*, and had taken another upon the River of *Araxes*, was arrived with his souldiers disguised at *Mazanderon*, which is a Town situated on the bank of the *Caspian* Sea, and the Capitall of *Hircania*, at this day called *Diargument*, and had cast anchor in the Port, he understood that the Princess *Axiamira* had been there a pretty while, although it was not as yet the season wherein she used to come thither; but for some disorder which had hapned in the Sophies Court she had advanced her voyage. *Rustan*, seeing such a wonderfull good hap for the commencement of his enterprize, thought of nothing else but to seek the means how he might be introduced into the Castle, for the which he began to fall in with the Merchants of the place, and to part with some things that he had brought thither, at a price much below the ordinary, to the end his design might succeed the rather; as indeed he had not been eight dayes in the Town, but he received order to let the Princess *Axiamira* see the goodliest things he had; he obeyed this commandment with joy, being in good hope that *Felixana* was with her: He carried her then a great many Mirrors, little Pictures, and curious Watches, which are the rarest things amongst the Persians; but he was exceedingly surpris'd and astonished whenas waiting in *Axiamira's* chamber for her coming out of her Cabinet, he heard one call a maid, that had brought him in, *Felixana*, who, though she was very fair, resembled not a whit the pourtrait which he had: this amazement doubtless was great enough, but it redoubled more whenas the Princess *Axiamira* entred into the chamber, and that he certainly knew she was the Originall of that fatal Picture, which hath since caused the shedding of so much blood, and so many tears. He was so stricken with this sight, that at first it gave the Princess occasion to think, that being a Merchant, and not accustomed to converse with great persons, he was out of countenance; howbeit at length he told her in the *Persian* tongue, that within a little while he should have rarer things yet to shew her, hoping by this artifice to have the opportunity to see the Princess once again, the better to confirm him in the belief that what he beheld was true. *Axiamira*, giving credit to his words, bought onely a Looking-glass, and some Watches, and then ordained him not to fail in letting her have a sight of those rarities he spoke of, as soon as they were come to his hands. *Rustan* retired in this sort, but so full of confusion and astonishment, as he was a long time before he could beleieve that which he had seen, and longer yet before he could resolve upon what to do in so unexpected an event. What! sayd he to himself, as he told me after his return, is it possible that *Felixana* should be turned into *Aximira*? that the daughter of the Governour of *Mazanderon* should become the daughter of the Sophy of *Persia*? or that through an extraordinary adventure a Merchant should be so daring as to assure a thing to *Soliman*, whereof he was not well assured himself? Hereupon having opened the case wherein the Picture

ture was, which the Grand Signior had given him, and also recollecting his imagination and his memory, for the comparing of it with the originall, and for the observing of all the lineaments in particular, his eyes so confirmed him in the belief, that it was the Picture of *Axiamira*, as he made no longer doubt of it. Then it was, that he saw himself combated with divers thoughts; for whereas he is ambitious, hardy, cunning, and wicked, and that to attain to a glorious employment, would undertake any thing; the fear of displeasing *Soliman* either in venturing to carry *Axiamira* forcibly away, or in returning without doing ought, agitated him so mightily, as he was ten or twelve daies sick upon it, during which time he did nothing but pass up and down in his mind all the reasons that might induce him, either to the forcible carrying away of *Axiamira*, or to the restraining him from it: On the one side he thought, that the Grand Signior having made choice of him for the service of his amorous passion, he should be but badly received, if at his return he only brought back for the fruit of his voyage, that *Felixana* resembled not the picture which had been given him; He feared also that *Soliman*'s hope being frustrated, that which he had of being *Beglerbei* of *Syria* would be so too; Wherefore regarding the matter after another sort, he laboured to find anothers satisfaction in his own. But the more he considered the design of carrying away of *Axiamira* by force, the more obstacles he found therein; he was not powerfull enough to force the Town or Castle, and the retiredness wherein the women live over all the Orient, permitted him not the means to work upon any of those that were near the Princess for the suborning them: But above all things, the sole apprehension that *Soliman* should not approve of his design, and should be offended to understand, that instead of forcibly carrying away the daughter of a simple Governour, he should have forcibly carried away that of one of the mightiest Princes of the world, put him into an inquietness that cannot be exprest; and I verily believe by that which I could conjecture out of his own relation, that this last fear had absolutely mastered his soul, and carried him to return without enterprizing further, had not the misfortune of the unhappy *Axiamira* made him change his opinion, and brought her to contribute her self to her own ruin, without thinking of it. This excellent Princess took so much pleasure in fishing, and was so delighted with this sport, as there were few fair dayes which she employed not in this maritime chase; and whereas all *Persia* was quiet, having no war either domestick or forein, she went to this innocent warfare, more accompanied with fisher-men than souldiers, and almost without other arms than nets and hooks. During the time that *Rustan*'s sickness lasted, he observed that *Axiamira* was two or three days a fishing, and having dextrously informed himself from some Merchants who dealt with him, that the Princess used oftentimes so to do, he understood what I have declared, so that no longer judging this design, which he had believed to be impossible, other than a little hazardous, and having a Vessell that was an excellent Sailer, well furnished with all things, and never a Mariner but which was a Souldier, he looked on this affair after another manner, and out of an extreme inhumanity he reasoned in this sort. I have order from *Soliman*, said he, to put him in possession of the Originall of this Picture; it is not the name of *Felixana* that makes him amorous, it is the beauty of *Axiamira* which he hath seen in this pourtrait; it is then *Axiamira* whom I am forcibly to carry away: It is true, that she is a Princess, but it is also true, that therein fortune favors me, in giving me the means to acquire a treasure for *Soliman* far more precious than he believed it to be, the boldness of my enterprize will make the greatness of my recompence, and will manifest to his Highness, that there is nothing which I would not do to obey him. Behold, Madam, the unjust reasons wherewith *Rustan* authorized his enterprize, but the true were, as I have already said, that he hath naughty inclinations; that he is born for crime and violence; and that he is so much an enemy to goodness, as it sufficeth to be vertuous for to be hated of him. He took the resolution then to carry away *Axiamira* by force, at such time as she should go a fishing; but to facilitate his design he judged it fit to get him out of the Port, and to the

and they should not marvel at his departure, he to obtain permission for it caused the Princess to be told, that having received advertisement how a vessel of his Country was within three or four daies to be at a Port that was not above ten miles from *Mazanderon*, he was resolved to go and wait for it there, to deal for some commodities which he thought he had had, but had forgot to bring along with him; that at his return he would not fail to let her see the rarities, whereof he had spoken, not being able to do it sooner by reason of his sickness: And to shew that he intended to return again, he suffered himself to be unpaid by some Merchants that were in his debt. He parted then in this manner, leaving the Princess very desirous of his return, in regard of her inclinations to such rare things; but whereas he had no design to eloin himself much, and had observed how the Princess used ordinarily to take that way whereby he came thither, he put his vessel into the covert of a Creek three miles from the Port, where the point of a Rock advanced so far into the sea, as they that came from the Towns side could not see them which were there, before they were so near as they could not decline a fight. It was here where *Rustan* resolved to attend the Princess, being confident that she would not be long before she came thither, because he knew it was the place most proper for her port: In the mean time to beguile the vessels, which passing by might discover him, he set up the Flag of *Persia* in his Main-top, and caused all his men that appeared on the deck to change their habit; for the cunning of this man had provided for all things, and had not omitted ought that could conduce to the happy success of so mischievous a design. Now accordingly this deplorable Princess, no way doubting of the treason that was intended against her, resolved the next day after *Rustan's* departure, to recreate her self on the sea; but to make up her misfortune, she would not that day go a fishing, but only take the air, and pass away the time more freely with her women. In the mean season *Rustan* had made a speech to his souldiers and Mariners, whom he had gained with gifts, to encourage them to well-doing. If it hapned that he should command them to attacque a vessel. He told them, that what he desired of them was the least exploit he could expect from their valour, since it was a vessel without Ordnance, and more laden with women than souldiers; that above all things they should beware of doing any outrage to the Ladies; but for the men, that they should not spare them, it being necessary that none should escape which might testify ought concerning this Action. After this he set a sentinell on the top of the Rock to discover when *Axiamirae's* vessel should come out of the Port, for to advertise him of it. The impatience of this Ravisher lasted not long; for, as I have already declared, the next day after his departure, the Princess resolved to go and take the air: no sooner was she on the sea, but the sentinell advertised *Rustan* of it, who with all speed fitted his ship, and prepared his men to do that which he had commanded them. Scarcely had he given order for every thing, whenas the Princesses vessel appeared, she was sitting in the Stern upon Cushions of cloth of Gold, with all her women about her, and attired like an *Amazon*, as her picture represented her, having a Dart in her right-hand, upon which she leaned: As soon as she perceived *Rustan's* vessel, she rose up suddainly to observe it, as if she had foreseen what was to arrive unto her; this first apprehension was quickly seconded by another more grievous one; for just as the Princess rose up, *Rustan* changed the design he had of following her, that so he might draw her the further from the Town, into that of setting upon her immediately, so that he commanded his men to make up with full sails to the vessel, and board her, expressly forbidding any Ordnance to be shot off, for fear of losing that which he meant to preserve, and that the Castle too might not thereby take up an Alarm, and come to the succour of the Princess. This was not so soon sayd as executed; *Axiamirae's* vessel was boarded by that of *Rustan*, who first of all leaped into her, for to save the Princess from perill, and to encourage his men, which seconded him so happily, as the resistance of *Axiamirae's* Guard was in vain; the surprise and astonishment wherewith they were seised, served not a little to make them be so easily vanquished; for in a quarter of an hours fight



fight they were all slain; *Rustan* not having above three of his people hurt. But when he would have had the Princess remove out of her vessel into his, she shewed more heart than her souldiers had done, and encouraging her women to defend themselves, and to endure rather to be killed, than to let themselves to be carried away, she advanced towards him with the Dart in her hand, and whatsoever he could do to restrain her, being loth to use her unworthily in her misfortune, he could not keep her from hurting him in the face: But whereas he saw that his respect might be the cause of his undoing, in retaining him too long in so dangerous a place, he commanded four of his souldiers to quit their weapons, and take her up in their Arms, and carry her into his vessel. Then it was when she redoubled her uttermost endeavour, and that with incredible courage, she would have rid her self out of their hands to have leapt into the sea; but *Rustan* took so much care to preserve her, as he hindred her from it. As soon as her women saw that their resistance was vain, and that the Princess was in *Rustan's* vessel, they left defending themselves, and out of an affection which cannot be sufficiently admired, they strove who should first pass into their enemies vessel, so much did they fear to abandon their Mistress, chusing much rather to be slaves with her, than to remain free without her. After this *Rustan* held it necessary to sink the Princesses vessel, which was instantly done; but he thought it was not fit to cast the dead bodies into the sea, for fear lest some of them being driven a shoar by the waves should be a sign that the Princess had not suffered shipwrack, as he desired it should be believed, in regard they would be all found full of wounds. He caused all the dead bodies then to be carried into his vessel, with an intention when they should be further off, to throw them over-board in sacks half filled with some heavy things, which afterwards was accordingly executed. When they had sunk the Princesses vessel, he commanded his Pilot to steer towards *Mingrelia*, and to employ all his skill in making thither with all the possible speed he could; he gave order also to his souldiers to keep themselves continually ready to fight, and unto two of his men carefully to watch for the discovery of whatsoever should appear at sea, and presently to advertise him of it. This done, he went to the Princess, whom they had put into the Captains Cabbin, but he was much amazed to find her in a swoon; her striving, and the grief she was in to see her self so carried away, had so weakened, and oppressed her, as she was without pulse, without motion, and almost without life. The resentment which *Rustan* shewed for it, and the care he took to assist her, though it was rather the effect of his interest than of his pitty, caused the Princesses women to have some comfort amidst their misfortune: They laboured all of them together then to make her come to her self again; and a little after she assured them by a deep sigh, that she would soon be sensible of all her miseries; and accordingly within a while she opened her eyes; but not being longer able to make any resistance, and seeing *Rustan* by her, whom she knew, though she had never beheld him but once before, and that he had changed his habit, she was constrained to have recourse unto her tears. *Rustan* seeing her in this estate, fell on his knees before her to ask her pardon for the wrong he did her, and to beseech her to believe, that so sad a beginning would have a most happy end. He told her likewise, that he was not what she thought him to be; that he operated by a more powerfull hand than his own; and that if her grief would permit her to give ear unto that, which might comfort her, she would quickly dry up her tears. This Princess striving to answer him, said unto him with a low voice, that there was no way to comfort her, but to assure her, that she should die without the deprivation of her honour and liberty, and without falling into the hands of *Deliment*. *Rustan* swore unto her then, that he knew not that *Deliment* of whom she spake, and protested, that far from doing her any violence, he would serve her with all respect, beseeching her once again to suspend her grief untill she had learnt the cause of her misfortune. This cheater spake this with a face wherein compassion and sincerity were so well painted forth, as solicited again by her women, she resolved to hear him: But he first desired that she would give them order to withdraw a little aside, to the

end that none but she might understand what he said unto her. She made some difficulty to agree thereunto, but at length she was forced to obey. He recounted to her then, how her unhappiness was an effect of her beauty; but he did not tell her, that *Soliman* had loved her under the name of *Felixana*, onely he acquainted her that her picture had begot this love, and consequently the design which he had executed; howbeit he perceived that *Axiamira* did not beleve him, so that to perswade her the better, he shewed her picture to her, which she presently knew, and calling her women to her to look upon it, she put them in mind, how the Sophy having caused her to be drawn one day with *Felixana* by an excellent Painter, whom fortune had brought into their country, he had commanded many coppies to be made of them, which he had given to Merchants for the publishing of her beauty all abroad, and that of *Felixana* whom he infinitely loved. Upon this discourse *Ruslan* was no longer troubled to conceive, how *Axiamira* had been taken for *Felixana*, easily imagining that a Merchant, who it may be understood not the *Persian* tongue very well, might be deceived in taking the picture of *Felixana* for that of *Axiamira*, and that of *Axiamira* for that of *Felixana*, and much the rather, for that the Merchant had got those pictures without ever seeing the Princess, as we came to know afterwards. But to return to this afflicted fair one, after that *Ruslan* had acquainted her with the cause of her misfortune, he would have enlarged himself upon the magnificences of the Seraglio, upon the excellent qualities of *Soliman*, upon the excess of the passion which he was in for her, and have perswaded her that her unhappiness would make her happy. But this generous Princess, not able to endure a discourse so far distant from her sense, said unto him with a voice much stronger, than the weakness wherein she was would seem to permit her; do you beleve then, that a person which might have succeeded to the Crown of *Persia*, can resolve to be the slave of *Soliman*? to spend her life in prison? and to have for her companions infamous creatures, who are for the most part the refuse of Pyrates? No, no, *Axiamira* came not into the world but to reign, and her death shall make it soon appear, that she knows not how to obey: Fortune hath put me into your hands, but mine shall deliver me out of them. After this she mused a pretty while very profoundly, *Ruslan* not daring to answer her for fear of further incensing her; then suddenly speaking again, and addressing her self to him, Can I hope, said she unto him, for any sincerity in a man that hath so cruelly betrayed me? and can I beleve that what he hath told me is true? for how can it be imagined that *Soliman*, whose reputation is so great and so fair, should be capable of causing an innocent Princess to be forcibly carried away for to make her his slave? and how can it yet be conceived, that this Prince, who is said to be so amorous of a certain *Roxelana*, and who hath loved her so long, could be in a passion for a picture, yea in such a passion as hath obliged him to violate the law of Nations, to forget naturall equity, to outrage a Prince as mighty as himself, and to do an act so strange as it is without example in all Ages? Tell me then, I conjure you, said she unto him, the true cause of my disaster, and hide not from me that which time will clear unto me but too well. *Ruslan* seeing her mind a little quieter in all appearance, thought he might gain her by gentleness; wherefore he assured her with all the artifice that possibly he could use; how all that which he had told her was true, but how it was true also, that the image of the Seraglio, which seemed so dreadful unto her, was a meer effect of her grief; that all the grace he would demand of her was no other, but that she would live untill she had seen *Soliman*, which favour if he might obtain of her, he was well assured, that the sight of so excellent a Prince would make her change her opinion. Yes, said she, interrupting him, I will live, if my grief will permit it; but I will live only to seek out the means how to revenge the death, that I will give myself, as soon as my complaints and cries have made some one to know the outrage which I have received, to the end that the report thereof being bruited abroad, the Sophy my Father may, by learning the cause of my loss, take such revenge for it, as Heaven doth promise me, and which also I beg of it: Behold then what I accord to your desires, in the mean time, if pity may yet find any place

place in your soul, leave me to weep with my women, and refuse me not the grace that I may be permitted to bewail them for the miseries which I have brought them to, and to prepare them for my death; but if your inhumanity doth carry you not to grant me this that I desire, as me-thinks I observe in your countenance, remember that birth not depending on fortune, I am still the daughter of the Sophy of *Persia*, and that you are but a Slave, who doubtless have nothing more commendable in you, than fraud and cunning wherewith to serve the violence of your Master; get you out of this Chamber then, and enter no more unto it, till the hour of my death be come; for surely the rank which I hold doth ordain you to have so much respect unto me, who commands you unto it. *Rustan*, who had no other interest in the carrying away of this Princess, but that of conducting her to *Soliman*, fearing nothing more than to see her die before she should arrive at *Constantinople*, was afraid in hearing her speak so imperiously, that she would have fallen into some extreme resolution, if he should have contradicted her, wherefore he went out of her chamber, and assured her, that she should see by his respect, that he had not forgotten what he owed unto her: But first he took heed with a great deal of care, not to leave any thing wherewith she might hurt herself, which the perceiving said further unto him, You may take from me iron, fire, and poison, but not the will to die, and by it I shall always find means to execute my design: *Rustan* would return her no answer, knowing full well that she was not in an estate to be perswaded. After this he caused her to be served very carefully without ever entering into her chamber, yet did he for the most part hear all that she said to her women; for fearing lest she should offer to get out of the Cabin for to go and cast her self into the Sea, he lay alwayes at the Cabin-door, not daring to trust any body with the guard of a treasure from whence he hoped for all his fortune. I will not recount unto you the generous and pitifull discourses of this infortunate Princess during this voyage, since it would but augment the regret, which you will have for her loss: For, Madam, after a Navigation prosperous enough; after they had passed over all the *Caspian Sea* by gayning the Coast on the left hand; after they had arrived at the River of *Araxes*, which disembokes it self into this Sea; had traversed by Land thorough the whole Countrey of *Calchinda*, now called *Mingrelia*, where *Rustan* betook him to his former Vessell again, which had stayed still for him there; had travelled *Mare major*, or *Pontus Euxinus*, from one end to another in its length; after that, I say, they were come to the *Bosphorus of Thrace*, in a place where they even touched the shoar, there arose so furious a wind, as they were constrained to take in all their saile. And whereas the Pilot had advertised *Rustan*, that he fore-saw the coming of a great storm, and that within an hour at the furthest, he thought that in regard they were not far from a place where the Skiff might easily land, it would not be amiss to perswade the Princess to go ashoar, seeing they were within *Soliman's* Dominion, and where they needed not fear to abandon their Vessell. He caused then one of the Princesses women to be called unto him for to acquaint her with the perill wherewith they were threatened, that she might propound unto her the avoyding of it by the means which I have related; this Maid, who out of the fear of death approved of *Rustan's* proposition, did all that she could to get her Mistress to embrace it: But this couragious Princess said unto her with an admirable constancy, that she was resolved to attend the succor of Heaven, imagining indeed, that the storm wherewith she was threatened, could bring no alteration to her fortune which would not be advantageous to her. During this contestation the Sea was moved in such sort, as it was out of all probability, had the Princess consented to what they desired of her, for one to think that she could be saved in the Skiff; the tempest was so furious, the ayr so obscured, the thunder so loud, the lightning amidst the darkness so dreadfull, the waves so high, the winds so terrible, the rain and hail so abundant, and the roaring of the Sea so horrible, as it was impossible for one to conceive any hope of escaping from so evident a danger. They were two days beaten in this manner with the tempest, and tossed up and down with the wind and the waves,

without



without ceasing in the mean time to use their uttermost endeavour to with-stand it; but at last they were fain to give way to his violence, and refer their lives to the conduct of fortune. Already had the Pilot abandoned the Helm, his Compass stood him in no stead, the Mast was all to shatter'd, the Sayl-yards torn off, the Tackle rent in pieces, the Vessell took in water on every side, the souldiers cried out in despair, the Mariners abandoned themselves to grief, the Princesses women were all dissolv'd into tears; *Rustan* himself had almost lost his understanding, whenas in the midst of so generall a consternation he heard the Princess cry unto him with a quiet spirit, and with a settled and confident voyce; at length *Axiamira* shall not be a Slave; she shall dye with glory, Heaven is armed for her succour, and (if I deceive not my self) her death shall be the cause of her revenge. Scarcely had she finished these words, whenas an hideous wave hitting the Vessell with an unexpressible impetuosity, dashed it with such violence against the point of a Rock, as they suffered shipwrack in that very place. I will not tell you, Madam, that which *Rustan* himself could not tell us, for this misfortune was so sudden, as in an instant he found, that of all his Vessell he had nothing left him but a plank which floated to his hand, as he was labouring in the water, and wherewith he saved his life by sustaining himself upon it; for this man was so fortunate, as without other industry than strongly fastning himself to this plank, the Sea (which according to its custom retains nothing of all the rapines that it makes) cast him on the shoar, where he remained almost in a swoon till the tempest was over, which was not long first; so as it might have been said, that this Princess had served for an oblation to pacifie the fury of the incens'd waters; for two hours after she had suffred shipwrack, the Sun beginning to appear, dissipated the darkness of the night, and the tempest, and restored calmness and tranquillity to the Sea. *Rustan*, being wholly come to himself again; got up to the side of a Rock to see if he could discover any mark of so sad a wrack, but he could discover no other thing than some of the Tackle and Planks of his Vessell, which the waves had brought to Land, so that despairing of any comfort he went to the habitation that was nearest to the place where he was, and stay'd there certain days to make search, if at least the body of *Axiamira* might have been found, as also to meet with some means for him to return to *Constantinople*: As for the Princess, all his care in vain, he found indeed some dead Souldiers and Mariners along the shoar, but of her he never could have any tidings, so that the unhappy *Axiamira* is doubtless without life, and without sepulture. In the mean time *Rustan* thinking of his return, although he were neer to a place where Prince *Gianger*, the youngest of *Soliman's* sonnes was residing, yet would he not demand any assistance from him, for fear he should be oblig'd to tell him a thing which was to be concealed; wherefore he had recourse to the Governor of a small Town that was not above four miles from thence where he had suffred shipwrack, who furnishing him with all things requisite for his journey, he returned by Land to *Constantinople* with so melancholick a countenance, as at first sight one might easily perceive that his enterprize had not been prosperous: I was at that time with his Highness, and I have not lost the remembrance of so dolefull a conversation. As soon as *Rustan* had made an end of relating to the Grand Signior that which you have heard, he would have excus'd himself for having forcibly carried away *Axiamira* without his order, but *Soliman* said unto him with a face wherein grief and choller equally appeared, Speak no further unto me thou base and infamous ravisher, and know, that if thou hadst not married my daughter *Chimera*, thy death should have satisfied for that of *Axiamira*. Ah poor Princess, said he, how deplorable is thy fate! and how unhappy is mine! Then turning himself towards me, who was present at this mournfull relation, do not reproach me, my dear *Ibrahim*, said he unto me, for not giving credit to thy counsell, which I remember but too well for my content; and the estate wherein I am, punisheth me sufficiently for my imprudence: Can any innocent be found more infortunate than I? But what say I, innocent (continued he) I cannot be so of the death of this Princess; it is I that have deliver'd her into the hands of *Rustan*; it is I that have exposed

posed her to the tempest; and it is I that have been the cause of her loss. Could I be ignorant that she was not an ordinary person? No, *Ibrahim*, I could not: I loved her under the name of *Felixana*, but I was to adore her in my heart as a great Princess; I saw something so high and so majesticall in the air of her face, as I cannot be excusable for not knowing her; for howsoever, if the possession of *Axiomira* was necessary for my felicity, she was to be intreated after another manner; and if my love would have constrained me to have recourse unto violence, I should have gone in person in the head of an hundred thousand men to make for noble a conquest with honor; she should have been brought in a triumphant Chariot, and not in the Vessel of a Traytor and impious man; I should not have thought of possessing her till I had set a Crown upon her head; and if I could not have obtained her, I should have changed my love into respect, and with admiration have looked upon a blis that was forbidden me: But *Rustan* did not believe that I was capable of such noble apprehensions, he hath judged of my minde by his own; he thought because he is violent, that I should be wicked; he hoped for a recompence of his crime, and out of an inhumanity which is without example, he hath betrayed an innocent Princess, he hath put a stain upon my life which I shall not be able to deface, and hath reduced my soul to an estate never to be comforted. Then addressing his speech to the Princess, as if she would have heard him, and calling to mind her last words, which he had caused to be repeated to him more than once, he cried out with an exceeding transport, Yes, *Axiomira*, thy death shall be the cause of the revenge which thou desirest, and the grief which I shall have for it all my life, shall be instead of an eternall punishment unto me: There needs no Arms to invade my Staté; there needs no proclaimed Enemy to fight with me, I carry one in my bosom which shall alwayes surmount me; repentance and sorrow shall be inseparably with my spirit, and the image of so unhappy, and of so beautifull a person shall accompany me even to the grave. *Soliman* having been constrained by the excess of his displeasure to give over speaking, I did what I could to restore tranquillity to his soul, but his grief was so vive and so strong, as I needed a great deal of time to vanquish, or to say better, to moderate it. Behold, Madam, the History of the unfortunate *Axiomira*, all the particulars whereof which I have told you, I learned from *Rustan*, and more too from one of his souldiers, who returned a little after him, and was saved almost in the same manner. *Isabella* could not then forbear interrupting of *Justiniano*, to lament the misfortune of *Axiomira*, but after she had satisfied her compassion, she desired to make an end of contenting her curiosity, and intreated *Justiniano* to continue his discourse, which he did in this sort.

### The Sequele of the History of Justiniano.

I Will not stand, Madam, to relate unto you, how I employed my self after my return from *Natolia*, in regard I know that *Doria* purposeth to let you understand, that *Ibrahim*'s Palace was built by my direction, and how it was in that intervall of peace, and as soon as I was Grand Visier, that I caused the ornaments thereof to be made, having seen that work finished but a little before *Doria*'s arrivall at *Constantinople*. It is true, said *Doria*, that I have a desire to describe that enchanted Palace to her Excellency, and to acquaint her with all the magnificences, and all the grandeurs which you have quitted for her sake; and to make her comprehend a part of what I say, I am but to present her with that which the Grand Signior hath sent her; saying so, he drew out of his pocket the box of gold which *Soliman* had delivered unto him, and having opened it, he let her see one of the goodliest things in the world. *Isabella* was so surprized with the richness of this present, as she would not have received it, but at length *Doria* having told her laughing, that he was not determined either to keep it, or to carry it back to *Constantinople*, she was constrained to accept of it. *Doria*'s jesting made *Justiniano* fetch a great sigh, beginning already

already to apprehend the end of his narration, and for that cause had spun out that of the Adventures of *Axiamira* as much as possibly he could, in exactly recounting her History; and all because he was not yet well resolved whether he should deliver the truth of things to *Isabella*; in the mean time, whereas she was in much impatience, and that night began to come on, she desired him not to lose such precious minutes, but to prosecute his discourse. I would willingly have had you dispen-  
 sance with me, answered *Justiniano*, for leading you once more to the wars, but since you will be acquainted with all my fortunes, I am to let you understand, that being absolutely determined not to wear a Turbant unprofitably for Christendom, I had no other thought but to divert the Arms of *Soliman* from *Hungary*, where I knew he had a design to imploy his greatest forces; the loss of *Axiamira* furnished me soon after with means to put so just a resolution in effect: For whether it were, that some of the Princesses women were saved by a prodigious good hap, and had acquainted *Tachmas* with the cause of the death of his daughter; or that the aboard, or sudden departure of *Rustan*, who had alwayes past at *Mazanderon* for a Merchant of *Constantinople*, had begotten some suspicion of the truth, advertisement came that *Tachmas* was levying a mighty Army: The Truce which had been so long between these two Princes, could be no obstacle to this war, for it had never been observed exactly; and some particulars had often committed acts of hostility on either part, so that according to the Maxims of State, a plausible pretext could not be wanting for an Army to march into the Orient, as often as *Soliman* had a mind to it: In the mean time it happened that the *Georgians* having past over *Enphrates*, did much spoil in *Comagena*, robbing all that went to, or came from *Mesopotamia*, so that the *Sangiacs* of the Province having complained of it, and seeing that *Soliman* took no order therein, they passed to *Diarbech*, where in all the Countrey about *Birtha* they did great havock, and rendred that with usury which the *Georgians* had lent them. This conjuncture seeming too favourable unto me to be neglected, I repaired unto *Soliman*, who notwithstanding the advertisement he had received that *Tachmas* had put himself into Arms, could not be drawn for all that to think of this war; the image of *Axiamira* reigned still in his heart; he could not resolve to fight with the Father, whose daughter he had caused to perish; and if some resentment of glory had not been still remaining in him, I think he would rather have let *Tachmas* invade his Empire, than oppose himself against him. But to shew unto you how hardly this Prince was drawn to make a war, which he believed to be unjust, I have no more to say, than that after I had used all my address to remonstrate unto him, that the war of *Persia* was a thing no longer in his choice, since knowing what his Governors had done in *Diarbech*, and *Tachmas* having an Army on foot, he was not to doubt, yea though he were ignorant that he was the innocent cause of *Axiamira's* death, but that he would fall upon him; that after I had told him how it was alwayes advantageous for great Princes to begin the War; that it was a mark of love to his Subjects, not to suffer the fire to be brought into their houses; and that I had made him also to consider, that at last it would be better to be in an estate to shew grace to his Enemy, than to receive it from him; that in this occasion it did not concern his particular glory alone, but that of the Empire; that being innocent of the misfortune of *Axiamira*, he was not to fear that heaven would be contrary to him; and that if this death was to be lamented, it would suffice to imploy his tears and sighs therein, without beholding the blood of his Subjects shed. After all these things, I say, he made no other answer, but *Axiamira* is dead for me, I must sacrifice a part of my State for her; and that my Subjects may not murmur at the Conquests which I shall suffer *Tachmas* to gain upon me, I will labor to obtain others of the Christians, without obliging thee, as I have promised, to serve me therein. I vow unto you, Madam, that this discourse surprized me extremely, not knowing which way to oppose myself against a will so fully determined: And that which put me into further despair of being able to execute my design was, that the Mother and Wife of the Emperour hated me with a secret hatred, because I had always favoured *Mustapha* and *Gianger*,  
 excellent



excellent Princes, and the children of *Soliman*; for though this last be the sonne of *Roxelana*, yet leaves she not to hate him, because he loveth *Mustapha*: This hatred was the cause then that these two women opposed the voyage of *Persia*, onely to contradict me, with so much address and violence, as I stood in need of some extraordinary mean to destroy all their artifices. The first represented unto *Soliman*, that the wars of the Orient had always been infortunate to the *Othomans*; that his Armies would be exterminated with hunger and thirst, if he carried them to a place from whence his father *Selim*, although victorious, brought back no other advantage, than the loss of his best souldiers. As for *Roxelana*, she employed nothing but her tears, wherewith alone she was more powerfull than reason it self; so that all these things being joyned to the loss of *Axiamira*, wrought in such sort, as I saw almost an impossibility in diverting the storm which was ready to fall on Christendom: But in the end, after I had tried all wayes in vain, I bethought my self, how *Soliman* being mightily perswaded that Judiciary Astrology is a Science which men may practise with certainty, I might peradventure bring him to what I desired, if I could get an *Arabian* to come from *Damascus*, that was an excellent Astrologer and Mathematician, called *Mulê Aral*, whom the people accused of Magick, by reason of the wonders which every day he did; hoping, after I had won him with gifts, to make him say unto *Soliman* whatsoever I would have him. I sent then secretly unto *Damascus*, not knowing how to meet with any other expedient that could satisfie me otherwise; and whereas my orders were as well executed as the Grand Signiors, it was not long before he was brought to me. In the mean space I was resolved to speak no more of this war to *Soliman*, untill such time as that which I projected should utterly fail me. As soon as *Mulê Aral* was arrived at *Constantinople*, I talked with him in private, and after I had ingaged him absolutely to do what I would have him, I discovered my design unto him, which nevertheless I covered with the good and glory of the Empire, to the end too he might serve me the more faithfully. But this man told me, how he held it fit that the Stars should be observed, and his books consulted with a little about this war, because it might so happen, that without any imposture or lying he should be obliged to perswade *Soliman* to this voyage; and howsoever, though the stars did not concur with our intentions, yet would he be sure to keep his word with me. I parted with him in this manner, having first intreated him to make a shew of the best effects of his Science at the Port, that so the Emperor might give the more credit to that which he was to say unto him. *Mulê Aral* failed not in obeying me, for he had not been a week at *Constantinople*, but every one spoke of the prodigies he did; and whereas he was a great Physiognomist, he got a world of reputation in a short time. He foretold to some that they should die the next day, which failed not to fall out accordingly; to others he revealed the most secret adventures of their lives; and he was so happy, that of all the things which he assured, none mist, or at leastwise might receive a favorable interpretation; so that the report hereof being come to *Soliman*, he sent for *Mulê Aral*, who in his presence told the Bassa of the Sea such things, as extremely surprized him; for he confessed, that every particular of that which he had told him, had befallen him accordingly. The grand Signior commanded him to follow him into his Cabinet, where, as I knew afterwards, he declared unto him the most special passages of his life, & principally his love to *Axiamira* upon the sight of her picture, although I had not spoken to him of it; so as *Soliman* being mightily perswaded of the Science of this man, asked him whether he thought that the war against the Persians would be prosperous. But *Mulê*, who desired to finish his figures and observations, & to give the more weight to that which he should say, answered *Soliman*, that things past were seen with more certainty in the physiognomy, than things to come; & that for an affair of so great importance, he demanded of him only six days to satisfie him fully: and for the better carrying of the matter, he besought him to let him know the precise point of his nativity, albeit he had been acquainted with it before by me. *Soliman* accorded him his desire, and having given him leave to depart, rested so satisfied of him, as he was already disposed to govern his designs by *Mulê Aral's* answer; who

after he had made his observations, came one evening to me with a contented look, and assured me, that his Science was false, or I should Crown *Soliman* King of *Persia*. It is certain, Madam, that I did not believe the discourse of this man, but onely seemed to give credit to his words, to the end I might not disoblige him, although the success of things afterwards made it good. The next day he went to *Soliman*, and with a confident countenance told him, that the war of *Hungary* would prove unlucky to him if he undertook it, but that of *Persia* glorious; and assured him further, that if he entered first into the Enemies Countrey, one of his Slaves, whom he very much loved, should Crown him King of *Persia*. *Mulé* accompanied this discourse with so many circumstances, which would be too long to repeat, as at length *Soliman*, who was very scrupulous in all things, which he believed came from above, prepared himself for this war with as much precipitation, as he had had repugnancy to it before. As soon as *Mulé* was gone, he sent for me, to command me to alter all the directions which he had given, and to cause all the Troops to be inrolled for *Persia*: And whereas this Prince carried an unmeasurable affection to me, he had charged *Mulé* not to discover any thing of that to me which he had said to him, desiring to make me believe how it was in consideration of me that he withdrew his Arms from Christendom, thereby to ingage me the more to his service. Whilst things were in this estate, an accident fell out which began to give great hope of this voyage of *Persia*, and to confirm *Soliman* in the good opinion which he had of *Mulé Aral*; for it hapned that one *Ulama*, Satrape of *Caramania*, a man of great account with the Sophy, who had married one of his sisters to him, and though she dyed a little after this Mariage, yet did this alliance render him more considerable than before. This man, I say, having received some out-rage from that Prince, after he had served him in divers incounters with the expence of his blood, requested of me that I would obtain some place of safety for him within *Solimans* Dominions. I will not tell you, Madam, what this excellent man did in this war, since it is certain, that his generous actions doe well deserve a relation in particular; neither will I stand to recount this voyage exactly unto you; wherefore, that I may not abuse your patience, and make the best use of the rest of the day, I will only tell you, Madam, that having had a Commandment to conduct the Vant-Guard with *Ulama*, I was so fortunate as I surprized *Tauris* without any resistance, which at the first astonished the Enemies, who nevertheless left not to defend themselves courageously in all other incounters. *Tachmas* performed wonders in his own person, and so did also one *Deliment*; but at length fortune in two ranged battels declared her self for us; so that as soon as *Soliman* was arrived in person, he had almost no other imployment than to receive the Deputies of Townes which submitted to his obedience. A part of *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia* were subjected unto him, but in such sort, and so absolutely, that from the Mart of *Balzera*, which stands at the mouth of *Euphrates*, entering into the Gulf of *Persia*, even to the last Town, they rendred all unto him. The most notable of this great number were *Caramida*, *Medinum*, *Orsa* and *Ancesa*; but that which *Soliman* rejoyced most at, was the reduction of *Bagdet*, where he was Crowned King of *Persia* by the hands of the Caliph, who to do me honor, and to testify that I had contributed somewhat to the happy success of this war, would needs have me serve in the Ceremony, and help him to set the Crown on the head of *Soliman*; so that by this circumstance nothing was more to be added to *Mulé Arals* Predictions, who at our return was recompensed sufficiently. After this, his Highness bestowed some time in giving directions for all things before his return to *Constantinople*, where he was resolved to be received in triumph, but a little sickness that he fell into by the way deferred this publique rejoycing, which nevertheless was performed within a while after; and I may say that this Triumph was as happy for me, as it was glorious for *Soliman*; seeing it was there that I came to know *Doria* in the habit of a Slave, who can recount unto you, Madam, that fortunate dayes passage more agreeably than I could. *Justiniano*, having said this, became so confused, as if one of the Princesses Gentlemen had not advertised her, that the Count of *Lavagna*, accompanied with  
the

the Marquis of *Touaine*, was come to visit her in the behalf of the Senate, she had perceived the disorder of his spirit: After she had heard the message that was brought her, she rose up, and giving her hand to *Justiniano*, she said unto him with a very well satisfied countenance, Doe not think to lay upon your friend the trouble to acquaint me with the rest of your Adventures, he hath had enough already in going to *Constantinople* to justify me unto you, besides what he is to be at in relating to me that which hath arrived to himself in particular; but to let you see, continued she, that I am not tyrannicall, I will give you time to content my curiosity, in the mean space I think it fit we should go and receive the Civilities of the Senate: This said, she suffered herself to be lead in one hand by *Justiniano*, and in the other by *Doria*, whom she had retained as he was about to withdraw, and the rest of the troop followed after. All the way *Isabella* continually admired the marvellous effects of *Justiniano's* fortune, but in what manner soever she considered them, she still returned to speak of the obligation wherein he stood engaged to *Soliman*: I must confess, said she to *Justiniano*, that if this Prince be such as you have delivered him, he may be stiled the wonder of our Age, and if my Religion did not forbid it me, I would quit my Countrey with joy to live under his Dominion. This discourse made *Justiniano* to tremble, but *Doria* laying hold on her speech, confirmed her yet more in the advantageous opinion which she had of *Soliman*, and *Justiniano* being come to himself again, assured her that all which he had said of him was very far short of the truth. This fair Troop entertained themselves in this sort, untill that being arrived neer to the Castle, the Count and the Marquis came to meet the Princess, who entertained them with a great deal of respect. The Count, to acquit himself of the Commission which the Senate had given him, said unto her, that he was not come only to congratulate with her for the happy return of *Justiniano*, but also to give her thanks for it, as the most important service that ever she could have rendered to the Republicke; that this favour from Heaven was doubtless due to her vertue, and to the vows she had made for him, rather than to the desires of the Senate, who had rendered themselves unworthy of it; how to testify unto her, that the present had utterly defaced the remembrance of, the past, he intreated her that she would honor *Genova* with her presence, whenas she had resolved upon the triumph of *Justiniano*, to the end that by the pomp and magnificence which they would bring unto it, they might at leastwise testify their joy, although they could not testify their acknowledgement. This discourse made *Justiniano's* heart to pant, and the Princess to change colour; for she understood well enough, that the triumph he spake of, was to be her marriage. She answered with very much modesty, that generall causes being without doubt more favoured of Heaven, than particular interests, it was to be certainly believed, that *Justiniano* had been restored to his Countrey for the only glory of the Republicke; and that having nevertheless encountered her particular felicity in this generall happiness, she had more reason to give thanks unto the Senate, than to receive any from them; but, continued she, interrupting *Justiniano*, who would have answered that which she had said of him, it will be more convenient for us to enter into the Castle for to tell you there what I thinke of it, than to stay any longer in a place which the night that is now at hand would render incommodious. The Count then presented the Marquis of *Touaine* unto her, whom they called at *Genova* the French Marquis, and assured her that he was a man whose condition and merit were not unworthy of her knowledge and esteem. There needs no more, said the Princess, to commend and render him agreeable to me, than that he is your friend, and that you esteem of him; whereupon she entertained him with a great deal of curtesie, and the Marquis saluting her with very much respect, besought her to judge of him by the Counts opinion, rather than by his own, whenas he should have the honour to be known of her. After this complement, the Princess presented her hand to the Count, and looking on *Justiniano*, *Doria*, and the French Marquis, as though she had been  
forry



sorry that she could not share her Civilities amongst them, universall beauties were the object of their entertainment; during the little way that remained for them to goe. The situation of this place is so delicate, the prospect of it so pleasant, and the setting of the Sun was that evening so glorious, with the diversity of vive and rich colours, which the gold of his Rayes imprinted on the Clouds, and reflected on the Sea, as it is not to be thought strange, that a discourse so common should make up the conversation of such extraordinary persons. As for *Doria*, he went along talking to the French Marquis, who led

*Emilia* by the arm, that seemed not displeasing to him: And in this manner they entred into the Castle, where the Princess treated them as magnificently, as if she had been prepared of a long time to receive them.

*Here ends the first Part.*



# IBRAHIM: OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The second part.

### The first Book.

**P**resently after supper the Princess, perceiving that the Marquis was gone from the company, demanded of the Count whether it were true that he had brought the French liberty into *Genova*, as he had formerly told her during the time of her solitariness. It is so true (answered the Count) that if you knew in what fashion we live, you would be surpris'd with it; Howbeit your amazement would cease as soon as you should know the wit, humour, and address of the French Marquis. And seeing his precepts are not opposite to pleasure, but yet conserving Vertue with a great deal of respect, he was not much troubled to find out followers, both amongst the men and the Ladies. But is it possible (said *Justiniano*) that he could vanquish that jealousy which is so naturall to those of our Nation? He hath for that (replied the Count) made use of an artifice, which he alone was able to invent: He observed within a little time, after I had made him known to all the persons of quality, every love in *Genova*, and wrought so well by his address, that in a short while he was the universal confident thereof. When as he saw himself master of all mens secrets, he began to perswade us all in particular to the French liberty; to call us Tyrants over our wives; and to make us comprehend that there was extreme injustice in prohibiting conversation unto Ladies, who alone could render it agreeable; That as for him, he was resolv'd to make them happy whether they would or no: and for that effect (said he unto us) all they that have sisters must permit me to see and talk with them, to the end that having made them know, how Vertue ought not to be untractable, and how they think more harm when they are by themselves, than they would do if they knew us more particularly, I may make that succeed which I have projected for your advantage. Besides (said he unto us) this essay cannot be dangerous; for whereas I never have an affection that lasts above a week, you need not fear that I shall make any great progress therein. Each one in particular durst not refuse him that which he demanded, as being his confident; so that in a short time hee was introduced into all the Houses of quality, maver the severity of fathers, and the reservedness of mothers. For he hath so complying a spirit, that he knows how to take upon him all formes; and for gallantry, no man can be so proper for it as he: he sings very sweetely; he playes upon the Lute and the Gittern; he daunces with a good grace; he limnes and paints well; he writes excellent letters; he makes verses in our tongue, as if he were an Italian; and his conversation is so intertaining, that it is as impossible to be without friendship for him, as for him to be without affection. Whereupon it is easie to imagine that he had quickly perswaded that which he desired. But to begin the introduction of the thing publicely, one day when there was a bal, and the company assembled together, he approached boldly to the

principall mayds of the Citie; for he feared not so much the brothers as the husbands; and told them openly, he was ashamed for them, that they should be separated from the rest of the company, as if they were unworthy to be of it: and then hee made a Satyre against that custome, which he must one day rehearse unto you. When as every one took delight herein, and that he knew he should be supported by all the young folks, and that the Ladies in their hearts wished him no hurt, he desired all the company, that they would for this evening onely carry themselves as if they were in *France*, and follow his directions, to the end he might at leasure make the Ladies see, who do not travell, the difference that was between the one and the other. Hereupon all those of his faction cryed it up with a great applause, and his advice was followed, although there were some that did not allow of it: The women also made some difficulty thereof; but at last the Marquis prevailed. He changed then the whole Order of the company, saying it was the custome of *France*, that conversation should be the greatest pleasure of a bal; so that he played the master of the Ceremonies in such manner, as in placing every one, without shewing himself affected therein, hee placed each one according to his inclination. After that, it was a good while before he would suffer the Violins to play, that the more commodity might be given to talk; and in this sort, every one for his particular interest, found himself so satisfied, as there was not any but avowed, that they had taken more delight in this assembly, than in all the rest that ever had been. Since that, he hath wrought so well with nine or ten interested persons, as we meet two or three times a week five or six families together, where verily he delivers such pleasing things, as cannot be repeated unto you, without losing much of their grace: It must be acknowledged (said the Princess) that this is a rare man, and deserves that I should inform my self by what happy adventure hee hath preferred *Italy* before *France*, for I have heard that he is a man of quality. You have reason, Madam (said the Count) to call it happy for us, but it hath not been happy for him, though the end was to him glorious. I beleeve (said *Justiniano* interrupting him) that her excellency would be well contented to understand his fortune. And I (replied the Count) to obey her, if I did not fear that the Marquis will not give me leasure for it, but will come and interrupt my recitall thereof. I am much deceived (said *Doria*) if he doe not give you all the opportunity you can desire; for I have well observed that the faire *Emilia* hath not displeased him; and that being gone from hence, because she was not well, he followed her carefully with his eyes, and if I mistake not, he is gone to seek out some occasion to see her, or to premeditate some letter, or verses to express his passion. The Count being of *Doriaes* opinion, yeelded to the request which the Princess had made him, and began to speak in these termes.

### *The History of the French Marquis.*

I shall tell you then, Madam, that the Marquis is of an illustrious House, and of a Province in *France*, the name whereof is not in my remembrance; and without particularising any thing more of his life, than the last action which gave him unto us, you are to know that his vertue begot him envie, and consequently enemies in his country. And whereas he had alwaies lived at court, and in the warres, the late King *Francis* shewed him a great deal of respect and good will, although hee was as then but very young. He had not been wanting then at the battell of *Pavy*, where he had performed wonders in person, and so happily for his glory, as the King himself had been a witness of his valor; yet were there afterwards for all that three Gentlemen in his Country, whereof the one was called *Marsé*, the second *Bennet*, and the other *Dincourt*, amongst whom fell out a quarrell, occasioned by the doubt of his valor. *Marsé* had hated the Marquis of a long time, so as it is credible, that being unable to finde out any other meanes to deface his glory, hee published openly, albeit neither he, nor the other two, had ever parted from their houses during the warre, that the Marquis had fled from the battell of *Pavy*. This discourse  
comming



comming to the Kings ear, at such time as the Marquis was not at the Court, nor had heard any thing that was spoken against him, this Prince, who loved him dearly, thought he should oblige him, if he sought further into the matter. He sends for *Marsé* then to know of him from whom he had received that which he had reported: *Marsé* answers that a Gentleman, named *Dincourt*, had assured it unto him, and *Dincourt* appearing said, that contrarily *Marsé* had told him, how he had heard it from one called *Beniers*. *Dincourt* seeing that *Marsé* did not contradict him, besought the King that he might not bee involved in this affayr; the King grants his request, returns him home, and commands *Beniers* to present himself, as he does: the King demands of him whether he had told *Marsé*, that the Marquis had fled from the Battell of *Pavy*: *Beniers* stoutly maintaines that he had never said any such thing, and gives the other the lye. The King, who was willing to force two men, who had not been in the warres, to fight, told them, that to discover which of them had been the author of this falshood, he would have them fight a single combat, and that he would honour it with his presence. They accept of it, and the next day, the lists being prepared, and the King being placed on a scaffold with all his Court, and invironed with a great multitude of people, he sees *Beniers* appear, conducted by a gentleman of his friends; and *Marsé* at the other end of the field brought in by one of his kinsmen. *Beniers* would needs fight with two swords, and but half armed; so that either of them had a Corslet on, with long tassels, sleeves of mail, gantlets, a cask on his head, a sword in his right hand, & another in his left, with each of them a dagger by his side. This new spectacle drew the eyes of everyone upon them, but at length, after the sound of trumpets, the oaths, & other ceremonies requisite in such like actions, they began their combat, wherein they both shewed a great deal of adresse and valour. At the first *Marsé* seemed to have some advantage of the other, he appeared more active, more ardent, and more vigorous; but towards the midst of the combat it was easie to judge, that *Beniers* had made spare of his forces to give the other leasure to spend his. *Marsé* grew faint, & the other so couragious, as no man had ever seen one fight more valiantly. They were a long time before they could hurt one another; for it hapned that those two swords, which each of them had, and that carried terror by the eyes to the heart of those who beheld two men armed in that manner, were notwithstanding against their intention a meanes to make the combat endure; in regard that the left hand sword served to ward the blowes which they gave one another, as well as if each of them had had a buckler. When they perceived that their own armes kept them from destroying themselves, they cast away their swords both at once, and falling a grappling together with a great deal of precipitation they had recourse to their daggers: But *Beniers* being the stronger, and the more delivver, hath *Marsé* down under him, and his hand wherewith he held his dagger being engaged under the others, *Beniers* seekes for nothing else but a place not defended by his cuirace where he might kill him, & already had he his arm lifted up for to stab him, when as the King, who would not lose a man which had shewed so much courage, threw down his warder in the midst of the field to make them leave off, which caused the people to give a great shout for joy, wherewith *Beniers* turning his head about gave *Marsé* opportunity to disengage himself, and in this manner the Kings authority finished their combat. But admire, Madam, the caprichiouness of chance, by this which I am coming to tell you: The Marquis, about whom the quarrell was, arrives in post at the very same Towne, where the combat was fought; he askes where the King is, and whereas the people are never well informed of things, he is only told, that he is beholding a combat, which he hath permitted unto two Gentlemen, who had required it of him. This novelty touches him with curiosity; he goes without further inquirie, or any thought that he had any interest in this affair: he comes thither, he beholds the combat a while amongst the multitude, makes voves for *Marsé*, whose demeanor and personage pleased him, wishes against his own proper interest that he may carry away the victory, and without knowing it takes his enemies part. But one of his friends having perceived him, approaches to him, and in few words recounts him the whole matter, and withall possesses the mind of the Marquis with

shame, despight, and fury. There is one then (said he unto him that had acquainted him with this bad newes) which dares accuse me of cowardise; and even the King, who knowes full well whether I fled from the battell or no, in stead of punishing this Impostor, does him the grace to permit him the combat; renders himself judge of it, is ready to heap glory on him, and to declare him victor if he surmounts his enemy. No, no, I cannot suffer it, and I must cast my self disarmed as I am, into the midst of the lists; I must fight with them both together, or asunder, it matters not which, so as I may be revenged, or die gloriously. As he was in this resolution the King threw down his warder to make the combat cease; and though the Marquis his minde was much troubled, yet had he observed that *Beniers* was in a condition to be victorious over his enemy, at such time as the King had given that signall of peace; which put him into such strange choler, as hee resolved to break through the press, to goe present himself, and in person demand satisfaction for the outrage had been done him by so black a calumnie. What (said he to himself, in seeking still to approach neerer) the King takes care for the life of a man that spoyles me in my honour! hee hath not permitted the combat then, but out of hope that my enemy would vanquish, since as soon as it appeared that he had the worst, he retayned the hand of him that would have stabbed him, and saved the other from the punishment which he was going to receive: But it is just that he should perish by my hand; and that I should be revenged by my self. In the mean time the press was so great, and the people so thronged together for to hear what the King said to *Marsé* and his adversary, as the Marquis could not come neer him, till he had told them, that their courage had obliged him from having either of them acknowledged for the calumniator: and that in persuance of this grace he commanded them to publish every where, how they knew from his mouth, that the Marquis had been one of the formost in the front of the battell; that he had been one of the last which he had seen fighting about him; and that if all the rest had done their devoir as well as he, he had not lost his liberty. Then turning himself to the principall persons of his Court, I am (said he) a witness of that which I say; and if any one dare make any doubt of my speech, I will make him feel what the displeasure of an incensed Prince is. The Marquis seeing the King leave off speaking, cast himself at his feet, and surpris'd in such sort, both the Court, his enemies, and the King himself, as it was a good while before hee could be heard, so great was the murmure. But at length, after the people had been commanded to silence, the Marquis spake to him much after this manner. I know very well, Sir, since your Majestie is satisfied of my courage, that I should be so too; but it is not sufficient for your glory, that they whom you favour should be valiant, they ought also for the justifying of your judgement to be thought such by all the world; And therefore (if I may be permitted to speake so) I cannot indure that they, who have traduced me two hundred leagues from the battell, should not by experience understand, that I know not how to recoil, either in a generall, or particular combat: Grant me then out of justice that, which you have granted out of grace to mine enemy; your equity and your glory is concerned herein, and you cannot refuse me the combat which I demand, without covering me with shame and confusion. The King having attentively heard him, said, that his resentment was noble, but he could not for his own glory accord him that which he desired: That the publique testimony which he had given of his valour, was more glorious than the death of his enemy, who by his commandment would be constrained to publish all his lifetime the contrary of that which he had reported; That if he should permit him the combat, he should seem to posterity, that he himself had made doubt of his valour; that it would be to equall him with his enemy, which by no means he would do, neither was it just he should. The Marquis, hearing the King speak after this sort, was so seised with spight and grief, as he could not answer him. In the mean time the King, advising with the chiefe of his Court about what satisfaction he might give the Marquis, never heeded his going away; for suddenly thrusting himself amongst the press, he did so, as before he could be followed he took post, and went and hid himself in one of his friends house, forty Leagues off, with an intent

intent not to stir from thence but to be revenged. The King was much offended with this action of his, and although he loved the Marquis exceedingly, yet his authority seeming to be contemned thereby, he testified a great deal of displeasure for it. He charged *Marsé* not fight with him, and yet commanded him to acknowledge every where, how that which he had said was false. This while the Marquis caused his enemy to be observed, and received news of whatsoever passed at Court; and whereas he hath a great and generous spirit, the alteration of the Kings favour towards him touched him so sensibly, as he desired his friends not to think of restoring him thereunto: He took order secretly for his affairs, settled his estate, raised a mass of mony, great enough to undertake a long voyage; and that done, resolves to fight, not only with *Marsé*, but also with *Beniers*, not knowing, said he, whether he had not spoken that which he disavowed; and after all, to quit the Kingdom for ever. But the latter gave him not leave to execute his design; for he died of sickness. As for *Marsé*, as soon as he knew that he was returned into his country, he sent him a challenge; whereunto he answers, that in regard of the Kings charge to the contrary, he could not accept of it. The Marquis nettled with this refusal, resolved to force him to fight; and watching for him a good while after in a Wood, that was not far from *Marsé's* house, and whither he went oftentimes to walk, he perceived one morning a Provost-Marshal, accompanied with two of his fellows, who came along thorough the Forrest; he hid himself for fear of discovery, and heard that one of them named him, and said that the King would have him apprehended if he could be found. This discourse obliged him to follow them afar off; but he was much astonished when he saw them enter into *Marsé's* house: whereupon he no longer doubted, but that it would be impossible for him of a long time to find an opportunity to fight with him. He informs himself more particularly of the business; remains certain daies about this house, and at length learns, that the Provost-Marshal was sent to *Marsé* to apprehend him; for the King had been advertised both of his retreat, and of the time when he departed to return into his Country; So that oppressed with many misfortunes, he resolved to go and pass away certain moneths in some other place, hoping that in the mean time they might peradventure be wearied with continuall guarding of *Marsé*. He went then into *Provence* for his more security, where one of his particular friends lived, that was retired from the Court. Being there, he understands that the Kings displeasure is pacified, and that his enemy is dead; so that the impossibility which he saw to be revenged, makes him take the resolution never to appear again at a Court, whose Prince had not intreated him very vvell. He passeth into *Italie*, as being Master of his Actions and Estate; and after he had seen all that is remarkable on this side the mountains, he staid in the end at *Genova*, where such pleasant things have arrived unto him, as one would hardly beleve they were true, they were so extraordinary. You have much obliged me, said the Princess, by acquainting me with all these passages; but I would fain know, what cause *Marsé* had so to hate him? I rather think Madam (replied the Count) that there was some love in the quarrel; if I be not deceived, *Marsé* had four sisters, and the Marquis but one; and they were both neighbours together in the country, so that visiting one another very often, according to the custom of *France*, *Marsé* fell in love with the Marquis his Sister, and the Marquis, who alwaies returns Love with usury, became enamoured of all his four at once. He loved the eyes of the one, the stature of the other, the voyce of the third, and the wit of the last. And in these four mayds, he said that he had the most accomplished Mistis in the world. This folly lasted long enough to give *Marsé* leasure to become desperately in love with the Marquis his sister, who at her brothers intreaty had enterrayned him very civilly during certain moneths that he was away in the Province, albeit she could by no means indure him. In the mean while the time of his return being come, *Marsé* begins to think seriously of his affaires, beleaves they will succeed well; and finding that the Marquis took great delight in resorting to his house, thinks to give him the choise of his four sisters, and by that exchange hopes to establish his felicity, and possess his Mistis. He

im-



employes one therein, who was a friend both to him and the Marquis; gives him order to discover which of his Sisters he hath a mind to, that he may prepare her to entertain him the better. This friend acquits himself dexterously of his Commission, he repairs to the Marquis, speaks to him of *Marsè's* Sisters, and demands of him which of them pleaseth him most. He answers, that they please him all alike; that the eldest is plump, fair-hayr'd, white-skin'd; that she hath a great deal of sweetness in her eyes, and in her humour, but that it is great pity she is no taller. This man, who was called *Alsac*, beleev'd that this was she which touch'd the Marquis his heart, since he found but this little defect in her. But the other proceeding on in his discourse, he thought it was the second; for (said the Marquis) the advantagious stature of the next; that stately look; that dark hair; that ovall visage; and that noble pride, which appears in her port and all her actions, would render her incomparable, were her complexion somewhat clearer, and that she spake a little more than she does. I was deceived (said *Alsac* then) and it is this fame that hath vanquish'd him. But (continued the Marquis) the mouth of the third; her white teeth; that quaintness which she hath in the ayr of her face; that merry and joviall humour; and that which goeth beyond all the rest, that charming and passionate voice, which she governs with so much art, gives her such a grace, as would make her surmount all hearts, were it not for a little inequality of humour that appears in her. Nay now I know not which of them it is, said *Alsac* to himself; but for the last (continued the Marquis) it must be acknowledged, that that fresh and vermilion hew, proceeding from her youth, which may be named the soul of beauty; those sparkling eyes; that black hair; that comely neck; that mean and well proportioned stature; those white hands; and that which is most marvellous in the age of fifteen yeares, that nimble wit, which renders her the entertainment of a company; which makes her talk very agreeably of all matters; and which puts a particular charm into every part of her; deserves almost the whole heart of a worthy man, if she did not live in the Country, and had but for six moneths onely breathed the air of the great world: but that originall sin which takes off much of her value, and the sole thought that she is a country Gentlewoman, is a soveraign preservative for a man of the Court. *Alsac* was then very much perplexed; howbeit he conceived that the obstacle which the Marquis brought to this last, was the least considerable; and that thereby he would conceal his passion. But this conjecture was not for all that so strong, as he durst settle his judgement on it, as on an indubitable thing. He presses the Marquis yet in another manner, and precisely demands of him, whether he be in love or no; the Marquis, who thought he was not to speak seriously, answers, that he is, more than all the men of the world; the other intreats him to tell him with whom; and the Marquis, who believes that this man hath no hidden design, is contented to tell him, for to keep him still in doubt, that it sufficeth he assures him, how in that which he loves, all the beauties of the body, and all the graces of the mind, are incountred; and that a master-peece of Nature might be made of it, if one could see together, what he loves asunder. *Alsac* comprehended nothing by this discourse, although it were true in the Marquis his sence, who indeed was in love with these four maids; in each of which he found things that touch'd his heart, and others that did not please him.

This man then being in despair of being able to acquit himself of his Commission, enquires howsoever, whether it be at Court, or in the Country, that he loves? The Marquis answers, how it is in the Coutry that he loves, and after this they part. *Alsac* goes to *Marsè*, and tels him that all the fruit of his voyage is, how he certainly knows that the Marquess is in love in their Country, and that of necessity it must be in his house, since there were no other Gentlewomen thereabout; but to understand precisely which of his Sisters held the chiefeest place in his heart, was impossible for him to discover, so well had he spoken to him of all four; howbeit it seem'd to him that the last touch'd him a little more than the rest; but  
this

this too was so uncertain, as he counselled him not to rely on it. *Marsé* finds himself hereupon sufficiently troubled, howsoever he resolves to clear himself therein, and believes that entertaining all his Sisters, one by one in particular, he may discover the truth; it being impossible, said he, but that I shall observe by their countenances, to which of them he hath spoken seriously of love. He sends for the eldest to him into his Cabinet, speaks to her with a great deal of testimony of good will, and to oblige her the more easily to discover her heart unto him, he assures her that he thinks of nothing with more care, than to establish her Fortune; that he should hardly resolve to marry before her; and at length, having made a turn or two, he demands of her whether the Marquis had ever given her any particular proofs of his affection, and whether that match would be agreeable unto her. This proposition having made her blush, she answers, casting down her eyes, that in this occasion she had no other will but his, and that she was ready to obey him. How it was true, that the Marquis had testified that he greatly esteemed her, and that in an hundred encounters he still seemed to prefer her before the rest; and that she also had known how to acknowledge his merit to the prejudice of them that came near him; but that for three or four dayes since he had applied himself more in talking to the third than he was accustomed to do. This Maid giving no further marks in this discourse of the love the Marquis bore her, than that which she bore to him by the jealousy which she shewed, *Marsé* was at a nonplus; he perceives by his Sisters speech, that the Marquis had spoken to her of love; that she did not hate him; and that she suspects notwithstanding that he hath a mind to her which sings, although according to *Alfacs* opinion it should be to the youngest. Howbeit he conceals his unquietness from his Sister, and resolves to found them all, charging this not to speak a word to the rest of what had past between them. She withdraws, and the second arrives with a look and a modesty that made him believe he should be much troubled to draw anything out of her concerning that which he desired to know. But he was much amazed, when as at the first proposition which he made to her of it, she freely told him, but with some little preparation before hand, that she beleaved the Marquis loved her eldest as a Sister; that he delighted to hear the third sing; that the wit of the last did not displease him; but as for her, she thought that he had given her such tokens of his esteem of her, as he had given to none of the rest; and that he had at sundry times spoken to her in that manner, as she could no longer doubt of it. Howbeit, that for three or four dayes last past, she thought that to spight her, or to make her more favourable unto him, he had caused one of her Sisters to sing more, and had eyed the youngest more than he used to do. That as for her, she could alwayes rule her will by his, but if he would permit her to speak the truth, she must confess unto him, that she could be contented to marry with a Courtier, being so strongly disinclined from the Country, as she could hardly resolve to talk with them that came to visit her. Her Brother promises to doe what he can to content her, and having charged her to be secret, he dismisses her, and sends for the third. What shall I make of all this (said *Marsé* to himself) I cannot learn yet whether the Marquis be truly in love or no, however I am sure that I have two Sisters which are already desperately in love with him, but it may be, continued he, that the other two will clear this *enigma* unto me. In the mean time she whom he had sent for appears with her jocund humour; she demands of him at the first dash, whether it were to propound a Lover unto her that he had sent for her so in secret; she answers her, that she was not deceived, for indeed it was to ask of her whether the affection of the Marquis did satisfie her? She replies laughing, that the obligation which she had unto him for having taught her so many excellent ayrs, for having taken such pains to make her sing well, and to tune her Lute to her voice, deserved that her answer should be favourable unto him. But, said *Marsé* to her, speak seriously, for though you be the third, yet if the Marquis loves you, you shall be the first married. Can you doubt of it, said she? and see you not that the conformity which is between us must

must needs produce a fair affection? He is merry, I am not melancholick; he understands musick, and I can sing; he plays on the Lute, and so doe I; he dances admirably, and I doe not dance with an ill grace; in conclusion, there is a kind of I know not what invisible thing, called, as I think, Sympathy, which makes us that we cannot hate one another. I but, replied *Marsé*, this is not enough, and you must tell me more seriously whether he loves you. Expect not any thing more serious from me, said she, for I should cease to be that I am, and peradventure should not please the Marquis, if I were wiser; wherefore be pleased to let me tell you only, that if he speaks to you with as good a grace when he demands me of you, as he did in discovering his passion unto me, I shall not answer him cruelly. After this he went away singing a Song which the Marquis had made for her, and left *Marsé* so confounded, as he could scarcely believe what he had heard. But at length the last arrives, and whereas he knows that she had more wit than the rest, he also imployes more art in speaking to her: He cajols and carresses her; calls her his Favourite, and his dearest Sister; and after an hundred protestations of good will, conjures her to deal ingenuously with him; and to oblige her the more, confesses unto her, that he is in an extreme passion for the Marquis his Sister; and believing that he is so too for her, he desires her to tell him the truth of it, and if it be so, to use him kindly, for fear he should oblige his Sister to oppose his affection. She answers thereunto with a great deal of wit, that she would think her self infinitely happy to be sacrificed for the felicity of her Brother; but as for that which concerned the Marquis, she was to tell him, that her life had not yet been long enough to be able to discern a feigned affection from a true; that it was so little a while since one had given over treating her like a Girl, that she durst not as yet rely on her judgment; that indeed it was true, the Marquis had taken some such particular care of her, as made her think he did not wish her ill; and whereas he was the first worthy man that had spoken civilly unto her, she confessed freely unto him, she could not chuse but be obliged to him for it; but that therein she promised to follow his directions exactly. The address of this maid was not such, but that her Brother perceived by the change of her countenance that the Marquis pleased her more than she made shew of: But whereas he desired to have the liberty to think of so strange an adventure, he sends her away, enjoyns her to be secret, and assures her that he will alwayes testify that she is dearer to him than his other Sisters. When she was gone, he fell a walking up and down (for the Marquis knew all these things afterward by the third of these Gentlewomen, who out of the conformity that was betwixt them continued still his friend, maugre all their disorders) and having been a while without speaking; What, said he, the Marquis shall make my four Sisters be in love with him, whilst himself peradventure is not taken by any of them, and I shall be so unhappy as not be able to touch the inclination of his one? He will laugh in his mind at his conquests, and my misfortune; and whilst to the prejudice of my house he shall be laden with the favours of four maids, I shall get but cold civilities from her, whom I love passionately, and that alone can make up my felicitie. But, continued he, what counsell can I take? If I have recourse to violence; if I quarrell with him; if I fight with him, and will make him explain himself by force, for the interest of my Sisters, then I ruine my self with her; I lose the hope of ever possessing her; and it would be an ill way for one to prove his love unto a generous person, to kill her Brother. It is better for me then to dissemble a while; to observe all his actions; to endeavour yet to discover whom the Marquis is in love withall; and if at last I can learn nothing certain, then to propound unto him the choice of my Sisters, in demanding of his. Behold in what sort *Marsé* reasoned with himself about so intricate an affair (at leastwise he hath recounted it since in this manner.) But as *Marsé* was thus troubled at home, so was the Marquis in some sort with his Sister, who having another design with her self than the marrying of *Marsé*, would have him dispense with her for entertaining him any longer, and permit her to take all hope from him. Howbeit the Marquis,

who



who could not endure that his Sisters rigour should deprive him of the favours of all *Marsés*, unto whom he durst not have gone any more, if once she should have put him into despair, could not consent unto her desires. Why, Sister, said he unto her, you see me to be an hundred leagues from the Court, in a solitary Country, where one can hardly behold any thing that so much as resembles a woman, and you will be so cruell as to deprive me of a company, wherein I meet with four very amiable ones; so as if it be true that the loss of one Mistress brings an unquietness that cannot be ended but by Iron or Poyson, what doe you think will become of me, when you shall have taken from me four at a time, which I love passionately; and in a place where I can find no others? If I were at *Paris*, I should comply with you herein, not onely for fower, but for thirty, being well assured that I should repair this loss in a little time: But in the midst of a desert to deprive me of four sole maides whom I can love, is so great an inhumanitie, in the humor wherein I am, as if you consider it seriously you must needs repent you of it. But, answered his Sister laughing, you doe not love them, for how can you share your self amongst so many? Not love them (replied the Marquis) naughty Sister, come, you doe not know me, if you believe as you say; for it is most certain that I love them with all my soul; and that in all my life I never found my self so constant, nor so amorous. And whereas this maid could not very easily comprehend, how a man could love four at once, and term himself constant: for to make her understand it, he told her, that by a very extraordinary adventure he had no great affection for any of them in particular, but meeting in these four persons separately, with that, which he would have in one alone, he was so desperately in love therewith, as he was never in such a passion before. He told her further, that ordinarily when he found any thing that was amiable in a woman, he excused the defects which were in her, and became in love with all her person; but that in this encounter, through a caprichiousness of love, he was wounded in another sort. For, said he seriously, it would be impossible for me, in the estate wherein my mind now is, to love any of those maides single; and I am never more joyfull than when I see them all four together. I behold the whiteness of the first; the look of the second; I hear the voice of the third; and admire the gentleness of the last. In conclusion, I am so satisfied with this manner of loving, that when I could, by an unheard-of miracle, take from those four maides all that doth please me in them, to make thereof a Master-piece and a marvel, such as I may imagine, yet should I rather chuse to love them as I doe. For if I should love but one of them, I should be without consolation when she were in choler; whereas contrariwise I am never altogether unhappy: if I have angered the fair one, the brown one regards me favourably; and if I am out with the serious one, the merry one comforts me with her jocund humor; and when it falls out, that I am upon good termes with all the four, I have such delight as cannot be expressed. One prepares a bracelet for me, another ties a band about my hat, a third gives me powder and essences, whilst the fourth causes her picture to be drawn for the love of me. In pursuance hereof, I sing a song that is agreeable to all four, which each of them applies to their own particular for a mark of my affection, and which they all commend with address and joy: and that which is yet more worth than all these things, is, that this passion is so fair and so extraordinary, as the end of it can never be unhappy. For when as I my self would contribute to mine own ruine, it is impossible that ever I should arrive to that infortunate terme, which for the most part finishes all loves, I mean marriage. If I should love one of these maides, it may be that utterly losing all reason against my custom, I should also marry her; but loving these four sisters as I doe, unless the Law should permit me to marry them all four, as the Turkes does, I am in no danger of being their husband. In this manner I shall be alwaies free, and alwaies amorous; and the impossibilitie that there is for them ever to be my wives, gives them a charm, which will make me love them untill I return again to the Court. Judge now after this, cruell sister, whether you are to rob me of all my pleasures. You know, continued he, that I doe not cross yours, that I have never prest you to hearken to the sighes of *Marsé*, more than was need-  
ful

full for my diversion, and not to constrain you to marry him. I am so much a friend of liberty, that I cannot endure the least violence, either in myself, or in another; and if you resist me never so little more, I feel that I shall doe what you would have me; but at the very same instant I shall take Post to goe seek out some new object for my passion, without vvvhich I am not able to live. They vvvere a long time yet pleasantly disputing on either part concerning this matter; but at last the Marquis his Sister, vvwho vvould not lose so favourable an occasion to discover unto her Brother the design vvvhich she had, gives him to understand, that during his absence, a Gentleman of their Neighbourhood, extreme rich, of great courage, and of much spirit, had fallen in love vvwith her; and that he being to return from the Army in a short space, she vvvas afraid lest some mischief might fall out betvvveen him and *Marsé*. It is not that I have any affection for him, said this Maid, but I must confesse to you, that I vvwill never marry *Marsé*, though I think I could resolve to be the others Wife. Come, my dear Sister, answered the Marquis, doe not disguise your thoughts; say that you are in love; that your passion is violent, and vvwith these charming vvords you shall obtain of me all that you can desire; I vvwill return to the Court eight dayes sooner than I vvwould have done, to leave you the liberty to use *Marsé* as you please; but vvwhen I goe I vvwill leave our Mother an absolute povver to marry you according to your ovvn mind; for I am so glad to see that you are not insensible, that I love you for it far more than I did. As they vvvere thus talking, *Marsé* arrives, the Marquis hides himself against his Sisters vvwill, gets out at a back-gate, mounts on horse-back, and rides to *Marsé*'s house, vvvhich vvvas not far off, vvwhere he finds those four fair Sisters, or to say better, his four Mistresses, all of them more joviall than ordinary, for they had every one in particular some hope to be the Marquis his Wife, by reason of the proposition their Brother had made to them of it. They had also attired themselves extraordinarily, to give him new wounds; for they knew well no day past without his vvvisiting them. The eldest had a garment on of green cloth-of-Silver, vvwhereof the sleeves were tyed up with carnation-silver'd ribbon, and her hair with the same, vvwhich did not misbecome a person fair-complexioned. The second had on a night attire of pure white silver tinsell, vvwhich gave a kind of lustre to her serious and modest aspect; the third alvvways glittering, vvwas in a vvwaistcoat of gridilvyn sattin, set all over with silver oes; as for the youngest, though her garment was plainer than the rest, yet vvwas it the gallantest; her habit vvwas nothing else but silverd tiffany, imbroidered with flowers, lined with carnation taffata, and her head vvwas covered over with carnation and white feathers, vvwhich must needs doe well with a young person, vvwhose hair vvwas black, complexion clear and lively, and eyes vvwonderfully sparkling. All these Sisters were much amazed in themselves, at the care vvwhich each of them had taken on one and the same day, in setting forth themselves as much as possibly they could; and the Marquis vvwas so surpris'd to see them all at once with such magnificence and jollity, that he could not imagine vvwhat should be the cause of it; for commonly they observed this order amongst themselves, that there vvwas one alvvways carelessly dress'd, to the end that each of them in their turn might shew, both affected handsomness, and handsome carelessness. But at length the Marquis accoasts them, divides his complements and looks, commends them all four together, and vvwithout knowing vvwhat vvwas in their thoughts, does things vvwhich confirms them in their opinion. He talks to them of love openly, swears that he is in such a passion for them, as he vvwas never in the like before; and vvwhereas their minds vvwere prepossessed, they beleeve that it is an address of Court to speak overtly of these matters, and to leave it to her, vvwhom one loves, to apply it to her self. She vvwhom he beheld beleeved, that it vvwas as much as to say, it is for you; and those vvwhom he did not behold, beleeved, that out of respect he durst not encounter their eyes, in speaking of a thing vvwhich might make them blush; in fine, they vvwere all very well contented and very well satisfied. The Marquis, vvwho did not love to make unprofitable vvvisits, demands new favours of them; he vvwill have a bracelet made of the hair of all four; they laugh at it at first; they refuse him, or to say better,

better, they make him the more earnest to intreat them for it; and at last they grant it him, still in the thought, that it is a trick whereby he will get the hair of her he loves, without making shew that it should be a particular favour, or that she should have cause to be offended at it. This promise was soon executed; the youngest of these maids being the most dextrous, was she that plaited this hair together, and made a bracelet of it, where the different colour of their hair appeared all asunder. In labouring at this work, she laughed in her sleeve, to think how her Sisters were beguiled, if they beleev'd that it was for them the Marquis had desired that which she was making; and the rest, who thought they were more cunning, mock'd at the simplicity of their younger Sister, for taking such paines about a thing wherein she had so small a share. And those severall concealed opinions which they all had, gave them so strong a disposition to laugh, as upon the least pretext for it, they fell into it; finding too amidst their laughter occasion to redouble it, each of them beleev'ing in their mind, that the rest would not alwayes laugh with so good a will when once the Marquis should declare himself. As for him, who never lost time, after he had spoken to them all in generall, according to the French liberty, he spake to them in particular; he singles out one into a corner of the room, and there says gallantries to her; a little after he talks with another at a window, which looks upon the garden, and seeming to admire the beauty of the flowers, he praises that of her eyes; he accompanies the youngest when she goes forth, and makes use of this occasion to cajoll her. And when they walk in the garden, he sometimes draws one of them also from the rest, that he may be able to speak two or three words to her in private, or to kiss her hand. In the meantime, *Marsé*, who had not received such caresses at the Marquis his house, returns to his own, where he finds him still to be; he does what he can to make him stay all night, but the Marquis, who began to fear lest *Marsé* should press him to explain himself, withstands it, parts from this fair company, carries away the bracelet, and comes back to his Sister, who was very melancholick. For it had happened, that her Lover being returned, had surpris'd her talking with *Marsé*; and whether he had understood of his design, or that she had before acquainted him with it, they had saluted one another very coldly, and had talked as men that took pleasure to contradict each other. So that, said she to the Marquis, after she had recounted unto him that which had befallen, I see the matter in a case to break forth, and suddenly to produce some mischief, if we doe not look to it in time. No such thing, answered the Marquis, for whereas I have promised nothing to *Marsé*, and that he too hath not spoken to me of his love to you, or of any purpose he had to marry you; I may tell him if he moves me about it, that I am engaged to another, and to make that true, cause your Lover to come to me, and I will promise him my consent. I know that thereby I shall banish my self from a place, where I have a great deal of pleasure; but since I am of necessity to be gone away within eight dayes to the Court, I could not make a better end of this adventure. For *Marsé* forbidding me his house, I shall have a fair occasion to write them a letter of adieu and despair: withall, continued he, I perceive that I begin to accustom me my self to the favours which I receive from these Gentlewomen, so that now the happiness which love gives me, being turned into an habit, it is no longer hapiness to me. The Marquis his Sister was so astonished to hear him talk thus, as she could not forbear laughing at it: They pass the evening in this sort, and not to lose time, the Marquis his Sister advertised her Lover, that the next morning he should repair to her Brother to acquaint him clearly with the intentions he had for her. The note which she sent failed not to work the effect she expected from it; her Lover comes just as the Marquis is rising, speaks to him of his passion for his Sister, shews that he covets his alliance, and in the end expresses his desires so clearly, that the Marquis without further delay leads him to his Mothers chamber, who favoured her Daughters wishes, propounds the matter unto her, gets her to agree unto it; and whereas this Lover was absolute Master of his Estate, and of his own will, they resolv'd to accomplish this Mariage



within four dayes, to the end that the Marquis, who was to return to the Court, might be at his sisters wedding. Things being in these termes, *Marsé* arrives, who was come on purpose to his Mistresses Mother, to discover his design unto her. As soon as the Marquis saw him enter, he descends, he goes and imbraces him, invites him to his sisters wedding, before he acquaints him to whom she is to be marryed; seemes to believe that he is not interested therein; talks to him of dancing and joy, hoping thereby, that *Marsé*, seeing the matter resolved, would not explain himself further, and peradventure would alter his mind. As indeed, *Marsé* hearing this discourse, and knowing that his rivall was returned, makes no doubt but the Marquis spake the truth, onely he doubted, in regard of the manner of the Marquis his speech to him, whether he had observed that he affected his sister. He was mad that he had not declared himself sooner, and that he was arrived so late; and in this unquietness, he knew not whether he should goe in or no, to be the spectator of his Rivals triumph; whether he should quarrell with the Marquis, though he knew not as yet that he was faulty; whether he should depart away without saying any thing unto him; or whether he should trouble this wedding with some strange violence; in fine he was so confounded, as not knowing what to doe in so unpleasing a conjuncture, he suffered himself to be conducted along by the Marquis, whose adrefs in this occasion was such, as without seeming to perceive any change in his countenance, he still continued talking to him of diversion and joy: and that too with imbracing and putting him gently on towards his Mothers chamber; whereunto as soon as ever they were entred, the Marquis presented his brother-in-law to *Marsé*, who saluted him very coldly; in the mean time he had leasure to tell his Mother and his sister in two words, that to keep *Marsé* from shewing his hatred and resentment, he was not to be left alone with any body. After that civilities were rendered on either part, the Marquis thought it was fitting that he should entertain the company; he began then to quarrell with his sister, for that she was the cause of his rejoycing at a thing which was repugnant to his mind; but withall he was well assured, that this thing should never give him joy again, either for her, or any other, and that this compliance was no doubt the greatest mark he could render her of his love. *Marsé* hearing this discourse, demanded of him, whether he meant marriage by that which he spake? and the Marquis without further delay, answered him laughing, that it was of that destroyer of love; of that Tyrant of libertie; of that enemy of pleasure; which most commonly disjoynes all that Love hath united; which discovers all the defects of the mind and humor, to persons that believed they were altogether perfect; and that which was worse than all the rest for him, which banishes love, inconstancie, and gallantry from amongst men, to introduce into the stead of it, jealousy of honor, a false constancie, and domestick cares. So that, as you speak (replied *Marsé* interrupting him) you believe it may be that you should much oblige one of your friends, if you should marry his Mistress to another. If he should tell me, answered the Marquis, that he would marry her, I should not contradict his intent, for I am so much an enemy to constraint, as I never oppose any thing; but otherwise if a worthy man of my friends should appear to me extremely amorous, I doe not think I should doe him any great wrong, if I should deprive him of the meanes of marrying his Mistress, in case his passion should disorder him so far, as to give him a desire to doe so: And in the humor that I am, the greatest proof of affection that I can render unto a maid, when I become enamoured of her, is, not to marry her: yea, and I have met with some, unto whom, the more favourably to receive my affection, and to testifie unto them the respect which I bare them, I have declared at the first sight, that in becoming their Servant, I had no design to become their Master; and in assuring them that I was their slave, I assured them that I would never be their Tyrant. It may be, replied *Marsé*, you have not alwaies spoken so openly; that I have not, answered the Marquis, when I believed, that those whom I loved had wit enough not to suspect that I had any such bad intent; but howsoever I have never done or said any thing which could make them believe

believe, that I had any other aim, than to love them, to be kindly received of them, to be heard with pleasure, and to obtain of them all those petty favours, which are no part of the Husbands demean, and which ought alwaies to remain in the disposition of Ladies, therewith to gratifie their Lovers. For since there are not men found, which amuse themselves in wearing bracelets of their wives hair; which demand favours of them; which are ravished with kissing onely the tip of their gloves; with saying gallantries to them, praising their beauties, giving them serenades; making verses to their glory; and telling them that they burn and dye for love of them. Is it not strange they should be deprived of all these pleasures? and is it not unjust, that men which doe not love them should possess them absolutely? and that they which adore them should not at leastwise have all those petty things, which are not directly opposite to vertue? Your maxims are so bad, said the Marquis his Sister, speaking to her Brother, that if you had not alwayes been at Court, and that we had alwayes been brought up together, I should have some cause to fear, that one might imagine you had perswaded me to your opinion. I dare not say, replied her Lover, that these maxims, which you condemn, have nothing in them that clashes with reason; nor also maintain that they have nothing in them but that which is bad; for I have too much love for the Sister, and too much respect for the Brother; but howsoever I am confident that you will not follow them. It is true, said *Marsé*, tartly enough, that inconstancie is not that wherewith he is to be reproched; and I know not whether on the contrary, Vertue opposed will not prove to be the onely crime that may be imputed to him. The Marquis perceiving that the other was preparing himself to answer, and peradventure with bitterness, continued to speak of the injustice of men in the discerning of things. For, said he, if the diversity of good books renders a man knowing; if diversity of voyages serves him for an agreeable study, which illuminates his mind, and informs his judgment; if the diversity of fair arts is a knowledge that pleases; if the diversity of tongues passes for a laudable curiosity, why should one think that the diversity of loves can produce nothing that is good? And why will one have the grace of novelty, which is the charm of nature, to be a defect in love? For my part, said *Marsé*, I will no longer oppose this doctrine, since an universall change cannot be but advantageous for me, glorious for some, and equitable for others. The hidden sense of this speech was easily understood by all the company; but the Marquis, who in this occasion did not desire to dive into things, alter'd the discourse, and said unto *Marsé*, that his Sisters must needs honour this Wedding with their presence, and that he must rejoyce with them, for that they are not so neer to slavery. The honour that you will doe them, answered *Marsé*, will surprisè them, not because your civilities hath not given them occasion to attend more from you, but whereas this newes is unexpected, it is fit that I should goe and advertise them of it, to the end they may prepare themselves to receive the grace that you will doe them. The Marquis pressed him extremely to pass away the rest of the day with them, but he would by no means stay; He invites him also to his Sisters Wedding, talks to him of Bals, Lutes, Musick, and of all the entertainments usuall in such like Feasts: whereunto the other answered still with speeches of a double sence. The two Rivals quipt one another civilly, which doubtless might have produced some unlucky adventure, had not the merry humour of the Marquis sweetned the conversation. *Marsé* took his leave of the company, with a forced countenance, which made them conceive that he had strange inquietness in his mind. He went home then with so much grief, as he could not longer conceal it, and to minish it in some sort he desired to make his Sisters partakers of it. He sends for them, acquaints them with the marriage of his Mistress, tells them that the Marquis is unfaithfull, inconstant, a cheater, a courtier; that cares for nothing but to please himself; that hath made a mockery of them; and then recounts all their conversation unto them. These four Sisters were not more amazed at this Wedding whereunto they were invited, and the lightness of the Marquis his humour,

mour, than to know by their Brothers discourse that they were Rivals, and equally beguiled of the hopes which they had conceived. At first they beheld one another, as if they would silently reproch each other for concealing themselves in their designs: But the third of these maids, whose mind was not so sensible of grief, and that could not be long without giving some marks of her humour, after she had paused a little, began to speak, and said with a tone of the voice of admiration, I must confess the Marquis is wonderfull dextrous, that could deceive four interested maides; and though I did infinitely esteem him, continued she, I did not think he had had so much wit, nor that he was so unworthy of my friendship. The mindes of the three others were not so moderate; and though the eldest was of a very sweet disposition, yet could she not chuse but shew her resentment. The second, alwaies haughty, manifested hers, by seeming to share very much in that of her brother; but as for the youngest, she was vext to the heart, for having so ill assured her first conquest; and albeit she had a great deal of wit, yet she could not forbear shewing her choler. Howsoever the third continued still saying, that this adventure was a new charm, which she discovered in the Marquis, and that ingaged her to esteem of him the more. In the mean time the wedding day arrives; *Marsé* feignes himself sick because he would not be at it; the sisters excuse themselves upon their brothers sickness: Howbeit the third makes a secret match with one of her kinswomen, that dwells not far off, to goe and see this feast in disguise; they mask themselves then very bravely, and appear in that assenibly accompanied with certain men disguised too as they were. As soon as they were entred into the rooom, the Marquis knew her that touched his heart still; he approaches to her, makes her an hundred complements, and continues telling her, that he loves her passionately. But she without reproaching him, answers, that she does not doubt of it, and that the conformity which is between them ought to work so fair an effect. That nevertheless it was fit they should a little better examine their thoughts, it seeming just unto her, that two persons, which made profession of beguiling all the world in gallantry, should not be beguiled between themselves. This said, this gentlewoman made the Marquis sit down by her, whilst the rest of the company were dancing, and with a most pleasing relation acquainted him with all that had past, betwixt her brother, her sisters, and her self. Hereupon they promised much good will one to another, esteeming too much of themselves for ever speaking together again of love. She counselled the Marquis not to come at their house, but since he was to be gone to the Court the day following to send a complement to her brother and her sisters, as indeed he did. The Marquis took post the next morning, leaving his sister very well contented, *Marsé* in despair, three of his sisters in choler enough, & the other satisfied. Ever since that, Madam, there hath alwaies been a secret hate between these two houses, until such time as *Marsé* made the report that caused the combat, which I have recounted unto you, & that consequently hath so happily for us brought the Marquis into *Italy*. I confess, said the Princess, that the history hath much delighted me; and that I am much obliged unto you for acquainting me with so gallant and extraordinary a man. As she was saying so, the Marquis came into the chamber again; whereupon she began to charge him for keeping so long away from a company, which found his infinitely agreeable to them: But he with a respective boldness, answered, that knowing very well how the Count would impart some part of his humor unto her, he feared not to acknowledge, that being in doubt he should not alwaies well remember what she was, and also what he was, he went avay to expose himself to the looks of the fair *Amelia*, to the end that having his heart replenished vvith love, he might have nothing but veneration for her. *Isabella* could not forbear laughing though she blush'd in looking on *Justinia*: vvho told the Princess, that this foresight and respect of his, merited a great deal of acknowledgment. And I too am resolved not to be ingratefull; but I fear vvhen as you know me, said she to the Marquis, that you vvill have a passion for me quite contrary to that vvich you seem to fear. For in fine, vvwhether it be constancy or obstinacy, I never change my determination; vvhen once I have taken a resolution, nothing



nothing can destroy it; so as I have great cause to doubt, that this difference of humours which is seen betwixt us, will set me at odds with you: but that which gives me a little hope yet, is, that I know you have friends that are not inconstant. I confess, Madam, replied the Marquis, that I am inconstant, and that following the order of Nature, I should hate that which is directly opposite to me; but for all that it is certain, that I am not incommodiously inconstant; I never contradict any in their opinions, nor in their pleasures; I give unto others the liberty which I desire they should grant me; I do not blame constancie, though I like well of change; and my soul is so full of passion, as I cannot condemn all that which is called Love; wheresoever I find this passion, it pleaseth me, and all the effects of it are agreeable unto me. I love jealousy in this same, despair in him, dissimulation in some, infidelity in others; and although it seldom produces any thing but joy in me, yet does not the melancholy of a Lover, who is not of my humour, offend me. I am so powerfully perswaded of the excellency of Love, as I hold for infallible, that the most unfortunate Lover in the World hath more happy dayes, than the freest of all men can have. For in fine, the remembrance of what is past, or the hope of what is to come, still gives him felicities, which are not met withall in the possession of other good things. Verily, said the Princess, there was never any one so sociably inconstant; for commonly we are so unjust, as to desire that our sense should rule that of others, to approve of nothing but what pleaseth us, and to condemn all that contradicts our opinions. And they which are of this humour, find in themselves wherewith to maintain their severity. They say, that whereas there is but one reason in all things, there is but one way to be followed; that all they which esloign themselves from that, doe goe astray, and that so they may be justly blamed. I acknowledge, Madam, replied the Marquis, that there is but one reason, but I maintain also, that it is so difficult to be known, as he who thinks he hath found it, is oftentimes further from it than others, which without judging sovereignly of any thing simply, follow the sense wherewith Nature hath inspired them. And indeed to speak truth, if it be necessary for the equitable judging of a matter, that one should be loose from all, and so indifferent as to lean equally to each side, or to say better, not to lean to either; how is it possible that any man should be so hardy as to make any judgment of the actions of others, principally of that which regards Love? But since I have been taken at *Genova* for an Astrologer, permit me to play the cunning man in this encounter; I say then, Madam, that our reason is not so absolutely loosed from sense, but that our temperament hath a great share in our opinions; and that that just mixture of the four humours, which renders the spirit so clear and solid, and our health so sound, is seldom found in any body. There is alwayes one of them that predominates over the rest, and by it we act according to the pleasure thereof; we are grave, merry, cholerick, or patient; insensible, or passionate. And certainly it is not so much the rigour of a melancholick mans Mistress, that makes him cry out, sigh every minute, shed tears, pass away nights without sleep, rave from the purpose, talk alwayes of despair, and appear with a langor, that seems to be an effect of an extreme affliction; as the power of this predominant humour, which forces him to receive all things after this sort. And to prove that which I say, we are but to consider, that if the same rigour were address'd to a man of my humour, he would receive it in another fashion; the jollity and joy which proceeds from the temperament, is not easily troubled by things without; and certainly, that which makes the melancholick man complain in Love, would give me occasion to laugh; that which makes him to sigh, would induce me to make verses of gallantry; that which makes him weep, would quite cure me of my passion; and if I should pass nights without sleep, it would be, doubtless, to give Serenades; I should not rave in conversing, to weary others, and make them hate me; I should not entertain my Mistress with my despair; nor should I fill her imagination with sad thoughts, which putting her into a bad humour, might make her to use me ill afterwards. But contrari-

ly,

ly, I would talk to her still of all the delights of them that love one another; and whereas Love is alwayes represented in the midst of sports, laughters, and pleasures, I would indeavour to inspire her heart with joy, that so I might the more easily introduce love into it, to whom the painters do alwayes give a bed of flowers, without ever laying him on thornes. In fine, Madam, far from perswading my passion unto her by the langor of my face, I would shew her so much satisfaction in my eyes, as she might very well perceive that her dominion would be pleasing to me; and that I would not be like those people newly conquered, who by their melancholy makes one beleve that they are alwayes meditating some revolt. There are also two kindes of Lovers, who by the humours which predominate in them are made to doe strange things, the anxious, and the cholerick. And though the former are not so far eloigned from the melancholick, but that they have some conformitie together; nor the cholerick from that sparkling humor, and that fire which animates me; yet are they for all that differing in many things. The anxious is satisfied with nothing; the possession of felicitities, which he hath desired, molests him; he wishes for quite contrary things; he loves and hates all at a time; he hath a secret enemy within himself, that mingles bitterness with all his pleasures; he beleeveth when his Mistress shewes him favours, that she is too prodigall of them, or that she deceives him; in conclusion he is easily displeased; nothing can content him; and when the person whom he loves gives him the least cause of jealousy, it is enough for him to meditate on a murder. A man like me, in such a like occasion, would mock at his Mistress, and his Rivall; a melancholick man in *France* would fight very couragiously, but as for an anxious man, Steel, Iron, and poyson, would be the least armes that he would make use of. As for the cholerick, he would receive the rigors of his Mistress with transports of fury, so far forth as to offer affronts to her, to threaten her with all things; but as the cloudes, which form the tempests, are dissolved when thunder breakes forth, so this man of choler hath no sooner exhaled his fire by his cries, but he goes out of himself, and one onely look of the person beloved finding yet some impression of heat in his heart, doth therein easily kindle that again of love; Finally he is easily angered, and is as soon appeased. There are yet of another temperament, who are so patient, as they are almost insensible; and cold predominates so much in them, as if it arrives that love warms them a little, they are capable of enduring any thing: For they are so powerfully surmounted by laziness, that for fear of stirring they dare not change their Mistress, but suffer all things without complayning. You see then, Madam, that the diversity of the humours of the body contributes much to our apprehensions; and that one and the same thing is seen after a quite different manner. And if we will give credit to the Astrologers in this behalf, they will tell you also, that *Saturn* by his influence makes all the melancholicks act, as I have declared; that they, over whom *Jupiter* predominates, are of my humor; that *Mars* inflames the soules of those, whom he governess, with the fire of choler; and that the Moon inspires those, whom she commands, with a coldness, which makes them almost insensible. You will tell me it may be, Madam, that these Starres are so far distant from us, as it is hard to comprehend how they exercise an absolute power upon men; but if you consider that which they doe in the universall world, you will the more easily beleve that which they doe particularly in man: for in fine the diversitie of seasons is derived from them; and this successive change of heat and cold, of flowers and fruites, which are seen every year, is found also in our selves. We have our seasons as well as the year, and even as age changes our temperament, in changing our humours, we likewise change opinions. The second age of life, which is the first for love, seldom fayles in producing of violent passions, which are often followed by imprudence and indiscretion. As for the third, the passions therein are not so lively, but withall they are better governed: One conceales the pictures which he hath of his Mistress; One no longer shewes the bracelets of hair which she gives; One hath as much care of her conservation as of his pleasure; and it is in this age alone, where gallantry, a little reason, and a great deal of love, may

may sometimes be encountred all together. But for that which followes, and is called the age of Wisdom, Love doth in it appear so strange, so dreadfull, and so ridiculous, as I cannot find any thing more horrible than an amorous old man. For of all the apprehensions which this passion inspires him with, he hath none left him but jealousy: Liberality, Address, Gracefulness, Vivacity of Spirit, that fire which sparkles in the eyes of a Lover, Respect, Care, Cajolleries, Verses, Musick, Dancing, and an hundred other things, which are so dependent on Love, that if it be dispoiled of these ornaments, it almost ceases to be Love; all these things (I say) are no longer found save in his memory, and that too in a manner, which time and use hath rendred ridiculous. But instead of all that, he is covetous, uncomely, of a languishing spirit, dis-respectfull, careless, incapable of delivering a civility with any good grace, or of making Verses that have any life in them; for the Muses doe not use to favour old Lovers: And for the language of the Eyes, how should they make use of them to express their passion, when as ordinarily they are become so weak, or sunk so far into their heads with age, as they are hardly to be seen, neither can they distinctly see others. Finally, that Love which is painted so plump to us, so fair, so jolly, so amiable, so merry, so young, so vigorous, a torch in one hand, a bow and quiver on his shoulder, and a scarf over his eyes, should for them be painted, withered, lean, hideous, hoary, sad, and languishing, having neither bow, nor quiver, nor making other use of an extinguishd torch but to lean on it, nor of his scarf but to wipe his eyes. So that, Madam, this diversity, which is seen to arrive to one and the same person, according to the change of his humours, of his temperament, and of his age, doth demonstrate, that albeit there is but one reason to be followed, yet we doe oftentimes form many according to our fancy. Wherefore I doe not think I am upon a bad ground, in not amusing my self about so vain a search, as that of the true reason of all things, seeing it is so difficult to find; nor in following, as I doe, that which pleaseth me, and all that which seems amiable to me; neither in leaving that liberty to others, which I give unto my self.

After the Marquis had given over speaking, and left the company very much satisfied with his wit, *Justiniano*, who would not abandon reasons party, and who desired the Princess should think it was not out of capriciousness and fancy that he had veneration for her, answered the Marquis in this sort. You combat reason with so much force and address, as it cannot be easily beleevd that you doe not know her; and the same wit which you have made use of to overthrow her dominion, manifests sufficiently unto us that you are one of her subjects; and if at any time you quit her, it is only in this passion, from whence some, who are not acquainted with the nobleness of Love, would banish her. But for all that it is certain, that she finds a place every where; that she can be the Mistress of all men; that she can subdue all the passions, and all the griefs of the mind; make those of the body to be supported without impatience; withstand our temperament, and the influences of the Stars; and by her infinite force makes us vanquish our selves, by obliging us oftentimes to destroy our own pleasures.

To know this truth, we are but to consider, that the humours which predominate in us, the constellation of the Stars, and that change which time works in our temperament, do not change any thing but our inclinations, which certainly are caused by all these things: Howbeit that is not powerfull enough to delude reason, who no way depending either on the melancholy humour, or on the Stars, can also judge sovereignly of all the apprehensions wherewith she inspires us. She hath a seat more transcendent than our inclinations, which many times are found to be very low, and corrected by reason. All Antiquity would furnish us with examples of it, and the wisest have left us marks of owing all their vertue to their reason, which having made them prefer the study of Philosophy before their inclinations, hath kept them from being the most infamous amongst men. And truly, it were to deprive us of all the advantages which we have over beasts, if our onely in-



clinations should have the conduct of our lives; And to make it appear, that we have a destiny more noble than that same, we are but to observe, that the Creatures, which move not but by instinct, have one like unto it, and generally to all their kind. All Harts seek *dilectum* when they are hurt; all Birds of season seek for the Spring-time, and fly from the Winter without sayling; which the Lyons doe not, nor so many Birds that doe not shift Country. This instinct then is seen in all the creatures without ever failing, even as the race of the Sun, the course of the Rivers, and all other things which doe not depend of themselves, doe alwayes follow the first order that hath been given them, and that is so necessary to them, as they cannot fail. But as for man, it is not so with him; he is absolute Master of his thoughts, and of his actions; nothing forces him, nothing violent him, and he is so independent from all things, as he can even attempt upon his own life, as was often seen at such time as it was lawfull to prefer death before servitude. It cannot be said that this action, which destroyes Nature, is an effect of a naturall inclination; there must be then a more powerfull reason than our inclinations, seeing it is certain, that of all the interior apprehensions, which Nature gives us, there is none so strong, so predominant, nor so universall, as the desire of life. In the mean time, since there have been men found able to vanquish it by reason, it may be consequently beleeved, that there are a great number of others, who can force their inclinations, and judge soundly of all; and who, without considering that which pleaseth them, consider only that which ought to please them. For in conclusion, our inclinations doe not move in us so powerfully as one may imagine they doe; they having nothing common, as I have already said, with this instinct of unreasonable creatures, which forceth a whole kind to doe one and the same thing, and which is instead of reason to them; since we see, that not onely all Nations, all Provinces, but all men in particular, are so different one from another, that many times there is more difference between an Italian and an Italian, than between the whole Nation, and that of the *Persians* and *Tartarians*. Our inclinations, if we will know them well, are no other than a secret motion, that carries us without violence to please our selves more with one thing than another; some love the Woods better than the Rivers; and others the Waters better than the Forrests, and that may be peradventure by temperament; they leave not both of them for all that, to know, manage their inclinations, the beauty of those things, and to delight in them, which doe not touch their minds the most sensibly. But to shew that it is somewhat too weak a thing to deceive reason, we are but to consider, that use alone forces our inclinations. Liberty, which is so naturall to all the World, is a good that is not desired by all the women of *Italy*; custome onely makes them find their houses large enough for their walks; and the place of their devotions far enough for their voyages. Judge then after this, whether reason can suffer her self to be vanquished by enemies which time doth surmount. As for the passions, I confess, that they are a little more difficult to be destroyed; but yet I maintain, that if reason will oppose them, she will appease them, and restore tranquillity to the mind that is most troubled. If reason then will act, it is certain, that, maugre the force of temperament, the influences of the Stars, and the ages of men, we shall see the melancholick sociable; the cholerick patient; the slothfull more active; a young Lover without inconstancie, and without indiscretion. I acknowledge nevertheless, that there is a kind of passion, or to express my self more clearly, a kind of Love, which reason cannot destroy. This impotence proceeds not, for all that, from her weakness; but it is because she never destroyes that which she hath established; and because this Love, whereof I speak, is rather an effect of our reason, than of our passion; and truly, when a Lover hath, in the person whom he loves, met with the beauty of the body, of the mind, and of the soul; when as Vertue is mingled with all these charms; when as his yowes are not rejected; when as he seares but the inconstancie of Fortune, and not that of his Mistress, it is impossible to say otherwise than that reason is the Mother of a passion, that doubtless cannot disorder the mind; that hath nothing base, nothing abject; that produces none but fair thoughts; that propounds

propounds no recompence unto it self; and that hath no other aym but to love eternally. If I were of a humour to contradict the opinions of others (answered the Marquis, laughing, and looking on *Justiniano*, and then on *Isabella*) I could shew you in few words, that at the very same instant when as you maintain, that one cannot be pre-occupied by his inclinations, you do not consult so much with your reason, as with your sense: But let it suffice for the finishing of our dispute, that I will make you see by my experience, that my inclinations shall be alwayes stronger than my reason; and not to stay longer in giving you an example of it, know, that though I am by the most perfect Princess in the World, and in the conversation of the worthiest persons of *Italy*, yet can I not chuse but be in some unquietness for that I doe not see the beautifull *Emilia*. The whole company could not forbear laughing at the freedome of the Marquis; and the Princess demanded of him, whether he had yet taught her Kinswoman the French liberty, by having perswaded her to receive his visits without her permission. Madam, said he unto her, if any one be faulty in this occasion, it can be none but I; who going out of your chamber for the reason which I have declared unto you, I took the boldness to make use of your name, to be received into that of *Emilia*, from whence I had not departed as yet if she had not driven me away. *Justiniano* seeing it grow late, wished the Count to bid the Princess good-night, for fear of incommodating her, by making her stay up too long; and though she made them a complement to assure them that they could never be troublesome unto her, yet they retired, and were conducted by the principall Officers of her House to their Lodgings. The Marquis would not abandon the Count, nor *Doria*, his dear *Justiniano*, who nevertheless could have been well contented to have been alone for the better entertaining of his thoughts, but civility and friendship kept him from it. When as they were abed, *Doria*, who could conceal nothing from his friend, acquainted him, that *Horatio*, of the illustrious House of *Cibo*, and the Count's Brother-in-Law, was in love with his Sister; and that he almost was so too with the Count's Sister-in-Law, although he had seen her but twice since his return: Howbeit that he had used his best indeavour to oppose this passion, in regard he knew very well that this Maid had an imperious humour, which would not be easily vanquished. *Justiniano* answered thereunto in such a manner, as perswaded *Doria* that he had a mind to sleep, but indeed it was because his mind was so taken up with his own, as he was not capable of hearkening to other mens affairs; so that *Doria* fearing to incommodate him, gave over talking, and slept more quietly than *Justiniano* did.

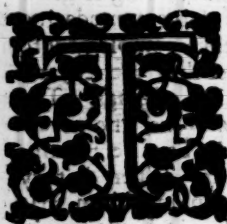
# IBRAHIM:

OR THE

## ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

The second part.

*The second Book.*



He morning bringing joy and delight again to this fair Troop, the Princess would needs have the Count and the Marquis bestow that whole day too upon her, and to pass it away the more agreeably she led them to *Monton*, a little Town, some mile from *Monaco*, where the Princes of her House had built a magnificent Pavillion, which she desired to shew unto the Marquis. *Emilia* finding her self better that night, made one also of the company, so that the Marquis was in the best humour of the World. And whereas the Princess observed that his respects were not dis pleasing to her kinswoman, she said to the Marquis, for to oblige him to talk, that whereas love ought to be without supercherie as well as war, he having not as yet declared himself to be *Emilia's*, she might by his observance and services be induced to believe that he was capable of a solid affection, and so engage her further than was fitting. *Emilia* blushed at this discourse, and the Marquis without giving her leave to speak, assured the Princess, that he should not long conceal himself, and that the Count could confirm this truth unto her. Indeed, said the Count, he hath not used to keep himself from being known, and if he would take the paines to recount unto you the first adventure that befell him at *Genova*, his address would appear to the beautifull *Emilia*, and the relation no doubt would give your Excellencie much content. Withall it will be better walking towards the evening, than in the midst of the day, and you cannot pass it away better. The Princess, who was perswaded, that the Marquis his adventures could not chuse but be very pleasant, intreated him thereunto with a great deal of civilitie; he excuses himself a while, but in the end she conjures him to it in the name of his last Mistress; It is she indeed, answered he; that is most powerfull in my heart, and that makes me to obey. The Princess conducted them then into a Cabinet, that was open on four sides, and whereof all the walles were of cristall glasse from the top to the bottom, that so the prospect might be the more free. After they were set down there on seates of ebony, covered with carnation and silver tinsell, the Marquis began his History in this sort.

### *The History of the feigned Astrologer.*

**B**Efore I begin the relation which I am going to make, remember, Madam, though I speak your language as if I were an Italian, that I am for all that a French-man, that is to say, an enemy of the coldness, and reservedness of your Nation;



Nation; That it is I who have reconciled vertue and galanterie at *Genova*; who have declared my self the protector of the liberty of you Ladies; and who in conclusion have by my care and address deserved amongst them the glorious title of their Deliverer. I tell you all these things, that you may not think it strange, if in the sequel of this discourse you understand some adventures, where the civility of this side the mountaines is not regularly observed. I know, answered the Princess, all that you have done for the publique libertie; the Count hath already acquainted me, that the galanterie, which is seen now at *Genova*, is an effect of yours; and that in the end you have been so powerfull in perswading the vertue of women, as there is scarce any brother or husband that is longer jealous. I am not sorry, replied the Marquis, that so worthy a man hath drawn you my picture, for though I doubt not but that he hath somewhat flattered me, yet you will not chuse but know me. In the mean time since I must satisfie your curiosity, it is necessary that I give you to understand, how assoon as I was arrived at *Genova*, with a design to stay there so long as my humor should find wherewithall to entertain it self, I observed, that near to the lodging where I lay, there was a maid, who seemed beautifull enough unto me, as indeed it must be acknowledged, that *Livia* hath something, that is very bewitching, in the air of her face, especially for a man that is not melancholick; and that she hath a kind of I know not what cast with her eyes, which perswaded me she would not be very cruell. If I were known more particularly of you than I am, I would not tell you, Madam, that I loved *Livia*, since it would be enough to make you comprehend it, that I say to you she seemed fair unto me. In fine, she had no sooner made an impression in my heart, but I sought the meanes to touch hers. And although it be my custom to explain my self clearly in matter of love, and never to leave her, whom I serve, to devine of my passion, yet in regard I durst not yet publish my precepts openly, it is true that I continued a whole week together in using all the fantastick tricks of a Lover of this Country. I passed twenty times a day before her dore; I followed her in the streets; I accompanied her in her devotions; I saluted her with respect; I beheld her a far off with languishing eyes; I went every evening to make a noyse under her windowes with a Gittern; and according to the fashion I imployed the very address of my horse to let her see mine, in making him curvet an hundred times before her lodging; In fine, I omitted none of those fooleries, which are introduced amongst you. But whereas I advanced my design very little by so long a way, and perceived apprehensions of curiosity in *Livia*, but none at all of love (at leastwise as I could judge by the manner of her beholding me) I began to accule her of stupiditie, or ingratitude, and to think of a retreat. But coming suddenly again out of this error, I resolved not to quit her, untill I had served her some time after the fashion of *France*; or at least used the meanes so to doe. For, said I, am not I unjust in desiring she should love me, because I pass oftentimes thorough a street where I doe lodge as well as she? In desiring that she should be obliged unto me, because I take pleasure in looking on her for that she is fair? In desiring too that she should recompence me, because I hinder her from sleeping some nights, with a bad harmony? And lastly, would I have her judge of my wit and love, by the address of my horse? No, said I, I must write to her, I must talk with her, I must make verses for her, I must entertain her with her beauty and my love, and after I have shewed her all the gallanterie of our Nation, if she be still rebellious to my desires, let me quit her without much pain, and comfort my self easily enough after it. And the better to bring my purpose to pass, I had recourse to the address of a servant of mine that waites on me in my chamber, who certainly is incomparable for intricate businesse. After I had propounded unto him that which I desired, he assured me that within few dayes he would furnish me at the least with meanes to write unto *Livia*, as indeed he failed not to doe. For it had fallen out that *Livia* had a maid, which served her, called *Lucretia*, to whom *la Roche* (for so is my Agent in love named) had taken a liking, and she, through a sympathy of humours, as I learned afterwards, had not beheld him with indifference. It was then by this way that I wrote to *Livia*, for a ster that *la Roche* had under-  
derstood

understood my intentions he had redoubled his addressees to *Lucretia*, and for the advancing of my affaires, I had given him wherewithall to be liberall; so that he got this wench to promise that she would shew my letters, and some verses, wherein I had painted forth my love, to her Mistress; but though I had imployed all my skill therein, yet could I not obtain any answer. *Lucretia* indeed told *la Roche*, that *Livia* esteemed very much of me, that my wit pleased her, that my conversation was agreeable unto her (for I had talked with her twice at the window by the meanes of *Lucretia*) but that after all I was not to pretend to her affection. I confesse that for this time her resistance provoked me more than her beauty. Behold me then resolved to know from whence the impossibility of my enterprise proceeded; I call *la Roche* to my succor, and command him to repair to *Lucretia*, and to imploy all his cunning to discover *Liviaes* true thoughts. He presses her, he intreats her, he threatens to abandon her, and yet for all that she acquaints him with no part of that he desires to understand. At first she tells him, that she knowes nothing; afterwards, that she is obliged to be faithfull to her Mistress; then, that it is a thing past remedy; and last of all, without any thought of telling him that which he required, she saies that *Livia* is engaged in an affection to another, whom she will not name. This newes put me into choler, and made me resolve once more to tempt the fidelitie of *Lucretia*; to which effect I gave *la Roche* a diamond, therewith to oblige this wench to meet him one evening, and discover unto him the whole truth of *Liviaes* history. My liberalitie failed not to perswade her better than his eloquence, she meetes him in a place far enough out of the way to be overheard of any but my self, who understood what she said without her perceiving it; and there, after she had suffered her self to be a little intreated, she spake in this sort unto him. I know very well that I commit a strange infidelitie against my Mistress, but since it is to conserve you, and that you promise me you will not speak of it, I hope I shall not repent me. I will tell you then, continued she, that about three dayes agoe, when as my Mistress was making an end of dressing her, and that she was doing something about her head, where she had no need of me, she observed that I looked out at the window with a great deal of attention, and that I had also pulled up the grate. And whereas she asked of me what it was I looked at so earnestly, I answered her boldly, that it was at the worthiest man of all her lovers; meaning your Master, who then passed along thorough the street. I fear me, replied she sighing, that you and I are not of the same opinion; howbeit, *Lucretia*, who is he that you do treat so advantageously to the prejudice of others? It is, said I being become more hardy, the French Marquis, who verily hath an ayre, and a countenance, which none of the rest have. And for my part, I confesse unto you, that I should be more sensible for a man of his Nation, than of ours. I cannot tell, *Lucretia*, answered she, whether I should have been as sensibly touched as thee, if he of whom thou speakest had found my heart without engagement, but this I can tell, my dear girl, that it is not in an estate to receive any new impression, for the truth is, I am in love. Are you in love, said I mightily surprized? I, said she, I am in love, and that so exceedingly, as I am resolved to tell him so much this day, who is the cause of my passion; and who after my ill intreating of him for two yeares together, is resolved to return unto *Naples*, of whence he is, and never to come to *Genova* again. But I doe not purpose to be so vertuous, as to be thereby infortunate all the rest of my life, wherefore, my dear *Lucretia*, thou must this night, when as he is to come and take his leave of me, bring him into the garden at such time as my father is asleep, where I will be ready to receive him; for I cannot endure he should goe from me. He is of a condition equall to mine, so that the greatest harm can arrive to me by it, is to marry him whether my father will or no, who peradventure will make some difficulty of it, because he is not so rich as I; howsoever, *Lucretia*, doe as I have bid thee, and be assured that I will make thee happy, if thou prove faithfull to me. As I was preparing to answer, her father came into the chamb'sr. In the mean time night arrived, and whereas I could doe no other but obey her, I brought in *Hortensio* the *Neapolitan*, who was received by *Livia* with a great deal of joy; and for a conclusion of this

this interview, it fell out, that after he was come to complain of her rigour, and to take his last farewell of her, he returned more beloved than he loved. But that the World might not think it strange that he went not away after he had taken his leave of his friends, they concluded that he should make a shew of departing, but that indeed he should remain concealed in *Leander's* house, where at this present he is, and that in the mean time he should come every night into the garden to her by my means; and if it should happen at any time that she should not meet him there, then he should be advertised thereof, by not seeing a handkercher hanging at the Window, which peradventure you marked there to day, and which makes me now to leave you in haste, for that the hour wherein *Hortensio* ought to come, is at hand, being sorry that I have lost so much time in speaking of other folks affaires, and omitted our own; howsoever, be faithfull to me, and so be gone. I confess, Madam, that this Wenches relation moved me more than ever anything of that nature had done; for ordinarily, in that which concerns Love, I measure the esteem which I make of Ladies, according to that which they make of me; and if I chance to encounter one who receives not my services, at least with civility, I presently judge her unworthy of my chöler, and love, and within a quarter of an hour after I never think of her more. But in this encounter it fell not out so, for still I conserved a little affection, and a great deal of desire to be revenged. But before I would resolve on any thing, I was willing to be yet better informed of the matter, and to understand certainly whether *Hortensio* lay concealed at *Leander's*. It was my good hap, that *Valerio*, whom questionless you know, and that hath a wit very proper to imbroyl an intricate affair, proved to be a dear confident of his. And whereas we had contracted a great friendship together at my being at Rome, I went and sought him out, and having found him, I soon obtained of him what I desired. He told me, that not above an hour before he parted from *Leander*, how it was true that *Hortensio* lay concealed in his House; by reason of an amorous adventure wherewith he was very much troubled; because he was inamoured of a neipce of *Cimbies*, named *Aurelia*, with whom *Hortensio* had had a particular commerce for a good while together: How he was in good hope, *Hortensio* going away, and having no further pretension there, that he might have declared his love to *Aurelia*, but how far from that, *Hortensio*, not onely remained hid in his house, but had also obliged him to carry a letter to this Gentlewoman, to crave her pardon for his parting away without bidding her farewell, excusing himself upon this; that his grief for leaving her had kept him from doing so. He told me likewise, that *Aurelia* had received *Hortensio's* letter with much testimony of affection; that *Leander* had been greatly tempted to discover unto her how she was betrayed, and to make his profit of his friends deceit; but that in conclusion friendship had prevailed with him above love. That being returned to *Hortensio*, he had very much prest him to let him know why he was unfaithfull to *Aurelia*? how he had freely answered thereunto, that his inclination was to *Livia*; how for the other, he served her out of acknowledgement, it being most certain that he was very much obliged unto her. How after all this he had demanded of him, whether a friend of his should disoblige him in thinking of her, since he loved her but for consideration? How *Hortensio* was nettled with this discourse, and had testified unto him that he would not endure it. Behold, Madam, the estate of things; *Livia* loved *Hortensio*, and was beloved of him; I loved *Livia*, and was ill intreated of her; *Aurelia* loved *Hortensio*, and was betrayed by him; *Leander* loved *Aurelia*, not daring to discover it unto her, and was an instrument of his friends treason; *Valerio* was *Leander's* confident, and betrayed him for my sake; *Lucretia* for being faithfull to *La Roche*, was unfaithfull to her Mistress; in fine, we all of us almost did that which we ought not to have done. The business standing in these termes, I resolved to speak once more with *Livia*; and whereas it is most certain, that when one comes to know that the person beloved accords to another favours which she refuseth to him, he changeth respect



speet into boldness, and no longer demands her affection as a grace, but as a debt. I went and attended *Livia* some three or four steps from her door, with a mind that retained little of the French civility. At her first appearing, followed onely by *Lucretia*, I advanced directly unto her, and presenting her my hand with a contemning negligence, I said unto her in somewhat a bitter manner: It may be, fairest *Livia*, that being unable to merit any thing of you as a Lover, yet in the quality of a Gentleman-Usher I may be permitted to help to lead you. I know not, answered she, with a serious countenance, what renders you so bold as to interrupt me in my way; but I know very well, that if you have not a purpose to displease me, and did know my humour, you would not be so inconsiderate as to dare to speak to me with so much liberty; for I make profession of a modesty, which cannot suffer such things, and which you might very well understand by the coldness wherewith I have always treated you. I confess that the discourse nettled me; I could not endure this severe virtue in a person that had none but for me; and that reproching me with her rigour, seemed as though she would make me serve for the triumph of her Lover. I retained her then by the arm, as she was offering to goe away, and in a quipping and jeering manner, beholding her with a malicious smile, I said unto her; it is true, *Livia*, that I have been rash and inconsiderate in daring to lift up my eyes towards a person of so extraordinary a virtue, as cannot suffer one to adore her; as cannot endure one should speak to her of Love; as loves even darkness, and hates the light, because it might discover that which she would conceal from most men. Indeed, answered she, I hate the Sun, because by it I see you. It may be, said I unto her with the same countenance, and looking justly on her, that you do not hate the Moon so much towards mid-night. Whereupon she strove mightily to get away, but in regard I held one corner of her vail, she durst resist no further, perceiving plainly that I no longer respected her. Nay, said I unto her, as she would have gone from me, you must hear me whether you will or no, for since it is a sute of Love, it is but just that you should hear me, as well as you have heard my Rivall; and that to be well informed of the justice of our cause, you give him audience in the night, and me in the day; for I doe not desire that in consideration of me an handkercher should be hung in the Window; that *Lucretia* should descend into the garden; that a door which seems to be shut, should be left open; nor that I should be a gallant, who seems to be absent, and yet failes not to be at the assignation which is given him. Verily *Livia's* astonishment made me almost repent for what I had spoken, but indeed I could not contain my resentment. The first thing that *Livia* said after this discourse, was; Ah *Lucretia*, you have betrayed me! But this Wench, who in this occasion appeared to me to be the most dextrous and daring that ever was, answered her with an extreme precipitation; I Madam! would to Heaven you were not more betrayed, in acknowledging that which I never revealed. In the mean time, *la Roche*, who had heard all that I said, was much vexed at my engaging *Lucretia* by my discourse; so that approaching to me, he said softly to me in French, O Sir, what have you done? I doe not know, said I stepping a little back, but, if thou canst, re-accommodate this disorder. During this, *Lucretia* swore false oaths to her Mistress for the clearing of her innocency; and the poor *Livia* was so surprised, as she could resolve of nothing; in fine, we were all four exceedingly perplexed; I was vexed for having spoken so lavishly; *Lucretia* was much troubled in justifying her self; my Agent knew not what to doe, either for *Lucretia*, or for me; and *Livia* could think of nothing that would satisfie her: She would fain have railed on me, but she saw that I was too much acquainted with her affairs to be incensed more; She could have been contented never to have seen me again, but she feared lest parting away without saying any thing unto me, I should publish that which I knew. At last, she would vvolingly have recalled me, for I was stept a little from her, and stood musing with my self, but her heart would not consent that she should use any civility to me after that which I had said unto her. Behold, Madam, the estate wherein we stood, when as *la Roche*, the most daring fellow that

is, approached unto *Livia*, and said unto her for the justification of *Lucretia*, with a seeming sincerity: I know very well, Lady, that I do put my self in danger of being turned away by my Master, in discovering a thing unto you, which he greatly labours to conceal, but the condition wherein you are, and the innocency of *Lucretia*, forces me to open it unto you. Know then, continued he, that whatsoever he hath said unto you is not the effect of any bodies treason, but of Astrology, which he understands perfectly. It is a science wherein he is become so expert, that if I should recount unto you the mervailles, which I have heard him tell, you would be mightily surpris'd with it. And whereas he is passionately in love with you, seeing you very rigorous to him, he hath spent every night for these eight dayes in contemplating the Starres, and turning over his books, to discover the cause thereof, and without doubt it was by this meanes that he is come to know that which he hath said unto you: he hath shewed me, continued he, the garden, where you were, in a great glasse, though I would not understand what you said. Truly the invention of this had amazed me; it was in vain for me to make signes unto him to hold his peace; the more unquietness that I shewed, the more he continued speaking; and I may say that I was never in greater pain, for I heard all that he said. But whereas I saw that he went confounding things, and that from an Astrologer he would quickly make me pass for a Magician, in talking of an enchanted glasse, I resolv'd to help forward this trick, that so I might make him hold his tongue, wherefore I called him somewhat rudely, and having commanded him to withdraw, I came to *Livia* with civilitie enough, just as *Lucretia* was saying to her boldly, how she had already heard it assured indeed, that I dealt with telling of fortunes. And having saluted her for the better colouring of the business, I seem'd to be very angry with *la Roches* imprudence, in discovering to her a thing, which I would not have known, in regard of the brutishness of the people, who imagine that one cannot observe the Starres, without having commerce with the Devill; and know not how to put a difference between Astrologie and enchantments. But since the fault was done, I desired her to oblige me to her discretion, by not publishing that which had been told her. I said unto her also, that parting from the Court of France, I had pass'd through *Provence*, where hapning to be lodged near to a great *Nesfradamus*, so admirable in this science, as it was not known whether he should be tearmed a Prophet, or an Astrologer, I had been so happy, as to touch his inclination, and to gain his friendship even to the point to teach me a part of the excellent things he knew, either for Astrologie, Physiognomy, or Chiromancie. In fine, I spake to her with so much art, as she beleev'd me; and beleev'd too that *Lucretia* was innocent, who on her side play'd her part so well, as she made me ashamed. She clapt her hands together, she accus'd her Mistress for having accus'd her; and the poor *Livia* was almost ready to make excuses unto her, so well was she perswaded. And the cause why a discourse of this kind did not surpris'e her so much as another, and was more credible with her, was, for that she had all her lifetime heard her Father talk of this science, who just as we were there came out of his house; alsoon as I saw him I would have been gone, but *Livia* stay'd me, and said to me with a great deal of spirit, I know too well what respect a man of your condition doth owe to one of my sex, to be affray'd you should be indiscreet; and since it is true, that you doe know the force of destiny, and the influences of the Starres, you may well know by them, that I cannot eschue what they have resolv'd. In the mean time the old man, who was not accustomed to see his daughter in such a conversation, drew near, and after he had but coldly saluted me, demand'd of her what she did there? but I was strangely amazed, when as she answered him, that meeting not long before with a friend of hers, whom she loved very well, she understood by her that I was one of the greatest Astrologers in the world; and that being curious to know whether she should be maried or no, she had desired my acquaintance, which the same friend had procur'd her. I perceiv'd that *Livia* had spoken in this manner, notwithstanding the request that I had made unto her, to the end she might know whether I had said the truth; so that I resolv'd to stand to it. But I found my

self much perplexed, when as this old man said to her in a grave tone, that many men had imployed all their lives in this study, and had taken upon them the name of Astrologers, but that few had come to the point of deserving it. Then turning him to me with a more open countenance, he said unto me, that if I were such a one as his daughter told him, he would serve me with all his heart; that he was very much affected to men of merit, and to the lovers of sciences, whereof the vulgar were ignorant; and that in conclusion, if he should tell me truth, he must confess that in times past he had given himself to judiciary Astrology; but that the trouble of domestick affaires had kept him from excelling therein; howbeit that he still knew enough to be able to discourse a little with me of it, if I would come and visit him at his house, whereof he shewed me the door. I leave you to judge, Madam, in what a case a man might be, that knew not so much as the names of the Signes and Planets; I made use of confidence then in the encounter, and told him that I would not fail to come and take out a lesson with him, and assured him that he should have a scholler of me, which would receive his instructions with a great deal of joy. *Leonardo* (so is this man called) took this true speech for a modest civility; and said unto me again, that he should be glad to hear me tell him something of his fortune; and to perswade me that he was knowing he said to me also, that he had a great desire I should goe and dispute with him a little in his Cabinet, that he might know whether the Planets (except *Mars* and *Saturn*) whose influences be the happiest, are not they whose pararells are the greatest. Now for me, that should have been healed of a quartan ague with a word less terrible than this, I saw it was time to retire, which I did after I had told him again that I would very shortly come home to him and shew him my ignorance. He would have obliged me to enter presently with him, but I excused my self dextrously from it, and so departed, after I had saluted *Livia* civilly enough, and beheld *Ancretia* with a sign, that testified unto her how I was sorry I had given her so much unquietness in so little a time. I was not four steps from them but regarding this adventure with a more quiet eye, I found it so pleasant, that I had no other passion but to make it last as long as I could: And this manner of revenging my self appeared so sweet unto me, as I thanked *la Roche* above an hundred times for finding out this invention, seeing it had succeeded so well. Now entring into my lodging I met with *Valerio*, unto whom I gave an account of all that hapned unto me, wherewith he was so surpris'd and rayish'd, as he could not believe that which I told him, so much did he fear that it was not true. He would not rely upon my word, but would have the testimony of my Agent too; and though I was offended at it, yet was he above an hower doubting whether it were a jest, or a truth, which I told him. But in the end, perceiving I spoke seriously he believed me, and this trick so pleased his humor, and touched his inclination so mightily, that he loved me a great deal the more for it. It was advis'd then, since the father had had a part in the deceite, and that the business might be divulg'd, that it was better to have me pass for an Astrologer than for an impostor, and to sow the bruite of it about the Town, before *Leonardo* should have leisure to discover that he had been gull'd: But I oppos'd this advise a good while; for, said I, no sooner shall I be considered as a Contemplator of the Starres, but they will come and ask me an hundred questions, whereunto I should not know what to answer, so that I cannot tell how to turn my self in this affair. What you shall answer, said my Agent? You shall answer, continued he, just as others doe; sometimes I, sometimes no, be it favourably or fatally, and for the rest, much good may it do them; for in conclusion, an Astrologer never warrants any thing. *Valerio* fell a laughing at this discourse, and told me likewise for the upholding of this opinion, that this science being so difficult as it was, it might be that chance would make me prophecy sooner, than all Astrologicall rules and speculations; That I was but to speak alwaies obscurely; never to affirm any thing with certainty; to consider a little the quality and age of persons; to speak seldom of the past, or the present, without good information thereof; and of the future to discourse alwaies by Emblemes, and Enigmes, and commonly to foretell more good fortune,



fortune than bad. In the mean time *la Roche* went and got me a book of Centturies for the forming of my stile, an Almanack to teach me the names of the Signs and Planets, and another Book which treated confusedly of the manner of making of Horoscopes, of the Sphere, and of Chiromancie. Behold me then well entred into the Zodiack, whilst *Valerio* and my Agent went as soon as we had dined to begin the publishing of the Wonders of my Science. I set my self then with a great application of my mind to the comprehending of some part of this mysterious Doctrine; but at length I judged that it would be enough in this occasion, without imploying either the mind or the judgment, to make it a labour of the memory; so that before *Valerio* was returned, I could already tell that the Stars have three sorts of rising and setting, called *Heliack*, *Cosmick*, *Acronick*; I could tell also that there are ten circles in the Sphere, six great, and four little; that the great are the Equinoctiall, the Zodiack, the Meridian, the Horizon, and the two Colures; and the little ones, which cut it unequally, are the two Tropicks of *Cancer* and *Capricorne*, and the two Polarie Circles, the Artick and the Antartick. I knew the Septentrionall and Boreall Bear, the Zenith, the Hemisphere, the Colure of the Equinoctials; the five Zones, the Torrid, the Cold, and the Temperate; I could say too, that *Saturn* regarding *Hecate* with a trine Aspect, and the tail of the Dragon folding it self about the Scorpion, prognosticate no good; That *Venus* receiving the opposite radiations of *Jupiter*, and *Mars* and *Venus* of the Moon, doe preface nothing but disorders: In fine, I knew the Parallels, the Ecliptick, the Climats, the point Verticall, the Crab, the Bull, the Ram, the Lion, and all those illustrious animals, which command over men so far off. So that *Valerio* comming in, I began to make a flourish, and to tell him, that *Mars* and *Saturn* being diametrically opposite to *Diana*, but without giving me leave to make an end, he told me that he had such pleasant things to acquaint me with, as he must needs relate them to me presently for fear of forgetting them. And when as I had given him all the attention he could desire, it was a good while before he could speak, he was so taken up with laughter. And truly I proved plainly in this occasion, that this is many times a contagious disease; for though I knew not what had arrived unto him, yet could I not forbear laughing almost as much as he, so ready I am to comply with my friends. But at last, after he had above twenty times interrupted his relation, he recounted unto me, that the first man which he had taken in his trap, was *Leander*, whom he had encountred a little from thence when he went forth; that as soon as he had perceived him, he had made as though he had not seen him, and that passing by him with his eyes on the ground, he said somewhat loud, I did never think that a man could have wrought such Prodigies; That thereupon *Leander* had stayed him, and asked him what those marvails were which he had seen? That he seeming to be much surpris'd with his over-hearing him, had answered, I can scarce tell, so much am I still transported with astonishment and admiration at that which I have seen; That afterwards *Leander* had prest him very much to tell him what it was; and whereas he would have been sorry not to have satisfied his curiosity, he had consented thereunto, but that first he had used all the ceremonies of a man that would deliver a great secret; that he had looked all about to see whether they might be over-heard; that he had made him swear that he should not speak of it again to any body, unless it were to his most speciall friends; That in fine he had omitted nothing of whatsoever might make him hearken with attention, and render him credulous. And that after all these preparations, he had said to *Leander*, would you believe that this French Marquis, who is so much my friend, and with whom I am so often, could in my presence doe the most miraculous things that ever you heard speak of, or can possibly imagine? Now I beseech you, said *Leander* unto him, hold me no longer in suspence; know then, answered *Valerio*, since you will needs know it, that yonder man, whom you see so joviall and so gallant, is the greatest Astrologer that ever was, or ever will be; if so be there be no enchantment in that which I have seen, as I much sus-

pect. He declared himself to me this morning (continued he) and told me such particulars of my life, as none but my self could know; and this he found out almost in an instant, by drawing some figures upon a paper, and looking on my hand, for he is also both a Palmister and a Physiognomist. Is it not the French Marquis (said *Leander*, interrupting him) otherwise the Marquis of *Touraine*, that lodges here hard by? The very same, answered *Valerio*; I had never the honour, said *Leander*, to talk with him above once or twice, but I perceived then by his countenance and his discourse that he was, I will not say, an Astrologer, but at leastwise a man that was addicted to extraordinary sciences; howbeit I did not believe that it was at that point you speak of. You will then be far more surprised yet, replied *Valerio*, if I carry you along with me one day, when he hath promised to let me see a woman that lives at *Rome*, and whom I loved at such time as I was there. And this too is one of the least things he can doe; for if I shall tell you the truth, I have seen and heard a picture speak, and that is it which causes the confusion wherein you see me. *Leander* was so surprised, as *Valerio* told me that he changed colour at it, and earnestly intreated him to bring him acquainted with me, which he promised to doe, upon condition that he should not publish what I had told him, for fear I might be suspected to be a Magician; and that at length, after many other discourses on this subject, they parted very well satisfied one of another. And for a conclusion, *Valerio* said unto me, this is the first fool I met withall; then he recounted to me how he went unto the Academy, where he had imparted to a great many the Wonders that I did; that to publish them the better, he had told them unto them in their ear, and had prayed them not to speak of it, or at leastwise not to name me; that going from thence he went and made a turn about the Market-place, where he had met with a man, who recounted unto him part of the things that he had told in secret to the Academy, as one that was verily perswaded of it; which had so astonished him, as to keep his countenance he was faine to enter into a Tennis-court, where he had found another man, whom he knew not, that was talking very earnestly to five or six persons, which hearkened to him very attentively, and assuring them that I was the greatest Astrologer of this Age; and that he had seen me doe an hundred things, which he recited unto them. That whereas he could not forbear laughing, he had set himself merrily to contradict him, but that this man without going about to seek for reasons to convince him, had told him roundly, that he spake in that manner, because he did not know me, but that he spake upon certainty, for that I was one of his best friends, it being not an hour since he parted from me; so that after he had recounted all these things unto me, said *Valerio*, despairing of making a better encounter than that of this man, I came away to find you out, so satisfied with my lye, as if it should alwayes succeed so luckily, I would make a vow never to speak truth again. After we had laughed well at this adventure, and rightly admired the fantasticalness of the World, which loves to believe, or at least to publish bad newes, and prodigies, we saw my Agent return, whose voyage had had a quite other success. He had met but with few to publish that which he desired should be known, so that being mad for having done so little for a man of his humor and address, he had resolved not to come back till some good adventure befell him. He had sought then in vain for some one to deceive, when as a Maid, named *Camilla*, who served *Aurelia*, said to him in passing close by him at such time as one could scarce see, follow me. It is sufficient to say, that this Lad was brought up in my service, to make one be assured that he followed her foot by foot, for fear of losing the sight of her. This Wench led him into a by-lane, where few folks came, for it was almost nothing but garden walls; When they were arrived there, *Camilla* told him, that a person very considerable, both for her merit, and her beauty, attended a speciall service from me; that the reputation which I had of being the civillest of men, made her hope that I would not refuse her; and that if I would do her this grace, I should not fail then to be at a little garden door, which she shewed him in the same lane; and to oblige him to trust in her

her words she gave him a note which her Mistress had written unto me. My Agent assured her, that I placed my greatest glory in doing service to Ladies; but whereas she pressed her to tell him what it was that *Aurelia* desired of me (for though it was almost dark, yet knew he *Camilla*, whom he had often seen with her Mistress) she said to him, that if I were such a one as I was reported to be, I could not be ignorant, as he was, and therefore that might suffice for the present. *La Roche* judged rightly then, that there was somewhat of the Astrologer in this adventure, so that to help on the matter; you have reason unknown fair one, said he unto her, to think that *Aurelia's* secret will be none to my Master, for if he pleases he knows that which now we doe. Alas! said the wench again, how affraid am I of his acquaintance, and how do I wish that he may never think of me. There is nothing to be feared, said *la Roche* unto her, when as he knowes your adventures, for he is as discreet as he is knowing. But at last after a reasonable long communication, where *Camilla* still assured, that she would by no means serve such a Master, she told me, that I was not to fail, if it were possible, in being at that garden door the same night when as the Moon was down; or if I could not be there accordingly, that then I would be there the next night at the same time; that she would be ready at that place to give me entrance, and her Mistress in the garden, where I should speak with her. I confess, when *la Roche* related this unto us that I could not chuse but take great pleasure in it, and much desire to read the note that was written to me. If I had as happy a memory as a *Romanes Heros*, I would recite it unto you without changing a syllable, but since I have it not, it shall suffice that I do tell you in general, how *Aurelia* intreated me with a great deal of civilitie and affection, that I would employ that marvelous science, which I exercised so nobly, in setting her mind at rest; that from me alone she expected succor for her unquietness, and that in fine, if I were a Frenchman (which according to her sence was to say civill) I would not refuse her. *Valerio* was so ravished with this encounter; my Agent was so glad of it; and at first dath I found it so pleasant, as we past away an hower very merrily. But when I perceived that *Valerio* would have me try this adventure, my pleasure diminished by the half: The more I opposed his will, the more he persisted in vanquishing mine; it was in vain for me to represent my ignorance unto him, the disorder that might arrive unto me by it, the perplexity wherein a man would find himself to be, when he must speak of that he does not know; for to all these objections he had wherewith to answer me. He in the first place laid it down to me for a ground, that to the end I might not be taken for an impostor by *Leonardo*, and to authorize the cheat which he had used to an hundred persons, in assuring them that I was a great Astrologer, it was necessary, that I should use two or three one after another; that otherwise I should lose the reputation which he had gained me; that if I refused to meet *Aurelia*, it was impossible but she should speak of it to some body, and so I should be cryed down, and out of abilitie to be revenged of *Livia* by this artifice; that I could not meet with a fairer occasion to make shew of my art with facilitie, in regard it required but the beguiling of a maide, who doubtless was well perswaded already of my science, since she had been so hardy as to intreat me to come and speak vvith her; that in fine, seeing *Aurelia* had been so vveak as to beleve things just as one vvould desire she should beleve them, it vvould questionless be very easie for me to satisfie her; And for a conclusion, said he unto me, she is young, she is fair, she vvill meet you in a garden, and in the night, judge novv after all this, vvwhether you are not to go thither. It is certain that this last reason moved me very much; and I felt then such a repugnancie in refusing a fair maide, as I made no longer question vvhat I should doe; vvherefore I prepared my self for it, and for the more security, *Valerio* and my Agent armed themselves to attend me at this garden door. As for my self I carried nothing but my svvord vvith me, for I could not fear that the universall adorer of vvomen, should be betrayed by a vvoman. But before I tell you vvhat arrived to me in this garden, I must recount unto you, Madam, that vvwhich vvvas the cause of this adventure; for vve vvvere made acquainted vvith it aftervvards; You remember, no doubt, hovv I told you, that *Leon-*



der vvvas the first vvhom *Valerio* had persvaded that I vvvas an Astrologer; and somevvhat more; and that *Leander* vvvas the same in vvwhose house *Hortensio* lay concealed. I remember all this, said the Princess, interrupting him, and to testifie it unto you, I remember that *Leander* loved *Aurelia*, and durst not tell her so much, because *Hortensio* had some commerce vvith her, although it vvvas *Livia* that possessed his heart, and that *Leander* play'd but an outvvvard part in being constrained to serve the imposture of his friend, and to carry *Hortensio's* letters to *Aurelia* as if he had been absent, though indeed he lay concealed in his house for to goe every night unto *Livia* in a garden. Since it is so, said the Marquis, I am then but to tell you, Madam, that after *Leander* had been powerfully persvaded of the wonders which *Valerio* had told him I could doe, he changed the resolution he had taken to stay till *Hortensio* had broken off with *Aurelia*, into that of disabusing her by a pretty subtil way, if she had had a true ground for it; and that I had been such a one as he beleevved me to be. And behold how he reasoned with himself; I am going, said he, to *Aurelia* for a letter which she is to give me to day for *Hortensio*, whom she beleeves to be at *Naples*; or on the way thither, she hath already shewed a great deal of grief for his absence; now if I can bring her to speak of that again, I will tell her what *Valerio* hath told me of the French Marquis; so that if she shall happen to be curious to see her absent Lover by the science of this man, she shall likewise see that he is not at *Naples*; that he is still at *Genova*; that he loves another, and by these meanes I shall destroy her affection to him, and it may be make my profit of this disorder. This resolution taken, he goes to *Aurelia*, who after she had given him her letter, sayled not to speak of the absence of her Friend, to ask of him whether he thought it would not be long ere he would return? Whither he had not taken this separation heavily? and whither he had not already a longing to see him again, though it were but lately since he went away? Yea so great a one, answered *Leander*, who would by no meanes lose so fair an occasion, as I am almost resolved to try the science of a great and excellent man, that is not far off. *Aurelia* straitway would needes know of him what he meant by that which he said, whereupou he recounted unto her all that *Valerio* had told him, and a great deal more; that I made the dead to speak, and those that were absent to return again, but in such a manner, that one saw the persons, whom one desired to see, as if they had been effectually in the place where they seemed to be; and that this was done without enchantment, and by natural causes, but hidden from most part of the world; that one must be very skilfull in the knowledge of ideas and simpathies for the comprehending of any part of these marvelous effects; but in fine, how he was certain, that what he said was true. *Aurelia* hearkned to this discourse with much attention; at first, she seemed to doubt of that which *Leander* told her, but it was doubtless to make her self the more assured of it. For after he had confirmed the matter unto her, as she desired it; and that he had told her my name, she demanded dexterously of him where I lay, and by what way one durst propound such things unto me, seeing I was a man of quality, and that made no publick profession thereof. He answered her, how it was to be done by request, and that if she desired any thing of me, he had a friend that was very intimate with me. She thanked him, and so civilly gave him to understand that she would be vvell contented vvith his departure. He vvvas no sooner gone, but she called *Camilla*, vvho vvvas the confident of her secrets (for she recounted all this to me aftervvards) and reported faithfully unto her all that *Leander* had told her. And for a conclusion, she shewed her that she vvvas absolutely resolved to speak vvith me, and to intreat me to let her see her dear *Hortensio*, of vvhom she had not taken her leave. They reasoned a vvwhile upon this subject, but at last love prevailed vvith her above good manners. *Camilla* told her Mistress, that she knevv a man by sight vvwhich served me; so that vvithout further delay she chose rather to vvrite to me, as I have declared unto you, and to make use of this vvench, than to accept of the offer vvwhich *Leander* had made her. In the mean time, the hover of assignation being come, I vvvent to the garden door; *Valerio* and my Agent stayed three or four paces of, till I entred, vvwhich vvvas not long first, for scarcely had I touched the door, vvhen as *Camilla*

*millà* came and opened it, with a light in her hand, and told me that her Mistress attended me in a Cabinet, which was at one corner of the Garden, whether she presently led me. It is very true, that when first I saw *Aurelia*, she seemed so fair unto me, though she were half covered with her vail, as little lacked but that I had spoken to her rather of the beauty of her eyes, than of the influences of the Stars. But she gave me no leisure to deliberate on my complement; for she spake first, and desired me to pardon her the boldness she had taken in putting me to the trouble to come to see her; she prayed me to consider, that since she had failed in the respect which she owed to her self, she might well fail in the civility which was due to me. I answered to this discourse with a great deal of submission; afterwards she spake to me of the reputation which I had for Astrology, of the things that she had been told of me, and how much she had desired to see me. I received these praises with a carelessness, respectfull enough for all that, which doubtless made her believe that I thought I well deserved it. And still to gain time I lengthened this discourse as much as possibly I could; but she, that came not thither to make complements, said with a low voice, as though she had been afraid to be overheard, though there was no body there but *Camilla*, that kept Sentinell at the Cabinet-dore; the Wonders which have been recounted to me of your Science, persuades me, that it would be easie for you, if you will, to spare me the labour to tell you that which I desire of you, since without question you know it already. It is certain that this discourse surpris'd me after a strange sort; and I believed, in the confusion wherein I was, that I should find nothing to answer her with; but at length, after a great contest with my self, it is for the same reason, said I, that your modesty ought not to keep you from speaking; for seeing it is a secret which I am not ignorant of, what you shall say of it ought not to add any thing to your confusion. It is true, said she, but I should be gladder to hear it from you, than to have it delivered by me; be not therefore so rigorous, and if it be possible, doe that which I desire without my telling it you. This obstinacy made me almost mad, and I vow to you, that the modesty of the severest Mistress that ever I had, troubled me not so much, as that of this Maid. And seeing this confusion still augmenting, I said unto her with the tone of a more serious voice; Fair *Aurelia*, I should be willing enough not to oblige you to the doing of a thing that seems unprofitable to you, if I had not a secret reason which constrains me thereunto; and since I must let you understand it, know, that by the force of my art, I can tell not onely that which you desire of me, but whatsoever hath arrived unto you, that which you think at this present, and that which shall befall you hereafter; but if by a plain and faithfull relation, you doe not shew the consent you bring to that which you would have me doe for you, it will be impossible for me to serve you; and beware, said I unto her, lifting up my voice, lest that which you call modesty, be not an effect of the doubt you have of my Science, in desiring by this essay to assure your self of it. There must be confidence in this mystery, continued I, for I doe not work onely by the ordinary wayes of Astrology, but I think I have gotten some extraordinary knowledges which go beyond them: And to testify it unto you, I will presently tell you, if you desire it, all the most secret thoughts of your heart, but after that look for nothing more from me. She stayed me then with a great deal of precipitation, and said to me almost trembling, seeing it is a tribute which I must render unto you, I am resolv'd for it; then she recounted unto me that which I knew already without enchantment, I mean, that she loved *Hortensio*; but she told me afterwards that which I knew not, namely, that she would have me shew her that Lover, whom she believed to be at *Naples*, but was still at *Genova*. This proposition put me into a strange disorder; I told her at first, that the matter was not easie; that it behoved her to have a great deal of courage to undertake it; that the apparition of Spirits, which were not at that time in any other but a fantastick body, did alwayes bring fear along with it; and that she should think well of that which she desired, before she undertook it. She answered me then, that nothing which resembled *Hortensio* could scare her. When

as I saw her obstinacy, and that I was reduced to that point, as I knew what to say the necessity wherein I was, rendred me ingenious, and I imagined a trick, which hath shewed by the event, that it was well conceived. I told her then with a more open countenance that her confidence pleased me; and that I was ravished to see a person of her Sex have a Spirit hardy enough for an enterprise which made the boldest to tremble. But to make it succeed, she was to write a note, according to the terms which I would dictate unto her, and let me carry it away to make my figures upon it, assuring her that I would tear it as soon as the mystery was finished; and that this amongst the Learned was called, the making of a covenant with the Ideas. She made a little difficulty at it, but having told her how I could do nothing without that, she consented thereunto; and by good hap there was a pen and ink in the Cabinet, and a Table-book, wherein we found a white leaf. She began then to write what I dictated unto her, which if I be not deceived was much after this manner.

*Although you goe in the night like an Angel of darknes, yet pass you with me for an Angel of light; wherefore I conjure you, O blessed Spirit, by Heaven, by Love, and by the Sympathies, to appear unto me before my window the night ensuing, as soon as the Moon shall be down, in the true form of Hortensio. And doe not doubt that so agreeable a vision shall fright me, for I assure you that it shall give me more pleasure than fear.*

Aurelia.

Whereas her mind was already pre-occupied with the opinion of my skill, these equivocating words, of an Angel of Light, of Darkness, of Conjuraton, of blessed Spirit, of Heaven, of Apparition, of Vision, and of Fear, failed not to confirm her in this belief. And then too I pronounced all those great words with so imperious a tone, as I perceived her to be terrified therewith. After this, I would needs see her hand also, and would have her fix her looks upon me; I demanded of her the hour and day of her birth, and made many other observations, which would be too long to recite. But at last, all these devices being over, I quitted *Aurelia*, after I had promised her that within three nights she should see her dear *Hortensio*, and so *Camilla* came to conduct me forth. In traversing the Garden I observed that *Camilla* hid her face with a great deal of care, for fear lest I should read the secret of her heart in her eyes; and when as I perceived it, I said to her, laughing for the making up of the Comedy, in vain, *Camilla* (for so had I heard *Aurelia* call her) doe you seek to hide your eyes from me, when as I plainly see your heart. Now I beseech you Sir, said this Wench unto me, mightily surpris'd, and that was naturally merry and joviall, if you know my secret, doe not tell it unto my Mistress, for then will the poor *Nastagio* be turned out of doors. I had such a mind to laugh at this simplicity of *Camilla*, as I got me out in haste, for fear I should burst out into laughter, or be stifled in the place; howbeit I told her in going forth that I would be discreet. I found *Valerio* in so great an impatience to know what I had done, as I could not make him resolve to stay till we came to our Lodging to recount it unto him, for we had not made three steps but we stood still, so that little lacked but we had past all the night in the streets; but at length we came thither, where I recited all this unto him. But the pleasure of it was, that I had been so accustomed to speak to *Aurelia* in a grave tone, as I delivered every thing unto him just as I had said it. And to make up the matter, there were some instances, where I was not very certain whether I were not indeed the same which I gave out myself to be. When as I shewed him *Aurelia's* Letter, he demanded of me what design I had in making her to write it? What design, said I, even to have it to fall into the hands of *Hortensio*, who believing that *Aurelia* knows he lies concealed at *Leanders* house, in regard she writes unto him, will not fail to be at the place which she hath assigned him by her letter, to see if he can justifie himself; and so will she learn that he is effectivly at *Genova*, all will break forth, *Liviaes* concealed



cealed pleasure will be destroyed, and I shall be revenged. And if it happens that she takes him for a phantasm, the reputation which you have given me will increase the more. *Valerio* acknowledged that this trick was well invented; and *la Roche* was mad because he had not imagined, or at least conjectured it, upon the sight of *Aurelia's* letter; but to comfort him for that he had contributed nothing to the adventure which I had incountr'd, I left him the care to cause the letter, which was directed unto *Hortensio*, to fall into his own hands. Whereupon he told me without further delay, that he would go and carry it to him instantly. And when as I demanded of him how he could pretend to obey me so readily? He told me how he had learned of *Lucretia*, that *Hortensio* was this night to go and see *Livia*; so that, said he unto us, it being yet not very late, it may well be that he is not already come forth: I know the garden door, and whereas he knows not me, I will go thither and wait for him, and deliver the letter unto his own hands, as from *Aurelia* whom I will name in accosting him. This advice seeming to be the best we could take, we thought of nothing else but of executing it; and for fear lest some mischance, which we could not foresee, might happen to my Agent, we followed him a far off in this expedition, which succeeded as happily, as the undertaker of it had fortold. For *Hortensio* retyring very late from *Livia*, we had had the leisure to attend for him almost an hour before he came forth. If the passion wherein I had been in for this maid, had been as strong still as it was the day before, I had past that time with a great deal of unquietness; and I should without doubt have rather given some marks of my resentment to my Rivall, than have caused a letter to be delivered unto him; but I never needed four and twenty howers to cure me of such a dis-ease. I felt then nothing more for *Livia*, but an extreme desire to trouble her pleasure; so that to arrive thereunto, I had as much patience, as was requisite for me to have in this incounter. We set our selves, *Valerio* and I, some dosen paces from the door, out of which *Hortensio* was to come, under the jetting-out portall of an house, that was built after the antique manner. As for *la Roche*, he approached nearer, yet not so far from us, but that we might hear all that he should say unto him. And whereas it was extreme dark, and that his way tyed him to pass by the place where we were, we conceived that we should hear, without being perceived, how he would receive this message. As indeed, he was no sooner come forth but I heard my Agent say unto him, that *Aurelia* having understood he was in *Genova*, had sent him with a letter unto him, which he delivered him; and that she earnestly desired him not to fail the assignation he had therein given him, for that she would receive no answer but from his own mouth; in regard whereof, continued *la Roche*, I may not stay to hear any thing you would say to me, for so am I enjoyned by *Aurelia*. *Hortensio* would have laid hold on him, but my Agent was not accustomed to let himself be taken, when he had no mind to it; *Hortensio* then was constrayned to be contented with that which had been said to him. We heard him stamp with his foot on the ground, clap his hands together, and say with a kind of voyce, which shewed both astonishment and grief; what devill hath discovered to *Aurelia* that I was here? It must without doubt be an effect of the secret passion of *Leander*, who hath hoped by ruining me with her to establish himself in my stead. Some three steps from thence he stood still, and whereas we saw that this adventure made him talk like a man besides himself, we resolved to follow him. This design was no sooner taken, but he began to go on and talk all at an instant. What said he, hath my friend betrayed me? however I must see *Aurelia*, to the end I may keep *Leander* from reaping the fruit of his cunning; and that this incensed maid may not revenge herself upon *Livia*. She loves me, and I do not doubt but I shall pacifie her easily enough. But it may be, said he again, that it is not *Aurelia's* letter; let us stay, till we can be cleared of it, before we resolve on any thing. Verily, this manner of discoursing by himself seemed pleasant enough, howbeit that which I found to be yet better was, that we perceived (for we followed him very close) how though the night was exceeding dark, and that we were in a very narrow street, where it was so obscure, as nothing could be discerned, yet had he broken up the seal of this let-

ter, opened it, and made as though he would have read it, at leastwise the noise which the paper made caused us to conjecture so. But the ill luck was, that in handling it in this sort he let it fall, and doubtless with the violence of his action he flung it a good way from him, without purposing so to do, for he sought for it a pretty while after. We understood this accident, both by the discourse which he held, and because he stood still. We got us up, *Valerio* and I, against the wall; but I confesse to you, that this adventure was not pleasing to me: I was so afraid that *Hortensio* would not seek as he should do for the letter, and so my design should fail, that I may say I was never in more inquietness. Me thought he went too far from it to find it; that he had forgot the place where he had let it fall; that peradventure it was near to me, though I did not perceive it; in fine, I was even willing to seek for it with him; and my imagination so troubled me, as I believed I saw it in twenty places, where certainly it was not. And when my mind was deceived in this manner, I was in a pain that cannot be expressed. For when as I thought that I saw it in a place, I understood by *Hortensio's* going that he went from it, which so maddened me, as I had like to have lost all patience. But at length, after he had sought up and down a great while for it; and that he had said an hundred things, which would have pleased a man that had no interest in the affair, I heard him upon a sudden say with much joy, at last I have got you again, and have not lost my labour: Whereupon he went presently away, and I retaining *Valerio*, who would have continued following him, told him, that if the like should befall me again, I should go wild; that this adventure was both too pleasing, and too offensive, for me to be once more exposed unto it; and that withall we had nothing else to do with him. We got us away then to our lodging, where we found my Agent, howbeit we went not to bed before we had laughed sufficiently at the accident of the letter, and at all that which *Hortensio* had said in seeking for it. In the mean time he was come to *Leanders* house, where after he had read the letter, which he knew to be written with her own hand, he was confirmed, as we understood after, in the design of seeing her. He believed, that all those words, of blessed Spirit, Angel of light, and darkness, which *Aurelia* had taken for markes of enchantment, were termes of galantry, that could not part from a spirit that was much incensed. He firmly resolved then to see her the night ensuing; and thereby to conserve her to himself, preserve the reputation of *Livia*, and destroy the designs of his friend, whom he was persuaded had betrayed him; for he could not conceive how *Aurelia* could come to know any thing of him other waies. But at length day came, which I past away with an impatience that holds me still; for though I had the same very day two very pleasant conversations with two men, whereof the one mockt at Astrology, to oblige me thereby to speak of it, and the other said that it was the excellentest of all Sciences, to carry me to the same thing, yet will I not speak thereof, for even as I am now talking, I am in hast to tell you, that as soon as the time of *Hortensio's* assignation approached, I went and put my self in ambuscado, with a resolution to see the end of my enchantment. Now it hapned, that the weather being extreme hot, *Aurelia* lay in a low room, whose grated windowes were upon the street, and where *Hortensio* had often talked with her. But, Madam, to give you the full pleasure of this adventure, I am to tell you, not onely that which I saw, and that which I heard, but that which past between *Aurelia* and *Camilla*, who recounted it afterwards unto us. As soon as *Aurelia* had supped, she made as though she were not well, that so she might be alone with *Camilla*; and when she was come to her Chamber, this wench asked of her, whether she did indeed believe she should see *Hortensio* that night? For, said she, how can a man that is so far distant from hence come hither to you in so short a time? The Mistress, who thought her self a great deal more able, laughed to hear her say so; and took a great care to make her comprehend, that this Science was above her understanding; and told her moreover, how it would not be effectively *Hortensio* which she should see, but something that should resemble him so perfectly, there would be no difference. Howbeit, said *Camilla* unto her, what do you hope by seeing him so? what entertainments? what satisfactions?

satisfaction do you expect from it? Onely to see him, said *Aurelia*, and if thou be wise, said she, demand not why Love doth cause any thing to be done, for he himself is the reason for that which he forces us to do; And then my curiosity is not particular to me, for I have heard of many women that use to do so. But, replied *Camilla*, will you not be affraid? Never a whit, answered *Aurelia*. Just as she vvas saying so, *Hortensio*, who I had seen pass by the place where I was hid, and whom I had followed pretty close, knocked softly, according to his custom, at the window. Which *Aurelia* hearing began to change colour. It may be you believe, said *Camilla* unto her, that it is *Hortensio* which makes this noise, or to say better his phantasmie? I do not beleeeve it, answered *Aurelia*, howsoever open the window, and pull up the grate. This wench had no sooner obeyed, but perceiving *Hortensio*, they both of them gave a great shrick; *Camilla* finding her self as very a coward, as she believed she vvas; and *Aurelia* being nothing so confident, as she had thought she had been. *Hortensio* expounded this astonishment after another manner, and believed that the choler she vvas in against him, put her into that case vvherein he savv her, namely vvith a countenance extremely changed, and her spirit so confounded, as she could neither sit still, run away, nor behold him. And vvhereas he vvas come thither onely to appease her, he said unto her that at last this Angell of darkness was come by her conjurations to see an Angell of light. O me, said *Aurelia*, it is the voice of *Hortensio*! but I am not able to answer him; nor is it to speak to him that I have vvished to see him. In saying so, her exceeding fear so reanimated her forces, as she vvas able to get avway into a Cabinet, vvhereof the door vvas open. As for *Camilla*, she vvould fain have followed after her Mistress, but her astonishment kept her from it: Not being able then to do more, or to say better, not knowing vvhat she did, she hid herself under the table. *Hortensio* vvas so amazed at that vvich he savv, as *Aurelia* could hardly be more. In the mean time, that he might get her to come back again, and knowing, that she could hear him well enough from the Cabinet where she vvas, he said unto her vvith a languishing voice to move her the more; Am I come so far then, *Aurelia*, onely to see you, and will not you vouchsafe to look on me? Alas! Cryed *Camilla* to her Mistress, that which we think is but too sure, for he saies he is come onely to see you. *Aurelia*, that was ready to dy in hearing *Hortensio* speak, whom she believed to be a phantasmie, cryed to him out of the Cabinet to be gone; and that she made a vow how she would never see *Hortensio* more; unless it were *Hortensio* indeed. He who believed that she meant he was no longer *Hortensio*, by reason of his change, called to *Camilla*, with an intent to desire her that she would get *Aurelia* to come forth to him again; but scarcely had he named her, when as this wench, who had marked on which side the door of the Cabinet was, moved herself with such violence to get from under the table, for to escape away, as she overthrew it, together with the light that stood upon it, which in turning down was extinguished; The noise which the table made, the cries of *Camilla*, the voice of *Hortensio*, and the darkness, so frightened *Aurelia* (for she believed that all this disorder was caused by the phantasmie) as she fell into a swoon: So that although *Hortensio* continued saying many things, yet heard the nothing of it, no more than *Camilla*, who was fallen to her prayers. *Hortensio* seeing nobody answer him, and having heard some noise which I made vvith going to step back a little, that I might have the liberty to laugh, he retired away in such a choler, and fury, as gave so great a blow vvith the pummell of his sword against the grate of *Aureliaes* window, that he all so batterd it; vvich *Camilla* forgot not to tell her Mistress, as believing it to be the last effect of the devill, when as she was come out of her swoon, vvich lasted till day break. As for me, I never troubled my self vvith following *Hortensio*, vvho vvithout doubt talked sufficiently of this adventure as he returned, but coming to *Valerio* and my Agent, vvho stayed for me some twenty paces off, we went to my lodging, that we might have liberty to laugh at our good fortune in this foolish matter. We were no sooner a bed, but a new entertainment kept us from sleeping. I know very well, Madam, that the recounting of it to you vvould be in some sort to pass the bounds of respect; but the matter is so pleasant,



as it were better I should want good manners, then deprive you of the pleasure of hearing it. I will tell you then, Madam, since your silence seems to permit me so to do, that *Valerio* had a servant, called *Vespa*, whose inclinations were proportionable to his condition, being of somewhat a dull spirit; he never came a nights into the chamber where we were, but to help to make his Master unready, and then went presently to lye with *la Roche* in a room which was separated from ours only with thin boards and tapestry hangings, so that speaking never so little lowd one might hear from the one place what was said in the other. When *la Roche* and *Vespa* were a bed, this last demanded of the other, whether it were true that I knew all that was done in the world, as he had been lately told? *La Roche*, who meant to make himself merry with him, assured him that it was so far true, as that I perfectly knew what any body did, if I did but know the name of the person. Alas, said *Vespa* then, I would not be bound to serve with such a Master! For how should one spend his life with a man, to whom one durst never tell a lye? It is somewhat an hard case, said my Agent, speaking a little lovvd, to the end we might hear him; howsoever it must be so. I had as leefe dy, said the other, as have my Master know all the lies that I tell him, when as I return from some place, where I have stayed longer than I should: for, as you know, we want not excuses for the stealing of an hower to bestow in our pleasures; Mounſieur was not at home; I waited for him a long time; he stayed me with a purpose to have written to you; I sought for him in divers places; your clothes were not done; I was to see as I went along whither your Gittern were strung or no; and so, according to the diversity of occasions, diversity of pretexts are alwaies found: But as for you, I do not see how you can live; you durst not, I assure my self, entertain two three of your companions whilst he is at the Comedy, and pass away an afternoon in making good chear. I durst not indeed, answered my Agent, unless it were at such a time, as I know he had great affairs in hand, and so had no leisure to think of me. Neither could you have the pleasure, said *Vespa*, to recount his secrets; to say he is in love with such a one; he goes often to such a place; he writes to such a person; and that which is the worst, if he hath ill intreated you; whether it be in revyling you; or in threatening you with the bastinado; or if occasion serves, in giving you a vvhirret on the ear; you durst not complain to your friends of it: Whereas to me, it would be the depriving me of a great consolation, if I could not say to one; he is more fantastical than a Mule; more extravagant than a Hobgoblin; and to give him to all the devills in hell when he is untoward. For when I have said all this, I return home, as if I were well revenged, and had said so much to him himself. As for me, said *la Roche*, mine is none of the worst, and I am seldom in the case you speak of. I wish it may be so, replied the other, how ever you must needs confess, that he would very much incommode me in one thing; for how could one serve him well, or be well clothed, if a man should not make some profit to himself of the money that passes through his hands; I should be very sorry to steal ought from any body, but in that case I must be excused. It is not to hord it up, that I take any thing, but to do him credit with it; and then the recompences which Masters make us is not so great, but that we may with some justice recompence our selves. For that, said *la Roche*, you have reason; and there I lose a fair opportunity, which you enjoy. You are so unhappy too, continued *Vespa*, that as I perceive you dare not think of quitting him, and of looking out for a Master secretly, as we commonly do, when we find not our selves well with him whom we serve: and to conclude, I should chuse rather to be in the gallyes, than in the service of this man: I should not have spoken thus freely to you, added he smiling, for fear he should have known it, if you had not told me, that he is to know the name of them whose secrets he desire to know; for as for that which I am called by, he will be couſened in it, because I took it upon me but when I came to *Genova*, by reason of a small adventure which befell me a *Sanonia*, of whence I am. You would have reason for that you say, replied my Agent, who was willing to put him in fear, if he did not know mine; but if to morrow he should have a desire to know what I have done,

done, he would also know what you have sayd unto me; for otherwvise his science would be very confusd. Then am I undone, sayd *Vespa*, but howsoever, if he must know all that I have sayd unto you, let him know also that I never took much from my Master at a time, to the end that he may be contented vvith making me to he turned avway. We burst out then, *Valerio* and I, into such a laughter, as he could no longer doubt but that vve had heard him vvithout inchantment. And vvhereas there vvvas a back-door that opened out of their room upon the staires, he rose in hast, and got him avway, so that vve never heard of him after. The rest of the night vvvas spent in sleeping, but the next day I had employment enough; for I vvvas scarcely out of bed, vvhen as I received a Note from *Aurelia*, whereby she prayed me that she might speak but one word with me at the Garden door, where I had formerly been, out of which she would come forth, and seem as though she had met me by chance. I made some difficulty of going to her, but at length *Valerio* constrained me thereunto. As soon as I came at her, being still pale, and amazed with her last nights adventure, she said unto me, that having been advertised since morning, how *Hortensio* was effectively at *Genova*, and had never been absent from thence, she found that she had great cause to complain of me, for that I had not undeceived her. Hereupon I was very much perplexed how to answer her; but at last I told her with civility enough, how it was true that I knew of it, but having promised her no more than to let her see *Hortensio*, I never thought of any thing else: That if instead of this phantasm she had seen the true *Hortensio*, it was an undoubted mark of the power of my art, which had constrained him to come unto her, though he desired to be concealed. I acknowledge, said she unto me, that this reason is so forcible, as I cannot destroy it; but since it is true, that nothing can resist you, do me the favour that *Hortensio*, who as I have been told, lyes secretly at *Leanders* house, that he may go a nights to see a mayd whom he loves, may no longer love her; or if it be possible, that he may despise and hate her. This proposition began to put me into such choller against Astrology, that little lacked but that I had left *Aurelia* without an answer; howbeit my wit served me yet this once again dextrously enough: For I assured her she was ill informed of the matter, and that *Hortensio* did not lye concealed for any new love, but that being grown jealous of her, he had feigned a voyage to *Naples*, the more exactly to observe her actions; and that without doubt she was beloved of *Hortensio*, as much as ever she had been. This poor Gentlewoman was so satisfied with that which I told her, as she verily beleevved it; and so I left her with a great deal of joy. As I was returning home, I was mightily surpris'd, to see how the people began to note me, and point at me; some saying, that I was a learned man; others, that I was half a Prophet; these same, that I was an Inchanter; those, that I was a Sorcerer. There were some too, that not far from the truth, took me for an impostor, and scoffed at me; at leastwvise I interpreted their looks and their actions so. I went then in a rage to find out *Valerio*, whom I met withall some three or four steps from my lodging. I did not recount unto him what had hapned to me, but I quarrell'd with him for that he was the cause of all the confusion I was in. He, that was ready to burst with laughter, asked me whether I had not given him order to publish my science? Yes, sayd I unto him, but not to make me pass for a Magician. You know, sayd he unto me, still laughing, that Fame augments every thing; and then what is it you complain of? all the world is satisfied with your skill, and that which should more content you, you are revenged both of your Rivall and of your Mistress, by giving them so much unquietness as you do. He had no sooner sayd so, but *Leander* appeared, and seemed to come to us; I would have declined his encounter by entring into my lodging, but *Valerio* told me that he had promised him my acquaintance, and that he was too near then for me to avoyd it. Indeed he was so near as I could not answer *Valerio*, so that I was constrained to receive the civilities of *Leander*, who after a great and long complement, recounted unto me all his love to *Aurelia*, who loved *Hortensio*, that loved not her, because he was engaged elsewhere; and therefore he conjured me, as well for his interest, as for that of *Aurelia*, so to do, that she might no longer affect

*Horten-*

*Hortensio*, but accept of his service. I was so confounded with all these adventures, as I scarce knew which way to turn me; howbeit seeming to consider of all that he had told me, at length I assured him, that if he continued loving and serving her, he should be beloved of her, provided he acquainted her with his passion. He went away very well satisfied, and *Valerio* demanded of me, how I hoped to keep my word? I answered him, that at last *Aurelia* would be weary of *Hortensio's* despising her; that *Leander* by continuing to serve her would touch her heart, and so would think that he obtained that by the power of my art, which was due to his own industry. But, sayd I unto him, now that we have a little rest, let us go into our lodging; howbeit we were scarcely in the middle of the Hall, when turning my head about, I perceived *Leonardo* the father of *Livia*, comming to me with an open countenance, which made me conceive that he had something to demand of me. I received him with a forced civility, which might have made him know, if he had heeded it, that the sight of him had put me to a non-plus. And to give him yet more liberty to persecute me, *Valerio*, who took great pleasure in all these things, made shew of taking his leave of me, and went and stayed for me in my chamber. Then began *Leonardo* to tell me in a serious manner, which vexed me exceedingly, how he was ashamed that his first visit was to request a favour from me, rather than to let me know that he was in love with the reputation which I had gotten in so short a time; but in fine, that he might oblige me by his freedom to use the same to him, he besought me that I would cast a Figure to discover who it was that had got an Emerald Ring which was lost out of his house. I must confess, that I found my self then in so strange a case, as if by wishing I could have become a Magician indeed, to get out of this cross adventure, I verily think that I should have wished it. What shall I do, sayd I to my self? What counsell am I to take? And what can I answer to so pressing a discourse? It concerns not now the beguiling of an amorous mayd, or an ignorant Lover; it is an old man that sayes he knowes Astrology, that will discover my ignorance as soon as I shall speak; For to tell him a lye about this Ring, it will destroy it self: It were better for me to deal freely with him; he will be obliged to me for undeceiving him; and then all things well considered, I had rather spoil all my designs than put a trick upon a man of this age. After I had determined to doe so, I took a more serious look upon me for to tell him, how it was true, that heretofore I had understood some principles of Astrology (for I could not resolve to confess my self to be directly an impostor) how upon that ground my friends had given me the reputation of knowing somewhat; but that none of them had ever any experience of it; how it was true also, that I had many times delivered my self to be more knowing than I was, in some occasions, where feigning was rather a gallantry than a crime; but as for him, I desired it should appear, that the reputation which I had gained was not so dear unto me, as his friendship; seeing I confessed ingeniously unto him, that I did not know enough either in Astrology, or in the other sciences depending thereupon, for to be able to tell him that which he desired of me. This discourse so clear and true had not the effect I expected from it; for very far from being believed, I heard *Leonardo* say unto me smiling, Had I not known by the report of others, that you are a learned man, your humility would suffice to perswade me that you know much. I swear unto you, sayd I laughing (for I could not possibly forbear) that I know nothing. Even this which you say, answered he, is that which confirms me in my belief of you; and thus modest and discreet, continued he, ought they to be who know much; for their science makes them to be known well enough, without any intermixture of their vanity. If I were what you think me to be, sayd I interrupting him, I would acknowledge it to you; but it is certain that I do not merit the honour you do me. I have already told you, answered he, that this humility is the greatest science of all; it being most sure, that every man which sayes he knows a thing well, is ignorant of it, since he is arrived at the point to think that he knows it perfectly, But at length let us return to our purpose, and permit me to tell you, that this Emerald is graven, and may serve for a Seal as well as for a Ring. I was so maddened to see that when I had



had told lyes, I had been believed, and now that I spake truth, I could not be credited, as I was not able to answer him any thing, so much was I transported with choler and unquietness. But he, who was not repulsed by my silence, and that on the contrary conceived how I was thinking on something to satisfy him, said unto me again in a gentler manner than before; You are pleased to dissemble with me upon a premeditated design, and I consent to all that you have said of your self, so as I may obtain that which I desire of you; and to facilitate the business, said he further unto me, you are to know that this ring was lost between ten and eleven of the clock in the forenoon. Whilst I was in this case, namely in the strangest that ever any body was, I saw *la Roche* enter with a paper in his hand, who said unto me aloud, that he desired to speak a word with me about an important affair. I stept then from *Leonardo* and went to him; but I was joyfully surprised when I understood, that *Lucretia*, for her own interest, and the better to keep the jest afoot, had advertised him that *Leonardo* would come to learn some news of me concerning a ring, which his daughter had given to *Hortensio*, who had visited her about ten of the clock in the morning in a riding suit, making shew that he was returned unto *Genova* by his Fathers command; and that *Leonardo* having found them together, *Hortensio* had made as though he had lost a letter, which a brother of his had written him from *Naples*; that after he was gone, *Livia* seeming very sad, and her father having demanded of her what she ayed, she had told him, that the ring, which she had given to *Hortensio*, was lost, to the end he should not marvel if he saw it no longer. This discourse made me wonderfull glad; I took the paper from *la Roche* the better to dissemble the matter, and using a great deal of civility to *Leonardo*, I desired him to excuse the liberty which I had taken. He answered me, that with him I was justified, provided I would not refuse him. I confess that the occasion of gulling him was so fair, as I should have had much ado too forbear; and *Leonardo* too had such a mind to be so, as he would have been disoblighd more in not being gulled, than in being gulled; besides, it was in vain for me to tell him the truth again, which he would not understand, do what I could. He began again to press me; I resisted yet a while; but at last, when I saw that he would needs have me devine, I spake to him with more certainty than an Astrologer, and more clearly than a Oracle, if he would have understood me rightly. After I had made a turn in the room without speaking a word, I made a stop just before him, and said unto him; hitherto I have done what I could to dissemble the little knowledge I have, that I might not do any thing which would displease you; but since you will needs know it, I will confess freely unto you, that I have already cast a figure for it upon the intreaty of a kinswoman of *Livia*; so that disguising the truth no longer, I am obliged to tell you, that a man, whom you saw this morning in a riding suit, is he which hath the ring you speak of. Who would ever have believed it, said *Leonardo*, that a man of his fashion and qualitie, had been capable of so strange an action? But young people that have covetous fathers, are many times carried to ill habits by necessity; howsoever I must find out this ring, and if it be possible demand it of him that hath taken it away without charging him that he stole it. After this discourse he gave me thanks, and made me promise to come to supper to him. An hower after he was gone, came an old fellow, who had served *Leonardo* about thirty yeares, presented to me by *la Roche*, that told me with a simplicity which made me to laugh, how being resolved to return into his Country, and carry with him the little money which he had gotten, he besought me that I would cause him and his treasure to be transported thither in a moment, for fear of robbing by the way. I know enough for that, said my Agent then, without my Masters meddling in it; and when I had confirmed him in this opinion, away they went together. But whilst *Valerio* laughed at my adventure, and I was thinking how I might finish it, the poor *Hortensio* past not his time away so well. For it fell out that *Leonardo* had incountred him just as he went out of my lodging; howbeit he accosted him civilly, and said no more to him but that he had been an hower in seeking of him: For *Hortensios* countenance so little resembled

resembled that, of a thief, as he was somewhat affraid to speak to him: *Hortensio* answered thereunto, that he would think himself happy, if it were to command him any thing. How courteous he is? (thought *Leonardo* vvith himself as he delivered to me aftervvard) and vvhat a pitty it is, that so handfom a man should have so bad an inclination? Then taking courage, he said unto him, that having understood there vvvas a ring in his hands, vvwhich had been lost out of his house, he desired he might see it. And vvhen *Hortensio* vvvas surpris'd vvith this discourse, he seemed to be so confounded, as *Leonardo* no longer doubted but that he vvvas guilty. O me! cryed *Hortensio*, what is this I hear? I do not say, replied *Leonardo*, that you are faulty, but the party from whom you had it. How unhappy am I, said *Hortensio* interrupting him? Afflict not your self, replied *Leonardo*, for the hand vvwhich gave it you, hath alone committed this fault, and so you are justified vvith me. While *Leonardo* did vvhat he could to conceal from him the bad opinion he had of him, he vvvas perswaded, that this man knew the truth of the matter; and to justify *Livia* as much as possibly he could, he assured him that he alone vvvas culpable; that he alone had deceived him; that he denyed not but that this ring vvvas in his hands; and therefore he acknowledged he had just cause to complain of him. This is strange, said *Leonardo* to himself, that the more I vvould excuse him, the more he accuses himself! I say it to you again, continued the other, that I alone am vvorthy of punishment. No *Hortensio*, sayd *Leonardo*, you shall not perswade me to it; for I am vvell informed of the truth of the business. Why then it is best for me, answered *Hortensio*, not to make any further deniall, but in restoring you the ring to confess ingenuously that I vvvas constrained by an inevitable necessity, to do you this wrong. I know vvell enough, replied *Leonardo*, vvhat youth is capable of; and vvhat necessity vvwill make one doe. *Hortensio*, seeing *Leonardo* speak so gently unto him, and believing, so ill did they understand one another, that he knew all vvwhich had past between *Livia* and him, believed also that he vvvas to make his profit of this occasion, and to speak plainly unto him. Since you know, said he to him, how to excuse my errors, vvwill you be pleased to render them legitimate, in giving me leave to marry *Livia*? you know my birth, and you may know my estate vvhen you please. Marry my daughter! cryed *Leonardo*, this proposition is so pleasant, as our conversation shall end there, for I do not think that you have reason to continue it any longer, after I have assured you nevertheless that I shall be discreet. Saying so, the old man went away, and left *Hortensio* more amazed, than ever he vvvas in his life, for he no way apprehended that *Leonardo* vvould accuse him of theft; and to perplex him yet further, *Aurelia* appeared, vvho believing, according as I had told her, that *Hortensio* had not concealed himself but because he vvvas jealous, vvould en passant have said some manner of gallanterie unto him. But he, vvho vvvas not in a case to dissemble, and that saw vvell enough how his love to *Livia* vvvas upon breaking forth, said unto her somewhat rudely; you drove me away at such time as by your direction I came to wait upon you, think it not strange then if after that I never do see you more; and to recompence the love vvwhich you have borne me vvwith some freeness, know, that I am engaged in an affection, vvwhich cannot end but vvwith my life. This said, he left her, for to go in all hast and try if he could see *Livia*, to the end they might advise together about vvwhat they vvvere to do in so cross an adventure. In the mean time, *Aurelia* so replied upon my vvwords, as she had much adoe to believe but that *Hortensio*'s despitall vvvas a mark of love. As she vvvas returning home in this irresolution, she encountered *Leander*, vvwho had seen *Hortensio* enter into *Livia*'s house, and *Leonardo* presently following in after him; so that informed by his passion, and my counsell, he discovered unto her the truth of the History: He informed her how it vvvas by his meanes she vvvas advertised in the morning, that *Hortensio* never parted from *Genova*; and that to let her see how *Livia* vvwholly possessed his heart, he knew for a certain that he vvvas at that instant vvwith her; having said to him just as he vvvas going in, and he passing by, I vvwill no longer oppose your love. This discourse so nettled *Aurelia*, as suddainly she felt a strange revolution in her mind: After she had mused a little, and shewed by her counte-

countenance how great a combat she had in her heart; she addressed her speech to *Leander*; If that which you tell me be true, said she unto him, I confess that *Hortensio* is not only unworthy of my affection, but is also unworthy to live. If you did not seem to me somewhat interested in this encounter, your word alone should suffice to make me give credit to all things; but in this, where you are the accuser, mine own eyes must be the witnesses of his crime, if you will have them favourable judges to you: conduct me to *Livia's* house, and be assured that as soon as I have disturbed their felicity, for I mean to do it, I will establish yours. *Leander*, who would gladly have done more difficult things, for the hope of a prize that was so dear unto him, told her with a great deal of respect, joy, and love, that he was ready to obey her. In the mean time it had fallen out, that within a minute after *Hortensio* was gone in to *Livia*, *Leonardo* came home; so as he had no more leisure but to let her know that her father had demanded the Ring of him, which he had given him, and that he had used all his endeavour to draw the crime wholly upon himself; for as soon as *Lucretia* perceived *Leonardo*, she advertised them of it; whereupon *Hortensio* was constrained to hide himself in a corner of the Garden where they were, it being impossible for him to get forth without being seen. When supper time approached, I went thither; for I was not sorry to seek for an occasion of seeing in what case *Livia* was in after so many odd adventures; as I was going along I met with *la Roche*, who told me that he came from working his enchantment for the man who was afraid of robbing by the way; that after a thousand devices, he had made him get a stride upon a pale, as it were upon an horse; and there having bound up his eyes, and tyed both his hands and his feet, he left him talking the maddest things in the world, out of a conceit he had that he was flying in the air; and that to keep him from being robbed by the way, he had taken his money from him without his perceiving it. I rebuked him for his foolery, and having commanded him to follow me, I entered into *Leonardo's* house, just as he was going to accost his daughter, who seeing me, would have pulled down her Vail over her face, but he not permitting her so to do, told her, that a man, to whom she was engaged for the recovery of a Ring which was so dear unto her, well deserved to have the pleasure of beholding her. We were both of us then very much abashed, for I knew nothing of that which had past betwixt him and *Hortensio*; and she feared that her father would give her some cruel check or other. Howbeit I was not so taken up, but that I heard, in regard I was advertised of it before, how the poor simpleton whom *la Roche* had tyed up in this garden, sayd, that he had dispatched a great deal of way already; and I find, continued he, hearing us talk a far off where we were, that I fly very high, for the sound of voyces doth diminish. In the mean time we were mightily surpris'd to see *Aurelia*, led by *Leander*, come in, who appearing with an angry countenance put the whole company into a great confusion. *Leonardo*, who perceived that this visit was not made in an accustomed hour, could not imagine the cause of it; *Livia*, who before time had had some jealousy of *Aurelia*, and knew that *Hortensio* was not above five or six steps from thence in a green Arbor, could not tell what to think of it; *Leander* though he was very certain that he had seen *Hortensio* enter there, and *Leonardo* follow him, yet was afraid that he should not keep his word with *Aurelia*; *Hortensio*, albeit he were hid, was not in the least pain, for that he could not doubt but that he should have some share in *Aurelia's* visit; *la Roche* too was not very much at ease to see so great a company in the very same place where his traveller was, which still continued prating, though not heard of any but my self, who in conclusion was not without a great deal of unquietnes, to behold so many folks together, which in all likelihood would complain of me. These severall reasonings, which I have declared unto you, were made for all that in one instant, for we were not long without knowing wherefore *Aurelia* came; who, having neither father nor mother, & living only under the tuition of an uncle, took more liberty to her self than ordinarily the Mayds of *Italy* use to do. She advanced then with a boldness that amazed me, and addressing her speech to *Leonardo*, without scarcely turning her eyes towards *Livia*; Marvail not, said she



unto him, *Leonardo*, to see this visit made to you, rather than to your daughter; seeing it is from you that I expect the revenge I desire. You are abused, *Leonardo*, and I am despised by a man whom *Livia* loves, and who at this present is hidden somewhere here about your house; I desired to advertise you of it, that we might both of us be revenged together. This discourse dejected *Livia*; made *Leonardo* knit his brows; *Leander* shrink up his shoulder; *Lucretia* give back; as for *Hortensio*, it is easie to imagine that he was but in an ill taking; and touching myself, in the midst of the amazement wherein I was, I felt some joy in hoping to see an end of this adventure; in the mean time I could not chuse but hear the new *Astolpho* say, what lamentable voyces are these, and into what a fright do they put me, ah, *La Roche*, am I to fear nothing? At length, *Leonardo*, being come out of the astonishment which had seized upon him, beheld *Aurelia* with fury, and taking her by the hand, What, said he unto her, a man hid about my house! we must seek every where, for I will not have this suspicion rest with any body; come, *Aurelia*, that I may revenge you, or be revenged on you, if that which you tell me be not true. What a confusion of voyces is here, sayd the Traveller? In the mean space *Leonardo* commanded all the doors to be shut, and leading *Aurelia*, and causing *Livia* with all the rest of the company to follow, he began first to search in the Garden. We had not gone four steps, but they perceived this man tyed on the pale, who made a great coil as it were to go the faster. The sight of him arresting all the troup, *Leonardo* asked whether this was his daughters Lover; *Aurelia* looked on *Leander*; *Livia* began to take a little heart, hoping they would search no further, and so *Hortensio* would not be found. But going formost, I untied the poor sor, and said to *Leonardo*, that this was without doubt the knavery of my servant, who was willing to make sport with the simplicity of this man. He was no sooner untied, but following his imagination, Behold, sayd he, how at length I am come into my Country; it is fit I should kiss the earth where first I drew my breath. And when as *Leonardo* demanded of him, what it was that he did. Alas! Master, sayd he, are you also come into my Country, with all this goodly company? *La Roche* approaching sayd to him softly, you have not done all that I enjoyned you, for do not you perceive that you are still at *Genova*. The poor wretch grew then so astonished as he could not answer a word. In the mean time *Aurelia* having told *Leonardo*, that this was not he she sought for, we continued going on. And when *Leonardo* had demanded whether there were nothing behind a Jasmyn hedge which vvas right before us; *Hortensio*, vvhose savv that he should be discovered, because the Arbor vvhich he vvas hidden vvas hard by it, resolved to stevv himself, rather than to be taken vwith the manner. He vvent forth then boldly, and speaking to *Leonardo*; Seek no further, sayd he unto him, I am he alone who is hidden here, and that will not oppose the revenge which you will take of me for it. This is not amiss, sayd *Leonardo* to me, I seek for my daughters Lover, and I find a Thief. You think peradventure, sayd he unto him, to steal another Ring from me, but I will keep you well enough from it; and in the consideration of your Father, who is a man of honour, I will onely secure my self of your person. *Aurelia* thought *Leonardo* was wild, in taking *Hortensio* for a thief; *Leander* and *Livia* beleevd the same thing; *Hortensio* himself knew not what he meant by it; and I alone was he that could clear this Enigma. And as I was preparing to speak, *Hortensio* said to *Leonardo*, that he had loved his daughter two years; that he had had the Ring from her; that he was no thief; and that he might know of her whether he told the truth or no. *Aurelia* would have spoken, but choler would not suffer her; *Livia* indeed had love enough to have confirmed that which *Hortensio* sayd, but she was retained by shame, howbeit she was fain to surmount it, when her Father asked of her, whither that which he heard was true? for she answered, how hoping that this marriage would not displease him, it was true that she had given him that Ring for the first obligation thereof. *Leonardo* had no sooner received his daughters answer, but taking me aside he consulted with me about what he ought to do in this encounter; for he did not suspect me as yet. I confess, that then I took pitty of all the displeasures I had done them,

them, and in that good thought, I counselled him for the honour of his daughter, to marry them together. He told me how that indeed was the custom of *Italie*, and that he was glad my advice was conformable to the use of the Country, which in these occasions will have them to be either poniarded or marryed. *Leonardo* having resolved on the last, came to them again with a calmer countenance, and making some excuses to *Aurelia* for that he did not revenge her, he told *Hortensio*, that for my sake he not only pardoned him, but also promised him his daughter. These two Lovers were so satisfied, and so pleasingly surpris'd, as it was impossible for them to express their joy; *Leander* was so contented in seeing no further an obstacle to his love, as he presently summoned *Aurelia* to the performance of her word, who confirmed it unto him with generosity enough. But the best in this generall rejoicing was, that *Livia*, in a gallantry, came, and smiling sayd unto me, I counsel you another time to rely more on your merit than on your science, since though you have wholly employed it for the interrupting of my marriage, yet you see that your Art is deceitfull. And continued *Aurelia*, in somewhat a sharper manner, you assured me that I was beloved of *Hortensio*, whereas I no sooner encountred him, but I see him marry'd to another, which shews that your Astrology is false. As for me, said *Leander*, you perswaded me that *Aurelia* did not love *Hortensio*, in the mean time the proof she hath rendred of the contrary, testifies the untruth of your books. And for my part, sayd the Traveller, he promised to send me into my country without any danger of robbing, and lo I am still at *Genoua*. All this was spoken to me so precipitously as I was surpris'd with it; nevertheless being fully resolved to continue no longer an Astrologer, I made use of this occasion; for causing *Lucretia* to approach, that she might witness that which I meant to say, I besought *Leonardo* to pardon me for that I was going to confess unto him, seeing my gullerie had had so happy an end for him; and that he would call to mind how it was not long of me, that he did not believe me to be no Astrologer. I recounted unto them my love to *Livia*; in what manner I knew her secret, and consequently all that I have told you. And after I had obtained *Lucretias* pardon as well as mine own, I made it appear that I had satisfied them without Astrology: For, sayd I to *Leonardo*, you asked me for your Ring, and I have made you to find it; to *Livia*, I have told you the most concealed particulars of your adventure; to *Leander*, I made you hope for the possession of *Aurelia*, which she promises to you her self; to *Aurelia*, I have undeceived you from *Hortensio*, and made you acknowledge the fidelity of *Leander*; to the traveller, I promised you that you should not be robbed by the way, and I have kept my word with you; for I am sure you are not in case so to be, *la Roche* having provided for that by taking away your mony, which I command him to restore unto you presently; so that you see I have not failed in my promise to every one: for touching my self, sayd I laughing, you perceive I am he alone for whom I have done nothing; so that to recompence me in some sort for so many unprofitable pains, grant me *Valerios* pardon, which especially I demand of *Leander*, as of the most offended, but withall the most obliged to his friends gullery, since without him he durst never have thought of the happiness which he possesseth. In conclusion, said I to them still laughing, whereas you know that I am a dangerous enemy, I counsel you, as persons whom I esteem, to receive me for your friend. They burst out then into so great a laughter, as they thought they should never have been quiet again to hear the complement, which *Leonardo* made me, who assured me that the pleasure I had given him by my relation, was so great, as he should alwaies remember it, as an important service which I had rendred him, and that he would not for any thing but that this gullery had been, it was so diverting: *Livia* told me next, that she was of her fathers mind, and though she had denyed me her love, yet did she promise me her friendship; *Hortensio* added thereunto, that he was so much obliged unto me for drawing him out of prison, as he could not chuse but swear an inviolable affection to me; and *Leander*, who was engaged to me for the possession of his Mistress, gave himself wholly unto me; for *Aurelia*, as she was least satisfied, so was her complement the coldest, being contented onely to tell me, that she should

never forget the visit I had given her, but nevertheless whensoever she had any hate, it should not be for me; whereupon she would have gone away, but I advised *Leonardo* to send for *Cimbio* her Uncle, and also for *Valerio*, to the end they should not part asunder till all things were peaceably concluded. This was almost as soon executed as I had mentioned it; in the mean time *Livia* and *Aurelia*, having talked a pretty while together alone, called *Hortensio* and *Laander* to them, and such things passed between them, as they found themselves all four extremely contented. *Cimbio* and *Valerio* being come, and a fair conclusion made on all sides, the whole company supped with *Leonardo*, though none but I was invited. Howbeit that I may not, Madam, further extend a relation, which is already but too long, I shall tell you, that within a while after I was bidden to their wedding, whither I came with more love than all these four together had; for I had enough for every woman of the assembly. But at length, night being come, I left them married and contented; I say contented, because I am not an Historian but for the first day of their Nuptials, which ordinarily is full of joy and gladness. Nevertheless that which troubled me afterwards was, how not able to keep the matter from being divulged, the same people who had pointed at me before as at a Magician, looked upon me then as on an impostor, and jeered me in such sort as I durst not peep out of doors. But it is also true, that the same adventure was the cause of a greater good unto me; for by the Count of *Lanagues* curiosity I got the honour of his acquaintance and friendship, which hath likewise produced yours too, Madam, and hath also given me the noblest passion that ever I had in my life. I must confess, sayd the Princess, that you are incomparable, and that in regard of what I have heard, there is none but will say how you are a dangerous enemy, and a pleasing friend. Ah, Madam, sayd the Marquis, do not ruin me with *Amilia*! no, no, sayd this mayd, for I promise you not to judge of you but by your self, who, as I beleeve, will perswade me that, which her Excellency speaks of, better than she can, as eloquent as she is. I would fain know, sayd *Doria*, speaking to the Marquis, whether they from whom you take your love, may pretend still to your friendship. Yes, answered he, provided they have been favourable to me; for as for the rest, they are so indifferent unto me, as it would be more advantageous for them, that I should hate them. This is a pretty discourse indeed, sayd *Justiniano*, since that by this reason, the fair *Amilia* ought not to be cruell unto you, to the end she may by receiving your love favourably pretend one day to your friendship. I confess, said the Count, that the Marquis his opinion teaches me a new tenet, which I did not beleeve could be possible; I have always heard it sayd, that friendship is many times a way to love, but that love should be the way to friendship, is a thing which hath but few examples, and no reason at all. This dispute would be a little too long, sayd the Princess, both for the time and the place, and I think it were fitter for us to return unto *Monaco* before the ending of the day, which will not permit us to walk; but this agreeable discourse hath given us so much satisfaction, as we have no reason to regret it. The whole company then arose; the Count led *Isabella*; the Marquis *Amilia*; *Justiniano* and *Doria* went together; and the Princesses women, together with other of her servants, followed after without order. All this fair troop went aboard of the Galley which brought them thither, whereof the Princess never made use, but when she went to this place. The rest of the evening was wholly imployed in talking of the Marquis his adventures, each one repeating in particular that which had seemed most pleasant to them therein. *Isabella* likewise caused her kinswoman, who had an excellent voyce, to sing; the Marquis plaid on the Lute, and sung also with the beautiful *Amilia*; so that concluding this day with Musick, they bid the Princess good night, and retired to their lodgings.



# IBRAHIM:

## OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

The second part.

*The Third Book.*



Ow delightfull soever this company might be, yet was the Count to return unto *Genova*, not daring to stay longer in a place whither he had been sent. He took his leave then of the Princess; who desired him to assure the Senate of her acknowledgement, and that ere long she would be at *Genova* her self to render them thanks in particular for the honor they had done her; The Marquis also kissed her robe; she caressed him very much, and prayed him to remember, that he left a Mistress at *Monaco*, shewing him *Emilia*. The Marquis answered laughing, that he should not fail therein, and to the end she might not doubt of it, he would take the libertie to write unto her. I shall be glad of that, said the Princess, and will enjoyn *Emilia* to receive your letters. In the mean time *Doria*, who was in love with the Counts sister-in-law, named *Sophronia*, began to be in some unquietness for that he did not return unto *Genova*; which being observed by *Justiniano*, he conjured him to abide no longer at *Monaco*, and to go along with the Count. *Doria* withstood it a while, but at length he suffered himself to be perswaded to that which he desired. The Marquis was so dextrous, as he took the opportunity, whilst the rest were complementing with the Princess, to approach unto *Emilia*, for to assure her a little more seriously than he had used to do, that he had such thoughts for her, as he had never before but onely for two or three of all that great multitude of women which he had loved in his time; it is likely he would have said more unto her, had not the Count gone away. They departed out of the Princesses chamber, accompanied by *Justiniano*, who conducted them to the Port, where they embraced one another with a great deal of kindness, and also renewed their friendship with new protestations. Having veighed anchor, upon the Counts Signall given, the slaves fell to rowing, and in an instant the gally was carried far from the shoar, and from *Justiniano*, who in returning to the Castle began to fear, that the Princess would press him to declare the end of his History, and likewise to consider with astonishment the deplorable estate he was in; but going insensibly along towards the Princess, he found himself in her chamber, before he was aware that he was come thither. This sad thought had already painted such a melancholy in his face, as *Isabella* perceived it as soon as he entred, and for which she quarrelled with him, saying that it proceeded from the absence of his friends. *Justiniano*, surprised with this discourse, laboured to recollect himself, and told her, he had been so accustomed to sadness, that as soon as he was but a moment out of her sight, it still regained some empire over his heart. And to keep the Princess from speaking to him of ending his history, he besought her to be so good as to relate to him all that had arrived

ved unto her during so long an absence. Alas! said she unto him, what do you ask of me? Doth it not suffice that you know you were not here; that I believed you to be either inconstant, or dead; and that being in a place wherinto I could forbid an entrance to all the world, I have scarce had any other adventure, than to weep all day long, at leastwise since the death of my mother, and the unlucky love of the Prince of *Masseran*, which *Doria* hath recounted unto you, as also that of some other Sovereignes of *Italy*, where nothing hath past more remarkable, than the coldness which I have used towards them. And truly in so austere a solitariness, I wanted not imployment; the remembrance of our felicities past, and of our then miseries, furnished me but with too much entertainment of my self: and I may say that the memory of our good fortune was more cruell to me, than the sense of our ill fortune. But, continued she, these thoughts are too dolefull, for so happy a season as this is, wherein I see you; and we are not yet so far eloigned from the time in which we thought to have suffered shipwrack, as to look upon this Sea without dread or grief. The adventure of the Prince of *Salerno*, and of *Don Fernando de Mendoza*, said *Emilia* interrupting her, is not so inconsiderable, as that you should not be obliged to impart it unto a person who hath rendred you so exact an account of his life; but if either your modesty, or your compassion, doth hinder you from acquainting him with the effects of your beauty, and the mischiefs which you have caused without thinking of them, I do offer to make him a faithfull recitall thereof. You will be unjust, Madam, answered *Justiniano*, if you will not permit that I shall know what hath befallen you, and you will give me cause to fear that remembrance of some one of my Rivalls doth touch you but too sensibly. The Princess did what she could to remit the matter to another time; but *Justiniano*, who sought to shun the occasions of speaking of the end of his adventures, was willing to oblige the Princess to let him understand hers. When as she saw then that he was resolved for it, she took a pretext to go and write to *Leonardo*, the Count of *Lamagnes* wife, to the end she might not be present at *Emiliaes* relation. *Justiniano* complained for that she deprived him of the sight of her, but whatsoever he could say, she entred into her Cabinet, saying she would punish him for his obstinate curiosity. She was no sooner gone, but *Emilia*, having first been permitted by *Isabella* so to doe, began to speak in this sort to *Justiniano*.

### The History of Isabella.

SEeing the Princess hath commanded me to render you an account of her life, I am very willing to obey her, having nothing to tell you that is not advantageous for her, and also for you. I will not repeat her first adventures, since I know that you are not ignorant of the Prince of *Masserans* love, *Juliaes* violence and artifices, *Felicianaes* treason, *Doriaes* generous resentment, the death of that unfortunate lover, and consequently that of *Julia*. But I will onely tell you, that when she saw she was Mistress of her self, by the loss of her mother, and that she had in vain sent to seek for you in *Germany*, she resolved to go no more to *Genova*, but to live alwaies at *Monaco* to avoid the counsells and propositions, which she foresaw would be urged upon her for to draw her to marry, though she had iugaged her faith to you. For whereas your long absence had made all the world believe that you were dead, there wanted no reasons to be alleged unto her for the perswading of her to the change of her resolution. As indeed, notwithstanding all the care she had taken, to bar an entrance into *Monaco* of all those which might speak to her of such like matters, yet the fame of her beauty and vertue was spread abroad in such manner, as there was not a Prince in all *Italy*, which sent not unto her for a permission to visit and serve her. But she, who feared her Lovers more than her Enemies, brought so much care to the frustrating of all their designes, as none of them could ever obtain so much as the liberty to see her. She lived in this austere retiredness untill such time, as about a year ago, or little less, there ran a rumor in *Genova* that you

you had been seen at *Naples*; whereupon she sent the Lieutenant of her guard unto you, who, as you know, found you in a place far from that where he went to seek you. It was much about that time, when as, having lost my mother, I came against the Princesses mind, to shut up my self vvith her, she being unvvilling, as she said, that I should be made unhappy for her sake. But do vvhat she could, my intreaties vvere stronger than her reasons, so that she was contented to accord me that, which I demanded of her with so much affection. That false newes which had been reported of you gave her a true joy, and made her with the more ease constrain herself, and not seem to be so melancholy as before. But to the end her retiredness might be the more supportable to me, she walked oftner than she was wont to doe; she retired less into her Cabinet, for the entertaining of her thoughts; and her compliance for me, together with the secret hope she had of seeing you again, wrought so powerfully upon her mind, as they dissipated a part of her grief, and put her soul into a more peaceable estate. She took pleasure in recounting to me your first adventures; she shewed me your letters, and the verses which you had made for her; and by the praises which I gave them, I quickly got more esteem, and love, from her than I had before. She suffered me also sometimes to sing an ayre unto her; and whereas she called to mind the passion which you had ever had for musick, I dare say, how it was more for the love of you, than for the love of me, that she retained one of your Rivalls in her service. *Amilia*, perceiving that this discourse had made *Justiniano* change colour, could not forbear laughing at it; and desiring to draw him out of the pain whereinto she had put him; Be patient, said she unto him, and judge not precipitously of a matter, for which you will afterwards without doubt repent you. I know, answered *Justiniano*, that I should be unjust in desiring to be a judge of *Isabella*; but I know withall that fear is inseparable from love, and that in this occasion I ought to give you some marks of it. I vvill soon make it cease, continued *Amilia*, but prepare your self to understand the most fantastick adventure, and the strangest incounter, that ever you heard off: You are to know then, said she going on, how that great reputation of beauty which the Princesses had all over *Italy*, begot a curiosity at one and the same time in the mindes of the young Prince of *Salerno*, and *Don Fernando de Mendoza*, vvho for a long time had been in the War of *Milan* under the Marquis of *Gnast*; and albeit they knew not one another; though the one was of *Italy*, and the other of *Spain*; though the first was at *Naples*, and the other at *Milan*; yet took they both of them the same resolution. The Prince of *Salerno* was handsome, of a good mine, and full of spirit; and whereas in studying the Mathematicks, he had learned to design, he had afterwards applied himself to painting, and was become so excellent in that art, as few Masters in *Italy* had done braver things than he. This young Prince being resolved to see whether fame did not flatter the Princess, and knowing by the example of others, that it would be no boot for him to present himself at *Monaco* with an equipage proportionable to his condition, he concluded to go thither disguised; and that he might the easilier find out the meanes to approach unto the Princess, he purposed to say that he was a Painter. *Don Fernando de Mendoza*, as I have already declared, having a like desire, and a like curiosity, used also the same meanes to content it: For as the Prince of *Salerno* would pass for a Painter, so would *Don Fernando*, vvho understood musick perfectly, pass for a Musician. They disguised themselves then after the manner they had resolved on, and without knowing ought of one another, they came to *Monaco* at the time which I have noted; and when as the hope of seeing you again, and the Princesses compliance for me, had rendred her melancholy more sociable. The first that arrived at *Monaco* was *Don Fernando*, vvho retained this name onely, leaving that of *Mendoza*, as too illustrious for him vvhom he pretended to be. And whereas the Princess had ordained a long time before, that no stranger should enter into the Town, vvithout first advertising her of it, they came presently and told her, that a man, which gave himself out to be a Musician, desired to enter. At first she thought not to have seen him, but as for me, vvho had no other design but to delight her, I besought her to command he might be admitted to enter,



ter, to the end we might see whether he were skillfull enough to keep me from forgetting that which I had already learned in Musick; and to oblige her not to deny me. I caused her to remember the passion which she had told me you had ever had for this excellent art; and it was without doubt that in this sort the sole consideration of you introduced *Don Fernando* into the Castle; although the Princess had the goodness to tell me, that she should be very glad there could any thing be met withall, which could keep me from being weary of *Monaco*. But in the end, *Don Fernando* appeared, and albeit both the Princess and my self found something that was great in his countenance, yet suspected we nothing of the truth; attributing that lofty ayr to the Nation, whereof he said he was; for he did not conceal himself from being a *Spaniard*, in regard, though he spake *Italian* well enough, he would yet have been known by his pronounciation. The Princess demanded of him, of whence he was, whether he was going, what he could doe; and to all those particulars he answered exactly. As for his science, he desired the Princess that she would be the judge of it, and hear him sing. She would fain have referred her self to me, but giving her no leisure to command me unto it, I sent for a Violl and a Lute, to the end he might shew us what he could doe. I well observed, how he beheld the Princess with a great deal of attention, and also how he blushed two or three times. But whereas the greatest beauties strike every one with admiration, I took his blushing for a mark of his respect, and his attention for an ordinary effect of *Isabelles* beauty. When that was brought which I had sent for, he took a Lute, and truly touched it reasonably well; but when he had plaid on it, and that to sing he had taken a Violl in his hand, he perswaded us yet better by his play, that he was a *Spaniard*, than he had done by his pronounciation, it being most certain that it is impossible to play better. He sung also with a very good grace, and with much art; As for me, I confess unto you that I was ravished with it. And whereas the Princess perceived the satisfaction that I received by it, and was resolved to please me as much as she could, she demanded of *Don Fernando*, whether he would abide with her for some time to be my Master? He very vvell contented with this proposition, told her, that she did him too much honor, and though his purpose was not to make any stay at *Monaco*, yet should he esteem himself infinitely happy, if he could be able to render her any service. Thus see you *Don Fernando* lodged in the Castle, and in the rank of the Princesses domestick servants; but more yet, of that of her lovers. For as we know afterwards, he became so desperately in love with her, as he resolved to do all that he might for to gain her to himself, by any way whatsoever. Certain dayes after, the Prince of *Salerno*, who gave himself the name of *Lucilio*, arrived also at *Monaco*, and according to order it was told the Princess, how there was a young Painter, vvhose said, he came from *Rome*, that desired to shew her some small pieces of his own drawing. She vvhose, as I have already declared, sought to delight me, commanded him to be brought to her; *Don Fernando* was at that time in the Princesses chamber, vvhom I had caused to come thither to hear a Spanish ayr, vvhich had extremely pleased me. The Prince of *Salerno* being come to the Castle, entred into the room, where we were, with a profound respect, and shewed the Princess two small pieces of his drawing, admirably well done. In the first was seen a Sea represented, whose waves seemed to be very much moved, and a far off on the shore a man, who, mauger the counsell of divers persons, which seemed by their actions to hinder him from it, leapt into a skiff, and abandoned himself to the fury of the Sea, shewing them with one hand the point of a Rock, which stood up in the midst of this Sea, as if he had a desire to go and suffer shipwreck there. The second picture was an *Idol*, of an extraordinary design; and though the first piece expounded unto us that of the Prince of *Salerno*, yet did we not understand any part of that emblem; and the Princess, without comprehending ought that was mysterious therein, exceedingly commended his work. For, as you know, she might be a competent judge of such like things, in regard she herself could paint very well, though since your departure she hath wrought so little, as one may say, she hath nothing left but the bare knowledge of that rare art, having

utterly lost the use of applying the colours. In the mean time the Princess finding those two pieces to her mind, bought them to bestow on me. And having demanded of this pretended Painter, whether he could work in great, as well as in little, and he answering that it was ordinary with him, she resolved to have him paint a Cabinet that was within the lodgings, which she had given me, to the end she might at leastwise render my prison the more agreeable, as she said. She demanded of him if he would undertake it; and he, more contented than I am able to tell you, expressed a mighty desire to be at her service; so that the matter being resolved on, and the Princess having commanded him to see the Cabinet, and to think of contriving the design thereof, she appointed him to be lodged with *Don Fernando*, holding it an injustice to separate two such fair sisters, as Musick and Painting; and so did she lodge the two Rivals together, that is to say, two Enemies, without her knowing of it, and without their knowing of it also. For if *Don Fernando* was become amorous at the first sight of the Princess, the Prince of *Salerno* was charmed with it. I very well perceived, as well as *Don Fernando*, how He beheld her with an extraordinary attention; but I marvelled yet less at that than at the other, imagining that as he was a Painter, so being well seen in beauties, he would conserve some Idea of that of the Princess, to make use thereof in his Pictures. *Don Fernando* and he complemented very kindly one with another, and were as great friends at first, as they were foes afterwards. They thought in the mean while, each of them in particular, of the design they had in hand, and dextrously informing themselves of the Princess's mind, they learnt how she loved you still, and that although the greatest part of the World believed you to be dead, yet was she absolutely resolved never to engage that faith unto another, which she had given you: Whereupon they conceived it would be to no purpose for them to discover themselves as yet to the Princess; but contrarily, that it would be the means of ruining all their designs, and depriving them of her sight for ever. Wherefore they resolved to continue with her as long as they could; carefully to observe her disposition; to please her as much as possibly they could; and to work according to occasion. For afterwards we understood both all their designs, and all their reasonings, which in this encounter were almost the very same. Behold them then in the determination to render themselves agreeable to the Princess, and to me also, because they perceived that I was gracious with her. *Don Fernando* taught me Musick with a great deal of care, and concealed none of the secrets of his Art from me; yet sometimes he was vexed for that I learned so fast; for, said he to himself, as we understood afterwards, as soon as she knows as much as I know, I shall be discharged; and if I do not teach her as I should, they will turn me away. Howsoever he made choice of the first, and indeed was one of the best Masters in the World. The Painter on the other side drew out the designs of his Pictures, where I think he put all the disguisements of *Jupiter*, *Apollo*, *Mercury*, and of all the other Gods of the Fiction. But the best was, that what he did to continue the longer at *Monaco*, had like to have driven him from thence; for fearing lest he should be discarded when the painting of this Cabinet came once to be finished, he wrought so slowly, as one might say it was *Penelope's* Web, and how he undid that in the night which he had done in the day. Nevertheless, whereas the little which he did was very excellent, the Princess would not follow the counsell that my impatience gave her about it. Now if the Prince of *Salerno* intimated love to the Princess by his Pictures, the Musician did no less by his Songs; for with equivocating words he told her what he was, and what he thought. But she had her mind so eloigned from such like things, as she made no application, either of the one, or of the other of them to her self. In the mean time, these two Rivals becoming every day more and more amorous, and the Princess always expressing a great deal of goodness towards them, they believed, each of them in his particular, that she esteemed them enough to pardon a violence when as they should execute it; though not enough to receive them favourably when as she might refuse them: so that carried with some hope, and a great deal of despair all at once, the Prince of *Salerno*, by the means of the



Matter of his Horse, who came into the Town in the habit of a Fisher-man, to know if he wanted any thing, gave order to have a vessell of War brought near to *Monaco*, for the design which he premeditated: And *Don Fernando*, who knew well enough that the *Spaniards* do not disapprove of those who augment their dominion by any way whatsoever, sent a Gentleman, whom he had drawn disguised into the town, to fetch him money, and some troops of the *Milanese*, by the permission of the Marquis of *Gnast*, to whom he wrote about it, for the executing of that which he thought on. During these preparations, the Painter and the Musician continued their endeavours still about the Princess; the one always made mysterious Pictures, and the other always sung Songs, wherein he spake of love without being understood, so that they came to be somewhat suspicious one of another; and that which began to make them so, was, for that *Don Fernando* not seeing the Princess enough to content the extreme passion wherein he was for her, had intreated the Painter in private to draw her picture for him, and let no body know of it. The manner of *Don Fernando's* making this proposition begot some suspicion in the Prince of *Salerno*; and the manner also of his excusing himself from embracing it, made *Don Fernando* observe him with the more care; so that passing over again in their memory how they had lived together before, they found wherewith to augment their suspicions, but not wherewith to doubt of that which they thought. After this they never lived well together; they traduced one anothers profession; the Painter said that he had heard better singing at *Rome*; and the other affirmed that all the designs of the Prince of *Salerno's* Pictures were stoln from antient Painters. One day as they were in the Princesses chamber, they entred into a dispute before her, and by that liberty forgot the personage which they represented; yet was not she offended at it, but contrarily took pleasure in hearing them. The Painter would have his Art carry it from Musick; he said that it was the imitator of Nature; he vaunted that he could beguile the eyes, and deceive reason by the illusions of perspective; he said moreover, that it was Painting which made men live after their death; that it was she which erected Tropheis for the victorious; that by her we see battels which we had not seen; that by her we know *Alexander* and all the *Heroes* of Antiquity; that by her we make voyages without stirring out of our Cabinets; that by her we see our friends though they be absent; that she was a visible History, a mute Poetic; and to say all, that she was so excellent, as a good Painter might almost boast himself to be the creator of the things which he represents. The Musician, who would not give place to the Painter, maintained, that there was the same difference between Painting and Musick, as between the body and the soul; that this first was wholly materiall and gross in comparison of the other, which was altogether spiritual; that if Painting erected Tropheis to the victorious, Musick sung their victories; that the one touched nought but the eyes, whereas the other, all celestial and divine, wrought upon the very soul with so much power, as she excited or appeased the passions as she pleased; and by this sweet tyranny rendred her self absolute mistress of all reasonable persons. He said farther, that to judge rightly of the advantage which she had over Painting, we were but to consider, that the best illusions she can make, do alwaies work a greater effect upon the rude vulgar than on worthy people; that indeed she might strike these with admiration, but never utterly deceive them, so that she operates more powerfully upon the ignorant than on the able. He added, that it was not so with Musick, which did not predominate absolutely but over reasonable persons: that to have wit is not enough for us to become her subjects, and be charmed by her; but we must also have, not only some knowledge of this Art, but likewise a great and noble soul; so that quite contrary to Painting, the more able we are, the more we suffer our selves to be vanquished by her charms: That the other was but a deceiver, which pays us with nothing but apparences, and so impotent, that she can do nothing of her self, or to say better, that she is nothing without the help of cloth, pencils, and colours; That the beauties of Musick were effective beauties, and to shew her independency we are but to consider, that she is no other than a pure effect of the imagination, guided by judgement



judgement; so that having no need of forraign things, it is not hard to judge, what advantage the hath over Painting. It is certain, that the dispute of these two men seemed too transcendent to me for persons of their profession, and I began to look on the Princess in a manner, which testified unto her how much I was amazed thereof; when as *Don Fernando*, perceiving it, took presently upon him the humor, which is ordinarily attributed to Musicians; and with a capriciousness, wherein no feigning appeared, he gave an hundred geering quipps to the Prince of *Salerno*, who played his part as well as the other; so that returning out of the amazement which I had been in, I reflected no further upon it, but heard the rest of their dispute with great delight; for they made so pleasant a Satyre against each others profession, as the Princess herself, spite of her melancholy, could not forbear laughing. Howbeit she would have them become friends before they departed; and having demanded of them why they bore such a spleen one to an other, for she had been advertised of it, they were much troubled how to answer her. *Don Fernando*, being ever the bolder, spake first in this encounter, and told her, that on his part she was the true cause of it. The Painter, exceedingly surpris'd with this discourse, knew not what to think thereof; when as *Don Fernando* prosecuting it, gave them to understand, how that which made him so averse unto him, was the thought he had, that when he should be gone from *Monaco*, the Princess could not chuse but remember him, because she should alwaies see his Pictures, whereas if it were his ill fortune to depart from thence, she would presently forget him, nothing remaining of him that might make him be remembered of her. If this jealousy did not shew as much malice as affection, replied the Painter, I should fear the Princess might take it well at your hands, but as I believe her to be very equitable, so I think she will find the coldness which is betwixt us better grounded, when as I shall tell her, that our dissension proceeds from our not knowing one another. Or it may be, said *Don Fernando* interrupting him, from our knowing one another too well. Never a whit replied the Painter, for you are as unskilfull in painting, as I am in musick, and so we are but bad judges of each other; and it is the Princess alone, which will one day put a difference between us, when as she shall know me better: and that the designs which I am about shall be wholly finished. The Princess, who thought he spake of the designs of his Pictures, told him, that she knew him enough already to admire all that he did. And whereas *Don Fernando* would have replied, she forbid him, and commanded them both to live better together afterwards, than they had done. They answered, that they would obey her as much as they could, and so retired with a great deal of unquietness. The Prince of *Salerno* found *Don Fernando* too hardy for a Musician, and found also, that all his songs were too passionate, too amorous, and suiting too much with the Princess, for to be sung without design. In fine, he thought, that as he was capable of disguising himself like a Painter, so might another be of disguising himself like a Musician. Nevertheless this likely suspicion continued not long with him; and considering how much men of this profession are caressed by great persons, he no longer marvelled at his boldness; he found likewise that his observations upon his songs were ridiculous; for, said he, as we understood since, upon what subject would I have them made, that they should not suit with the Princess? All songs for the most part are of love, they speak of beauty, of despair, of respect, of fear, of jealousy; they say that they dare not discover themselves; that love would have them; and that respect will not suffer them to do so: And whereas few songs are made upon giving of thanks, I am not to wonder if *Don Fernando* sings that, which is sung every where, and in all languages. Whilst the Prince of *Salerno* deceived himself in this sort; the Musician reasoned with himself about that which had passed between them; but that which he stood most upon, was his observation, that in all the designs which this Painter had drawn at *Monaco*, there was alwaies some disguise in them. Howbeit he himself destroyed his own reasonings, as well as the Prince of *Salerno*; and coming to consider, that Fiction is one of the greatest sciences of Painters, he changed his opinion: And that which prevailed yet more with him, was to see him, whom he be-

held many times as his Rivall, paint so excellently; for he could not imagine that a man of quality could understand this Art so perfectly. These divers thoughts were never for all that so well settled in their minds, but that they past often from the one to the other, and so were alwaies ready to quarrell one with another. Sometimes the interest of their Nations was the occasion of their disputes; and if the Princess authority, joyned to the fear which they had of venturing themselves unseasonably, and destroying their designs, had not kept them from it, they had without doubt fought more than once. In the mean time the Princess and I lived without suspecting any thing of the truth; Howbeit I remember, that one day it came into my thought, that there was something extraordinary in *Don Fernando*; for teaching me an ayr which I found to be extremely passionate, and of his own making, I demanded of him laughing, whether it were possible for him to speak so of love, without being in love. He answered me thereunto, that he could not, for that it was impossible for him to speak against his heart. But, said I unto him, may not I be your confident, and may not I know the person for whom you make such excellent things? You would no sooner be my confident, answered he, but you would be mine enemy, wherefore I will not tell you any thing, nor shall you know it but when I can no longer conceal it. I confess my simplicity unto you, for my first apprehension being over, I believed that I had some share in this discourse; and fearing I should be obliged to intreat the Princess to turn *Don Fernando* away, if he came to lose the respect which he owed me, I pressed him no further, contenting my self with being his scholer, and not his confident. And I was so affraid to part with him, as I never spake of this matter to the Princess, who past a good part of her time in seeing the Prince of *Salerno* paint.

In the mean space these two disguised Lovers finding no reason for them to discover themselves, were even in despair with it. They saw the Princess every day more firm in the resolution she had taken; for whereas they were dextrous and interested, they had so gained some of the Princesses Officers, as by them they knew all that did pass, and all that had past. I have told you already, that the Princess employed a good part of the day in seeing him paint, this entertainment agreeing better with her melancholy, than Musick; It was then impossible, but that, being good as she is, the Prince of *Salerno* should often have occasion to talk with her; and in those encounters, she had found so much spirit and civility in him, as one day she pressed him to let her know where he had led his life. And whereas he had taken a resolution, which you shall understand by and by, he answered her, that he had never had any other Master but the Prince of *Salerno*, who was one of the most considerable, both for his birth and riches, that was in all the Kingdom of *Naples*; that it had been in his late fathers house where he had learn'd to know the fashions of the world better, than ordinarily Painters do; and that not long before, through a mischance, which he could not avoid, he was come away from the Prince of *Salerno*s service; But, Madam, continued he, though I be from him, I cannot chuse but say, that his inclinations are great; that he loves glory and vertue, for touching his wit, it is not for me to judge of it. I mervail, said the Princess unto him, if he be such as you say, that you would leave him; for being great in birth, mighty in riches, and so vertuous as you paint him forth to be, he must also without doubt be liberall, so that I do not see any reason for your abandoning him. That is it, Madam, answered he, wherein I can not satisfie you; howsoever I can assure you, that next to you, there is no body in the world whom I would serve with more affection. It was in this sort that the Prince of *Salerno* began to give good impressions of himself to the Princess, that he might prepare her the better to his desire; and divers times the Princess and he had such like conversations. At length that Master of his horse, whom he had sent to *Naples*, returned unto the Town disguised as he used to be, and acquainted him, that he had left at *Villa-franco*, which as you know is near hereunto, a vessell thoroughly furnished with all things, and an hundred well resolved and affectionate soldiers in her. The Prince told him, that he would have him come  
and

and present himself the next day at *Monaco*; and giving him a letter for the Princess; and another for his Governor, who was come thither whither he would or no, he gave him an express charge not to make any shew of knowing him; if so be his people should happen to be admitted into the Town: He sent him away then thoroughly instructed in all that he had to do. The day following, the vessell belonging to the Prince of *Salerno* (who that day found out the meanes to be near the Princess) presented it self for to enter into the port; but according to order, a barque having been sent unto it, and having understood what this vessell was, the Princess was presently advertised thereof, who continuing in her resolution, commanded, that the Prince of *Salerno's* messenger and his train onely should be admitted, and that withall they should come into the port in the same barque which had been sent forth to discover them. The business was executed as she had commanded it; the Painter, the Musician, and my self, were at that time with her; and vvh whereas she remembered that this Painter had told her, how he had belonged to the Prince of *Salerno*: You shall see now, said she unto him, that your old Master will draw you away from my service; if it should be so, continued she, what answer will you have me make? That I will dy rather than abandon you, replied he: But I do not think it is his design, and knowing him as I do he will rather increase the number of your servants, than rob you any. As he said thus, his people arrived, who, without making shew of knowing him, saluted the Princess with a great deal of respect, and the Prince of *Salerno's* old Governor delivered her a letter written to her from his Master; she read it with blushing, and though I perceived a great deal of unquietness in the Painters face, yet was I perswaded that only the interest which he seemed to have in the Prince of *Salerno*, or the fear he was in lest he should be forced to quit the Princesses service, was the cause of it. After the reading of this letter I knew by her discourse that it was a proposition of marriage, and a declaration of love. She said to the Princes Messenger, that his Master did her an honor which she was unworthy of. And whereas this Governor would have enlarged himself upon the praises of his Master, I know his vertue and his merit, replied she, and here you see one by me, said the Princess, shewing him the Prince of *Salerno*, who hath drawn me his picture, and I doubt not but it is very like him, since I can assure you that he is one of the best Painters of the world. This gallanterie gave great hope to the Prince of *Salerno*, and filled the mind of *Don Fernando* with despair. In the mean time the Princess told the Princes Messenger, that he should have her answer the next day, and then commanded her Officers to have a care of him, and to conduct him to the lodgings where strangers were entertained. They were no sooner gone, but the Prince of *Salerno* making use of the liberty which the Princesses goodness gave to all her servants when she was in private. I rightly foresee, Madam, said he unto her, that the Prince of *Salerno* would not make me change my Mistress. For my part, said *Don Fernando* interrupting him, and addressing his speech to the Princess, with an intention to use a trick for the destroying of the Prince of *Salerno's* designs (whom he did not imagine was so near him) I think I should betray my duty, and be wanting to the fidelity which I owe you, if seeing your happiness, or unhappiness concerned, I should not tell you, that this Prince of *Salerno* is nothing less than what you are told he is. Do you know him, demanded the Painter of him with a great deal of coldness? I have seen him an hundred times, replied he, during three months space that I was at *Naples*; he would have had me live with him, after I had taught him some Spanish Aires; but having been acquainted with the fantasticalness of his humor, I would not serve him. Besides, Madam, this Prince is neither rich, nor powerfull in his Country, in such manner as one would make you believe; and I wonder how he should be so hardy, as to extend his ambition so far as to you. Permit me, Madam, said the Painter interrupting him, to clear my self of the doubt wherein I am, and to ask of this enemy to the Prince of *Salerno*, whether he be young, or old, and in what place they grew acquainted together? for as he talks, I dare say he knows him him not. He is young, answered *Don Fernando*, and that you may not think but that



I know him, I assure you that I found him the first time I saw him at *Naples*: to have but a bad aspect, and to be very uncomely in his behavior. The suspicion which I have will not end so soon, replied the Painter, for if I had undertaken it, I could let her excellency see, that he is not so unhandfome as you would make him to be. The Princess, who had no interest in this dispute, nor apprehended that which the Painter said, as he meant it, interrupted him, for to demand whether he could draw the picture of a person that was absent, and make it like him? Never doubt of it, Madam, said he unto her. If you draw that of the Prince of *Salerno*, said *Don Fernando*, I am sure it will not resemble you, for indeed he is nothing so handfome. You do me too much honor, answered the Painter coldly; but to draw me out of the doubt wherein I am, tell me, who hath informed you that the Prince of *Salerno* is so fantastical? All his servants, replied the other, who complained exceedingly of it. I wonder at that, said the Painter; but who hath told you too, that he was not rich? All the people of *Naples*, answered the other, who are well acquainted with the disorders of his House; and then again I perceived it well enough my self, for he gave me nothing for the paines I took in teaching him to sing. It is not his custom to be so sparing, answered the Painter; But tell me yet, who served him at that time? This old Governor which you saw but now, was he with him? What were his recreations? what was his delight? what was his employment? I think I did not see that man about him, answered *Don Fernando*, and for his Master, I found him so little worthy of esteem, that I did not observe him; howsoever I am very sure that he is not considerable at all, either in the Court of *Spain*, or with the *Vice-Roy*. I see no likelihood, replied the Painter, for one to believe that the Emperor and the *Vice-Roy* have entertained you with these matters, whilst you were playing on the Violl. There is yet less, said the Musician, that they should tell you the contrary of that which I affirm, whilst you were besmearing of walls. Ah! Madam, said the Painter interrupting him, permit me to punish the lying and malice of this impostor, who dares traduce a man so insolently, whom certainly he does not know, and a Prince too, who cannot be absolutely without merit, since he is capable of the design to serve you; He hath been my Master, and is now your servant, pardon me then if for your sake I lose the respect which is due unto you. Do not you fear, said the Princess unto him, that *Don Fernando's* speeches shall ever hurt the Prince of *Salerno*; neither doubt you, that this noble ardor which you show in maintaining his party shall displease me, but contrarily I shall esteem of you the more for it; and I forbid *Don Fernando* from ever speaking of that Prince but with respect; but withall I charge you not to remember what he hath said, and command both of you once more to live lovingly together. The Painter wholly filled with hope, rendered thanks to the Princess; and the Musician not able to doe otherwise, got him away as soon as the Princess was entred into her Cabinet, with a purpose to answer the letter which she had received from the Prince of *Salerno*: Who being withdrawn in private, and reflecting on *Don Fernando's* boldness in maintaining of a lie, and on all that had past betwixt them, he no longer doubted but that he was a man of quality, whom, the same reason which had made him a Painter, had made a Musician. Coming then to look on *Don Fernando*, as on his Rivall, he had an hundred times a mind to discover himself unto him, that he might oblige him to fight with him; but this first sense of revenge and jealousy being over, he knew it would ruine his design; For He considered, that if the Princess answer to him was favourable, he should have time enough to be revenged; and if it were not, that then he should discover himself to ill purpose, and deprive himself of the means of executing that which he had premeditated; he resolved then to make a shew, in case the Princess answer'd rigorously, of having forgotten what had past, with an intent to live very civilly with *Don Fernando*, to the end that conversing often with him, and observing all his actions, he might not be prevented by him, *Don Fernando* on his side believed, after he had well thought upon it, that this Painter had been sent by the Prince of *Salerno* to speak well of him to the Princess before he declared himself, knowing well enough that she

she permitted not the entrance of any person of quality into *Monaco*; and in this thought he purposed likewise to observe him very carefully. In the mean time, the Princess sent the next morning for the Prince of *Salerno's* messenger to receive his answer, where the Painter, and the Musician were also present, having thrust themselves amongst those which conducted this Messenger to her. The Princess, in giving him her letter, prayed him to assure his Master, that she should be eternally obliged to him for the honor he had done her; that she besought him to believe, that though she did not grant him that which he desired of her, yet could it not be termed a refusal, since she refused him nothing but what she could not grant him; that she owed that respect to the ashes of her father, as not to violate that faith which she had given by his commandment; and that being thus no longer her own, he was not to take it ill, if she assured him that she could never be his; that nothing resting in her power, but the esteem of him and his friendship, she assured him both of the one and the other, and of an acknowledgement that should last as long as her life. This obliging refusal asswaged not the Prince of *Salerno's* grief, who himself heard his own sentence pronounced; nevertheless he had reason enough left to use his uttermost endeavour to conceal it, for fear he should be suspected of the Princess. As for *Don Fernando*, the joy which he testified for this adventure was so great, as the Painter was the more confirmed in the opinion which he had. After the Prince of *Salerno's* Messenger was gone, & that the Princess had given him a diamond of great value, and that she had commanded him to be conducted to the Barque, which was to carry him back to his Vessel, the Painter craved leave of her that he might accompany him with the rest, for he durst not speak to him, said he, unless it pleased her to permit him. You are discreet, said the Princess, and this respect merits more than this which you demand of me. The Painter having obtained this permission, went and overtook his Governor, to salute him; this man, who was instructed as he ought, used him like a Painter, and dexterously giving him the commodity to talk with him, this Prince willed him to return unto *Villa-Franco*, under pretext of mending something about his vessel, and to send the Master of his Horse the next morning disguised unto him, with as much money as as he could bring. Now you are to understand, that the day before he happened to meet and know an old Souldier, which sometime had born armes under his Father, and whose life he had saved, being at that time Sergeant of one of the Companies of the Garrison. The Prince of *Salerno* coming to know him, found the means to speak with him in private, and after he had given him three hundred pistolets, he made himself known unto him. This man ravished to see the Son of his old Master, but more yet with his liberality, testified after his manner, both his acknowledgement, and his joy. In the mean time the Prince of *Salerno*, who had not made himself known unto him only to enrich him, told him how he was to serve him in a business that concern'd all his happiness. This man told him, that he was his subject, and his obligee, so that consequently he might expect any thing from him. Then the Prince asked him, whether he lived alone in his house, and having learnt that he did, he asked of him further, whether he could not suborn a Fisher-man with money; this Souldier having answered him, that the poverty of those kind of people did not permit him to doubt but that he should find out an hundred in stead of one, he gave him wherewithall to gain him, without discovering any part of his design unto him, assuring him only that this Fisher-man should be exposed to no perill, nor have ought els to do, than to carry his nets: That which made the Prince of *Salerno* do thus, was, for that he had observed how just at ten of the clock in the forenoon the ordinary Guard still used to rise, and thereby had conceived, that they which saw a Fisher-man go forth laden with his nets about nine, would not be there at five in the evening, and so consequently he might come in again accompanied with two men attired like Fishermen, and laden with nets as he was, without any notice taken of them. After he had reasoned thus with himself, he resolved to execute that which he had premeditated long before, judging rightly by the answer which the Princess had given his Messenger, that nothing

but

but violence could put him in possession of her. This design being absolutely concluded, he sought for the means to execute it. This Sergeant brought him a Fisher-man into a place apart, whom he instructed with that which he would have him to do; and the next day this man went out of the Town about eight of the clock in the morning laden with nets, and (as I have already said) before the Guard was risen; but when it was towards evening, he gave over fishing, and went to meet with two Souldiers disguised like Fishermen, who came by Land from the Prince of *Salerno's* Vessell, which was at *Villa-Franco*, and waited for him at a certain Rendezvouz which had been appointed him: Having shared his nets amongst them, he re-entred into the Town, and incountring none of those souldiers at the Gate which had seen him in the morning, no notice was taken of them, and so they went along with him home; where they stayed till it was night, and then these two men having left their nets there, were conducted by him to the Sergeants house, in which they abode concealed untill the Prince of *Salerno* had need of them. By this device there entred every day two souldiers into the Town, who carryed two Pistolls and two short swords hidden in the nets, wherevwith they were laden. But whereas there vvasto be thirty days before the threescore souldiers, vvwhich he had destined for his enterprize, could enter, he vvvas in an extreme impatience; howbeit he concealed it so vvell, as vve could never perceive it. In the mean time he had gotten him a ladder of cords, vvwherevwith he purposed to bring a dozen souldiers into the Castle thorough the vvindowvs of his chamber, vvwhich opened upon a place vvwhere no body usually passed, and where no body could trouble his design; for upon the disorder which had been between him and the Musician, they had been lodged assunder. For the rest of his Souldiers, he had resolved to send them under the conduct of the Master of his house, and that Sergeant, to the gate of the Town, for to render themselves Masters of it, whilst he should carry the Princess away by force, for which effect his Vessell was to be at the Port. But whilst he attended for the entrance of all his souldiers, and that *Don Fernando* also attended the return of him from whom he hoped for succour in his enterprize, they lived better together than ever they had done, and in show they loved one another extremely, though indeed they hated and observed one another as two enemies. As for *Don Fernando*, he had (during the design which he kept close) fallen into a strict league of friendship with one of the principall Inhabitants of *Monaco*, whom the Princess had made Captain of the Gate. His first admittance into this mans house, was to teach his only daughter to sing, afterwards his conversation grew so pleasing unto him, as he frequented thither very often, and so they came to love one another exceedingly. *Don Fernando*, in the thought which he was in, turned his eyes upon this Captain, and having heard him say divers times, that the people began to murmur against the Princess, for that it seemed she had resolved all her life-time to make a desert of *Monaco*, and utterly to ruine the trade thereof, by the difficulty which there was of entring into it, he resolved to confide in him, as he hid, after he had blinded him first with a great sum of money, which he gave him. And that which made him not doubt but that the Gentleman, whom he had sent, would bring him Troopes, was, because he knew the Armies of *Spain* were very powerfull in *Italy*, and that if he could once render himself Master of this place, she should not only be justified, but quickly succoured; the Councell of *Spain* never wanting pretexts to invade the territories of their Neighbors, when as they find occasion for it. During this expectation, the Princess had had her unqu etness, as well as her Lovers; for that Lieutenant of her Guard, whom she had sent to seek you, seemed too long to her in returning; and whereas she had made it a secret, I was the alone to whom she complained of it; Nevertheless one of her women chancing upon a day to overhear somewhat confusedly what she said unto me, believed that you were suddenly to return; and her joy was so great for it, as she told this false newes to all the Princes Officers, who quickly acquainted the Painter and Musician with it, never dreaming that they would be otherwise concerned in it than to rejoyce at it as they cid. Howbeit this

newes



newes wrought another effect, for thereupon both the one and the other of them hastened the finishing of the designs they had in hand. They wondred notwithstanding to see that that which it seemed should have made the Princess glad, should render her so melancholy, as she would scarce see the Prince of Salerno paint any more, nor hear *Don Fernando* sing any longer: But I found a means to make her change her resolution; for calling to mind two songs, which you had made for the Princess, I got *Don Fernando* to learn them; and that he might take more care in singing of them, I told him whole they were, and for whom they were made, for fear his negligence should cause the Princess to hate him. I marked well that he blushed when I propounded this unto him; but whereas I have alwaies been ingenious in finding out reasons to deceive my self, I was yet more in this occasion; and I believed that onely the spight of being obliged to sing the Aires which he himself had not made, was the cause of his choler, and in this error I continued even unto the end. For when he had learned these Aires, after they had been repeated unto him above twenty times, yet did he not sing them very well: Nevertheless the Princess would hear no other thing, howsoever I intreated her to the contrary; so that *Don Fernando* was thereby reduced to that point, as he could not see the Princess unless he would sing his Rivalls songs: Which he did with so much constraint, as he made me to laugh at him; For still I was perswaded that he did it out of caprichiousness and pride, though indeed it was out of jealousy. As for the Prince of Salerno, another adventure befell him. When as there lacked but two dayes of the time wherein all his Souldiers were to come in, the Princess remembred how she had heard him say, that he could draw the picture of one that was absent, that should be like him, and thereupon believed that by the instructions which she could give him he might peradventure draw a picture that would resemble you, though he had never seen you. She propounds the matter unto him, assures him that he shall infinitely oblige her if he can do it; and though she told him not precisely who the person was that she desired the picture of, yet he knew that undoubtedly it was yours which she would have. At first he said, that he believed he could not do it; but after he had thought on it a little, I will endeavour, Madam, said he unto her laughing, to content you, provided you will have the goodness not to intreat me as an ordinary Painter, and that you will acknowledge unto me, after you have seen it, that it is the picture of the man, who of all the world honors you with most respect, and loves you with most passion. You know too much for a Painter, said the Princess unto him blushing, howsoever I will pardon you this boldness, and will acknowledge that unto you which you say, provided you presently go in hand with your work. The Painter having for answer made a love obeisance, went to fetch a cloth and colours for him to work in her chamber. When he was arrived there the Princess would have had a great glass taken away, which hung right opposite to the place where he had seated himself, for fear the Sun which gave full upon it, should mar it; But he prayed her that it might not be removed, because as he said, it served to ease his sight. The Princess then began to describe you as you are, and particularising unto him all the features of your face as well as possibly she could, she thought she had instructed him sufficiently. Whereupon he began to design this picture, and pausing at every draught that he made, as it were to recollect his memory, at length he traced out all the rest. And after the Princess had caused him to alter something, she profest that it was very near to the same which she desired; but for fear he had forgotten what she had already told him, she represented unto him again the colour of your hair, of your eyes, and of your complexion. Then he took his palet, and his pencills, and tricked the picture, which certainly resembled you a little, but less than when it was only traced out with the cole. The Princess marvelled hereat; and knew not whereunto she might attribute the cause of it; for considering every feature in particular, she saw that little lacked but they were just as she had figured them, and yet for all that the whole put together scarce resembled you at all. But the Painter nothing abashed at it, told her that it was but a tricking, and

pass his word unto her, that the first time he should touch it he would bring it to that pass, as it would be impossible for her not to know in this picture the most faithfull of her Lovers. The day following the Painter came again into the Princesses chamber by her order, and seared himself in the same place where he sat before. The Princess instructed him again, and he making shew of hearkning very attentively unto her, beheld himself in that glass which hung before him; but the more he wrought, the less did this picture resemble you, though she could not well say where the fault of it was. She made him touch the eyes again, alter something about the mouth, and so of all the other features; and though he seemed exactly to obey her, yet kept he still from the Princesses design. And this shadow of *Justino* which appeared in this picture was defaced at every stroke that he gave, although he seemed to use his uttermost endeavour carefully to follow the Princesses directions. And when she testified to the Painter the uneasiness she was in for it, he told her, that to judge well of a picture, one was not to look upon it whilst it was a doing, and to discern the faults the better of that which he was about, she was to let him work an hower upon it without looking on him. The Princess believed him, and taking me away with her to the other end of the chamber, we left him alone; but we were much amazed, when he had advertised us that his work was done, and that he had brought it into the light for us to judge the better of it, to see that it was his own picture which he had drawn, and not yours. The Princess then perceived plainly, that this was not a matter of chance, and in an instant calling to mind so many things, as she had seen without thinking of them, she made no doubt but that there was somewhat, which was mysterious enough in this adventure; Yet had she sufficient constancy of mind not to shew all her amazement, and to take from the Painter the meanes of discovering himself further; I well foresaw, said she unto him with a seeming simplicity, that this glass would make you spoyle your work; And I am very sorry, continued she, going towards her Cabinet, that you have lost your time, and I too. If this picture, said the Prince of *Salerno*, in following her two or three steps, does not resemble the most passionate of your Lovers, I with all my heart renounce the profession which I make. Take heed, answered the Princess, that my anger becomes not as strong, as your presumption is great. Madam, said he unto her, reayning her by the Gown, I am not so faulty as I seem to be, and to justify my self in some sort to you, I must tell you, that I have no other design in drawing this picture, than to let you see that the Prince of *Salerno* is not so ugly as *Don Fernando* hath described him unto you; For by a strange chance, I resemble him so near, as I might well be taken for him: And that I may not conceal all the truth from you, continued he, I will confess to you, that it is by his consent that I am here at *Mosco*; that it is to speak to you of his affection, that thus I cast my self at your feet, most humbly intreating you to believe, that no man ever adored you with more respect. Answer then, Madam, I beseech you, but not with fury, to the end that that faithfull Lover may shew himselfe to you. Under what form soever the Prince of *Salerno* may present himself, he shal alwaies receive the same entertainment from me; my resolutions do not easily change, and should he lay all the Crownes of the world at my feet, yet should I refuse him as now I do; But as for you, said she unto him, I shall know how to use you as you ought to be, and I am very much deceived if you talk to me long of loves. After this the Princess retired without attending his answer. For my part, I profess unto you that I was so astonished at this adventure, as I could not speak. Howsoever I followed the Princess into her Cabinet, and respect obliged the Prince of *Salerno* to go out of her chamber, conceiving rightly by the manner wherewith he was answered, that his persuasions would obtain nothing. That which made him carry himself thus, and to use this dangerous gallantry, was, that being upon the point of executing his design, he would have been glad to have found an occasion to see, whether he could not by fair meanes have prevailed with the Princess, without having recourse unto violence; and whereas his men were ready for the action, he feared not the hazarding of the matter; and then again the love which he bore to the Princess was so strong,



as he was resolved to perish, or possess her. In the mean time the Princess and I knew not what to think, nor what to resolve; and she demanding my advice about it, I knew not what to answer her. What think you of it, *Amilia*, said she unto me? This Painter, hath he lost his respect, or his reason? Is he an impostor, or a Prince? For my part, Madam, said I unto her, I cannot tell what to say to you of it; he hath had patience enough for a Prince, in the abode that he hath made here, and in the disputes which he hath had with *Don Fernando*; But it must be acknowledged also that he hath too much wit, and too much boldness for a Painter. Whatsoever he is, said the Princess, he shall not stay in *Monaco*. Madam, said I unto her, I am even of your mind, Prince or Painter, Lover or Enemy, it is fit he should be gone; But if by chance he be the latter, it should be done without ill-intreating him, for truly the loving you is no such great crime: And if it be the Prince of *Salerno*, he is more unhappy than faulty, and more worthy of your pity than of your indignation. I am of a contrary opinion, said the Princess unto me, for if he be a Prince, I look upon him as a dreadful enemy; But if he be a senseless Painter, he is unworthy of my anger, and his folly may beget compassion in me. We reasoned in this manner all the evening, without being able to judge certainly whether this Painter were the Prince of *Salerno*, or some one of his servants whom he had sent to be about the Princess, howbeit we believed him to be rather the first than the other: And after we had examined the matter, it was resolved that this Painter should the next day be turned out of *Monaco*, without letting him know that he was suspected to be a Prince, and also without any other ill usage, than banishing him. With this intention the Princess went to bed, and would have me lye with her that night, it being impossible for her, as she said, to have any hope of sleeping, as long as you should have a Rivall in *Monaco*. Whilst the Princess and I were agitating in this sort, the Prince of *Salerno*, who had found that all his hope consisted wholly in force, resolved to defer his design no longer, and to execute it the night ensuing; he went then to seek out that Sergeant with whom he held intelligence, and to speak with the Master of his horse, to the end his vessell might not fail to be at the Port just at the hower which he had appointed, and that he should deal in such sort, as all might be ready against need should be. He gave them the time and the signall of the enterprize, and thinking that he had well disposed of every thing, he retired into the Castle as he used to do, taking but two pistols and a sword along with him, which he caryed secretly into his chamber, in case any violence should be offered him before his design could be executed. If the Prince of *Salerno* was busied, no less was *Don Fernando*; For he had understood some dayes before, by the return of him whom he had sent into the *Milanese*, that according to his, and the Marquis of *Gnasts* directions, he had brought him store of money and jewells, together with five hundred men, which were come thither not in a body, but two and two in a company, and so were lodged in all the Villages about *Monaco*, with expresse order to render themselves all upon a certain night, whereof they should be advertised, within a mile of the Town; So that *Don Fernando* stayd for nothing but the return of the Captain of the Gate, who was gone to *Genova*, and whose faith he had corrupted. This man, for our ill fortune; or to say better for our good fortune, came back as he desired, so that the next morning, which was the very same day wherein this Painter finished the picture that resembled you so ill, he went and found him out, and having given him to the value of ten thousand crownes in jewells, he confirmed him by this liberality in the design he had undertaken. But not to prolong my discourse, it sufficeth that I tell you, how after he had discovered himself to this man to be that he was a good while before; after he had perswaded him, that the retiredness wherein the Princess lived, would in the end undo *Monaco*; because, said he, it was impossible, having no Prince to defend it, but that some one or other would seize upon it; after he had told him, that this place was too important, for to be left undefended under the Government of a mayd; and that seeing it was to pass into the hands of strangers, he was to desire that it might fall into the power of a man, who would



be obliged to him for it, and that was able to make his fortune. After all these things, I say, this man charmed with the present benefit, with the hope of what was to come, and believing too that it would be somewhat advantageous for the Princess, he promised *Don Fernando*, who communicated his whole design unto him, to deliver him the Gate whensoever he pleased. Hereupon he sent that Gentleman, which belonged unto him, to carry his directions to all the severall places where his souldiers were, to the end they should precisely meet together within a mile of *Monaco* an hour after midnight, and that they should repair to the gate of the Town as soon as they could see a flaming Torch on a Tower. The strangeness of this incounter was, that the very same night wherein the Prince of *Salerno* was to execute his design, *Don Fernando* resolved, without knowing ought of his Rivalls affairs, no longer to defer his enterprize, purposing to die, or to render himself Master of the Town, and possessor of the Princess: so that whilst we were all the afternoon seeing the Prince of *Salerno* paint, he had been taking order for all things as well as the Captain of the Gate. Their designs being in these terms. You make me tremble with astonishment, said *Justiniano*, interrupting *Emilia*. You will have yet more, continued she, when I shall tell you, that just about two hours after midnight, which by an extraordinary chance proved to be the very point, both of the Prince of *Salerno's* and *Don Fernando's* enterprize; that first having caused twelve souldiers to enter thorough the window of his chamber with the help of a ladder of cords, and commanded the Sergeant to go and seize upon the Gate of the town, that he might forcibly carry away the Princess in his Vessell, which was to be at the Port at the same hour, we heard the outward chamber-door broke open; whereupon the Princess gave a great skrike, and without standing to know what the matter should be, the first thing that came into her thought was to put on her clothes, to the end she might not be found in bed, wherein I helped her with all the speed that possibly I could. In the mean time her women cryed out at the vvindowes, but the Princesses Officers lay in a quarter so far off, because she never feared any thing from the Towns side, and the Prince of *Salerno's* execution was so sudden, as scarcely had the Princess gotten on a Night-gown with much hast, but he entred into her chamber followed by ten souldiers, having left two at the Castle-gate, who had stabbed the Porter upon his awaking. I leave you to think what the Princess became in this occasion, when as maugre her resistance and mine, maugre her tears, and maugre her cries, she saw her self carryed away forcibly, by these souldiers, and led out of the Castle. I can indure no more, said *Justiniano*, with as much grief, and almost as much choler as if he had seen his Mistress carryed away by force. Have patience, said *Emilia*, for yet you do not see all our Enemies. When as the Prince of *Salerno* had forcibly carryed away the Princess, I followed her all in tears, and catching fast hold of one of the corners of her gown, we went in this sort even to the Gate of the Town, neither the Princess nor I having the power to cry out, so much were we seized with fear, and our judgements troubled. The Prince of *Salerno* found not the matter so easie as he had believed it; for the Sergeant, who had gotten the Ward, and that was to make use of it for the surprising of the Court of Guard, and cutting them in pieces, arrived just at the gate, as the Captain that served *Don Fernando*, was delivering it up to his men, who were come thither under the conduct of the Gentleman which belonged unto him, after they had seen the Signall on the Tower. And whereas he had order to dye, or to render himself Master of it, what resistance soever he met withall, he had already begun a sharp and bloody fight, when as the Prince of *Salerno*, and those that kept the Princess, arrived at that place. And being a Prince of a great courage, after he had commanded his ten souldiers to look well to the Princess, he went with his sword in his hand to see what the matter was. Never was there any thing more dreadfull than that same night; *Don Fernando*, who lay not in the Castle that night, who was ready at the gate to receive in his men, and who was in the head of them, when as the Sergeant arrived there, thought he was discovered, and so did likewise the Captain of the gate; the Prince of *Salerno* incounting so great

great a number of Enemies, could not tell what to imagine; and the darkness of the night augmenting this disorder yet more, there was one of the greatest conflicts that hath been seen; for in this confusion they killed on both sides without knowing one another. In the mean time the alarm being taken up throughout the whole Town, and the bruit spread abroad that the Princess was forcibly carried away, all the Troopes repaired to the place of armes, and all the people put themselves into a posture of succouring us. And whereas it was easie to discern on which side the Enemies were, the Prince of *Salerno* saw himself quickly inclosed both without and within; but first he came twice or thrice to the place where his Souldiers guarded us, to see in what estate the Princess was. And when he perceived by the abundance of people, which came running from all parts, that it would be impossible for him to finish his enterprize, he came once more unto her. I will dye, Madam, said he unto her, seeing I cannot possess you; But first know, for the rendring of my memory the less odious unto you, that after I have fought to carry you away, I goe now to fight for to keep you from being carryed away by *Don Fernando*, and the Prince of *Salerno* being unable to live for you, will dye at leastwise in defending you. This discourse surprising the Princess; What said she, have we more Enemies than one? This while the Prince of *Salerno*, who notwithstanding the darkness of the night, having observed that *Don Fernando* was in the Head of the Troopes which he fought withall, called him so often by his name, that at length they met together, and entred so furiously into a particular combat, as losing the care of their men, it was the easier for them of the Garrison, and the people, who were all up in armes, to defeat them. The treacherous Captain laboured in vaine to put *Don Fernandes* people into order; and the Prince of *Salerno* Master of his Horse, and the Sergeant, whom he made use of, opposed themselves also in vaine to the disorder of theirs. The confusion increased with the number; The Princesses Troopes augmented still; those of the Enemies diminished every moment; And whereas her voyce was heard at last by some of her servants notwithstanding the fearfull noise that was made, they which guarded us having marked it, and seeing above an hundred men come from divers parts upon them, they abandoned us after some small resistance, and that they had shewed a great deal of care of not exposing the Princess to any danger, as the Prince had expressly charged them. They had no sooner left us the liberty which they had taken from us, but the Princess, seeing herself in the hands of her own People, got into the nearest house, and appointing Souldiers for the guard of it, she commanded they should send her word how things stood, and that if it were possible they should not kill the two Heads of the Enemies forces. In the mean time the Prince of *Salerno*s Souldiers, which had abandoned the Princess, went amidst the press to seek out their Master for to advertise him of it, and having by chance found him still in fight with *Don Fernando*, they told him confusedly that the Princess was carryed away. This discourse equally surprised them both. The Prince of *Salerno* belceved that *Don Fernandes* men had done it, who on the other side knew not what to think of it: At the same instant so great throng of people pressed in amongst them, as they lost one another in the croud; and each of them seeking to be cleared in this matter, they got out of the Town spight of the obstacles which they met with at the Gate, whereof the three parties had been Masters more than once. I cannot repeat all this fight unto you; but at length the Princesses people fought with such courage, as they killed very near all the Prince of *Salerno*s and *Don Fernandes* Souldiers. And when it appeared that there were no more enemies in the Town, they shut up the Gate; Part of the Garrison and of the Inhabitants, having in the mean time pursued and made an end of defeating them, returned into *Menaca*. Hereupon the Prince of *Salerno* having certainly understood, that the Princess had not been carried away by *Don Fernando* (for we learnt so much by certain Souldiers) and seeing that he was hurt, that it was impossible for him to do more, and that he had lost his Rivall in the press, he resolved



ved to get to his Vessell. As for *Don Fernando* he found himself yet in a stranger condition, all his Souldiers having been well nigh slain, or fled away whilst he was fighting with the Prince of *Salerno*, he beheld himself almost alone, covered over with wounds, and not knowing what to do, having no Vessell to facilitate his flight by Sea, nor any security on Land for him, with so little company. It is credible, considering what I have said, that seeing himself in that estate, and perceiving that the Prince of *Salerno*, followed by some of his men, made towards the port, he with his Souldiers mingled amongst them, and entered into his Vessell with him; the darkness of the night favouring the design, which doubtless he had to kill the Prince of *Salerno*, and to make himself master of his Vessell. For when the day began to break there was a great noise heard on the Port side, which made every one to get up on the walls for to see what the matter was. The Princess and I went up to the top of the lodgings where we were, which looked upon the Sea, and whereas it was grown very light, we saw a Vessell, that was making from the Port, and on the hatches a great number of men fighting together, whereof some rumbled alive into the Sea, and others fell down dead at their enemies feet. In the midst of this disorder we knew the Prince of *Salerno* and *Don Fernando* by their apparell, who combated with such violence, as moved the Princess to compassion, but at length, the Vessell still getting further off, we saw that after a long combat these two Rivalls remained fighting almost alone, and presently after both of them tumble down upon the hatches; and so on an instant the Vessel vanishing, we could no longer discern those two couragious Lovers, who more happy in this sad adventure, than they were aware of, made the Princess shed teares of pittie; but she shed them abundantly, when as in her return unto the Castle she beheld so great a number of dead bodies as the streets were even covered with them. The Prince of *Salerno*s Master of his horse was found living still, as well as he whom *Don Fernando* had sent into the *Milanese*; and it was by their meanes that we came to learn the particularities of this Nistory, which without them I could not have told you; for the Princess understanding who they were, caused them to be very carefully looked unto, that she might learn that which I have related. The Captain of the Gate, and the traiterous Sergeant were found amongst the number of the dead, and as if the Prince of *Salerno*s Master of his horse, and *Don Fernando*s Agent, had prolonged their lives but only to tell the Princess what she desired to know, they dyed within a few dayes of their hurts. As for their Masters we heard aftervvard, that being fallen down as it were dead, in the manner as I have told you, the remainder of the Prince of *Salerno*s men having made an end of killing those which had followed *Don Fernando de Mendoza*; and believing their Master to be dead, three or four of them took up the body of *Don Fernando* for to cast it into the Sea, vvhhen as the Prince of *Salerno* coming out of his swoon, and seeing vvhhat they vvere going to do, recovered so much strength as to forbid them from it; generosity being greater in him than hatred, or revenge. This commandement of the Prince vvas executed, and that too of seeing vvwhether he had any life remaining in him; and vvhen it vvas reported unto him that he still breathed, he charged them to have as much care of him as of himself; as indeed he vvas looked unto and treated in the same manner. I vvill not declare the conversations of these tvo Rivall unto you, but in brief it sufficeth to let you know, that the Prince of *Salerno*s generosity so nearly touched the heart of *Don Fernando*, as he ceased to hate him, and would needs land with him at *Naples* to be thoroughly cured there. And as if on the healing of their wounds that of their minds had depended, they surmounted the love which they bare to the Princess, the first out of reason, and the other out of his pride. And each of them following his own sense, they sent to the Princess, & wrote unto her, the last with rhodomontades, according to the humor of his Nation, and the other with a great deal of civility; beseeching her to remember that she had promised her friendship to the Prince of *Salerno*; and praying her also to attribute all that had past to the passion of the Painter *Lucilio*; and not to him, who vowed alwaies to seek occasions to serve her, and to publish every where, that she was the admirablest creature on the whole earth.

The



The Prince answered with much discretion both to the one and to the other; and in this sort ended the adventure, which he would not recount unto you, and which possessed me with so much fear, that though it be now three months since it hapned, I am not yet well recovered of it. *Justiniano* thanked *Emilia* for the paines she had taken, commended her wit and her address; and after he had ended this complement, he saw the Prince come out of her Cabinet, who having heard *Justiniano* talk, judged rightly that *Emilia* had finished her relation. This faithfull Lover no sooner saw her, but he complayned for that she would have concealed an adventure from him, where things had past, which heaped glory and confusion on him; how it was almost as much as to say, that she repented the having of too advantageous thoughts for him, in that she would not have let him have known them; but she answered him very obligingly, that the remembrance of others misfortunes alwaies touched her so sensibly, when as she esteemed herself the cause of them, as she thought she should render herself guilty of those of the Prince of *Salerno* and of *Don Fernando de Mendoza*, if she should hear them without grief, and that having desired to avoyd all occasions that might bring her to a sense of sadness, in a time when she had the pleasure to see him, she had withdrawn herself. In this sort it was that *Isabella* entertained *Justiniano*, who ordered the conversation so dextrously, as he bad the Prince's good night, without her pressing him to acquaint her with the end of his History.



**ABRAHIM**

# IBRAHIM:

## OR THE

# ILLUSTRIOUS

# BASSA.

The second part.

The fourth Book.



WHEN as *Justiniano* was retired to his lodging, and that he had commanded his servants to leave him alone, after they had got him to bed, his imagination represented unto him more lively, than ever it had done before, the inconsideration of his voyage; the promise he had made to *Soliman* to return unto him; the necessity, either of breaking his word with a prince who had so much obliged him, or to quit his Mistress: Alas! said she, how unhappy am I, and how imprudent have I been? what shall I do in so deplorable an estate? What shall I say to the Princess? Wherefore came I to *Monaco*? Had I the design to betray her, in coming to marry her, and then to steal away from her the very next day? Or have I past my word for to falsifie it? No, no, that was not my design; I desired to see *Isabella*, my love carried me unto it, and doubtless it ought to carry me unto it; and were I to dispose of my self again, I should still do the same thing. And could I, said he alowd, refuse to see *Isabella*? Then turning himself about with precipitation, he recommenced his complaints. What, continued he, did I come to the Princess, only to acquaint her that I was Grand Visier; that I was the chief of all the Orient; that I was the Favorite of a great Prince; and afterwards to abandon her to grief and despair, and so return again to enjoy all those greatnesse? Ah no, *Justiniano* is not base; he will not quit a Princess, who is not unhappy but for the love of him; he will not sacrifice her so cruelly to the pleasure of a Prince, who may find men enough in his Empire; that will take the place which he held there; For in fine, if *Soliman* loves us, this princess loves us too; and if I have friendship for this Prince, I have love for *Isabella*. Let us not balance the matter any longer, let us enjoy the good we have, and let us not destroy our selves: Whereupon he thought that he had found some rest, but on a sudden a sense of honor coming again into his minde, he went on passionately; Why, thou base man (said he) canst thou resolve to cover thy self with infamy? to break thy word with one of the mightiest Princes of the world, and that hath the most sensibly obliged thee? And dost thou believe that this generous Princess whom thou servest, would think thee worthy of her affection after this baseness? Thou deceivest thy self *Justiniano*, and with her own mouth she hath pronounced thy sentence: That which she hath said of this Prince, the praises which she hath given him, makes me know but too well that she could not esteem one that should betray him. But, continued he, if in this occasion honor should give place unto love, yet wouldst thou not find thy self at rest, since this love well considered, will in this incounter have the same thing which honor requires:

Scit

Seest thou not (wretch as thou art) that this Prince whom thou wouldst betray, is the most rigorous observer of his word that is in the world? and that if thou shouldst fail in that which thou hast given him, he is capable of coming with an Army of an hundred thousand men, not onely to undo thy Countrey, but thy Mistress her self, as the cause of thy fault: Save her then from this mischief, sacrifice thy self for her, and follow the Fate which will have thee always unhappy. But wilt thou also deprive thy self for ever (said he further) of the sight of *Isabella*? of the hope of thy possessing her, which is to say, of all thy felicity, to render thy self the most unfortunate, and the most desperate amongst men? Yes, I must resolve for it, and withall resolve to dye. Have courage enough then, continued he, not to hide a thing from her which thou canst not conceal without baseness; speak then, wretched man: but how darrest thou tell her that thou art a Slave, that thou wilt abandon her, and that thou preferrest thy word before thy love? No, that may not be, thou canst not consent unto it, and death hath something sweeter than this wofull speech. But again, added he further, wilt thou consent to the undoing of *Isabella*? and thou that canst not resolve to betray *Soliman*, wilt thou betray this Princess, by disguising the truth unto her? Wilt thou be so inconsiderate, as to let her marry a Slave: Ah, this thought is too unjust! No, no, be far from so bad a design, do only that which thou oughtest to do, and leave the rest unto fortune: let her intreat thee ill, let her persecute thee, let her pursue thee every where, it imports not, so as thou dost nothing contrary to that which thou owest to *Isabella*. It was in this manner that *Justiniano* agitated in his mind so difficult a thing to resolve on; and honor and love tyrannized him so cruelly, as his reason was almost lost therewith. But at length, after he had past the greatest part of the night without sleeping, he generously resolved to speak plainly to the Princess, and in this design prest with weariness and thought, sleep surprized him whether he would or no, or to say better, a dull and melancholy vapor brought a senselessness upon him, which yet could not keep his imagination from representing still unto him the deplorable condition wherein he was. Day being come, he found himself so altered, as one would hardly have beleaved, that the miseries of the mind could in so little a time have brought such a notable change to the face. As soon as the Princess was in an estate to be seen, she sent him a complement to advertise him of it, whereupon he came straightway to her Cabinet, but with a countenance so pale, and eyes wherein grief was so visible, as *Isabella* was surprized with it; But whereas she did not believe that he had any cause to be afflicted, she thought he was sick, told him that he should not have come out of his lodging in the case he was in, asked him what he ailed? whether he had a fever? whether it were still on him? and finally propounded very many questions unto him, whereto *Justiniano* answered not a word. For upon the point of executing that which he had resolved he felt so extraordinarie a trouble in his mind, as he suddenly past from paleness to redness; he was taken at first with an universall shivering which made him to tremble, and then with so great a burning, that he seemed all on fire. The Princess seeing him in this case, conjured him again with more earnestness to acquaint her with the cause of all these alterations in him, that they might labor to give some remedy unto it. Alas! Madam, (said he unto her with somewhat a low voice, that he might not be heard by one of the Princesses women, who was at the other end of the Cabinet) the knowledge which I shall give you of my disease will not make you find a remedy for it; for it is of a nature not to be cured, but by death. Yet if I should suffer it my self alone, I would not complain of it; but I am afraid that it would be contagious for you; that the knowledge which you should have of it would increase my grief by causing yours; that I should be more unfortunate in your person, than in mine own; and that in conclusion you would be yet more to be lamented than I, who deserves the miseries which oppress me, since I am the cause of all yours. The Princess judging rightly by this discourse, that there was some great matter to be known, commanded her woman that was still in the Cabinet, to go and stand at the door for to keep any from coming to interrupt her.



This order given, she turned back to *Justiniano*, and scarce knowing what to say, or what to demand in so unexpected an occasion, she beheld him a while without speaking, neither durst he likewise open his lips; but after she had recollected her spirits, and knew that it concerned not the sickness of the body, having a great and generous soul, she said unto him with a firm and assured voice; What mark have you had, my dear *Justiniano*, of my little affection, or of my weakness, that you fear so much to give me a part in your griefs? No, no, cast off this fear, and permit me to tell you, before you acquaint me with that which I can neither divine, nor comprehend, that besides the loss of your affection, there is no misfortune wherein I shall not receive some comfort, partaking it with you. Ah! Madam, said *Justiniano* interrupting her, cease to be unjust in being too good to me; and believe that when you shall know the point where at this present we are, you will find that I have reason to be greatly troubled in resolving to acquaint you with it. Why, said the Princess, exceedingly impatient, concerns it life, liberty, or honor? If it be the first, provided I may die before you, I have felt sorrows sharper than death; if it be the second, and that I may be a slave with you, I will accustom my self to wear irons; but if it concerns honor, I confess that we have reason to despair, and that to conserve it, any thing is to be done: you see, said she unto him, that I am prepared for the greatest misfortunes, and for such as seem to be the furthest off from me; hold me no longer then in pain, if it be true that I have any power over you. *Justiniano* seeing he could not avoid it, went on with his History from the point where he had left it, he recounted unto her his pains, his inquietness, and his joys, when as he knew that she was not inconstant; that not knowing what else to do, he had been constrained to acquaint *Soliman* with his whole life; and consequently, that the permission which he had obtained to come and see her was but for six months only, having engaged his word to that Prince to return unto him precisely within that time. Judge (after this, Madam, said he with sighs that well near suffocated him, and that scarcely suffered him to speak) whether my complaints be not just, whether I am worthy of your favour, and whether death alone be not the remedy which I can find for my miseries. For consider (I beseech you) the pitifull estate whereunto I am reduced; which way soever I turn me I see you still infortunate, but unhappy and infortunate only for the love of me. Ah Madam! if you knew how touching this object is, how sensible and grievous it is, you would easily apprehend the evil that I suffer; it is so great, as there is no expression strong enough to represent it well: You have believed me to be dead, and I have thought that you were inconstant; your virtue hath been tried by a long absence, and my crime hath been punished with slavery; but when as fortune seemed to be weary of persecuting us, when as your constancy was sufficiently known, and when as my crime was punished enough, she made some truce with us: I knew that you lived for me, and you were not ignorant that I always lived for you. I am returned Madam, but must I repeat it once again? I am returned a Slave, fortune hath but lengthened my chain, and not broken off my irons. You seem, Madam, continued he, by your silence to tell me that I had done better for your rest, not to have returned, and to have left you in the belief of my death, than to come for to assure you that I do live, but that I do not live for you. I think, Madam, that reason is on your side, but it is a reason which I cannot follow. My voyage is not an effect of my reason, nor of my will; I never stuck at the taking of this resolution, I followed my sense and my love, and my passion so mightily blinded my reason, as my soul abandoned it self wholly to joy. I no longer thought that I was to return again to *Constantinople*, but only that I was going to *Monaco*, that I should have the pleasure to see you there, and that afterwards I could not be unhappy. In fine, Madam, I have not done that which I ought, but I have done that which I could not choose but do. In the mean time I have no sooner seen you, but I have beheld you as a good which I was to lose, and as a person which I have made unhappy. For Madam, if I break my word with *Soliman*, I am an infamous creature, I shall put your State and your Honor in danger; and if I abandon you, I am treacherous to you,

your, and cruel to my self, and to say all, I am so unhappy as death alone can succour me. But for all that Madam, it is you that must pronounce my sentence; and dispose of my life. *Justiniano* then felt himself so prest with grief, as he could say no more. The Princess, who had heard him with a great deal of attention, after a moment, and *Justiniano* was also a good while without answering him, agitating in her self so difficult a thing to be resolved. She was then leaning with one arm on a little table of ebony, looking on *Justiniano*, who durst not lift up his eyes for fear of encountering those of the Princess, which were full of teares; But at length this generous person, who had a great and noble soul, brak off her silence, and said unto him with a constancy, which hath scarce any example; I confess, my dearest *Justiniano*, that our miseries are so great, as I could not foresee them; and one had need of a mind, that is firm indeed, not to be abandoned wholly to grief, in an occasion where it is so hard to satisfie together, both honor and love: I confess, continued she, that these two passions reign both at once in my heart; but I confess also, that the last cannot be satisfied without the other, and that in conclusion, to express my thought unto you, had I not found a means to satisfie them both, I should die, and let you goe. For know, that I am too generous to suffer you to reitiff your love unto me in an unworthy way; and I am ravished to see you love glory, as much as me. No, *Justiniano*, you must not break your word with a Prince, who hath so much obliged you; for so should you be both ingratefull and perfidious; neither must you too abandon a Princess, who loves you so dearly; for so should you be both cruel and unfaithfull; and if you love her perfectly, you can never doe it. I know full well, answered *Justiniano* with a deep sigh, that death alone can acquit me of that which I ought to doe. That is not my meaning, replied the Princess, and to clear it unto you, you must return again to that generous Prince who hath loved you so much; I am no less obliged to him than you, since I owe your life unto him; and for this reason, together with that of honor, I will not hinder you from it; but withall you must permit me to follow you. Oh Madam, said *Justiniano*, do you think well of that you say? yes, answered she, I have thought well upon it, and am resolved for it. But whereas love can never vanquish honor in my soul, I will not follow you as a vagabond, and forsaken one, you shall marry me here; and that done, I will follow your fortune over all the earth. You have told me already, that *Soliman* permits you the exercise of your Religion, I may enjoy the same grace, either as passing for your slave, or for your wive. And then again, I have not forgotten that you have told me, how this Prince hath made you hope, that if he could support your absence during the time of the six monthes which he hath given you, he would grant you your full liberty: Let us go then, my dear *Justiniano*, and demand it of him with teares; Do not stain your glory in breaking your word with so excellent a Prince; and offend not your love, in refusing a request which I make to you with so much earnestness. The generous discourse of the Princess had wrought strangely on *Justiniano*, during the time that she spake to him; though he left not harkening unto her; and this proposition gave him a great deal of joy, though he meant not to accept of it. And as if it had been a thing which he would deliberate of, he had in an instant passed over in his mind all the reasons; which might either carry him to it, or keep him from it. The first thoughts were without doubt a pure effect of that passionate instinct, which will not have one abandon the person beloved; but those that opposed them were altogether an effect of a true love, of a clear-sighted reason, and of a secret jealousy. At first he considered the dangers whereunto so dear a person might be exposed, either by tempests, or by Pirates: But that which most troubled him, was, that knowing how *Soliman* had a soul as amorous, as ever Prince had any, and remembring withall, that he had been in passion for a picture which resembled *Isabella* a little, he believed already that this monarch was his Rivall; and by a moments reflection, he fortified his reason so well, as he had generosity enough to refuse a good, which was the uttermost term of his felicity. The Princess had no sooner given over speaking, but beholding her with a little more confidence than



before. Must you, Madam said he unto her, surmount me in love, as well as in greatness of courage? No, it would not be just. Leave me the onely thing wherein, to I can pretend, and possess all the other virtues, wherein I can have no part. I must in this occasion, Madam, shew you, that *Justinian* knows how to love, and by the hardest tryall that can be desired of a Lover, I will make you see that my love considers nothing but you alone; that it is wholly disinterested: that I regard not my self; that in fine I am as perfect a Lover, as you are generous. But this, my Allah, how cruel it is! And how hard a matter it is to refuse that which one desires! Yet it must be, and nothing can distract me from it. To refuse my love unto you then, Madam, at that height which speak I of, I must not accept of the offer you make me; I must refuse to marry you; I must abandon you; I must deprive my self of all my felicity; I must fight with all my desires; I must destroy my self; and I must become the most wretched of all men; Behold, Madam, all that I can, and all that I ought to do for you; for to expose you to tempests, to the fury of Pyrats, and to consent that you should marry a slave, is a sacrilegious thought, which would render me the most criminall person in the world, and which shall never arrive unto me. It would be enough indeed for fortune to make me feel my own miseries, during so farall a voyage, without inforcing me to resent those which should happen to you. Let me depart then, Madam, or to to say better, let me dye. I will doe neither the one, nor the other, said the Princess; and in this occasion you shall not dispose of your self. Nevertheless it is needfull that you should give me a publique act of your will, before I can excuse mine. Resist me not, *Justinian*, unless you desire to offend me; suffer me to follow you with honor, and put me not in the condition of increasing the number of those indiscreet ones, who many times have followed their Lovers, without being their wives. Think of my glory, I conjure you; and think too, that if you abandon me, I may peradventure be capable of forgetting it. Do not expose me, I beseech you, to that perill, since it is greater for me, according to my apprehensions, than the dreadfulllest tempest that you can describe unto me. And fear not I pray you, continued she, either shipwrack, or Pirats; if we perish together, we shall dye almost without grief; if we be made slaves, you will help me to bear my chaine; or if we be separated, the fury of those barbarians shall do us no more, than what you would now do. Cease, Madam, from adding to my sorrow, said *Justinian* interrupting her, complain of my misfortune, but complain not of me in this cruel adventure. When I parted from *Constantinople* to come hither, I blindly followed my passion; but at this present, Madam, I will blindly follow reason: she will not have you follow a wretch, and an unfortunate man: Do you not consider, how if it should happen that I should dye, in what an estate you would remain? Ah! my dear Princess (if I may be permitted to call you so) give over so wofull a design: Live in tranquillity, whilst I go and combat my evill fortune at *Constantinople* with a promise, if I cannot overcome it, not to survive her victory very long. But it may be we shall not be so miserable; *Seliman* hath a great and vertuous soul; that which I am going to doe may please him; he may be moved with my teares and prayers; he may break that invisable chain which ties me unto him; and being no longer a slave, you might then without shame accord me the honor, which now I refuse. This hope is too weak, said the Princess, to make me change the resolution I have taken: No, *Justinian*, to speak to me thus, is not to love as you should; this is to blind me with an artifice, to doubt of my affection and courage, and to say all, this is to offend me sensibly. My teares shall not hinder yours from having their effect, but contrarily I am of a sex accustomed to vanquish even cruelty it self with such like armes: Suffer me then to share this victory with you, if you are to carry it; or that I may be vanquished with you, if you are to be so. You do not consider, Madam, said *Justinian*, that if *Seliman* should see you at *Constantinople*, it would be the meanes of never obtaining my liberty, because I should then have all there that could render me happy. The Princess stood a while to answer so pressing a reason; But whereas her affection would not be surmounted; May I not follow you, replied she, without being



being known; and under the habit of a slave? No, Madam, you cannot, answered *Justinian*; there is something that is so great and so dazzling in your face, as you could not conceal your self. But it is not for this reason alone, that I will not consent, therunto: I love you, Madam, and that is to say all: I will keep my word then with *Soliman*, since you do consent unto it, if it be true that I can absent my self from you, without dying in despair: and all the grace which I demand of you is, that you will not dispose of your self, untill my return, or the news of my death, have made you shed tears, either of joy or of grief. Ah! cruel man, cryed the Princess, cease to outrage my affection! Madam, answered *Justinian*, pardon a wretch, who not knowing how to hope, is capable of fearing all things. Assure your self of my person, replied the Princess; for to assure you of my constancy, and permit me to follow you in the manner that I have told you. I may not, too generous Princess, said *Justinian*, my love and my reason will not suffer it. But sufficeth it not that I will have it so, replied *Isabella*, for the obliging you to obey me? No, my Princess, it is not enough, answered *Justinian*, and my misery is arriv'd to that point, that I must for the love of you oppose you; and I cannot acquit my self of all that I am owing to you, but in disobeying you. The Princess then found herself so seized with grief, as she remained a long time without ability to speak: the use of her eyes was almost gone, and so was that of her tears too for the easing of herself; so much had the excess of her sorrow suspended all the functions of life in her: She was negligently leaning on the table near to which she sat, and without giving any sign of sence, save that of breathing, she was in an estate of moving to pity even cruelly it self. *Justinian* seeing her so, was affraid she would have swooned: He took her by the hand, and besought her to remember that great courage, which she had alwayes shewed against the persecutions of fortune. It is not fortune that surmounts me, said she fighting, it is thy insensibility. Ah! Madam, replied he falling down on his knees before her, and wetting her hand with his tears, wholly transported with love and grief, will you have me render my self infamous, break my word, and not return to *Constantinople*? I am ready to obey you. This courageous Princess did her uttermost then to take heart again, and beholding him with eyes whences the first tears began to issue forth; No, my *Justinian*, I would not have that, said she unto him, but onely I would have you promise me, that within the time you are to stay here, you will obtain the resolution from your self to marry me, and to permit me to follow you; for in conclusion I cannot consent, that we should be separated from one another but by death alone. This last word was no sooner pronounced, but the Princess found hee self very ill; she became pale and languishing; her eyes, that were so clear, so piercing, and so full of fire, grew dead and dull on a suddain; and gently closing themselves up, she fell backward on her chair; her head leaning on the left side, and weakly reaching out her right hand to *Justinian*, who was so surpris'd to see her so changed in an instant, as he could not forbear crying out pretty lowd. But forcing herself to speak, she bid him with a low voyce, not to fear the end of an evill, whereof the beginning was so violent, foreseeing well that fortune was not yet weary of persecuting her. But *Justinian* without answering her, opens the Cabinet door, calls her women, who frighted to see her in that case advertise *Emilia* of it; and losing their respect in this sorrow, they demand of her all at once what she ayles? What her disease is? and so busie themselves in succoring her, as they render her no service at all. But she being unwilling to give them leisure to inquire into the cause of her sickness, did her uttermost for to tell them in half opening her eyes, that some days past she had indeed foreseen that she should be sick, and having neglected those little symptoms which she had concealed, she perceived very well that she was entering into a fit of a fever, which was beginning upon her by this weakness that she felt. *Justinian* admiring her wisdom and prudence, did what he could to imitate her; and concealing a part of his grief, he perswaded her to goe and lye down on her bed; but having not strength enough to sustain her self, they carried her in the same chair wherein she sat to her chamber; whither her Physicians

ficians where already come, for being incouraged by good hap in the Castle they had been advertised of this accident by one of the Princesses women. They beheld her, felt her pulse, ask her questions, to come to the knowledge of her disease, and not able to find out the cause of it, they restitue by their actions, and by their unquietness, that not knowing it perfectly, they are troubled how to resolve on the choice of the remedies that they would apply therunto. At length they ordain her to be laid in her bed, that still they might gain time to think of that which they had to do. *Justiniano* out of respect retired all his despair, and without being able so much as to reason about his misfortune, his sorrow became so strong, as he felt it but confusedly. The Princess was not long in her weakness, and Nature doing her utmost, gave her spirit the liberty again which grief had arrested. But thereupon there was so great and sudden a revolution of all her humors, that she fell into a violent fever, so that the Physicians knowing then the Princess's disease, albeit they were ignorant of the cause of it, they began to treat her according to the precepts of their Art. *Justiniano* was also desired by order from the Princess to repair unto her, he obeyed, and came thence her chamber, with a face wherein the grief of the mind so nearly resembled that of the body, as he seemed to be sicker than the Princess. He approached, every one withdrew, and when the Physicians told her, that after such an accident as this which had befallen her, it was best she should not speak much, she assured them, that their conversation should not be long, as indeed that she said to *Justiniano*, was, comfort your self for the love of me, if you will have me live for the love of you, and he mindfull in to speak of our misfortunes, no not to *Doria* himself, he comes hither. And whereas he saw that *Justiniano* could not answer her, without discov'ring his grief, she wring him gently by the hand, and calling *Basilio*, she commanded her to have care of *Justiniano*, untill her sickness was abated. This infortunate lover, not daring to speak, for fear of augmenting the Princess's distemper, and making too much show of his despair, which she would not have him to do, retired away without saying any more, than, Ah! Madam, if you will have me comfort my self, you must then recover of this sickness, which I have been the cause of. After that, the Princess grew extremely worse and worse, the fever held her ten daies with so much violence, and weakness together, as the Physicians durst not warrant her life. Buck was nothing in comparison of the eleventh day, for then *Justiniano*, who scarcely had abandoned her all that time, absolutely believed that she was a dead body. The fever was very much increased, his strength diminished, the remedies unprofitable, Nature seemed to want power, and to be so oppressed, as it was impossible to hope that she should escape. But in the midst of all those miseries, and in so great an extremity, the constancy of the Princess was admirable, who, notwithstanding *Emilia's* teares, the cries of her women, and *Justiniano's* despair, who was no longer in the termes to suffer himself to be constrained by reason, expressed such a tranquillity of mind, as it might well be judged, that life was not very dear unto her. Yet could she not for all that endure *Justiniano's* looks, nor see his teares trickle down his cheeks without resentment, and besides that deplorable object, she was insensible to all things. But whilst they were in these termes at *Monaca*, there was nothing but rejoycing at *Genova*, where it was not known that the Princess was so sick as she was, for from her first time of being ill, she had given in charge that it should not be published, to the end she might recover without molestation, or at leastwise dye quietly. It was onely then known at *Genova* that she was not well, but that kept them not from meeting almost every day, according to the order which the Marquis had established, either at the Counts, or at *Doria's*, who after his return had taken an onely sister, that he had, to govern his house, and who was associated with this fair Troop, which had no other thought but of delighting themselves. The most considerable of this assembly, were the Count of *Langona*, *Leonora* his wife, *Horatio* of the illustrious house of *Cibo*, the brother of *Leonora*, *Sophronia* her sister, *Hipolita Doria's* sister, *Alphonsa Spinola*, *Leonardo* the widow of *Livia*, of the race of the *Adornes*, the French Marquis, and *Doria*, whose



love began to be somewhat violent for *Sophronia*, who certainly was very capable of begetting an ardent passion; she had not only a piercing and majestic beauty like her sister *Leonora*, but a noble stateliness, which rendered her least civilities so obliging, that one of her looks touched more sensibly, than the tenderest caresses of others: The beauties of her soul were no less considerable than those of her face; and the graces of her mind did not give place to all the other excellent qualities that she had; it is not to be wondered then, if *Doria*, who was a man of much virtue, and of much judgement, suffered himself to be touched with such powerfull charms. As for the Count, it might be said that he loved *Leonora* his wife dearly, but it may be said also, that he was truly in love with nothing but glory: His gallantry, his civilities, and his liberality, were not terminated with the conquest of the good graces of one only Lady, but with the esteem of all the world. *Horatio* was of a less active humour, but for all that very pleasing, of a solid judgement, of a gentle and complying spirit, and that notwithstanding some coldness that appeared in his countenance, had yet been a long time in a burning passion for the fair *Hippolita*, whose jealous and distrustfull humor troubled him not a little. *Alphonso* likewise had much spirit, and *Leonida*, whose beauty gave place to none of the rest, added thereunto a gentleness and liveliness, which rendered her the entertainment of a company. There were many others besides which had also both wit and beauty, so that the Marquis being joyned to so many excellent persons, it might have been said, that this Assembly had been perfect indeed, had *Justiniano* and the Princess of *Monaco* been there. The next day after that the Count, *Doria*, and the Marquis were returned to *Genova*, this illustrious company failed not to meet at the Counts Palace; and whereas it was forbidden to speak in these occasions, either of war, or of generall affairs; and that Verses, Painting, Musick, Love, Virtue, and all other things that depend of an excellent wit, were those onely, wherewith one might entertain himself in this encounter; the constancy of *Isabella*, the merit and love of *Justiniano*, made an overture to the conversation. The beauty of the place also added something to the beauty of the Assembly; for the more magnificence, and making of the better and more glorious show of their jewells, those dayes wherein the women decked and set forth themselves all the windows were shut up, and torches served to light the room, which this day *Leonora* caused to be sumptuously furnished, because the company was to be more than ordinary. The hangings were of Carnation Velvet, imbroidered all over with tears and spangles of gold and silver; the bed, chairs, and stools were of the same; and instead of a Persian Carpet, the floor was covered with a great piece of Gold, Silver, and Carnation Silk tinsell. This chamber was lighted with thirty Candlesticks, whereof the one half were of gilt Vermillion set with Stones, and the others of Christall ingraven, and garnished with gold. Round about this Chamber hung at an equall distance, great Plates of Gold-smiths work all set with precious stones, and upon a Cabinet of Nacre and Corall, a great vase of Agate, and two baskets of Gold ingraven full of artificiall Flowers. There were also between these Plates great myrrors, with the Pictures of all the Ladies of the company; and the same placed in such sort, as opposite to every myrror hung the Picture of a Lady, drawn in the habit of a Nymph, or a Goddess. The beauty and magnificence of so many agreeable objects, did without doubt excite some more than ordinary joy in all the Assembly; and in so charming a place it had been very difficult for one not to have been wounded with love; which presents not it self but in the midst of pleasures and delights: And indeed *Doria* was more powerfully touched therewith than before; *Horatio* felt new flames for *Hippolita*; *Alphonso* began to look on *Leonida* without indifferencie; and the Marquis seeing never a woman in the company with whom he had not been already as much in love as was possible for him to be, was constrained to conserve that still which he bare to *Emilia*; yet was it not for all that so strong in him, as to keep him from complaining of this adventure; so that after they had spoken enough of *Justiniano* and *Isabella*, and that there was a certain kind of silence amongst the whole Assembly, which gave way to every



one to begin some other discourse; I would never have believed, said he, that being at *Genova* in the midst of twenty of the fairest persons of all *Italie*, I should be constrained to send my mind to *Monaco*, there to encounter my Mistress. It is not, continued he, because it is an effect of *Emilia's* charms, or of the change of my humor; but it is because I seeing never a woman here, for whom I have not already been in passion, I am forced to conserve that for her still. And certainly if I had thought I should have tarried so long at *Genova*, I should have taken a better order for my affairs. I would have loved *Hypolita* a full moneth, *Sophronia* as long, and so all the rest; by which rule I should have needed but twelve Mistresses every year: But in the manner that I have carried my self I am utterly ruined. For my part, said *Leonida* with her joviall humour, I will forget if you will, that ever you were in love with me, to the end, you may not give any occasion of sadness to our Assembly: and I assure you that if you could resolve to make a new declaration of love unto me, I am deceived if you would not love me more the second time than the first. I have known since, continued she, that I was too indulgent to you; I commended the first Verses that you made for me; I took too much care in learning a song which you gave me; I danced better with you than with all others, and I know not any testimony of esteem and good will which I did not render you; in the mean time you quitted me cruelly, to love the severe *Sophronia*, whose coldness could not keep you from serving her six days longer than me; and I confess that I should not be sorry to know for what reason her rigors have charmed you more, than my compliances and favors; to the end, that if ever we have such another adventure, I may govern my self therein with address. But I pray you, added she, do not content your self with telling me, that the same thing arrives almost to all the world, that difficulties and obstacles augment Love, since custom passes not for a good reason with me, and that all which I can do, is to follow it only in apparell. It is certain, beautifull *Leonida*, answered the Marquis, that this matter is a little too delicate to be disputed with you; but since you have denounced war against me, it shall not be to offend you that I do answer you; hear then, if not a satisfaction to your complaints, at leastwise a resolution to your doubts. I think, if I understand well that which you marvell at, and that which you cannot comprehend, it is but to know by what reason rigors and neglect do augment love, rather than caresses and favours: but if I deceive not my self, it will not be hard for me to demonstrate it unto you. No man is ignorant but that beauty engenders love, and so love is no other thing but a desire to possess beauty, in such sort, that if love be a desire, it will be so much the greater, by how much the thing desired shall be difficult in acquiring; since being once possessed, the cause of the desire utterly ceases: wherefore it is not an improper action for Love, but forced and necessary, to be more vive and earnest in rigors than favors, seeing they excite and entertain it. But to explain my self more clearly, I say, that desire cannot be at rest, because at the same instant that it arrives at its end, it ceases to be desire: So that if love be a desire, as I have already said, what stronger proof can one have to show that it ceases to be love, than to see it arrived at its end? But if (fair *Leonida*) you should not agree that love is a desire, I think at leastwise that you will not deny but that it is a fire, since so many have told you, that they burned for you, as you cannot be ignorant of this truth. But if you consider the effects of it, you will see that I am not altogether out of reason; fire is of a nature so active, as it consumes all that opposes it; if any thing resists it, if we stop its passage, far from the end which we had propounded, that which seemed should have served for opposition, serves it for nourishment; for in conclusion, fire is quick and ardent as long as it finds resistance; but as soon as it hath vanquished, and that it hath nothing left to consume, it consumes it self, and ceases absolutely to be fire, when it hath nothing more to vanquish. If it be then true that love is a fire, it is true that it kindles by difficulties; that rigors serve to foment it, and when it happens that it hath nothing left to surmount, it loses its being like the fire, and ceases absolutely to be love. Let us not marvell then any longer, if it de-

cayes with careſſes, and augments with rigors. You have ingeniouſly defended your opinion, replied *Hypolita*, and ſatiſfied the beautifull *Leonida*'s doubts; but not thoſe which your diſcourſe might have begotten in the mind of the Miſtreſs whom you ſerve; if ſhe have any friend here, ſeeing if it be true that one is to attend that effect from your love which you ſpeak of, ſhe would not be very judicious in favouring you; ſince that would be for her to furniſh arms her ſelf for her own deſtruction. If I had had any intereſt in this company, answered the Marquis, I had not explained my ſelf in this ſort: But I would fain know, ſaid *Sophronia*, why that which *Leonida* calls rigor in me, hath not wrought that effect in you which ought to be expected from it? I mean the augmentation of your love, ſeeing according to what you have told us, your deſires having never arrived at their end; and your fire having always found many obſtacles, it ſhould have been ſtill as lively for me, as the firſt day that you ſpoke to me of this flame. All that I have ſaid, replied the Marquis, are generall rules, which convene not perfectly with me, yet is it notwithstanding true, that the death of deſire is in me, as in all men; the death of my love; and if I ſhould not ceaſe from deſiring, I ſhould never ceaſe from loving. But by a particular grace the term of my love is to love, I deſire little; and I am eaſily repulſed. If I obtain at firſt that which I would have, which is to be received favourably, I am arrived at the term that I propounded unto my ſelf; and if I do not encounter it, I have ſo delicate a ſpirit, as being unable even to hope for any but facile things, in loſing my hope, I loſe the love too which I had for the cruell one; and changing of object, I arrive ſtill at my end, which is to love eternally. But if this reaſon which is particular to me, doth not ſatiſſie you, I have no more to ſay than this, that as we ſee Amber and the Adamant, and ſo many other wonders which are in Nature, working by reaſons that are hidden from the knowledge of men, ſo am I inconstant in that manner, by a particular vertue, whereof I cannot reach the cauſe, and which at this preſent doth alſo inforce me to have no more but good will for the fair *Leonida*. It were ſiſthen, ſaid *Leonora*, to the end we may not be troubleſom to you now, that you would talk to us of your paſt-loves, ſince you can finde none here that is worthy to be beloved of you twice. We know already, ſaid the Count, that which beſell him in his Countrey, and that which hapned unto him here in *Genova*; but we know not his adventures in the Court of *France*, and the propoſition which you have made cannot be but very pleaſing to the company. For my part, ſaid the Marquis, I will not reſiſt it, and I will indeed acquaint you with one. But whereas the anger he was in, for that he could not be amorous in this place, had taken up his thoughts, he acquitted himſelf of it after an extraordinary way; yet was it not without muſing attentively on that which he had to ſay, never regarding whether all the company were in caſe to hear him or no; and after he had performed all the ceremonies of a man that prepares himſelf for a long Narration, he began to ſpeak in this ſort.

### The third History of the Marquis.

I Loved a woman paſſionately, that was of a condition equall to mine, ſhe answered my affection, whether feignedly or truly, I know not; but I know that I received all the honeſt favours from her which I could expect; and that at ſuch time as I was the moſt favourably intreated by her, without having any occaſion to complain on my part, nor ſeeking any pretext on hers, ſhe forſook me for another. Behold the end of my Hiſtory. The whole company then broke out into ſuch a laughter, to ſee that his attention, his ſilence, and the preparation which he had brought to the hearing of a long adventure, had been paid with ſo ſhort a Narration, as they thought they ſhould never have given over. It muſt be acknowledged ſaid *Leonida* at length, that if they which write our *Romanes*, did make them deliver their Relations in this ſort, we ſhould not admire, as we do, the wonder-



full memories of their Heroes, who make narrations, which cause them to pass whole daies without eating, and nights without sleeping. For my part, said the Marquis, I found my self so ill with such another adventure at *Mimiv*, where I recounted my follies of *Genius* to the Princess, as I am fully resolved never to fall into the like again; and I should rather chuse to talk to the beautifull *Emilia*, whom I did love, and still doe love whether I will or no, than play the Astrologer a second time. In the mean while *Doris*, who was infinitely desirous to speak to *Sophronia* of his growing passion, thought there was no better way to make the generall conversation cease, and bring on a more particular one, than to propound the Musick, for the charming of the Marquis his bad humor. To which effect then he told the Count, that if harmony had at other times had the power to appease the fury of some, it might easily allay the melancholy of a man that was not accustomed to have any. The Marquis, who could not be deceived with such like things, presently perceived *Doris*'s design, and to vex him a little he told him, that the remedy which he propounded unto him could not work but upon the melancholick, and so by consequence, it would be unprofitable for him. But after he had waggishly caused the conversation to endure a little longer, he was the first that prest *Leonor* to impose silence on the company by a consort of lutes, which she had made them hope for. The Count then arose, and, pulling open the door of a Cabinet, he ordained the Musicians to begin. In the mean time the Marquis, who was willing to oblige *Doris*, said, that the Ladies were first to be placed, where they might best hear; thereupon he made a demy-circle of chaires some four or five paces from the Cabinet door, wherein he placed all the women; and behind every Lady, he seated a man, playing the Master of the ceremonies so dextrously, as without any shew of affectation in his choice, he placed *Horatio* behind *Hypolita*, and *Doris* close to *Sophronia*, who failed not to make use of so favourable an occasion. For after they had harkened a long time to an excellent consort of Lutes, with a silence worthy of so charming an harmony, and that he saw how in the assembly each one in particular began softly to commend that which seemed to be the most agreeable in the Musick, he took the liberty to say unto *Sophronia* with a low voice, I may not venture to deliver my opinion of those exquisite lessons I have heard; because the small attention that I have lent unto them, would not permit me to be an equall judge thereof. Doubtless the thought which hath diverted you from it, replied *Sophronia* turning her head about towards him, was either very pleasing, or very melancholick. It was both together, answered *Doris*; and if I might presume to make you the confidant of a matter that imports as much as my life, you should see without question that I am not far from the truth. It is for you to consider, said she unto him, whether this secret, if it may be told me, would be advantageous to you for me to know it; and on the contrary, I being of a sex that is accused of being unable to conceal any thing, whether you are to fear the exposing of your self to the hazard of my publishing that which you shall have told me. If that were the onely obstacle, replied *Doris*, that could keep me from speaking to you, I should not be long without discovering the botom of my heart unto you, seeing I am but too sure, that you would never tell that which you had known of me: But there needs so much boldness in daring to declare unto you, that you are adored, as I dare not undertake it. *Doris* was no less surpris'd for having said so much, than *Sophronia*, who blushed at first, and hyding her face with a fan of carnation feathers, which she held in her hand, she was constrained, to avoid being seen of all the company, to turn herself yet more towards *Doris*. But whereas she very much esteem'd him, she was contented to say to him notwithstanding her ordinary severity. You have surpris'd me with the conclusion of your discourse, as I have not the judgement free enough to discern whether it be a cast of your wit, or a design to offend me. Nevertheless seeing I have an inclination to honor you, I will believe, without examining the matter, that it is the first I have spoken of. But whereas it might happen, that if any one should hear this gallantry continue any longer, one would not have the same indulgence for you, as I have shewed you; and that your words might



might be interpreted more disadvantageously, both for your glory, and mine; do me the favor then; either to speak to me no more, or to change your discourse. I will obey you, answered *Doria*, but remember, that nothing shall ever alter the resolution I have taken to love you eternally. *Sophronia* returned no answer to these last words, and turning her self to *Leonida*, who sat next her on the right hand, for to demand of her how she liked the Musick, it fell out that in going to avoid one discourse of love, she interrupted another; For *Alphonso*, who began already to be in a strong passion for *Leonida*, had laboured to shew it her with the most address that possibly he could. But whereas she was of a wily humor, and would contrary to that of *Sophronia*, cunningly conceal things which were near her heart, by feigning to discover them; in stead of answering to *Sophronia's* question, she said unto her smiling, and pointing to *Alphonso*, this Cavalier hath talked so much to me of love, as I had no leisure to mind the Musick. *Alphonso* was somewhat amazed at this discourse, but seeing that she did not behold him, either with choler, or contempt, he said unto her with address; there appeared so much of it in your eyes, as it would be as difficult for one not to be taken with it, as it would be impossible for you to bemoan the evils which you are the cause of. Whilst these amiable persons entertained themselves in this sort, *Horatio* was not so happy, for whatsoever care he took about it, he could not obtain one favourable look from *Hypolita*, whose jealous humor had made her believe that he had beheld *Leonida* with too much attention, whether it were that he had observed *Alphonso*, who spake softly unto her, or had without design cast his eyes that way; but in conclusion all that she answered to whatsoever he could say unto her, was to pray him with a quipping geer not to be *Alphonso's* Rivall, who was her brothers friend, for fear lest the share which she was to have in all his interests, might oblige her to break with him. At the same instant the comfort ceased, and the Count desired the company to renew their attention for the hearing of a Dialogue, sung by two most excellent voyces; after which the Marquis, who had set himself down by *Leonora*, continued the conversation still for some time with his ordinary address; and then all this fair Troop departed away, but with different thoughts. *Doria* felt himself so eased, for having made his first declaration of love to his Mistress, that he was as much satisfied therewith, as if he had received a great favour from her. But though *Sophronia* esteemed very much of *Doria*, though he was of an illustrious race, though he was beloved of her brother-law, and that according to apparent reason she could not make a fitter choise, yet was there a particular one, and that was hidden to all the world, but not unknown to her, which made her fear the sequel of this passion. For she was not ignorant that the Count, albeit he esteemed of *Doria* in particular, yet bore an irreconcilable hatred to the whole family in generall, though in his actions and words he testified the clean contrary. It was in this sort that this beautiful and prudent maid reasoned with her self, not doubting but that *Doria's* discourse was unfeigned, because she was sufficiently perswaded that he would not easily venture to say such like things unto her, having alwaies made profession of a vertue austere enough. On the other side, *Leonida* was not sorry for having touched the heart of *Alphonso*; and this new conquest made her return home with joy. As for *Alphonso*, he could not very well judge of his happiness or unhappiness, so much did the proceeding of *Leonida* seem extraordinary unto him; howbeit he had some hope in the gentleness of her lookes, which promised no rigor unto him. *Hypolita* had more sullen and unquiet thoughts, although she had no just cause for them; but it is sufficient to say that she was jealous for to perswade one that she went not away very well contented. As for *Horatio*, he was so afflicted with his Mistresses odd humor, as he could not resolve to return to his own house, till he had sought for some comfort from his sister *Sophronia*, who lived with *Leonora*, because her mother was dead: He went then to her chamber to communicate his thoughts unto her. Ah! sister (said he to her when he came where she was) I am the most unfortunate of men, and *Hypolita* the unjustest of your sex. It may be you call that injustice (said *Sophronia* unto him)

which I should call vertue. No, no, replied *Horatio*, and I desire that you would be my judge, if you have nothing else to doe, and can intend to hear my reasons. I am vvell contented, said *Sophronia*, but I am so ill informed of that vvhich hath past betwixt you these six monthes, vvherein I know you have loved *Hypolita*, as I am in doubt vvwhether I may judge rightly. It is true, answered *Horatio*, that I vvvas vvilling to acknowledge unto you, that I loved her, and that she hated not me, vvithout recounting my adventure particularly unto you, because I alvvayes thought that discourses of this nature did not please you: But albeit you have the goodnes now to let me entertain you vvith the estate of my affaires, I vvill not repeat unto you the first speeches of Love, vvvhich I had vvith *Hypolita*, seeing they are for the most part all alike amongst vvorthy persons: and vvhereas time presses me, I vvill onely give you an account of all that hath arrived to me since, but it shall be in fevv vvords. I served her then vvith assiduitie enough, as you might vvell observe; and even to that point as she was no longer able to doubt of it. I perceived by her lookes, that my person did not displease her; that my wit and my humor contented hers, and then when I expected some testimony of affection for a recompence of my paines, guess, my dear sister, what it was that she gave me, and the onely one that I received? *Horatio* stayed a while, in expectation of *Sophroniaes* answer, who presently said unto him laughing, I think, brother, that I cannot vvithout trespassing against good manners shew my self very spirituall, in guessing at the favors vvvhich may be done to a Lover; vvherefore it were fitter that you should let me know what this favour was, than to trouble me to tell it you. Harken to me more seriously, I conjure you, replied *Horatio*, and know that this testimony of affection, vvvhich I have so often received from *Hypolita*, was not the giving me occasions to see her, or to speak to her in particular; it was not an obliging letter; it was not a bracelet of her hair; it was not a picture; it was not assuring me vvith her own mouth that she did not hate me; but it was telling me, that I did not love her, and that I loved another. In fine, the first proof vvvhich I had of other affection, was a mark of her choler; and to expresse my self more clearly, jealousy alone hath shewed her love to me. You cannot receive a more undoubted proof thereof, said *Sophronia* interrupting him: Nor a more grievous one too, replied *Horatio*. For you must know (continued he) that after I had done an hundred incivilities to satisfy her, vvhereof you have many times demanded the cause of me, though I never told it you; yet could I not cure her mind of this fancy: And of all the vvomen of quality of *Genoun*, I do not know one, that hath fair hair, vvvhich she hath not believed that I have been in love vvithall, *Leonida* onely remains, vvho at this present sticks in her stomack, and for vvhom she hath ill intreated me to day. If it be so, said *Sophronia*, you are to take comfort, and be carefull to justify your self vvnto her; for vvhen her jealousy shall want an object, she vvill questionless be constrained to give you another mark of her affection. Ah, sister, replied *Horatio*, you are but little acquainted vvith this passion! it formes phantasmes, it deceives the sense, it illudes reason, and vvithout any ground, or subject, it leaves not to work in those vvhom it possesseth; it makes them to see that vvvhich is not; makes them believe impossible things; and utterly perverts the understanding. At leastvvise, so far as I have observed it in others, for I have never vvried it othervvayes, vvvhich certainly hath been crueller to me, than if I had been jealous my self. Bemoan then, my dear sister, the misery, vvherein I find my self engaged, and vvhen I know not how to get out. Verely I doe bemoan you, said *Sophronia*, and so much the more, for that I doe not know how to ease you. I am eased already, answered *Horatio*, by recounting my torment vvnto you; but it is time to let you go to *Leonora*. *Horatio* departed then half comforted in vvhaving discovered his grief to the vvirtuous *Sophronia*, but the next day vvvas no sooner arrived, but he vvvas taken vvith his unquietnes again; vvvhich made him go in all hast to *Doriaes* house, though he could not hope to see *Hypolita* so early; but he vvvas happier than he thought he should have been, for it fell out that *Doria* vvvas in his sisters lodging, at such time as he vvvas advertised that *Horatio* asked for him: And vvhereas he vvvas not ignorant of the passion he vvvas in

for *Hypolita*, he would needs have him come into her chamber, howsoever she withstood it, to the end he might oblige him to a like courtesie, when there should be occasion for it. *Hypolita* received *Horatio* somewhat coldly; but yet with civility, being unwilling her brother should see their petty disorders. *Horatio* thought that he had never seen her so beautifull, as she appeared to him in a neglectfull habit, which she had put on, with an intention not to have been seen of any body all that day. Their first discourse was of the last evenings entertainment, but after that had continued a while, *Doria* went into his sisters Cabinet, to write a letter to *Sophonisa*; for he was not yet fully satisfied with the declaration he had made her; and though he was long about it, yet could he not draw up one that contented him, so much did he fear to offend *Sophonisa*. He thought that the incivility which he used in leaving *Horatio* upon his going from him, would be in stead of a favor to him; so that onely making him a complement about it, he left him the liberty to entertain his Mistress. He was no sooner alone with her, but he undertook to justify himself, and gave her so many reasons to make it appear to her that he did not love *Leonida*, as all her jealousy could not furnish her with one to oppose his: After that, he besought her to call to mind the care he had taken to please her; the extreme affection which he had alwaies born her; and how many times she had permitted him to interpret her resentments and choler to his advantage. *Hypolita* heard him with a great deal of attention, but for all that he could not perswade her, for with a precipitous voyce she said unto him; Suppose that your indeavours and services have been powerfull enough to obtain my affection, yet have they not been powerfull enough to conserve it; and thereof I could bring you a thousand testimonies; but whereas they are matters wherein your excuses might give me satisfaction, and not desiring to receive any from you, I will not furnish you with meanes to doe it; but to convince you, I will onely say one thing, which admits no reply, and which all your cunning cannot destroy. Have you not seen me, continued she, receive the civilities of the youngest of the *Fregoses*, of the eldest of the *Adornes*, and of some others, without regarding yours? Have you not been in some assemblies where that last hath alwaies taken me out to dance, whilst I have scarce so much as turned my look towards you? Have I omitted any occasion of testifying unto him, when you past with him before my window, or in all other places where I might have you for a witness, that his love did not displease me? No, *Horatio*, I have omitted none, and the affection which I bore you, made me have recourse to this artifice, hoping I should know, by giving you some cause of jealousy, the force of your passion; but I have not seen, though you have seen all these things, that you had any sense of them; and albeit I knew that by this untoward experience I should be in danger of losing you, if you were sensible, yet chose I rather to resolve upon it, and to assure my self of your love, than to conserve you with a luke-warm and indifferent affection. I have ever heard, that jealousy is the daughter of love, yet do I not say that love cannot be without jealousy. Questionless you will tell me, that by my own reasons I am unjust in complaining of you, since it is possible, that you may have love without having jealousy. But alas! this discourse hath not so much as an apparent reason, neither can I suffer my self to be perswaded to that which I desire so passionately. And to shew you that I cannot force my mind to deceive my self, hear a thing, which hath made me to think upon this matter. I have been perswaded then, that love alone cannot produce jealousy; and how it is necessary that jealousy should have a mother which may contribute to her birth; this mother, if I be not deceived, is occasion; and as love without her cannot produce jealousy, so she without love cannot beget jealousy. This reasoning seemes so powerfull to me, as you cannot make any objection which it destroys not; for in fine, you may well have love without jealousy, when as you have no occasion for it; but I having given it you, and you not having taken it, is to say absolutely, that you have had no love. Ah! fair *Hypolita*, answered *Horatio*, how I doe rejoyce at these complaints of yours? for the more reasons you have brought to maintain your opinion, the

more



more have you established my felicity. You say then, amiable *Hypolita* (continued *Horatio*) that there can be no love without jealousy, and because I have not been jealous, I have had no love; you shall pardon me if you please, if without losing the respect which I owe you, I dare take the liberty to contradict you, in maintaining with reason, that the perfectest and sincerest reason is that which admits of no jealousy. It is a thing known of all reasonable and disinterested persons, that he who loves truly, loves only to love, and not to be beloved, or to expect any recompence; for that thought is too base and abject for so noble a passion. Now if the love of beauty, which is that whereof we speak, springs from an object that is pleasing to the sight, it follows, that so long as this object seems amiable unto us, so long will our love continue; and whether the person beloved answers our affection, or answers it not, this love shall be still the same love. But that I may make use of a comparison as well as you, a man sees a fair Lady, and love arises in his heart, is it necessary for him to examine whether this Lady be engaged to another in affection? it is certain that it is not; and it is every day seen that love doth subject us to them, whose love is engaged elsewhere: so that one may well judge from thence, that a man ought to persevere in his love, though some cause be given him of jealousy, since when he was not beloved, and that he was induced to love by the only sight of beauty, he left not to be infinitely amorous. And if I may be permitted to make use of History in this encounter, what sympathy, or what affection could that young *Athenian* expect, who became so desperately in love with a beautiful Statue, and whose passion was so extreme, as the like was never heard of? It is very certain, that he loved only to love, seeing the object of his passion was absolutely incapable of any correspondence. Now then if it be true, that a Lover is satisfied in knowing that he loves, he is most assured that jealousy is not of power enough to destroy his love, and that this jealousy is rather an effect of a defective, than of a perfect love. And to speak freely unto you, tell me, I pray you, who can be so hardy, after a worthy person hath had the goodness to receive our services favourably, and to testify some affection unto us, as to suspect she should have the same thoughts for another? Ah, fair *Hypolita*, the gallantry and civility which you have used to the eldest of the *Adornes*, could not oblige me to draw so bad a consequence against you. And to comprehend all the rest of my reasons in one alone, I am but to say, that he who by his discourse gives some marks of his jealousy to his Mistress, names her inconstant, facile, and almost infamous: Judge now, fair *Hypolita*, whether these be words agreeing with a Lady. In the mean time it is most undoubted, that in what terms soever jealousy is expressed, it cannot be expressed but in this manner: whereas quite contrary, this confidence which we have in the person beloved, which makes us to approve of all her actions, is the true mark of perfect love, and indeed merits the most acknowledgement, if I may be permitted to say so. I have not suspected you then, beautiful *Hypolita*, of inconstancy, because I have esteemed you very much; and if I had had as good a place in your heart, as you have had in mine, you would questionless have done me justice, in not accusing me of infidelity. *Hypolita* was not sorry to find *Horatio's* reasons stronger than hers, but whereas she was high-minded, she would not let him see that she began to repent her; but contrarily making shew as if she thought it strange her brother should leave her so long entertaining *Horatio*, she called him, for fear she should be constrained to say something that would be too obliging unto him. And whereas *Doria* could not satisfy himself, he came out of his Sisters Cabinet, and went down to wait on *Horatio*, whom she could not let part, without beholding him in such a sort, as he might easily perceive, that he was in better terms with her than when he came thither; for it is the custom of those that are easily angry, to be as easily pacified; to accuse, that one may justify himself; and to complain, that they may be satisfied. In the mean time *Doria* had no sooner left *Horatio*, but the Marquis came to him for to show him a Letter, which he had written to *Emilia*. Why, said *Doria* unto him, do you think of her still? I must needs think

think of her, said the Marquis, in the necessity I am in: But before you marvel at my constancy, read that which you shall finde written in this paper, and having opened it, he saw that it was thus.

### The Marquis his Letter to *Emilia*.

**A**fter the knowledge you have had of my humour, you will doubtless finde it strange, that the passion which you begot in my heart at Monaco, should be conserved there still in Genoua, and that an absence of three days hath not destroyed that which you established in a moment. I am for all that constrained thereto by a necessity, which I never tried before, and though my mind be not changed, yet am I forced not to change you. I take use (fair *Emilia*) of a good which fortune presents you with; for not to abuse you, when you have the fairest eyes in the world; and that in the thought I presently am in, you are the most charming person that I know, my fidelity is for all that rather an effect of my inconstancy, than of your beauty; for there being never a woman in Genoua whom I have not loved, I am compelled to love you still, and to fear that Destiny will force me to become faithfull: But at least I can assure you, that if this misfortune should arrive unto me, there is none in the world that could render it so supportable unto me as you; and the passion I am in for your beauty is so strong, that I wish I may not be put to so hard a trial, as not to be able to be absent from you, for fear I should be constrained to quit Italie, or at leastwise Genoua, rather than quit my inclinations.

I must confess, said *Doria*, that I never saw a Love-Letter of the stile of this same; and how pressing soever it be for you to send it away to Monaco, I am resolved not to let you have it again, till all our friends have seen it. The Marquis resisted it a while, but at length consented thereto; and in regard the Assembly met not very soon, the Marquis sent not away his Letter till just the day before they thought the Princess would have died: So that when *La Roche* was arrived at Monaco, and entered into the Castle, he was much amazed to see them all in tears. And whereas in this occasion the Officers had no care of any thing, he went even to the Princesses chamber without any impediment; where he saw *Justiniano*, he not seeing him, for grief so absolutely possessed him, as he was incapable of all knowledge, but of that of his own misfortune. He could not indure the sight of the Princess, neither could he also keep from her, so that he was in a continuall agitation. In the mean time the Physicians desiring to do their uttermost endeavour, still carefully observe the estate she is in, they consult with their books, and in so desperate a disease they resolve to have recourse unto extreme remedies; so that abandoning ordinary Physick, one amongst them, who was an excellent Empirick, made her take so wonderfull an essence, that after it had caused her to sleep eight hours, it rectified the bloody diminished her Fever, restored her strength, and put her quite out of danger. The indifferency she had shewed at the approaches of death, seemed the same, when as the Physicians assured her that she should not die of this sickness; and she gave them greater thanks for their affection to her, than for their saving her life. Howbeit they were not without thanks for this recovery; for *Justiniano* received so great a satisfaction from it, as he could not give them thanks enough of his acknowledgement. His joy nevertheless was mingled with a great deal of bitterness, and his soul was not in an estate of tasting a quiet pleasure. This while *La Roche*, whom the Marquis had sent, hearing that the Princess was out of danger, went to *Justiniano*'s lodging, for to render him the civility of his friends; and to assure him that they knew nothing of his affliction. *Justiniano* received him with more coldness, than his friendship to them seemed to permit; but the displeasure wherein he was, dispenced with him from being regular in his compliments; he wished *La Roche* for all that to render his back unto all them from whom he had received any, and to pray them not to think it strange if he returned not to Genoua before the Princess were fully recovered. That done, *La Roche* went to *Emilia* to deliver her his Masters Letter, which she received with

with a great deal of joy. For the Princesses amendment had put her mind into so favourable a posture for him, as she told *la Roche* that she would return an answer thereunto, albeit the Princess was not yet in case to have her permission demanded for it, and without further delay she caused Paper to be brought her by a Maid that served her, and answered the Marquis in these terms.

### *Emilia's Letter to the Marquis.*

**I**T would be too much vanity in me to pretend unto the obtaining of that from you, which so great a number of fair persons could not oblige you to render unto them. Do not believe then that I regard you as a conquest, which I may never lose, but contrarily I am resolved to do in this occasion, as great Captains use to do, who, after they have taken a place which they think they cannot hold, set it on fire, and destroy it themselves, to get some advantage still by this loss. And whereas there was never place so hard to be kept, as your heart, I purpose, in order to that you have written me, to bring new flames unto it, rather than to resolve to lose you altogether: There will be shortly at Genoua a fair kinswoman of mine, whom I conjure you to love, when as you shall no longer judge me worthy of that honor, to the end that in losing your love, I may at leastwise comfort my self with your sight, with your conversation, and with your friendship.

*Emilia.*

This Letter being sealed, she gave to *la Roche*, who presently departed for to return unto Genoua, without speaking to the Princess; for ever since she was out of danger, the Physicians had absolutely forbidden any one from talking to her, no not so much as *Justiniano*, who saw himself very soon kept from it by a stronger reason. For whether he had been too long without eating or sleeping, or that grief alone had been the cause of his indisposition, he found himself within a short time, in a sickness as desperate as that of the Princess, who not seeing him about her, was very inquisitive to know where he was. The Physicians and *Emilia*, who feared she would afflict her self too much if she knew the truth, told her, that *Justiniano* having seen her quite out of danger, and being prest by an important affair which had befallen him at Genoua, was gone thither with an intent to have returned back again before she should have taken notice of his departure. But when they saw *Justiniano's* sickness grow dangerous, and that the Princess was as much troubled with hearing no news of him, as she could have been if she had known the condition wherein he was, they conceived it was fit, fearing the sad event of *Justiniano's* malady, to acquaint her with that which they had concealed from her. *Emilia* was she that charged her self with this heavy Commission, she carried the matter so dextrously, as she engaged the Princess to speak of *Justiniano*, and to marvel at his unexpected absence, and so unthought-of a silence. It would not be hard for me, answered *Emilia*, with a sad countenance, to take you out of this unquietness, if I did not fear to give you another greater than that. Whereupon the Princess, leaning with her right arm on the pillow, and with her left hand also drawing the curtain, fixed her look on *Emilia*, and after she had been a pretty while without speaking, as it were to divine of that which she should be acquainted with, she said unto her in such a fashion, as shewed that she would be obeyed; disguise not the truth unto me, let me know my miserie as great as it is, and tell me whether *Justiniano* be dead or unfaithfull; for provided he be neither the one nor the other, I shall receive all other misfortunes with a great deal of indifference. The last cannot be, answered *Emilia*, and heaven will not permit that the other should arrive unto you. But not to disguise the truth unto you, *Justiniano* never parted from *Monac*, and the fear alone of redoubling your sickness, in acquainting



ring you with his, hath kept us from telling it to you; but finding it to continue longer than we thought it would, I held it my duty to advertise you of it. You are a cruell creature, replied the Princess, to conceal a thing from me, which concerns my life. And what will *Justiniano* say of the little care I had of him? It is by his order, answered *Emilia*, that we have caried the business in this sort. If you will have me pardon you this fault, said the Princess, so order the matter, that *Justiniano* may not be surpris'd when he shall see me. *Emilia* did what she could then to keep her from getting out of her bed, but neither her intreaties, nor the counsell of the Physicians, could alter her resolution. She calls her women, gets on a night-gown, and causing her self to be held up by the armes, she goes to *Justiniano's* lodging, whom she found so changed, as he could hardly be known. As soon as he saw her enter he indeavoured to salute her, but being unable to lift up his head, he was constrained to be contented onely with turning his eyes towards her, and saying to her with a feeble and languishing voice, which could not be heard by any but her self, for her women were a pretty way distant from them; At length, Madam, fortune shall not separate us, and death is going to doe that, which I expected from the cruelty of the former: Nevertheless I shall die contentedly, since I have still the pleasure to see you, provided you will promise to live for the love of me, and that my memory shall be dear unto you; For I find this advantage in death, that it keeps me from being unfaithfull to you; It finishes the combat of love & honor which could not be vanquished in my soul; it makes me satisfie them both; and to say all, it separates us, but I do not forsake you; and I doe nothing in this occasion, but what I cannot chuse but do. The Princess having her cheekes all bedewed with tears, answered him sighing, I am not yet so far from the grave, but that I may enter into it with you, if death should carry you thither; but if you doe love me, you will strive to live. Think not of conserving your self, since you have no will to it, but of conserving me, and believe not that you can die without me. I have let you see what grief can do upon me; and I should have no need, either of poison, or poignard, to quit me of this life, for the loss of you alone would suffice for it. Think not for all this that I speak to you thus out of the fear to die, it is an apprehension which is not my soul, and I doe not find death dreadfull but in the person beloved; let me not make tryall then of so sharp a grief; live, if it be possible, and contribute at least what you can unto it. I will indeed obey you, replied *Justiniano*, but take heed you do not thereby deprive me of a remedy which I shall not easily meet with again. As he would have proceeded, one came and advertised the Princess, that *Doria* having understood of his Friends sickness, was arrived at the Castle, and desired to see him. The Physicians then approached to *Justiniano's* bed side, and told the Princess, that if she loved his life, she was to let him rest in quiet, and suffer few to see him. *Justiniano* intreated them to let him embrace *Doria*, who presently was brought in. This interview moved all them to pitty that saw it; for *Justiniano* appeared so constant, *Doria* so afflicted; and the Princess so forlorn, as it was impossible to forbear shedding of teares at so lamentable a spectacle. The chiefest of the Physicians coming to *Justiniano*, and feeling his pulse, found that his fever was increast, and judged by the unequall beating thereof, that the agitation of his spirit had redoubled that of his blood and humors; so that approaching once more to the Princess, he told her that *Justiniano* was not to be succoured with tears, and that she must absolutely be resolved to leave him to their conduct, and not to see him again till he was in a better estate. Since my sight is so deadly to him, replied the Princess, I must obey you, but I believe it will not be for any long time. This said, she went out of *Justiniano's* chamber, after she had charged him again not to resist any remedy, and to remember that she would have him live. *Doria* and *Emilia* helped to lead her to her chamber; but that which was wonderfull in this incounter, was, that the Princess, who had not been out of her bed since she thought she should have dyed, felt her self less weak than before, and the desire she had to be able to assist *Justiniano* in person, whether the Physicians would or no, was so powerfull in her, as in four daies she found her self in an estate strong enough to be almost continually with *Justiniano*, for the space of two monthes and an half,

that the violence of his sickness lasted. During which time, the Count, *Doria*, and the Marquis, made many voyages to *Monaco*, and whereas *Justinian* was very considerable at *Genoa*, there was not a person of quality which took not great care to be informed of his health. All the assemblies, which were made at *Leonyaris*, were melancholy too; and their conversations, which were wont to be full of nothing but love and gallantry, were wholly now of the inconstancy of things; of the necessity of dying, and of the little lastingness of the most assured pleasures. They could not marvel enough, that after so long an absence, after the escaping from so many misfortunes, after the drying up of so many tears; and when it seemed that nothing could oppose *Justinian*'s and *Isabella*'s content, they should find themselves more unhappy than before: they knew not for all that how far their unhappiness extended, for their secret misfortunes were without doubt the greatest and most sensible. And when as *Justinian*'s sickness was no longer dangerous, and that he had recovered his strength, then it was that he was the most afflicted. For coming to consider the little time he had remaining to make good his word which he had given *Soliman*; and that he was to quit *Isabella*, his grief became so great, as had not his soul been already long accustomed to melancholy, he could not without dying have supported so grievous an apprehension. But a little while after he had begun to goe out of his chamber, for to repair to that of the Princess, being still very feeble and languishing, he said unto her with a great deal of pain; Now, Madam, is the time wherein you are to dispose of me; and to let me know, whether I am to be wanting, either to my love, or to my honor; live with infamy, or die with glory; satisfy *Soliman*, or oblige him by the breaking of my word to ruin not only all the Christians that are in his Empire, not only all *Europe*; but you too, who is more dear to me than all the world beside. I think, Madam, I have already told your excellencie, what I ought to doe in such a grievous case, advise then what you will have me to doe; But I beseech you, make me no more such propositions, as an excess of generosities would render unjust; hearken to nothing but reason in this encounter; do not follow that which your affection inspires you with; and remember how I ought not to do any thing that is unworthy of the honor which I have to be beloved of you. I have told you already, replied the Princess, what power I have over my self in this occasion; and my proposition seems so just unto me, as I can find nothing that can destroy it; For in fine, you will satisfy *Soliman*, and you will satisfy me also; I will doe nothing against my honor, and I will satisfy that which I owe to our affection: Resolve then to marry me and to part away, and never hope that I will change my design. When you were at *Constantinople*, did you believe that I had so little affection, so I could easily resolve to receive a visit from you, for to be deprived afterwards of your sight, it may be for as long as I live? Ah! Madam, said *Justinian* interrupting her, I had no other intent in parting from *Constantinople*, than that of seeing you, and of coming higher time enough to keep you from shutting your self up in a Cloister. For understanding the resolution you had taken for it, upon the belief you were in of my death, nothing could have been able to retain me. What, said I, the incomparable *Isabella* shall make her self an eternall prisoner for thee, and if fortune ever restores thee thy liberty, thou shalt find her without hers! Ah! no, no, rather doe any thing to hinder it. It was in this sort, Madam, that I reasoned with my self; and that together with the hope of seeing you, made me, without examining the matter, take my resolution. And I believe I have accomplished that which I propounded to my self; I have seen you, Madam, and having let you know that I am living, it is no longer in your power to dispose of your self; seeing your word keeps you from it; And for me, I promise you if I cannot break my chaines at *Constantinople*, the newes of my death shall soon set you at liberty: For to expose you to all the misfortunes, which I foresee, in permitting you to follow my fortune, is a thing that I will never consent to. The Princess, seeing *Justinian*'s firmness, said unto him with a kind of tone, which testified some choler; if the resolution you have taken be an immovable one, add not to you cruelty, that of excusing it with weak reasons; and to take from you the meanes to doe it, I conjure

conjure you never to speak to me more of it, for fear I should not have power enough over my self to keep me from giving you some markes of my resentment. I assign you eight daies, to think yet of this important affair; but hope not in the mean time, to see me change my mind. I will obey you, Madam, answered *Justiniano*, but if you knew to what an hard tryall you do reduce my soul by this excess of generosity; and how difficult it is to refuse, out of an excess of love, that which love it self doth make us desire, you would have the goodness without doubt not to give me a mark of affection, which love and reason will not have me receive. The conversation of these two Lovers finished in teares and sighes; and each of them resting in their first determination, *Justiniano* retired to his chamber, but in such despair, as never man was in more. At length, after he had combated sufficiently within himself, he took his last resolution; and knowing full well that the Princess would never permit him to part without her; neither would have him break his word with *Soliman*; and which too he could not indure to do; he concluded to go away without bidding her farewell: And to favour his intention, *Doria* arrived at *Monaco*, whom he told in private, for to give some pretext to his departure, that having seen the Princess given over by all her Physicians, he had made a vow not to marry her, till he had been at *Hierusalem*, if it please Heaven to restore her to her health; That whereas he was resolved to perform this pilgrimage unknown, and that this voyage could not be but long, he conjured him to take care of the Princess and her affairs in his absence; That in the mean time he should not speak of this design, till he was gone; and that then he should deliver his complements to all his Friends. He told him moreover that he was obliged to steal away from the Princess, who would not have him make this voyage without her; but being loth she should be exposed to the incommodities of so painfull a pilgrimage, he had concluded to part without saying any thing to her, but only leaving her a letter. *Doria* was strangely surpris'd with this discourse; but seeing that *Justiniano* spoke seriously, he offer'd (how amorous soever he was of *Sophronia*) to accompany him in this voyage; and the contestation which they had upon this subject had not ended so soon, had not *Justiniano* told him that the necessity of his affairs required it to be so; and that to render him a proof of his affection it would suffice he should furnish him with meanes to get from *Monaco* secretly. That will not be hard for you to do, answered *Doria*, for yesterday, when I arrived at the Port, I heard by chance of a French barque, that is bound for *Venice*, which parts away to morrow morning by the break of day, and no doubt will receive you, as soon as you shall present your self; so that you shall have no more to doe, but to get aboard her, and I will stay here to deliver your letter to the Princess. You will be but unwelcome to her for it, replied *Justiniano*, who was not willing that *Doria* should be present at *Isabella's* receiving of a newes, which would so much afflict her, for fear lest the constraint she would be in, should more augment her grief. He prayed him then not to see her, till he had her permission for it. And whereas he demanded of him, who should wait on him in this voyage? *Justiniano* answered him, that one of the conditions of his vow was, to goe alone and unknown. *Doria* opposed this as much as possibly he could, but vain was it for him to give any counsell to his Friend; and *Justiniano*, taking a part of the money which he had at *Monaco*, desired *Doria* to let him goe and write, and to get him to bed. After that *Doria* had obeyed him, and that all *Justiniano's* people were gone out of his chamber, except it were one, whom he had commanded to tarry in a withdrawing room till he called him, he leaned on a table, and looking on the paper which he found there, but without marking that which he looked on, he passed up and down in his mind all his past misfortunes, all those which then he reſented, and all those which he foresaw for the future; but of all these deadly thoughts, the cruellest, and the hardest to be indured, was that which set before his eyes, how he was to abandon *Isabella*: His heart was not strong enough to support with constancie so dolorous an apprehension; and his teares falling abundantly on his paper put him in mind how he was set there with a purpose to write: So that after he had spent a great



part of the night in an estate which may be more easily imagined than described, he took a pen, and inspired more by his grief than his wit, he traced these sad words,

*Justiniano's Letter to Isabella.*

**N**OR having been able to surmount your generosity, either with my tears, or with my prayers, I have at length surmounted mine own apprehensions, both with my love, and with my reason. I have found that though Fortune will not let me be happy, yet that I shall at least be unhappy alone; and that it is just I should steal away from you, that I may steal you from the cruelty of Fortune, by keeping you from following of mine. I am gone then, Madam, or so say better, I do separate myself from myself; in separating myself from you. I do obey the desire which you had, that I should sacrifice my honor, by showing myself not unworthy of your love, and by a most sensible misfortune I am forced to absent myself from you, without having so much as the consolation to bid you adieu, and to let you see by my tears what the grief is which I suffer. It is so great, Madam, that losing the use both of sight and reason together, I am compelled to shut it up in my heart, being impossible to express it. But before I leave you, remember that I beg the conservation of your life of you, till such time as you shall understand how heaven will dispose of mine. I have told Doria, that I am going to Jerusalem to accomplish a vow, which I made for you during your sickness; make use of this artifice as you please, and believe that before it be six moneths, I shall return happy unto you, or be dead with grief.

JUSTINIANO.

After that *Justiniano* had made an end of writing, and sealed his Letter, he called that servant, which he had stayed to wait on him, and willed him to deliver it the Princess three hours after his departure. And when this man demanded of him whether he would not go to bed, *Justiniano* made a sign to him to be gone, feigning as though he had somewhat else to write; but it was indeed because his grief was so great, as not being able to sleep, he thought that the agitation of his body would ease that of his mind. He past the rest of the night in walking up and down, with so great an uneasiness, as one is not able to describe that which he felt. He oftentimes opened the window to see whether it were day; and though his greatest misfortune was to part from *Monaco*, yet one would have said, that he was impatient to be gone from thence; so much was his soul troubled, and so much was his reason confounded. In the meantime *Doria*, who had not slept all the night, hearing *Justiniano* walk, (for his chamber joyned to his) caused himself to be made ready, and entred into his friends, just as the day began to break. He would yet have dissuaded him from this voyage, and once more desired him to let him accompany him, but *Justiniano* would by no means accept of so obliging an offer; so that *Doria* seeing his friends resolution, was constrained to follow his pleasure. And whereas the shadows of the night were almost quite dispersed by the approach of the Sun, *Doria* went and treated with the Master of the French Barque for *Justiniano's* passage, who followed him to the Port, his face covered with his cloak. The Guards of the Town and Castle, who saw him go forth so early, marvelled not at it, for during the little time wherein he had been well at *Monaco*, he had used to walk out at such hours to entertain his thoughts at the Sea-side. The separation of these two friends had been with more tenderness, if *Justiniano* had been less afflicted; but love so strongly possessed his heart, as there was no more room left there for friendship: so that when he came to embrace *Doria*, all that he could say to him, was to conjure him to have a care of the Princess. He would fain have disclosed the truth unto him, but *Isabella* having forbidden him so to do, he durst not disobey her. He got aboard then being scarce able to speak, and suffering himself to be disposed of by them that received him, he abandoned himself not so much to the Sea, as to his grief. The Pilot having order given him to part, steered his course for *Venice*, and *Justiniano* standing up beheld *Monaco*, with his arms across, and his eyes full of tears, never marking *Doria*, who still made signs of farewell to him from the Port, whereunto he returned no shew of answer at all. But when *Doria* had lost the sight of him, he went back unto the Castle, with a purpose

purpose not to shew himself to the Princess till she commanded him; that he might exactly observe what *Justiniano* had intreated him unto. In the mean time the three hours after his departure being past, he with whom he had left his Letter, went and delivered it to the Princess, who was but newly awake. At first when she heard that *Justiniano* had sent her that paper, she changed colour, and asked where he was: He went forth very early with *Doria*, (answered this man) whom I saw return back alone to his chamber. Without doubt (said the Princess then to her self opening the Letter) *Justiniano* hath deceived me; and *Doria* to be faithfull to his friend, hath betrayed me. But when she had read that which *Justiniano* wrote her, and that she knew he was gone, as also that *Doria* was deceived as well as she, though in a different manner, she gave a great skreek: howbeit desiring to conceal her grief from him that brought her these deadly news, she commanded him to with-draw, and to stay in her house till he had further order. As soon as she was at liberty to complain, what said she not against *Justiniano*, against fortune, and against her self? Am not I culpable of mine own misfortune? (said she sighing) Ought not I to have had him watched? Had I not made sufficient cryall of the steadfastness of his resolution? he had resisted my intreaties, he was not moved with my tears, he would not hearken to my sighs: With what stronger arms could I hope to vanquish him? but now is no time to reason of things done; *Justiniano* is gone, and how strong soever my love is, I may not forget mine honor; I cannot resolve to follow him as a forsaken one; he separated himself from me that he might be generous; and that I may not swerve from vertue, I will not follow him. But what say I, unfortunate as I am? if I know not where he is, how can I follow him? Then suddenly holding her peace, and turning her self on the other side, she sighed with so much violence, as it was impossible for her to speak. A little after for all that she fell to speaking again in this sort. - Ah, *Justiniano*, (said she) what a sensible outrage to my affection was this excess of love, that hath torn thee from me! the tempest whereunto thou exposdest thy self, is to be less feared, no doubt, than that which is raised in my soul. Is it possible (continued she) that thou couldst resolve to refuse the having of me for a companion of thy miseries? Certainly thou didst not believe that my soul was strong enough; and thou thoughtest peradventure that I did not intreat thee, but to be denied. But I am cruel (said she) to make so ill a construction of the meaning of the most generous of men; who deprives not himself of me, but for the love of me; who considers none but my interests, and who loves not even his own honor, but for my proper glory. Let us think better of *Justiniano*; let us live to obey him; and let us not give fortune that advantage, to have more cruelty, than we have constancy: Let us force her by our resolution to be weary of stirring us, since indeed there is nothing left us but that to do. After she had been a pretty while without speaking, and that she had hidden his Letter, she sent for *Doria* to confirm that unto him which had been told him by his friend. And whereas she had a great and generous soul, she composed her countenance so well; and so thoroughly restrained her tears, as no more sorrow appeared in her face, than that which the absence of *Justiniano* alone might well be the cause of. Is not your friend cruel indeed (said she to *Doria* as soon as he came to her) to steal away from me, for the satisfying of a thing which he owed not but to my consideration, feeling it seems to me that there is some justice I should follow him in a voyage, whereof I was the occasion. And if I may be permitted to accuse you of too much fidelity towards him, I shall tell you freely, that you would not have a little obliged me, if you had betrayed his secret in discovering it to me. There is sometimes (added she) a great deal of generosity in not serving ones Friends according to their intention; and in considering rather that which is utile and glorious, than what is pleasing to them; and if I be not deceived, the matter ought to have gone so in this encounter. But in conclusion *Justiniano* is gone; and there is nothing left us but to make vowes for him, as he hath made them for us. It is certain, replied *Doria*, that *Justiniano*'s voyage strangely surpris'd me; and that I was tempted to acquaint you with his design: but I confess,

selfs, Madam, when I knew that his voyage was absolutely necessary, seeing he had promised it, and that he did not steal away from you but to keep you from following him, I found that he had reason for it, and I served him in his design; Yet was it not till I had first offered to accompany him, with all the testimonies of affection I could render him; and I had added force to intreaty, had he not assured me that he should not accomplish his vow, if he went not alone and unknown. But is it possible that he is gone, said the Princess? disguise not the truth unto me, is he not concealed in some place, to take order for his affairs? No, Madam, answered *Doria*, for he hath given me the charge of them. If that be so, said the Princess, who would fain have been at liberty to shed teares, I hold it fit that you should goe and publish at *Genova* the true cause of his absense, for fear lest so unexpected a departure should cause brutes to run about, either to his disadvantage, or mine. But before you go, tell me I pray you, whether *Justiniano* were afflicted indeed to quit me? whether he said any thing to you to tell me? and what were his last words? They were all for you, replied *Doria*; for after he had imbraced me, all that he could obtain of his grief was no other than force enough to injoyne me to take care of you; so that Madam, you may dispose of me as you please, and believe that never any cloignement begot so great an affliction, as that which I saw in *Justiniano*: And knew I not that he loves you more ardently, than ever person did love, I should hardly believe that absense alone could cause so great a displeasure in his soul. The Princess felt her self then so pressed with grief, as it was impossible for her to retain her teares, and seeing that she could not hide them from *Doria*, she said unto him wiping her eyes; You may not think it strange, that I am not more constant than *Justiniano*, since I am as unhappy as he; and that I yeeld not to him in affection. This weakness justifies his, said *Doria*, and I profess he were unworthy of the honor which you do him, if he did not resent, as he doth, an absense that separates him from the onely person which can make him happy. The princess and *Doria* had some more such like discourses, but at last she prayed him once again to return with all speed to *Genova*; and for that effect she commanded a Vessell should be made ready to part away presently after dinner. The thing was executed accordingly, *Doria* departed from her, and by her direction carried back with him a part of *Justiniano's* train, the Princess retaining the other in her service till the return of their Master. The next day *Doria* arrived at *Genova*, where he delivered the departure of *Justiniano* to all his acquaintance. Every one received this newes with mervail, but amongst others, the Count, *Alphonso*, the Marquis, and all the rest of his Friends, were not contented with merveling, they were extremely afflicted at it. And being all met together at *Leonora's*, they talked a long time of this adventure; now though they doubted not but that it was in the manner as *Doria* recounted it, yet was not their reason for all that satisfied. They found something that was strange in this voyage; and condemned *Doria* for suffering him to go. *Leonora* and *Sophronia* were not of that opinion, and maintained that he had done well, in not hindring him from accomplishing that which he had promised. For my part, said the Marquis, I do not condemn *Doria*, for it may be if I had been in his place, I should have done the same thing; but if I had been in *Justiniano's*, when as the Princess was sick, I am very sure that I should not have sought for remedies so far off; and I would have chosen a pilgrimage, where she might have easily followed me, to the end I might not have been separated from her, after so long an absense. But whilst his friends lamented him, indifferent persons talked of it according to their humors; and as truth alters in going far from them which speak it, so there were those that affirmed, how *Isabella* had made a vow during her sickness never to marry, and that *Justiniano* out of despair had been so precipitate. Others would have this vow, which *Justiniano* was gone to accomplish, to be made during his captivity. Some again said, that the ghost of the Princess Mother had appeared unto her, and had forbidden her to marry him, so that being enraged at such a resolution he was gon to the warres. To conclude, they said all things except the truth, which was not known to any but the Princess and *Justiniano*, who without regarding what was said of him, had his imagination filled with nothing, but his misfortunes, and the incomparable *Isabella*.



# IBRAHIM: OR THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.

## The second part.

### The fifth Book.

**T**HAT we may not aggravate the grief of *Justiniano*, since it is not the last that he is to endure, let us land him at *Venice*, without describing his unquietness, his sorrows, and his transports. As soon as he was arrived there, he had no other design but of thinking of his departure from thence: And whereas there was a great commerce from *Venice* to all the Hands of the Archipelago, & to *Constantinople* it self, it was not long before he met with a ship that was ready to set sail for the Isle of *Chio*, so that it was not hard for him to get passage in her upon pretext of some important affairs, which he said he had with certain Jewish Merchants of *Pera*. He imbarqued himself then without being known, and too prosperous in his Navigation, by reason of his éloignement from *Isabella*, he arrived at this Hand; where he was not long before he found a Vessel that was bound for *Pera*, and shipping himself in her, he left the Ile of *Misilene* on the right hand, and on the left that of *Lemnos*, now called *Stalin*. From thence he entered into the Sereigha of *Gallipoli*, where stand the two Castles of *Sofias* and *Ahydas*, which the *Turks* name the *Dardanilli*, and so came to the *Propontia*, called *Marmora*, where he entered into the *Bosphorus* of *Thrace*, and arrived at *Pera*, where he would not go on land till it was night, because of the habit which he wore. As soon then as he came thither, he went to the Christian Religious men that lived there, who were infinitely glad to see him again, for he was a mighty support unto them. After their first complements, they told him that his absence had occasioned some mischief in the *Ottoman* Family, but though he pressed them much to express themselves more clearly, they would not do it, knowing full well the extreme affection which *Justiniano* had always born to *Misilene*, and the generous *Gianger*. And then again *Justiniano* had his mind so filled with his own misfortunes, as he insisted not much upon those of others. From thence he sent secretly to an *Isaiah* Slave, whom he had left at home, to bring him a *Turkish* Habit: Which was done accordingly, and the next day in the evening he entered into *Constantinople*, but so altered from that which he was wont to be, as he was hardly to be known. As soon as he was at his Palace, and that he had received the complements of all his Officers, of whom he was exceedingly beloved, he went to the *Seraglio*, although it was not the custom to enter there at such like hours: but *Justiniano*, whom henceforward we call *Ibrahim*, remembered his old privileges still. The *Capigis*, which kept the gate, repulsed him somewhat rudely, but as soon as they heard his voice, they craved pardon of him, and a *Capigibassi* went and advertised the grand Signior of *Ibrahim's* arrivall. He was at that time in so profound a melancholy, as less than a name that was so dear unto him

him, could not have made him answer him that spake to him; But the name of the Bassa was not so soon come to his ear, as approaching to this blessed Messenger, which brought him so pleasing a newes, he demanded of him, if it were true that he was returned, why he did not come in as he was wont to doe, without advertising him of it? This demand was a commandment to the *Capigibassi*, who presently caused *Ibrahim* to enter. Assoon as he appeared, *Soliman* charged every one to withdraw, so that seeing himself at liberty, he embraced him with so much tenderness, that though his mind was wholly taken up with love and his miseries, yet found he himself sensible of so great an amity. Is it possible, said *Soliman* unto him, that I should receive this consolation in my misfortune? but am I not to blame, continued he, to doubt that thou couldst not be generous enough to come back again? This doubt would questionless be an injurie, replied *Ibrahim*, had it not proceeded from the impatience of my return, rather than from a distrust of the promise I had made to thy Highness. It is not without reason, said *Soliman* interrupting him, that thou thinkest I have desired it, for assoon as thou hadst abandoned me, victory, fortune, and vertue abandoned me to. I became at once, both the most unfortunate, and the most faulty of all men; and by the malice of another I lost all that thy friendship had acquired me. I am no more the *Soliman*, whom thou thoughtest worthy of thy esteem, and to let thee know the deplorable estate wherein thou findest me, I have no more to say to thee, but that thou shalt never understand from my mouth the mishaps that have befallen me, or to say better, the crimes which I have committed. However I will impart unto thee, that all that which my armes had conquered in *Persia*, by thy valor and conduct, is revolted; that *Affrica* and *Mesopotamia* are no longer under my power; that *Ulama* having been wounded, his Troops have been defeated; that my whole army hath been routed; that *Tauris* is lost; and that there is no more left me of all thy conquests, than the bare remembrance of thy victories. But, ah, how happy should I be, if I had also lost the moiety of mine Empire, and had not made my self unworthy of reigning over the other! *Soliman* stayed he re to fetch a great sigh; and when as *Ibrahim* would have answered him, he would not suffer it, but conjured him not to speak at all to him, save onely to promise that he would never hate him, whatsoever he understood of his violences. *Ibrahim* was so surpris'd to hear *Soliman* speak in this sort, as he scarce knew what to answer him. For whereas he had not reflected much on that which the Religious men of *Pera* had told him, imagining it had been some dissension, which the artifices of *Roxelana* had sown in the *Ottoman* family, and none of his Officers having dared to acquaint him with that which had past, he could not conceive how *Soliman* should be so faulty. He answered him then, that he would give his own eyes the lye, even when they should report unto him that he had committed a crime; that he was too well assured of his justice and vertue to doubt of it; that great Princes might sometimes appear culpable to the eyes of their subjects, and yet be innocent in their own soules; and that in fine, he gave him the same word, which he had so exactly observed, that he would alwaies have the same thoughts for him, as he had formerly had. He besought him withall not to conceal his misfortunes from him; but *Soliman* half comforted with the promise he made him, desired him not to press him to it, and further obliged him by oath, not to speak of his crimes when he should come to know them; and should onely believe that *Roxelana* was the cause of all his disasters. *Ibrahim*, seeing how sensibly *Soliman* was touched, and perceiving well by his teares that this should be some lamentable adventure, durst not speak to him more of it; and though he had resolved to cast himself at his feet, when first he came before him, to demand his libertie of him, hoping he had then been in some sort accustomed to his absense; yet held he not that a seasonable time, and that he was to wait for another occasion. This thought redoubled his grief yet more, so as that joyned to the melancholy which his displeasures and miseries had painted in his face, made *Soliman* observe awhart his teares, that he was extremely changed. I will not ask of thee, said he unto him, whether thy voyage hath

hath been prosperous or no; for I see so many markes of sadness, both in thy colour and countenance, that feeling not my soul strong enough to support mine own misfortunes, I do not desire to know thine, which would be no less sensible to me, than if they were arriv'd to my self; for in fine, I love thee still the more. *Ibrahim* returned no other answer to this discourse, but a low obeisance, and a deep sigh, they continued yet a while in so sad a conversation; but at length *Soliman* seeing it was late, and believing that *Ibrahim* stood in need of rest, he dismissed him; after he had told him with a calmer countenance, that as in going from him he had carried away all his good fortune and vertue, so he hoped that his return would bring him back so pretious a treasure again; and that from thenceforward his innocence should not be capable of being corrupted by anothers crimes. *Ibrahim* being returned to his Palace, found a slave of *Ulama's* there, who understanding by the bruit which was spread abroad amongst all the Grandes of the Port that he was come, presented himself unto him, and delivered him a letter from his Master, who had sent him to *Constantinople*, with order to attend *Ibrahim's* return there, and to beseech him to save his live in saving *Felixana's*. For this slave, who had followed the fortune of his Master when as he changed party, had alwaies had a great share in his confidence, principally in that which concerned *Felixana*. This name of *Felixana* surpris'd *Ibrahim*, for he well remembred that this was the maid which had suffer'd shipwrack with the Princess of *Persia*, at such time as *Ruslan* had forcibly carry'd her away; so that believing her dead, he could not comprehend which way she should be saved. He entred then into his chamber, and causing this slave to follow him, he opened *Ulama's* letter, and saw that it was thus; for during the war of *Persia*, he had learned that language perfectly enough, both to understand, and speak it.

#### *Ulama's Letter to Ibrahim.*

When as the injustice and tyranny of *Tachmas* had forced me to seek out a sanctuary, to shelter my head in from a storm, which love and jealousy had rais'd up in his soul, after I had cast mine eye on all the Princes of the Levant, I fix'd it on the Emperor whom we serve. But if I may be permitted to open my heart unto you, the reputation of *Ibrahim* alone made me desire to be *Solimans*, and if you remember it, it was unto you that I address'd my self; it was by you that I receiv'd his word; it was you that presented me unto him; and it is from you also that I a second time expect the life which you sav'd in that occasion. But whereas the history of my misfortunes is too long to be written unto you, know in few words, that in protecting the Princess *Axiamira*, whom *Soliman* retaines in prison, you may both perform an action worthy of your self, and render me the most oblig'd of all men. Her high birth, her extreme vertue, and her misfortune, are reasons strong enough to carry you to serve her. But after you have satisfied this supplication, you are further to know, that in the person of *Felixana*, who partakes in the miseries of *Axiamira*, you may render me either happy, or unhappy, and absolutely dispose of my life. So do then that my sanctuary may not be unlucky to me, and that the same place which I have chosen for my security, may not be the place of my punishment. If you will take the paines to see *Felixana*, she will let you understand what our misfortunes have been, and I doubt not, knowing your generosity, but her tears will touch you more than my wordes, and that her vertue will induce yours to succor us.

*Ulama.*

The reading of this Letter touch'd *Ibrahim* very effectually; and absolutely carry'd him to serve *Ulama*, whom he had alwaies loved exceedingly; and then his own particular mishaps taught him but too well how to ease those of others. He willed the Slave, who had deliver'd him this letter, to be with him the next morning, that he might be a witness of the care which he would have to satisfy *Ulama*. After that he retir'd into his Cabinet, whither having sent for the chiefest of his

M m

Officers



Officers, he enquired of the generall report of affairs; but whereas they beleaved that the grand Signior had told him all, and that he himself was not ignorant of that which every one knew, he spake very confusedly to him of these things. Howbeit *Ibrahim* picked that out of his discourse which was so lamentable in those adventures, and which the grand Signior would not tell him. And truly it was almost an advantage to him, to be so afflicted with his own misfortunes, that he was thereby made the less sensible of those of others, when they were past remedy. For whereas he had alwayes protected the persons whom this misfortune concerned, he had resented it more if it had fallen out at another time. But it is the custom of the miserable to have one prime apprehension, which in some sort comforts them, to see that they are not the alone unhappy in the World: Nevertheless *Ibrahim* received this news with tears; and this man continuing to recount unto him all that he knew, told him that there was a Princess prisoner in the Castle of the seven Towers (which is a place wherein none are ever put but persons of quality) who was by report very much afflicted. *Ibrahim* doubted not but that it was *Axiamira*, though he had beleaved her to be dead; and having named her unto him, he confirmed him in that opinion. The grand Visier, seeing he could learn no more, got him to bed with so much affliction, as he could not sleep all that night. As soon as it was day his Palace was full of visitants; the *Beglerbei* of *Romania*, that of *Amasia*, the *Bostangibassi*, and all such as were of any rank in this Empire, presented themselves at *Ibrahim*'s rising. After the first complements, some of them spake indeed of the disorders of *Persia*, but none durst say any thing to him of that which concerned the Imperiall Hown, or that which directly regarded *Soliman*, as well for the respect which they bare him, as for the fear they were in, lest being unable to discourse of it without tears, the Emperor should know of it, and take it ill that they should entertain *Ibrahim* with a matter, vvhwhereof he desired the memory might be extinguished: Neither durst *Ibrahim* speak to them of it, having perceived vvell enough, by the confused relations vvhich had been made him, that *Soliman* was not absolutely innocent of the misfortunes vvhich had hapned unto him. This conversation then was spent vvvith constraint enough; and the hour of the grand Signiors rising being come, the grand Visier went to the Seraglio, accompanied vvvith that multitude vvhich usually strive all they can to render themselves agreeable to him, vvho was so to their Sovereign. The grand Visier made hast to the Seraglio, to the end he might have the more time to go the same day to the Castle of the seven Towers, for to see the Princess *Axiamira*, who knew not that she should see her Protector so soon: For at the very same instant, when as *Ibrahim* was thinking of her liberty, she was entertaining her self with *Halima*, the Governors Wife of that Castle, whose inclinations were vertuous enough. She was well stricken in years, so that being sufficiently informed of all that had past at the Port for a long time before, she could easily satisfie the questions which the Princess asked of her; who daily resenting the effects of *Romanas* wickedness, could not forbear complaining of her. The very same day, *Halima* going pretty early to bid *Axiamira* good morrow (for she loved her very much) she found her somewhat sadder than ordinary. Shall I never see you, said she unto her, in a quieter mind? and shall not time work that in your soul, which it doth in all the World beside? Ah! Mother (for so she called her) answered *Axiamira*, time vouchsafes not to vvork that effect in me, vvhich all the afflicted find by it; for could the misfortunes which have lighted upon me be defaced out of my memory (vvhich will never be) others do daily arrive unto me, and every moment of my life furnishes me with a fresh subject of sorrow; for indeed there is no justice in it, that I should survive so many generous persons, and even mine own hopes. Is there any new mishap befallen you, replied *Halima*; for the extraordinary langor which I perceive in your countenance, makes me, Madam, thus to demand the cause of it? It is this, answered *Axiamira*, that as if I had not effectuall miseries enough to prosecute me, my very dreams

dreams do joyn vvith them in it ; for during this last night I saw a dreadfull woman, whom I took for *Roxelana*, that exposed me to the fury of four Tygers, which pursued me all the night long ; at leastwise, me thought so. Now though I am not so scrupulous as to stand upon such like things, yet I confesse to you, that this unpleasing illusion hath so lively imprinted *Roxelanaes* true cruelties in my mind, as I cannot be perswaded but that the phantasm, vvhich I saw in my dream, resembles her. Doubtless it hath much deceived you, sayd *Halima* ; for if her soul were as beautifull as her body, she would be one of the perfectest women on the earth. You have so often promised, replied *Axiamira*, to recount unto me by what artifices she could come to share the Empire vvith *Soliman*, and seduce so great a Prince as he is, that in the anguish wherein I am at this present, if you do not keep your word vvith me, nothing can charm my grief : For whereas I doubt not but you will acquaint me with some of her wickednesses, which as yet I have not heard of, it would be some comfort to me to understand them, that I may hate her so much the more, and that I may learn what land hath produced so strange a Monster. I will gladly satisfie you, answered *Halima*, and as I have told you heretofore, I know this History very well. For besides the principall things, which no man is ignorant of, I am privy to some particularities, that are not known to all the World, and that by the information of a Slave, who was *Roxelanaes* favourite during that time, but was afterwards turned out of the Seraglio by her herself, in a phantastickall humour, which makes her that she never loves any one thing long, and hath ever since lived with me. You shall hear then that which you desire to know, and vvhich I have learned from this Slave, and some others who were well acquainted therewith : But in regard you have time enough to spare, I will intermix the History of her Father, which will not be unusefull for the intelligence of hers. *Axiamira* consenting to it caused *Felixana* to sit down by her, and *Halima* began to speak in these terms.

### The History of Bajazet and Roxelana.

They which know the birth, breeding, and first inclinations of *Roxelana*, cannot marvail at the last things which she hath done ; but contrarily they would have reason to find it strange, if she had not undertaken any thing to satisfie her ambition, which is the onely passion that reigns in her soul, and for which she sets all the rest on work ; never making use of love, hatred, envy, and jealousy, but to satisfie that. Now to shew you that she hath dravvn this inclination from her Father, who brought her up, and confirmed her in the opinion, that greatness was the soveraign good of this life ; and that to attain unto it, vertue and honor were to be despised. You are to know, that in times past *Roxelanaes* Father was in reasonable good favour vvith the Emperor *Selim*, Father to *Soliman* ; and that after the death of *Selim*, *Soliman* also had a great care of his fortune : And certainly he had rendred him one of the most considerable of this Empire, had he had as much fidelity for his Master, as he had address for to please him, cunning to conserve himself, and dissimulation to conceal his vices from a Prince vvho never had any, and who was never carried to any violence, but by that of love. But vvithall it must be acknowledged, that this passion hath often perverted all his inclinations ; or at leastwise hath forced him to do things quite contrary to the sense of his soul, when as it is peaceable. But to come again to *Bajazet* (so was the Father of *Roxelana* called) after he had by an hundred artifices, which would be too long to recite, arrived at that height about *Soliman*, which I have told you ; and that there was not any charge whereunto he might not have raised his hopes : It hapned for his ill fortune, that *Soliman* sent him to carry his directions to *Scutary*, vvhere the *Beglierbei* of *Natolia*, who vvvas there at that time, committed to his conduct the fairest Slave that ever was seen, for to present her in his name to the Sultan, to the end that if he adjudged her

worthy to be of the number of those that are destined to be his women, he should receive her into his *Seraglio*. *Bajazet* accepted of this employment with joy, without any other design at that time, than to do a thing which he thought would not be disagreeable to *Soliman*, who was then in the prime flower of his age, and one of the goodliest Princes of the world. But when the day of his departure was come, and that the *Beglierbei* of *Natolia* had put the Slave into his hands, who, according to the custom of those which are to be presented to the grand Signior, was most gorgeously set forth, he was so mightily taken with the sparkling of her eyes, as if the *Beglierbei*, who was named *Amurath*, had noted his carriage, he might well have known that he was too sensible of the attractions of beauty, to be made the conductor of a slave, that was able to subject the whole world; for as I have heard say, she was as fair as *Roxelana*, whom I have sometimes seen on the terrace of the *Seraglio*, which looks on the Sea, where ordinarily she is, when publique rejoycings are celebrated. But certes it must be acknowledged, that *Soliman* is excusable for loving her, maugre her artifices, for indeed she is the greatest beauty that imagination it self is able to conceive. This Slave, of whom I speak, being then as fair as I describe her to you, and being remitted unto the conduct of *Bajazet* for so long a journey, he became so desperately in love with her, as notwithstanding the respect which he owed to *Soliman*, and without fear of the chastisements of an offended Prince, he resolved to possess her, and not to render her unto him; howbeit he resisted so dangerous a temptation for some time; but his wit, that was but too fertile in inventions, having furnished himself with one, which he believed was good enough to make his design succeed without danger, he thought of nothing els but of executing it; and behold the way which he took to bring himself to it. This Slave destined to the grand Signior, had been sold to *Amurath*, the *Beglierbei* of *Natolia*, a little before *Bajazet's* arrivall, by certain Pirats, who not so much as knew of whence she was, though by her pronounciation it was gathered that she was of *Persia*: but whereas her language was not understood of any one, and that it appeared also how she understood nothing that was said to her, he judged that she knew not they were carrying her to the grand Signior. So that using her with a great deal of kindness during all the voyage, and testifying much affection unto her, she seemed to be comforted in her misery, at leastwise she shewed a more quiet countenance. He took exceeding care then, that she might not understand by signs, that which she could not understand otherways; and whereas he had been sent upon a secret expedition, he was but little accompanied, which served very much too for the furthering of his design. When as they approached to *Constantinople*, he took his measures so right, that arriving too late, he seemed to be constrained to lie at an house that he had some four or five miles from the City, where out of jealousy he had caused a young woman to be kept, whom he had exceedingly loved; but indeed his intent was, not to enter into *Constantinople*, for a secret reason which I am going to acquaint you with. He arrived then at this Countrey-house, where in none lived but that woman, an old Eunuch that looked to her, and two slaves that waited on her, all his retinue being at his house in *Constantinople*, where according to the permission of our Religion he had also two wives, with whom the imperious *Alicale* (so was she named that abode thus in the Country) could never agree. She was beautifull, and of a great spirit, but had such a disdainfull look, and so ambitious an inclination, that there was need of *Bajazet's* humour for one to have had any love for her. This conformity which was between them did not for all that produce a reciprocall affection; for howsoever he had endeavoured to make himself be beloved of her for the space of a year and more that she had been in his hands, yet could he never do it: whether it were that she had a naturall aversion for him, or that having found two other wives already in his house, which had all the authority over it, she could not indure to be the last; so it was, that she could not love him. She was a Persian by Nation, and by what adventure she came into *Bajazet's* hands I am not able to say; but it sufficeth to let you understand, for the intelligence of the History which I am recounting, that she was a Persian, and that



that as often as he spake to her of his affection, she used to tell him, that when he was grand Visier she would promise him her good will: And her pride was so insupportable, as he had been constrained to separate her from his other wives, being also jealous of her, as I have already declared. Knowing then her ambitious humour, and the love of the fair Slave having almost extinguished that, which *Alicola's* rigor had much diminished before; after he had conducted this stranger into a chamber, and given the old Eunuch order to have a care of her, he entred into that of *Alicola*, who received him after the accustomed manner, that is to say, with a great deal of coldness. And whereas he thought that he should surprize her with that which he purposed to say unto her, he mused a little before he spake; but she without losing of time demanded of him, how long she should continue a prisoner? whether he was resolved that she should alwayes live separated from the commerce of the world? and that she should have no other entertainment but the view of a garden, and the noise of a fountain, whilst his other women, which were not worthy to be his Slaves, enjoyed all the pleasures of *Constantinople*? *Bajazet* finding this occasion so favourable, would not lose it; so that as soon as she had done speaking, he answered her in this sort. Heaven is my witness, fair *Alicola*, said he unto her, that the discourse which I am going to make you, is rather an effect of despair, whereunto your rigor hath reduced me, than of any new passion; seeing it is certain, that if by a coldness, which had never example, you had not extinguished the fire that your eyes had kindled in my soul, I had never been sensible of love but for you only; and I should never have been capable of seeking to cure my self with an infidelity to *Soliman*, nor of changing of affection, by forgetting of yours. *Alicola* believing that *Bajazet's* discourse was but an artifice, to try if he could take her with jealousy, quickly interrupted him. Have I not told you above an hundred times (replied she) that love can never touch me without ambition? If you were a King, I should be jealous of your glory, and of your Crown; but of your person, in the estate wherein it is, I should never be: Think not then that I do give you markes of my love, in giving you any of my jealousy; love as long as you please, and whom you please, I will not oppose it; for in fine, my heart cannot be touched but with magnificence and splendor, and not with tears and sighes. If you will give me leave to speak to you, answered *Bajazet*, I will let you know, that I have a mean to satisfy both your ambition, and mine; and it is so facile, that it depends on your will alone to be a *Sultana*, and to render me one of the chiefest of this Empire, and one of the happiest men of the world, by putting me in possession of a person that is infinitely dear to me. This discourse is so intricate (answered *Alicola*) that if you do not explain your self better, I shall not be able to tell you what my will is; but in conclusion I assure you, that if so unlikely a thing should depend on it, I would soon get out of your hands, and would chuse rather to satisfy your ambition, than your love; for if I were in a condition to make your fortune, mine without doubt would be at the point I would have it, and it may be as I deserve, that is to say extremely great. *Bajazet*, who would not displease her, protested once again, that if he had believed he could have moved her with time, he would never have been carried to that which he was propounding unto her: whereupon he related unto her, how *Amurat* had trusted him with a Persian Slave, which he destined to the grand Signior; how the remembrance of her rigor had made him sensible of the attracts of her beauty; and at last said unto her, whereas you are no less beautifull than she; are also as young; are known of few; have the same coloured hair; and of a like stature; I will present you to the *Sultan* in stead of her, who questionless will be taken with that inevitable charm, which I so cruelly have tryed; And in this sort will your ambition be satisfied, as likewise my new passion; and if you be generous, you will in that estate remember, how I am born with this conformity of my humor to yours, to believe that one may do any thing to become great. Let that oblige you then for your own glory to take care of me; that a man, who hath loved you, may not be in a rank unworthy of that honor. *Alicola* mused a pretty while, then speak-

ing

ing with a more contented countenance; Is it in earnest, said she to him, that you propounded this unto me, or is it to discover my thoughts? and when as *Bajazet* had sworn unto her, that he spake with sincerity; she said unto him in a more cheerfull manner, at length you are come to that pass, as to be agreable unto me once in your life. But before you rejoyce me further, tell me, I pray you (continued she) what will he say, that gave you this Slave to present her to the grand Signior, when he shall know that you have retained her? He shall not know it, replied *Bajazet*, and I mean to carry this design with so much address, that no body shall ever discover it. The Eunuch, and the Slaves, which serve you, have testified their fidelity to me in other countries; and for those which are come with me from *Natolia*, they cannot so much as suspect that you are not the Slave whom they have accompanied. For you are not ignorant, that as soon as one is destined to the grand Signior, she is treated with a high respect, and hath a veil cast over her face, which she never takes off but when she is alone; so that according to this order, they will not wonder to see you goe out in the same sort; and whereas I purpose to have you wear the same habit which *Amurath* gave to that Slave; they will doubtless take you for her. And for language, you need not but seem as though you did not understand ours, and make use of your naturall tongue, which is the same this Slaves is. It was in this fashion that *Bajazet* made an end of confirming *Alicola* in the hope of her good fortune. And to say truth, it must be acknowledged that this design was not ill imagined; for he was very sure that *Alicola* was not known at all to the great men of the Port, so that if it should happen that any one of them should be present with *Soliman*, when he should present her unto him, that would not discover him: Neither was he ignorant, that those which give Slaves to the grand Signior, never see them again after they are once entred into the *Seraglio*, so that if *Amurath* should chance to return unto *Constantinople* within eight daies after, he could not find out the truth; since the grand Signior thanking him for his fair Slave, would not describe her unto him. But hear the success of this adventure; The resolution which I have told you of, being taken, *Bajazet* calles his old Eunuch; recommends fidelity and silence unto him; and after he had charged him never to speak of the change which he was going to see, he bids him present *Alicola*'s richest habit to the fair Slave, with all her jewells, thereby to oblige her to part with that which she had brought from *Natolia*, giving her to understand by signes, that *Bajazet* would pray her to wear that which he then gave her the next day. The matter was executed as he desired, the Eunuch performes his commission; and as soon as the day begins to break, *Alicola* attired herself with care in the fair Slaves roab, forgot nothing of what she thought would be advantageous to her; and covering her face with a very thick vail, which reached down to her vvaist, she suffered not her self to be seen again, till she came before the grand Signior. In the mean time *Bajazet*, before he parted, goes to the fair Slaves chamber, labours to make her understand, that he will see her again shortly, and that in the mean space, she may command all things there: He calls the Slaves which served *Alicola*, charges them to have the same care of the person whom he leaves in their hands, as they had had of her whom he carries away, and never to discover that which they had seen. He adds promises of recompence to his command, and threatenings of punishment, if they were so inconsiderate as to reveal the secret wherewith they were trusted. After this he causeth *Alicola* to mount into his chariot, where for the more respect he leaves her alone, and followes her on horseback, accompanied by those which had made the voyage of *Natolia* with him, who never perceived but that it was the Slave, for as I have already declared, seeing her of the same stature, with the same clothes, and her face being covered, they could observe no difference. In this manner *Bajazet* arrives at *Constantinople*, goes directly to the *Seraglio*, and with a daringnes which is incomprehensible to me, gives the *Sultan* to understand, that he was there waiting to present a Slave unto him from *Amurath*, *Beglierbei* of *Natolia*; and to give him an account also of the voyage he had made by his order. *Soliman*, who was then in an age, wherein such a like newes brought him

as much joy, as that of a conquest, caused him to enter as soon as he was advertised thereof. *Bajazet* conducts his Slave in, and after he had delivered the letters which he had in charge, he presents her to the grand Signior, takes off the veil that covers her face, and dexterously places her in an advantageous light. *Alicola* for her part, does all that she can to render her self agreeable, and following her inclination, she believed that an hardy and confident countenance would be more pleasing to *Soliman*, than a modest shame-fastness. She beholds him then with boldness, endeavours much to encounter his eyes; and whereas she had an haughty and proud look, she seemed to be rather a victorious *Amazon*, than an unfortunate Slave. But behold here, great Prince, the capriciousness of fortune, who mocking at our prudence, makes it oftentimes serve for our ruine. At first, whereas *Soliman* hath alwaies been very civill, especially with women, he beheld *Alicola* with an attention that gave her hope of the victory: and whereas she understood all that *Soliman* said, although she made shew that she understood not the language, she was ravished to hear *Soliman* testify that he was much obliged to the *Begherbei* of *Natolia*, for having rendred him a present of that importance. And when as this Prince gave over speaking, to consider her the better, she imagined that this silence was already an effect of love. So that glorious of this conquest, and not able to retain all her joy in her heart, she could not forbear looking on *Bajazet*, as it were to tell him that her victory was assured. This hope proved for all that but ill grounded, for though *Alicola* was fair, though she was very young, and that *Soliman* was so too, this Prince, which could never be vanquished, either in war, or in love, but only by gentleness, felt not himself sensible of *Alicola's* attracts. He considers her; demands out of what country she came into the hands of *Amurath*, commends her beauty, professeth that few defects could be found in it, but at length for conclusion, he tells *Bajazet*, that stoutness did never please him but in war; and that there was something in his heart which did so mightily resist all the attracts of this Slave, as he could not be moved with her. *Alicola*, surpris'd with this discourse, could not choose but stroke her hand over her eyes to assure her countenance. *Bajazet* on the other side, who had never thought that *Soliman* could have refused a fair woman, and that feared nothing so much as to see his design fail, was so amazed, as he could hardly speak. Howbeit he had a spirit, that left him not long in uneasiness; so that striving with himself, after he had answered to all the questions which *Soliman* had asked him, he assured him that the journey had made this Slave lose something of her beauty; and that if it pleased his Highness to see her again a few days after, it may be he would be better satisfied of her. Never a while, replied *Soliman*, who thinking that *Alicola* understood not what he said, disguised none of his thoughts. But, continued *Bajazet*, may I dare, without losing the respect which I ow to thy Highness, demand of thee what I shall write to *Amurath*, to let him know what the defects of her are whom he had chosen for thee? Thou shalt tell him, answered *Soliman* smiling, that she looks more like a souldier, than a woman; that she would be fitter to conduct *Amazons* to the wars, than to live in a Seraglio; that I should fear her valour would equall mine; that when I should give her marks of my love, she would give me some of her courage; that I hold her more capable to make prisoners of war, than prisoners of love; and that in conclusion, finding something redoubtable in her eyes, she hath possessed me with more fear than desire. I leave you to imagine what anguish the ambitious *Alicola* was in, it was such, as forgetting all things, she purposed twice or thrice to have spoken; and had she not been retained by the thought, that her undoing would have been annexed to that of *Bajazet*, if she discovered the trick which they played *Soliman*, it is certain that she had given some marks of her resentment. And to make an end of enraging her; and *Bajazet* too, the grand Signior told him, that to doe an act of justice in this encounter, he would put him in possession of *Alicola*, willing him to hold this present dear; for, continued he, in this sort I testify the esteem I make of *Amurath's* liberality; I recompence the care which thou hast taken in conducting this fair Slave to me; and I render her as hap-  
py



py as she deserves to be, since I bestow her on a man whom I love very much, and that without doubt hath some conformity of humour with her, if her physiognomy do not deceive me. How much *Bajazet* was afflicted with this discourse you may easily conceive, but though this adventure grieved him extremely, yet was it nothing in comparison of *Alicolaes* rage, who by the changing of her colour shewed but too much, that she had understood what the grand Signior had sayd, if he had marked it. *Bajazet* having perceived her unquietness, being dextrous, cast himself at his feet to keep him from seeing her, under pretence of rendering him thanks, and testified a great deal of joy for a thing that troubled him exceedingly. But fearing that in the end *Alicolaes* grief would break forth, he withdrew as soon as possibly he could. Scarcely was he out of the Sultans chamber, but she would have begun to cry out, and give some marks of her choler. He speaks very gently to her, represents to her, that she would undo her self as well as him, if by her imprudence she should give any notice of their imposture. She holds her peace, but not so much to obey him, nor to conserve her self, as because she was so suffocated with choler and rage, that she thought she should have burst with it. *Bajazet* re-mounts her into his Chariot, and without going to his house at *Constantinople*, he carries her back to the same place from whence she came. And whereas he rightly judged that she would not much care to conceal her self upon the way, he would take nobody with him but he that drove the Chariot. As long as the journey lasted she was constrained to hold her peace, because *Bajazet*, who foresaw that she would say strange things unto him, rode thirty or forty paces behind her; but when she was arrived at her chamber, and that *Bajazet* had followed her, with an intent to pacifie her, what did she not say against him! against the fair Slave! and against *Soliman*! I might vvell think (sayd she beholding him with contempt) that a Prince unjust enough to love thee, would be yet more not to love me; but I take heaven to witness, that I will cease to be *Alicola*, or I will be revenged either on him, or on thee that is so dear to him. *Bajazet* seeing her in this fury, did what he could to appease her, made as though he had an affection still to her, and would have perswaded her, seeing Heaven would not let her ambition be satisfied, to live better with him for the future, than formerly she had done. But she, that was not in an estate to be wrought upon, answered him with so much pride and insolence, as judging it not safe for him to leave her at liberty in his house, he quitted her in choler, and commanded his old Eunuch to shut her up, and not to let her go out of her chamber, what crying or violence soever she should use. This order given, he went to see the fair Slave, whom the Jewels which he had caused to be presented unto her, had rendred more tractable. The kind entertainment which she gave him was a comfort to him against all *Alicolaes* fury; and comming at last to consider, that in the manner as the matter had fallen out, he might possess this slave without concealing her, as he had purposed to have done; and that *Amurath* returning, he might also see her in his hands without offence, since he could say, that the grand Signior had bestowed her upon him, he was more contented than can be expressed unto you. But to abridge this discourse as much as possible I may, you shall understand, that *Bajazets* submissions put him quickly in possession of the fair Slave, whom he took to Wife according to our ceremonies; and that his imposture gave him a year of felicity: For though it vexed him to be constrained to keep *Alicola* shut up for fear she should discover him, yet was it but a light unquietness in comparison of the pleasure which he enjoyed in the possession of the fair Slave; who almost as soon as she was his Wife, became with child, which was no little joy to him, for that he had had no children before. Behold him then the happiest of men, according to his opinion, and in a condition to be no longer in fear. But he knew not that Tygers chayned are alwaies dangerous, and that one can never be so well secured of them, either with chains or grates, but that they are still to be feared. As things were in this estate, *Amurath* was recalled to the Port by the grand Signior, who seeing him, excused the bestowing

bestowing of his Slave on *Bajazet*, and told him some of the reasons, which laughing he had willed should be written unto him: now though *Amurath* had not found any such haughty look in the Slave which he had sent, yet did he not for all that suspect *Bajazet* of deceiving him. Some days after his return he inquires after him; and learns that he is seldom at *Constantinople*, but when the necessity of his attendance upon *Soliman* required it; and that the love of a Slave, which the grand Signior had given him about a year before, possessed him in such sort, as he was scarce any longer visible for his friends. This discourse touched *Amurath* sensibly; for having had apprehensions for her, which might be termed love, yet being at that time in no very good grace with the grand Signior, he had surmounted them, out of a belief that he should make an agreeable present to *Soliman*; but now knowing that she made up the felicity of another, his first sparkles began to kindle again. He had without any trouble at all understood from *Soliman's* own mouth, that *Bajazet* had this Slave, but not that *Bajazet* was enamoured of her. And this news so disquieted him, and moved him in such sort, as without further delay, and without discovering what design he had in the visit which he purposed to make, he set forth on his way to go and see *Bajazet* in his retirement, with an intent to demand of him onely one sight, more of the fair Slave, who being much indisposed by reason of her great belly, had stayed *Bajazet* nine or ten dayes with her, so that he had no knowledge of *Amurath's* return. The house wherein he was at that time was pleasant enough, in regard of a fair Garden which opened into a Meadow, that had a little River running thorough it. This Meadow was inclosed with a wall, as well as the Garden, and the River went in and out of the Meadow by certain grates, expressly made for that purpose. It was in this delightfull place that *Bajazet* was walking with the fair Slave to take the air, whenas *Amurath* arrived there. As soon as the old Eunuch knew who he was, he opened him the gate, sent to advertise his Master, and would have had *Amurath* enter into the house, the more commodiously to abide his coming; but finding the Court to his mind, he would needs walk therein, staying for *Bajazet*. In the mean time *Alicola*, who had no other entertainment but to see thorough her window what was done in the Court, hearing it sayd that it was *Amurath* the *Beglierbei* of *Natolia*, consults a little with herself gets a slave whom she had gained, to bring her Ink and Paper, and with very great speed writes a Note, folds it up as small as possibly she could, and sends the suborned slave into the Court, to the end that if *Amurath* did not receive it when she should cast it down to him, she might take it up, and so keep the old Eunuch from finding it. This order given, she goes to the window, and so luckily for the furtherance of her design, that *Amurath*, being weary of attending, had sent the old Eunuch to hasten *Bajazet* away, on to know what hindered him from coming. *Alicola* seeing so favourable an occasion, and *Amurath* being then almost close under her window, she lifted up the grate, and cast the note so dextrously to him, that after it had touched his Turbant a little, it fell upon his hand, and from thence to the ground. But as soon as *Alicola* had cast out her note, she let down the grate, so as he could but only perceive that it was a woman that had shut it. He imagined thereupon that this peradventure was the fair Slave which wrote unto him, and that she desired to get out of *Bajazet's* hands; in which thought, he speedily took up the paper, and being about to open it, he saw written upon the outside,

*Be secret, and read not this note till thou comest to Constantinople, for it imports thee, and me too.*

This prohibition had not without doubt been of power enough to restrain his curiosity, had not the old Eunuch come running to tell him, that *Bajazet* would be with him presently, and how the cause of his stay was, that walking forth a pretty way off with the fair Slave, he had been constrained to return very softly leading her, in regard she was exceeding weak by reason of her indisposition. *Amurath* concealed his note, and perceiving it could not be the fair Slave, because

she was with *Bajazet*, he could not tell what to think of this adventure. At the same instant *Bajazet* appeared, and the stubborn Slave re-entered into the house; to assure *Alicola* that her note was received. *Amurath*, salutes *Bajazet*, and the fair Slave lifts up her vail, as her husband and she had before-hand agreed; for they had been a good while advising as they came along whether it were fit that *Amurath* should see her, or no. *Bajazet*, after such time as the fair Slave had learned our language, had recounted unto her the artifice he had used to possess her, the better to testify his affection unto her. According to the resolution they had taken then, she pulled up her vail, and said unto him, that she remembered well he had redeemed her from the Pirates; that she owed all her felicity to him; and that although she held her self the happiest creature in the world, yet was she grieved for his sake, that her defects had kept her from being agreeable to the grand Signior. This woman spoke thus with an apparent sincerity, so well counterfeited, as it had been hard not to have been deceived with it. And that which rendered her so dextrous was, for that she really loved *Bajazet*, who on his part made an hundred complements to *Amurath*, assuring him that he was more obliged to him, than to *Soliman*, for the possession of a person which was infinitely dear to him; since if he had not had the goodness to confide in him, by giving him the conduct of this Slave, he had never been maker of the happiness which now he enjoyed. *Amurath* answered to all these civilities with more liberty of mind, than he could have done, if he had not seen the fair Slave: For finding her somewhat altered, by reason of her sickness and being with child, his renewing flames extinguished in a moment, and tranquility re-established it self in his soul. Howbeit he marvelled with himself, that *Soliman* should find this woman to have a proud and haughty look; for though she had a great deal of majesty, yet was it quite contrary to that of *Alicola*; having very much sweetness and modestie in the air of her face. But as he knew, that one and the same thing is diversly judged of by the most part of the world, so he made no great reflexion thereupon; and the sole uneasiness about the note which had been cast him, could then trouble him. And whereas he had no more to do in that place, seeing the fair Slave touched his heart no longer, he shortened his visit, and after he had been two houres in the hall, talking of the reasons which had brought him back to the Port, he took leave of the fair Slave; for as for *Bajazet*, whereas he had purposed to return that day to the City, he thought he should be uncivill in not going along with *Amurath*, who did his uttermost to keep him from it; judging rightly that if they went together, he should not read his note till he came to *Constantinople*; but at length he was faine to give way to *Bajazet*'s importunate civility. As they were in the Court ready to depart, *Bajazet* stopt in a litle to say something to the fair Slave; during the which *Amurath* stood looking on the window, from whence the note had been thrown him. And whereas *Alicola* was not gone from it, she changed her first resolution, lifted up the grate, and shewing her self openly, she joyned the charmes of her beauty to her requests; for if you have observed it, all our houses are so low, that she was not far distant from him. After she had let her self be seen a while, she saluted *Amurath* after the fashion of the Country; and with a suppliant behaviour seemed to demand succour of him in some misfortune that was befallen her. *Amurath* finding her very beautifull, made sign to her, that he would do what she would have him, not being able for all that to comprehend ought in this adventure. But at last *Bajazet* came, and going away together, they arrived at *Constantinople* just as it was night. *Bajazet* waited on *Amurath* home, where having left him, he gave him the liberty to satisfy his impatience. He was no sooner alone then but he opened *Alicola*'s note, which in few words recounted to him all *Bajazet*'s imposture; his love to the fair Slave; the supposition he had made to *Soliman*; his treachery to him; and his rigor towards her, because (said she unto him) he had a mind too high and generous to love an unfaithfull Friend, a Love without constancy, and a perfidious Subject. You may imagine now how much *Amurath* was surpris'd with this discourse; At first he knew not whether he should believe *Bajazet* to be capable of so great a treason



treason, or whether he should think that this incensed womans spight had made her invent this trick, to be revenged of *Bajazet*; But passing over again in his memory, how the grand Signior had told him at his return, that he had not accepted of his Slave, because he judged her more proper to conduct *Amazons*, to the warres: than to live amongst women in a Seraglio, and a great number of other things, which did not agree with the fair Slave: this consideration made him open his eyes, and scarcely doubt any longer of *Bajazet's* treason. Withall, he had observed, in the little time that he had seen *Alicola* at the window, how she had a proud and haughty look, so that this might be she whom *Soliman* had refused, as she delivered in her note. All these circumstances joyned together, made him resolve to advertise *Soliman* of it. And though it was indifferent late, and that it was not the custom to come into the Seraglio at such hours, at leastwise if it were not to acquaint the *Sultan* with some intelligence of importance, yet caused he him to be advertised, that he desired to speak with him about a matter that was necessary for him to know: But *Soliman* being then in the womens Seraglio, it was impossible for *Amurath* to see him till the next day. Now whereas *Bajazet* believed himself more cunning than all the world besides, he never suspected that he should be discovered; and the opinion he was in that he could not be deceived, served not a little to deceive him. The morning was no sooner come, but *Amurath* returns to the Seraglio; presents himself to *Soliman* at his rising; shewes him *Alicolae's* note; confirms it to him by all the circumstances which I have declared; and at length perswades this truth so strongly unto him, as *Soliman* no longer doubting of it, ordaines him to go the very same day and seize both upon *Alicola* and the fair Slave; and to give order for the securing of *Bajazet* in the mean time. *Amurath*, exceedingly contented with this commission, parts speedily from the Seraglio to do things necessary for the execution of his design; which could not be so secret, but *Bajazet* was advertised, that he was preparing of a chariot to return to his house. The first thought that came into his mind was, that *Amurath* was become enamoured of the fair Slave, and that he would take her away by force. He departed then in all possible hast, with an intent to remove the fair Slave from the house, and it may be to rid himself of *Alicola*, not knowing in so cross an adventure, in what place to put her for his own security. Now though he was more diligent than *Amurath*, and that by a nearer and a by-way he arrived there a little before him, yet could he not execute all that he thought to have done; for *Amurath*, who had not stayed for his chariot, was gone away with twelve armed men, so that he arrived at *Bajazet's* house, a little after he was entred into the fair Slaves chamber, whom he found still in her bed: so that pressing her to make herself ready with all speed, and recounting unto her in few words the occasion of his fear, he thought of nothing but of getting her from thence, and carrying her to *Constantinople*, where he believed *Amurath* durst not enterprise such a like violence. But he was very much surprised, when as his Eunuch came and told him that *Amurath*, who knew not that *Bajazet* was there, required to enter in the behalf of the grand Signior; that he espied through a chink of the door that he was accompanied with armed men; and that to have meanes to advertise him of it, he had told him that he went to fetch the keyes to open him the gate. *Bajazet* began then to change his opinion; for he was sure that *Amurath* durst not make use of the *Sultans* name, if he had not been authorised for it. Behold him then in the belief that he was discovered; & the better to clear himself therein, he would have entred into *Alicolae's* chamber, whom peradventure he would have killed, but he found that she had shut it. For when she saw the fright the old Eunuch was in, and that she doubted not but her note would produce some violence, she and her suborned slave had barricadoed their door as much as possibly they could; foreseeing well that *Bajazet* would turn all his fury upon her; as indeed, he did what he could to have broken up the door; but seeing he could not prevail, and fearing lest *Amurath* should enter, he took the fair Slave, who had made herself ready in hast, cross thorough the Garden, to get out at a back Gate, without knowing as then which way to fly;

and the better to amuse *Amurath* if he should follow them, they shut both the gate of the garden, and that of the meadow after them. On the other side, *Amurath* who would attend no longer, caused the outward gate to be broken open; and scarcely had *Bajazet* shut that of the Garden, when as he was in the house. Never was there a greater disorder seen; the fair Slave was all in tears, and fearing she should not be able to go, by reason of her great belly and her indisposition, she besought *Bajazet* to abandon her, and to think of nothing but saving himself. But unwilling so to do, he laboured to give her some hope, and to go as fast as she could, untill they might get up both on a horse, which the slave that was faithful unto him, was bringing them. In the mean time *Alicola* cried out that they would murder her, to the end that *Amurath* hearing her cries, might the quicker enter into the house, and more easily follow them that were fled. But at last *Amurath* being got in, and *Alicola* having opened him her chamber door, acquainted him, how from her window that opened upon the Garden, she had seen *Bajazet* escape out of a back-gate; and that it were good he should be pursued with all speed. *Amurath* presently enjoins some of his men to do so; and charges them, if they met with him, not to kill him, howsoever he defended himself. They do as they are commanded, but finding the gates shut, they were a long time before they could break them open; so that when they were without any obstacle, they were not in case so easily to find that which they sought for. They separated themselves, out of the hope to meet with him the sooner, and omitted nothing of whatsoever they believed might be of use for this search. Two of them indeed incountred the slave which had followed them, and that was resolved not to re-enter into her Masters house; howbeit she served but to turn them out of the way, which undoubtedly had brought them to those fugitives. For not knowing that she belonged to *Bajazet*, they asked of her if she had not seen a man carrying away a woman? She nothing daunted told them, that they had past by her a little before; that leaving the ordinary road they had taken on the right hand over the fields. This slave said thus unto them in such an ingenuous manner, as they believed her; so that abandoning a way which would have made them incounter what they sought for, they took another which led them far from it. After so vain a labor, seeing the night approach, without having any hope to perform that which had been commanded them, they returned to *Amurath*, who in giving liberty to the ambitious *Alicola*, was constrained to lose his own, such power had the charms of this woman over his soul. For whereas she had remembered how disadvantageous her proud humour had been to her, at such time as she appeared before *Soliman*, she constrained her inclination, and adding artifice to her beauty, she was so pleasing to *Amurath*, as he could not resist her. She related to him at length all that she had written to him in brief, and calling him her Deliverer, with her eyes full of tears, she aggravated all the rigors which *Bajazet* had used towards her, after that the fair Slave was in his hands. She was carefull to let him know, that *Bajazet* could never surmount her, either with submissions or menaces; and casting her self at *Amurath's* feet, to implore his protection to *Soliman*, lest he should punish her for being an actor in the supposition that was made him, she moved his heart to pity; and he himself believing that this was nothing but compassion, found it afterwards to be love. But at last *Amurath* seeing by the return of his people that he had no more to do in that place, and that his Chariot was arrived a good while before, he placed *Alicola* in it, together with the slave that had been faithful unto her; and though it was exceeding late, yet they set forth on their way towards *Constantinople*. *Amurath* caused also the old Eunuch to be brought along, that he might be made to confirm *Alicola's* discourse. When they had marched a pretty while, the night surpris'd them, which was so obscure and dark (for neither Moon nor stars were to be seen) as he that drove the chariot, having never been at this place before, lost his way in such sort, as after he had travelled half the night in hope to find it again, he was constrained to send one to his Master to advertise him of the fault he had committed. *Amurath* seeing the Cha-

riot



riot stand still, believed, so little had he thought of his way, and so much had he been taken up with his new passion, that they were come to *Constantinople*; but he was much amazed when he understood the truth of the matter, and being somewhat angry, he alighted to see if he could know the place where they were: but in fine, it was impossible for him to discern, whether in continuing that way, they should not go further from the City, or no. In this uncertainty, he sent two of his men to see if they could finde out any houses, either to lodge there, or to learn of them what course they should hold: but these two having lost their way themselves, after they had found that they sought for, could not recover the place where they had left the Chariot. In the mean time, *Amurath* having no news of those he had sent, and not knowing what to do in so cross an accident, resolved to stay the day break, or the return of his men; before he would go on, fearing he should wander still further, and fall into some precipice. This resolution taken, he Marshall'd all his men round about his Chariot, and advancing forth some Centinells, he commanded them not to speak, nor to make any noise, that they might the more easily hear any that came to them. This order given, he placed himself neer to the Chariot, with his Scymitar out of the Scabbard, to the end he might not be surprized if any body should assault him; craving pardon of *Alicola* for the incommodity she received. They had almost past the whole night in this displeasing stay, and the break of day began already to whiten the clouds a little on the Sun-rising side, when they heard the trampling of an horse, and suddenly after the cry and fall of a woman. *Amurath* being instantly advertised thereof, thought it might be the fair Slave; they went then afoot to that part where they had heard this voyce, with as little noise as possibly they could make; it was not long before they heard a man speak, without distinctly understanding what he said. But at length approaching neerer to them, they heard how that woman conjured him to abandon her, and to think of nothing but his own safety; how he saw well that it was heavens pleasure she should be cast away, and that it was impossible for him to save her. At the same instant that mans horse having got loose came amongst those of the Chariot, who thereupon made so great a noise, that *Amurath*, who thought it was not fit to give *Bajazet* (whom he knew by his voice) any leisure to put himself in defence, advanced foremost of all to that place where he had heard him speak; but he had not gone far, before he found the fair Slave at his feet, though he could not well discern her in regard it was not yet light enough for it; *Bajazet* did what he could to resist them that prest him to yeeld himself: And whereas he knew not certainly whether these were *Amuraths* men or no, he told them that they did not know him, and that assuredly they were mistaken. But when he heard *Amurath* bid the fair Slave not be afraid, for that she should have no harm, his despair was then so extreme, as leaving those from whom he defended himself, he made directly towards *Amurath*; but before he could arrive at him, he was seized upon behind by those three against whom he had fought, who presently took his Scymitar from him. Behold him then in the power of his enemies, as well as the fair Slave: for thinking to do the best for their safety, they had hid themselves most part of the day in a wood, with a resolution to travell all night; but their horse chancing to stumble, the fair Slave fell, as I have declared, and by her crying out discovered where she was. *Amurath* seeing how lucky the losing of his way had proved unto him, and that it began to be light enough to discern where they were, found he was not so far from *Constantinople* as he thought he had been, so that considering how he might best convey his prisoners to the City, he desired *Alicola* that she would make the rest of the journey on horse-back, to the end he might for his own securitie put *Bajazet* and the fair Slave into the Chariot. To tell you, Madam, in what a taking *Bajazet* was, when he saw *Alicola* come out of the Chariot, and behold him with a strange insolence, I dare not undertake, neither the reproaches which *Amurath* gave to *Bajazet* for the Treason he had committed. But at last, after they had said all that the divers passions which mastered their souls, inspired them with, *Amurath* caused

*Bajazet*



*Bajazet* to enter into the Chariot, and the fair Slave with him, whose fall had brought her more fear than hurt, for she had but a little bruise upon one of her arms. *Alicola* mounted then on a horse, and her slave on another; all *Amuraths* people marched on both sides of the Chariot, and he with *Alicola* rode four or five paces behind, as it were leading the prisoners, whom he conducted in triumph. They arrived in this sort at the gates of *Constantinople*, where having made *Alicola* alight, he sent her, together with *Bajazet* and the fair Slave to his Palace, and there after he had caused them to eat, he went to give *Soliman* an account of his voyage. As soon as the *Sultan* was advertised of the state of things, he commanded these offenders to be brought before him, which immediately was executed. You may imagine the severall apprehensions that all of them had: *Bajazet* was in a great deal of confusion to appear before his Master whom he had betrayed; before a friend whom he had deceived; before a woman whom he had loved, and that was going to convince him of perfidiousness; but that which most afflicted him was the grief of the fair Slave. *Alicola* was exceedingly vexed to appear before a Prince that had despised her; yet did she comfort her self with the thought that she deprived him of a man whom he loved. *Amurath* had his heart filled with his new flames, which made him to be not without uneasiness; for he feared that *Soliman* punishing *Bajazet* would also punish *Alicola*, since she had helped to deceive him. As for the fair Slave, the fear alone of losing *Bajazet* made her shed tears: But at length, they arrived all before *Soliman*. And whereas none of them durst so much as lift up their eyes, it was the *Sultans* pleasure they should speak separately; and first he commanded *Bajazet* to render an account of his doings. Whereupon falling down on his knees, he spake much after this manner; for I think that I have heard him repeat it over above an hundred times. As love only hath been the cause of my crime, so love only must also be my defence; for, my Lord (said he unto him) I know but too well, that reason and justice are absolutely against me. I have contemned the counsell of the first, and I have not been afraid of the second; I have betrayed a Prince, who is not only my lawfull Prince; who is not only the greatest Prince of the World; but who, for the greater aggravating of my fault, is a Prince which hath alwaies loved me, and whose goodness hath been so great towards me, as it hath scarce set any bounds to my hopes. Now if after so great a crime, it is requisite to consider the rest which I have committed, I have betrayed a man that confided in me; I have abandoned a woman whom I had loved long, and have made her pay very dearly for the testimonies of my affection, with unheard-of rigour; and to say all, I have abused the simplicity of a Slave which was destined to thee, and depriving her by my artifices of the honour of being thine, I have wronged her more than all the rest. In fine, my Lord, which way soever I turn me, I see the marks of my crime; but if notwithstanding it would please thy Highness to consider by what violence my reason hath been forced to carry me to such strange things, thou wouldst doubtless have some pity of my misfortune. For if it be true that we have some compassion of a man whose imagination hath been troubled with melancholy, why shall we not have it of a man whom love hath bereaved of his understanding? What imports it whether the cause of his folly be interior, or whether it proceeds from without? so it is, that I have not failed, till love had seduced my reason; till I had lost my judgement, till my will was no longer in mine own power; till all my desires perswaded me to the crime which I have committed; till all my senses betrayed me, till occasion favored my design; and till nothing apposing my felicity, I had not strength enough to despise it, as I was obliged to do, seeing I could not enjoy it without being the most faulty of all men. In conclusion, if thy goodness will permit it, all my crimes shall be comprised in one alone word, I have loved. I do not for all that refuse the chastisement which I merit, and to that end I lay my head at thy feet. *Bajazet* had no sooner made an end of speaking, but *Alicola* said unto *Soliman* with a bold and firme voyce; as for me, the crime which I have committed is of such a nature, as I can never repent me of it, and the onely grief I have

have left me is; that I have committed a crime to no purpose. I know that in desiring the honor to be thy Slave, I wished for a good which I was unworthy of; but I hoped that if my beauty was not able to touch thy Highness powerfully, yet the greatness of my soul might please thee; and I attended from mine eyes, but this onely advantage to be received into the number of thy Slaves, remitting my good fortune to the knowledge, which time should have given thee of the thoughts of my heart. Finally, my Lord, I was shewed a way, which might have led me to glory; I followeth it, and would follow it still, had I new means presented me to doe it. But if nevertheless so noble a desigoe deserves chastisement, I may say, that the punishment which I have already received for it is greater than the evill I have done. I will not reckon up the rigors of *Bajazet*, for I am too generous to aggravate his fault before a Prince, whom he hath but too much provoked; but I will only beseech thy Highness to remember those cruell words, and that bitter jeere, which thou usedst to *Bajazet*, when as thou didst refuse me: words which I understood but too well, though I made shew that I understood them not. And to punish my self also in thy presence, I am but to call to minde, how thou saidst that I was fitter to conduct *Amazons* to the wars, than to live in a Seraglio; that I looked more like a Soldier, than a woman; that thou fearedst my valour would equall thine; that when as thou wouldst give me markes of thy affection, I would render thee some of my courage; and at last that I was more capable of making prisoners of warre, than prisoners of love. Ah, my Lord, if thou knewest what a punishment that is, which a woman doth resent, that is of an high spirit, and thinkes her self faire, when she heares such like things spoken of her, thy Highness would not be troubled how to chastise me, seeing it is certaine that I carry a tormentor about me in my memory, which followes me every where, and will persecute me eternally. Howsoever I am most ready to obey thy Highness, and to die, that thou mayest be revenged of me, since I cannot live to be thine. Herewith *Alicia* made an end of her speech, and the faire slave began hers; and though she spake not one language perfectly, yet was not her discourse the least couching. The rest (said she to *Soliman*) have laboured to excuse their crimes to thy Highness; but for me, who may not black mine innocency voluntarily, since I cannot partake with *Bajazet* in his crime, I must at least vvice partake with him in his misfortune. I must (I say) indeavour to make mine innocency appeare, only to obtaine pardon for his crime. But the misery wherein I find my self is so great, as I cannot think to save him this way, but in rendering him the more faulty. I must say then, my Lord, that when *Amurath* put me into his hands, I knew not that I was destined to thy Highness; he conducted me to his house, and retained me there without ever suffering me to understand so much; and having rendred me all the testimonies of love and respect, which I could have desired from a man that had not had me in his power, I acknowledge that his affection moved me, that I gave him mine; and that in the wretched condition, whereunto fortune hath reduced me, I reem my self happy to be his wife, I acknowledge also, my Lord, that he hath confessed his crime unto me since; but whereas this crime was a testimony of the affection he bore me, and that our marriage had made me unworthy of being able to repair his fault, by restoring me into thy hands, would not thy Highness have blamed me for coming to accuse my husband of a fault, which he hath not committed but out of an excess of love? After this, my Lord, I do not think thy Highness can doubt of mine innocencie; and not doubting of it, I dare hope that thou wilt not punish me more cruelly than *Bajazet*, by letting me live, and putting him to death; and that contrarily thou wilt have the goodness to grant me his pardon. For, my Lord, what reason would there be, that I who am absolutely innocent, should have the same destiny that the guilty have? Is it not enough, that fortune hath forcibly carried me from out of the armes of my parents, to put me into the hands of Pirates? that I have been sold for a Slave; and to say all, that she hath deprived me of the honor of being thine; but that by the order of the greatest, and most equitable of Princes, I should also be deprived of an husband, who is to me in stead of Parents, of country

country, of treasures; and who in conclusion makes up all my felicity? Consider, my Lord, in this occasion, how his crime and mine innocence are linked together, as thou canst not be just towards him, without being unjust towards me, and how the other way, thou maist be just towards me, and clement towards him. But to carry presumption as far as it can goe, or to say better, the confidence which I have in thy goodness, I humbly beseech thee again, that as it is I who have robbed the unhappy *Alicola* of *Bajazet*, and that in consideration of me she hath suffered so much, so thou wilt likewise in consideration of me pardon him. But if nevertheless thy Highness is otherwise resolved, grant me at leastwise the grace that I may die with *Bajazet*. The fair Slave mollified the heart of *Soliman*; and as hee was about to have spoken, *Amurath* made hast to say to him; I know very well that I am the accuser of these offenders, and that in some sort too I am a party with them; so that, my Lord, I am to be their defensor also in this occasion, and doe most humbly beseech thy Highness to pardon them: It is an act worthy of *Soliman* not to be revenged on them that are in his power; and the true felicity of Kings is without doubt to make up that of their subjects. It will be long of none but thy self then, if thou be not satisfied, in rendering us all four happy. For, my Lord, if thou leavest the possession of the fair Slave to *Bajazet*, he will certainly esteem himself happy, as well as she. As for me, my Lord, if the purpose which I had to tender thee a present, that I thought would be agreeable to thee, merits any recompence, as thy highness hath beene pleased to assure me, I beg the pardon and possession of *Alicola*, who by what I have noted in her discourse, is more sensible of ambition than love; so that injoying by thy bounty, a rank considerable enough about thee, she will have means to be satisfied, and I too; seeing I am constrained to acknowledge, that my opinion is not like unto thine, for the beauty of *Alicola*; and that I have been a whole day the most amorous of all men. *Soliman* seeing him about to proceed, would not permit him, and reaching his hand to him smiling, I am glad (said hee unto him) that we are not of the same opinion for beauty, since thereby I am enabled to satisfie thee. And for thee, said he to *Bajazet*, I remit the offence thou hast committed against me; but know, that if Love combatted for thee in thy discourse, the goodwill which I have alwaies borne thee hath far better defended thee in my heart. Then turning him to the fair Slave, he commended her generosity, and the affection which shee carried to *Bajazet*, assuring her that he would never trouble her rest. As for *Alicola*, he told her, that to render the conquest, which she had obtained, more worthy of her, and more capable of contenting her, he would make *Amurath* grand vizier. After this he said to *Bajazet*, hee was sorry that for the preservation of his authority, and for example sake, hee could not let him live at *Constantinople*; but in regard it was impossible the matter should not be divulged by those who had accompanied *Amurath*, he must needs resolve to absent himself from the Port, for fear least this importunity should give others the boldness to commit the like, or greater faults than this. That he did not condemn him to go out of the territories of his Dominion, but he would have him abide in one of the Islands of the *Achipelago*; and there lead a private and particular life. To represent unto you the joy of these four persons, would be an impossible thing, however so it was, that after they had rendered a thousand thanks to *Soliman*, and that he had made them all recount the severall thoughts which they had had during the time wherein he had been deceived by them, they departed away. *Amurath* conducted *Alicola* home to his house, where he married her the next day; and *Bajazet* went to give order for his affaires. Behold, Madam, how this matter passed; for my husband, who as you know is older than I, hath understood it from *Bajazet*'s own mouth, whose friend hee had been a long time together. Have not you told me (said *Axamira*) that you knew all these things from a slave that was *Roxelana*'s favourite, whom she afterwards turned away; and that hath served you a great while? Yes indeed, answered *Hallma*, for so much as concerned *Roxelana* in particular; but whereas her History depends on her father *Bajazet*, I was willing to recount it unto you: And you your self will doubtless judge, that it was not unusefull for the intelligence of



of that which you desire to know. You have very much obliged me, replied *Axiamira*; for certainly this adventure deserves to be known; but let us come, I pray you, to that which regards *Roxelana* in particular. I shall tell you then, said *Halima*, that after *Bajazet* had well thought of the place that he was to goe and inhabit in, he chose the Town of *Chio*, which beares the name of the Island wherein it is built; it is situated in the *Archipelago*, and being only tributary to the Grand Signior, is certainly one of the most pleasant Islands in the world, either for the fertility thereof, for the sweetness of the climate, for the beaury of the buildings, for the curtesie of those that inhabit it, or for the liberty of conversation, which is greater in that place, than in all the rest of this Empire. The cause of this liberty is, for that this Island is inhabited by all sorts of Nations, so that of the diversity of their customs a perfect one is made which holds a little of all the rest. It was in this blifs-full abode then, whither *Bajazet* went to find out a refuge, after his banishment. I have told you he had two Wives at *Constantinople*, but whereas he loved none but the fair Slave, he gave them a piece of money, and restored them to their parents, according to the permission of our Laws, and carried along with him only the person whom he loved. He laded a vessel then with his goods, and in the end arrived prosperously at the Isle of *Chio*; where he was scarcely settled, when as the fair Slave was delivered of a daughter, whom afterwards he called *Roxelana*, and is the same whose adventures you desire to know. *Bajazet*, as I have declared to you, was of an ambitious humor, so that after he had for a while led an idle life, and that a long possession of the fair Slave had quenched all those flames in his heart, ambition began to kindle hers again, and re-assumed her former room in his soul. He termed the place of his retreat a prison; he bore his exile unquietly; and calling to remembrance all the great hopes which he had had, he was troubled with a continuall remorse for what he had done, and anguish of mind that never abandoned him; for the more he sought how to re-establish himself, the less likelyhood he saw for it. In the mean time the little *Roxelana* grew up still, and shee might bee about four yeares old, when as *Bajazet* considering her upon a day, in the midst of a great assembly, where every one admired her springing beauty, and took pleasure in beholding her, he heard one ask her what she would most desire in the world? she straight answered without sticking at it, that it should be to make her father rich and powerful. This was no sooner spoken by her, but *Bajazet* comming as it were out of a dead sleep, took a resolution, which I will relate unto you. And consider I pray you, how a weak beginning hath many times a long and dangerous consequence! the little *Roxelana* was not more beautifull that day than at other times, howbeit her fathers anguish had been so great, as one would have thought he had never taken notice that she was the fairest and wittiest child that ever had been seen; for as soon as he had opened his eyes, and that the acclamations which were given to *Roxelana* had made him perceive she was a Master-piece of Nature, his heaviness diminished, and all his industry and care was no longer, but to endeavour to make her wit as dextrous as her beauty was charming. And truly it was not hard to bring her to what he desired; for as she had all the beauty of her mother, so had she all the inclinations of her father. And whereas they are perfectly discerned in that innocent age, she that acquainted me with all these things, and that lived with her both at that time, and afterwards in the Seraglio, hath told me, that in her tenderest infancy, she had an imperious spirit, which could not endure to be controlled by any body. She would alwaies be mistress of all the other little girles that played with her; and her very play was dextrous still, and malicious. She told me further, that she was never seen to weep, nor ask for pardon; neither did ever person tell a lye with more confidence. She was curious to know all things, and one of her greatest delights was to see beasts fight together. This cruell humour was for all that so well concealed, by the gentleness of her look, as she seemed to be the most amiable child that ever was beheld. I leave you to judge, Madam, whether *Bajazet* finding so toward a disposition to receive his instructi-

ons, did not make up an accomplished work. He did not teach her to be vertuous, but onely to be carefull to seem so. In her youngest years he laboured to frame her to a gracefull behaviour, and to entertain her alwaies with great hopes; to promise her that one day she should be rich, and that she should have stately Palaces, to the end that he might insinuate into her betimes, that Greatness was the sovereign good; and that so desiring it with passion, she might be the more easily carried afterwards to do all things necessary for the acquiring of it. When she had attained to the age of eleven or twelve years, and that she had a forward wit, able to apprehend his maxims, he began to speak more plainly to her, and to tell her, that being born with no common beauty, she was to make herself an extraordinary fortune. But as it was the office of the eyes to obtain conquests, so it was the office of the wit to conserve them. That all things which are gained by violence, are to be retained by address. That it was time for her to learn to know herself, and to know others; to the end that being accustomed to apply her mind to the divers humors of those she conversed with, she might one day be capable of thoroughly disguising her thoughts: that she was not to live so out of a base compliancy, and with no other design than to please; but only to attain to some thing that was great. With such like discourses as these did *Bajazet* instruct *Roxelana*, whose inclinations were but too much carried to dissimulation. Nevertheless it is true, that these dangerous lessons, which she willingly learned, were combated by the wisdom of her mother, whom I have alwaies called the fair Slave, because my memory could not give you her name. This woman was good and vertuous, and did all that she could to make *Roxelana* resemble her, as well in the qualities of the soul, as in the features of the face: which *Bajazet* perceiving, and having in vain forbidden her to reprehend her daughter for her bad conditions, he fell into such a hatred of her, as he could not indure her; and having looked upon her in former times as the object of his love, he considered her no longer but as an obstacle of his ambition. But to keep her from destroying that which he had established in the young heart of *Roxelana*, he thought it would be requisite to make her hate her. And to that end, he dextrously perswaded her, that her mother standing yet upon her beauty, was jealous of seeing hers surpass it; that her reproving her, was an effect rather of hatred than affection, and that therefore she should beware of hearkning to her Remonstrances; there needed no more to stifle all the motions of Nature in so depraved a spirit, and to carry her to insolvency. *Roxelana*, to obey her father, was to do no more than follow her own humour, but to content her mother, she was to fight with all her inclinations. The first was the easier, and made her hope that it would produce great things; and the other being harder, and without other recompence, than that which gives us the satisfaction to do what we ought; she had not much ado to resolve upon the despising of vertue, and embracing of vice. Behold her then abandoned to her own sense, and to the evill counsells of *Bajazet*, and the fair Slave almost reduced to be a Slave to her daughter, who within a while used her so cruelly, that she fell sick with grief upon it. Now to make a tryall of what she could do in dissimulation, as long as there was any company with her mother, she seemed respectfull, affectionate, and obedient; but as soon as they were gone, she mocked openly at her goodness, and with an hundred bitter jeers, struck a dagger into the heart of her that had given her life. This prudent woman was for all that so good as not to publish the cruelty of her daughter, who in the opinion of all them which saw her, was as vertuous as beautifull. *Bajazet* seeing so fair a beginning in *Roxelana*, caressed her extraordinarily, and by this cruell proceeding still advanced the death of her, whom he had loved so much before. At last, that deadly moment, wherein she was to leave this life, being arrived, this infortunate one called to her the Slave, who hath recounted all these things unto me, and that had wit and some vertue, and secretly commanded her not to abandon her daughter after her death, because it might happen that this first heat of youth being over, she might peradventure be capable of following the counsell which she had given her; that for this effect she prayed her to doe two things; the one was, not to bewail her death, for fear it should oblige *Roxelana*

to turn her away; and the other, that she should not directly oppose her will, for fear of incensing rather than correcting her; but to wait upon her till she was of a more reasonable age. This Slave promised to perform all that she desired, and indeed kept her word with her. Presently thereupon this woman dyed; and left *Bajazet* in full possession of *Roxelana's* heart, who with feigned tears testified so much grief for the loss of her mother, as she moved all them to pity that saw her, though in her mind she was very joyfull. She lived two years in this sort after the death of her mother, being then about fifteen; during which time she was beloved of all the young Gallants where she dwelt; she perswaded them all that she loved them, without engaging her self for all that in any thing; and taking delight in giving them great hopes, to put them into despair afterwards, she made some dye with grief; others killed one another by means of the hatred that she sowed amongst them, and the jealousy which she her self gave them; when as they importuned her, and that she would be rid of them. And all this with so much address, as all the world believed her to be innocent of all these crimes, and attributed it to nothing but the excess of love which her extreme beauty had begot in the hearts of all those that beheld her. But at length being arrived at the age which I have noted unto you, *Bajazet* called her to him one day in private; and after he had told her, that the time was then come wherein he was to reap the fruit of his travels; and she to put in practise that which he had so often taught her, to the end she might that way become the chief of all the Orient. *Roxelana* answered him, that he was but to explain his intention unto her, and then he should be sure to have it executed. Whereupon he recounted all his History to her, which she had never understood well before; and after that elevating his voice, and taking her by the hand, Thou seest then, my dear child, said he unto her, that love did heretofore undo my fortune, and that a Slave which I took from the grand Signior, took from me all my hopes, and banished me from my Country. But to find out my rehabilitation by the same way that caused my undoing, love, and a voluntary Slave shall restore me into grace with *Soliman*. And not to conceal my thoughts from thee, I purpose to present and give thee to the Grand Signior, leaving the rest to fortune, and thy address. I know that this Prince being advanced in age, is become yet more sensible of love, than he was fifteen years ago, when as he was but nineteen; for out of the design which a long time I have had, I have carefully informed my self thereof. He is still young, he is handsome, he is full of spirit, he is courageous, he is liberall; and what is most considerable, he is one of the greatest Princes of the world. If thou makest good use of the lessons which I have given thee, continued he, and of those which I will give thee, thou mayest become Sultana, and crown the rest of my days both with honor and wealth. *Bajazet* stopping here, *Roxelana* answered him according to his desire; and assured him, that if she could be received into the Seraglio, she would make no doubt of the rest: and for a conclusion, she so prest him to part away, that in a little after having found out a Vessell which was bound for *Constantinople*, he imbarqued himself in her with his daughter, and the slave to whom her mother had recommended her; who had so insinuated her self into her affection, as she had often believed her in things which contraried her inclinations. At length they arrived at *Constantinople*, and went to the house of one of *Bajazet's* ancient friends, where the day being come, in which he purposed to present *Roxelana*, her slave helped to dress and set her forth, being glad to see her going out of the hands of *Bajazet*, for that she was perswaded there could be no place in the world where she would not be better than with him. But whereas the habit of the women of the Ile of *Chio* is more advantageous than ours, it was in this fashion that she was attired; and I have heard it said, that one could not see any thing more magnificent, or more beautifull than she was in that estate. She had on a waistcoat of silver'd Damask, with two rows of Diamonds set upon a welt of curled cloath of gold, which bordered it all about; the petticoat was of the same stuff, and adorned in the same manner, and according to their fashion plaited very thick both before and behind, and smooth on the sides. Her petticoat



came not but to the middle of the leg, because in the Town of *Chio* they much affect to show the handsomeness of it, as well as that of the foot, which is very neat; for they ordinarily wear high Cork shoes of fine leather of the Levant, sharp at the toes, and all garnished over with Goldsmiths work enamelled. *Roxelana* had also an apron of cloath of gold, a little shorter than her petticoat, and which was eyed behind with two silver strings, whereat hung two tassels of gold. She had upon her shoulders, as it were, to fasten on the sleeves of her wastcoat, a great many of ribbands of divers colours, and athwart her neck a scarf of Tiffany hanging baudrikewise, and closed together with Diamonds, in such sort as all her neck was seen, about the which she had a chain of Pearl, with a little jewell of Emeralds. The attire of her head was of cloath of silver, plaited with a great deal of address, and enriched all over with Pearls and Diamonds: This head-tire was of a round form, and standing up very high behind; and to hold it on the better, she had according to the use of the Countrey a little gold fillet with which it was made fast behind on her neck, where hung two tassels of the same in the midst of a great number of knots of severall colours, which fell carelessly upon her shoulders. And on the cop of her forehead, descending a little into a peak, she had a dressing of Cobweb Lawn streaked with gold, which also was fastned behind, leaving her hair hanging down in curls on either side of her cheeks. In this manner was *Roxelana* attired; but before he led her to the Seraglio, *Bajazet* would give her his last instructions; wherefore he took her aside, and willing her to hearken attentively unto him, he spake to her much after this sort; for the slave, who hath told me all these things, over-heard him without his perceiving it. It is time, my daughter, for me to discover unto you the means whereby you may arrive at the point which I desire. I have indeed said something unto you at severall times, but now I am resolved to hide no part of a Science from you, on which I have a long while meditated. Before I shew you then the ways you are to hold, I must propound unto you the term of your pretensions, which ought not to be only to please the Grand Signior; to make him in love with you; to be a Sultana, as many others; but indeed to become his wife. For although none of the *Ottoman* Emperors since *Bajazet* the first hath been marryed, because they would not share their power; yet ought not this obstacle smother your desires, but contrarily it ought to inflame them the more. You perceive then, continued he, that in so great a design, there is need of a great deal of prudence to carry one well unto it. The generall precept which I will give you upon your entring into the Seraglio, is, never to do, nor to say any thing, which tends not to this design, either directly, or indirectly, and to remember, that all the ways which may conduct us whither we would go, are permitted us by true reason. Never amuse your self then in consulting, whether that which you do be just; but indeed whether it be advantageous for you. Consider not, whether you hurt any, but whether that which you do may serve your turn. For in fine, you go to a place where you will meet with envyers, and enemies, and no sooner shall *Soliman* be stricken in love with your beauty, but you will be hated of all the Sultanaes. Prepare your self then to know how to make a right use of all these things; and so do, that the hate which is born you may destroy them, who would destroy you. Never undertake to be revenged, but when you can absolutely do it; yea, and if it be possible, revenge your self so as you may not bee suspected for it. Moreover, *Aliscars* adventure makes me remember, that *Soliman* is pleased with modesty, wherefore so carry your self, as it may be very much seen in all your actions; and beware of trusting any body. Regard every one as your enemy; care for all your fellows, and love none of them; make not their defects known to *Soliman*, but in seeming to excuse them; be carefull to let him understand by some other the malice which they bear you; bee liberrall to them that are about the Grand Signior; be very submissive and pleasing to him, untill you know that you are absolute Mistress of his heart; for in fine, you must serve, that you may reign; but then, you must change your stile, and by some artifice, which you may invent according

to the time and occasion, oblige him to marry you. And after that, whereas I have told you heretofore, how that which is gained by violence, ought to be conserved by address, in this encounter, that which you have gained by address, must be conserved by violence. You are to undo all those that would hurt you, and not to spare either Iron, fire, or poyson, to maintain the power whereunto you shall be arrived. In the mean time, to facilitate the matter, and to procure you friends out of the Seraglio, it will be requisite for you, when you are once there, to win *Soliman* with tears of tenderness to render my fortune happy, assuring him that you cannot be perfectly contented, so long as your father is not so too. If you behave your self in this sort, said he unto her, you shall be sure to be very quickly the chiefest and most powerfull of your sex, and the happiest creature that ever was. *Bajazet* had no sooner made an end of speaking, but *Roxelana* said to him smiling, that to do all those things she had no need of his counsel, but was only to follow her own inclinations, which would carry her to more yet than what he had told her. He embraced her then wholly ravished with joy to see her in this resolution; and before she departed, she assured her slave, that ere it were three dayes she would get her into the Seraglio for to wait upon her, as indeed she failed not to perform it accordingly. But at length *Bajazet* conducted his daughter to the Seraglio, and caused *Soliman* to be advertised, that there was a man attending to present a slave unto him, without letting him know who he was. For whereas the Officers had been all changed since his departure from thence, and that he had not been seen in sixteen years at *Constantinople*, he did not fear he should be named to *Soliman*. The matter fell out as he desired; and the grand Signior, very luckily for his design, happed to be in the best humour of the world, by reason he had received news of a great Victory which he had obtained over the Christians. Wherefore he presently commanded, that this slave, and he which brought her, should enter. When *Bajazet* first appeared, *Soliman* knew him not, whether it were for that time had altered him, or that his eyes and heart were so fixed on the beauty of *Roxelana*, as he did not consider him. But as soon as *Bajazet* had cast himself at his feet, and that he had begun to speak, the tone of his voyce made him call him to mind: He did not interrupt him for all that, but looking still on *Roxelana*, he hearkned to *Bajazet*, without turning his head towards him. *Roxelana* on her side appeared with so modest a Majesty, and so charming a sweetness, as it had been very hard to discern the motions of her soul in her eyes, and not to be stricken in love with such powerfull attracts. But whilst *Soliman* takes in so sweet and so deadly poyson, *Bajazet* spake to him in these terms: I know very well, my Lord, said he unto him, that it is a crime in me to present my self before thee, after I have been banished; and that if thou beest not the most indulgent Prince of the World, thou wilt not permit me to give thee reasons for it, which may excuse me. But since thy silence seems to accord me so much, I shall let thee know, my Lord, that this young Slave whom thou seest here, and whom I present to thy Highness as a thing that appertains unto thee, is the daughter of that fair Slave whom I presumed to retain for my self, though she were destined to thee. Reject her not, my Lord, since though she be the daughter of an offender, yet is she so too of a woman that belonged unto thee, and whose vertue hath passed into her as well as her beauty. In fine, it is a sacrifice, which I offer up unto thee, to expiate the crime which heretofore I committed, and that also which at this present I commit. Consider, I beseech thee, that having robbed thee of one slave, it is but just that I should render thee another; but with this difference, that the former was thy slave by violence, and that this same is a voluntary slave: That the other had been in the hands of Pirates, and that this same hath been alwaies conserved as an offering, whereof the purity ought to deface the blackness of my faults. But if nevertheless thou judgest her unworthy of this honour, I am most ready to give thee both her life and mine own, rather than resolve to live any longer absent from thy service, and to spend the remainder of my daies without contributing ought to thy glory. When *Soliman* saw that *Baja-*

zet had made an end of speaking, he cryed out, reaching forth his hand to him, O happy was that theft of thine, since it was the cause of thy now rendring me an inestimable treasure! For I profess unto thee, that I never saw any thing so beautifull as thy present. Then turning him to *Roxelana*; and for thee, fair maid, sayd he unto her, be assured that in losing a father, thou findest a lover; and that in consideration of thee alone, I will give *Bajazet* his liberty again, and restore him to all his former charges and honours. *Roxelana* made no other answer thereunto, than with a profound respect; but *Bajazet* was so over-joyed with so happy a beginning, as he thought he should never have done rendring thanks to *Soliman*. At last, after some other speeches, the grand Signior caused one of the Governesses of the women of the Seraglio to come to him, and remitted her into her hands, with order to lodge her alone, and in one of the fairest lodgings in the womens quarter. And out of a particular grace, he commanded to be given unto her the very same day, great store of jewels, apparell, sumptuous household-stuff, and mony, with six slaves to serve her. And whereas she seemed to regret one which she had, the Grand Signior caused her to be instantly brought in unto her. But I had forgot to tell you, that when she was separated from her father, she affected to seem good and sensible; the tears came into her eyes, she looked after him as far as she could see him; and with this feigned testimony of naturall affection, she touched the heart of *Soliman* yet more; for whereas her tears were without bitterness, they did but make her shew the fairer. But consider, I pray you, how deceitfull and ill-assured humane prudence is, especially when it works against reason and equity. *Bajazet* had all his life-time been mastered by two mighty passions, love, and ambition; the first made him lose his fortune, when as he betrayed *Soliman*, and the other made him lose his life; as if the divine Justice would not let him enjoy a good, which he had acquired by a crime: For he had not been eight days re-established in his charges, and *Roxelana* in the Seraglio, when as being gone to visit the Bassa of the sea, vvho was then at *Pera*, where the Arsenall and Magazine of all Maritime things were, he arrived there just as they were ready to try fifty Cast-pieces, which were to be used in some shipping that was shorely to be set forth. And whereas the Bassa would be present in person at this tryall, it was in this employment that *Bajazet* found him. After the first complements, the Bassa told him, how that which he was going to do, vv as as much to congratulate his happy return to the Port, as to acquit himself of the duty of his charge; whereupon he commanded fire to be given: But to shew that the justice of heaven would punish *Bajazet*, the first piece burst asunder, and in the midst of two thousand persons, and some four paces from the Bassa of the sea, a shiver of that Cannon picked him out, and carried him away, with such violence, as he was almost reduced into powder, so strangely were his limbs dispersed. And that which is yet remarkable also in what I deliver, is, that he was the sole man, I do not say of them that were killed, but of them that were hurt, and how that was the onely piece that burst in sunder. Behold, generous *Axiamira*, in what manner *Bajazet* enjoyed his hopes, and the recompense which he had for all his crimes. The news of his death was soon carried to the Seraglio; *Roxelana* shewed a great deal of sorrow for it; and out of a sense of Interest she was really grieved therat. But in a few daies, the markes which the Grand Signior rendred her of his affection comforted her. For whereas she did not regret him; but because she had believed him to be usefull for her greatness, when as she hoped that she might attain thereunto without him, she quite forgot him; Yea and was glad that she was discharged of the care of his fortune, and to have nothing to think of but her own. *Roxelana* had not been fifteen daies in the Seraglio, but she so absolutely possessed the Grand Signior, as none of the rest of the Sultanaes could pretend to a favourable regard from him; but by speaking well to him of her; or that he knew they had been somewhat gracious with her, which possessed them with no little jealousy, and no less spight. But that which vexed them more was, that they could not find occasion to mislay of her amongst themselves, whereby they might at leastwise have been



been eased with this weak remedy. For she was excellently fair, she seemed extreme gentle; she had an agreeable and entertaining wit; she was civill to the Sultanaes; liberall to the Slaves; most respectfull of *Soliman*; and in all her actions affected an extraordinary devotion. She lived a while in this sort, without any crabs in her good fortune; and with so much satisfaction to *Soliman*; as there was never any joy equal to that which appeared in his humor. But at length the Sultanaes seeing that the love of the Grand Signior was not allayed by the enjoying her; and that contrarily it augmented daily, they combined together, and forgetting all the jealousie and secret hatreds which they had had one against another, they indeavoured to destroy the person that destroyed them. She that incited them the most thereto, was the chief of the Sultanaes, the mother of *Mustapha*; who at that time was brought up in the Seraglio, and was then about six or seven yeares old. This woman, who had a great and generous spirit, could not indure to see that she, who had given *Soliman* a Sonne, and a successor to the Empire, should be less considerable than *Roxelana*. It was by her interposition then, that all the other Sultanaes joyned with her, and promised never to omit any opportunity that might annoy *Roxelana*. This counsell, or to say better, this conspiracie, could not be so secretly made, but that *Roxelana*, by her liberality to the Slaves, which brought her presents from their Mistresses, and that much affected her, was advertised thereof. But hear, I pray you, in what manner she opposed this storm vvvhich vvvas rising up against her, and I am sure you vvwill acknowledge, that she vvvas then as ingenious, as she hath been vvicked since. This conspiracy nothing daunted her; she seemed neither more unquiet, nor more pensive; and all the change vvvhich she brought to her life was, that she never saw *Soliman*, without speaking some good of one or other of the Sultanaes. She praised the beauty of one, the humor of another, the gracefulness of this, and the stature of that; but particularly she seemed very much to esteem of the mother of *Mustapha*; and so carested that young Prince, as it had been impossible at that time to have foreseen by the apparences that which hath since fallen out. And whereas she knew that the mother of the Sultan had a great power over him, she vvwoon her wholly to her self. Now *Roxelana*'s design was, to destroy by this artifice all the ill which the Sultanaes could say of her to *Soliman*. For said she, when he shall see that they, for whom I do so many good offices to him, would hurt me, he wil have them in horror, and think the better of me. The matter failed not to succeed as she had imagined it. For one of the Sultanaes, whom *Roxelana* had the most commended; having understood that she had sent a little coffer full of jewels out of the Seraglio, which is not permitted in that place, she advertised *Soliman* of it, who scarcely hearkning to what she said, called her ingratefull and disacknowledged; and without obliging *Roxelana* to the justifying of her self, he sent her a present of importance. After this, none of the Sultanaes durst venture upon any such like adventure. But *Roxelana*, who was not contented with keeping them from doing her hurt; and that placed her supremest felicity in doing hurt to others, absolutely gained to her three Slaves, two Eunuchs, and seduced also two of the Sultanaes; who went jointly together and advertised *Soliman* of this secret counsell which was held against *Roxelana*, without making shew for all that of her knowing any thing of it. *Soliman* recompences them for this advice, commands them not to speak of it; and whereas this crime was too generall, he resolved to punish them who had committed it, and by one onely way, which was to make *Roxelana* richer, greater, and more happy than she was. He sends for her, recounts unto her that, which she knew better than he, by telling her what had been done against her; and in conclusion assures her, that nothing can destroy the affection he beares her. *Roxelana*, after she had heard this discourse, increates *Soliman* to pardon them this crime who had committed it; and with a false generositie so powerfully charmes the heart of this noble Prince, as it was more at the disposing of *Roxelana*, than of *Soliman* himself. But to come to the end of my discourse, a little while after she found her self with childe, and the time of her lying down being come, she brought forth *Soliman* a sonne, who was named *Mahomet*. Untill then she had

never



never thought of any thing but maintaining her self; but when she came to consider that *Mustapha* would reign one day, and that according to the custom of the Empire, her son should be strangled; this awaked her former ambition, and all her designs tended no longer but to be speedily the wife of a Prince, of whom she was the absolute Mistress; to the end that in this illustrious estate, she might the more easily destroy *Mustapha*, for her son to reign. And mark a little whereunto ambition carried this woman, who thought already of setting the Crown on the head of a child, who knew not as yet that he was living! howsoever, it was not out of the absolute power that she had over the mind of *Soliman*, that she attained to her desire, but by an artifice which I am going to relate unto you. She knew that in one of the books of our Religion the Sovereign is forbidden the possessing of a free woman; and she knew also that in another, a Slave is not permitted to build either Mosque or Hospitall, or to do any other thing that may be available for the other life. Upon this foundation she built her design; and knowing that the *Muphti* carried a great stroke vvith the Grand Signior, she vvon him vvith presents, vvhich she sent him secretly; and so being sure of his assistance vvhen shee should have need of it, behold how shee proceeded therein. She sent to the *Muphti*, who is the man that takes cognizance of all matters of Religion, to let him understand that she had an extreme desire to build a Mosque, and an Hospitall, where all poor Pilgrims might be lodged and fed; but before she would undertake it, she would fain know whether this would be pleasing to the Prophet. The *Muphti* answers according to her desire, and as she knew that he would answer; that the thing would be pleasing to the Prophet, but absolutely unprofitable for the second life of her soul, because she was the Grand Signiors Slave, and that whatsoever she had being *Solimans*, and not hers, all that she should do in this estate would be to the advantage of the Grand Signior, and not of her. This answer received, she feigns to be exceeding melancholick, she deprives her self of all her ordinary delights; and when the Grand Signior visits her, she lets her self be surpris'd still in some muse, whereat she seems afterwards to be somewhat grieved, and to strive to break her self from it. At last she playes her part so dextrously, as the Grand Signior began to be troubled upon his observing this change of her humour. At first he was contented to ask of her what it was that made her so sad? but she answering that it was an effect of her temperature, it put him into further pain. He inquires of the slaves that serve her, whether any one hath given her cause to complain? they answer, that they know of none; but how it is true, that their Mistress had been for a good while so melancholick, as they did not think she could live long in that sort. For indeed when *Roxelana* was alone with them, she always seemed exceeding sad, to the end that being the first deceived, they might the more easily deceive others, fore-seeing rightly, that *Soliman* would inquire of them that served her, what she ailed. But because she would not be always in constraint, she shut her self up the most part of the day in her Cabiner; and this unaccustomed retirement served yet very much to make it be credited that she had some hidden grief. *Soliman* being advertised then of all these things, began to fall into extreme unquietness: he conjured *Roxelana* to acquaint him with the cause of her sadness, and not to conceal the secrets of her heart from a Prince, who had given his so absolutely to her; he told her, that if any one had wronged her, he would revenge her for it; and in conclusion, that there was nothing which she might not obtain from him. Hereunto she answered, that the respect alone which she bore him, kept her from obeying him, and that she had always rather die than displease him. So pressing a discourse failed not to work the effect which she attended from it; *Soliman* was mightily moved with it, and beholding her with eyes, which shared with her in her grief, he swore that he would not part from her till he knew what it was that troubled his felicity. She resists yet a while, he presses her the more, and speaks to her with such earnestness, as she thinks it was high time to discover her self. She falls then at his feet, beseeches him to pardon her, and at last frames a discourse filled with artifice, where-

by

by the causes him to comprehend; that having had a design to imploy the treasures which he had given her, for the honor of the Prophet; and her own salvation, in building of a Mosque and an Hospitall for Pilgrims, she had understood that she was incapable thereof, because she was his Slave, whereas for that purpose one ought to be of a free condition. That she confessed unto him, how the fear of the second life had so seized upon her soul, as she doubted she should not be able to answer the two black Angels; and how she thought that she could never be able to do any thing for her salvation, troubled her in such sort, as it was impossible for her to hope for one hour of tranquillity in all her life. *Soliman* hearing her say thus, lifts her up, complains for that she hath so long concealed so just a desire from him, and in the end assures her, that within a short time she should be contented. As indeed the next day he sent her a Patent of her Affranchisement, vvhich he had caused to be dravv up in the most authentickall form that is used amongst us; and vvitthall ordered so much money to be delivered unto her as she vvwould demand. Behold her then the most contented vvoman that ever vvas, seeing so prosperous a beginning of her enterprize. She thinks no longer in apparence of any thing but her buildings; she communicates her designs to *Soliman*, vvho on his side esteemed himself very happy in having been able to cure the mind of *Roxelana* of so black a melancholy. But vvhen as a little after he vvwould have her come and pass the night vvith him at his lodging, he vvas much abashed to see her, being alone vvith him, cast her self at his feet, and vvith her eyes full of tears, and a voyce interrupted vvith sighs, hear her say unto him; I know full vvell, my Lord, that thou art the Master of our goods, of our bodies, and of our lives; and that thy vvill ought to be absolute Mistress of ours. But, my Lord, it novv concerns the Ordinances of Heaven, the Precepts of our Prophet, and the Lavv vvich vve profess, vvich vvill not permit thee to dispose of me being free. Give heed then, my Lord, to that vvich I say, and draw not the indignation of Heaven upon thy head, for a crime whereof I should be the cause: For rather than I will resolve to commit this fault, I am capable of taking away mine own life, so much do I fear lest it should prove unlucky and fatall unto thee. As long as I was thy Slave, I never resisted thy pleasure, knowing that both divine and humane Laws commanded me unto it: But now that I am free, and that therefore I cannot be thine, without transgressing the Law, I think that I do as I ought in this my opposing thee. *Soliman* was so surprised with this discourse, as he knew not what resolution to take. His passion was strong, but his respect to matters of Religion was also very great, and the tears and prayers of *Roxelana* fortified it in such sort, as he resolved to obey the Law, if it proved to be so. He sends for the *Muphti*, propounds the question to him, and commands him to examine it well. But this man who had already been made, and instructed by *Roxelana*, tells him that this question was fully resolved; that the Sovereign could not possess a free woman without marrying her, or without committing an horrible crime. He reports the passage of the *Alcoran* to him, fortifies it with reasons vvich he had premeditated, and at last leaves *Soliman* perswaded that he cannot possess *Roxelana* vvithout sinning. Behold him then, in a grief vvich is not imaginable: For *Roxelana* had chosen out a time vvhen as he was in the violence of his love. The respect of the Law retained him, the heat of his passion solicited him, and the example of his Predecessors, and the Maxims of State, kept him from satisfying himself by a lawfull way: For never since the ignominy vvich *Tamerlan* caused the wife of *Bajazet* the first to suffer, none of the Emperors had married, for fear lest by such a like adventure, their enemies might a second time do that vvrong to the Majesty of the Empire. What shall I do, said *Soliman*, in so cross a conjuncture? If I possess *Roxelana* vvithout marrying her, I shall be faulty towards her, and culpable towards heaven. If I do marry her, I shall make all my Empire to murmur at it, I shall break an Order established by my Predecessors vvith reason, and introduce a Novelty, vvich it may be vvill cause some revolt in my Estates. Now again, if I do not marry her, and resolve not to possess her unjustly; vvill *Soliman* be satisfied, after he hath sa-



tisfied Religion, and reason of State, which ordained him so to do? Ah, no, no, he cannot live without *Roxelana*, and whatsoever comes of it we must be inseparable; and without offending Heaven, I must render her happy in contenting my self. If my Subjects murmur at it, I shall tell well enough how to bring them to their duty again, and teach them to submit unto the pleasure of him, to whom they are but Slaves. This resolution being taken, he imparted it to *Roxelana*, who, as you may judge, rejoiced excessively at it. Howbeit she in appearance received this news with a great deal of moderation, saying, that she thought her self unworthy of so great an honor. But within a few days after *Soliman* marryed her publicly with a solemn pomp. She sent presents to all the Sultanaes, but the Mother of *Mustapha*, to decline the seeing of her that day, feigned her self sick. Now to do her the more honour, and to declare her more absolutely Queen, and Mistris of all the Sultanaes, he caused a great Hall to be most sumptuously furnished, where at the one end he made a Throne of four steps to be erected, covered all with cloth of Gold, and two Cushions of the same stuff, upon vvhich sate hee and *Roxelana*, who had a Crown on her head, and her Gown set all over vvith Diamonds. Upon the second degree of the Throne vvas the Mother of *Soliman*, who loved *Roxelana* as her self; and upon the two lowermost, sate the sisters and daughters of the grand Signior, for he had three by two of his slaves. Things being in this estate, all the Sultanaes came one after another richly appa-  
 ralled, to do obeysance to *Roxelana* with an high respect; and for a mark of their dependance, they all brought magnificent presents, and placed them some four paces from the Throne where *Roxelana* sate. Divers of them brought Maunds of Gold full of Flowers; others, Vases of Emeraulds replenished with Essences; some, little Coffers, garnished with precious Stones, and filled with Perfumes; and after they had left their presents at the foot of the Throne, they went and placed themselves in order on both sides of the Hall upon their knees, as it were to doe homage to the new Queen. All these Sultanaes having remained so a while, an hundred young children, which are brought up about the grand Signior, came out of a particular grace to the womens Seraglio, where this ceremony was performed; and being arrived in the Hall, they began to dance, and to sing somewhat to the glory of *Roxelana*; and being retired, all the Sultanaes went to kiss her Robe, and then her hand, which she held out unto them. And for a mark of their slavery, and her liberty, she gave to each of them a chain of Diamonds; and so returned in the same order as they came, carrying in their hearts as much envy and jealousy, as *Roxelana* had joy. As for the mother, the sisters, and daughters of *Soliman*, they conducted *Roxelana* to the Grand Signiors lodging, where they left her in the height of her felicities, and retired to the old Seraglio thorough a door that opened near upon *Solimans* chamber. Untill then fraud and artifice were the only things which she had employed to arrive unto the point she had desired; but alas, how well did she in this estate remember the bad lessons which her father had given her! when as he had told her, how that which was gotten by address, ought to be conserved by violence. For she no sooner saw her self the Wife of *Soliman*, but she would needs share with him in his power, and be acquainted with all the affairs of the Empire; she banished from the Port such as were not pleasing to her; and for fear lest the *Muphti*, whom she could not make greater than he was, should reveal to some one, that her good fortune was not so much an effect of her devotion, according to her own saying, as of her artifice; it was thought that she suborned one of his slaves, and caused him to be poysoned; for he dyed suddenly; and some have conceived that he himself was aware of it, because that having been sick not above an hour after supper, when as he could scarce speak for the violent pains that he felt, with much adoe yet he sayd, that *Roxelanaes* Crown cost him his life, whereupon he presently dyed. After she had secured her self on that side, she turned her eyes to *Mustapha*. I think I have told you, that in the first year of her being in the Seraglio she brought forth *Soliman* a sonne, named *Mahomet*, but I am to let you understand further, that in the four following, she had

had also three sonnes and one daughter; the next after the eldest was called *Bajazer*, the third *Selim*, the last *Gianger*, and the daughter *Chameria*. She had been then five years in the Seraglio, and four the Wife of *Soliman*, when as they spake of sending *Mustapha* forth from his Mother, because he was twelve years old, which is the furthest age wherein men are permitted to abide in the Seraglio. And whereas *Roxelana* saw how this young Prince promised great matters, she feared it would not be alwaies so easie to destroy him, who alone could keep her children from reigning, when he should be out of the Seraglio, as when he was in her hands; whereupon she plotted his death, and for that effect, the same day that he was to depart, and the last meal that he was to make in the Seraglio, she wrought in such sort; as there were served up unto him certain fruits that were poysoned, and which he exceedingly loved (at leastwise the slave, who recounted these things unto me, beleev'd so much) but whereas the Prince was very much grieved to part from his mother, and to see the extreme sorrow she was in for it, he never thought of contenting his palate; and perceiving that his mother did eat nothing; he besought her not to afflict her self so much, and that she would eat something for the love of him. Saying so, he presented her with some of those impoysoned fruits, which were prepared for him, he little dreaming of any such thing. The poor afflicted Mother, thinking it a crime to refuse her sonne, takes the fruit which he presents her with, and to content him, eats it vvith her eyes all bathed in tears. But the infortunate *Mustapha* knew not that he gave death to her vvho had given him life; and that this crime vvwhich he committed so innocently should be one day severely punished in his person, though he vv ere never accused for it: Having been in this occasion, like those innocent offerings, upon whom in times past amongst certain Nations the crimes of all the people were charged. The poyson which *Roxelana* had caused to be prepared was slow, to the end it should make no noife; and that when *Mustapha* should be out of the Seraglio, and *Soliman* should be told that he was sick, she might make him beleve, that change of air had caused this malady. But destiny would not have the matter go so; for in fine, not to prolong this discourse any further, *Mustapha* went out of the Seraglio in good health, with no little grief to *Roxelana*, vvho had been advertised that he had not eaten of the impoysoned fruit. As for the mother, that never troubled her; for though she fell sick the very same day, and dyed a moneth after, no body beleev'd there was anything extraordinary in her death; because *Roxelana* had caused it to be bruited, how the sorrow for *Mustapha*'s choignment was the cause of it, and how since that day she had never been well; as indeed she lyed not: and this was so generally beleev'd, as the sick Sultana her self sayd so much to them that came to visit her, she never suspecting any wickedness. Behold, Madam, *Roxelana*'s first persecution of the Prince *Mustapha*: Indeed it is true, that he was not sensible of it, for he never knew any thing of that which I have told you. Now you must not imagine, that this violent desire which she hath alwayes had to destroy *Mustapha*, whereby her children may reign, is a sense of affection for them; she hath not so legitimate a design, and the only thought which she hath, is to remain the mother of an Emperor after the death of *Soliman*; because she knows very well, that this quality gives alwaies a great credit to those which possess it; and brings them into veneration amongst us. I should never have done, if I would relate all her wickednesses unto you. But at length *Mustapha* in spite of all her artifices lived, was brought up with great care, marryed an excellent Princess of the blood of the ancient Kings of *Capadocia*, whom he loved passionately, and proved, as you know, as excellent a Prince as ever was. And the hate which she bore him could not keep the Prince *Gianger* from having as much good will for him, as she had aversion. But to strengthen her self still the more, as soon as her daughter had attained the age of thirteen yeares, she got *Soliman* to marry her to the traitor *Rustan*, who for all that hath not forborn often betraying her self, for he seekes his own greatness, and not hers. Behold, Madam, what the first wickednesses of *Roxelana* have been, for as for the rest, you know them but too well. And it may suffice, that I have onely shew-

ed you her inclination. This woman never incountr'd person that oppos'd her violences; but the grand Visier *Ibrahim*, who ever since he hath been amongst us, hath had so much power with *Soliman*, as she could never, he being the most virtuous of men, make any of her wicked devices succeed, either against him, against *Mustapha*, or *Gianger* (for he loved them both dearly) untill such time as for our ill fortune, he went away, some six monthes agoe, upon a secret expedition, whereof all the world talks diversly; for seeing the mischiefs which have arriv'd by his absence, it is feared lest she hath caus'd him to be murder'd by the way. It being very certain, that if he had been here, the rage which she had long shut up in her heart, had not broken out so deadly as it hath done. Alas! said *Axiamira* interrupting her, how much hath he whom you speak of been wish'd for in vain of the Prince *Gianger*! And how often hath he spoken to me of him with a world of praise! But mother, continued she, you have recounted so many things unto me, as *Soliman* me thinks should be above an hundred yeares of age, and yet he seem'd not so old unto me on that unhappy day wherein I saw him. It is, answered *Halima*, because I having enchain'd two Histories in one, and begun to speak of *Soliman* at the age seaventeen yeares, your mind, by the length of my narration, and the number of things which I recounted, hath thought that which you say. But if you please, I will let you see the contrary: *Soliman* was seaventeen yeares old, when *Bajazet* put the supposition of the Slave upon him; at the end of sixteen yeares, when *Roxelana* was presented unto him, he was thirty and three, she fifteen, and *Mustapha* seven: So that if you are ignorant of all these things, you will find, that *Roxelana* is not above seven and thirty yeares of age, *Mustapha* was nine and twenty, *Gianger* eighteen, and *Soliman* is fifty and four, though he seem not to be more than forty. And that which is strange in this Prince is, that he is at this present of a more amorous humor, than he was in his younger yeares. I shall not have much ado, answered *Felixana*, who had not spoken yet, to believe that which you say; and I know but too well by mine own experience, that there are men in whom age doth rather stir up passions, than appease them. With such like discourses, *Halima* endeavour'd to divert the Princesses melancholy; but remembring that she had not eaten any thing of all that day, she went to give order for the serving up of dinner. On the other side *Ibrahim*, who had not forgot the design which he had, and the request of *Ulama*, after he had spent part of the morning at the *Divano*, which was held that day, and the rest of it with the Grand Signior, without speaking of any other thing than the war of *Persia*, he returned to his Palace, there to take along with him the Slave which *Ulama* had sent to him, that he might carry him to the Castle of the seven Towers, whither he went with an intention to ease the miseries of others, since fortune would not let him find a remedy for his own.

*The end of the fifth Book.*





# IBRAHIM:

## OR, THE

# ILLUSTRIOUS

# BASSA.

## The Third Part.

### *The First Book.*



When as *Ibrahim* arrived at the Castle of the seven Towers, where *Axiamira* and *Felixana* were prisoners, he commanded the gate to be opened to him, as they used in times past to do, when he came to visit Prisoners of State. But whereas the Governor of that place had not understood of the grand Visitors return, there had been no order taken for his entrance; howbeit his people had no sooner advertised him of his being there, but he came to let him in himself, and to crave pardon for making him stay so. *Ibrahim*, having accepted his excuses, sent him to advertise *Axiamira* of his arrival, and to know of her, whether he might have the permission to see her. This man failed not to obey the commandment he had received, but this news so surprized *Axiamira*, and the imagination, that she was ready to see a man, whom Prince *Gianger* had loved so much, troubled her in such sort, as being but in a weak and languishing state of health, the violent motion of her thoughts had like to have made her fall into a swoon. Not finding her self then in case to entertain *Ibrahim*, she sent her dear *Felixana* to excuse her unto him, and to desire him to pardon her, if she were constrained to retard a thing, which she desired so passionately. *Felixana* acquitted her self of this commission with a great deal of address, and entertained *Ibrahim* at *Itali-ma's* lodging. But after the illustrious *Bassa* had received *Axiamira's* civilities, and had told *Felixana*, that coming but to offer her his service, he should have been very sorry to incommode her, he perceived the uneasiness, which appeared in the face of *Felixana*. For whereas he had commanded *Ulama's* Slave to follow him, she had no sooner saluted *Ibrahim*, but casting her eyes on this Slave, she changed colour. And scarce harkening to the *Bassa's* complement, she considered this man, whom she was perswaded she knew, without daring for all that so much as believe absolutely it was he whom she thought it was. *Ibrahim* seeing her in this uncertainty, was willing to draw her out of it, and addressing his speech unto her, as he led her to the window; I perceive very well, amiable *Felixana*, said he to her, that this Slave is not unknown to you, but to take you out of the doubt wherein I see you are, I will let you know, that this Slave hath not changed his Master, and that his Master too

hath not changed his Mistress. And to confirm unto you, continued he, that the valiant *Ulama* is still the Lover of *Felixana*, read this which he hath done me the honor to write me; to the end I may afterwards the more easily persuade you, that I came hither with a purpose to render you all the services you shall desire of me. Saying so, he presented her with *Ulama's* Letter. I know, my Lord, said she unto him, taking it, that I shall do you wrong in desiring to have mine eyes confirm that unto you which your words have assured me of; but, my Lord, I am so accustomed to see my miseries every day increase, and Fortune for a long time hath so obstinately persecuted me, that you are to pardon me the doubt I am in of my happiness; since it is in me rather an effect of my sense, than of my reason. Whereupon she opened the Letter, which straightway she knew to be *Ulama's* hand; and having read it over with a great deal of satisfaction, *Ibrahim* caused the Slave which he had brought with him to approach, who casting himself at *Felixana's* feet, would have kist her robe, but she reached forth her hand unto him, and commanded him to rise. *Halima* seeing all these things would have gone out of the chamber, but *Felixana* perceiving it, called her back again. It is but just, said she unto her, that as you have been the onely consolation which I have found in my misfortunes, so I should not conceal from you the succor which Heaven sends me after many miseries. *Halima* obeying *Felixana's* pleasures drew near again, and saw *Ulama's* Slave, after he was risen, give her a Letter, and then say unto her; You shall see, Madam, by that which my Master writes you, that I have order to recount unto you all that you desire to know of his life; to render you an account of his actions; and to assure you that this illustrious *Bassa*, said he, pointing to *Ibrahim*, is the onely Protector that you can have. Of this protection she is so sure, replied the grand Visier, as she cannot doubt of it without doing me an injury. In the mean time *Felixana* unsealed *Ulama's* Letter, and having opened it, found this written.

ULAMA'S Letter to FELIXANA.

**F**ORTUNE not contented to make me suffer all your miseries in acquainting me with them, hath yet for my supremest mishap kept me from being able to succor you, or at least-wise to partake in the calamities wherewith you are overwhelmed. For though I have the Arms of the Empire still in my hands, and that I cannot quit the Army, without incensing him whom I am to obtain your liberty; yet feel I that it would have been impossible for me, not to have gone and layd my head at his feet, thereby to have obliged him to take compassion of our misfortunes; But the wounds which I received in the last fight I was in, utterly depriving me of the power to perform that, all I can do, is to wish that the blood which I have spilt in the service of *Soliman*, may at least-wise spare your tears. Nor do I despair yet of so great a happiness, if the illustrious and generous *Ibrahim* doth undertake to protect you, as I have besought him to do, and as I dare not doubt but he will. Confide then in him for all things; acquaint him with all our past felicities, that he may have the more pity of our present adversities. And to say all, follow his directions exactly, seeing his generosity is the onely thing that can yet make me desire life, by the hope it gives me to see you at liberty again; this Slave, which I send you, can tell you what a one that hath been which I have led, ever since that fatal day, which separated me from the incomparable *Felixana*, and can also assure you that I will adore you eternally.

ULAMA.

*Felixana* had no sooner made an end of reading this Letter, but she desired the *Bassa* should see it, though out of civility he would not; telling her that he would rely more on her word, then she had done on his, and that he would believe that which she would please to let him know. But she answered him, how it would not be just that he should do so, and therefore besought him to read it. Whilst *Ibrahim* obeyed her, *Felixana* enquired of *Ulama's* Slave, whether his wounds were dangerous? And when he had answered her, that they had been so, but were past the worst, and that if it had not been for one in his leg he might have quitted his bed, she asked him other questions, until such time as the grand Visier, having done reading of *Ulama's* Letter, said to her with a great deal of civility: It is for you, Madam, to furnish me with means to serve you, and to acquaint me with all your misfortunes,

tunes, to the end that knowing them, I may the more easily finde necessary remedies for them. But I know, fair *Felixana*, that this is to constrain your inclination, and that you had rather talk with *Ulama's* Slave, then renew your sorrows by calling them to remembrance; but to comfort you, I will promise to leave this Slave with you, until we have some pleasing news to send *Ulama*. *Felixana* thanked him for this favor, and assured him, that she had no greater desire then to obey him, though the remembrance of her miseries would augment them; and that it may be they would afflict him too. For my Lord, said she unto him, my adventures are so intermingled with those of the Princess of *Persia*, and of two Princes whom you have dearly loved, as I am constrained to recount them; seeing it is certain that mine make but a part of theirs. *Ibrahim* was glad to see her in this resolution, for he hoped he should know that by her, which *Soliman* would not tell him; so that causing her to sit down, and *Halima* by her, he summoned her to the performance of her promise, which she accomplished in this manner.

*The History of the Princess AXIAMIRA, ULAMA, and FELIXANA.*

THAT which you desire to know of me, generous *Ibrahim*, hath cost me so many tears and sighs, that if I did not strive to turn away my thought from the last adventures of this History, it were impossible for me to relate the beginning, where you will finde nothing but the hopes of an extream felicity for me. But to take things from their first source, and to render my discourse more intelligible, I am to tell you, that *Scarb Tachmas*, whom we call the *Sophi*, otherways King of the *Persians*, remained a widower almost as soon as his wife (who, as I have heard say, was an excellent Princess) had brought him two sons, *Ismael*, and *Mahamed*, whereof the last is blinde; and two daughters, of which the one is the Princess *Axiamira*, or to say better, the wonder of her age; and the youngest, named *Perca*, is of an indifferent beauty, of a malicious humor, and of a minde incapable of any kinde of friendship. As for *Ismael*, it might be said, that as he hath no great virtues, so he hath no great defects, and that he is in the rank of those persons, who do almost pass away their lives so, as they can hardly be known to live, if their quality did not make it appear that they are in the number of the living. Now for *Mahamed*, the same cannot be said of him, but contrarily it seems, that Nature hath deprived him of the light of the day, to make it shine the more in his minde: For whether it be that this privation of sight is the cause of its better recollecting it self, and operating with the more activity; or that his memory, which is so marvelous in him, as it may be thought he hath never forgotten any thing, doth furnish him with that which renders him agreeable; so it is that his conversation is so charming, as one can never be weary of it. But that which is most excellent in him is, that he is exceeding virtuous, and that his passions, though violent, have never surmounted his reason. Behold, my Lord, what the royal Family was, when I was brought to the Court, which was at that time in the City of *Tauris*. My Father had always been considerable enough in this Monarchy, and the *Sophi*, to testifie the esteem he had of him, had made him Governor of *Strabat* and *Mazanderon*, two very fair Towns, which are situated on the bank of the *Caspian* Sea. But whereas my Father had married the sister of the Governor of *Tauris*, it was by his means that I was put to *Axiamira*, with a many other maids of a condition equal to mine, which were divided between those two Princesses; and were with them, as one might say, rather to help them to pass away the time, then to do them any service. *Axiamira* might be about fourteen years of age, and I fifteen; and whereas she was younger then the Princes her Brothers, *Mahamed*, as I think, was not far from sixteen. But to let you first know all the persons of whom I am to speak in this History, I shall tell you, that there was at the same time in the Court, one named *Deliment*, whose birth was not very noble; but who had, by means of his high spirit, and extream riches, so wrought himself into the Court, and good grace of the *Sophi*, as there was none but was afraid to be in ill terms with him. I say afraid, because it is certain that no man desired his friendship, but for fear least his hatred should be prejudicial unto him; and truly it is not to be marvelled if one could have no other opinion of him, for he was insolent, ambitious, undertaking, beleiving there was scarce any thing worthy of him, easily offended, never pardoning, and that which rendred all his bad inclinations more dangerous, was, that he had a great wit. Now if *Deliment* were of this humor,



*Ulama* was opposite to him in all things, for his birth is noble, as being the chief man of *Caramania*; his courage is without brutishness; and whereas you have not seen him but since he was infortunate, I conceive I may be permitted to tell you what he was during his felicity. When I arrived at the Court nothing was spoken of but the valor of *Ulama*; for it was a little after the War of the *Azemites*, where having done wonders, and to say all, been the cause of the *Sophies* carrying away the victory; to recompence him for this great action, he made him *Satrap* of *Caramania* at two and twenty years of age, and gave him his sister in marriage, whom *Ulama* espoused rather out of obedience, then out of inclination; it being certain that this Princess, as the incomparable *Axiamira* hath oftentimes told me, had nothing recommendable in her but her birth. And indeed, as if Heaven had found this marriage unjust, a month after it was accomplished she dyed of a burning Fever: And whereas it is the custom of the Kings of *Persia* to have all the royal Family lodged in one and the same Palace, *Ulama*, as brother-in-law to the *Sophi*, was lodged there too; so that though the women live very straitly kept all over *Persia*, yet left we not for all that to have a great deal of liberty, and to lead a life happy and pleasant enough; having in the same Palace, the two Princes and *Ulama*, whom we saw as much as they pleased: for the *Sophi* had ordained that the Princesses lodgings should be open to them when they would, I and that all the *Satraps* young sons might see and speak to us when as they accompanied the Princes. Things being in these terms at such time as *Ulama's* wife dyed, the Princesses went by the commandment of the *Sophi*, a little after the Funeral, to give a visit to *Ulama*, whom I had scarcely ever seen, because I had not been above a month at the Court, and that during the same the Princess his wife had still been very sick. I have already told you, my Lord, that *Ulama* had not loved her, and I put you in minde of it, to the end you may not think it strange if in this occasion Love took his beginning in the time of a mourning, which had not drawn any tears. *Axiamira* and *Perca* made this visit with ceremony, the young Princes conducted them, or to say better, *Ismael* held up *Axiamira*, and *Perca* led *Adabamed*, who, as I have told you, was blinde from his birth, though he had the fairest eyes to see to in the world; but he let himself be guided with so much address, and went along with so confident a pace, as there was no body but would have been deceived in him. All the maids of honor followed after, as also six Ladies of quality, reasonably well steeped in years, which had been placed about the Princesses, to have a care of their behavior, and ours. And truly it must be acknowledged, that Feasts of rejoycing do seldom shew any thing more goodly to behold, then the mourning which is in this Court; for whereas black is not in use there but when one mourns, if any of it be seen about ones apparel, it sufficeth; nor is it exempted from magnificence. We were all then attired much after one; and to excuse *Ulama* so much the more, for letting himself be touched with those few charms which you see in my face, I will describe *Axiamira's* habit unto you, that you may know what mine was; for she had already taken to great a liking to me, as she would have no other difference between her apparel and that I wore, but great store of Diamonds which she caused to be added thereunto whensoever she pleased; and withall, since that fatal day did beget love in four such different hearts, it will not be amiss for me to recount unto you all the particularities of it. *Axiamira* then had on a petticoat and waistcoat of cloth of silver very glittering, and over that a gown of black Tiffany exceeding fine, whereof the body was plained, so that it shewed the shape very perfectly; and the bottom of the skirt, which was cut in peaks, made way for the cloth of silver to be seen athwart it. The sleeves were indifferent wide, but to give more liberty to the arm, they were fastened upon the shoulder with clasps of Diamonds, leaving almost to open view the cloth of silver sleeves that were under. Her Girdle was of great Pearls encased amongst Diamonds: And behinde at her back were moreover two hanging sleeves reaching to the ground, bordered with large borders of silver Embroidery, as well as the lower part of the Gown. Her neck was half hid with most delicate black cobweb-lawn, which was tyed on her shoulder with a silver string. And whereas our dressing is very high, there hung from the top of her head behinde a great vail, trailing to the very ground, of silver Tiffany, streaked with black, and carefully plaited; which certainly gave a great deal of grace to the beauty of *Axiamira*, and also supplied that little which I had.

We went in this sort then to *Ulama's* Lodging, which, according to the custom of *Persia*, that will have the houses, whereof the Masters or Mistresses be dead, to are for six weeks deprived

prived of the light of the Sun, had no other Light but that of Lamps. For whereas *Ulama* was of a condition to observe all requisite Ceremonies; and that it was the sister of the *Sopbi*, for whom he mourned, we found him in a chamber, hung with black Tinsel, streaked with gold, and enlightened with an hundred lamps of chrystal. *Deliment* was at that time with *Ulama*, who was likewise attired all in black, except it were that which we call *Casfelbau*, or red *Turbant*, which is never permitted to be left off, but onely to be covered with a black Cipres. I must confess that I never saw man of so goodly a presence in *Persia*, as *Ulama* was in that occasion. He received the Princes and Princesses with so much address and grace, that all my fellows were ravished with it. But when he had caused them to sit down, and that we had ranked our selves on the other side of the chamber, where we remained standing, I soon perceived that if I had thought him handsome, he did not think me disagreeable, seeing that every time civility would permit him, he fastened his eyes so on my face, as I was constrained to turn away mine; which made me observe how *Deliment* took more then ordinary care to entertain *Axiamira*; for this man of blood and fire had not till then looked upon any woman, but to despise her. And as if this chamber had had some fatalness to enchant the mindes of those that were in it, the *Sopbi* himself came to visit *Ulama*, whilst we were there, and for my ill fortune, he beheld me so favorably, as I past with him for the fairest thing that ever he had seen. But whereas the time was not proper for gallantry, all these springing passions were no otherwise made known then by looks, except in *Deliment*, who when the Princesses hapned to go away, and that *Tachmas* was retired, advanced to lead *Axiamira*, whilst *Ismael* was yet talking with *Ulama*. She, that thought the Prince her Brother would tarry behinde, received him with her ordinary civility, although she was extremely averse to him. On the other side, *Ismael* having finished his complement, gave his hand to *Perca*, who, without thinking how the blinde Prince had not brought his ordinary guide along with him, suffered him to lead her; and whereas *Mahamed* perceived it, and was very dextrous, he made his discourse endure as long as he could out of hope that some one or other would lend him their hand to conduct him. I confess that having marked the pain he was in, and moved with pity to see so goodly a Prince, so handsome, so sprightly, and so amiable, in the unquietness wherein I saw him, I stept to him, without demanding permission for it of the Governesses. My Lord, said I unto him, the Princesses are gone, will not you be pleased to follow them? He that knew me by my voyce, Yes gladly, discreet *Felixana*, said he unto me, if you will have the goodness to lead one that is blinde, who notwithstanding his blindness cannot but know your merit. I observed by *Ulama's* countenance, that he had a desire to have spoken a gallantry to me thereupon; as indeed he hath since assured me, that civility onely kept him from it; but in fine I led *Mahamed* to the Princesses Lodging, for the which he was to be obliged unto me, as that which the eyes of *Axiamira* had wrought in the heart of *Deliment*, and mine in that of the *Sopbi* and *Ulama*, my courtesie effected in *Mahameds*; who from thence forward began to have an inclination for me, which might well be termed blinde, since if I had had any thing that was agreeable in my face, yet could he not have been touched with it, being not able to see it; and as for wit, I was in an age, which ordinarily is not capable of making great conquests. Indeed it is true, that my complying with him might render me pleasing to him; for whereas all my fellows were not of my humor, they, when *Mahamed* was with *Axiamira*, declined his conversation, or at least-wise applyed not themselves to it, and this, out of the thought, that being incapable of seeing their beauty, they beleaved him to be also incapable of love, and for this reason, they would not lose that time with him, which they thought might be better employed in the entertaining of all those young persons of quality, which accompanied the Princes to *Axiamira*. As for me, who cared not as yet, either for loving, or for being loved, I gave my self onely to things that pleased me; and whereas I was infinitely taken with the conversation of Prince *Mahamed*, and that generosity it self carryed me thereunto, I set my self as often as I could to talk with him; but that which engaged me yet farther to this compliance, was, that the Princess *Axiamira* loved him dearly; for whereas *Ismael* and *Perca* were unworthy of her affection, the first for the defects of his spirit, and the other for her malice, she had placed all her liking on *Mahamed*; so that when the Princess could not entertain him her self, she commanded me to stay with him, which I did with a great deal of joy, because there was nothing of more power at that time in my minde, then the desire to please the Princess, who in all her actions seemed

to prefer me before all my fellows. On the other side the *Sophi*, who would fain know, whether I would be as agreeable to his eyes in the Princesses Lodging, as he had found me in *Ulama's*; or whether the shining of so much light, and that chamber hung with black, had not served to deceive him, used to come sometimes to the Princesses, without giving me notwithstanding any greater mark of his affection, then to behold and commend me more then the rest, when occasion was presented for it; for whereas I was very young at that time, he durst not, as I understood afterwards, speak plainly to me of his passion, fearing I should not be discreet enough to conceal it from others. But whilst he attended the improvement of my reason, the time, whereunto the ceremony of mourning had confined *Ulama*, being quite expired, he came to render his duty to the Princesses, and to thank them for the honor they had done him; and whereas I was almost never absent from *Axiamira*, he saw me in her chamber, and by a second view confirmed himself in the advantageous opinion he had conceived of me; and so strongly resolved to love me, as fearing he should be obliged to dislodge from the Palace, because the Princess his wife being dead without children, he was scarcely any longer of the royal Family; he purposed to endeavor all he could to discover his affection unto me, for fear he should be deprived of the commodity of doing it so easily, if he were constrained to be gone from thence. As for me, I confess to you blushing, that in this visit which he gave to the Princess, I felt a desire arise in my heart that I might be pleasing unto him; and without making any reflexion on this thought, I remember well, that although it had been a great Court that day, I never thought of heeding my apparel; but as soon as *Ulama* was entred, I observed my self with care, and without knowing any reason for it, I would have been glad that I had been better drest then I was. But in *fine*, my Lord, two or three hours after, Fortune was so favorable to *Ulama's* design, as having found me alone in the Princesses Chamber, who was shut up in her Cabinet, he spake to me of his affection with so much passion, as I knew not what to answer him, having never met with such like encounters. And whereas his speech had ever since remained in my memory, and that it hath been the beginning and cause of all my pleasure, and of all my misery, I cannot forbear repeating it unto you. He no sooner entred into the chamber, but I advanced towards him, to let him know that I was very sorry for that he could not see the Princess as yet; and that having forbidden me interrupting her, I durst not advertise her of his being there. Do not afflict you self, fair *Felixana*, said he unto me, for a thing which is infinitely pleasing to me; and if you will render me perfectly happy, trouble not my good fortune in doubting of this truth. What, said I unto him exceedingly surprized, do you come to see the Princess, and yet are glad that you cannot meet with her? truly this seems so strange to me, as I cannot comprehend the reason of it. It is not for all that very difficult to finde out, answered he me, for I come to see the Princess *Axiamira* out of duty, and the beautiful *Felixana* out of inclination: I am her subject, but I am your servant, and that in such sort, as you shall reign eternally in my soul, there being no kinde of service which I will not render you with joy; and henceforth, continued he, receive, fair *Felixana*, all the duties which I shall tender to the Princess, as appertaining to you; and beleeve that I am ravished with finding you thus alone, whereby I have had the opportunity to make this Declaration unto you. This discourse surprized me in such manner, as I should have been much perplexed to have answered it, if *Axiamira* had not at the same instant called me, so that being prest to obey the Princess, all that I could do, was to tell him, that knowing him and my self too, I should always be able to discern how to beleeve that which was fit for me to beleeve, both for his glory, and mine. But, my Lord, without particularizing all these things unto you, it may suffice me to tell you, that in six months space *Ulama* gave me so many marks of his love and discretion, as I should have been ingrateful and insensible, not to have rendred him some testimony of my goodwill; and whereas I was neither the one nor the other, *Ulama* received from me all the proofs of friendship, which virtue could permit me to give him; and I may say that this was the onely time, wherein I lived with pleasure. And truly I must confess that the life which I led was happy enough; I saw my self favored by the most amiable person that ever was; caressed by the *Sophi*; esteemed of *Mahamed*; and passionately beloved of *Ulama*, who without contradiction, surpassed all that were at the Court in that blessed time. Prince *Mahamed* resolved then to declare his passion overtly to me; so that one day, when the weather was very fair, and that according to *Axiamira's* custom we were gone down into the garden,



den, she sent to desire *Mahamed* that he would come and walk there; and when he was come, the gentleman which led him, was commanded to withdraw, that they might talk with the more liberty. *Axiamira* having willed me to lend *Mahamed* my hand, he let himself be guided by me, and the Princess leaned on him. After we had walked a pretty while some ten or eleven paces distant from the rest of my fellows, who out of respect durst not follow neerer, having well observed, that the Princess was not willing they should. *Mahamed* first speaking, asked of her, whether it was to say nothing unto him that she had sent for him; it being certain, that all the while we had walked together she had not spoken a word; for, continued he, my dear sister, whereas I do not see but with the eyes of my minde, if you have a purpose to entertain me, it must be with your discourse, since walking can have no other charm for me then what I finde in going along with you under the conduct of the discrete *Felixana*. My silence, answered the Princess, will trouble you less it may be, then my discourse; seeing I know you too generous, and *Felixana* too wise, and too affectionate to my service, to conceal my misfortunes from you. It is certain that I was very much surprized to hear the Princess speak in this sort; for though she had been a pretty while past somewhat sadder then she used to be, yet perceiving no apparant cause for it, I had attributed it to one of those melancholies without a cause, which seizes upon all the world at one time or other, and proceeds from ones temperature; but when as going on in her speech she acquainted us, that ever since the visit which she had given to *Ulama* after the loss of the Princess his wife, and that *Deliment* had presented her his hand to lead her to her lodging, as I remembred very well, he had been so audacious as to speak divers times to her of love, although she had at the very first very severely forbidden him; my amazement ceased, knowing well enough the extream aversion which she had for *Deliment*, and how much her great heart ought to be incensed, that a man of a birth so unequal to hers should be so daring, as to lose the respect which he owed unto her. As for *Mahamed*, who knew but too well, by the report of some of his servants, that *Deliment* slighted him, he was so nettled, as he could not forbear saying aloud: How, sister, hath this insolent lost the respect which he owes to you? Yes, replied the Princess, and in such a manner, as even to day, when as the *Sophi* brought him along with him into my chamber, upon pretext of talking with me about an affair, which I did not finde was very necessary for me to know, he stayd there behinde him, and had the insolence to let me understand by his obscure discourses, that the greatest happiness could arrive to me was to be his wife; because, said he unto me, so you may one day be the *Sophies*. For the truth is, *Ismael* knows not how to reign; *Mahamed* is so far from guiding of an Empire, as he cannot guide himself; and *Perca* will not peradventure finde an husband, able to dispute the Crown of *Persia* against *Deliment*, who does not tell you all these things without reason, nor without a good ground. Judge now after this, said *Axiamira* to us, what I should have answered him, if he had given me leisure for it, but he went away so speedily, and I was so confounded, as I could not open my mouth. Now though this insolent man hath filled me with choller and despite, yet is it not that which disquiets me; and had I nothing but his pride, his love, and his ambition to fight with, I should easily surmount such weak enemies; but that which amazes and afflicts me both together is, that an hour after *Deliment* had left me, *Ismael* and my sister came to me into my Cabiner, whither I had retired my self, and spoke so much to me of the affection which *Deliment* bore me, of his great courage, of his wit, and of the excellent qualities that were in him, as I remained quite confounded therewith; and had I not purposed to take your counsel in this affair, it is certain that I would have learned of them what obligation they had had to him whom they protected so: and then again I am fallen into some fear, that my sister hath a great share in *Deliments* fault, for reasons which I cannot comprehend; for I know that a good while now together she hath oftener accompanied *Ismael* to his lodging, then to mine. Ah, my dear sister, cried the Prince, that I had my brothers eyes, or that he had *Mahameds* heart! you should soon be revenged of this insolent fellow; and the loss of his life should in a few days restore you to its former tranquillity. I know very well, replied the Princess, that you are as generous as *Ismael* is weak, and my sister malicious: but in fine being able to do no other thing, you are to counsel me, and you and *Felixana* are to consider well that the *Sophi* loves *Deliment* passionately; that he brought him not without some occasion into my chamber; that although he be wicked, yet he hath wit; that consequently he must needs know that his insolence is up-  
held

held by some body; that *Ismael* and *Perca* are of his party; that they hate *Ulama* because he is of ours; that the *Sopbi* our Father is not sensible of love to his children; and that the passions, which predominate in him, prevail with him over all things. Just hereupon we saw *Ismael*, *Perca*, and all her women appear afar off, so that to shew there was no mystery in our talk she went to meet them, and going away prayed us, that we would sever our selves far from all others, to think of that she had said to us, and that in the Evening I should tell her the resolution we had taken. I led Prince *Mahamed* then into another alley, where we were still for all that in the sight of the Princesses; and there, after we had well considered the matter, we resolved, that it was needful, before it should break forth, to discover, whether the *Sopbi* authorized the love of *Deliment*: whether *Ismael* and *Perca* had any intelligence with him, or any interest in this love; that for this effect *Ulama* was to be made use of for so much as regarded the *Sopbi*; and that I on my part should endeavor to know the secrets of *Perca*, by the means of a maid whom she had loved very much, and who did not hate me; and that when we know the truth of the business, it would be far more easie for us to remedy the same; for *in fine*, said I, if the *Sopbi* doth not protect *Deliment*, he will be lost as soon as he understands of his insolence; and if *Perca* be not interested in this affair, the discourse which he hath used to the Princess will quickly make her change party, when she knows it: but if the *Sopbi*, as it is very likely, hath given some secret hopes to *Deliment*; and that *Perca* on the other side hath any share in this adventure, it would be to no purpose to complain precipitously to them of the insolence of this man, seeing they are the cause of it; and other remedies are to be sought out. But Prince *Mahamed* said unto me, Is it possible that the *Sopbi* (who heretofore, as I have understood, hath been so rigorous an observer of the Laws of this Empire, that he banished the Satrap *Arsalon*, for marrying a maid that was not noble) should so shamefully infringe them for him, in authorizing the love of *Deliment*? This is a thing, my Lord, said I unto him, whereof we must be cleared by the way which I have shewed. This discourse being finished, and our resolution taken, I perceived that we were a great way distant from the Princesses, so that turning the Prince about, he observed that I would reconduct him to a place, where he would not have the liberty to speak unto me; wherefore standing still, and wringing me a little by the hand; go not so fast, said he unto me, amiable *Felixana*, and be pleased, that as *Axiamira* hath to day judged you worthy of communicating all her secrets unto you, so I may acquaint you with one of mine that concerns my life; to the end that our interests being so well joyned together, our party may be the more stronger, and our enemy the weaker. And when I had answered him, that it was easie for him to judge by my past actions of the desire I had to serve him; you may well think, said he unto me, according to the discourse which my sister used to me, that I should lack reason, in making protestations of love unto you, were I not constrained thereunto by the force of truth and my passion. Protestations of love to me, my Lord, said I? Yes, dear maid, replied he; and though I know very well, how it is an hard thing to beleeve, and hard to persuade, that a blinde man, who cannot truly figure unto himself what Beauty is, should be desperately in love with you; yet is it certain that none hath ever been so much as I am. I hear all those that come near you, talk to you of the attracts of your eyes, of the beauty of your complexion, of your stature, and of your neck; but I hear none tell you, that your soul is fair, that your spirit is great and generous, that your goodness is extream, and that in conclusion you are the most virtuous person that is in the world; yet is it with these beauties that my soul is touched; and they are they which doubtless render my love more strong and more pure, then all those, which, as I have heard say, are destroyed by the loss of that beauty that is unknown to me. But that which I have for you shall certainly last as long as my life; for the beauty discreet *Felixana*, which I adore in you, cannot be destroyed by time. If you be rigorous to me, continued he, I shall excuse your rigor by the knowledg I have of my defects; and if you be not so to me, I will set no bounds to your hopes, no more then to my affection. But in the mean time, said he unto me, do me the grace to let me know, in what manner you will have me live with you. It is not for me, my Lord, answered I, to rule your life; but it is for me to rule my minde so, as to beleeve no more then I ought, and not to lose the respect, which I have always rendered you. But, my Lord, added I, the first thing we are to think of is, to draw *Axiamira* out of the pain wherein I see her. That is my intent, replied the Prince, and I have desired to engage you the more straitly in it, by let-  
ing

ing you know, that *Deliment* cannot resolve to destroy me, without making you lose the man, which in all the world loves you the most ardently, to the end that understanding the interest you have therein, you may employ your self with the more care. I received this discourse with moderation enough, and a great deal of respect; as well because the vertue of this Prince pleased me, as because I knew he loved, and very much esteemed *Ulama* and *Axi-amira*; but in such sort howsoever, as I engaged my self to nothing. In the mean time we came to the Princesses, and with them we found *Deliment*, whom *Ismael* had sent for by the perswasion of *Perca*. As soon as he saw me neer to my fellows, he came to quarrel with me for having walked so long with the Prince, and separating me from him, without any incivility, because the Gentleman, that used to lead *Mahamed*, had lent him his hand again, I quickly discerned by his discourse, that there was a great intelligence between the *Sopbi* and him: For as soon as he saw me alone, he began to tell me, that I was the happiest person of my sex, if I knew well how to manage the affection which the *Sopbi* bore me; that he gave me this advice as my servant; and that if I pleased, he would serve me in it with all his power. I thanked him coldly enough for this offer, and told him, how I knew very well, that all my happiness came from the *Sopbi*; seeing the beautiful *Axi-amira* made up all my felicity; and saying so, I returned to my fellows, which already were going after the Prince, and Princesses, who retired with very different thoughts. For *Axi-amira* had her minde filled with choller and hate; *Mahamed* added to all those things the love he bore to me; *Perca* thought to work so by her artifices, as we understood afterwards, that a man, who was of no great birth, should marry her sister, to the end she might make use of it when time should serve: *Deliment* imagined how he might deceive all the world for the satisfying of his love and his ambition; and *Ismael* alone knew not very well what he was thinking on. As for me, I was so surprized with the insolency of *Deliment* towards the Princess, of the artifice of *Perca*, of the love of *Mahamed*, and of that of the *Sopbi*, as I could scarcely speak. But in fine, my Lord, that I may not amuse my self too long about petty things, having such great ones to tell you, you shall understand that we learned a little after, by the address of *Ulama*, by the intelligence which I got from *Perca's* confidant, and by the innocency & simplicity of *Ismael*, all the several designs of these interested persons. As for the *Sopbi*, the greatest interest that he had in this affair, was only in my person; for though he durst not speak to me of his passion, for the reason I have alledged; yet was it so strong, as he was constrain'd to discover it to *Deliment*, who promised him to speak to me of it; and in case I should not be discreet enough to conceal this secret from others, he would be so confident as to disavow all that he had said to me. For *Deliment*, he had a long time before won an old *Satrap*, in whom the *Sopbi* very much confided for the affairs of the Empire, and who had oftentimes perswaded him by *Deliment's* direction, that the Law, which had caused *Arjalon* to be banished, was very judiciously made for his subjects, but not for him; perswading him, that Kings, which did not marry their daughters to forraign Princes, were never to admit the noblest and the greatest of their subjects into their alliance; because that most commonly was to take Tutors, in taking sons in law of an high birth; and that for the good of the Prince, of the State, and of the Princesses, it would be better to do otherwise. For, said he unto him one day, coming to particulars, if by example, the Princess *Axi-amira* had married *Deliment*, what a felicity would yours be, to have a son-in-law, that should owe all his glory to you, and absolutely depend on you? and what an happiness would it be for *Axi-amira* to have an husband, without having a master? it being certain, that the inequality of their conditions would always keep *Deliment* in the terms of duty and obedience. With such like reasons as these it was, that this wicked man had caused the minde of the *Sopbi* to be prepared before he would discover his love unto him. But whereas he had understood by his Agent, that he had not rejected those propositions, the morning that he had been to see the Princess, which was the same wherein the *Sopbi* discovered to him the love which he bore to me, he wrought so dextrously with him, as he made him comprehend, that if he had a passion in some sort unworthy of his rank, he on the contrary had one, that was far above all he could pretend unto, and that would not permit him to hope for any thing. He spake this to him with so much cunning, as he designed *Axi-amira* unto him, yet without engaging himself so far, but that he might interpret his discourse after another manner, if he perceived the *Sopbi* to be offended at it. But he had too much need of him for me, and his minde was too much posselt with maxims



of State, which were advantageous to *Deliment*, for him to be so: and indeed far from being displeased with it, he embraced, and told him, that his hopes might go so high, as that he permitted him to lift up his eyes, even to the Princess *Axiāmira*. For, said he unto him, since Nature hath not given me children, which can govern this Empire, I would be willing that love and fortune would give me such a one as *Deliment*, who may, if not be *Sophi* after me, at least-wise counsel him that shall be. *Deliment*, cunning and dextrous as he was, made as though he did not beleave that which the *Sophi* said to him, and out of a feigned respect not seeming to acknowledge that to be his passion, the *Sophi* said unto him, to oblige him thereunto, that it being not so far from him to the Princess *Axiāmira*, as from me to the *Sophi* of *Persia*, he was not to fear that he would thence forward oppose an unequal affection, seeing he had discovered his unto him. But when as *Deliment* continued saying, that respect was stronger in him then all other things, the *Sophi*, that he might know whether it were *Axiāmira* indeed whom he was in love withall, carried him to her lodging; and it was then that this rash man was so audacious, as to speak with such insolency to the Princess. For whereas he had tyed that love could not move her, he beleaved that ambition might; and that the hope of reigning over *Persia* would move her more, then the certainty wherein she was of reigning over his heart. As for the Princess *Perca*, they had a long time before treated together, and he had perswaded her, that the Crown of *Persia* was to be shared between her and her sister; and for that effect she was to be kept from marrying any man, whose generosity (for so it was that he spake) should carry him to let stupid *Ismael*, or blinde *Mahamed* reign. And when he made a shew of seeking out, who in the Court might be *Axiāmira's* husband, he play'd his part so well, that he led her, as cunning as she was, to the point he desired. For after she had mused awhile, as well as he, what need have we, said she unto him, to seek so far off for that, which we may finde in the person of *Deliment*? He, seeming to have no other interest in this affair then the good of the Princesses, held off a good while, that he might be the more prest unto it. But at length, being come to agreement about their conditions, they judged, that albeit *Ismael* was not capable of rendering a party much stronger then if he were not of it, yet it would be advantageous for them to seize upon his spirit; and *Perca* took the care to do it. As indeed, she easily perswaded him, that it was requisite *Axiāmira* should be marryed to a man that depended on him, and not on *Mahamed*, who after the death of the *Sophi* might trouble him, in demanding a great portion, as if he were not blind; so that to weaken his party, it would be good to marry *Axiāmira* to *Deliment*, who would tye himself wholly to his interests. Behold, my Lord, the motives and the causes of *Deliment's* insolency to *Axiāmira*; of the discourses which he made to me touching the love of the *Sophi*; of the perswasions of *Perca* and *Ismael*; and of the unquietness, which this unpleasant entanglement gave us. For being advertised of part of these things, which we understood much better afterwards, Prince *Mahamed*, *Axiāmira*, *Ulama*, and I, who was also of the counsel, resolved, that the Princess should always treat *Deliment* with a great deal of coldness and indifferency; without giving him for all that any notable cause of complaining: That she best would be carefully to avoyd all occasions wherein the *Sophi* might speak of this man; it being more expedient, that the matter should not break forth but upon extremity, because it might arise that it would not have a sequel so grievous as we foresaw it: That in the mean time we should labor to let *Perca* know, that *Deliment* did not intend to use her better, then *Ismael* and *Mahamed*: That for me, I should receive the discourse, which he should make me concerning the *Sophi's* love, as a thing I did not beleave, and that I would not have to be true; and that I should give him as little occasion as I could to speak to me of it. I offered the Princess to retire to my father under pretext of a supposed sickness, but if the good-will which she bore me opposed it, Prince *Mahamed's* love hindred it absolutely: In regard whereof they represented unto me, that if I should do so, it would be the undoing of all, because if the *Sophi* did love me, he would be so incensed thereby, as he might peradventure be carryed to a violence, which otherwise he would not be capable of. As for *Ulama*, he had secret apprehensions which incessantly tormented him; the power of his Rival made him afraid, neither was he so assured of my constancy, but that he feared ambition would move me more then his love. But whereas it was not long before I perceived his unquietness, I wrote unto him, for his better assurance, that nothing but death could keep me from performing the promise, which I had made him to be wholly his, when he had settled his affairs so,

so, as he might marry me. For whereas he was a widower by the death of the *Sophi's* sister, civility would not permit him to think so soon of a second marriage, especially with a person, whose birth, though noble and illustrious enough, came not near for all that to the former. Things being in these terms, we were a good while without having any great occasion to increase our uneasiness; because the *Sophi* and *Deliment* having consulted a second time together, and resolved to seek to gain me by gentleness, before they would come to force, there was nothing but sports and entertainments. And whereas, according to the order I had for it, so often as *Deliment* spake to me of the *Sophi's* love, I made as though I did not believe there was any truth in his words; *Tachmas* being thereof advertised, and desiring to give me a proof of the esteem he made of that they called beauty in my face, he did a thing, which hath since been the cause of a great deal of mischief; for, generous *Ibrahim*, it happened for our ill fortune, that there arrived about that time at this Court a Painter of *Europe*, whom chance, or the desire of travelling had brought thither, and that drew pictures in little, so admirable resembling the life, as the like had never been heard of. And at the same time certain Merchants came thither also, who, amongst other rarities, which they had, made shew of a number of the pictures of the fairest women of such several Nations, as they had passed through. These two things joyned together, caused the *Sophi*, out of the design he had to oblige me, to give command that all the maidens of quality, which were at the Court, should present themselves at his Palace on a certain day, appointed for it, together with the Princesses and their maids, sumptuously apparelled. This ceremony, whereof we knew not the cause (for they made a secret of it) somewhat troubled us, but at length that day being arrived, and all this fair Assembly completed, the *Sophi* followed by *Ismael*, *Mahamed*, *Ulama*, *Deliment*, and the Painter, of whom I have spoken to you, entered into the room, where we were all set in order, but without the Princesses holding the rank, which they ought to have had, for so had the *Sophi* ordained it; and that which also redoubled the impatience we were in, to know for what reason they had caused us to be attired so richly, was, to see the *Sophi* hold in his right hand two Crowns of gold set with Diamonds, and taking the Painter with his left hand, whom neither the Princesses, nor any of their maidens knew as yet, to say unto him, that he established him the judge of the beauty of all those which composed this fair Assembly; as knowing better, than the rest of the world, the just proportion of the features of the face; that which made up the delicacy, freshness, and vivacity of the complexion; and what the difference was between an animated beauty, and another that hath no life nor grace in it. And that to make him give a more equitable sentence, he had so ordered it, as he could not discern the condition of the fair ones, of whom he was the judge; but howsoever that he nevertheless reserved to himself the right of crowning them, whom he should judge to be worthy of that honor. This said, he led him all over the room, and making an exact stand at each of them, that so none might be disobliged, he finished his first turn, none being able to judge that he had given advantage to any; nevertheless I perceived, when the Painter made a stand before me, that the *Sophi*, seeing me cast down my eyes, as pretending to no part in this victory, had said softly, that I had not so much as need of their sparkling, to merit the Crown, having beauty enough other-where. It is certain that I blushed at this discourse, and that lifting up my eyes again, I encountered *Ulama's*, wherein I marked so much uneasiness, as it pined me exceedingly. Prince *Mahamed* was close by him, who not able to see but with others eyes, demanded softly of him, what they were doing: But at last, when the Painter, for ceremonies sake, had separated twelve from the rest, whereof the Princess *Axiamira* and I were two; and that the *Sophi* had willed him once again to be equal; whether it were that *Tachmas* had made me known to the Painter, without my perceiving it, as in all likelihood he had; or whether he was not very knowing in beauty, I was the first that was declared victorious, and on whose head the *Sophi* set one of the Crowns. But whereas I knew very well, that this victory was an effect rather of the *Sophi's* love, than of my beauty, it brought me more spite than joy; so that taking the Crown, which had been given me, I went to place it at the feet of *Axiamira*, just as the *Sophi*, by the sentence of the Painter, set the other on her head. But he, seeing this action of mine, took that which I was going to place on the ground, and giving it me again a second time; Is it, said he unto me, for that the Crown which I offer you is not beautiful enough? or that the hand which presents it to you is not illustrious enough? It is neither the one nor the other, my Lord, answered I, but it is

because I am neither beautiful, nor illustrious enough, to wear a Crown, that parts from the hand of so great a Prince. And then coming nearer to me, Receive this fame, said he to me softly, fair maid, and believe, if you will be reasonable, that this shall not be the last you shall receive from me. All the answer I made to this discourse was only blushing, and so I shuffled in my self amongst my fellows, with as much displeasure for my victory, as they had vexation for that they had not carryed it. But in conclusion, my Lord, *Axiamira* and I were painted in the habit of *Amazons*, which, as he said who drew our pictures, was pleasing to all Nations: When they were done, the *Sophi* caused him to make six copies of each of us, which he put into Cases of Gold, enriched with Diamonds, and gave them to those Merchants, who had shew'd him so many forraign beauties; but with an oath, that they should never sell them to any but Princes, and that they should always reserve one of each of them in their own keeping, to publish *Axiamira's* beauty and mine over all the Countries through which they travelled. These Merchants promised all that he required, and for our ill fortune kept their word but too well, as you shall understand hereafter. From that same day *Deliment* persecuted me more then ordinary, it seeming unto him that I was no longer to doubt of the *Sophi's* love, after that which he had said unto me. And whereas I desired to decline his encounter, as much as I could, I stood oftentimes talking with Prince *Mahamed*; because though he contemned him, yet his quality made him that he durst not separate me from him, when we were in discourse together. And I remember that one day, as this poor Prince was entertaining me, and that *Deliment* was come to the Princesses with *Ismael*, out of a design to say something to me from the *Sophi*, this insolent man did so far lose the respect which he owed to *Mahamed*, as I hated him for it more then I did before. I have already told you blushing, generous *Ibrahim*, that this Prince was in love with me; and though I had nothing but good-will for him, and that *Ulama* absolutely possessed my heart, yet did I in some sort comply with *Mahamed*, for his discourse was so virtuous, and so obliging, though passionate, as if *Ulama* had heard it, I verily think he could not have hated this illustrious Rival. I was also willing to conserve the good-will of the son, out of the intent I had to refuse the love of the father. It was then with his passion that *Mahamed* entertained me that day, when as *Deliment* had so great a desire to speak with me, and that finding himself hindered from it by the Princes presence, he thought good to observe both his actions and mine. And whereas it is hard for the motions of the face not to give some mark of those of the heart, especially when love possesseth it; *Deliment* perceived something which was extraordinary in that of the Prince; for *Mahamed*, albeit he was blinde, yet came up close to me, as if he could have seen me; and because his eyes could not advertise him when there was any one neer us that could hear him, and that it would have but put me in remembrance of his defect if he should have said any thing to me of it, he always used to speak softly unto me; which that day, amongst others, gave no little quietness to *Deliment*; for having marked that I had blushed twice or thrice, and it seeming to him to be without anger, he suspected somewhat of the truth. And whereas he was insolent, and accustomed to a bitter jering, which made him to be yet more hated of every one, he said, speaking of me, to *Perca's* Confident, who was hard by him (for those two Princesses were retired into *Axiamira's* Cabinet, accompanied by *Ismael*,) doth not this so long and so particular conversation possess you with curiosity? for as for me, continued he, I profess unto you that I cannot comprehend it. If it be of indifference, I am certain, that he cannot talk to her of the rarities which he hath seen in his voyages; if it be of War, he cannot render her any other account but of the noise of the Canons; and if it be of Love, I am well assured that he doth not entertain her, either with the whiteness of her skin, or the sweetness of her look; so that I conclude he cannot talk to her but of his dreams, which should not be very pleasing, since the objects he hath seen conduce not much to the furnishing him with fair ideas. *Deliment* spake so softly, as I could not hear him; but whereas the privation of sight seemed to have redoubled in *Mahamed* the delicacy of hearing, he lost not one word of that which I have delivered. I perceived very well, that upon a sudden he had held his peace, that he had blushed, and that without harkening to me he had lent an ear to *Deliment*; but I was much surprized, when as turning him towards the place where he heard him speak, he said unto him with a strong and confident voyce: Thou thinkest it may be, insolent as thou art, that because I am blinde, I should be deaf also; howbeit know, that I have but too well heard



heard, for thy interest, the injurious words which thou hast spoken; for though I am deprived of sight, I have not lost my courage; and did not the respect of *Axiamira* retain me, I would strangle thee with mine own hands, or thy flight should shelter thee from my fury; but what say I, continued he, thou knowest well, base man, that I could not follow thee, and that is it which makes thee so audacious. *Deliment* during this discourse did nothing but smile, which so incensed me, as I could not forbear beholding him with rage; but meaning to carry insolency to the highest point, he told *Mahamed*, that he had said nothing of him, which he might not say again to the *Sophi*, without offending him. I do not think, replied *Mahamed*, that he would be as unjust to authorize thy insolency to me, as to *Axiamira*; but howsoever, get thee out of this lodging, and never come into the place where I am, I charge thee. I assure you, answered *Deliment* as he was going away, that you shall never see me more. This last jeer so mightily incensed *Mahamed*, as he would have gone to that part where he heard the voice of *Deliment*; but knowing that his misfortune would not permit his coming at him to punish his audaciousness, I retained him the best I could; and not thinking of *Perca's* Confidence being there, Let this senseless fellow go, my Lord, said I unto him, and consider that your hand is too noble to punish his arrogance; and that in stead of doing him an affront, you will do him an honor, whereof he is not worthy. At this noise the Princesses opened the Cabinet, and *Axiamira* asking what the matter was, saw Prince *Mahamed* exceedingly moved; It is, answered he, an insolency of *Deliment's*, which I may not tell you so suddenly; for, my dear sister, those of his party are yet too strong here, *Perca* seeming not to understand that this discourse was addressed to her, I assure my self, said this subtle Princess, that this was one of *Deliment's* merriments, which the Prince hath misunderstood; but lest this disorder, continued she, should oblige the *Sophi* to forbid the Princes from bringing any body to our lodging, I will go and endeavor to appease this tempest. Spare that pain, replied *Mahamed*; for certainly, on my part, it shall never be appeased but with the death of *Deliment*. But *Perca*, without answering this discourse, took *Ismael* by the hand, and all amazed as he was, carryed him away whither she pleased. We were no sooner at liberty to talk, but *Mahamed* recounted to the Princess *Axiamira* all *Deliment's* insolency, and that with so much choller, and marks of resentment, as made me much to pity this poor Prince. Will you endure, dear sister, said he unto her, that the Enemy of *Mahamed* shall become the husband of *Axiamira*? That a man, which hath made use of your chamber, as of a sanctuary, to affront me with impunity, shall be yet so audacious as to pretend to the possession of your person? Ah! no, you are too generous to have such base thoughts: and I hope, though my eyes are not able to guide my hand so as it may give this Insolent an hundred stabs, yet that yours will at the least take all the revenge of him you can, in showing him so many marks of your rigor and disdain, as the love and ambition, which reign in his heart, wanting satisfaction, he may howsoever have two domestical Enemies, which will persecute him incessantly, or to say better, until such time as I have found out a man generous enough to guide my arm, or to lend me his. *Ulama* entred into the chamber just at that instant, and having heard those last words, without giving the Princess leisure to answer, he went to *Mahamed*, and assured him, that except it were against the person of the *Sophi*, he might dispose of him in any thing, and punish him in such revenge as he pleased. *Mahamed* having quickly known *Ulama's* purpose: Ah! generous *Ulama*, said he unto him, that I am not in a condition to reward thy virtue, rather then to have need of thy courage against an infamous fellow, who cannot pretend to any other part of valor, but that which those cruel beasts may have, who are not valiant, but because they are strong, and of a bloody disposition. The Princess, who perceived that in stead of being appeased, *Mahamed* grew the more incensed with talking, made him enter into her Cabinet with *Ulama*, and me; where we no sooner were, but she beginning to speak, assured *Mahamed*, that she was no less sensible of *Deliment's* insolency then he; that she promised never to marry him, not, said she, because I would have you obliged to me for it, or that you should think I do it for the love of you, but contrarily, I desire you would beleave, that when *Deliment* shewed the most love and respect to me, I would still have made choyce of death, rather then be his wife; for *in fine*, his birth, his humor, his wickedness, and his arrogance, have possessed me with so much hatred against him, as there is no extremity, whereunto I will not be carryed, rather then consent to any thing that may please him. But that which I desire you should

think

think, is, that if the greatest Prince of the Earth, and that did most touch mine inclination, should offer you any outrage, I would be his cruellest Enemy, and the first that would be revenged on him for it. Ah! generous sister (said *Mahamed*, interrupting her, and much comforted with hearing her speak so) I was perswaded, that my quarrel should be yours, and that you would not abandon me. When as I saw that their discourse resolved on nothing, I told them, that without amusing themselves about giving testimonies of their affection one to another, which was to no purpose, since it could not be doubted of, it would be better for them to employ the time in considering, whether *Mahamed* should complain to the *Sopbi*, or whether he should stay, to see in what manner *Deliment* would live with him for the future, after he had forbidden him his presence. This advice seeming just unto them, they began to examine the matter. As for *Mahamed*, he would neither complain, nor stay, but only revenge himself. *Ulama*, who foresaw that no good could come of this revenge, either for the Prince, or for the Princess, or for himself, stay'd till *Axiamira* had delivered her opinion, pretending that he was not to speak his, in regard, said he, that it belonged only to him to execute that which the Princess and *Mahamed* should resolve upon. So that *Axiamira* being unwilling to speak alone by her self, commanded me to say what I thought was fit to be done in this affair. I confess to you, generous *Ibrahim*, that notwithstanding the hate which I bare to *Deliment*, I advis'd, that things should be gently carry'd; and that if he came to submit himself to *Mahamed*, he should be received, and shew made of pardoning him; but upon condition nevertheless, that he should appear as seldom as he might in places where *Mahamed* should be. And that which carry'd me hertunto, was the thought, that if *Ulama* enterprized any thing against *Deliment*, the least that could arrive unto me by it would be, that *Ulama* would be constrained to absent himself, and leave me in the power of the *Sopbi*. As for the Princess, she was of the opinion, that a gentleman should be sent from *Mahamed* to complain to the *Sopbi* of *Deliments* insolency; and that withall great care should be taken to publish it, because, said she to *Mahamed*, it will be requisite to make him be contemned and hated of every one, as much as possibly we can, that we make use of that hatred and contempt when time shall serve; for, continued she, the world is not acquainted with his temerity and audaciousness; and whereas he is rich and liberal, he hath partisans and servants, who durst not declare themselves to be so, if they knew that you and I did hate him. Why, sister, replied *Mahamed*, would you have me publish, that I have received an affront with impunity? Yes, said she, I would have it published, that you may be revenged of *Deliment*, seeing you may do it without offence to your reputation. Consider, added she, that if the generosity of *Ulama* should carry him to fight with *Deliment*, your revenge would be doubtful, since you cannot be ignorant, that the success of Arms is always so, and if peradventure it should cost you the blood and fortune of so excellent a man, you would repent you of this violence. No, Madam, said *Ulama* interrupting her, never stand on these considerations; seeing my fortune, my blood, and my life, could not be employed more gloriously, then in revenging Prince *Mahamed*. But, replied she, the matter is not so easie as you imagine; your design may be discovered; the opportunity of executing it perchance will not be presented; and then to speak freely unto you, I cannot approve of that violence in *Mahamed*, which I should condemn in others. It will be better then to lay the blame on the *Sopbi* and *Deliment* in a gentle way; and produce him secret Enemies, who when occasion shall require, and that we would openly oppose his violences, may serve us with courage, and give us the means to be revenged, without fear, and with honor. In brief, this sage Princess maintained her opinion with so many reasons, as it was followed: And to execute it, I went to give order for the fetching of an old Governor, who had brought up *Mahamed*, and that was one of the wisest and understandingest men of our age, to the end he might go to the *Sopbi*, who whilst we were taking our resolution entertained *Deliment*. For as soon as he was gone out of *Axiamira's* chamber he went unto that of the *Sopbi*, to whom for the colouring of his insolency he said, that finding me every day more rebellious to his will, he could think no other, but that my heart was engaged other-where; and that having observed all my actions, he had found that Prince *Mahamed* did not hate me; that to be the better cleared thereof, and carry'd by the zeal which he had to his service, he had spoken some jesting words, whilst the Prince entertained me, which he had taken so ill, as his anger thereupon did perswade him the more to that opinion of his. It is not, said he smiling, (as we

we understood afterwards) because it may be easily imagined, that the beauty of *Felixana* had given you a rival; but howsoever I would not conceal my suspicion from you, and it is for you to make my peace with Prince *Mahamed*, if you will not have the beautiful *Axi-amira* hate me. I will take the care of that upon me, replied the *Sophi*; and beleve that I am not a little obliged unto you, in that you have not feared to anger *Mahamed*, for to serve me in a thing, whereon my felicity depends. Judg, my Lord, whether after this artifice, the complaints of this poor Prince were well received or no. The *Sophi* nevertheless desired to keep some decorum, being unable to beleve that *Mahamed* was amorous, though he resolved to clear himself further therein. As soon then as that ancient Governor of *Mahamed* had made his complaint, he told him, that he was already advertised of the matter; and that to give satisfaction to *Mahamed*, he commanded him to pardon *Deliment*, whose heart he well knew, and was sure that he had no purpose to offend him, and that it had been nothing but a light temptation, to say some merriment. And when that Governor would have besought him, that at least *Deliment* should not come, but as seldom as he could, to the places where Prince *Mahamed* should be; the *Sophi* bid him make no further reply, for he would be obeyed; and for that effect he would go and carry *Deliment* to *Axi-amira's* chamber, to the end that in the same place, where the fault had been committed, it might also be pardoned; so that when we expected the *Sophi's* answer, we saw him himself enter, leaning on *Deliment*, and followed by *Ismael* and *Perca*, who not having seen *Deliment* since her going forth, because he was with the *Sophi*, she had followed them to this chamber, as soon as she had been advertised that they came thither. I leave you to judg, whether this visit did not possess *Mahamed* with choller, and *Axi-amira* and me with amazement. But we were yet in much more, when as the *Sophi* fell to amplify the obligations which he had to *Deliment*, his virtues, his merit, the affection he bare to the Princes and Princesses; and in fine, continued he, the greatest mark that can be given me of the passion one is in for my service, is, to render the same honors to *Deliment*, as if he were my son; and as for you, said he, leaning on *Mahamed's* shoulder, I command you to love *Deliment*, and to live well with him. It would be methinks more just, replied the Prince, that you would ordain him not to affront me, since he cannot do so without offending you. I do excuse, answered the *Sophi*, the ill opinion you have of *Deliment*, seeing it is not occasioned but by the little knowledg you have of his intentions. But howsoever I will be obeyed; and without examining whether my pleasure be unjust or equitable, I command you to receive his submissions and his friendship. Hereupon *Deliment* began to speak, and disguising the malice of his soul, he said so many obliging things to *Mahamed*, as if he had not perfectly known his wickedness, he might have beleaved that he was capable of repenting. So it was, that *Mahamed* was constrained to make shew of no longer resenting the offence he had received. This peace brought great joy to *Perca*; but *Axi-amira's* coldness made it apparent enough that they were not both of one party. The *Sophi* continued yet some time in talking of indifferent things, during the which he still fixed his eyes on my face: And whereas out of a sense of compassion, and to avoyd his looks, I turned my head all that while towards *Mahamed*, he began to think that there might be some verity in *Deliment's* suspicion. He was no sooner returned to his lodging, but thinking of the means to be cleared therein, he conceived that the gentleman, who served to guide *Mahamed*, might peradventure be he from whom he might learn something. He had no sooner communicated this design to *Deliment*, but that having approved of it, he thought of nothing else then executing it. And to that purpose he waited, that he might give no suspicion to *Mahamed*, till he was retired in the Evening, for at that time the Prince not using to stir forth any more, always left his guide at liberty; *Deliment*, who had caused him to be watched, was no sooner advertised that he was come out of the Princes chamber, but he made him be secretly told, that the *Sophi* would speak with him. This man, who had not been accustomed to receive such like favors, presently obeyed; and the *Sophi*, joyning the hope of a great fortune, presents, and entreaties, to his commands, had quickly suborned his fidelity. After then that he was well assured of him, both by reason of the things I have spoken of, and of the fear of punishment if he failed in his promise, he commanded him exactly to observe all Prince *Mahamed's* actions, to take good notice of what he spake of me; to endeavor to learn something thereof; and to give him an account of it every Evening at the same hour. And when he pressed him to tell him,



him, whether he had not perceived that there was some intelligence between the Prince and me, he answered him, that he knew no more thereof, but that the Prince spake oftener of me, than of any other of my fellows. But whilst they were betraying him in this sort, he was not without uneasiness; The sight to be so ill entreated by the *Sophi*, and so unworthily affronted by *Deliment*, without having an assured mean to be revenged of it, put him into no little pain: And then again, when he came to think, that the next day he should encounter with *Deliment* again at *Axiamira's* lodging, his great heart could not so soon resolve upon so grievous a thing; he purposed then, for the declining of it, to make a shew of being sick, and not to stir out of his chamber a good while. But when he came to consider, that in declining the encounter of *Deliment*, he should deprive himself of mine, love was stronger in him than spite; and the conversation of his Enemy was not so redoubtable, as the hope of mine was sweet unto him. Howbeit imagining, that the Princess would visit him during his feigned sickness, and that I, being her Confident, would not fail to accompany her thither, spite re-assumed its former place, and made him execute his resolution. The next day he feigned himself sick, and would let no body see him; but fearing lest *Axiamira* should be troubled at it, he sent her word, that she should not be disquieted for it, assuring her, that the greatest remedy he had need of was her conversation, or to be alone. The Princess understood well enough what the Prince desired of her, so that as soon as she had met with occasion fit for it, she went to see *Mahamed*, carrying none with her but an old Governess, one of my fellows, and me. But *Perca*, having understood that *Axiamira* was gone to see Prince *Mahamed*, who was not well, persuaded *Ismael* and *Deliment* to go thither too; so that we were hardly arrived at *Mahamed's* chamber, but we were advertised, that this Enemy troop was coming to trouble our rest. The Prince was so enraged at it, as *Axiamira*, fearing he should be carried to some violence, made haste to be gone, so that meeting them in the anti-chamber, where she stay'd them, she told them that the Prince being asleep, she would not suffer him to be awaked, and thereby obliged them to return. In the mean time *Mahamed*, who could not forbear giving me to understand, that he lived still for me, called to him his guide, named *Amariel*, who oftentimes served him also for a Secretary. He recommends secrecy and discretion to him, and after he had made him swear an hundred false oaths, he dictates a letter unto him for me, which he wrote very faithfully; And having caused him to read it over more than once unto him, he gives him order to go the next morning for to know how the Princess does, and then to deliver me that letter as secretly as he could. *Amariel* promises to acquit himself thereof as he ought; and very glad of his adventure, he retires from the Prince, and goes with all speed to do an act of fidelity to the *Sophi*, and of treachery to *Mahamed*. The *Sophi* caresses him extraordinarily, and taking the letter with very much impatience, he sees that it was extremely passionate, and that *Deliment's* suspicions were not ill grounded. He sent immediately for him, shewed him the letter which he had, and exceedingly moved with choller, demanded what counsel he should take? *Deliment*, as more cunning, and less preoccupied, told him, how by this letter well considered one might easily see, that *Mahamed* was passionately in love with me, but that one could not judge, whether I answered his passion or no; so that to be cleared therein, *Amariel* was to deliver this letter to me, and crave an answer of it. That for his part, he believed that I did not hate him, because one of *Perca's* maids had heard me say somewhat, as she went out of *Axiamira's* chamber, that made him think so. This resolution being taken, *Amariel* according to his directions came unto me, rendred me *Mahamed's* letter, and gave me the commodity to answer it. For whereas he was come very early, the Princess was not yet awake, and I was still in my chamber, without any other company then a maid that waited on me. Until then, I had believed, that I was not obliged to let *Ulama* know any thing of Prince *Mahamed's* love; but when I foresaw that it was like to have some sequel, I resolved, when I could find a favorable occasion, to say something to him of it; and in the mean time so to live with *Mahamed*, as he should have no cause to be offended with me, nor yet hope to engage me to the affection which he desired of me. I answered him with a great deal of respect, and turning the sense of his words as dextrously as I could, I answered to a letter of love, as if it had been a letter of friendship. *Amariel* had no sooner gotten mine answer, but he went away very well satisfied to the *Sophi*, who was not sorry to see, that I had not so much affection for *Mahamed*, but that he might hope to be able to break

break it. He consulted then with his ordinary counsel, that is to say with *Deliment*, and they resolved together, that from thence forward they would change the Letters which the Prince should cause to be written to me, because for so much as they could judge by that which they had seen, they would be too well ended, and too passionate; purposing also, if it fell out that I should answer him too obligingly, not to let it be read so to Prince *Mahamed*: who, as if fortune would be assitant to our Enemies, became so sick indeed, as he was fain to keep his chamber fifteen days together; In which time, there past not a day, wherein he did not write unto me, and I did not answer him, without ever knowing for all that what we said one to another; because the *Sophi* retained all *Mahamed's* Letters, and caused others to be written to me; and likewise kept all my answers, in making me speak as he pleased. I confess, that many times I marvelled at the questions, wherewith those Letters, which I beleeved were *Mahamed's*, were filled: and confronting the first I received from him with the rest, I found so great a difference between them, were it for the gracefulness of the stile, or for the things he said to me, as I knew not what to think of it. Nevertheless, seeing it was always the same hand, and receiving them the same way, all I could conclude upon it was, That the blindness of this poor Prince possessed him with such thoughts for love, as never any body had the like but he. For whereas the *Sophi's* and *Deliment's* design was, to render *Mahamed* contemptible to me, they made him write strange things by *Amariel*. Sometimes they made this blinde Prince say, that he was grieved he did not see me; that the beauty of my eyes was always present before him; in another Letter, that for the more conformity he would willingly that I had been blinde as he was, and the rather for that then I should not see the *Sophi*, whom he knew to be his Rival. In another, he conjured me to let him have my picture, and to send him word whether I were fair or brown. I leave you to think, since I could not despise *Mahamed*, because I esteemed him very much other-ways, whether these Letters did not move me to compassion; and though *Deliment's* cunning did always intermix something of the *Sophi* among, yet I had always so much discretion, or good hap, as not to make any answer to that particular. But if *Deliment* drew up such senseless Letters for *Mahamed*, those which he made for me, as I understood afterwards, were not much more reasonable. And the Prince hath told me, that when *Amariel* read them to him, he could not chuse but make him read them over again and again. It was not because *Deliment*, who ordinarily dictated them, had made them very obliging, but because the Prince, finding them so badly pen'd, was perswaded that it was *Amariel's* fault, who read them ill; for he could not imagine, that a person, whose wit seemed worthy of his esteem, should express her thoughts with so bad a grace; and to that effect, he made him read them over many times, that he might be able to discern the faults of the Reader, from those which they made to pass for mine.

But whilst the malice of *Deliment* triumphed over the *Sophi's* facility, and our innocency, *Mahamed* being well amended, caused himself to be led to the Princesses lodging, to render her his first visit, or to say better, to have a pretext to give me one. For he hath told me since, how he was not without impatience to hear me talk, to the end he might know, whether I had still the same wit, which he had so much prized in me. He did not marvel, that I had always answered him with rigor enough, because he might well think that mine own virtue, and the fear of committing my self to the discretion of him that was to read my Letters, would carry me thereunto; but to say things from the purpose to him, was that which he could not comprehend. As long as his sickness had lasted, the Princess *Axiamira* had been often enough to visit him, but *Perca* had most commonly been in her company, so that we spake not together, until that coming, as I have said, one morning to visit *Axiamira*, with a purpose, if he found her alone, to declare to her the passion which he was in for me; not finding her yet awake, and making as though he would attend till she was, he caused himself to be led to my chamber; when he came thither, I had almost done reading a Letter from *Ulama*, who, provoked by the force of his passion, and the fear he was in lest the *Sophi's* love should prevail with me more than his, conjured me to remember the promises which I had made him; never to love any but him; and consequently, passed over again all the testimonies of affection which I had rendered him, that so he might oblige me not to deprive him of it.

At first, when *Mahamed* entred into my chamber, I thought to have hid the Letter which I held, but suddenly calling to minde that he was blinde, I laughed at my providence, and so

much the more, for that he had commanded *Amariel* to stay in a gallery, through which one was to pass for to come into my chamber. When I saw my self alone with *Mahamed*, except it were a maid that served me, and in whom I confided in all things, I was taken with such impatience to make an end of reading *Ulama's* Letter, as presently after the first civilities, I began to unfold it as softly as possibly I could, and without answering precisely to *Mahamed's* discourses I read that which *Ulama* writ unto me. *Mahamed*, who certainly hath a great deal of understanding, and that according to the custom of the blinde is always a little suspicious, though out of discretion he makes as little shew of it as may be, hearing the noise which the Letter made in turning it from the one side to the other, (for it was indifferently long) imagined that there was some mystery in it which he did not comprehend; that peradventure the *Sophi* had during his sickness absolutely gained me, and that the paper, which I held, and whereof he heard the noise, was a Letter from him, or from *Deliment*; In so grievous a thought, this so wife and so moderate a Prince could not resist the temptation of clearing himself of a doubt, which gave him so much inquietness; so that at such time as I never dream'd of it, and that I was folding up *Ulama's* Letter again, and deeply musing on that which I had read, *Mahamed* directing his hand by the noise which I made in doing it up, chance led it so just where it should be, that he snatched it from me sooner then I was able to withstand him. *I must needs know*, said he, *amiable Felixana, whether this blessed Paper, which hath kept you from answering me, merits the honor you do it to my prejudice.* *My Lord*, said I unto him exceedingly troubled, *if you could see what is in this Letter, I would not resist your pleasure; but since you cannot know what it is but by a third person, permit that I may conjure you to render it me.* This extreame earnestness that I shewed to draw that Paper out of his hands was that which provoked his curiosity the more; and though he did infinitely fear to displease me, yet did he fear much more to be over-reached. And then again, believing *Amariel* to be very faithful, he thought he should hazard nothing, in resolving to let him read it. In this opinion the more I importuned him, the more did he defend himself from according that which I required; and I verily believe that in so great a trouble I should have told him the truth of the matter, and confided in his generosity, if *Deliment*, who had been advertised that Prince *Mahamed* was in my chamber, had not come thither with *Ismael*, of whom he made use upon all occasions, to trouble our conversation. For he feared that so particular an interview would discover the trick they had playd us; and that thinking to destroy our friendship, they should settle it better then before. But that which they feared was far from arriving, for *Mahamed* and I had other manner of thoughts then to entertain our selves with Letters, which we had received from one another. When first I saw *Ismael* and *Deliment*, I testified a great deal of inquietness; and addressing my self to *Mahamed* with an anger, which I had not much ado to counterfeit: *You perceive my Lord*, said I unto him, *that bad examples are soon followed; and that the liberty which you have taken to enter into my chamber, hath drawn in a company, which I ought not to have admitted without the commandment of the Princess.* The Princess, replied *Deliment*, *dost she dispose of all your actions? Yes*, said I unto him, *and so absolutely, as I am incapable of ever disobeying her.* So that, continued he, *if one were in love with you, must he address himself to the Princess? That he must without doubt*, answered I him roundly; *for I believe her to be so just, as she will never force me in things, whereupon depend all the felicity, or all the infelicity of my life.* We had, it may be, continued in further talk, had not one come and advertised them, that *Axiadora* was awake, and that they might see her. They left me then to go to her; howbeit Prince *Mahamed* stay'd not long in the Princesses chamber; and that he might part from thence with civility, he made as though he found himself not well upon going forth so soon after his sickness, and retired to his lodging as speedily as he could.

When he came there, he commanded *Amariel* to clear the room, and after he had assured him that they were alone, he gave him the Letter which he had taken from me, and willed him to read it. But he was strangely amazed, when as he knew by the reading of this Letter, that I had been a long time engaged in affection to some one. For, as I have told you, *Ulama* had run over welnear all that had ever passed betwixt us. He very well perceived by the stile of this Letter, that it was from a man of quality, and who feared lest the *Sophi's* love should make me change; but whereas it had no name, and that the Princess blindness did not

permit



Permit him to know *Ulama's* hand, he could not divine who it should be, and in this uncertainty he endured such pain as cannot be express'd; and said things which afterwards moved me to pity when he recounted them unto me; it being most certain, that the privation of his sight was never so sensible to him as in this occasion.

In the mean time *Amariel*, who was cunning and dextrous, judging that it much import-ed the *Sophi* to see this Letter, and fearing the Prince would keep this paper, he folded up one, that was by chance on the Table, in the same form that the other was, to the end he might change it. And truly this forecast of his was not in vain, for indeed *Mahamed*, after he had caus'd this fatal Letter to be read over again, re-demanded it of him, and getting to bed with that same paper, which *Amariel* had foysted in, by reason of a weakness where-with he was taken by the excessive agitation of his spirits, he gave that Traytor the liberty to go forth. He presently made use of the opportunity; and causing the *Sophi* to be advertis'd that he had something to say to him, he had audience instantly. He acquainted *Tachmas* with *Mahamed's* visit at my lodging; his unquietness at his return; and at last shewed him *Ulama's* Letter, which he knew as soon as he had opened it; for he had seen many of his writing, at such time as he was in War with the *Azemites*, and rendred him an account of his victories. He sent immediately then for *Deliment*, that was newly come from the Princess *Axiamira*, whom he had found yet more rebellious then she used to be. As soon as he appeared, *I will no longer seek*, said he unto him, *for that which is the cause of Felixana's rigor, and that which makes her despise my presents, my love, and even the hope of my Crown*; for it was true, that *Deliment* entertained me dayly with such like matters. *I think, my Lord*, answered *Deliment*, *how that which renders Felixana inflexible is, That the knowledge of your greatness permits her not to beleave, that you will forget it for her advantage; and the refusals which she makes, are nothing doubtless but that she may be the more strongly assured of that which she desires it may be more then you. No such matter*, replied the *Sophi*, *and this which I have here will certainly make you change your opinion*; in saying so, he shewed him *Ulama's* Letter, whereby they knew but too well the good-will that was betwixt us, and how much he was informed of that which the *Sophi* bore me. At first, all *Tachmas*'s thoughts ran into violence; he would commit me to prison; he would destroy *Ulama*; and his gentlest resolutions were at least to banish him.

But *Deliment*, who always joyned cunning to wickedness, told him, that the first thing he should do, was, to banish *Felixana* from the heart of *Ulama*, and *Ulama* from the heart of *Felixana*; that to begin by the easiest, *Ulama* was to be dextrously acquainted, that I had a particular commerce with *Mahamed*; and that to perswade him the better thereunto, he was to be shewed some of the letters which I had written to the Prince, and which they had retained; letting him know, in giving them to him, that they were the first he had received from me; that to disquiet him further, his own Letter was to be shewed him, with an assurance that I had put it into his hands, for to give him an undoubted mark of my affection; and that at the very same time, when as this trick had excited trouble in his soul, he was to be commanded to get instantly out of the Palace, and the next day from the Court, with order to retire to the Province, whereof he was Governor; to the end he might not have leisure to clear himself to me; and that beleiving he was betrayed, he might have the less care to let me hear from him. That things being in these terms, it would be the easier to vanquish me, because not knowing the occasion which *Ulama* had to be incens'd against me, I would take it ill that he did neither write to me, nor see me before his departure. That the most important point of this affair was, to be so well assured of all those which came near me, as I might receive no Letters from *Ulama*; and that in fine, the absence of a Lover was a great advantage for a Rival.

The *Sophi* found this advice to be very good, and thinking on nothing but how to execute it, they turned their eyes upon one of *Mahamed's* Officers, that had before times served *Ulama*, who had rid himself of him by reason of his bad inclinations. They caus'd him to be sought out, and having immediately found and suborned him, he without further delay (after he had been instructed by *Deliment* what to say, and had *Ulama's* Letter, and three of those which I had written to *Mahamed*, put into his hands) went directly to *Ulama*, whom I could not yet advertise of that which had past betwixt the Prince and me, because the *Sophi's* love disquieted him so much, as he could not resolve to see me, for fear of giving

too much notice of his thoughts; and therefore to keep him from it, he made as though he were exceedingly busied about the affairs of *Caramania*, where the *Sophi* intended to make some Levies: Yet heard I for all that from him every day by that faithful Slave, which he sent to you, and you have brought to me.

This Agent of the *Sophi's* found him then in such an estate as they desired for the surprizing of him; he came to him, and finding him alone, makes him a long discourse of the inclination which he had always had to his service; protesting unto him that he would never relinquish it; that he acknowledged him still for his Master, and that to render him a proof of his affection, he came, without considering Prince *Mahamed's* interests, to advertise him of a Treason which I committed against him. *Ulama* upon this occasion had a secret suspicion of this man's malice; and imagined that he was sent unto him to discover whether there were any intelligence betwixt us; so that nothing moved with this discourse, I thank thee, said he unto him, for thy zeal and affection; but know, my friend, that *Felixana* may well disoblige me, but cannot betray me, having had no commerce with her, nor having ever trusted any thing to her discretion. I perceive very well, my Lord, answered this man, that you do not trust in mine; but it may be this Letter, which I present you with, will better persuade my fidelity unto you. In saying so, he gave him that which he had written to me. You may judge now whether *Ulama* were astonished when he came to know it; Howbeit this first motion being over, he imagined further, that I peradventure might have lost it, and some one have found it. But the cunning of this man left him not long in this opinion; for seeing *Ulama* moved, and capable of being persuaded, he told him, That Prince *Mahamed* had loved me a great while, and that I also loved him; That so long as he believed, that there could no other harm arrive to him, then to be deceived by me, he durst not betray *Mahamed*; but having seen by the Letter, which he had written to me, and which, he said, I had put into the Princes hands, that he spake in such sort, as if it came to the *Sophi's* knowledge, his fortune would be utterly ruined; he was resolved to make use of the Princes blindness to draw it with address from out of his hands; and, my Lord, continued he, to shew you that I speak truth, I have taken also three of the Letters which *Felixana* hath written to the Prince in the beginning of their affection; for as for the rest, I durst not meddle with them, because as they are more obliging, so the Prince makes them to be read unto him almost daily by *Amariel*, who is the Confident of this love.

*Ulama* harkened to this discourse, looked on her Letters and his, knew the hands, and no longer doubting of my infidelity, he thanked this wicked man, and asked him an hundred questions about the love that was between the Prince and me. But the other fearing that he would demand so many things of him, as in the end he might contradict himself in some one or other, he besought him he would be pleased to let him depart, for fear lest if any of Prince *Mahamed's* Officers should see him go out of his lodging so long after he was entred in'o it, they might suspect the truth. *Ulama* deceived by this artifice, dismissed him, promised to recompence him, and prays him to continue advertising what should pass betwixt Prince *Mahamed* and me.

He was hardly out of *Ulama's* chamber, when, according to *Deliment's* advice, that old *Satrap*, whom as I have told you he had corrupted, came and commanded him from the *Sophi* to go instantly out of the Palace, and the next day to depart to his Government, until he received further order. And whereas *Ulama* importuned him to tell him, why he was entreated after that manner? The *Satrap* answered him, That the *Sophi* only knew it; and that he had charged him not to leave him till he was out of the Palace. Seeing there is nothing more resting for me, answered *Ulama*, but to give marks of my obedience, having given enough already of my fidelity and courage in other occasions, let us obey without murmuring. He had no sooner said so, but he prepared to be gone; howbeit suddenly remembering, that he left all the Letters which I had written him in his Cabinet, he went boldly thither to take them away; and without knowing whether it were out of a sense of choller or love, either to tear or preserve them, he took a little *China* coffer, wherein they were, the old *Satrap*, who walked fairly and softly before, never perceiving it.

But whilst these things passed in such sort, Prince *Mahamed*, who had layd himself on his bed by reason of a weakness wherewith he had been taken, re-assumed new forces, and calling for *Amariel*, he was told that he was gone forth, but for all that he arose, and caused himself

himself to be led by another to *Axiamira's* lodging, whom he found alone, *Ismael* and *Delimant* being gone from thence a good while before, and I was not yet come unto her: For the adventure of *Ulama's* Letter, which the Prince had snatched from me, kept me in so great an inquietness, as I knew not what resolution to take. I feared to discover my self to the Princess, doubting lest she should take it ill, that I had concealed from her the affection of the Prince, and that of *Ulama*. Neither durst I acquaint *Ulama* with that which was arrived unto me, for fear he should imagine, that without this cross adventure, I would have told him nothing of *Mahamed's* love; and I judged also that it would not be very easie for me to oblige the Prince to render me *Ulama's* Letter, whensoever I should be able to speak with him, which I saw well was at that time absolutely impossible. In this irresolution I gave the Prince leisure to visit the Princess *Axiamira*, who, as I have told you, was alone, when as he came into her chamber. At his first arrival thence, he commanded him that led him to get him forth, and after he had demanded of the Princess, whether he might speak without being heard of any but her self? and that she had answered him how he might speak safely; he requested her to pardon him two things, and to accord him one.

And when as the Princess had promised him that which he desired; *All the grace that I demand of you*, continued he, *is, That you will not think amiss of me, when I shall have told you that I have a long time loved Felixana; and the second, That you will pardon me, if the respect which I have born you hath kept me from acquainting you with it sooner. But when as you have granted me the pardon of these two things, you must also, to keep your word with me, promise not to intreat Felixana the worse for it. For though I am at this present not very well satisfied of her, and that it is rather chollier then love, which carries me to the entertaining of you upon this subject, yet I cannot resolve for all that to hurt her.* You acquaint me with so many strange things at once, said the Princess unto him, as I doubt whether I should believe them; for to tell me that you are in love with the beauty of *Felixana*, and that *Felixana*, in whom I confide in all things, should make your affection a secret unto me, is that which I cannot comprehend, and that which I shall not believe, unless you give me stronger proofs of it. *I did not say to you*, replied the Prince, *That I am in love with the beauty of Felixana, but indeed that I love Felixana; And believe, dear sister, that the beauty wherewith I am taken, though it wounds not the heart through the eyes, yet leaves not touching it very powerfully; but in conclusion I am not come hither to tell you what hath made me in love, but onely that I am so. As for Felixana, that which hath kept her, as I conceive, from speaking to you of that affection which I had for her, is, that she hath none for me. And would to heaven! cried he, That she had not concealed a thing from you, which without doubt touches her more sensibly at the heart.* Whereupon he recounted unto her the discourses which he had used to me; the answers which I had made thereunto; the letters which he had written to me, the returns I had made him; and at last acquainted her how he had snatched away a letter from me, whereat I had shewed a great deal of inquietness; and that having caused *Amariel* to read it to him, he had found it to be a Love-letter, and had thereby understood that I had been a long time engaged in affection to him that wrote it unto me, and who questionless (as might be judged by that which he said) ought to be a man of great quality; That his misfortune not permitting him to know the hand, he requested her to read it, that he might at leastwise be assured of the name of his Rival. Saying so, he presented her with that soiled paper, which *Amariel* had given him in stead of *Ulama's* letter, and the Princess having taken and opened it, without finding any thing written therein, could not chuse but sigh, and lament the misfortune of this poor Prince.

Surely, said she unto him, you have deceived your self in taking one paper for another, for I see nothing in this same. *O Sister!* said the Prince, who little suspected the wickedness that had been done him, *speak the truth; you know the hand of this letter, but out of discretion you will not tel it me, and by this adress you would draw it out of my hands.* No such matter replied the Princess, and I assure you that I have spoken seriously: *Why did you sigh then?* continued he, *in unfolding this letter?* It was, answered the Princess, because I saw it was none; and that this adventure which would have made one that had not loved you laugh, hath made me pity your misfortune; but it may be you have this paper still. *No, no*, said he, *for it was made up in such an extraordinary fashion, as made me know it, and quite different from Felixana's letters which I have also brought you, and from which I never parted since I received*



ved them. The Princess, impatient to see what I had written to the Prince, took one of the letters which he presented to her, and having read it, was as much surpris'd as before.

I think you well remember, generous Ibrahim, that all the letters which I had written to Mahamed were in the *Sophi's* hands, and that those which Amariel had given to the Prince had been all dictated by *Deliment*, and written with an unknown hand. So that whereas the Princess knew perfectly my hand, I cannot tell, said she to Mahamed, whether you will believe that which I am going to say to you; but I am assured that Felixana never wrote the letters which you have shewed me. Certainly, answered the Prince, if I could doubt of your love, I should not believe that which you tell me; but, my dear sister, if I durst I would intreat you to read them aloud, that I may know whither by any enchantment the sence hath been altered as well as the hand, which Amariel hath always assured me was Felixana's. The Princess, to satisfy him, read two of those letters, which the Prince acknowledged to be the same he had heard before. I should believe, said the Princess then to him, that Felixana knowing you could not see but with the eyes of another, hath counterfeited her hand, or it may be hath caus'd these letters to be written with an unknown one, for fear lest some of them should be seen, or lost; but that which persuades me there is something in the matter which we cannot comprehend, is, That they are nothing like to Felixana's stile, which I know very well; for I saw almost every letter that she sent to Mazanderon when as she wrote to her Father. I cannot for all that comprehend, replied the Prince, what trick there should be in this; for surely Amariel is faithful to me, and yet the letters which I have shewed you are not so obliging as Felixana's discourse used to be, when I entertain'd her. At length after they had reason'd well together about it, without being able to comprehend ought therein, and had sent a faithful person to the Princes chamber to search for Ulama's letter, they resolv'd to send for me, at that very time when as having striven to banish shame and fear from my minde, I had resolv'd to go and cast my self at the Princesses feet, and to rely more upon her affection then on mine own innocence. I arriv'd then at her chamber just as she commanded one to go for me; which I had no sooner heard, as I was coming in, but seeing the Prince with her, and a many of Letters on the Table, with a paper made up in the same manner as Ulama's was, which the Prince had taken from me, I no longer doubted but that the Princess knew the truth of every thing, for I could not be ignorant that she was well acquainted with Ulama's hand; So that falling on my knees before her, I perceive very well, Madam, said I unto her, that all my faults are known to you, and that coming with a purpose to accuse my self, there is nothing more left for me to do, then to beg your pardon for them, after I had try'd nevertheless to render them more excusable then the incens'd spirit of Prince Mahamed would make them appear to you. Complain not of the Prince, answered Axiamira, since if he be culpable of any thing, it is of being too little sensible of your fault; which yet I ought not to condemn in him, since notwithstanding the injury you have done me, I have indulgence enough still to hear your reasons, or rather your excuses. After I had thanked the Princess for this grace, I began to recount unto her all that had past betwixt Ulama and me; for whereas I believed that I saw his Letter lie by the Princess, and that I was sure she knew his character, I disguis'd nothing unto her: But for so much as regarded the Prince, I could not tell very well how to speak of it; for not knowing what he had said to Axiamira, I feared to displease him, if I should deliver things as they had past. Howbeit the Princess, having mark'd my uneasiness; Fear not, said she, to speak of the affection which my brother bears you, seeing I am not ignorant of any one circumstance of it: Nevertheless, to justify the relation which he hath, and which you have also made to me of it, I will know it from your mouth too.

Whereupon I recounted all that I have said to you concerning it; his discourses, his letters, and that of Ulama, but with so much sincerity, as it serv'd not a little to persuade the Princess that I had done the like for so much as regarded Ulama, as indeed I did not disguise the truth unto her. But why, said she to me, when as Ulama testifi'd his love to you, and that you disliked not the marks he gave to you thereof, did not you advertise me of it? And why, being engag'd in affection to Ulama, did you in an sort suffer that of the Prince? And why did you not at least-wise let me understand it? Madam, said I unto her, if you please to hear me, it may be you will finde, that though I be not innocent, yet I am not very faulty. When as Ulama began to be in love with you, I took no great heed of it; and when as I perceived

perceived it, I regarded it not much; but as soon as I began to take pleasure in his discretion, to consider his virtue, and his generosity, coming to reflect on the thoughts which I had for him, I found that he had too much engaged my heart; and I was in such a confusion at it, as I could never resolve to discover my weakness unto you. But, Madam, shall I dare to make you a complice in it? and tell you, that nothing ever rendred *Ulama* more amiable unto me, then the esteem that you made of him, and the passion he was in for your service. Yes, Madam, I am daring enough for it, as also to tell you further, that finding my self every day more and more faulty, by the encrease of the good-will I bare to *Ulama*, and by making a secret of it to you, I could never obtain so much resolution of my self as to speak to you of it; especially in a time, when as the bad designs of the *Sophi*, and the insolence of *Deliment* troubled your minde so much. For, Madam, think not, I beseech you, that my silence hath been a mark of my crime, seeing whatsoever obligation I had to *Ulama*, the respect which I owe to you hath been always preserved; and I never promised *Ulama* to be his wife, but upon condition that it should be agreeable to you. This is a thing which I will make apparant to you by his Letters, and which he can shew you by mine. For what concerns the Prince, I will acknowledg to you, that honoring him as I do, after those testimonies of affection which he hath done me the honor to render me, and which I have not received but with respect, I thought I should have committed a fault against you, and been ingrateful to him, if I should have acquainted you, that this Prince, whom you esteem of with so much reason, had had a passion unworthy of him. I was unwilling then that you should be able to accuse the Prince for the same thing, which you condemned in the *Sophi*, nor would I have had him lose your love for his favor to me. And to testifie to you how I have thought of his Interests, I would not even let *Ulama* know the Princes good-will to me, for fear lest jealousy, which always chafeth reason from them whom she seizes upon, should carry *Ulama* to be the less affectionate to the Prince, whose affection I have not received with so much correspondence, as that he might expect the like from me. And if you please, Madam, to examine the Letters well, which I have written to him, you shall finde that I received the marks of his passion, as testimonies of his friendship, and not as protestations of his love.

The Princess then taking one of the Letters that was on the Table, opened, and began to read it; but hearing things which I never wrote: *Oh, Madam*, said I unto her, *I have not written that which you read*. You have not written it, said the Prince! *No, my Lord*, continued I, *and I am well assured that my memory doth not deceive me*. It may be, said the Princess to me, *that your Secretary hath not followed your intentions right*. I had no Secretary, said I to her mightily surprized; and whereas the Letters, which I wrote to the Prince, had nothing in them that I might be afraid they should be seen, I always wrote them with mine own hand. The Princess knowing by my face that I spake sincerely, gave me the Letter that she held, which I presently saw to be none of mine, whereat the Princess was not a little disquieted. *Without all doubt*, said she to the Prince, *Amariel hath betrayed you, and Ulama's Letter is in our enemies hands*. *Ulama's Letter*, said I unto her! *and do I not see it amongst those that lie there by you?* *No truly do you not*, answered *Axiamira*; and then she told me, how it had been exceedingly sought for, but could not be found.

Hereupon I fell a crying and lamenting: *Ah! Madam*, said I unto her, *if the Sophi knows that Ulama loves me, what usage, do you think, will he receive for it?* consider, Madam, that he is the onely man that can oppose *Deliment's* violences; and it may be that he is the onely one that hath kept him hitherto from coming with open force, both against you, and against me. The Prince, perceiving the affliction wherein I was, and remembering how he had understood by my relation, that I was engaged in affection to *Ulama* before he had discovered his to me, suffered his minde to be touched with that which he bare to *Ulama*, with the complaints I made, or to say better, with his own generosity. *Be assured*, said he unto me, *amiable Felixana*, reaching out his hand to that side where he heard me speak, *that if I have troubled the peace of your affection, by that which I have born to you, I will henceforward be the protector of it; and provided that you will here in the presence of the Princess promise me your friendship, and will conserve me that also of Ulama, I do engage my self to follow your fortune, and to employ all that an unhappy Prince can do, to restore you to that content which I have taken from you*. As we were at this point, one came and told the Princess, that a Slave of *Ulama's* earnestly desired to speak with her; I changed colour

colour at this discourse, but presently after I was too certain of my unhappiness. For the Slave, whom *Ulama* hath sent to you, presented a Note to the Princess, wherein, a little after, she read that which you are going to hear: For whereas it was not long, and that we have read it over often enough, it hath always continued in my memory.

*ULAMA'S Note to the Princess AXIAMIRA.*

**I**F I did not know that in banishing me from the Court, you are deprived of the most faithful and most zealous of your servants, I should obey without murmuring, and I should absent myself with joy from a place, where virtue is not found but in the Princess *Axiamera*, who, whithersoever fortune doth carry me, may always dispose absolutely of me.

There is no longer doubt to be made of it, said the Princess, after she had read this Note, but that *Ulama's* Letter is in the *Sophi's* hands; and this banishment is an effect of his jealousy. To tell you, my Lord, in what a case I was in, hearing by the Note to the Princess, that *Ulama* made no exception but of her alone, would be an impossible thing, as well as to recount unto you that which I said in this occasion; the lamentation that Prince *Mahamed* made; the pardons that he begged of me; and the sorrow *Axiamera* was in, to see herself deprived of the only man, in whom she confided; and withall, it would be too long, and too wearisome a discourse; but in fine, the Princess, having caused that Slave to relate unto her in what manner *Ulama* went out of the Palace, told him, *That if he had any thing to say to me from his Master, he might do it without fear*; and I having confirmed that which the Princess said to him, he gave me a Note, which I shall never forget, and whose very words were these.

*ULAMA'S Note to FELIXANA.*

**I**F you had not betrayed me, I should have dyed with grief, rather than have absented myself from you; but after your infidelity, my banishment is a grace; since I quitted not *Felixana*, till *Felixana* abandoned me. I cannot for all that resolve to part, without telling her once for all, that I part the most unfortunate of all men living; and that if the end of my life may assure her felicity, she shall soon be in the estate that I desire her to be in.

The end of the reading hereof was to me the beginning of the sharpest grief that ever I felt: And the alone thought of being believed unfaithful by a man, for whom I refused the Crown of *Persia*, was so strange a torment to me, as my reason is not strong enough to retain the resentment which I had of it. What! Madam, said I to the Princess, can you live in a place where such wickednesses are committed? and against persons that appertain to you? Was it not enough to banish *Ulama*, without perswading him by some imposture, which is unknown to me, that I had betrayed him? and it may be it is I which causes him to be banished. This artifice doubtless hides some greater design, then the separating of us; and I greatly fear that this violence will quickly be followed by another; and that after they have taken from you the only defender which you had here, you will know by your experience, that you have as much interest, as *Felixana*, in the conservation of *Ulama*. For surely *Deliment* thinks not so much of contenting the *Sophi's* passion, as of satisfying that which he hath for you: And this insolent regards you without doubt, as a reward that was destined to him for the conquest which he pretends to make of me; but I am right certain that death shall deny me her succor, or he shall never triumph in this sort. The Princess seeing a great deal of probability in that which I said, could not chuse but accompany my tears with hers; and *Mahamed* was so afflicted, as athwart my sorrow I saw his resentment.

But at last, for the better clearing of the matter, it was demanded of that Slave, what *Ulama* had done all the day, and what he had seen? Then he related, how one of Prince *Mahamed's* Officers came unto him; had talked with him in secret, and given him some letters, which very much afflicted him; and that immediately after he had received the commandment to be gone. But in what place is *Ulama* at this present, said the Princess? Madam,



Madam, answered the Slave, as soon as he had written, at one of his friends house, the two Notes, which I have brought, he presently took horse, and departed, after he had commanded me to meet him this night at a place where he is to lie. *This man, said the Prince, must not be retained any longer, for fear lest Ulama's melancholly should make him change his resolution.* This advice seeming good, the Princess commanded me to go and write to him in her Cabinet, as she also would do; and whereas I looked upon her, scarce daring to tell her my thought; *I understand you well enough,* said she unto me, *you would have me justify you to Ulama: and I, said Mahamed interrupting her, would have Felixana excuse me to him.*

In conclusion, generous Ibrahim, the Princess wrote to Ulama, and so did I, but with so many protestations of mine innocency, as if for that once his minde was not fully satisfied, yet was it at the least more quiet, and his despair was turned into a more moderate affliction. Mahamed also would gladly have been able himself to have sent some marks of his friendship to Ulama, but he was fain to assure him by the hand of the Princess, that he would always be his friend, without ever being his Rival again. These Letters being written, the fear lest they should be intercepted came into my minde; so that to prevent it, the Princess sent for an old Slave, whom she had proved to be very faithful, and having given them to him, she commanded him to attend that of Ulama at that gate of the City where he was to pass, and there to deliver them to him in such sort, as no body might perceive it. This providence was not in vain, for this Slave of Ulama's was no sooner come forth of the Princesses lodging, but he was arrested by Deliment's order, and asked for the Letters which he carryed to Ulama; but knowing very well that he had none, he answered without daunting, how he was ready to make it appear that they were mistaken; and said further, that his Master having had no time to take his leave of the Princesses, and none of his servants being with him but he, he had sent him with a complement to them; and whereas he was hard by Perca's lodging, he would have gone in there, to give the more colour to this officious lye; howbeit they would not permit him till they had thoroughly searched him all over, to see if he had spoken the truth: And when they found that he had not that which they thought he had had, they let him go, and so he finished his voyage, after he had taken our Letters from him to whom we had committed them.

As for us, seeing the matter in these terms, we resolved that the Princess should assure herself of them, whom she beleaved were faithful unto her, by new protestations of the affection they had promised her. That I should write secretly to my Father, to the end that if we were enforced to have recourse to extreame remedies, and that flight was the onely one that rested for us, Mazanderon might be in an estate to receive us. That in the mean time, to prevent the Sophi, before he had taken his last resolutions, we should publish the business, complain to all the world of Deliment's insolency; and that the next morning she should go and request the Sophi to forbid him from ever seeing her again; because it might be, that he durst not so easily then propound a thing to her, whereunto she shewed her self so averse, as when disguising her thoughts in the manner she had always done, he might seem to be ignorant that she had so much repugnancy unto it. That to perplex him so much the more, she should send to entreat five or six persons, that were well affected to her, to be present at the Sophi's rising the next day; and that afterwards we should frame our designs according to the answer he should make. That Mahamed should by his Governors means do what he could to cause Amariel to be taken; that for so much as regarded me I should by no means be absent from the Princess, and that for fear of some violence I should lie in her chamber in the place of her that always waited upon her there. This resolution was executed, as we had conceived it; the Princesses friends were advertised, and repaired to the Sophi at the hour assigned them.

When the Princess came thither, Deliment was not present, for by good fortune our design had not been discovered: The Princess was followed by all her maidens, and whereas it was indifferent early, and that she seemed to be extreame sad, the Sophi beleaved that she was come to beg Ulama's grace of him; so that to prevent her; *I perceive very well,* said he unto her looking on me, *that the tears of some one oblige you to visit me so early, and that Ulama's absence is that which brings you hither; but that I may not be constrained to refuse you, I command you not to speak to me of it.* The Princess without daunting told him, *That*

though the banishment of Ulama had both surprized and afflicted her, because she believed him to be the most affected of all his subjects to the good of his Empire, yet the respect which she bare him would never permit her to murmur at it: And to tell you what hath brought me hither, continued she, with both a modest and an hardy countenance, it is not to obtain a grace, but to complain of an outrage which I have received, and for which I come to demand justice of you, in the presence of those that hear me; for since I hold the publishing of a crime to be the beginning of punishing it, I would that all your subjects were witnesses of the accusation I am going to make. The Sophi was so surprized with this discourse, that in the confusion he was he never dream'd of Deliment; so that after he had assured her, that he would protect her against all that would wrong her, she proceeded with more assurance then before. I have ever believed, my Lord, said she unto him, that having the honor to be your daughter, you would take my interests for your own; and therefore I do not fear to tell you that a man whose birth is base, whose minde is full of artifice, whose bad inclinations are disguised to your Majesty, and that hath nothing recommendable but the happiness to please you, because he conceals all his defects from you; hath had the temerity to pretend to marry me, and to speak openly to me of love: And though I have forbidden him with all the severity whereof I am capable, yet when he saw that my respect to you kept me from complaining to you of a man whom you love, he hath continued with so much insolency, that I was not able to suffer it any longer; for, my Lord, having the honor to be your daughter, I should be unworthy to bear that glorious name, if I could endure, that a man, who without your bounty might without shame be my slave, should be so audacious as to tell me that he will be my husband. Pardon me, my Lord, if I am carryed this way in this occasion, since this rash man by his insolency affronts you no less then me; and your interest is no less considerable to me then mine own. Howbeit I do not desire that you should deprive your self of his presence, if it be agreeable unto you, but onely that you will forbid Deliment from ever seeing or speaking to me more. Behold welnigh after what manner the Princess spake; who, to keep the Sophi from interrupting her, had so much address, as not to name Deliment, but at the end of her discourse, which strangely surprized the Sophi.

Now though he was very much in choller, and that he had resolved to make this marriage, yet durst he not before so much company tell her openly what his minde was: But to disguise the matter; I see well enough, Axiamira, said he unto her, that Deliment's greatest crime is your believing him to be an enemy to Ulama; howsoever since you have recourse to my justice, I will neither condemn nor absolve him, till I have heard his reasons, which peradventure will not be so weak as you think: In the mean time be assured, that Deliment shall not say any thing to you henceforward, but by order from me. The Princess would fain have replied, but the Sophi made her a sign to withdraw, which she did with a great deal of respect; leaving the Sophi very much displeased, and all them that had heard her ravished with her generosity, and extremely wondering at Deliment's insolency, and the little resentment which the Sophi had shewed. At our going from thence we met with Ismael, followed by Deliment, who, knowing nothing of what the Princess had done, would have obliged the Prince to conduct her to her lodging: But Axiamira beholding him with contempt, said unto him with an incensed voyce; I forbid thee from the Sophi to follow or to speak to me; and if thou wilt know the cause of it, repair to him, and thou shalt learn that at last my patience hath given place to my generosity; and that I am declared thy most mortal enemy. Deliment, surprized with a discourse which he expected not, could scarce tell what to answer; and we left him so blank, as he remained a good while in the place without knowing what to do.

But at length, having left Ismael, he went unto the Sophi, who gave him an account of Axiamira's visit, after he had commanded all those forth whom he suspected. Deliment saw then that it was time for him to employ all his address; and to that effect, he cast himself at the Sophi's feet, beseeches him to remember, how it was by his command that he had declared to the Princess the love which he bare her; that had it not been for him, he would rather have dyed, then ever have made any shew of it; but after he had been the author of his hopes, had augmented his love, and had promised to render it happy, he should rather take away his life, then take from him the onely thing that could make it agreeable to him, and without which he would not conserve it. The Sophi, who loved Deliment, seeing him in this estate, raises him up, assures him that he will vanquish the pride of Axiamira, and how in  
this

this occasion he shall see, that after he hath delt as a Father, he will command as a King, and as a King that will be obeyed. But, added he (as we understood afterwards by one of those that always waited at the Cabinet door, and who from that time forward gave himself absolutely to the Princess) the possession of Felixana, my dear Deliment, must give thee that of Axiamira; Haste thee away then to make profit of Ulama's absence, that it may be favorable to me; for if it were possible I would have her yeeld her self to me, and not be constrained to have recourse unto violence. My Lord, answered this wicked man, there are certain violences, which have but the name and apparances thereof; and when I reflect on that which regards Felixana, it seems to me that the force one should offer her would be of that number. It is true that she hath loved Ulama, yet I cannot think but that the hope of a crown hath diminished that affection. We have indeed seen the letter which he wrote to her, but we know not the answer to it. Besides, Felixana stands upon her generosity, and because she hath promised Ulama to be absolutely his, she is capable of resisting your Majesty still, though it may be she would be glad in her heart that she might be constrained to fail of her word, to the end she might have a lawful excuse. For so much as concerns your subjects, they could not accuse you of tyranny, since he is no Tyrant that uses no violence, but to render one happy; that forces not the Will, but for anothers good; that employs not his power, but for the felicity of him which proves it; and that in conclusion seeks his own contentment, without the oppression of his people, and without doing wrong or shame to any body. For, my Lord, to say that Felixana is of a birth too unequal to yours, for her to wear the Crown, is to give too strict bounds unto the Royal Authority. Felixana is noble to satisfy that unjust Law, which will have it so, but if she were not, that is not to be stood upon, seeing the power of Kings never shows more, then when it abases the highest, and raises up the most abased. And it is indeed in these encounters, that they may be named the arbitrators of the unhappiness, or of the felicity of their subjects. After such like discourses, the Sophi seemed to resolve to follow Deliment's advice; but nevertheless before he would execute it, he concluded to speak openly to the Princess Axiamira touching her marriage; Whereupon if she resolved not to obey him, they would then have recourse unto force, and constrain her whether she would or no, to that she was founwilling.

I have already told you, illustrious Bassa, how he who waited that day at the Sophi's Cabinet door, over-heard all that I have recounted unto you; for the passion, wherewith Deliment was carried away, permitted him not to have so much prudence as to speak low; neither did the Sophi's love and choller leave him the like providence. This man having heard all these things, felt himself so touched with the mischiets they were preparing for us, as he resolved to advertise us of it. It is true indeed, that his generosity was in this occasion excited by a particular hatred which he bare Deliment, who had many times opposed the advancement of his fortune. At length this man came in the Evening to advertise us of all these things; after which we also learned that which had past in the trick that Amariel had put upon us. For Prince Mahamed had caused his ancient Governor so to deal, as he had layd hold on the Traytor Amariel, who out of the same weakness wherewith he had betrayed his Master, recounted unto us how Deliment had corrupted him; and how he had carryed all my letters to the Sophi, who had always caused others to be written for to be sent to Mahamed; from whom likewise they had retained all those which he had made to be written to me, to give me counterfeit ones in stead of them. That afterwards he had carryed Ulama's Letter, which he had snatched from me, to the Sophi; who by Deliment's counsel had caused it to fall into Ulama's hands, with three others of those which I had effectivly written to the Prince. We knew then that Evening all the hurt that they had done us, and all that which they would do us; whereupon we promised to pardon the Traytor, and to recompence him that was faithful unto us, dismissing them both, with direction to either of them to be vigilant for the good of the Princess. After these sad news our tears redoubled far more then before. The Princess would dye, I was fully resolved to follow her, Mahamed was mad because he could not assist us; and in so great a trouble we lamented our misfortunes, without knowing how to avoyd them. But in the end the Princes ancient Governor, whom we had acquainted with the deplorable estate of our affairs, told the Princess, that in the terms wherein he saw things were, he did not think it fit for us directly to oppose the Sophi's pleasure; That love, ambition, and choller, were passions too violent, for one to hope to van-



quish them only by greatness of courage; that the greatest wisdom counselled, when one cannot decline a mischief, to endeavor at least-wise to put it off from us for some time, because in the greatest matters, one day deferred, may cause revolutions which could not be expected; that death was not a remedy but for evils, which had no other then that; that there were certain dangerous moments, which if by prudence avoyded, our enemies can no longer execute their bad designs; that they were to give the *Sopbi* leisure to reflect on that which he was going to undertake; and to that end, when as he should come to speak to the Princess, she should have recourse to tears and to prayers, rather then to reason, which he would not understand: That if they should not be strong enough to divert him from his designs, as it was very likely they would not, she should then request him to afford her some time to resolve to obey him. And to the end she might not by her sadness give him new occasions of displeasure, she should demand permission of him to absent her self from the Court for certain months, with a promise no longer to resist his pleasure when she returned thither again; that in the mean time it might happen, that the *Sopbi* might repent him; that the love which he bore me might be altered, or allayed by absence; but, continued he, the principal is, That *Felixana* do not remain here. *I know full well*, answered I, *that I will never abandon the Princess but to dye. And for my part*, said the Princess, *I know full well that Felixana shall not dye without me, and that I will never abandon her to the violences of my father.*

In conclusion, generous *Ibrahim*, without rehearsing this sad conversation to you, it was resolved, that if the King should accord *Axiomira* that which she was to demand of him, and yet would retain me, I should then desire him, with all the shew of sorrow and tenderness I could possibly express, to permit me to follow the Princess; it being credible that the *Sopbi* would not refuse me the first thing I should crave of him; especially not mentioning at all my opposing of his pleasure. It was not because the Princesses great heart did not resist the following this counsel, but because she being unable to finde out any other, was forced to consent unto it. The next day the *Sopbi* came to the Princess, where after he had amplified the merit, the virtue, and the courage of *Delimont*, he told her that she was not to take it ill, if he had had the boldness to speak to her of love, seeing he had not done it but by his order; because, having resolved to marry her to him, he would have been glad that he should have got her good-will. *My Lord*, answered the Princess, with a feigned amazement, *if I had known that the boldness, which Delimont hath used in speaking to me, had been an effect of his obedience to you, I had received him in another manner, I had not termed him audacious, I had been contented with complaining, and not accusing of him, and had cast my self at your feet to cause you to change a design, whereunto I have such an aversion, as I cannot think of it without grief.* The *Sopbi* seeing some change, as it seemed to him, of the Princesses minde, was extream glad of it; and though he saw she did not render her self, he beleaved nevertheless, since she came to entreaties, that with some patience he might vanquish her. This hope was that which induced him the more easily to grant her the request she made him, to give her time to resolve upon it. And truly he had been the cruellest of all men, if he had not let himself be moved with the reasons, complaints, supplications, and tears of the most amiable Princess that ever was. But when he had permitted her to go to *Mazanderon*, which she had proponded unto him for the passing away of the time of her exile, as in a place where she had been before times for her pleasure, he told her that she was to leave me behinde with the Princess *Perca*, to the end the Court might not be desolated, and for fear also lest my father having me in his power, should not restore me unto her when she returned. I was in a corner of the chamber, where I understood all that they said; but when I heard this proposition, without thinking of the respect which I owed the *Sopbi*, I interrupting him, cast my self at his feet, and I said so many things, I shed so many tears, and answered him so favorably to certain questions that he asked of me, and which concerned the design he had upon me, as at length I found, that the tears of a beloved person are very powerful arms; seeing the *Sopbi* granted me that which I demanded of him, though it were absolutely against his minde. But that *Delimont* might not have leisure to get the permission which had been given us to be revoked, we parted away the next morning; yet was it not without dispatching an express to *Ulama*, who advertised him of all the slights that had been used against us; of the resolution we had taken; of the place whither we were going; and of all our affairs. We left Prince *Mahamed* so afflicted, as I never beheld the like grief. As for *Perca*, she

she seemed to be so too, but indeed she was not sorry to see us go; for though she was willing that *Deliment* should marry *Axiamira*, yet did she not much desire that I should be the *Sophi's* wife. As for *Deliment*, it is certain that the permission which the *Sophi* had given us no whit pleased him; but to be secured in some sort, as he is the cunningest man in the world, he did that which you shall hear, and which extremely surprized us: for when we arrived at *Mazanderon*, we found that my father was gone from thence to the Court by the commandment of the *Sophi*, from whom he had received express order to repair thither with all speed; and that by the counsel of *Deliment*, who as soon as he knew that we were gone to *Mazanderon*, perswaded the *Sophi* to send for my father, before we should be arrived there; and to ordain him to come another way, for fear of meeting us; to the end, said he to the *Sophi*, that *Felixana*, knowing her father in your hands, may not carry the Princess to disobey you, nor her self to resist you, as hitherto she hath done. I leave you to judge whether this adventure did not give us inquietness enough, especially to me. What I said I, must I betray *Ulama*, or abandon my father to the *Sophi's* violence? Ah, no! I had rather dye; and not able to satisfy both my duty, and my love to *Ulama*, I will dye that I may not be wanting either to the one or the other. But at length we understood by a Letter, which Prince *Mahamed* caused his sage Governor to write unto us, and by one that my Father sent me, how the *Sophi* entreated him very well, and made him hope for great things.

The first sense of grief then being over, we began to breathe, and take some rest; But alas! how soon was this rest thwarted? and what a strange remedy did Fortune make use of, to deliver us both from the *Sophi's* tyranny, and *Deliment's* violence! The Princess, to be free from the importunity which she received by the visits of three or four women of quality, which came too often unto her, had for a good while together accustomed to go a fishing; for, as I have told you, *Mazanderon* is on the Sea-shore: At the same time there arrived in that Port a Vessel laden with the rarest things that come to us from *Europe*; but alas! we knew not that he, who seemed not to come but to traffique, should be our ravisher, and the cause of our greatest misfortunes. *Felixana* making a little pause for to sigh, *Ibrahim*, who was as well acquainted with *Russians* artifice as she; *I can*, said he unto her, fair *Felixana*, spare you the pains of recounting unto me, how that Merchant going to the Castle to shew the Princess some Pictures, and Mirrors, saw you, and knew that it was not you he was to carry away by force; and having conferred the picture, which had been given him, believing it to be yours, because he that had sold it, had assured so much; having, I say, conferred it with the Princess *Axiamira*, he found that she was the original of it; and how at length having made a shew of being gone, he one day, as you were taking the ayr on the sea, boarded the Princess's Vessel, carryed you into his, and labored to win her, by perswading her that she would be happy to be in the power of *Soliman*: in fine, beautiful *Felixana*, I know all that hath arrived unto you until your shipwreck; but I confess unto you that I am altogether ignorant by what prodigy you escaped out of it. *Felixana* was going to proceed on in her discourse, but *Ibrahim*, seeing it was very late, and conceiving that this history would be long, told her, that how impatient soever he was to hear it, yet good manners was stronger in him then curiosity; and that it being unjust to deprive the Princess *Axiamira* of a person, that was so agreeable and so necessary to her, he thought it fit she should repair unto her. How in the mean time, that he might not be kept too long from understanding the rest of her adventures, he would stay and lodg all night there in the Castle of the seven Towers, to the end he might the next day also learn of her what was requisite for him to know for the Princess's service. *Felixana* answered him, that she would do whatsoever he pleased; and since he had the goodness to permit her to go and see how the Princess did, she pray'd him that it might be immediately. *Ibrahim* requested her to assure her of the desire and resolution he had to serve her. And as she was going away, he told her further, that she might take *Ulama's* Slave along with her, because he had something to say to the Princess, who it might be would be glad to hear from his mouth the marvellous Exploits of his Master. *Felixana* thanked him also for this favor, and went away to *Axiamira's* lodgings. As for *Ibrahim*, he dispatched the Governor of the Castle of the seven Towers to the *Bassa* of the Sea, about an affair that concerned the State; and after he had instructed him, he told him smiling, how for that night he would be responsible to him for the place. This man went presently away, and *Ibrahim* was conducted to the fairest lodging of the Castle, where he

past away the Evening, and all the night, in thinking of his own misfortunes: And though, to comfort himself, he compared them with those of others, yet found he that his own were far the greater. In the mean time *Felixana* was no sooner come to *Axiamira*, but she told her so many things to the advantage of our illustrious *Bassa*, as she was not a little impatient to see him. But after she had given her an account of their conversation, she caused *Ulama's* Slave to be called in, who casting himself at the Princesses feet, delivered her a Letter from his Master. Ah! *Felixana*, said *Axiamira*, wherefore have you surprized me? and wherefore have you any whit deferred the pleasure I should receive in knowing that *Ulama* thinks yet of me? Saying so, she opened *Ulama's* Letter, which she found to be thus.

*ULAMA'S Letter to the Princess of PERSIA.*

**I**F I did not well know, that to be an enemy to *Deliment*, were to be the servant to the Princess *Axiamira*, I should not be so bold as to write unto her, after I have dared to bear arms against the *Sophi* her father. But knowing that I did not take them up, but to deliver, or revenge her, methinks I may hope, that she will not take it ill, if I endeavor to serve her, and employ the blood, which I have shed in the service of a foreign Prince, to procure her liberty. If I obtain this grace, I shall still arrive at the end, which I propound unto my self; being no other then to hazard my life for a testimony, that I am unto her the most affectionate of all the *Sophi's* subjects, and the most obedient of her servants.

U L A M A.

I make no doubt of it, said the Princess, after she had read this Letter; but, continued she, speaking to the Slave, who had delivered it unto her, Wilt thou not tell me what *Ulama's* adventures have been? I have order, Madam, replied he, to obey you in all things, and so much the rather in this same, because I have an express command to give an account thereof to *Felixana*. *Halima* seeing the Slave preparing himself to content the curiosity of *Axiamira*, desired her to defer this relation till she had eaten something, which she consented unto at the entreaty of this woman, who redoubled the care she had of this wise Princess after she knew that the grand Visier was interessed therein. *Axiamira's* repast was not long, and *Felixana's* impatience exciting hers, the Slave began his discourse in this sort, but it was after the Princess had caused *Halima* and *Felixana* to sit down on cushions by her beds side.

*The History of ULAMA.*

**I** Will not stand, Madam, to rehearse unto you the transports of joy which I observed in *Ulama*, when as by your and *Felixana's* Letters he understood, that she was not faulty; since not doubting of his affection, you cannot doubt of his resentment of it. But indeed I will tell you, how after that first motion of joy was over, it was no little uneasiness to him to abandon you in a time, when he foresaw you would have need of his assistance. Howbeit he beleaved that it was best in this occasion to obey the *Sophi's* pleasure, seeing it would have been utterly to take away the means from him of serving you, if he should have rendered himself culpable, by not submitting to his commands; resolving howsoever to kill *Deliment*, if the matter should grow desperate, rather then suffer any outrage to be done to you. In this design he went to his Government, where, as you know, you a little while after fully acquainted him with all the tricks that had been put upon you; and of the resolution you had taken to go to *Mazanderon*. This mark of your generosity, and *Felixana's* constancy, gave him both at once a great deal of grief, and a great deal of satisfaction. He was afflicted to understand the persecution which you endured, yet he could not chuse but be exceeding glad to know by this noble example, that the Crown of *Persia* was not so considerable with *Felixana* as his affection. Now he had not had leisure enough to think of what he was to do, when as he received an express command to repair to the *Sophi* with all possible speed, upon pain of being declared guilty of high Treason. This extraordinary proceeding surprized him; for he knew not then, as afterwards he did by one of *Deliment's* Confidants, whom he took prisoner hard by *Tauris*, that as soon as you were gone to *Mazanderon*, and that *Felixana's* Father was come to the *Sophi*, he would withall not onely secure the person of *Ulama*, but



but utterly ruine him; for fear, lest coming to know that you were at *Mazanderon*, he should go thither to you, and be carryed to some extream resolution. And for that effect, he had disposed the *Sophi's* minde to commit *Ulama* to prison if he came to the Court; and consequently to arraign him, upon pretext of some disorder done by certain Troops (which before times had served under *Ulama*) at such time as they understood that he was commanded from the Court; representing to the *Sophi*, that as long as *Ulama* lived he should never be at quiet. *Deliment* was not for all that so assured of the *Sophi's* minde, but that he doubted *Ulama's* return might change the face of things: For he was not ignorant how the *Sophi* had loved him very much, and was obliged to him for more then one victory. He knew likewise that my Masters party was not so weak at Court, but that if it came to extream violence, it might peradventure cause a general revolution of the *State*, which would not be advantageous to him: So that to provide for all the misfortunes, which might arrive unto him, he had recourse to artifice. And to that purpose, just at the time when as the *Sophi* commanded *Ulama* to repair unto him, *Deliment* made him be several ways advertised of the bad designs, which were upon his life, and carryed the matter so dextrously, as the faithfullest of my Masters friends served to the wickedness of this man; who in stead of keeping the design of ruining *Ulama* very secret, caused it to be bruited with address abroad, two days before he, who was to carry the commandment to *Ulama*, set forth towards him: So that when he came to *Ulama*, he had already received advice from many not to come to the Court. Even *Mahamed* himself had caused him to be written unto about it, but with so many circumstances, as made him see his undoubted ruine, if he obeyed; in so much as it was impossible for him to suspect, that there was any artifice in all these things. Some counselled him to seek out a place of retreat amongst strangers; promising to labor the justifying of his flight whilst he was absent. Others would have had him fortifie himself in his Government. But none advised him to trust to his innocency. I leave you to think, Madam, whether *Deliment's* wickedness could have had a more favorable success? and whether all these things were not capable of bringing to pass the design which he had, so to order the matter, that *Ulama* should not onely not repair to the *Sophi*, but should also render himself effectively culpable in the eyes of all the world, who after this would not be so forward in undertaking his interests.

*Ulama* in this cross conjuncture knew not what resolution to take: for if, on the one side, he considered the peril whereunto he should be exposed, by going to put himself into his enemies hands; if he thought, I say, that you not being at Court, his party would thereby be the weaker, and *Deliment's* the stronger; on the other side he saw, that in not obeying he left his Enemy Master of the Field; that he furnished him with Arms to destroy him; that he should behave himself as if he were guilty; and to say all, that he should abandon you, and quit *Felixana*. This last thought made him resolve to go courageously to the Court; howbeit he was kept from parting so soon, by a sickness wherewith he was taken: but at length finding himself better, he set forth on his way, with a purpose to oppose *Deliment's* malice as much as he could, and to forget nothing that might conduce thereunto. But scarcely had we made two days journey (for as you know, Madam, I have never abandoned him) when as we encountred one of his dearest friends, who came in all haste to acquaint him, that all the Court was filled with the news of your loss, and *Felixana's*. That in the Royal House it was said, how going a fishing you were cast away; but that such, as looked farther into matters, believed that your loss was a meer supposition; and that without doubt you were kept shut up in some part. That it was an effect of the *Sophi's* passion, and of *Deliment's* violence; that in the fashion as the matter was carryed, there was no remedy to be sought for it; that going to the Court, he should sacrifice himself unprofitably for you, and much to the advantage of *Deliment*; and that in conclusion, the best he could do was to seek a sanctuary with some Prince, mighty enough to defend him, and just enough to acknowledg his merit. Just, Madam, in what manner my dear Master received this deadly news, and how much he resented an adventure, whereby he for ever lost the hope of seeing you again; and whereby he saw *Felixana* in the possession of another. His grief was so great, that if I could describe it unto you, I am sure the recital of it would make you shed tears. At first he appeared more insensible, then afflicted; his silence, his paleness, the little motion that he had, after he had understood this sad news, and his immovable look, would not permit me to be able to judge, what

what new misfortune it was that had arrived unto him, for this man had spoken very softly. But I no longer doubted of it, when as suddenly breaking his silence, and speaking with much precipitation; *Let Fortune*, said he, *do with me as she will, I am very certain that she cannot make me more unhappy than I am.* Then turning himself to him, who had acquainted him with your loss, wholly transported with grief, and quite changed in his countenance, *Let us go*, said he, *dear friend; let us go and dye in some remote place, since I am separated for ever from Felixana.* At this word he fell down dead in my arms, and I beleaved, seeing him in this pitiful estate, that grief had done that which his despair would have executed. By good hap we were not very far from a Country house, whither having carried him with the help of his friend, we brought him out of his swoon; but it might be said that it was some cruelty in us to bring him to his senses again, because withall we restored him to his sorrow and despair. Oh, said he, *Felixana* is in a condition, that the best she can be for me, is not to be at all! Oh, *Felixana* is in the arms of death, or in the power of the *Sophi*! Ah! no, no, let us not be so base, as to support this grief. If *Felixana* be dead, let us follow her generously; and if she be anothers, let us not survive our ill fortune. Then on a sudden beginning again, after he had held his peace a little; What, shall the Princess *Axiāmira*, the glory of her sex, and of our age, be the wife of a man, unworthy to be her Slave? and shall we live after we have so often sworn to her to dye for her service, and to defend her from the insolency of *Deliment*? Ah! that may in no sort be; and since I cannot succor her, I know at least-wise how to testify to her by my death, that the fear of losing my life hath not kept me from opposing her Enemies. Saying so, he walked up and down a great pace, and seemed to have some strange design upon himself: But perceiving that his scimitar was gone, which by chance was fallen from him, we not being aware of it, as we were carrying him in a swoon to that house; *Think ye*, said he unto us, *to keep me from dying by taking my arms from me?* Ah! no, no, continued he, *I shall easily finde wherewithall to end my life and my miseries.* Generous *Ulama*, answered his friend unto him, we had no intent to take your scimitar from you; since contrarily, in the estate wherein I see things, it would methinks be fitter to seek for arms to revenge you, rather then to destroy you: For if *Felixana* be dead, you cannot lose your self more nobly, then in revenging her of them, which have been her Enemies during her life: and if she be not, what do you think she will say, when as she shall know, that the generous *Ulama*, in stead of stirring up the people, of demanding succor of some forraign Prince, of marching in the head of an Army to assail her persecutors, weakly abandons her, in abandoning himself to his despair? and entreats her yet more cruelly then Fortune doth, since he will deprive her of the onely man that can deliver her, and the onely person whom she loves. And how will you have me deliver her, if I know not in what place of the Earth she is? That, my Lord, answered I, must be carefully enquired after: but if you should not discover any thing, yet must you take up Arms: For if you are ignorant where *Felixana* is, you are not ignorant at least-wise who are the Enemies of the Princess *Axiāmira* and *Felixana*. I should never have done, Madam, if I should rehearse all *Ulama's* discourses unto you. Sometimes he would kill *Deliment*, though we made it apparant to him, that it would be almost an impossible thing; again he would present himself to the *Sophi*; then he would go unknown to *Maxanderon*, to enquire himself of your loss: But for a conclusion of all, he still returned to the resolution of dying. At length without opposing our selves directly to his grief, we knew so well how to inspire his minde with choller, as the sole design of revenging you preserved his life. He resolved then to return to his Government for to think of the means he was to use for the same. As for his friend, he sent him back again, and pray'd him still to advertise him of whatsoever should pass at the Court; and to endeavor to discover in what place you were retained; for he made no question at all, but that you were in the *Sophi's* hands.

When we were returned, he understood that *Deliment* had bethought him, to say no longer that you had suffered shipwrack; but contrarily he caused Prince *Mabamed*, and *Felixana's* Father to be arrested, upon suspicion that they were intelligent with your carrying away; causing it to be bruited withall, that *Ulama* had some part in their crime; and that also preparation was a making to go and apprehend him in his Government, as rebellious and disobedient to the *Sophi's* commands. My Master acquainted with this news, was yet further confirmed in the opinion, that your loss was an effect of *Deliment's* artifice. This thought

thought made him absolutely conclude to think of his safety, to the end he might be revenged. And to that effect, he retired to a good strong place, which appertained to one of his friends, where he lay certain days concealed, to advise of what he was to do; and after he had well considered every thing, he judged it would be best for him, to put himself under the protection of generous *Ibrahim*, whose reputation filled all the Orient. For knowing that *Soliman* had always pretensions enough upon *Persia*, to have a specious pretext for the recommencing of their ancient Wars, he hoped that by assuring him of his friends and intelligences, he might peradventure carry him thereunto; and the rather for that he knew the *Georgiens* had for a good while together made many incursions into *Comagena* and *Mesopotamia*. This resolution taken, he dispatched me away to *Ibrahim* at *Constantinople*, with one of the most obliging and generous Letters in the world; wherein he signified to him, that for the confirmation of what he had written, and confiding in his generosity, he would put himself into *Bitilisa*, which is within *Soliman's* dominion, and not above four days journey from *Ulama's* Government. As indeed, I was no sooner departed, but my Master, after he had written to the faithfullest of his friends, to entertain some intelligence with them, in case he should have need of it, set forth towards *Bitilisa*; and committed himself into the hands of one, named *Serefbeg*, unto whom this Town appertained, as Vassal of the *Othoman* Empire. But though *Ulama* told him, that he came to seek the protection of *Soliman*, and that he had to that effect dispatched one to *Ibrahim*; yet this man, being of a cruel disposition, and provoked by an indiscreet and bruitish zeal, in stead of barely assuring himself of his person, by putting a guard upon him, until he heard from *Soliman*, he caused him to be seized upon, to be bound, and in that deplorable estate sent him to *Constantinople*.

In the mean time I had made my voyage very happily; and having delivered my Letter to *Ibrahim*, I well perceived that he was very joyful of it; that the reputation of my Master was come even unto him; and that he was not ignorant of his high birth; As truly a little after, he obtained for *Ulama* all that he had demanded; And as he was preparing to send to receive him with honor, and was talking with him in the *Hipodrome*, before his Palace gate, about my return, I saw my Master arrive bound upon a horse, his hands manacled, and his face so changed, as I hardly knew him: but being sure it was he, without thinking of the respect I owed to the *grand Visier*, I left him, and approaching to *Ulama*; My Lord, said I to *Ibrahim*, suffer not him whom you mean to protect to be so unworthily entreated; nor let the valiant *Ulama* be chained like a Slave. *Ulama!* cried the *grand Visier*: Yes, generous *Ibrahim*, continued I, you behold that *Ulama*, whose valor is incomparable; whose birth is as noble as any in all *Persia*; and who hath demanded protection of none but you. I had no sooner said thus, but *Ibrahim* ran himself to unloose my Master; and beholding them which accompanied him with fury, he willed me to help him, which I did with a great deal of joy. As for *Ulama*, he was in such a confusion to see himself in that estate, as he could almost have wished that I had not named him: but the thing being done, and having understood that the *grand Visier* spake the *Persian* Tongue; These chains, said he unto him, generous *Ibrahim* (for he had observed that I had named him so) are glorious unto me, seeing they are taken from me by so illustrious an hand as yours: And owing my liberty to you at our very first encounter, judge whether all the rest of my life I shall not absolutely depend on you? It is true, replied *Ibrahim* embracing him, that these chains are not shameful, but for those that have made you wear them; and by a fate clean contrary to that of all deliverers, I must, after the freeing you of them, crave pardon of you for the ill usage you have received; yet so far happy at least-wise herein, as you cannot suspect *Soliman* for it, who, if I be not deceived, will make them feel the weight of your chains which have layd them on you. *Ulama* answered thereunto with a great deal of civility, and at length the *grand Visier* caused him to enter into his Palace, which was hard by, charging some of his servants to seize upon them that accompanied *Ulama*, for fear lest any of them should steal away, to go and advertise *Serefbeg* how his indiscreet zeal was not well received. When these two illustrious persons were come in, *Ibrahim* shewed *Ulama* the Letter he had written him, the order he had taken for his reception; and after he had told him, that he might command in his house, he went to give an account of his arrival to *Soliman*, who was so incensed against *Serefbeg*, that his anger broke out terribly upon him, as you shall understand hereafter.



In the mean time the *Bassa* came back to fetch my Master to the *Serraglio*: and as there is a sympathy between great men, which makes them from the very first time of their acquaintance to love one another far sooner than others do, so *Ulama* and that illustrious *Bassa* grew suddenly to be such friends, as I was mightily surprized with it. But not to prolong this discourse, *Soliman* caressed *Ulama* extraordinarily; swore he would punish him that had put him in chains, though my Master employed all his power to obtain his grace; lodged him magnificently; furnished him with a train answerable to his condition; and gave him all the occasions that might be to praise him. And, as if Fortune would second *Ulama's* designs, the very same day that he arrived at *Constantinople*, the War of *Persia* was concluded; whether it were in regard of that which the *Georgians* had done; or of the Levies which *Tachmas* had made; or of some reasons which I could not well learn: So that *Ibrahim* acquainting *Ulama* there with, and asking of him, whether he would willingly serve in it, he was more joyful at it than I am able to express. The *Bassa* understanding his intentions, advertised *Soliman* thereof, who thought fit, whilst the War was preparing, to have *Ulama* return unto the frontier, the more easily to entertain his intelligences. But to make him return thither with glory, and execute that which had been resolved, *Ibrahim* caused *Serresbeg* to be declared guilty of high Treason; and *Bitilisa*, which the other possessed, together with all the rest of his estate, to be conferred on *Ulama*; as also a yearly Pension of an hundred thousand *Sultanins*, and the Government of *Carahemida*, the frontier Town of *Diarbeck*, or *Mesopotamia*. My Masters generosity carried him to refuse the spoils of his Enemy, as much as possibly he could; but the *Sultans* pleasure was to be obeyed.

This Declaration being made, *Serresbeg* was advertised of it by some friends that he had at *Constantinople*; so that, provoked with anger, he stole away; and passing into the *Sophi's* Territories, he went and offered him his service. In so much as it seemed, that these two Princes had made an exchange, and given hostages to each other: Though it is true, that the matter was not equal for the persons, *Serresbeg* having nothing recommendable in him, but a brutish valor, which carried him into perils without knowing them. But at last *Ulama* repaired to *Bitilisa*, where at his first coming he found his matter to exercise his generosity upon; for *Serresbeg's* Wife and Children came and cast themselves at his feet, and wholly dissolved into tears, humbly besought him to grant them the grace of her Husband and their Father. *Ulama* answered them, that had he been in an estate to receive it, he would have used his uttermost endeavor to have obtained it of the *Sultan*: but as things were, it was a proposition which he durst not make. Then they requested him, at least-wise not to treat them ill. *Ulama*, who had no such intent, assured them, that *Bitilisa* excepted, which he was bound to conserve for the *grand Signior*, he would not keep any part of their estate from them, though they had very great riches; and told them moreover, that if they would continue in *Bitilisa*, they should be respected there as himself; or if they would go from thence, he would obtain permission of *Soliman* to have them conducted whithersoever they pleased. This afflicted and generous woman, seeing *Ulama's* courtesie, besought him so to deal as she might be suffered to follow the fortune of her Husband; which *Ulama* promised her, and performed a little after. For having obtained of the *Sultan* that which he had desired of him for her and her children, he caused all their wealth to be laden in Waggons; and having assured them of the restitution of *Bitilisa*, if peace were concluded, or if *Serresbeg* re-entred into favor with the *Grand Signior*, he sent them with a convoy of four hundred *Janizaries* into the *Sophi's* Territories; for some Troups were already come unto him for his safeguard, *Soliman* having given command to all the *Sangis's* treasuries to march whithersoever *Ulama* would lead them.

In the mean time, whereas you and *Felixana* were the cause of all that he did, his only care was to discover if any news could be had of you. He wrote also to Prince *Mahamed's* ancient Governor, desiring him to entreat his Master, that he would, for his excuse of what he was going to do, but remember how it was only to revenge the Princess *Axiomira* and *Felixana*. But hearing nothing of you, it put him into such fury, and into so great a despair, that his ordinary valor redoubled much more than before, as well appeared in the occasions which were presented a little after. For *Ibrahim* leading the vanguard of the Imperial Army, where *Soliman* was in person, met with *Ulama* at the rendezvous, and gave him the conduct of thirty thousand men, to march on before for discovery, as knowing the Country better

better then any other. I will not tell you, Madam, the success of this War, since it is impossible, that in any part of the world wheresoever you have lived, you should not hear of the conquests which *Ibrahim*, seconded by the valor of *Ulama*, made; the taking of the City of *Tauris*, from whence the *Sophi* retreated a little before to *Sultania*, which as you know is but six days journey from it; the crowning of *Soliman* at *Bagdet*; and so many other remarkable things, as arrived in this War. But I will onely tell you, that in an occasion, where *Ulama* went to discover the enemy with two thousand horse, a party of Cavalry almost of the like number advanced from the adverse Army, and charged him so fiercely, as *Ulama* stood in need of all his address and courage to sustain them. He that commanded the Enemy, having singled himself out from the rest, asked of him in the *Persian* Tongue, whether he were not *Ulama*; and my Master having told him how he carryed that name; thou must, continued he, to render the possession of *Bitilisa* lawfully thine, either take away *Seresbeg's* life, or to punish thee for thy perfidiousness I must triumph over thine. And then, without attending *Ulama's* answer, he assailed him with all the fury of a brutish resolution, notwithstanding the generosity which my Master had shewed to his Wife and Children. Indeed the event of the combat justified that which I say, for after they had fought above two hours, without being ever sundered, though they were in the midst of four thousand men, who were fighting as well as they, in the end *Seresbeg* lost his life by the valor of *Ulama*. But after this particular victory, he would also have a general one over those who had assailed him; He so animated his Soldiers then by his example, as scarce one of the Enemies rested alive. And to testifie his generosity in all things, he caused the body of *Seresbeg* to be carryed away, for that he would not suffer, said he, that so valiant a man should be interred in any Country, but his own: and to that effect, though *Seresbeg* had so highly offended, yet he obtained of *Soliman* that he should be layd in the sepulchre of his fathers at *Bitilisa*, which was accordingly performed with all the ceremony accustomed in such like occasions. As long as this War lasted, *Ulama* did what he could to encounter *Deliment*; but notwithstanding all his endeavor for it, fortune would not let him fight with him.

In fine, Madam, Winter approaching, *Soliman* put part of his Troops into Garrison, and retired to *Constantinople* with *Ibrahim*; leaving *Ulama* on the frontire, where he desired to remain, not being able, as he oftentimes told me, to eloign himself from a Land, where he beleaved you were still abiding. Not long after *Ulama* being advertised that the *Sophi* was gone from *Sultania*, whither he had retired, and seemed to have some great design in hand, he drew most of the forces out of the Garisons, and making up a body of an Army, he went with it to oppose the Enemy. But the *Sophi*, who did not desire to fight with *Ulama*, saw him no sooner in the field, but he began to recoil, contenting himself onely with seizing on the passages, and cutting off his victuals, carefully forbearing from descending into the plains, for fear he should be forced to come to a battel. This artifice, which proceeded from *Deliment*, would for all that have availed him little, and my Masters valor would have surmounted this stratagem, if the anger of Heaven had not been joyned to the anger of men, and fought for the *Persians*. For it happened that *Ulama*, having had bad intelligence, went and encamped in that great plain, which is neer to *Sultania*, and as you know is invironed with four mountains, whose tops are always covered with snow, chiefly those of *Caspia* and *Niphates*. *Ulama* beleieving then that the *Sophi* was retired behinde those mountains, at the foot whereof are the goodliest plains in the world, and the most proper to fight a battel in, was there encamped, as I have already declared; but the *Sophi* had taken another way, and was retired into the Country of the *Coraxens*. As *Ulama* then was in this place, there arose on the top of those mountains so terrible a tempest, as the winde carrying away those huge heaps of snow, wherewith they were covered, drove them in such abundance, and with such raging force upon *Ulama's* Camp, as all the Tents were overthrown by them; most of the Camels stifled; all the sick Soldiers overwhelmed; some of the others buried alive with them; and all the rest in confusion.

And whereas the Snow had extinguished all the fires in the Army, the darkness joyned to the roaring of the winds, to the noise which the Snow made in overturning the Tents, to the cries of the Souldiers in answer to the Commands of their Leaders, and to the lamentations of dying men, rendered this night so dreadful, as I do not think one can meet with an occasion able to give more terror then that did: the constancy of *Ulama* was not for

all that shaken; and though his Tent was overthrown as well as the rest, yet lost he not his Judgment: and causing himself from the first beginning of the storm to be heard as well as he could, he commanded every one to get out of their Tents, and afterwards to keep in their places, for fear lest thinking to avoid death, they might the sooner find it in approaching to the Mountains. But at last upon the return of the day, the tempest ended, and the Sun made us see one of the pitifullest objects that ever was beheld. This deadly fight, able to allay the courage of any but *Ulama*, augmented his; and he resolved to be revenged of his Enemies for the loss he had sustained by the Tempest. Wherefore he made a speedy review of his Army, and finding that he had lost but two thousand men that night, he concluded to set upon his Enemies. He sent forth some then to discover, whilst they were labouring in some sort to repair the disorder of the Tents; and having gotten an advantageous place, he stay'd there till he understood that the *Sophi* came on furiously towards him; for whereas reports increase at a distance, he had been told that *Ulama* had lost above fifteen thousand men. My Master, glad of this occasion, albeit his Army was overtoyled and weary, courageously exhorted them to fight. But, Madam, without particularizing a Battel unto you, whereof the event was not prosperous to my dear Master, I will only tell you, that after he had almost vanquished his Enemies, suffering himself to be carried away by his extream valor, he was hemmed in by above an hundred men, who knowing him to be the General of their Enemies Army, assailed him with such fury, as he was dangerously hurt by them in four several places; so as all that he could do was to rid himself from his Enemies, still fighting till he got to his own men, where he was no sooner arrived but he fell down dead amongst them. This accident made the victory change party, and range her self wholly on the *Persians* side, who remained Masters of the field: In the mean time *Ulama's* wounds proved great and dangerous; he was carried to the nearest town, and from thence to *Bitilisa*, where he hath always continued, whilst the *Sophi* making profit of his misfortune and absence, regained all that *Ibrahim* and he had conquered. Howbeit *Ulama* was a long time without knowing any of those things: for his wounds seduced him to so bad an estate, as no affair was communicated to him. And whereas I was always about him, so often as the violence of his sickness would permit him to speak, it was always of grieving to dye, before he had revenged you; but when an *Arabian* Physician, which looked unto him, had assured us that he was out of danger, the first thing he was acquainted with, was the defeat of his Army, the loss of *Tauris*, your imprisonment, and *Felixana's*. But he understood this last by such confused reports, as he could not comprehend by what adventure you were here. His first thought in this occasion leaned to joy, and he was very glad to hear that you were living, that you were not in the power of the *Sophi*, and that at length he might hope to see you again. But this first motion being over, he entered into another quite contrary. What, said he, do I fight against my lawful Prince, to endeavor the delivery of the Princess *Axiamira* and *Felixana*, or to revenge them? and whilst I hazard my life with this intention, it falls out that I shed my blood for the service of a Prince, who keeps them prisoners; and Fortune, that is become ingenuous to persecute me, makes me fight against those which oppose him who oppresseth and ill-intreateth them! Pardon me, continued he, great Princess, the crime which I have done; pardon me, dear *Felixana*, the error which I have committed; and know, that though I am covered all over with wounds which I have received in serving thy Enemy, yet have I heart enough still left me to undertake the deliverance of thee. I should never have done, Madam, if I would recount unto you all that he said upon this occasion.

But at last, after he had used his uttermost endeavor to be carried into a Chariot, against the advice of his Physician, he was constrained to stay two days journey from *Bitilisa*; so that knowing it was impossible for him to proceed further on his way as yet, he sent me to the grand Visier, with direction, if he were not returned from a secret expedition, upon which it was said he was gone, to attend for him, and to endeavor by his means to see you, and to give you the Letter which I have delivered unto you; assuring me, that as soon as he was able to endure to travel, he would come himself to crave your liberty of the Grand Signior.

This Slave, who had no more but the name of it with his Master, having given over speaking, left *Axiamira* very much contented, and *Felixana* with a great deal of satisfaction to know that *Ulama* had still conserved his love to her. And though his wounds were the cause of



of some inquietness to her, yet joy was of most power in her heart. But in regard it was indifferent here the Princess dismissed this Slave, and resolved, in what estate soever her health should be the next morning, not to forbear seeing of him who was to be her Deliverer.

### The Second Book.

THE hope of a more quiet life having restored the Princess *Axiamira* to some strength, it was no sooner day, but having caused her self to be made ready, she sent to desire the grand *Vizier* he would do her the favour that she might see him. *Ibrahim* having received this Order, went to the Princesses lodging; but when first he saw her, he remained as much surprized, as he had been at such time as he beheld her picture; for certainly she very much resembled *Isabella*. Howbeit, respect drawing the Illustrious *Bassa* out of this pleasing surprise, he saluted the Princess with a great deal of submission, and assured her that she might absolutely dispose of him; that he came not but to offer her all that lay in his power, and to testify unto her the grief he had to visit her in a place unworthy of her, and from whence he would labour to free her in a short time. The Princess answered to all these things both with very much spirit, civility, and greatness of courage. But when as *Ibrahim* would devotionally have engaged her to the recital of her adventures, she desired him he would be pleased, that *Felixana*, who had already acquainted him with part thereof, might continue the relating of the rest unto him. The grand *Vizier* turning him then to *Felixana*, requested her, punctually to recount unto him all that had arrived to the Princess *Axiamira* and her after their Shipwreck, because it was important for their interest that he should not be ignorant of it. *Felixana*, who ever since the Discourse which *Ulama's* Slave had made unto her, was more affected to our Illustrious *Bassa* than before, would by no means refuse him that he desired of her, although she certainly knew that this relation would renew all her sorrows. Wherefore, after she had received the Princesses Command for it, and that *Ibrahim* was set down by *Axiamira* at her intreaty, she began to speak in this sort.

#### The History of GIANGER and MUSTAPHA.

My imagination, representing to me all at once whatsoever I am to recount unto you, filleth my mind with so much confusion and grief, as I doubt whether I shall be able to deliver things precisely unto you, as they arrived unto us, and whether I shall not stand in need of the Princesses goodness, to put me in mind thereof, if I should fail in acquainting you with some circumstance of that which you desire to know. But to come to my discourse, I will not stand then to tell you in what manner we suffered Shipwreck; only I will say to you, that when we judged by the cries of the Mariners we were in danger of perishing, I approached to the Princess, whose great heart was not shaken in this occasion, but contrarily feared the Port more than Shipwreck, and casting my self at her feet, I demanded of her with tears the grace that I might dye by her. This generous Princess embraced me, and taking me by the hand she never quitted it, till the Vessel, driven by the wind and the waves with an incredible impetuosity against the point of a Rock, broke all to pieces, and separated us, but in what manner it was done I am not able to tell you; for I was so troubled, and the horrors of death seized on me in such sort at that dreadful instant, as I knew not what became of me. Yet was not the Sea altogether unpitiful unto us, for by an extream good fortune in the midst of our illfortune, it carried us to the shoar, which was not far off; and not only preserved our lives, but made me be found within thirty paces of the place, where the waves had cast up the divine *Axiamira* in a swoon as well as I.

But admire, my Lord, that which I am going to tell you! and how weak beginnings have sometimes long and dangerous consequences! You may well remember how I told you yesterday, that the *Sophi* gave the Princess *Axiamira's* and my picture to a foreign Merchant, with order never to sell them to any but Princes: And you have told me, if I be not deceived, that you knew how that Merchant, being mistaken in selling one of those pictures to *Soliman*, gave

gave him that of the Princess *Axiamira* for mine. Now, my Lord, the same error produced another; for that Merchant, passing afterwards to the place where Prince *Gianger* lived, sold him my picture for that of *Axiamira*; But if the first fault had been the cause of carrying away the Princess by force, the second occasioned that which you are going to hear.

The same day wherein we suffered Shipwrack, Prince *Gianger* (who as you know remained by *Solimans* Order very near to the place where we were cast on shoar) walking that way, came by chance where I lay extended on the sands as a dead person. This accident surprized him; my sex, my age, my habit, which was rich and extraordinary; and more then all that, the pity whereof this vertuous Prince was capable, caused him to approach unto me, and not judg me unworthy of his assistance. And then again, though the estate wherein I was had infinitely changed me, he conceived that I was not altogether unknown to him, and that he had seen something that resembled me. But he had no sooner made the sand, which cleaved to my face, to be taken away, but his memory brought back into his imagination my picture, which he had bought of that Merchant, and which he believed to be *Axiamira's*. And whereas by chance he had it about him that same day, he opened the case wherein it was, and observing there all the features of my face, though the ayr of it was somewhat changed, he no longer doubted but that I was the Princess of *Persia*, confirming himself further in this opinion by my apparel, which he saw to be altogether like to that which I wore in my picture. For the *Sophi* having found, that the habit of an *Amazon*, which the Painter had given us, was more advantageous then ours, would needs have the Princess and I wear it ever after. In this belief, Prince *Gianger* redoubled his care; and seeing me fetch a sigh, which made him know that I was still alive, he caused me to be carried to the next house to the place where I was; and commanded some of his people to go along by the Sea shoar, to see if they could find any other person that had need of succour, imagining rightly, that I had not suffered Shipwrack alone. But scarcely had he given this Order, when one of his servants came and told him, that some thirty paces from thence there lay a woman attired in the same manner, and in the same estate that I was, who without doubt was not dead, because he had discerned some motion of breathing in her.

The Prince, having left me to the care of his people, went to see that which this man told him of; but he did no sooner cast his eyes on the Princess *Axiamira* (for it was she whom this man had found) but he felt himself prest with an extraordinary desire to be able to save her; and the compassion which he had on her added so many charms to her beauty, as he swore unto me afterwards he had never seen her more beautiful then she was in that deplorable estate. He himself helped to carry her to the place where they had already layd me; and though he was perswaded that I was the Princess of *Persia*, and that *Axiamira* was one of my maids of honor, he took at the least as much care of her as of me, and it might be said that he did not serve me but out of respect and interest, and that he assisted her already out of inclination. At length, my Lord, meeting with some women in the house whither we had been carried, they took such a course with us, as they brought us out of our swoon. I was the first that opened my eyes, and to whom reason began to give a sense of our misfortunes, by the astonishment wherewith I was seized, in seeing my self in the hands of so many unknown persons. But if their faces, their habits, and their language surprized me, their officious endeavors gave me some hope. This astonishment being over, my first thought was for *Axiamira*. Alas! poor Princess, said I aloud, what is thy destiny! Prince *Gianger* hearing me speak thus (for he alone understood the *Persian* tongue) believed that by those few words I deplored my own misfortune; so that quitting *Axiamira*, to render me that which he thought he owed to my condition, he came to comfort me, and assured me that I was in a place where the same services and honors should be done me, as if I were in the Court of the *Sophi* my father. I was equally surprized, both with hearing *Gianger* speak to me in the *Persian* tongue, and with his taking me for *Axiamira*. Howbeit finding my self in the hands of people that were unknown to me, I resolved not to disabuse them; hoping that this opinion would make me be with the more safety amongst them, and would possess them with the more respect: But I would not avouch so much precisely, so that I contented my self with telling him, that in the estate wherein I was, the best that could arrive unto me was to dye; nevertheless that I would not refuse his assistance and protection, seeing he had the generosity to offer it me. These few words had like to have made me fall again into a swoon, just as the Princess began

to come out of hers, and that opening her eyes, as I understood afterwards, she left them no longer in doubt but that she also might be succoured. But whether it were that she was of a weaker temper than I, or whether the Sea had tossed her more, she was above four hours before she could speak; and that was it which kept me from perceiving that we were both in one chamber, though a Cotten cloth, which made a division in the room, was the only thing that separated us.

In the mean time the Prince sent for a Charet to carry us to the place of his ordinary residence, to the end we might be the better assisted there by a Jewish Physician, who by reason of his age could not come where we were, and whom we tryed afterwards to be one of the knowingest men of the world in that profession. It was then, my Lord, that I was greatly amazed; for these people having set me in the Charet, the Prince came and asked of me, whether I would be pleased, that a maid, whom he believed did belong unto me, because she had been found on the Sea shoar in the same case he had taken me up, should come into the Charet to me? I desired him with much impatience to let her be brought, imagining that it might be *Axiamira*. As indeed, he had no sooner commanded it, but I saw two men bring her to me in a Chair. And truly in this encounter it fell out well for the design we had afterwards, that *Gianger* was a pretty way from us, and that there was no body near us which understood my language; for as soon as I saw her, I could not forbear crying out; *Ah! excellent Princess, live you still? and hath fortune been so pitiful, as not to separate your destiny from mine?* My voyce revived *Axiamira* more then all the remedies they had used to her till then; and as soon as she was in the Charet where I was, she embraced me with so much joy, as she thereby recovered the use of her speech, to testify unto me the comfort she received in seeing her self with me. But, continued she, my dear *Felixana*, in what Country are we? who are these that assist us? and what interest have they in our conservation? do they not pretend to force us to live, to constrain us afterwards to have recourse unto death, by returning us into the hands of *Ruffan*? For, said she, I see them have Turbans, whose colour makes me know them to be *Soliman's* Subjects. Madam, said I, I cannot answer to so many things, though I have for above two hours observed with a judgment sound enough all that hath been done here. But this I can tell you, that he, who seems to be the Master of all them I have seen, is exceeding civil, and should be a man of great quality, so far as I can guess by the high respect which the rest do give him. But that which troubles me is, his talking me for you, and his assuring me in our language, that I shall have the same honor done me here, as in the Court of the *Sophi* my father. It may be, said the Princess, I can remember some words of the *Turkish* tongue, which I learned of an old Slave when I was a child; and then making a sign to one of those which accompanied us, that she would say something to him, when as he came near her, and that she had studied a while, she demanded of him with much ado, and in a language that was not very intelligible, the name of him that commanded them. This man apprehended not at first what she would say to him, but at length joyning signs to her speech, she made her self be understood. He answered her then in his language, that it was the Prince *Gianger*. This name of *Gianger* touched the Princess sensibly, and making a sign to this man, that she had no more to say to him; I knew full well, said she to me, that Fortune did not save me, but to undo me; and that she kept me not from perishing, but to expose me to new miseries; for, said she, he in whose power we are is the son of *Soliman*. It is not because Fame doth not speak advantageously of him; but still, he is the son of a man, which hath caused me to be forcibly carried away.

*Axiamira's* discourse seemed so full of reason to me, as I could not make any Reply to it; but in the end carried by the passion which I had to serve her, I told her, that to avoyd the mischief she feared, Prince *Gianger* was not to be disabused of the opinion he was in, that I was the Princess of *Persia*; that in the mean time we should labour to know, wherefore he took me for that which I was not; and that in trying to discover his designs, we should frame ours according to that we should learn of him. The Princess was so afflicted, as without examining whether that which I told her was reasonable or no, she consented unto it at the same instant, when as the Prince, who out of respect had always marched before, came close to the Charet. This while we arrived at *Giangers* Palace, who led me to a stately lodging, and who would also have given another to *Axiamira*; because, said he, she was not in case to serve me: But having requested him to leave her with me, he quitted us, and went out of the chamber



chamber, as soon as that old Jewish Physician came in; who, after he had ministred unto us that which he thought was necessary for our recovery, left us at liberty to talk of the estate of our fortune.

I will not declare unto you, my Lord, the cares, the civilities, and the duties, which *Gianger* rendred me from that very first evening in the quality of *Axiamira*, since it would be to spend time unprofitably. But you shall understand, that coming to see me the next day, I demanded two things of him; the one was, to tell me how he knew that I was the Princess of *Persia*? and the other, not to publish that I was in his hands, till I had time and strength to entertain him with my misfortunes. To the first he answered me, in letting me see the Case wherein my picture was, which as soon as I had beheld I knew it straight. But, my Lord, said I unto him, who told you that this was *Axiamira*'s picture? The Merchant, said he, that sold it to me; and who long before had also sold another to the Emperor my father, which he said was a maids, named *Felixana*, whom the *Sophi* very much esteemed; whom you exceedingly loved; and who without doubt ought to have very much merit and beauty, since, as this Merchant told me, she was crowned as well as you, as the fairest of all *Persia*. This *Felixana*, answered I coldly, had questionless a beauty extraordinary enough to oblige *Soliman* to buy her picture. Now, my Lord, it is certain that this discourse surprized me; for then I knew, that the Merchant, to whom our pictures had been given, was deceived, and had not understood the *Sophi* well; the likeness of clothes having no doubt contributed much to the making of this error. So it was, that I plainly perceived how *Soliman* had effectively loved *Axiamira* by means of her picture, but under the name of *Felixana*, which had occasioned her forcible carrying away; and how she saw error, and the same change of pictures, was the cause that Prince *Gianger* took me for her, as the Emperor had before taken her for me.

Touching the second thing, which I had demanded of the Prince, he easily granted it me; for whereas he was become desperately in love with the Princess *Axiamira*, his desire was not to be obliged to carry us so soon to *Soliman*, as maxims of *State* required: It being unlikely, that the daughter of a great King should be in his hands, and he not remit her into the Emperor his father, as soon as it was known. So to content me, and to satisfy himself, he forbid those, which had had any notice of the quality he gave me, to be known of it: And still, to gain time, I made my indisposition last as long as possibly I could. In the mean space the Prince, who at first sight had been mightily taken with the beauty of *Axiamira*, could not forbear giving her some marks of it, but with so much respect, as if she had appeared to be that which truly she was, she could not have been offended at it. This generous Prince told us since, that he tryed to withstand this springing passion as much as he was able; and that against the custom of his Nation, which considers not the nobility of blood, he was so troubled to think that she whom he loved was not of Royal birth, as he could not be quiet in his minde. He had yet some intervals, wherein his imagination shewed him the truth, and wherein it perswaded him that *Axiamira*, whom I called *Ismaida* as long as our plot lasted, was something more than she seemed to be; and in this thought he engaged himself so deeply in loving her, as he could not forbear giving her testimonies thereof in my presence, though he rendred me nevertheless all the respect, which was due to a Princess, of whom I borrowed the name.

We lived some time in this sort, with content enough, that is to say, as long as the Princes visits kept us from thinking seriously of our misfortunes. For when we were alone, the remembrance of what was past, and the fear of that which was to come, gave us but little rest. The presence of the Prince was oftentimes also somewhat grievous to me, especially at such time as he pressed me by his entreaties to tell him by what adventure I had suffered shipwrack upon that Coast; having much ado to finde excuses to dispense me from it, being not yet well resolved on that which we were to tell him. This Princes love likewise began to possess *Axiamira* with uneasiness, out of the fear she had, lest the ignorance of her condition should carry him to some design, which might be disadvantageous to her. But for me, who saw so much vertue and wisdom in this Prince, I feared nothing from him; and I made it appear to my Lady, that this love, which gave her so much apprehension, should rather give her some assurance; since being retained by the respect, which he thought he owed to me, and by the love which he bare her, he would never enterprize any thing, which might

anger

anger her, or displease me. In the mean time, my health being recovered, sooner then I would have had it, and *Axiamira's* in too good an estate to be dispensed withall from travelling, Prince *Gianger* fearing lest notwithstanding his providence the Emperor should come to know that the Princess of *Persia* was in his hands, propounded unto me, with the most address and civility that possibly he could, the conducting of me to *Constantinople*; to the end, said he unto me, that the Emperor rendering unto you the honors, which are due to a person of your birth, may send you back to the *Sophi*, with an equipage proportionable to his greatness, and your condition. My Lord, said I unto him exceedingly surprized, and without consulting *Axiamira*, so do, as owing you our lives, we may also owe our liberty to you; and without conducting us to *Constantinople*, permit us to return unknown into *Persia*.

*Gianger* had no minde to grant me this request; for besides that reason of *State*, and his own conservation, would not suffer him to do so; his love would not consent that he should for ever lose the presence of one, who was so dear to him as *Axiamira* was. And the thought which he had had, to conduct me to *Constantinople*, seemed so much the juster unto him, because he should thereby retain in his Country the person whom he loved. I observed how he looked upon the Princess *Axiamira* when I made this motion unto him, and that changing colour he sighed twice or thrice. But at length after he had endeavored to answer me, he gave me such pressing reasons to let me know the injustice of my request, as not able to destroy them, I at least-wise desired some time of him to resolve my self for it, which he granted me very kindly. We were no sooner at liberty, but the Princess beholding me with tears in her eyes, What say you now, *Felixana*, said she unto me, do you know any other way but death to avoyd the miseries that are prepared for us? and whose rigor is so great, that I have not so much as the satisfaction to finde any whom I can accuse for it, seeing *Gianger* doth nothing but what he ought to do. Madam, said I unto her, we must make use in this occasion of the Princes error; and with the precious stones that are on your clothes suborn some one of the Guards that are about us, to let you escape and conduct you away, either here, or during the voyage we are going to make, where you will not be so observed as I shall be. Ah, my dear Girl, said she unto me! in what place of the Earth shall I finde a refuge? If I go into *Persia*, I shall meet with a cruel and incensed father; an infamous fellow for an husband; and shall see my self there without any other protection, then that of a blinde brother, since *Ulama* is no longer at Court: If I go to *Constantinople*, I shall there finde a Prince, who caused me to be forcibly carried away, that I might be shut up in a *Serraglio* like a slave: And if I escape out of the hands of *Gianger* (which I do not think is very easie) to wander like a vagabond, without knowing where to seek out a retreat, unto what strange adventures do I expose my self? And then, do you beleeve that *Axiamira*, could she finde safety by her flight, would abandon you, and leave you in the power of a Prince, who, transported by the affection that he bears me, would ill entreat you afterwards. Ah, no, *Felixana*! death hath something sweeter, then all the remedies you present unto me; as also it is that alone whereunto I will have recourse. Madam, said I unto her, for so much as regards me, it would be too much glory for me to dye for your service: And if I saw that flying might be advantageous to you, I would press you further unto it; but since by your reasons I come to know the greatness of your misfortune, were it not better for us to confide absolutely in Prince *Gianger*? and to tell him not only that it is you who are indeed the Princess of *Persia*, but also that *Soliman* his father is in love with you under my name; that *Rustan* carryed you forcibly away for him; and that in the end you suffered shipwrack as they were transporting you to *Constantinople*. This Prince loves you passionately, and if I be not deceived, reason of *State* will give place to his love, which doubtless will be yet more augmented by the knowledg he will have of your condition, by the confidence you will put in him; and by the jealousy he will have of his father. In conclusion, Madam, I can never beleeve, that *Gianger* will conduct you to *Soliman*, when he shall know the truth of things; and I hope that regarding him as his Rival, and not as his King, and as his Father, he will suffer himself to be moved with your tears, and his own interest. And then, Madam, if the vertue of this Prince, and his love, shall refuse us our liberty, I will be the first to shew you the way to death by my example, finding as well as you, that it is sweeter then a life thwarted with so many miseries.

But how do you think, said the Princess unto me, to persuade *Gianger*, that you are not *Aximira*; that I am verily the daughter of the *Sophi*; and that it was *Soliman's* design to have me forcibly carried away? Truth, answered I, hath lights which makes her to be easily known; and the freeness and ingenuity, wherewith I mean to speak to *Gianger*, will persuade him, if I deceive not my self, that I am no other then *Felixana*, and that you are *Aximira*. For the next, it is not possible but that this Prince should know *Ruffan*; and when we first mark him out the time that he came to *Alexanderson*, he will remember whether he were at the Port then or no; or if he be ignorant thereof, he may dexterously enquire in what place he was at that same time: Moreover, if he perished when we suffered shipwreck, his death will justify my discourse; and if he escaped, it is impossible but that the bruit of this accident should be spread abroad amongst some; and that at least it should be heard spoken, how he thought he should have been drowned, though it be not known upon what occasion, or in what voyage. But, Madam, without searching for so many proofs, to confirm that which I purpose to say, I am confident, how I shall no sooner tell *Gianger* that you are the Princess of *Persia*, but he will find in your eyes the justification of my discourse; he will wonder that he did not know you; and repenting him of his error, he will crave pardon of you for it. For, Madam, there is something so majestic in your face, as I doubt not but you have had more ado to conceal your self, then you will have to make your self be known. And then again, the greatest misfortune that can arrive to us by it, is not to be believed, and that being so, we are in the same estate, as now we are: and in the same liberty to have recourse unto death.

The Princess, perceiving some reason in that which I said, permitted me to speak to *Gianger*, provided that she might be in her Cabinet during our conversation. I sent then presently to desire the Prince that I might speak with him, whereupon he came forthwith to my chamber; and when as he would have used the same respects to me, as he had accustomed; It is no longer time, said I unto him, my Lord, to abuse your goodness; It was requisite at first, when as yet we knew you not, that we should be unknown to you, for reasons that you shall hear; but now that we know your wisdom, your virtue, and your generosity, it is just that you should know us; and that the freedom which we use in acquainting you with our misfortunes, and in confiding absolutely in you, should obtain us that pardon which we crave for having deceived you. The Prince remained very much surprized with my discourse, and whereas I perceived it; I see, my Lord, said I unto him, the impatience you are in, to understand that which I am to say to you, doth disquiet you; and therefore, to satisfy you in few words, know, that I am not *Aximira*. You are not *Aximira*, said the Prince unto me exceedingly amazed! O Madam, labor not to persuade me the contrary, since it would be in vain. No, my Lord, continued I, I am not the Princess of *Persia*, and you see before your eyes only that *Felixana*, of whom you have heard speak, too advantageously; yet think not that I will take the Princess *Aximira* out of your power; she is in it, my Lord, and she is in it in an estate, that hath need of your protection: It is you alone on whom her good or bad fortune doth depend; or to say better, it is you on whom her life or death doth depend. And to draw you quite out of the pain wherein I see you, know, my Lord, that the same incomparable person, whom you have so esteemed of under the name of *Ismaida*, is truly *Aximira*; and the most excellent Princess that is in the world. This last amazement of the Prince was as great as the other; but with this difference, that amidst the trouble of his soul I saw some joy in his look. He believed me not for all that at first, but I perceived that it was a matter, whereof he would have gladly been persuaded. Is it possible, said he unto me, that you should speak the truth? and will you not take it ill if I should not believe you? or if not being able to rely on your words, I request you to tell me some circumstances, that may clear me in a thing that is so doubtful.

It is just, said I unto him, that you should not believe me upon the bare report of my words, but that your reason should persuade you. And then I recounted unto him, not only *Ruffan's* arrival at *Alexanderson*; the strength which he had used to get a sight of me; the forcible carrying of us away; the discourse that he had made to *Aximira*; how he had given her to understand that *Soliman* was fallen in love with her picture, which he had in his keeping; and how for that cause he had brought her away by force; but also to certify the more confidence unto him, I told him in part, upon what occasion we were at *Alexanderson*,



deron, the *Sophi's* rigor, and the Princesses aversion to *Deliment*. I made this relation with so much sincerity, as *Gianger* found himself capable of discerning it; and that which yet helped me to persuade him that I did not lye, was that he remembred, how he had heard that *Rustan*, who was his enemy; as well as his brother *Mustapha's*, was gone from the Port upon a secret expedition; and had embarked himself at *Pera* in a vessel laden with merchandize. This consideration having removed all scruples from his minde, I saw a great deal of joy in his countenance, and the questions which he asked of me afterwards were no more then testimonies that he was persuaded.

But why (said he unto me after some silence) do not I see this Princess, of whom I am to crave pardon for my error? Is it to punish me for the fault, which I have ignorantly committed, that she will deprive me of her sight? My Lord, said I unto him, this great Princess, to leave you the liberty to doubt of my words, is retired into her Cabinet, whither if you please we will go unto her. Saying so, she opened the Cabinet door, and *Axiamira* advancing towards them in some confusion, the Prince went and cast himself at her feet. Ah! Madam, said he unto her, how faulty forever I appear in your eyes, my heart is innocent; it being most certain, that it hath advertised me more then once what you were: I have had respects and thoughts of veneration for you, which I durst not make shew of, in the error wherein I was, both by that of the Merchant, and your discourse. My Lord, said the Princess lifting him up, your error is so much the more pardonable, because in taking *Felixana* for me, you were not much deceived, seeing it is certain, that she is another my self. But, my Lord, continued she, let not the confidence which we have in your vertue be in vain. Nor let not, Madam, replied he, the remembrance of that which is past be disadvantageous to me; and for my part, beleeve absolutely, that there is nothing which I will not perform to do you service. For, Madam, since my good fortune would have you unknown to me, that I might take upon me the boldness to testifie some part of the passion I am in for you, which peradventure I durst not have done otherwise, although it be most pure, and most innocent; be assured, that now, when as I know how this passion is worthy of the son of *Soliman*, nothing can separate me from your interests. Command then absolutely, and be most confident that you shall be obeyed. I had not much ado to be persuaded, continued he, that a person, whom I judged worthy to be Queen of all the world, should be the daughter of the *Sophi* of *Persia*; but I marvel much at my blindness, that I could not discern you were that indeed, which I have so often wished you were.

Since your generosity permits me to speak, said the Princess interrupting him, Let not the wicked designs of *Rustan*, my Lord, be executed by Prince *Gianger*; let me not be conducted by your hand to the *Serraglio*; nor let the Princess of *Persia* have the destiny of Slaves. For, my Lord, not to conceal my thoughts from you, I will dye a thousand times over, rather then do any thing unworthy of that which I am. You know, my Lord, that *Soliman* having married *Roxelana*, cannot according to his Law have any other lawful wife; so that if you put me into his hands, and that I am not generous enough to have recourse unto death, this Princess, who all her life-time hath had no other passion but that of glory and honor, would be the most infamous of her condition. Judg now, my Lord, whether my prayers be not just, and if I have not reason to employ my tears, to obtain that which I desire of you?

The Prince heard *Axiamira* with great agitations of spirit: He was ravished to see that his passion had so noble and so great an object; but the Sultan's love gave him no little inquietness; and not knowing what to do, he continued a while without speaking; but at length he said thus; Do not think, Madam, that my silence is an effect of my irresolution, I have not been considering whether I ought to serve you, but of the means I am to use for it. Fear not then that I will carry you to *Constantinople*, and beleeve that therein I shall serve my self no less then I shall serve you. But, Madam, when I shall be resolved exactly to follow your pleasure, will it be just, that for saving you from peril, I should remain the most unhappy of men? That for delivering you from the violence of *Soliman*, you should abandon me to the violence of my despair, by ordaining me to let you return into *Persia*? For, Madam, henceforward my destiny is inseparable from yours; and I see no mean betwixt dying and abandoning you.

The Prince made this discourse with so many testimonies of affection, as the Princess was

in some sort moved therewith. My Lord, said she unto him, I should esteem my self very unfortunate, if my encounter should prove fatal to you, and that by a destiny wholly particular to me, my misfortune should be so great, as to be communicated to the persons that assist me. But I will believe, that the matter shall not go in that manner, and I wish with all my heart, that you may have as much prosperity, as I have misery. And that you may know I desire your felicity, consider to what rigors of Fortune I am exposed. I request you that you will not conduct me to *Constantinople*, to avoyd the violence of *Soliman*; and I request you also that you will not conduct me into *Persia*, to avoyd the violence of a father, and the insolence of a brutish man, who will both usurp the Empire, and force me to be his wife. But, my Lord, as I request these two things of you, so I request yet one more, and that out of a sense of glory and honor, which are the two most powerful inclinations of my Soul; and it is, my Lord, that I may remain no longer in your hands: For albeit I fear nothing from so vertuous a Prince, yet shall I be very glad, that Envy may not find any thing to charge my reputation with. So do then, my Lord, that I may not go to *Constantinople*; that I may not return into *Persia*; that I may not continue in your hands; that I may find a sanctuary where Civility permits me to abide; or that I may dye at your feet. *Gianger* was so ravished with the vertue and wisdom of *Axiomira*, as turning himself to me, It must be acknowledged, said he to me, that the Princess is incomparable; that I have been blind indeed not to know her, and to resist the secret motions which advertised me of my duty. After this he stood a pretty while without speaking, then suddenly beginning again. If I had not, Madam, said he unto her, found out the means to place you in safety, and to content my self also, I should dye with grief; but if I be able to offer you the company of a Princess, whose vertue is without stain, whom you may absolutely command, and who is wife to Prince *Mustapha* my Brother, I think you will have cause to be satisfied. *Axiomira* was exceeding glad of this proposition, having oftentimes before heard speak of the vertue of *Mustapha's* wife, who she had been told was descended of the ancient Kings of *Cappadocia*. So that addressing her self to the Prince with a great deal of satisfaction, may I hope, my Lord, said she unto him, that Prince *Mustapha*, and his excellent wife, will permit me to live unknown in their Palace, until that Fortune, weary of persecuting me, shall no longer keep me from returning into my Country? Your vertue alone will oblige theirs to succor you, but if that were not, the strict friendship which is betwixt us will oblige them sufficiently unto it. All *Mustapha's* interests are mine, even as my Fortune is his. And truly we are far from those apprehensions of State, which for so long a time have made the children of the *Othoman* family to tear one another in pieces like enraged Tygers; and I am well assured that if *Mustapha*, my eldest Brother, comes once to the Empire, he will let me enjoy the felicity of his Reign, and will not send me either mutes or slaves to strangle me. I tell you all these things, Madam, to the end you may not doubt but that the sanctuary which I have propounded unto you, will be inviolable. Moreover, whereas *Mustapha* is Governor of *Amasia*, and that City is the Capital of *Cappadocia*, which we call *Amasia*, you may well conceive that you will be far enough from *Constantinople*, and not so far from *Persia*, but that you may easily hear from those which are affected to you there.

All these particulars having seemed very reasonable unto me, I the more confirmed the Princess in the design she had to accept of them, both for her interest and mine own; it being most certain, that I no less feared the *Sophi's* love, then she did *Delimons*. This resolution taken, nothing was thought on but executing it: *Gianger* dispatched a man, who was faithful to him, to let *Mustapha* understand that which he desired of him; but with such pressing terms, as it had been impossible for his brother to have refused him. And giving order for the departure of the Princess, whom before folks he inreated as he was wont to do, we set forth two days after for *Amasia*, with as little company as might be, and in *Turkish* habits, to be the less noted. I will not tell you, my Lord, with what generosity Prince *Mustapha*, and *Saraida* his wife, received *Axiomira*; let it suffice me to say, that *Gianger*, having left us some two miles short of *Amasia*, under the charge of an old Governor of his, in whom he very much confided, and having acquainted his brother and sister in law with our Fortunes, they rendered in particular to *Axiomira* all the honors which she could have received in her own Country. A little while after all that we had delivered was plainly justified. For *Mustapha* understood the return of *Rufan*, and his disgrace; and presently thereupon he was told, that the Princess and

I were not at the *Sophi's* Court; that the report went we were drowned; and that others believed how *Tachmas* and *Delimont* had caused us to be forcibly carried away. After this we lived happily enough; *Mustapha's* care, *Saraides* compliance, and *Gianger's* respectful affection, rendered our Exile supportable enough.

*Axiamira* could not for all that be at rest; she wrote many times to divers persons, which were affected to her in *Persia*, without ever receiving any answer. And whereas she saw no end of her miseries, she could not be without inquietness; which at length brought her to a sickness, which it was thought would prove mortal to her. Her Fever was not very violent, but it was without intermission; and though she felt no great pain, yet was she so weak, and so low brought, as we durst not hope she could surmount the disease wherewith she was taken: during the which *Saraida* and I never abandoned her; and the two Princes saw her as often, as the necessity of their affairs, and civility would permit them. Now though *Mustapha* had nothing but friendship for *Axiamira*, yet seemed he to be as much afflicted as *Gianger*; such a sympathy was there in all things between these two excellent Princes. We continued three Months in this sort, without knowing what we were to expect concerning the Princess's life: for albeit at length the Fever left her sometimes, yet was it for so little while, as it did not permit us to hope the recovery of her health. But whilst I was shedding tears for her, the Princes and *Saraida* took great care to conceal from the Princess, and me too, that *Soliman* had made War in *Persia*; which was the cause I knew not that *Ulama* had betaken himself to his party. And that which kept *Mustapha* from saying any thing to us of it, was not only the fear of afflicting *Axiamira*, but the doubt *Gianger* was in, that if she came once to know it, she would be averted from a Prince, whose father went about to desolate her Country. We lived then above two Months in this ignorance after the Princess was out of danger: for whereas we saw no body but *Mustapha*, *Saraida*, and *Gianger* that understood our language, it was easy for them to keep us from knowing any thing but what they pleased. But one day as the Princess and I were alone, speaking of the affection that *Gianger* bore her, and amplifying his virtues, which I opposed to the vices of *Delimont*, I in some sort pressed her to acquaint me with the thoughts which she had for him. Why I will tell you now, *Felixana*, said she unto me, I esteem of *Gianger* as much as his virtue doth merit; I do acknowledge his good Offices as much as one can; and I bear as much good-will to him in my heart, as I do to Prince *Mahamed* my brother: but for that passion, which disorders the mind, which destroys Reason, and which troubles the rest of them whom it possesseth, I am not capable of it; and I could wish that *Gianger* carried a more quiet affection to me. That weakness is a blemish, which I do not desire should be in great Souls: nor is it any thing but the subtilty of men which hath perwaded us, that this passion is not vicious, since all others are, and that every one believes them to be so, though they do not produce such deadly effects. And to know how much more dangerous it is than the rest, we are but to consider how it commonly stirs up all of them; Hatred, Anger, Envy, and Ambition it self, are many times the followers of it; yet do not think, that I will be ingrateful to Prince *Gianger*; for know, how averse soever I am from marriage, I would notwithstanding resolve to be his wife, rather than render him unhappy, if the *Sophi* and *Soliman* could consent thereunto. For, continued she, I may indeed oppose the *Sophi's* pleasure, but I can never be drawn to dispose of my self without his order. As I was going to take *Gianger's* part, he entered into the Princess's chamber, and approaching to her with all the observance which he was accustomed to yield her, he began to talk to her of his affection; and he represented unto her the respect wherewith he had served her, the greatness of his love, the little testimony she had given him of accepting it, the deplorable estate of his Fortune, the small likelihood there was, that after so many Letters vainly written into *Persia*, that the friends which she had left, were still generous enough to serve her. That he knew how the *Sophi* was more affected to *Delimont* than ever, and that he alone governed the Empire: So that she could never hope, either to alter *Delimont*, or to make the *Sophi* change his resolution, but by the necessity of resolving on that which they could no longer avoid.

I perceive well, my Lord, answered she sighing, that my misfortune is so strange, as the most ingenious spirit could not foresee any other end of it, than such as must be fatal to me; for if I have Enemies in *Persia*, I have others also at *Constantinople*. But to answer the complaints which you make against me, I will open my heart unto you, and if after that you be not satisfied,



tified, I profess that Fortune hath not yet made me feel her cruellest rigors. Ah, Madam, said the Prince interrupting her, suffer me first to tell you, that if you deprive me of the hope which my extream love hath made me conceive, nothing will be able to preserve my life. My Lord, replied *Axiamira*, have patience, and do not condemn me without hearing me. And to begin with the Obligations wherein I am engaged to you; I know that I owe you my life; that the respect which you have shewed to me, in a time when you knew me not for that which I was, hath sensibly obliged me; and that the generosity which you have demonstrated in providing me a sanctuary, and preferring my interests before *Solimans* and the Empires, merits an eternal acknowledgment. I have also observed against my custom, that you bear an affection to me, and I am so powerfully perswaded of it, as you cannot desire I should be more: but, my Lord, if I may be permitted to speak freely, I must tell you, that the esteem I make of so many rare qualities, as are in you, joyned to the obligations wherein I am engaged to you, could never for all that beget an affection in my heart like unto yours. Yet do not think I am ingrateful, or insensible; but contrarily, I love you so much the more perfectly, as I can speak it without blushing; I, my Lord, I love you with a friendship, so solidly established, as neither sense nor fortune hath any part in it. I can publish it without shame, and conserve it without blame, and loving you as if you were my brother, I do not see that you have reason to complain. I know well nevertheless that you are not satisfied; but what would you have me do, if love be a passion, whereof I am not capable? and if marriage hath always past with me for a captivity, which is to be avoyded as much as possibly may be? I protest unto you by the holy Prophet, whom we worship, that if I could be touched with this passion, it should be doubtless for you; never having had that inclination for any one as I have for you. But let not this impossibility, I pray you, of my being in love, disquiet you, since the friendship, which I promise you, is incomparably more excellent, and more perfect. And to testify unto you, that I do all that I can, if you have not power enough to contain your self from desiring to marry me, I do permit you to use the best means you can to get the *Sophi* and *Soliman* to consent unto it; which being obtained, I do here engage my word to you no longer to oppose your desires. Behold, my Lord, all that I had to say to you; and never hope for any more from me; for *Axiamira's* vertue can have no further indulgence for your passion.

Most vertuous Princess, replied *Gianger* casting himself at her feet, What occasions do you give me all at once, both of grief, and of satisfaction! with one hand you draw me out of danger, and with the other you put me to death. You cannot answer my passion, and yet you love me more then all the world beside; who ever saw an adventure equal to mine? my Mistress refuses me her love, but in such a manner, as I am not permitted to have the comfort to term her cruel and unpitiful; but contrarily, I must give her thanks for the wrong she does me, and must admire in her the vertue which opposes my love. *Gianger*, in saying thus, looked on *Axiamira* with so much grief, as made me pity him. And whereas the Princesses goodness hath always allowed me a great deal of freedom with her, I took so much upon me as to intermeddle in their discourse; so that addressing my self to the Prince, The permission, my Lord, said I unto him, which hath been given you, should inspire you, me-thinks, with other thoughts, then those which I perceive you have. Ah! my Princess, said he unto me, (for he had always called me so, ever after we had put that trick upon him,) that which the goodness of *Axiamira* grants, Fortune refuses me; interposing such obstacles as are not easie to be vanquished: And in the state wherein things are, there needs a supernatural power to change my evil destiny, unless you will help me to perswade *Axiamira*, that she will permit me to marry her; for being then no longer in a condition to be *Delimant's* wife, or *Soliman's* Mistress, the knowledge thereof would peradventure make their weapons fall out of their hands. How! said *Axiamira* mightily surprized, have the *Sophi* and *Soliman* any interests to be decided between them? Is it known that I am in your hands? and may I be so unhappy as to be the cause of the desolation of my Country? *Gianger* was very sorry that he had said so much before he was aware; but seeing the matter past remedy, and that likewise this War could not be always concealed from *Axiamira*, he recounted unto her, that a little after her shipwrack the War began between the *Sophi* and *Soliman*, without any other apparant cause thereof known, then that he had been told how you alone had made him undertake it; though the *Sophi's* subjects had contributed some pretext thereunto by the acts of hostility which

which they had committed in *Comagena*; and then he acquainted her with the victories which you had obtained against the *Sophi*, and the conquests which you had made: He vowed unto her, that neither he, nor his brother had contributed any thing to this War; that it had been concluded, before they were advertised of it; that not having a more powerful Confident about the *Grand Signior* than you, they could not oppose this design, whereof you had been the principall cause; and that all they could do, had been to find out Pretexits not to be present in it. In fine, *Gianger* told her all things, except what regarded *Ulama*, of whom he spake not at all: and by that which I could judge of it, he carried himself in that sort, because being ignorant of the affection which *Ulama* bore me, and believing that he would be glad to return into his Country, if he met with an occasion for it; he imagined that the Princess, who had often spoken to him of *Ulama's* zeal and fidelity, would quickly give him intelligence of her being there, and then that *Ulama* to see his Native Soil again, and to be well received there, would persuade the Princess to return thither. And it may be also, as all Lovers are suspicious, that he had surmized by *Axiamir's* discourse, which he had interpreted amiss, how *Ulama* was in love with her; at leastwise I could not conceive a better reason for it; howsoever he never acquainted her with any thing concerning him.

I will not tell you, my Lord, in what astonishment the Princess was to hear of the desolation of her Country, by a Prince, whose Son had so much obliged her, and whom she could not with reason hate. Howbeit she was so just, as to accuse none but *Soliman*, and Fortune for her miseries. It is not enough then, said she weeping, that *Soliman* caused me to be carried away by force, but that he must also waste our Empire. And it was not enough, that the War should have an unjust beginning, but that I must too be found on the enemies Party, and in such a manner, as I am not so much as to desire to get from it. And my misfortune is such, as I cannot make vows for the *Sophi*, but I must make them likewise for *Delimens*, who fights for him, though I have such cause to hate him; nor make vows against *Soliman*, without offending *Mustapha* and *Gianger*. In fine, my Lord, said she, turning her self to the Prince, since I am in such a condition, as I am not able to make wishes without injustice, I must resolve to put my self into such a condition, as I may no longer be able to desire any thing, if it be true, that death is powerful enough to deliver me from so many miseries. Such were in this encounter *Axiamir's* expressions; and as for me, I confesse too with confusion, that the Princes discourse gave me an inquietnesse, which was particuliar to me.

For having had no news of *Ulama*, since the time that he departed from the Court, I could not judge what he had done during so great a disorder; this thought troubled me so much, as I could not forbear demanding of *Gianger*, whether he knew not what was become of *Ulama*? and whereas I was afraid, least the Princess should condemn me for thinking of *Ulama*, rather then comforting her, I looked on her at the very same instant, which, as I think, confirmed *Gianger* the more in the opinion, that I have told you, I believed he had. For after he had considered me, and then the Princess, he told me, that this War having much afflicted him, he knew not very well what had passed in it. But to abridge my discourse, *Mustapha* and *Sarraida* were called in, as well to comfort the Princess, as to advise on that which they were to do. And whenas *Gianger* had requested the Princess, she would permit him to tell *Mustapha* what she had granted him, she answered him, that never doing or saying any thing, which she would have to be concealed, he might acquaint him with all that he pleased. As soon as *Mustapha* appeared, she advanced towards him, And will you, my Lord, said she unto him, be so generous, as not to hate a person, who weeps for the victories of *Soliman*? and who sheds tears when she sees the bounds of an Empire, which is destined to you enlarged? Madam, answered courteous *Mustapha*, it is not for me to ask of you, whether you will be so just, as not to confound the innocent with the guilty, and also to indure the sight of a man, who is the Son of a Prince, that is an enemy to the *Sophi* your Father? but know, that if with my blood I could save that of your Subjects, both to dry up your tears, and those of *Gianger*, whom I love more then my life, I would shed it most willingly, for your and his sake. But seeing this remedy can no way avail your griefs, receive the word which now I give you, to omit nothing that lies in my power, which may conduce to the happy terminating of this War: And in the estate wherein things are, I hold it more easie to make a peace, then if *Soliman's* arms had been less prosperous, and the *Sophi's* losses fewer; because

because ordinarily the victorious Party pretends to no other glory, then that of making an advantageous peace; and the weaker out of the fear of losing all, consents easily to yield to some thing, for the conservation of the rest. *Mustapha's* discourse being finished, they advised all together, after they had well examined things, how they might best effect their design; and the two Princes resolved to confide absolutely in you. To which end they chose out an old Officer of *Giangers*, whom they sent to *Constantinople*, with order to tell you the truth of all things. But by ill fortune, you were gone away before, upon a secret expedition, wherein *Soliman* had employed you, although it was but four or five daies after the Triumph, which was celebrated for him at your return from *Persia*. In the mean time, to facilitate things on all sides, they believed it would not be amiss for *Axiamira* to write once more to some one of her ancient friends, and that by this Letter, he, to whom she should address her self, should be obliged to acquaint the *Sophi* that she was living; and that he should also dextrously inform himself, whether by a marriage of her with a Son of *Solimans*, a peace might not be propounded. The Princes said hereupon, that she would never make this proposition; but *Mustapha* answered her, how it would suffice, if she did only write a letter, that did make known she was living; and that did likewise assure, how the letter, which he would write, was of a person considerable and powerfull enough, to treat of an Affair of this importance.

The Princes, after she had a little thought on it, wrote to the Governor of *Sultania*, who had been alwaies very much affected to her; and by this letter she conjured him to work the *Sophi* to a peace all that ever he could. But before the publishing of her being alive, and making the Proposition, which he should find in the letter, he should send her his Opinion, and acquaint her in what terms *Deliment* stood with the *Sophi*, whom she denoted unto him, without naming him: she moreover assured him, that the Letter then written unto him, came from a person, who was able to perform all that he would undertake; and he that carried it, had order to name him, even *Mustapha*. The Princes chose a man for this voyage, who had lived a long time in *Persia*, and that understanding the Language and Customes of it, could easily get to *Sultania*, when once he had put on the habit of the Country. This Governor, having with extream joy learnt that the Princess was living, and transported more by zeal then discretion, went; without doing ought that the Princess had enjoined him, to Prince *Mahamed*, who had been set at liberty, as well as my Father, when as nothing could be proved against them. For I forgot to tell you, how they had been made prisoners, out of an opinion conceived, that they had caused us to be carried away. This man, I say, transported with an inconsiderate zeal, went to Prince *Mahamed*, and reading the Princess Letter to him, together with that from *Mustapha*, they concluded together, that this Proposition would but exasperate things, knowing very well that *Deliment* would never consent to a peace, which put *Axiamira* into the power of another, and therefore that it would but inflame the War the more, instead of extinguishing it.

On the other side, Prince *Mahamed*, who was not ignorant how much averse the Princess had ever been from Marriage, could not believe, but that the consent which she seemed to give to *Mustapha's* Proposition, was wholly against her inclination: so that thinking to serve her, and considering withall, that if she became the Wife of one of *Solimans* Sons, he should lose her for ever, and me too, because he knew well that I would never abandon her, and that *Ulama* having changed his party, there was nothing left in the Court of *Persia*, which could induce me to return thither; he believed, I say, that he was to labour the Princess bringing back again, by deceiving her: And for that purpose, having gained one of the *Sophi's* Secretaries, they made him write a letter to *Mustapha* in *Tachmas* name, with the Seal of the Empire annexed to it, whereby he testified his agreement to that Marriage, and past his word to give him his Daughter, provided he might be assured she was living, by the report of some person, that knew her, and whom he could trust; and to that effect he should cause her to be brought to some little frontire Town, where after he had been cleared of this truth, he would perform his word with him.

This Letter being consigned into the hands of him that had been sent, and he newly departed, a scruple came into the Princes minde, and a fear that *Axiamira* would be displeased with him for this deceiving of her; so that instantly he dispatched away a Gentleman, that was faithful to him, to the Princess at *Amasia*, for to advertise her of the truth of things; and



to tell her, that if she would return to *Persia*, his design was to lay an ambush by the means of the Governor of *Sultania* for the taking her out of *Mustapha's* hands, if he conducted her to that frontire Town, whereof the Letter, which he had caused to be written to him in the *Sopis's* name, spake. But whilst he who had been sent to *Constantinople* was returning to tell us that you were not there; and that they which came from *Sultania* with such different Messages, were upon their way towards us, there were strange things a contriving in the *Serraglio*; and the cruel *Roxelana*, making profit of your absence, meditated deadly adventures. But it may be, my Lord, you know them better than I am able to deliver them; it being impossible but that you should be acquainted with them since your return.

*Ibrahim* seeing that *Felixana* attended his answer, requested her once again, after he had craved permission of the Princess for it, to continue recounting unto him all that she knew concerning the two Princes adventures; and not to fear speaking freely of matters, wherein *Soliman* had any part; because it was necessary he should know all the particularities of this History, which no man yet durst tell him. Since you are pleased to enjoy me to this, said *Felixana*, and that the Princesses silence assures me she consents to it, I will tell you, that you were no sooner departed, but *Roxelana* re-assuming her former Empire over *Soliman*, obtained of him that *Rustan* might in some sort re-enter into grace; and that she might at least-wise have the liberty to talk with him; for, as you know, she hath never been subjected to the rigors of the *Serraglio*: No more are you ignorant without doubt of the hatred, which she hath always born to *Mustapha*, since you have been so long his protector. But hear, my Lord, the most extraordinary artifice that ever was made use of to undo one. *Roxelana* following the ancient designs, which she had had for the ruining of Prince *Mustapha*, saw you no sooner gone, but complotting with *Rustan*, she began to lay the foundations of her wicked intentions. She spake no longer to *Soliman* of any thing but the merit, valor, and spirit of *Mustapha*. And to arrive unto the mark which she had propounded to her self, she caused *Rustan* through his wiles to oblige all the *Sangiacks* of the Province of *Amasia*, whereof *Mustapha* was Governor-General, all those which commanded men of war under him, and some of them of the places adjoining, to write greatly in the praise of *Mustapha* to this wicked man; principally of his liberality, of his courtesie, and of the affection which every one bore him: because, said he unto them, the *Grand Signior* would be glad of it, and would take it well at their hands. These people were not hardly drawn to be perswaded to a thing, which seconded their inclinations; and which also they beleaved would be advantageous to Prince *Mustapha*, whom they loved so ardently. They wrote then according to *Rustan's* designs, without swerving from the truth; it being very certain, that never Prince surmounted *Mustapha*, in shape, in wit, in bounty, in greatness of courage, in magnificence, in courtesie, and in generosity. Neither was there ever Prince so generally beloved, unless Prince *Gianger* his brother might be compared unto him, who though he were the younger, yet left he not to be graced with the same qualities, which were so eminently seen in the other.

But I am carryed away, my Lord, in commending these two unfortunate Princes, without thinking, how you knew them, not better, but longer than I. Wherefore I will return unto my discourse, to let you understand, that all these letters being come to *Rustan's* hands, he gave them to *Roxelana*; who with a feigned sincerity, and apparant joy in her face, shewed them all to *Soliman*, as it were rejoycing to see him have so worthy a successor. The *Sultan* took delight, not onely in reading the praises which were given to his son, but also in observing the affection which *Roxelana* seemed to bear him. So that this wicked woman, judging how all that she could say would no longer be suspected, one day, when as she shewed one of these Letters to *Soliman* which commended the Prince; My Lord, said she unto him, (as good *Achmat* recounted it unto us, who understood all these particularities from *Soliman's* own mouth) may I dare give thee one mark of my love, in giving thee one of my fear? All that proceeds from so noble a cause, answered the *Sultan*, cannot be but very agreeable unto me. I must then, continued she, tell thee a thought which is come into my minde, in hearing the continual praises, which thou dayly receivest, to the glory of *Mustapha*. It is not, my Lord, because I bear him any envy; for Heaven is my witness, if I do not love him better than mine own children, whom I scarcely love, but because they are thine. But, my Lord, if the glory of *Mustapha* be dear unto me, thine is yet dearer. And I remember upon this occasion, how the Emperor *Selim* thy Father used the same sleight to-

wards thy Grandfather *Baiazet*; acquiring with time such a credit amongst the Soldiers and people, as in the end he found himself powerful enough to dispossess him of his Empire. It is not because I do not see well enough that the same thing is not like to arrive, for our holy Prophet keeps thee so charily, as I need not fear ought that way. But yet me-thinks, thy Highness may, without offence to *Mustapha*, appoint some to observe his actions; since if they be good and sincere, his spies shall be so many testimonies, that will speak of him to his glory; and if they be not so, thy Highness may then provide for thy safety. For, my Lord, as often as I call to minde the things which thou hast told me of the youth of *Selim*, me-thinks I see them all in *Mustapha*; with this difference notwithstanding, that *Mustapha* hath a better aspect, is handsomer, is more liberal, and more civil; in a word, said she unto him smiling, more dangerous then *Selim*, if he have the same will, as I shall not lightly believe; nor have I spoken to thy Highness of it, but that nothing might be neglected, which regards the felicity of thy Kingdom, and the quiet of thy life.

This artificial discourse made no great impression in *Soliman's* minde; but yet it left a suspicion there, which increased with time; and it was a disposition to make him give credit the more easily afterwards to all the ill that was told him of his son. He thanked *Roxelana* for the care she had of the good of his State; and assured her that he should never take any thing ill which she should say to him. That for *Mustapha*, he beleev'd him to be too well born to pluck away the Scepter from him, and to depoyl him of an Empire, that was destined to him after his death. *Roxelana*, seeing that this artifice wrought not all the effect she expected from it, consults anew with the Traytor *Rustan*, who told her, that at any rate whatsoever *Mustapha* was to be made away before you were returned to the Port, and that the easiest way for it would be to seek to poyson him; for which purpose they were to send a daring and faithful man, with good store of money, to corrupt some one of the Princes Officers, that waited on him at his Table. But seeing a great deal of hazard in this enterprise, she could hardly resolve on it, yet had she consented unto it, had not an accident fallen out, which made her change her resolution. But, my Lord, admire here the strange proceeding of things of this world! whilst *Roxelana* and *Rustan* sought for means to destroy *Mustapha*, and that all their malice could finde out none, that could fully satisfy their cruel hatred, the zeal and fidelity of one of the ancient Officers of this deplorable Prince, furnished them with an occasion for it. This man had been his first Governor, when as he went out of the *Serraglio*; and was he to whom *Soliman*, during the youth of his son, had given in charge to render him an account of his actions: But whereas the Prince had never done any, but such as were worthy, he could not advertise ought, that was not to the advantage of his Master.

Now after that *Mustapha's* age had dispensed him from the obedience, which he had yielded to this man, he had still retained him at *Amasia*; conversing a little less familiarly with him, then with his other domesticks, by reason he was of somewhat an austere humor, and that his former authority did as yet conserve some awe and respect in *Mustapha* towards him. This man for all that loved the Prince extreamly, who on the other side heaped wealth and felicity on him. Howbeit he had a scrupulous vertue, which perswaded him, that though he held nothing of that which he enjoyed but from *Mustapha*, yet that he owed all to *Soliman*, who had placed him about him; so that without considering the Princes interests, as soon as *Soliman's* came to be in competition with them, he betook him to the Sultan's party. This man then, being of the humor I have represented unto you, was at *Amasia*, whilst the Princess and I were there; And though he knew that there were two women in his Masters Palace, who were not known, or seen, yet had he not made an affair of State of it, but had beleev'd that which had been told him, as well as other of the Princes Officers, how we were two of *Sarraida's* kinwomen, who for certain reasons would not be seen of any body. But it chanced for our ill hap, that this man walking out of the Town encountred that which caused all our misfortune. For to clear this History unto you, please you to understand, that he whom the Princess had sent to *Sultania*, having been overtaken by him whom Prince *Mahamed* had dispatched away presently after him, they had travelled together, without knowing that they were come from one and the same place, and were going to the same persons. So that falling in talk of indifferent things (for the *Persian* understood the *Turkish* Tongue well) and the War, which was then betwixt the *Sophi* and the *Sultan*, being the subject of the conversation of all those which knew not one another, they grew so hot in

discouraging

discourfing about it the very day wherein they were to arrive at *Amafia*, as the *Persian*, not able to difguife his thoughts, as he had done his language and his habit, burft out into faying, that *Soliman* was an Ufurper; which the other unable to endure, and being become more audacious, becaufe he was nigh to a place where he knew he fhould be protected; he drew out his fcimitar, and very fiercely fet upon the *Persian*, who, being more dextrous, and better mounted than he, quickly decided the combate with three blows that he gave him, which made him fall dead at his feet. This being done without witneffes, the *Persian* continued his way, and almoft a minute after he was out of fight; *Mustapha's* laid ancient Governor arrived at the place where the combate was fought, and prefently knowing that man, becaufe he had belonged to the Prince, he approached to him, marks whether he gives any fign of life, and laying his hand upon the region of his heart, he meets there with the pacquet that was directed to *Mustapha*, which that man had put into a little bag that he had hung about his neck. The fight hereof poffelt the Governor with fome curiofity, fo that feeing no mark of life in that wretched man, but contrarily obferving all the figns of death in him, which are wont to be feen in them whose end hath been violent, he fpeedily withdrew from that fame place, carrying the little bag along with him; and being got far enough out of the way, he opened it, and was much abafhed, when he perceived the *Sophi's* feal.

I leave you to judge, my Lord, whether that exact fidelity, which he had always obferved to *Soliman*, did permit him to deliberate long upon that fubject: he never fluck at it then; and to teftifie his refpect to the *Grand Signior*, as well as his fidelity, he refolves to fend him thofe Letters without opening them. And feeing by the fuperscription of that which was directed to *Axiamira*, that fhe muft needs be in *Amafia*, he reflected on the being of two women concealed in *Mustapha's* Palace; and calling to minde an hundred petty circumftances, which when they arrived had made no impreffion in his minde, he certainly beleaved, that the Princefs of *Persia* was in *Mustapha's* hands: So that perfwaded of this truth, he re-entred into the Town through another gate than that which he went out at; and without making fhew of what had befallen him, he the next day difpatches a man away to *Conftantinople*, enjoyns him to addrefs himfelf to fome of the *Baffa's* for to prefent him to the *Grand Signior*, and commands him above all things to ufe great fpeed.

In the mean time the *Persian* being arrived at *Amafia*, and not fearing to be accufed for the death of him whom he had killed, fince their combate had been without witneffes, he comes boldly to the Palace, demands to fpeak with *Mustapha*, and after he had made himfelf known to him to be a *Persian*, and had given him affured marks that he came from Prince *Mahamed*, he defires to be admitted to the Princefs; which was granted him. And when he had acquitted him of his Commiffion, *Axiamira* remained very much furprized; for fhe knew by his difcourfe, that he whom they had fent to *Sultania* was too long in returning, fince this man, who fet forth a day after him, was already come. She hoped nevertheless, as well as the Princefs, that this unquietnefs would foon ceafe; and beleaved that fome inconvenience having kept this man from coming fo faft as the other, he would arrive at laft, and fo give an end to their fear. But the day following, the body of him, whom the *Persian* had flain, having been found by fome that paffed by, he was brought into the Town, and known to be one belonging to the Prince, who was prefently advertifed thereof. And where-as it was a matter of importance, he went in perfon to caufe the Letters to be fearched for, which we beleaved he had hidden fomewhere in his clothes; but having found none about him, the Princefs was very much afflicted at it, fearing with a great deal of reafon, left thefe Letters fhould come into the hands of fuch, as might give *Soliman* to underftand that fhe was in his Dominions. Yet *Giangier* in fome fort comforted her, by perfwading her that this man, who, as he faid, was cunning and dextrous, feeing himfelf engaged in a combate, had without doubt thrown them away, for fear they fhould be found about him, if he fhould happen to have the worft in this occafion. At length, not able to do otherwife, fhe fuffered her felf to be fomewhat perfwaded of it: and after fhe had confidered what fhe was to do, fhe fent back the *Persian* without other answer, then that fhe affured Prince *Mahamed* of her affection, and that he fhould within a few days hear from her, not daring to venture more Letters fo foon after this crofs adventure; and deferring alfo the taking of her laft refolutions, till they fhould know what could be expected from you.

But when we learnt a little after, by the return of him who had been fent to *Conftantinople*,





*tiople*, that you were not there, the unquietness of the Princess, and of my self, strangely redoubled. Yet we did not know all the occasions that we had for it: for the *Sophi's* false Letter to *Mustapha*, and those which were directed to *Axiamira*, having been delivered to *Rustan*, through the simplicity of him, which should have given them to none but to the *Grand Signior* himself, it might be said, how his inconsiderate zeal did that in this occasion, which all the cunning of *Rustan*, and the wickedness of *Roxelana*, could never have done without him. *Rustan* went presently to her, and opening these Letters with a great deal of care to preserve the Seals of them whole and entire, they found therein wherewithall to satisfy their desires, and execute their mischievous designs. *Roxelana* took these Letters with joy into her charge, and as soon as they had sealed them up again, she sent word to *Soliman*, that she had something of importance to communicate unto him; whereupon he instantly repaired unto her, and was received by her with the accustomed respect, but with an extraordinary sadness in her countenance, though in her heart she was infinite glad. The *Sultan*, who always loved her dearly, demanded of her with some unquietness, what it was that afflicted her? She answered him, that being enforced for the good of his Empire, and the preservation of his person, to discover a matter unto him, which would much amaze and grieve him, she could not be without affliction. This obscure discourse having redoubled the *Sultan's* curiosity, and already even excited some trouble in his soul, she went on, beseeching him to remember the suspicions which she had of *Mustapha*, though he had neglected them, and at length intermixing the praises of the Prince, with her accusations against him, she presents the false Letter, that was directed to *Mustapha*, unto *Soliman*, tells him (as indeed it was true) that his ancient Governor lent it unto him; and after she had made him consider the importance of it, she represents unto him, that if *Mustapha* came once to be joyned to *Tachmas*, it would be easy for him to seize upon his Throne: That he was not to expect the favour of the *Janizaries* against the Prince, because his liberality had gained them all; that the people loved him; that the *Bassas* feared and esteemed him; and that *in fine* this affair was so important, as it concerned both his Empire, and his life.

*Soliman* hearing all these things, knowing the fidelity of him that sent him this Letter, seeing *Tachmas* seal to it; and coming to consider, that *Mustapha* had with address declined the War of *Persia*, he no longer doubted but that he was guilty; albeit *Axiamira's* shipwreck perplexed him, and kept him from comprehending this pretended marriage. His tenderness of this Prince made him nevertheless seek in his heart, how he might favorably interpret the accusations, which were brought against his innocence. But the conjectures were so strong, and *Roxelana's* persuasions so powerful, as fatherly affection gave place to reason of State. He would fain have put this affair into the deliberation of his privy Council, but in regard you were not at the Port, he knew not whom to rely on. He propounded *Achmat* to *Roxelana*, but she, being in fear of this man's virtue, represented unto him, that he was too much affected to the Prince to hope for any faithful counsel from him in this encounter. In the end she knew how to sway the *Sultan's* minde with so much address and malice, as he himself commanded *Rustan* to be sent for, who was the only man that *Roxelana* did not except against. He was no sooner arrived, but the *Grand Signior* asked his advice concerning the matter in question. He answered at first, with a feigned submission, that it was only for him to execute his Highness resolutions, and not to give him counsel. But after he had caused himself to be commanded more then once to deliver his opinion, he aggravated the matter with so much art, and made shew of such dangerous consequences in this affair if it were neglected, as *Soliman*, being absolutely resolved to look to his conservation, commanded him to make himself ready to set forth with six thousand men, which should march away under pretext of being sent to *Ulama* as a recruit. That in the mean time, in passing by *Amasia*, he should assure himself of *Mustapha's* person with as little stir as possibly he could, for fear of causing some revolt in that Province.

*Rustan* having received this Order, thought of nothing but executing it. And whereas the Troops, which he was to conduct, were ready to march, he departed away within a few days, after he had received from *Roxelana* all the instructions, that were necessary to make the design, which she had to ruine *Mustapha*, succeed. As indeed, *Rustan* was no sooner upon the frontiers of *Amasia*, but he wrote unto *Soliman*, that *Mustapha* had gained all the Soldiers; that they would receive no command but from him; that all was full of conspiracies;

cies; that the people were every where ready to revolt; that he was not in a condition to oppose so many Enemies; and in conclusion, that his presence was absolutely necessary for the calming of this storm. Now that which made *Rustan* advertise *Soliman* of all these things, was because he certainly knew, that the virtue of *Mustapha* was so generally beloved in all that Province, as if he undertook to go with open force against him, he would be in danger of being lost, and of utterly ruining *Roxelana's* designs. He considered withall, that if he conducted the Prince to *Constantinople*, all the *Bassa's*, all the *Janizaries*, and all the people joyning together, might peradventure cause a general revolution, if they enterprized the taking away of *Mustapha's* life.

This consideration of his succeeded but too well; for *Soliman* no sooner understood so much from him, but he resolved for his voyage. Howbeit that which powerfully carried him to do what *Rustan* desired, was the intelligence he gave him, how by a second Letter from *Mustapha's* Governor he was informed, that the Princess of *Persia* was in his hands. So that *Soliman*, filled with choller and jealousy, and thinking that as *Rustan* had escaped shipwreck, so *Axiamira* not being dead might be in the hands of his son, who was fallen in love with her, parted instantly away, with all the Troops and *Janizaries* which he had about him; leaving no more behinde then such as were necessary for the ordinary guard of his *Seraglio*. But before he went from *Roxelana*, she made him promise her, that he would forget all things to think of his own security. Vertuous *Achmat* told us since, that *Soliman* had a strange combate within himself, and that Nature and Reason a long time opposed the wickedness of this woman. But at length she made him see the peril so great, and so near unto him, as in parting from her, she got him to promise her two things; the one, that he should not see *Mustapha*, and the other, that he should sacrifice him to his own proper safety. With this deadly resolution he went and joyned with *Rustan*: these things nevertheless were not so closely carryed, but the *Bassa Achmat* was advertised, how this tempest was going to fall upon the head of *Mustapha*; so that at the very same time, when as *Soliman*, being encamped near to *Aleppo*, had sent the Prince a Command to come unto him, to render him an account of the Princess of *Persia*, *Achmat* dispatched away a Post, to advertise him that some great design was plotting against him, and that he was accused of something, wherein the Princess of *Persia* was mentioned: but not able to tell him precisely what it was, all that he could do in this occasion, considering the state wherein he saw things, was to counsel him not to come.

I leave you to judge, generous *Ibrahim*, whether, receiving at one and the same instant *Soliman's* command, and *Achmat's* advertisement, the Prince and the Princess were not strangely surprized; And so much the more, because that *Persian* was on the very same day brought back to *Mustapha*, whom *Axiamira* had returned to Prince *Mahomed*, and had been taken upon the frontire for a spy, though he beleaved, that it was for that it had been discovered, how he had slain that Officer of *Mustapha's*, which came out of *Persia* with him; so that he no sooner saw the Prince, but he cast himself at his feet, confessed his crime, begged his pardon for it, and recounted unto him the combate between that *Turk* and him, as I have related it unto you. But whatsoever was demanded of him, he still maintained, that he whom he had killed had not thrown away any Letters during the combate, as we had beleaved; which made us fear more then before, lest some one had gotten them after his death, and sent them to *Soliman*. Prince *Gianger* was even in despair to see his brother in trouble for the love of him: *Axiamira* was in an affliction, which I cannot represent unto you; the fear of falling into *Soliman's* hands made her resolve for death; and the thought of being the cause of the ruine of two Princes, to whom she was so much obliged, augmented her grief far more. *Sarraida*, who loved her husband more then her self, was wholly dissolved into tears, out of her fear of the danger whereunto she saw him exposed; *Mustapha*, though more constant, yet was sensibly touched with the tears of the rest; and as for me, if I may be permitted to name my self after so many illustrious persons, I was so afflicted, as my own misfortunes were never so sensible to me.

In the mean time, we knew not what resolution to take, *Gianger* would go and present himself to the *Grand Signior* to justify his brother, and confess that he alone was culpable: but as soon as he came to think, that he should abandon *Axiamira*; that he should either let her return into *Persia*, or put her into the hands of *Soliman*, who was both his Father and his

his Rival, he could by no means resolve on it, but fell again into his despair. *Axiamira* on her part found no way to escape this peril; she would fain have saved these two Princes, and saved her self too: but not able to go into *Persia*, neither to see *Soliman*, nor rest safe in a place, where she was no longer unknown, she found that death alone could draw her out of so many miseries. As for *Mustapha*, his greatest sorrow was to see the affliction of his brother, and the fear he was in, that his Palace would not be an inviolable sanctuary to the Princess *Axiamira*: for touching the rest, said he unto her, I am not much troubled. If *Soliman* deals rigorously with me, it will always be with injustice, knowing as I do, that I have never had a thought against the service which I owe to him, and after this satisfaction, I fear not death. But that which afflicts me, continued he, is the doubt, that if I go and present my self to *Soliman*, they will come and do you some wrong in my absence, and that is it for which I do not see how we can finde a remedy.

*Sarraida*, hearing her husband speak in this sort, cast her self at his feet to dissuade him from this design, and to pray him to remember (said she, after she had craved pardon of *Gianger*) how exceedingly *Roxelana* had sought for a pretext to undo him; that having met with one, he might be assured she would make use of it to his ruine: and that it was better for him to stay in *Amasia*, and there to defend himself, or fly away, then to expose himself to so evident a danger. But *Mustapha's* generosity not permitting him to resolve either for the one or the other; it becomes your affection, answered he, to counsel me in this manner, but it becomes not the courage of *Mustapha* to be perswaded by you: and since I am innocent, I will never fly like a guilty man. For in fine, though I seem to have failed, according to rigorous and exact policy, in not advertising *Soliman* that the daughter of his Enemy was in my power, yet I think that I swerve not much from sovereign Reason in serving so excellent a Princess and my brother; and in contributing nothing to the *Sultan's* unjust love, so that after this interior satisfaction, I will remit my innocence to the conduct of Heaven, which is always the protector of it. *Gianger* seeing his resolution, desired *Axiamira*, not to take it ill if he went to dye with his brother; but *Mustapha*, without giving the Princess leisure to answer, told him, that he would not suffer it, but he would leave him to guard the Princess *Axiamira*, and his dear *Sarraida*.

I should never have done, if I would report unto you all that, which love, fear, generosity, and despair, made these illustrious persons say in this sad conversation. As for me, I heard all their discourse without speaking: when as on a sudden, the desire which I had to serve them inspired me with a mean, whereby I beleaved I could save *Mustapha*, secure *Axiamira*, dry up *Sarraida's* tears, render *Gianger* more excusable, signalize the affection which I bare the Princess, and destroy all the wicked designs of *Mustapha's* Enemies. Verily this thought posselt me with so extraordinary a joy, as it quickly appeared in my eyes amidst the tears which I shed: but whereas I feared that the Princess's generosity would be an obstacle to my design, I fell at her feet, and besought her to give me her word, that she would not refuse a mean, which I thought I had found to draw them all out of the pain and danger wherein I saw them. Ah, my dear maid, said she unto me, dost thou think that a person which would receive death with joy, if it were presented unto her, can refuse thy assistance? but I greatly fear, continued she, that thy affection does but abuse thee, and that the extream desire thou hast to serve me makes thee beleieve that to be easie, which I hold impossible. No, no, Madam, answered I; and provided you will promise me not to oppose this design, I assure you that you your self will finde a great deal of probability in it.

*Sarraida*, seeing that *Axiamira* made not much haste to answer me, prest her so far, as she gave me her word to do all that I would have her. She had no sooner said so, but rendering her thanks for the permission she gave me to serve her, I imparted unto her in what manner I hoped to secure her. And to make her comprehend it the better, I caused her to remember, how the same Merchant who sold her picture to *Soliman*, as being mine, had also sold mine to Prince *Gianger*, as being hers: So that to draw them out of the trouble wherein they were, and to put her in safety, *Mustapha* was to conduct me to *Soliman*, seeming to beleieve that I was the Princess of *Persia*; which he was likewise to confirm by the picture that Prince *Gianger* had of me, and by the testimony of the Merchant who had sold it unto him. And withall *Soliman*, by his own experience, would not have much ado to beleieve, that the Prince might have been deceived, as well as himself. That in this sort *Mustapha* might deny the



the having of the right Princefs of *Persia* in his hands, and consequently that she would be in safety. That for me, I was to say, how having been found on the Sea-shoar after our ship-wrack, they had presented me to *Sarraida*, who out of her goodness had received me into her Palace, where I had almost ever since been sick: And that not above eight days before, *Gianger* had seen me at his brothers, and taken me for the Princefs of *Persia*, by means of my picture that he had. That instantly thereupon he purposed to have carried me to *Constantinople*; being ready to set forth on that voyage, just as he received *Soliman's* command. I told them further, that if by ill fortune the Letters from *Persia*, which had been lost, were in the *Sultan's* hands, he was boldly to deny any knowledg thereof, since no body could convince him of it. And that he was to say, how without doubt it was an artifice of his Enemies, who having understood by some way, unknown to him, that the Princefs of *Persia* was in his power, had counterfeited those Letters, for to bring him into hatred with *Soliman*. And as for me, said I to the Princefs, never trouble your self, Heaven, which hath inspired me with this design, knows how to preserve me, if I be worthy of protection; if not, I shall still dye with joy, if I dye for the saving of so many excellent persons. Ah, *Felixana*! said the Princefs unto me, I will not be saved with the loss of you; and if your zeal carries you to this resolution, reason will not let me consent unto it. You have promised it me, Madam; said I interrupting her; and I cannot think that a great Princefs will ever break her word. And then again I do not see that my loss is undoubted; for howsoever, continued I, *Soliman* cannot accuse me but for a little while receiving the honors, which were rendered to me as to the Princefs of *Persia*, though I were not she; but thereunto I am to say, that to be in the more safety, out of the respect which was beleev'd to be due to my condition, I had not disabused the Prince, staying to make my self known for that which I was, till I was at his Highness feet, to beg his pardon, and to beseech him to grant me my liberty.

*Sarraida*, seeing a great deal of likelihood in that which I said, earnestly intreated *Axiamira* no longer to resist this design. *Gianger* called me his Deliverer, and said such obliging things unto me, as I shall never forget the remembrance of them. For *Mustapha*, though he saw some probability of that which I propounded, yet his great heart could not resolve to disguise the truth; and had he not certainly known, that it was the only way which could permit him to hope, that he might put the Princefs *Axiamira* in safety, he had never consented unto it. But that consideration, joyned to the extream affection which he carried to his brother, made him resolve at length for all that was desired of him. We prepared our selves then to depart the next day; I will not relate unto you what the separation was between the Princefs and me, between *Gianger* and *Mustapha*, between *Mustapha* and *Sarraida*, since it would but renew our sorrows for a matter that is not absolutely necessary you should know. But I will only tell you, that the separation of the Soul and body is never made with such violent grief as ours was, at the sad moment of that deadly and last farewell. I was put into a Charet, with two women which *Sarraida* gave me to wait upon me, and *Mustapha* accompanied with a small train, to shew the more confidence, marched on horseback some fifty paces before us. We arrived at the Emperors Camp a day later then we thought we should, because the Charet, wherein I was, being broken, took up so much time to re-accommodate it. And you will know, my Lord, by the sequel of my discourse, how it is not without cause that I have noted this unto you. We were no sooner lighted at a Tent, which had been prepared for us, but Prince *Mustapha*, who thought he should have conducted me to *Soliman*, received an Order to attend his Commandments there, and to remit me into the hands of a *Bassa*, who was to present me to his Highness. I confess that this proceeding amazed me, and that I began to be in fear for the Prince. At the very same instant he received sundry advices, that his ruine was resolved and certain, if he did not repel force with force: the Chieftains of the Army, and the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* gave him to understand, that if he would they would rebel, and not only save his life, but set the Crown upon his head. To all this he answered nothing, save that he might well be unhappy, but he could never be guilty; that he had rather dye with injustice, then reign unjustly; and in fine that their zeal going too far for the love of him, he could not recompence them better for it, then in keeping them from offending. As for me, when I went out of his Tent with tears in my eyes, he requested me, that at my coming before *Soliman* I should obtain of him, that he might in person justify himself of the accusations that were brought against his innocency; and that he would be so good as

not

not to condemn him without hearing him. I promised him all that he desired of me, without scarcely knowing what I did, so much was my mind troubled, through the fear I was in, that my design would not succeed. Howbeit I strove to settle my countenance before I should appear before *Soliman*; the *Bassa* that conducted me had the goodness not to hasten me too much, so that I had the leisure to recollect my self a little. I was made to pass through three Tents, before I arrived at the *Sultans*, but every one that I saw seemed so sad unto me, and I heard *Mustapha* so often named softly, as from that very time I perceived but too well that he was utterly lost.

At my first appearance *Soliman* seemed to be very much surprized; and beholding me with an angry look, he demanded of the *Bassa* that brought me, where the Princess of *Persia* was? My Lord, said he unto him, Prince *Mustapha* delivered no other then this person unto me, whom I saw him treat as if she were the Princess of *Persia*. I no sooner heard this answer (for I had already learned a little of your language) but I cast my self at the *Sultans* feet, and humbly besought him to hear me. I will hear no lying, answered he. My Lord, replied I, it is not to keep thy Highness from punishing it, that I beg the favor of thee to be heard, but to keep thee from confounding the innocent with the guilty; for *in fine*, my Lord, I am faulty, and *Mustapha* is absolutely innocent. I would I had given thee, answered the grand Signior thereupon, the half of my Empire, that *Mustapha* were not guilty. My Lord, replied I with more confidence then before, I do crave but two things of thee to give thee that satisfaction; the one is, that thou wilt hear me without interrupting me; and the other, that thou wilt permit the Prince to justify himself in person. This last, answered he, is impossible, but for the other I do grant it thee; and promise thee moreover, that if thou dost justify *Mustapha* (which I do not believe thou canst do) there is nothing which thou shalt not obtain of me. I did not yield at the very first; I besought him that he would see the Prince; I labored to vanquish him with my reasons; but at last seeing I nothing prevailed, I declared the matter unto him, as we had resolved it; and that with so much ingenuity, as I well perceived he believed me. I repeated this History from *Rustans* arrival at *Mazanderon*, and coming to speak of our shipwrack, I lamented the loss of the Princess, I spake of her as believing her to be dead; and recounted also, how *Sarraida* had received me from those, who had found me on the Sea-shoar; and consequently, how a little before Prince *Gianger*, having seen me with *Sarraida*, where I had been for the most part sick, had believed that I was the Princess of *Persia*, by reason of a picture which he had of me, and which a Merchant, who had deceived him, had sold him for *Axiamira's*: I told him moreover, that as soon as *Mustapha* was perswaded, that I was the Princess of *Persia*, he had prepared himself for the conducting of me to his Highness. That for me, I had not disabused him, as well to be the more secured, as for that I hoped I should the more easily obtain my liberty, when as I should request it of him by the memory of the infortunate *Axiamira*.

*Soliman*, moved with my words, fetched a great sigh, and testified both by his carriage and his discourse, that he was afflicted for the loss of the Princess; and yet that he had some joy, in regard he could hope that *Mustapha* was not so faulty as he had believed him to be, and that in the end he might justify himself. In this thought, the *Sultan* spake very gently unto me; and truly I must acknowledg, that I never saw a more charming Majesty, then that of this Prince. But, generous *Ibrahim*, of how short a continuance was that happy instant! for you must know, that *Rustan*, the wickedest of men, set forth with *Soliman's* consent at that very time, when as *Mustapha* was sent for to come to the Camp: but he went to *Amasia* through a by-way, followed by a thousand archers on horseback; having sent two spies into that Town, to advertise him when *Mustapha* was gone from thence, to the end he might take *Sarraida*, and from her draw out the truth, in case the Prince should deny it: this cunning brain imagining, that a jealous woman would be capable of telling all. But the principal subject of that voyage, was to seize upon the Princess of *Persia*, if the Prince did not bring her along with him; and to search in *Mustapha's* Cabinet for some other Letters from the *Sophi*, which might also convince him of intelligence with the Enemies of the *State*. So that one day after we were parted from *Amasia* *Rustan* arrived there, with an absolute Order, to him that commanded in that place in the absence of *Mustapha*, to obey *Rustan* as if it were his Highness himself. You know, my Lord, that these kind of commands do seldom finde any rebellious in this Empire: and since there have been many times

*Bassa's*

*Bassa's* seen, who have sent their Heads, although they have been Generals of Armies, and that they have been required of them but by one man, accompanied onely with four Mutes; I think you will not think it less strange, that the Governor of *Amasia*, albeit much affected to *Mustapha*, should notwithstanding open him the gates, as soon as he had seen *Rustan's* power, and that too without consulting with Prince *Gianger* thereupon.

I leave you to imagine in what a case this Prince was when he beheld *Rustan* at *Mustapha's* Palace gate, followed by so great a number of armed men. The first thing he did, was to go with speed to *Axiamira's* lodging, either to endeavor the saving of her, or to dye in her defence. But this thought of affection was that, which caused her to be taken the more easily; for *Rustan* had no sooner marked the way which *Gianger* took, but leaving one part of his forces at the gate, he followed the Prince in haste with the other, even to *Axiamira's* chamber, whereinto he entred by force with him. Judg, illustrious *Bassa*, what became of the Princess when she saw *Rustan*, whom she presently knew. Ah base villain! cried she, comest thou now to carry me away forcibly a second time? He must first, said *Gianger* with a great deal of fury, take away my life thus unarmed as I am. I will do neither the one nor the other, answered wicked *Rustan*, who would not be constrained to come to violence against the son of *Roxelana*; but I will onely execute the *Grand Signior's* Order, who hath commanded me to bring him all the papers which shall be found in *Mustapha's* Cabinet. *Sarraida*, who was with *Axiamira*, and knew well enough that there could be nothing found which might be prejudicial to her husband, went her self and shewed him the door of it. In the mean time, to separate *Gianger* from the Princess, *Rustan* told him that he had a matter of importance to communicate unto him; but the Prince answered him, that having no interest severed from *Axiamira*, he might speak before her.

*Rustan* surprized with the liberty of this discourse, began to deal in another manner; and letting *Gianger* see the absolute power which he had, he put the Princess into despair, and *Gianger* into fury, who, without considering that his resistance would render him culpable, left not, quite unarmed as he was, to do strange things in opposition of *Axiamira's* carrying away by force. He would have snatched *Rustan's* scimitar from him, to have used it against him, and doubtless he had done it, if those with whom he was accompanied had not hindered him. He fought all about the chamber for something wherewith he might have defended himself; but at length seeing all his endeavors vain, he past from one extremity to another, and after he had exceedingly reviled him, he on a sudden conjured him with tears in his eyes, that he would have some pity on him in the person of the Princess *Axiamira*; that he would remember he was the son of *Roxelana*, whose daughter he had married, being assured if the *Sultana* his Mother knew his designs, she would approve of them; that he would consider how *Mustapha* coming one day to reign, he could not meet with a better occasion to secure his fortune, then to oblige him in this encounter; that besides, knowing how considerable the interests of the *Sultana* Queen were to him, he found that he should not do her any very good service in conducting a Princess to *Soliman*, with whom he was desperately in love.

To all these things, *Rustan* answered with an insolent coldness; how he remembered very well, that he was the son of *Roxelana*, and for that onely reason *Soliman* should not know of the resistance he made to the execution of his commandments; that he feared not the dis-obliging of *Roxelana* by conducting *Axiamira* to his Highness; since she could be but his Slave, and that *Roxelana* would always be the *Sultana* Queen. His Slave! answered *Gianger* and *Axiamira* both together, surprized with so insolent a speech, that shall never be. I should abuse your patience, if I should repeat unto you all that love, fury, and despair, made Prince *Gianger* say upon this occasion; and all that sorrow and generosity put into the Princess's mouth in so grievous an encounter: but in conclusion they must give way to force, and obey. *Sarraida* also had a command to enter into a chariot with *Axiamira*, which she did without any resistance, as soon as she had obtained, that an onely son, which she had, should not abandon her; but contrarily, she seemed to have some consolation, out of the thought that she was going to meet with her dear *Mustapha* again. As for *Gianger*, *Rustan* told him, that he might do what he pleased, but this Prince was not in an estate to reason upon that he had to do. It is easie for you to comprehend the deplorable condition wherein he found himself, and what the separation was between that Prince and the Princess. He earnestly desired



her to think of her conservation; and to comfort her in some sort, he told her, how he hoped that *Soliman* could not resist her tears; that he had a great and generous soul; and that, provided love did not prove stronger in him than reason, he was most assured that she would remain very well satisfied of him; that in the mean time he promised to do all things possible for her service; and that if by all fortune he saw things desperate, he would despair himself, and at least-wife for the love of her, since he had not been able to live for her. A discourse so tender drew tears from the fair eyes of the Princess, as he assured me afterwards. She reached out her hand to him in turning away her head to conceal her weeping from him, and assured him that whatsoever Fortune could do, she should never destroy the friendship and esteem which she had for him: That she promised him, for a testimony that she would not be ingrateful, to think as much of the conservation of *Mustapha*, as of her own, and not to attempt any thing on her life, if nothing were attempted on her honor. This discourse had lasted longer, if cruel *Russian*, who had been busy in ordering of his men, had not separated them, and caused the Princesses, and the little Prince to part away, whom he placed in the midst of the thousand Archers, which had accompanied him thither. *Gianger* seeing he could enterprize nothing for the saving of the inconsolable *Axiamira*, set himself at least to follow her; and getting instantly to horse, he never lost the sight of her chariot.

Now, my Lord, I have already told you, I think, that *Russian* arrived at *Amasia* the next day after *Mustapha* and I were gone from thence; so that our voyage having lasted a day longer than it should have done, by reason of that breaking of the chariot, whereof, if I be not mistaken, I have spoken to you before; and *Russian* having caused the Princesses to set forth two hours after his arrival; chance, or to say better, our ill fortune, brought the matter about with so strange a justness of time, that at the very same instant, when as I was beseeching *Soliman* by the memory of the Princess *Axiamira*; when as I was lamenting her untimely death, and was all in tears with the grief that I said I was in for her loss, I saw her come in followed by *Serraida*, and conducted by *Russian*, who at the very first named her to the *Grand Signior*. To tell you, generous *Ibrahim*, what a case I was in, and that which this sight effected both in *Soliman's* mind and mine, is absolutely impossible for me: the *Sultan* beheld me with an eye of indignation and fury, and turning himself towards me, he said unto me with a strong and impetuous voice; *Is it in this sort then, that thou justifyest Mustapha? I have known*, continued he, *that justice shall be done to thee as well as to him.* *Serraida*, hearing her husband named, cast her self at *Soliman's* feet, to protest unto him that he was innocent: but he, without hearing or heeding her, turned about to the Princess with a little more civility, and said unto her with a countenance that yet resented the trouble of his soul; *It was then but for Soliman that the Princess of Persia suffered shipwrack! It was but for Soliman that she was dead! or to say better, it is but for the happy Mustapha that she hath escaped the Sea, and is living.* I know very well that the violence of the love, which I was in for her beauty, hath made me commit one against her, which seems to make me unworthy of her affection; but the tears which I have shed for her loss, have thoroughly defaced that crime. In the mean time, O pitiless Enemy! whilst I sigh for her death, whilst I shed tears, and consume my self with grief, the happy *Mustapha* laughs at my tears and sighs, becomes my Rival, or to say better, mine Enemy, and the Enemy of mine Empire, in retaining a person whom I loved, or to regard the matter with another face, in retaining the daughter of mine Enemy; in making secret Treaties with him, and in desiring without doubt to pull me out of my Throne, for to place you and himself there. For to think, that *Mustapha* hath not undertaken from you by what adventure you suffered shipwrack, is that which I will never be persuaded to. To believe, that he hath created this marriage without intending to deprive me of my Crown, is very improbable. I have such proofs of it, as cannot be destroyed, and nothing can make me believe the contrary.

Yet I, my Lord, must undertake to do it, said the generous *Axiamira*, to whom he had still spoken in her own Tongue, and with a discourse, wherein the very truth shall appear, make thee know, that *Mustapha* is not culpable, that *Serraida* is innocent, and that this maid, whom thy Highness beholds with so much choller (said she, in speaking of me) merits extreme praise, for exposing her self to the peril, wherein I finde her, onely to save me. In fine, my Lord, I purpose to shew thee, that if this tempest, which I see is risen in thy soul, cannot be appeased without falling on the head of some one, it must be upon mine, for that I am the only

only cause of the troubles of thy mind. But do not believe, that in hearing me acknowledge this innocent crime, I have forgotten thine, or that I am base enough to flatter thee: no, no, I still remember that I am the *Sophi's* daughter, and that with a usage unworthy of my condition one of thy Slaves carried me away by force. But whereas the preservation of him that I love is dearer to me than mine own, I will not speak to thee in this occasion but of those, in favor of whom Nature speaks to thee as well as I.

*Rustan*, fearing then lest *Soliman* should be moved with the tears and discourse of *Axiamira*, was so audacious as to interrupt her, and demand of the *Sultan*, what greater proof he would have against *Mustapha*, then the supposition he had made him, in bringing him *Felixana* for *Axiamira*? but he would be sure, out of the design he had to undo that deplorable Prince, not to speak a word, how he knew, at the taking of *Axiamira*, that *Gianger* alone was in love with her. This discourse of his repossest *Soliman's* mind with anger, so that notwithstanding *Sarraida's* tears, notwithstanding any reasons *Axiamira* could alledge, or any supplications she could make, we no longer saw but marks of fury and jealousy in the eyes of *Soliman*. He commanded guards to be set upon us, without permitting *Axiamira* to undertake the justification of *Mustapha*: and expressly forbid that any body should speak with us. *Rustan* came himself to see this Order observed: but when we went out of the *Grand Signior's* Tent, to go to that whither they were conducting us, we encountred *Gianger*, whom the *Caspigis* had not suffered to enter at such time as we were carried in. This Prince, seeing us all in tears, approached to *Axiamira*; Well then, Madam, said he unto her, what, am I to resolve of my life, have you been ill-intreated, and *Mustapha* is he convicted of my crimes? Is it to the *Serraglio*, or to prison, that they are leading you? In fine, acquaint me with your destiny, and that of my dear brother, to the end I may regulate mine by yours, and that thereupon I may form my designs, and take my resolutions. *Rustan*, who would not suffer this conversation, neither would incense the spirit of this young Prince, before his intentions were accomplished, for fear he should be carried to some violence, answered him, that *Soliman's* anger would be appeased, that patience would overcome him; and lest he should be offended if he came to know it, that it was fit he should forbear speaking to *Axiamira*, because he had expressly forbidden it, and that without exception. I am undone, replied *Gianger*, love or choller hath been the cause of this Command, and howsoever it be, I am equally unhappy. Comfort your self, said the Princess to him, and be sure that *Axiamira* will never do any thing unworthy of her birth, of her courage, and of the esteem which you have of her: But in the mean time if it be possible endeavor to assist Prince *Mustapha*.

*Rustan*, seeing this conversation continue still, committed the Princesses and me to the custody of them that accompanied him; but *Sarraida* intreated him, that her son might at least be restored to her; for he would not let *Soliman* see him for fear he should have been moved with it: this cruel man granted her this grace, out of the doubt he was in, lest her cries and lamentations should have caused some tumult amongst the Soldiers if they had heard them. As for him, he stay'd with *Gianger*, to whom he said so many things, to pacifie him, and to make him believe, that the more patient he was, the more submission he shewed, and the more confidence he put in the goodness of *Soliman*, the more would he make it appear in this occasion, as any other then *Gianger* would have been deceived therewith. But he, who knew the cunning of this Traytor, had not followed his counsels, if the vertuous and prudent *Achmat*, who came to them at that very time, had not counselled him the same thing, though it was with a very different intention. He promised him to go to *Soliman*, for to endeavor the appeasing of his fury; and intreated him that in the mean time he would repair to his Tent, without permitting any body to see him; as well because he was come to the Camp without the Emperors order, as for fear lest some violent spirit should make him alter his resolution, assuring him that after he had been with the *Sultan*, he would come and give him an account of what he had done. *Gianger* would fain have spoken with his vertuous friend in private, to have discovered unto him his love, and his brothers innocence, but it was impossible for him. Not being able to do otherwise then, he went to *Achmat's* Tent, there to attend his return, with a great deal of grief and impatience. He saw his brother accused and in danger for the love of him, his sister in law in prison, and his Mistress in the hands of his father and his Rival, and of a Prince that was both the Lover and the Enemy of *Axiamira*. He equally feared the hatred and the love of *Soliman*, and there was not any of all the passions, of whose effects he was not

afraid in this grievous encounter. As indeed they reigned one after another in the soul of *Soliman*; and never was the heart of a man tormented with such strange uncertainty, as good *Achmat* told us afterwards. Fatherly love inspired him sometimes with clemency and pity, then suddenly the love of *Axiamira*, accompanied with jealousy, brought fury, hatred, anger, and cruelty into his heart. When he regarded *Mustapha* as his son, he sought to excuse him; but as soon as he considered him as his Rival, he resolved he should perish: Reason of State furnished him with means for that, he saw him black all over with crimes; he had a secret commerce with the Enemies of the Empire; he had treated with *Tachmas* about his marriage; he had retained his daughter in his hands; and for a last fault, he had been so daring as to put a counterfeit upon him. All these things nevertheless, though very strong against *Mustapha*, since he believed them to be all true, could not have lost him for all that, without *Rustan's* wicked counsel.

The generous *Achmat* did his uttermost endeavor to oppose it; he represented to *Soliman* the affection which he had always born to that Prince; the brave things he had done; the rare qualities that were in him; the little likelihood there was, that he would blemish so fair a life with so detestable a Treason; that assuredly there was something concealed in this affair which could not be comprehended; that at the least it was to be well examined, and not condemn the lawful Successor of the Empire without hearing his Excuses or Reasons; that he should be obliged to condemn himself by the acknowledgment of his crime; and that far from judging him, without hearing his Justifications, he held that it stood with the greatness and goodness of his Highness, suppose he were guilty, to pardon him his fault, so as he confessed it with repentance; and *in fine*, that in remembering he was a King, he should not forget he was a father. It was with such like Reasons, that *Achmat* sought to move the heart of *Soliman*: but the Traytor *Rustan*, without giving the *Grand Signior* leisure to answer, drew venom out of all these fair flowers, and undid the unfortunate *Mustapha* with the same Reasons wherewith *Achmat* had defended him. He answered him, that the more *Soliman* had loved him, the more ingrateful he was in betraying him; that the brave things he had done, were not so much for the good of the Empire, as for the ruine of it, since he did not make use of the reputation he had gotten, and of the rare qualities which were in him, but to suborn the Commanders and Soldiers, and prepare them for a Revolt, when need should require, as *Soliman* had been well advertised of it a good while before; that moreover, *Mustapha* did not believe he should stain his reputation, in going about to set the Crown on his own head, without staying till the death of the Emperor should give it him lawfully, seeing there were domestic Examples of such like things in the *Othoman* Family, which seemed to authorize it; that the lives of Kings and Fathers had not always been sacred and inviolable to their ambitious children: whereby this wicked man denoted, without naming him, cruel *Selim*, the father of *Soliman*, who had made away his; to the end, that an example so fresh and sensible might make the more impression in his Soul, and might give him a stronger and juster fear of his son; that this affair was no way intricate to them who had nothing else in recommendation but the *Sultan's* interest; that the knowledge of the matter being so certain, *Soliman* was not to expose himself to the hazard of being vanquished by the motions of Nature in seeing his son, for fear of being vanquished a second time by him in a more dangerous manner; that it was not necessary *Mustapha* should condemn himself by his own confession, since the Laws condemned him; that clemency indeed was a great virtue, but less needful than justice; that it was never to be made use of but towards the weak, and the other to be always exercised against the mighty; that in the estate wherein things were, *Mustapha* could not be saved without putting the Empire in danger; that he would forget the grace which had been done him, and would ever remember the wrongs which he would think he had received; that having acted before out of love and ambition, he would act thence-forward out of love, ambition, hatred, and revenge; that *in fine*, there was no other choyce, but either to save *Mustapha* and lose *Soliman*, or lose *Mustapha* and save *Soliman*, which according to his sense was the juster; that the *Sultan* had other sons to fill up the place of *Mustapha*, but that there was none that could well fill up the place of *Soliman* if he were lost. *Achmat* rendered not himself to so pressing a discourse; and though the maintaining of *Mustapha's* cause, after that which *Rustan* had said, was almost to declare himself culpable, yet he did it with earnestness, albeit to no purpose: For jealousy troubling the Judgment of *Soliman*, and stifling



all the motions which Nature and Vertue inspired him with, believing withall that his son was absolutely guilty, fury transported him in such sort, as approaching to *Rustan*, and speaking softly to him, he pronounced the deadly and bloody sentence against the deplorable Prince, and gave him order to go and see it executed.

I leave you to judge, my Lord, whether this wicked man gave *Soliman* any leasure to repent him of so cruel and unjust a Commandment? or whether contrarily, he posted not with an extream precipitation to obey him? *Achmat* perceived well by his countenance, that the order which he had received was not displeasing to him; but he did not suspect, that the matter would have gone so hastily on: so that albeit he was in some unquietness at this proceeding; yet desired he to make profit of his absence, and stay by *Soliman*. He no sooner saw himself alone with him, but he undertook the defence of *Mustapha* again, when as *Soliman* in choller charged him to speak no more to him of him. Whereupon *Achmat* would have retired, but the *Sultan* commanded him to stay, and fell a walking, sometimes very fast, sometimes more leasurely; one while he stood looking on *Achmat*, without saying any thing unto him; by and by he lifted up his eyes to Heaven, then suddenly turned them down to the ground; at last, after so violent an agitation both of body and mind, he leaned on *Achmat*, and beholding him with more marks of grief then of anger, Must I, said he unto him, after I have lived until now, exempted from all the crimes of my Predecessors, be constrained by *Mustapha* to lay a stain upon my life? and must it be said of me, that I have dipt my hands in the blood of my son? *Achmat*, surprized with this discourse, and willing to make use of so good a motion, cast himself at his feet, and said so much unto him, that (neither his Reasons, nor the good nature of this Prince, being any longer combated by the malice of *Rustan*) he told him with tears in his eyes, that he feared he had been but two well obeyed, and that his repentance came but too late. And then after he had confessed unto him the Order he had given *Rustan*, he commanded him to go with all speed to revoke it. But, my Lord, there was no more time for it, because as soon as *Rustan* had gotten permission to exercise his cruelty, the wicked man had taken four Mutes along with him, having each of them a Bow-string in his hand, for in that manner it is, as you know, that the children of the Royal Family are here put to death, and carried them to the Tent of *Mustapha*, from whom at the first they had required his Seymitar, which he had given them without resistance. This Tyger staying without the Tent with them that had accompanied him, as well to keep any body from entering, as to hear what this miserable Prince would say in breathing out his last, his Executioners began to attempt the accomplishing of their charge.

When *Mustapha* first saw these four Mutes enter, he made no doubt but he was lost; yet being strong and courageous, he could not resolve to suffer himself to be strangled without some defence. The first that would have put the string about his neck, he layd at his feet; the like he did to the second; and having put himself in a posture that he could not be seized upon behind, he not a little troubled his Executioners. He had already taken three of their strings from them, and it may be he might have defended himself so long, till *Achmat* might have arrived soon enough, had not the Traytor *Rustan* put his head into the Tent, and by signs threatened the Mutes to do their duty. *Mustapha*, hearing this voyce, and knowing it, left his Executioners to go to *Rustan*; which was the cause that those four men falling all upon him, overthrew him the more easily to the ground, and put the string about his neck. This deplorable Prince had the leasure yet to say in struggling with them (as some of them who accompanied *Rustan* have reported) Do so much at least wise, thou cruel man, that I may be the only sacrifice to appease the rage of *Roxelana*; and that my death may obtain the lives of *Gianger*, *Sarraida* and *Axiamira* of *Soliman*. With these last words, which interceded for mothers life, *Mustapha* lost his own; and in his person dyed one of the greatest and most excellent Princes of the World. The people have bruted abroad, how by a communication that was there, from *Soliman's* Tent to *Mustapha's*, that Prince had the cruelty to excite the Mutes to strangle his son; but very far from that, *Achmat* arrived within a moment after *Mustapha* expired, who, as I have told you, came to change the fatal Order, which *Rustan* had but two well executed. This Prince was no sooner dead, but *Rustan*, as if some glory would have redounded to him by so barbarous an act, went to render *Soliman* an accompt of it, without knowing ought of the alteration of his mind; for *Achmat* had been so surprized and afflicted to find this Prince, to whom he was bringing life, already dead, as he had not said any

any thing to him of a matter, which could then serve to no purpose.

This first motion of sorrow being over, the virtuous *Achmat* believed that he owed the conservation of *Gianger* to the memory of *Mustapha*; he went then with speed to him, for fear lest being acquainted with this lamentable news by another, he should take some strange resolution. In the mean time the report of this death being spread over the Camp, all the *Jannizaries* came flocking to *Mustapha's* Tent, where finding him dead, they rendered him all the testimonies of grief, which affectionate Soldiers could render to their General. All the Commanders did the like; there were nothing but cries and lamentations; some threw themselves upon his body, and embracing him wet him with their tears; others said aloud, that they must revenge his death, tear out *Rustan's* heart, remove *Soliman* from his Throne, go and burn *Roxelana* in her *Serraglio*, and declare *Mustapha's* son Emperor, though he was but a child. Some again, less violent and seditious, threw down their arms, made a vow never to bear any, and having thereof framed as it were a Trophy, which they erected to the virtue of this Prince, they layd his body upon it, and abode round about it weeping the loss they had sustained. Never was there a more general consternation seen; all the Soldiers continued four and twenty hours without eating: and if the prudence of *Achmat* had not shewed it self in this occasion, *Soliman's* Throne had been overturned, and his person in danger. As for us, we heard indeed a great noise, but it was impossible for us to comprehend what it might be: and they whom *Rustan* had left to guard us were so faithful unto him, as they would not clear it unto us. We imagined with our selves, that peradventure Prince *Gianger*, having made one part of the Soldiers to rise, endeavored to deliver *Mustapha*, to the end he might come afterwards and deliver us also; and in this estate we were between fear and hope. In the mean while *Rustan* was gone back to *Soliman*, who seeing him enter alone, demanded of him what *Mustapha* said of his clemency. My Lord, answered he mightily surpris'd, *Mustapha* is no longer in a condition ever to say any thing to thy Highness that may displease thee. Ah! unfortunate that I am, and most base as thou art, continued *Soliman*, how readily hast thou obeyed me in a wicked action? He asked him then whether he had not seen *Achmat*; and having understood that he arriv'd not till after the death of the Prince, he shewed such excessive grief, as the like was never seen. *Rustan* amaz'd at so sudden a change, would have represented unto him, how much this death assur'd the quiet of his Empire; but the *Sultan*, exceedingly moved with choller, chas'd him from his presence, and forbad him for ever appearing before him again.

In the mean time *Soliman* not knowing whom to make his moan to about his crime and his misfortune, commanded *Achmat* to be sent for again to him. He was sought for, and found with Prince *Gianger*, much busied in moderating the violence of his grief, for he had acquainted him with the death of his brother. These two Princes had always loved so dearly together, as never was there a more perfect and dis-interested amity then theirs; so that it is easie to imagine the despair *Gianger* was in, when he knew not only that his brother was dead of a violent death; but that which touch'd his heart more nearly, that he dyed for his sake, without being culpable of any thing, but of too much loving him. Ah! my Lord, that I could repeat vnto you all that this afflicted Prince said in so lamentable an adventure! but you will see but two well the repentment he had of it, by one only action of his, without my insisting on the relation of his discourse unto you.

*Felixana*, observing that *Axiamira* and *Ibrahim* had their cheeks all bedew'd with tears, as well as she, told them, that it was not time yet to shed them all; for, Madam, said she to the Princess, you know that I have that still resting to deliver, which is not unworthy of your sorrow, and which without doubt will possess this illustrious *Bassa* with pity and grief. Whereupon she held her peace to wipe her eyes, and to give them leisure also to do as much; and when her sighs and theirs had had all the liberty could be required for them, and that a sad and heavy silence had renew'd their attention, she proceeded in this sort. *Achmat* having receiv'd the *Sultan's* command for his repair to him, thought it was fit for him to obey: He left Prince *Gianger* then in the guard of five or six of his followers, with order carefully to observe him, and not to leave him out of their sight. In going from his Tent to the *Grand Signior's* he discern'd the beginning of a Tumult amongst the Soldiers, he heard not onely their lamentations and their cries, but also the propositions which they made, against *Rustan*, and even against the Emperor himself: So that being come to him, and per-

perceiving by his tears and discourse his true repentance for his violences, he represented unto him, how it was requisite for his safety, and for the good of the Empire, that he should shew unto all his Soldiers the sorrow he was in for the death of *Mustapha*; That he could not do it better, then in taking care to preserve that which had been dear to him in his life-time; to which effect he was to give a place of retreat to *Sarraida*, have a good regard of *Axiamira*, and labor to appease the grief of *Gianger*, who was come with them to the Camp, and whose affliction was so great, as it was capable of putting him into despair.

*Soliman* not knowing what to do in this occasion, retained *Achmat* with him, and sent to offer *Gianger*, by the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, all *Mustapha's* Governments. But this excellent Prince, abhorring the enriching of himself with the spoils of a brother, who was dead for the love of him, generously refused them: demanding no other portion of *Soliman*, said he, then the same firing, wherewith his brother was strangled. At the same instant the *Sultan* was advertised, how the Soldiers, who knew not that *Sarraida* was in *Rustan's* Tent, thro't on by the fury that mastered them, were going to set it on fire. So that to hinder this mischief, *Soliman* sent *Achmat* to let the Soldiers understand, how *Sarraida* was in that Tent, and that in seeking to revenge *Mustapha*, they were upon the point of burning his wife and his son. But to take from them an object, which might exasperate their grief, *Achmat* held it convenient, not to leave *Axiamira*, *Sarraida*, or *Mustapha's* son any longer in the Camp; so that having drawn *Soliman* to like of it, and kept the Soldiers from offering any violence to the place where we were, he came to *Axiamira* to assure her from *Soliman*, that she should be entreated by him with the respect which was due to her condition; and that in attending till they might advise what was fit to be done therein, he desired her she would be pleased to suffer her self to be conducted to *Constantinople*. As for *Sarraida*, he told her with tears in his eyes, that the *Grand Signior* permitted her to chuse a retreat, in what place of his Empire she would; assuring her, that he would have as much care of protecting her, as he had had violence in the person of *Mustapha*. *Sarraida* no longer doubting of the death of her dear husband after this discourse, and *Axiamira* being but too well assured of it as well as she, they both of them said things, that were stronger then the constancy of *Achmat*. He wept with these two great Princesses, and recounting to them the matter as it had past, excusing *Soliman* as much as he could, he made them comprehend that *Rustan* was the cause of all this mischief.

In the mean time *Axiamira*, in the midst of her affliction, demanded news of *Gianger*; and after she had been assured that he lived, and that the *Grand Signior* had none but good thoughts for him, she craved pardon of the infortunate *Sarraida* for having been the cause of her miseries; and made this discourse with so much tenderness and grief, as *Sarraida* her self was moved with her resentment. *Mustapha's* son yet further augmented the Princesses displeasure; for albeit this child had not attained to the tenth year of his age, he seemed to be so afflicted for the loss of his father, and said such generous and reasonable things, as it might be said, that he would have as much resembled him in the qualities of the minde, as in the features of the face, if Fortune had permitted him to live. He assured *Sarraida*, that he would one day revenge the death of his father; he grieved that he had not so much strength as courage, and that he could give her nothing but tears in this occasion.

I should never have done, my Lord, if I should repeat all this conversation unto you: but in the end *Achmat* having assured *Axiamira*, that it was not to the *Serraglio* they would conduct her, and having made her apprehend, that she would be better at *Constantinople*, then in the Camp: he also caused *Sarraida* to promise, that she would conserve her self for her son. So that being resolved for that which they could not avoyd, the Princesses consented to their voyage, and *Sarraida* chose the Town of *Prusa* for her retreat, not enduring to return unto *Anafia*. *Achmat* commanded charets to be brought, appointed men for their convoy, and offering his assistance to the two Princesses, *Axiamira* earnestly requested him to have a care of Prince *Gianger*, and to assure him, that she esteemed her self infinitely unhappy in being the cause of his misfortunes. After this, *Sarraida* and she bid one another adieu, or to say better, they onely mingled their tears together, and with that dumb and sad language took their eternal farewell. *Sarraida* was put into her charret almost in a swoon, and *Axiamira* entered into that which was prepared for her, so besides her self, as I beleaved she would have dyed in my arms.



In the mean space the preparation for our departure had not been made so secretly, but that the bruit thereof was spread over the Camp: and whereas news do change the further they go from him that first delivers them, it was noised amongst the most part of the Soldiers, That they were conducting *Axiamira* to the *Serraglio*; that *Soliman* purposed to repudiate *Roxelana*, and declare the Princess *Sultana* Queen. In this belief they testified so much joy, by reason of the hatred they bare to *Roxelana*, as being an Enemy to *Mustapha*, that though she was the mother of *Giangier*, yet knowing how dearly he had loved his brother, some amongst them went inconsiderately to declare this false and deadly news unto him. He no sooner heard it, but he beleaved it, and losing the little reason he had resting, he got out like a mad man, spight of them whom *Achmat* had left with him: and without knowing whither he went, he found what he sought for, that is to say, the body of *Mustapha*, which could not yet be drawn out of the Soldiers hands, who had layd it, as I have already told you, upon a great heap of their arms. As soon as *Giangier* approached to it, they made way for him to pass through them; and redoubling their cries and lamentations, some of them offered him to revenge this death, and all of them together protested that they would have the same affection for him they had had for his brother. But he, without harkening to their complaints, their offers, or their prayers, throws himself upon his brothers body, wets him with his tears, then looking round about him, as it were to seek for something, he espied a dagger amidst that great number of arms, which he layd hold on; and then lifting up his voyce, with a more quiet countenance then before, Let some of you, O Soldiers (said he) if the memory of *Mustapha* be dear unto you, declare unto *Soliman*, that in giving my brother his death, he hath put this steel into my hand; and let the Princess of *Persia* know also, that I did not dye till I had lost the hope of possessing her: saying this, he stab'd the dagger into his heart, no body being able to prevent him, and fell down dead upon the body of his brother. Alas! my Lord, I know this truth but too well; for by ill fortune, the charret wherein we were pass'd so neer to that place, as I saw *Giangier* when as he stab'd himself. This sight, and this action then made me give a great shriek. Is there (said the Princess unto me, who did not look that way) some more new misfortune befallen us? Ah! Madam, said I unto her, the greatest that can happen to you in the estate wherein you are. We heard a redoubling then of the wailings, lamentations, and cries of the Soldiers, who making the name of *Giangier* to resound all about, said so much of his death, as they had acquainted her but too well what this misfortune was, without putting me to the trouble of telling it her. She commanded the charret, wherein we were, to stand still; but the confusion was so great, and the noise so dreadful, as her Order could not be heard; besides, they that conducted us, took such care to get us speedily out of the Camp, as I beleve if they had heard what she said, they would not have obeyed her; so that we went away in this manner, without more particularly knowing the death of this miserable Prince: having not learnt all that I have recounted unto you, and all that I shall tell you hereafter, till we came hither, where the generous *Achmat* imparted it unto us.

It is easie, my Lord, to comprehend, what the grief of *Axiamira* was; That great and generous Soul, which never fainted under her own misfortunes, found it self then too weak, to support those of another. For though love had no place in her heart, amity, compassion, and the obligations wherein she stood engaged to Prince *Giangier*, produced the same effects in her upon this occasion. What said she not to testify her affliction! or to say better, what did she not that she might not survive this last mishap! she absolutely declined the care of her preservation, she refused to eat, and I dare say, she would never have resolved to live, if with my tears and prayers I had not conjured her not to leave me in the hands of a Prince, which might entreat me as one culpable. It was not because I was possess'd with that fear; but seeing this Princess no way sensible of her own conservation, I beleaved, that the same generosity, which made her despise her life, to lament anothers misfortune, would induce her to preserve it for the easing of mine. As indeed, after that she suffered me to take a care of her, and without abandoning her grief, she resolved to attend death, and not to seek it.

We in this sort arriv'd at this place where we are; and where afterwards we understood, that *Giangier* had no sooner stabbed himself to the heart with a dagger, but the Soldiers affliction, anger, and fury redoubled far more. They which had thrown down their Arms took them up again, maugre the vow which they had made, and testified by their threats, that they

they had strange designs. It seemed to them that they had a second time lost *Mustapha* in the person of *Gianger*, for the love of these two Princes was so generally known, as they regarded him as another himself. This tragique news was instantly carry'd to the *Sultan*, who received it with so much grief, as the abundance of tears which he shed in that occasion hath almost defaced his crime; and if *Achmat* had not provided for his conservation, he would peradventure have let the Soldiers gorge drink their fury, without applying any remedy unto it. But whereas he was faithful unto him, and had no less prudence than affection, he counsell'd him not to conceal his tears, to shew himself to the *Janizaries*, and with his presence to calm a storm, which certainly had caus'd some strange disorder, if this wise servant had not dissipated it. For the matter went so far, notwithstanding *Achmat's* providence, that the Soldiers who would revenge the death of *Mustapha* and *Gianger*, seeing one part of their companions content themselves with weeping, and not take up Arms against their Sovereign as they did, assaulted them with such violence, as the others being constrained to defend themselves, there was so terrible a confusion in this fight, that the two parties could not be distinguished; and with an enraged fury they killed one another, not knowing wherefore. Already some of them were preparing to go to the *Grand Signior's* Tent, when as he caus'd it to be published over all the Camp, that he deprived *Rustan* of all his Commands, and gave them to the generous *Achmat*. This Declaration suspended the fury of the Soldiers, who not withstanding their despair and rage, soon quitted their Arms, to go and gather up the money which was thrown amongst them; *Achmat* having caus'd this largess to be given them from the *Grand Signior*, as it were for a recompence of the zeal they had shew'd to the Princes. This present liberality made them forget that of *Mustapha*; and the very same Soldiers, who would have carry'd fire even to the Emperors Tent, cryed, *Long live the Sultan*, a quarter of an hour after, when as in person he made a turn about the Camp. He commanded the bodies of the two Princes to be put into one Coffin, and the same being plac'd in a Charet covered with black velvets, he ordain'd them to be carry'd to *Constantinople*, and laid in the same tomb, which he had prepar'd for himself near to the Mosque he had built. He willed also that the said Charet should be attend'd upon by half of his Army, and that this funeral pomp should be celebrated with the same magnificence, as if it had been of an Emperor that had dyed in the Wars. As for himself, he had a purpose to have gone to *Mecqua* to expiate his fault, and to pray unto God and the holy Prophet for the Souls of the Princes: but the affairs of *Persia* pressing him, he contented himself with going to *Jerusalem*, where he gave so many testimonies of his repentance and grief, as it was easie to know, that this Prince had not acted by his own inclinations.

But, my Lord, whilst *Soliman* gives marks of the sorrow he is in for his violence, *Roxelana* repents her not of her wickedness, and far from having so good a motion, she thinks of new cruelties. I have told you, if my memory fail not, how *Rustan* was chased from *Soliman's* Tent, but I have not told you what became of him afterwards: You must understand then, how having executed that which *Roxelana* had so ardently desired, he thought it was not fit for him to expose himself inconsiderately, and that having nothing more to do there for the service of the *Sultana*, he might go and render her an account of his doings. He parted immediately then as secretly as possibly he could; but he stay'd nevertheless at the first Town he came to, where one of his servants, whom he had given in charge about it, came and acquainted him with all that had been done in the Camp; I mean, the revolt of the Soldiers, the death of *Gianger*, *Soliman's* extream repentance, the retreat which *Sarraida* had chosen, and briefly all that had pass'd there. This cruel man, fully inform'd of all things, went with all speed to *Roxelana*, and as he related it himself, as *Achmat* hath told us, although she was acquainted both at one time with the death of *Gianger*, and that of *Mustapha*, yet the loss of this last comforted her for that other, albeis he was her own son. There remained an inquietness yet in her minde, the blood of *Mustapha* had not fully satisfied her rage; she would also have the life of his son, to the end the race of him might be utterly abolished. So that to content this horrible desire, she told *Rustan*, that knowing the power she had over the spirit of *Soliman*, he might believe that she would appease his anger, and that it would be easie for her to re-establish him in his commands; but he must first deal in such sort, as the race of *Mustapha* might be quite extinguish'd in the person of his son. *Rustan*, who never found any thing difficult, when it concern'd the committing of crimes, not onely promised it to her, but executed it.

Scarcely had *Sarraida* been two months at *Prusa*; scarcely had she had leisure to dry up her first tears, when as the Traytor *Rustan* gave her a new cause of weeping. He went disguised

to the parts about *Prusa*, and from thence sent to *Sarraida* one of the ministers of his fury, who was his Slave, and who made shew that he was come to this excellent Princess from the *Grand Signior*, to assure her of the continuance of his good-will and protection. He also brought presents to her son, as being gages of the *Sultan's* affection. He told her further, that his Highness would make *Mustapha* revive in the person of this young Prince; and that he commanded her to have a great care of his health and education. This unfortunate mother, who knew by the publique voyce how much *Suliman* seemed to repent him of his violence, suffered her self to be perswaded that all which this wicked man said was true. In the mean time he thinks of executing his design any way whatsoever; and seeing it was hard for him to remove this young Prince from *Sarraida*, either to finde means to poison him, or to do any violence in a Town, where the memory of *Mustapha* was in so much veneration, he thought him to perswade *Sarraida* that she would accustom her self to take the ayre, for fear lest keeping always in that fort within doors, her melancholly should pass unto her son, and so prove prejudicial to his health. After he had gotten this Princess to yeeld unto that which he desired, he propounded to her a thing, which, very much agreeing with her sad and heavy humor, seemed to be a very fit and pleasing entertainment for her; which was to go and see the *Grand Signior's* Tombs, that were four or five miles distant from this Town, and whose stately Mosques are to this day very carefully maintained. Now, my Lord, that which induced this Traytor to give *Sarraida* this counsel, was, that having suborned him, who was to drive her Charet, he had broken the axle-tree of it, not quite through, but in such a manner, as he foresaw how upon their arrival at a very difficult passage, which was just in the midst of the way, that which he expected would assuredly come to pass, as indeed the matter succeeded accordingly. In helping the Princess into her Charet, he perswaded the young Prince to go with him on horseback, who, according to the custom of children, was ravished with this proposition. *Sarraida*, out of a thought of tenderness, or it may be out of an instinct that advertised her of her misfortune, opposed it as much as she could; but seeing her son afflicted at it, and that this man promised her to hold him in his arms, and to have a great care of him, she consented to it. She was no sooner out of the Town, but this Traytor who carried the young Prince, began to get before, and by little and little going farther from the Charet, as if he had not done it of purpose, *Sarraida* lost the sight of him.

This unfortunate Princess seeing her son no longer, began to fear without knowing wherefore, whereupon she commanded her Charet-man to drive as fast as he could, but whereas he was suborned, he obeyed not at first, howbeit she threatened him in such anger, as he was constrained to do what she would have him; but this speed was that which retarded her design the more: for the axle-tree (as I have told you) being half broken, and the Charet going violently on, it broke sooner then otherwise it would have done. *Sarraida*, beholding it overturned, and no longer seeing her son, never consulted on that which she was to do; so that abandoning her Charet, and walking on foot, followed by two women that accompanied her, she continued in the way which she had taken, with a trembling of her heart, and an extreme grief. And whereas she was carried by affection, she went so fast, as but one of her women could follow her. She arrived then neer to the *Grand Signior's* Tombs, but alas! what was the object which she encountered there? she beheld her son strangled, still warm, panting, and almost in the last pangs of death. This deadly spectacle touched her in so strange a manner, as she fell down as it were dead upon the body of her son.

In the mean time he that had driven *Sarraida's* Charet, being returned to the Town, and the remorse of his crime making him to answer those from the purpose which demanded of him where the Princess was, a great part of the Town, men and women, went themselves to learn some news of her, so much was this vertuous Princess beloved in that place. They found her still in a swoon, neither the woman that served her, nor another that was come thither by chance, and had seen the death of *Mustapha's* son, having been able to bring her to her self again. The care which they altogether took about her, got her to open her eyes, and so far to recover the use of reason, as to understand from the woman, which she found there, with what constancy that young Prince had resolved to dye. She recounted unto her, how going to *Prusa*, and feeling her self weary, she had rested her self in one of the Niches of the Mosque, and that being fallen asleep there, she was wakened with a noise that an horse made; that she had seen a man holding this young child in his arms, who as soon as he was alighted had



had shewed him a Bow-string, and had told him that he had a Command from the *Grand Signior* to put him to death; that upon this discourse the child was no whit daunted, and said, that it was not *Soliman*, but Heaven that would have it so, and that therefore there was nothing more resting for him but to obey, and yield his neck to him, as he had done with a marvellous constancy; that for her part, she had done what she could to hinder so horrible a fact, but it was impossible for her; that as soon as the child was dead, his Executioner got to horse, and fled away with all speed; that afterwards she could not find in her heart to abandon this poor unfortunate child, for fear lest some wilde beast should devour him. *Sarraida*, having heard this woman, first lift up her eyes to Heaven, then casting them down on the body of her son, she suddenly closed them up, without shedding so much as a tear, grief suffocated her in such sort, as all that she could say was, *Mustapha* is dead, and his son is no longer living, let us follow them then willingly, since there is nothing left for us to lose. After this she never spoke more, but dyed in the same place where her son had yielded up the ghost: so that they were both carried back to *Prusa*, where this accident caused so general a mourning, and touched every one so sensibly, as there was not any testimony of affection, or mark of honor, which they of this Town did not render to the Corps of *Sarraida* and her son, which of their own authority they layd in the Sepulchres of the ancient Emperors, a thing without example. The chiefest amongst them went in all haste to pursue the Murtherer of this young Prince, but he was already gotten far enough off with *Rustan*, who no sooner understood that his Commandment was executed, but away he posted to carry *Roxelana* the news of it, who received it with unspeakable joy.

Now whereas the *Sultan* was to arrive within two days, she counselled him to conceal himself, until she had appeased his displeasure. In the mean time she willed him so to order the matter, as it might be believed, that the death of *Mustapha's* son came by the Commandment of *Soliman*, for fear lest he being suspected for it, should draw the peoples hatred upon him, who would easily be perswaded of that which they were willing should be. As indeed, the most part were of that opinion, though it were otherwise; for that Slave of *Rustan's* not long since confessed it on his death bed. *Soliman* at his return understanding the death of *Mustapha's* son, testified a great deal of sorrow and anger for it; but *Roxelana* accustomed to prevail over the spirit of this Prince, with her wiles and tears, told him, that this action it may be was not too much disadvantageous to the quiet of his Empire, for she had been informed, that *Sarraida*, since her being at *Prusa*, had continually inspired her son with thoughts of revenge; that all they of that Town, whensoever he passed through the streets, did nothing but wish him a longer life than his father, to the end he might revenge his death, and mount up to a Throne which appertained unto him; that without doubt some man zealous for his Highness had undertaken this bold action; and therefore according to her sense the Author of it was not to be much looked after. This discourse, which should have begot a suspicion in the mind of *Soliman*, perswaded him, and was so prevalent with him, as there was no further enquiry made of this crime, which confirmed the people in the opinion, that it had been committed by his Order. After this, *Roxelana* did her uttermost endeavor to obtain *Rustan's* grace, but she could not possibly do it. In the mean time the vertuous *Achmat*, having understood more particularly the extream affection, which Prince *Mustapha* and Prince *Gianger* had born to *Axiamira*, to shew how dear their memory was unto him, had obtained the permission to see her, which he hath done as often as his occasions would suffer him. And it is by him also that we have understood, how *Soliman* would not since his return let any body speak to him of business, being in so deep a melancholy, as *Roxelana* her self with all her artifices could not divert him from it.

Behold, my Lord, what hath been the fortune of *Mustapha* and *Gianger*, what is the Princess, and that which she hath commanded me to tell you. It is for you after this, continued *Axiamira*, O generous *Ibrahim*! not only to protect me, as you seem to be willing to do, but to counsel me also: For in the estate wherein things are, I find my misfortune so great, as I know not what to desire. To continue a prisoner as I am, keeps my mind in a continual uneasiness, not simply for the privation of my liberty, but out of the fear I am in, lest *Soliman's* melancholy coming to cease, he should remember that he hath heretofore found something that was agreeable to him in my picture. To wish I may return into *Persia*, *Delimant* will not suffer me, so that not knowing so much as what grace to demand of you, I fear that all

your address, your generosity, and your power, cannot find a remedy to such desperate miseries. It is certain, Madam, answered *Ibrahim*, that it is hard to cure them thoroughly, but not impossible to ease them. And then he assured her, that if he had not lost his credit with *Soliman*, he would obtain one thing of that great Prince, which according to his judgment would cause her to lead a more pleasing life, till Fortune, weary of persecuting her, would permit her to return into *Persia*. The Princess, not able to believe a thing wherein she saw so little likelihood, requested him to tell her by what means he hoped to do that which he said: but our illustrious *Bassa* being loth to acquaint her with his design till he was able to execute it, besought her to dispencc with him for it, and to give him only two days to make good his word unto her. That in the mean time she would live assured, that whatsoever he had hitherto done at the only intreaty of *Ulama*, he would do it from thence forward, out of the sole consideration of her birth, her virtue, and her merit.

After this discourse they parted, *Ibrahim* leaving *Axiamira* and *Felixana* with some consolation, and himself charged with extream grief, to see that this Prince, whom he so dearly loved, had been so weak, as to suffer himself to be carryed to the greatest cruelty that can be exercised, he who out of his own inclination was one of the best Princes of the world. This thought begetting another, the image of others misfortunes so lively represented unto him his own, that he returned to his Palace with so much heaviness, as if some new occasion of afflicting himself had arrived unto him, though, to speak rightly of things, he was capable of no sorrow after that, which he had endured in abscenting himself from *Isabella*.

### The Third Book.

THE next day *Ibrahim* went to the *Grand Signior*, and with a dextrous discourse he gave him to understand, that he had learned what he durst not tell him. But in imparting this to him, he let him see also, that he lamented him without accusing him; and carrying him insensibly to speak of *Axiamira*, he besought him to grant him one grace which he would demand of him in favor of her and *Felixana*. *Soliman* gave not the *Bassa* leisure to explain his desire, but assured him that he might do what he pleased for *Axiamira*; the repentance of his fault, and the remembrance of his misfortune, having so absolutely extinguished the love which he had born her, that if he would even send her back into *Persia*, although she was the daughter of his Enemy, and that she might serve for the good of his affairs, yet would he not refuse to consent unto it. My Lord, answered *Ibrahim*, I pretend to no other grace for *Axiamira*, then to make her change her prison, in obtaining of thy Highness, that she may be sent to *Bitilisa*, and that she may be entreated as a person of her birth. And then to oblige him the more to that which he requested of him, *Ibrahim* acquainted him with the interest which *Ulama* had in *Felixana*: He made it appear unto him also, that his in this occasion was annexed to that of *Axiamira*; that it was requisite he should by his good usage of her justify himself to her, for the violence which *Rustan* had offered her, in carrying her forcibly away against his Highness will: that she would be in his power as well at *Bitilisa*, as at *Constantinople*; but that being nearer to her Country, she would receive the more comfort by it, and might be even the means of an advantageous peace for his Highness.

After all these reasons, *Soliman* answered him, that they were needless, since his entreaty alone sufficed to make him consent to all that he could desire; there being but one onely thing which he could never obtain of him. The *Grand Visier*, not daring to be curious in this encounter, for fear of receiving some distaste by it, contented himself with giving *Soliman* thanks, and omitting no time, he went and gave order to have a stately equipage provided for *Axiamira*. And whereas he was exact in all things, he used such diligence, as the day after all was in the state which he desired it to be. He went the next morning to the Castle of the seven Towers, where in few words he propounded to the Princess her going to *Bitilisa*, whereof *Ulama* was Governor, and where she should have no straiter a prison then the walls of the Town, nor other guard then his and *Ulama*'s faith. He told her moreover, how in that place she should finde every one disposed to serve her, and to render her all kinde of

of obedience, by the order which he would give for it; that means should be settled on her to maintain her like a person of her quality; that there she would be far enough from *Constantinople*, for ever being in fear of *Soliman*, and neer enough to her Country, to keep correspondence with Prince *Mahamed* her brother, and to procure it may be a general peace between those two great Empires. That for his part, he promised her, to be always most careful of her interests, and not to suffer any propositions to be accepted, which the *Sophi* might happen to make for the drawing her out of *Soliman's* hands, unless they were such, as she needed not be longer afraid of the violences of *Deliment*.

*Axiamira*, ravished with the generosity and prudence of *Ibrahim*, rendered him a thousand thanks, and requested him to furnish her with some means, that she might not be altogether ingrateful. You may, Madam, answered he, not only pay me for the services which I intend to do you, but also make me beholding to you all the days of my life, provided you will suffer your self to be persuaded, that his Highness had never any intention to have the Princess of *Persia* be carryed away by force; that he hath not been violent towards *Mustapha* his son, but at the instigation of others; that the onely defect of this Prince is onely a facility, whereof love and his gentle nature are the causes: and that *in fine*, he hath so many rare qualities, as he is not unworthy the esteem of the incomparable *Axiamira*. The affection which you bear to this Prince, replied she, justifies, if not all that he hath done, at least-wise all his intentions. And though he be in some sort the cause of the greatest part of my miseries, yet I promise you, O generous *Ibrahim*, to give credit rather to your words, then to mine own experience; and never to speak of this Prince, but as you speak of him your self. I will complain of Fortune, without murmuring against *Soliman*; and albeit I am resolved to weep all my life-time for the loss of those two illustrious children of his, yet will I not accuse any for it but the cruel *Roxelana*, and the perfidious *Rustan*. This conversation lasted yet a good while longer, and was spent in civility on either part. *Felixana* in her particular gave *Ibrahim* a world of thanks, and assured him she would render *Ulama* an exact account of that which he had done for her, to the end he might help to acknowledg it in publishing it, since they could never acquire themselves of it other-ways. Presently thereupon, the *Grand Visier* took his leave of the Princess, and told her, that she might depart the next morning, if her health would permit her: As indeed all her equipage was ready accordingly, but with such magnificence, as if she had been in *Persia*. This excellent Princess had made her self to be so beloved of them that guarded her, as they could not see her part without abundance of tears, though they very much rejoiced for all that to know, that her prison should not be thence forward so strait. But amongst the rest, *Halima* was so afflicted at it, as she was not to be comforted; she gave her two Slaves, who had always waited upon her during her imprisonment; and *Axiamira*, in recompence thereof, gave her a chain of Diamonds, which she had still kept in all her misfortunes.

In the mean time *Ibrahim* had sent away *Ulama's* Slave, whom he had brought away from the Castle of the seven Towers the day before, to advertise his Master to repair to *Bitilisfa*, if his strength would permit him, there to receive the Princess. But in case he should not be able so to do, he dispatched away another man, with a command from the *Grand Signior* to all the Governors of those Towns, which were upon the road, whereby she was to pass, to render her as much honor, as if she had been the *Sultana* Queen. And the *Grand Visier*, to omit nothing that might be for the Princess of *Persia's* safety, had also commanded five thousand *Janizaries* to be her convoy, whom she found ready attending for her a days march from *Constantinople*. This Princesses journey had as prosperous a success, as *Ibrahim* had wished it should. She was received with a great deal of magnificence at all the places where she passed, and without having any other commodity then that, which the weariness of so long a way might occasion, she arrived at *Bitilisfa*, whither *Ulama*, though very weak of his hurts and sickness, was to come to receive her, and to enjoy the sight of his dear *Felixana*. When as he was advertised of their approach to the Town, he went forth to meet the Princess with half the Garrison; the principal inhabitants of *Bitilisfa* received her at the gate, and conducted her to *Ulama's* Palace, who out of respect had left it to her: so as it seemed that *Axiamira* was the Governess of *Bitilisfa*, rather then that *Bitilisfa* was the prison of *Axiamira*. It is easie to imagine what the joy of these three illustrious persons was at this interview; but very hard to express it well, especially that which *Ulama* felt in find-



ing *Felixana* again living and faithful, after he had beleev'd her to be dead, or inconstant.

But whilst *Ibrahim* asswages other folks sorrows, his love renders him every day more unhappy. The more he sees *Soliman*, the less appearance he sees of obtaining his liberty, which he had resolv'd to demand of him at his departure from *Monaco*. This Prince ceased not daily telling him, that he had been dead if he had not returned; that he was the soul of his Empire; that he could not subsist without him; that six months absence of his had been the cause of more misfortune to him, than he had had in all his life besides; and that *in fine* not being able to live without him, he must resolve to dye with him. To all these particulars the illustrious *Bassa* made no other answer then with low submissions, but by his sighs and silence he testified sufficiently to the *Sultan*, that he express'd not all his thought; and that the sight of his Mistress had rather augmented his love, then diminished his unquietness. Nevertheless, whereas the *Grand Signior* was desirous to avoyd all occasions that might constrain him to refuse *Ibrahim*, he made as though he did not perceive his sadness, but endeavor'd to gain him absolutely, and divert him from his melancholy, by all the honors, by all the liberalities, and all the caresses, that a great Prince can confer on a great Minister. But the more the *Bassa* saw himself oblig'd, the more affliction he had: He received the *Sultan's* presents, as so many new chains, which tyed him unto him; his favors were torments unto him; and though in his heart he lov'd this Prince dearly, yet would he not have been lov'd of him, so certain it is that love is stronger then amity.

In this deplorable estate liv'd *Ibrahim* with an extream constraint; he felt no longer in affairs as he was wont; he declined the world as much as he could; yea the very sight of *Soliman* became insupportable to him; and not daring to desire of him the power to return into *Italy*, out of the opinion he had that he should be deny'd, he sought no longer for any thing but onely solitude. It was not because his grief was the less sensible to him by it, but it was because he knew, that the liberty to bewail ones self is some kinde of consolation to an afflicted person. At length, after he had well consulted with himself, he resolv'd to speak plainly to the *Grand Signior*, with an intent if he were refus'd (as he almost made no doubt but he should) to abandon himself in such sort to grief, as death would be constrain'd to succor him; but he knew not, when he took this resolution, that he could not execute it: for as often as he went to the *Serraglio* for that purpose, *Soliman* with so much address avoyd'd all manner of discourse that might carry the *Bassa* to speak to him of *Isabella*, and always took such care to let him know the necessity he had of his presence, as the *Grand Visier*, no longer doubting, but that *Soliman* would deny him if he demand'd his liberty of him, undertook not to augment his displeasure yet further, by the certainty of an evil, whereof he was already but too well assur'd. He remained then without speaking, and shutting up his thoughts in his heart, he grew to be the melancholickest man in the world. He abandon'd the care of affairs, and making to himself a prison of his Palace, he went no more abroad, but now and then to go to the *Serraglio*, and that too very seldom. His presence, which was wont to charm all *Soliman's* unquietnesses, now begot nothing but grief in him; for he saw him so alter'd, his eyes so sunk into his head, his face so pale, his humor so sad, and his spirit so troubled, as he could not behold him without extream displeasure, but a displeasure which he held to be so much the more just, as he knew it to be the cause of that of our illustrious *Bassa*. He sought nevertheless to deceive himself, by laboring to be perswaded, that peradventure the alteration which he saw in his dear *Ibrahim*, was a malady of the body, as well as of the minde; wherefore he consult'd with a Jewish Physician, and an *Arabian*, about him, who, having some time observ'd the *Bassa* without his being aware of it, judg'd the alteration, which was seen in him, to proceed from some strange cause, discerning no marks or signs of a known disease in him. His frequent sighs, the indifferency which he seem'd to have for li'e, and some interrupted words which he had spoken, when as by *Soliman's* order they went to visit him, perswaded them, that the melancholy, which appear'd in him, was not an effect of his temper, but of some affliction that troubled his mind, and which questionless was deriv'd from some violent passion. After so right and so well-grounded a debate, they told the *Grand Signior* freely, that they could not warrant *Ibrahim's* life; that they were Physicians for the diseases of the body, and not for that of the minde; that in the estate wherein the *Bassa* was, he was to be his own Physician himself; though, according to their opinion, he was in terms, rather of being the cause of his death, then of his health;

health; that for their parts, all they could do with their remedies was to fortify Nature as much as they could; but at length so long and so violent a melancholy would make an end of him, and so much the rather for that the *Bassa*, to be rid of them, said, that he was not sick, and consequently had no need of remedies.

*Soliman* hearing this discourse was extraordinarily grieved at it; but he could easily apprehend the occasion of *Ibrahim's* melancholy. For not seeing any reason that he had to be assisted, but for the absence of the person whom he loved, he was assured that love was the cause of his heaviness. In this opinion he dismissed his Physicians; however he was no sooner alone, but accusing himself for the loss of *Ibrahim*, he was almost resolved to go and ask of him what he would have, (without considering how in this occasion, he deprived himself of the only consolation he had, and of the only person he could love) when as the *Sultana* Queen entered into his chamber, according to the privilege which she had for it. As soon as she looked on him, she knew that he was somewhat troubled in his mind; but where-as she was not able to discern, whether it were an effect of choler, or of affliction, she employed all her address to be cleared therein. *Soliman* had no longer that violent love for her, which had so often blinded him, yet had she still that Empire over him, as he could never refuse her any thing, but the grace of *Rustan*; so that in this occasion he almost suffered himself to be vanquished by her. He confessed not the whole truth unto her, but he told her, that *Ibrahim's* melancholy was the cause of all his sadness; and without imparting to her, that he was a Christian under the habit of a *Turk*, or of what Country he was, he told her further, that being fallen passionately in love with a Christian Princess, whom he had seen, during the voyage which he had made by his order; the grief of being deprived of her presence, and of the hope of possessing her, had brought him even to death's door. Afterwards, he declared unto her the sorrow he was in for it, and how he would give half his Empire to save *Ibrahim*. My Lord, said the *Sultana* unto him, if thou wilt accord me one grace, which I will demand of thee, I will oblige myself to restore thy favorite to his wonted joy. I swear by *Alla*, replied *Soliman*, to accord any thing, so as *Ibrahim* may be saved. My Lord, said she unto him, I will ask of thee but till to-morrow to engage my self absolutely for the performance of that which I have propounded to thy Highness. Although *Soliman* saw no great likelihood in that which the *Sultana* said, yet he found some content in not resolving so soon to be deprived of *Ibrahim*.

In the mean season *Roxelana*, without losing a minutes time, sent *Rustan* word, who lay still concealed in *Constantinople*, to come at the beginning of the night to one of the gates of the *Serraglio*, where he should finde two of her black slaves attending for him, and not to fear repairing thither, because the *Capigibassi*, that kept the gate, was absolutely hers. *Rustan* failed not to be present at this assignation, no more then the Slaves to receive him, and to bring him in. When he was in her chamber, she told him, that whatsoever she could do, it was impossible for her to obtain his grace; and that she thought he would never obtain it, but by some very extraordinary way; that there was one did then present it self, which she would propose unto him, to the end that if he saw any likelihood in it, she would finish that which she had begun; and then she recounted unto him what *Soliman* had said to her, and what she had answered. But it appeared that *Rustan* was better informed of *Ibrahim's* fortune, then she imagined; for this man, who thought of nothing but his re-establishment, had suborned one of the *Grand Vipers* servants, to endeavor to finde out, whether this illustrious *Bassa* were the cause that he was not restored. This servant, suborned by *Rustan*, went often to him to give him account of that which he learned: and the very same day that *Roxelana* had sent for him, he had acquainted him, that *Ibrahim* was in love with a Princess of *Italy*, to whom appertained a Town called *Monaco*; that the grief for being absent from her had made him sick, and would cause his death, if the *Grand Signior* gave him not liberty to return thither to see her; that he had heard all this through *Ibrahim's* chamber door, who talked thereof in private to an *Italian Slave*, whom he very much loved, and whom he had commanded, if he dyed for sorrow, as he seemed not to doubt, to obtain permission of the *Grand Signior* to go and execute his last Will, in carrying a Letter to the Princess whom he loved. *Rustan* having acquainted *Roxelana* with what he knew concerning *Ibrahim*, told her afterwards, that if *Soliman* would be pleased to let him speak with him, he did not doubt but to finde a remedy for the grief of his favorite. It is not, said *Roxelana* interrupting him,

him, because his death would not be more pleasing to me than his life; but for our interest we must do all things; disoblige our friends if occasion require; and oblige our enemies when the service we render them may serve for our designs. We must then, continued she, save *Ibrahim's* life at this time to obtain your re-establishment; and then we will proceed in another manner afterwards, if it be offensive to us. *Roxelana* then propounded unto him the demanding of an Army of *Soliman* to bring away this Princess by force, whose absence caused *Ibrahim's* suffering: but *Rustan* replied, that as long as one could work by address, no recourse was to be had to force; that for him, he knew better how to beguile, than to fight; and in the end, without explaining his design unto her, he promised her to perish, or to bring this Princess to *Constantinople*, provided he might be furnished with a man of war, thoroughly provided; and might be permitted to say, in the places where he should aboard, that he was going to the King of *France*, in the quality of a *Chambler*, from the *Grand Signior*. *Roxelana*, seeing *Rustan* so resolute for this enterprize, sent him away, and told him that the next day he should hear from her: as indeed, she dealt in such sort with the *Grand Signior*, as he promised her the grace of *Rustan*, if he could perform that which she propounded to him; and this Prince resolved even to endure the sight of him, that he might try to render his dear *Ibrahim* happy, without absenting him from him. At first *Rustan* craved pardon of him, but when as *Soliman* pressed him to tell him, which way he hoped to make his design succeed, wherewith *Roxelana* had already acquainted him. My Lord, answered he, I do not think it a harder matter to carry away a Princess of *Italy* by force, than a Princess of *Persia*; wherefore let thy Highness be assured, that if that be given me, which the *Sultana* without doubt hath demanded of thee for me, and that thou wilt make me hope I may re-enter into thy favor, *Ibrahim* shall quickly be the happiest man on the Earth; for wanting nothing to make him so, but the possession of this Princess, I will bring her to him ere it be long, nothing save death alone being able to keep me from performing it. *Soliman* had at the beginning some aversion to this violence; but coming to consider, that it was the onely way to retain *Ibrahim* with him, he forgot all other considerations. So that before he dismissed *Rustan*, he was absolutely resolved to attempt the matter; and therefore he assured him that he should depart within two days: but in the mean time he charged him to entreat the Princess of *Monaco*, who was she that he was to bring away, with the same respect as he was obliged to have for the *Sultana* Queen.

Things being in these terms, the *Grand Signior* caused all *Rustan's* equipage to be made ready, with all the diligence that possibly could be; he furnished him likewise with great store of money and jewels, in case he should have need of it; he had also his dispatch, as if indeed he had been sent to the King of *France*, in the quality of a *Chambler*: and lacking nothing else for his voyage, he set sail in as favorable a season as might be. This happy beginning of Navigation gave no false hopes to the Pilot, who made such use of the advantage of the wind and fair weather, as, his vessel being an excellent sailer, he made this cut with a speed, the like whereof hath not been heard speak of in all the seas of the Levant. *Rustan* approaching to *Monaco*, sent his skiff with one of his servants, and an interpreter, to demand permission of the Princess for his entrance into the Port, there to mend his vessel, which he said was bruised with the fury of the Sea, and he had caused one mast and some of the tackle thereof to be really broken, to the end, if what he desired were not granted, he might have a pretext to stay in that place, and so might be able to seek out some means for the executing of his design. But it happened that the Princess, having been constrained to go to *Genova* for some important reasons, which had obliged her thereunto, was not then at *Monaco*: so that he, who commanded in her absence, answered *Rustan's* messenger, that the Princess at her departure had given him order, to let no man of war enter into the Port, as long as she was not there.

*Rustan* understanding by the return of his skiff that this Princess was not at *Monaco*, seemed at first to be much afflicted at it; but suddenly being of another minde, he thought on the contrary that it would be advantageous to him, since she being questionless to return from *Genova* to *Monaco*, it would be easier for him to carry her away at sea, than out of a Town. He resolved then to go to *Genova*, and shew the *State* his dispatch, to the end he might be the better received by them, and might make his abode there till the Princess should depart from thence to *Monaco*, under colour that he waited for one of his ships, which he would



would say was severed from him by a Tempest. The matter being thus resolved, he executed it accordingly; and taking into the main Sea again, to the end he might be seen to come from the Levant, he sailed to *Genova*, where he was received, not only as the *Grand Signior's Chaux*, as soon as he had shewed his dispatch, but as one sent from a Prince, to whom the Republicque had a great obligation. In the mean time he dextrously enquired after the place where the Princess of *Monaco's* Palace was; and having learnt it out, he made one of his Slaves watch always in the same street to discover, whether any preparations were a making thereabout for a Voyage. He caused some to observe at the Port, whether any Galley were ready to set forth, and all to be informed when she went; In conclusion, he omitted nothing that might serve for his design. He was certain days in this expectation with a great deal of impatience; but Fortune, that would not yet abandon him, furnished him with a far more favorable occasion to carry away the Princess, then that which he attended.

One night, when as he was in his Vessel, which notwithstanding the intreaties of the Senate he would never abandon, after he had heard a dreadful noise of armed men, both at the Port, and in the City, he was advertised by those whom he had sent thither, that all was in confusion there; that the gates were all open; that the Port was no longer closed; and that in this disorder, it could not be comprehended who were the enemies. *Rustan* making profit of this occasion, and others misfortunes, leaves one part of his Souldiers in his Vessel, and followed by the other goes directly to the Princess of *Monaco's* Palace, sets a Petard to the gate, blows it up, enters in with his Forces, and conducted to *Isabella's* lodging by the voyces of her women, who called all the servants of the house to their succor, he forces it, and finds the Princess, who first presented her self, beleiving she should meet with people that could understand her language, and be moved with her prayers: But she was much amazed, when she saw they were *Turks*; whereupon she gave a great skreek, and stepping three or four paces back, she would have fled into a Cabinet, but *Rustan*, who perceived it, retained her, and put her into the hands of his Soldiers, no way doubting but it was the Princess, as well by reason of her good aspect, as of the eagerness which all her women and all her servants shewed in opposing her carrying away. Nevertheless fearing he might be mistaken, he caused *Emilia*, whom he saw to be more richly apparelled then the rest, to be likewise carried away; for although it was night, yet had all the women of *Genova* their clothes on, being risen out of their beds upon the fearful noise they had heard in the City. And then again it was easie for them to carry away *Emilia*, who seeing the Princess born away, did only cry out in the streets as they went along to oblige some to succor them: As indeed there were those, who knowing her voice would have withstood this rape, but it was in vain; for *Rustan* making use both of the valor of his men, of the disorder of the City, and of the darkness of the night, caused these two fair afflicted ones to enter into his Vessel, which had been made ready whilst he was gone to this Execution; and from thence into *Doria's* Galley, whereof the *Turkish* Slaves had rendered themselves Masters: so that he was no sooner aboard it, but causing them presently to weigh Anchor, he made out of the Port, and shaped his course for *Constantinople*.

In the mean time *Ibrahim* still languished, and his grief made him lead so sad and wearisome a life, as the thought of death was the most pleasing to him of any other. *Soliman*, for his part, was in so extreme a melancholy, to see his dear *Ibrahim* suffer so many miseries for the love of him, and the respect which he shewed to him, in not demanding his liberty of him, redoubled his grief far more: nevertheless, how violent soever it was, the desire he had to retain this illustrious *Bassa* still with him, was yet more powerful. The hope of *Rustan's* return did many times diminish his displeasure, but the incertainty thereof permitted him not to be long without inquietness; which augmented much more, when as the Term, which he had imagined in his mind for the execution of this enterprise, was arrived. He beleaved that *Rustan* had suffered Shipwrack; or that his design had been discovered; or that he had been killed; or at least wise retained a Prisoner. He saw that the *grand Viscers* grief abated not; and that the remedy would arrive too late, if the succoring of him was never so little retarded. He had oftentimes a desire to discover *Rustan's* Voyage unto him; but the fear of aggravating his displeasure, in stead of moderating it, straightway restrained him from it. He knew very well, that *Ibrahim* could not chuse but rejoice at the sight of *Isabella*; but he with reason feared, that he would be infinitely afflicted to know that violence should be offered to the person he

so loved ; and that she should be exposed to all the dangers of the Sea. So as all that *Soliman* could do was to bewail him, and to go and see him sometimes against the custom of the *Grand Signiors*, who seldom visit their subjects. These visits gave no great satisfaction, either to him that received them, or to him that rendered them. *Ibrahim's* melancholly redoubled by seeing that which *Soliman* shewed in his countenance ; and *Soliman's* grew the greater by observing in his *Ibrahim's* face all the signs of an extream grief : Yet would he for all that constrain himself sometimes ; he thanked *Soliman* for his goodness to him ; and assures him, that if he could lose his life in serving him, he should dye with some consolation. *Soliman*, feeling himself pierced with grief by so kinde a discourse, could not endure the continuance of it, but was constrained to quit him, after he had conjured him to live for his sake.

The uneasiness and fear which *Soliman* was in of losing the *Grand Visier*, took him up in such sort, as though the affairs of *Persia* were extream pressing, yet could he not resolve to frame any design, contenting him onely with giving *Ulama* order to oppose the Enemy as much as he could, if he attempted any thing ; but not to enterprize ought against him, until he had a new order from him. This commandment no whit displeased *Ulama* ; for albeit he was one of the valiantest men of his age, yet was he very glad that the War did not keep him from abiding some time with *Axiamira* and *Felixana*. The Enemy himself contributed also to his design ; for though he had gotten the advantage in the last occasions, yet was he a long time without undertaking any thing. That which caused this suspension of Arms was the news, which was brought to the *Sophi's* Court, how *Axiamira* and *Felixana* were in the hands of *Soliman*, who retained them prisoners. This last circumstance exceedingly troubled the *Sophi* and *Delimant* : they did not wonder, to know certainly that they were not dead, as all the world had beleev'd them to be ; nor to understand that they were in *Turkey*, because they sometime suspected that *Ulama* had carry'd them away ; but to see him General of the *Grand Signior's* Army in *Ibrahim's* absence, and to hear at the same instant that his Mistress was a Prisoner, was a matter which they could not comprehend. They resolv'd nevertheless to endeavor to be cleared therein, by the means of those secret intelligences, which all great Princes have in their neighbors Courts ; and in the mean time to make great preparations for war, that they might serve their turns of them according to occasion. *Mahamed*, who was acquainted with this news better then they, testified a great deal of joy for it ; it was not because he was not sorry to know that *Axiamira* and *Felixana* were in prison, but having beleev'd them to be dead, or in the power of *Tachmas* and *Dehment*, he was ravish'd to understand that they were living, and out of their tyranny ; not being able to imagine that two persons of that importance could be ill entreated in a place, where *Ulama* was so powerful. *Mahamed* was not he alone, who was glad to know that *Axiamira* was not dead, for this Princess was so generally beloved throughout that Empire, as this news being spread amongst the people, every one gave such marks of an unspeakable rejoycing, as if a memorable victory had been obtained over the Enemy. All the women of quality of the City of *Sultania*, where *Tachmas* was resident, when as he received this advice, sent humbly to beseech him, if there needed a ransom for the redemption of the Princess, that he would be pleas'd to let all their jewels serve for a part of it ; esteeming themselves more then happy, if with the loss of their liberty they could buy out the Princesses. This generous mark of affection, which they bore to *Axiamira*, was not received as it deserv'd : for the subtle *Persa*, who was mad to see that her sister left not to reign in *Persia*, though she was a prisoner at *Constantinople*, perswaded *Tachmas*, that this extream affection, which the people carry'd to the Princess, might cause great mischiefs in the continuance of the war ; that the imprisonment of *Axiamira* was without doubt an artifice to deceive him ; that it was without all likelihood that *Ulama* should be in good terms with *Soliman*, and *Felixana* be ill entreated ; that there was somewhat in it, which was not apprehended ; that it was to be feared, lest whilst *Axiamira* seem'd to be in prison, she had not some intelligences in the Country ; that if it were so, and that some one should be so daring as to rise, the name of *Axiamira* might quickly draw the people to her party ; and that finally it was fit to let them know in good time, that this rejoycing was criminal ; yea and that *Axiamira* was to be declared guilty of high treason, for withdrawing her self out of his dominions. She added further to this, that to extinguish the ardent love which the people bore the Princess, she was to be taken by her own interest, in publishing every where, that she was the cause of the war, and consequen-

ly the cause of the ruine of the whole Empire; that she alone had made *Ulama* revolt; and that she alone had drawn *Soliman* to take up Arms: so that there needed no ransom to redeem her, but a puissant Army to pluck her out of the *Sultan's* hands, and make an example of her to posterity. *Tachmas*, having heard *Perca's* discourse, told her, that he saw a great deal of probability in that which she said; and that he was resolved to deal after that manner; but that should not keep him from doing what he could to draw home *Axiamira* and *Felixana*, by the means of an Ambassador; that it was for the dignity of the Empire to proceed in that sort; and for a wise Politician always to lay the blame on the Enemy. *Deliment* being arrived at the end of this conversation, confirmed *Tachmas* yet more in his design; having been advertised by a Governor of one of the frontire Towns, that *Axiamira* was no longer a prisoner at *Constantinople*; that she had been conducted to *Bitilisa* with a most magnificent Train; and that she had been received there by *Ulama*, with all the marks of honor that could have been rendered her in *Persia*. This last news touched the *Sophi* sensibly; when he had understood that *Felixana* was a prisoner, he had at least had the consolation to hope that *Ulama* should not see her no more then he; but hearing that she was in a Town, whereof he was Governor, jealousy transported him in such sort, as he scarcely knew what he said. For *Deliment*, whereas he could not be jealous, the despight to see himself contemned, and the rage he was in for that he could not possess *Axiamira*, excited as much trouble in his soul, as jealousy did in the *Sophi's*.

As for the ambitious *Perca*, the only desire that she had to reign made her to move; and that she might rise to that supreme greatness, she thought there was but two things wanting to her; the death of *Deliment*, and the peoples hatred to *Axiamira*. For touching *Ismael* and *Mahamed*, she did not beleve that the stupidity of the one, and the blindness of the other, would permit them to oppose her. So that to execute her intention, she perswaded *Deliment*, that he was at this time to hazard all things; that it was not for his honor, to know *Axiamira* was so neer the frontire, and not do his uttermost to draw her out of *Ulama's* hands: And for *Tachmas*, she made him do that which by her counsel he had resolved upon. He said before all his Court, that he took it very ill, such joy should be testified upon notice had that his daughter was in the power of his Enemy; that the belief of her death had touched him less, then the news he had received that she lived in that manner; and then he publicly declared her guilty of high Treason, aggravating all that *Perca* had said to him. But though this Manifest had some appearance of truth, yet found it no credit, either with the *Grandeess*, or the people. The violences of *Deliment*, the wickedness of *Perca*, and the vertue of *Axiamira*, were too well known to have the matter succeed, as *Tachmas* hoped it would. And the people, on the contrary, seeing so great marks of animosity in a father against his daughter, in a sister against her sister, were ready to rebel, and be carried to some strange resolution.

In the mean time *Deliment* thinks of levying of Troops, and making up so mighty an Army, as, vanquisher or vanquished, it should absolutely decide the fortune of this war; being resolved to dye, or to return with *Axiamira*. *Tachmas* on his side, following his resolution, dispatches an Ambassador to the *Grand Signior*, to demand his daughter, and *Felixana* of him; offering two millions for their ransom, though by law he beleaved not himself obliged to give any thing for two persons, that were not prisoners of war. He sent away divers spies at the same instant to *Bitilisa*, to learn what past there; but all of them reported, that the Princess and *Felixana* seemed to be absolutely at liberty; that *Ulama* rendered them all imaginable civilities; and what care soever they took therein, they could not discover for what reason the Princess had been conducted to *Bitilisa*; the people saying no other thing, but that it was beleaved she was come neer unto *Persia* to make propositions of Peace. A few days after, a Messenger sent by *Axiamira* came and brought him a Letter from this Princess, who not doubting but that the *Sophi* had heard where she was, thought it was fit for her to write unto him, to the end she might not be wanting in that duty which she owed him, as being her father. When he received this Letter, *Perca* and *Deliment* were there present, who would have obliged him not to have read it, for fear lest he should have been moved therewith, but they could not prevail with him; for this Prince, provoked more by curiosity, or the thought that he should finde something in it which regarded *Felixana*, then by any kindness, opened it, and reading it aloud, he saw that was thus.



## AXIAMIRA'S Letter to the SOPHI her Father.

My Lord,

IF I had gone out of your Dominions of mine own accord, I should think myself obliged to ask you pardon for it; but since my flight is a crime of Fortune, and that I have no other part in it than the suffering of the evils which she hath made me endure; I believe that without charging myself with a fault, which I have not committed, it will suffice that I most humbly beseech you not to take it ill, if I dare say to you, that I have some consolation in my misfortunes, to see that my Prison is a Refuge for me against the violences of Deliment, and that not able to be free with you, I am at leastwise absent from you, without being culpable of it. But, my Lord, I am but too much, in having contrary thoughts to yours; I know it certainly, and yet whatsoever I do, it is impossible for me to cease from being faulty in this sort; for methinks Reason makes it appear to me, that I have no aversion for Deliment, but because he stains your glory, abuses your goodness, thinks of nothing but contenting his ambition, is an enemy to virtue, and in conclusion I wish him no ill but for the love of you. But, my Lord, I am almost confident, that every word I write is a crime; that in thinking to excuse myself, I become the more culpable; and that in seeking to justify my cause, I sign my condemnation. Permit then that my death or banishment may be the punishment of this fault, and that I may beseech you to believe, that the former would be sweet unto me, if I could hope to be lamented of you; and that the other would be insupportable to me, if there were not some hope remaining for me, that you will one day consent, that Axiamira may live with you, and not be constrained to be the wife of Deliment. It is that which is hoped for, and implored of you,

My Lord,

By your most humble, most obedient, and most faithful Subject, Daughter, and Servant,

AXIAMIRA.

The reading of this Letter touched the Sophi in a diverse manner; he felt tenderness, confusion, and anger; and it may be if he had been alone, Nature and Reason had prevailed so powerfully for Axiamira, as she had carried away the victory from her enemies; but the counsels of Perca, and the speeches of Deliment, wrought a clean contrary effect in him. Perca told him, that it was too daring a part in her to be so bold, as to write such things to him of a man whom he loved; that without doubt Axiamira spake not thus, but because she was well assured, that whatsoever ransom was offered, she should never be remitted into his power; that he was to testify a great deal of repentment for this insolent proceeding, and to intreat him ill whom the Princess had sent, who questionless was come to Prince Mahamed, or as a Spy, rather than to bring him this Letter, which could not serve Axiamira for ought, whether she remained in the Grand Signior's Dominions, or whether she returned into his Empire. Deliment seeing the Sophi sufficiently incensed, took a different way from that which Perca had held, which yet produced the same effect. He besought the Sophi, with a false generosity, to permit him to withdraw himself from affairs, and from about him, for the contenting of Axiamira. But the Sophi, as Deliment had rightly forecast it, forbade him the further prosecuting of this discourse, his anger redoubling so much the more by this artifice. And for a conclusion, he called the party before him, who had brought him the Letter from Axiamira, charged him never to come within his Dominions again, and told him, that if he had not purposed to have him carry back his Commands, he would have had him severely punished. Then he desired him to say unto her that had sent him (for he would not call her the Princess, his Daughter, or Axiamira) that he had no other answer to make her, but that if the ransom, which he had sent to offer for her, did not bring her back into Persia, he would go and fetch her in the head of an hundred thousand men; and that in the view of so mighty an Army, he would deal with her as Soliman had done with Mustapha.

After this cruel answer, the Sophi commanded this man to be searched, to see whether he had any Letters about him for Mahamed, or his Governor: this search was not vain; they found one for the Prince, wherein what care soever Axiamira had taken that it should not prejudice

prejudice him if it were met withall, yet had she not sufficiently concealed the extremest affection which was between them, and the intelligence they had held together, when she was at *Amasia*. So that as soon as it was read, it was resolved, for fear *Mahamed* should receive others by some more secret way, to have two things done. The first, to change all his House, to the end that having none that he could trust about him, he might not receive any news from *Axiamira*. And the second, to secure his person, lest some abroad should attempt that which was doubted from them. This design being resolved, was quickly executed. *Deliment*, according to his wonted insolency, went himself to command the blind Prince from the *Sophi* not to stir out of his lodging, and to charge both his Governor and all his servants to be gone from him: That done, he placed a Guard about him, and left this Prince in an affliction, the like whereof he had never felt before. All that came near him were his Enemies Agents, and whether he would or no he was enforced to let them wait upon him. This detention made a great noise in the *Sophi's* Court, even the people themselves were divers times about to rise; but amongst the rest the Princes domestick servants could not endure this violence. And indeed, *Mahamed's* Governor, having assembled the chiefeest of them together, propounded unto them the enterprising of carrying away the Prince their Master to *Bisitifa*. He told them, that it was better to put him into the hands of a courteous enemy, as *Soliman* was to *Axiamira*, then to leave him in the power of a cruel and incensed father; that as for them, if they continued at *Sultania*, they would not be in safety, but upon the least suspicion that one should have of them they would be severely punished; so that as well for the conservation of the Prince, as for their own, they were to undertake the delivery of him. They all answered him with a great deal of zeal and affection, that they were ready to expose their lives for the Prince their Master; but that they did not think they could commodiously do it for him. Whereupon this wise Governor told them, how he knew certainly that those which guarded him, relying on his blindness, were not very exact in keeping him; that it being so, the matter would not be very difficult, because the Prince lay in a low chamber, that jetted upon the Palace garden, whereof the walls were not very high; that the only difficulty was to advertise him not to make any noise, at such time as he should hear his chamber window opened; which indeed would not be very easie to do, by reason the Prince could neither read that which should be written to him, nor see the signs that might be made him, so that he concluded something was to be left to chance; that for so much as concerned their getting out of the City, the Governor thereof was resolved to follow the fortune of *Axiamira*, and to abandon a Government, which he knew well would be taken from him in a short time, by reason of the great affection he had testified to this Prince, and that so it would be easie for them to escape. This Proposition being approved of by all, they thought of nothing else but of executing it. And whereas the nights were very dark, in regard the Moon did not shine, they deferred it no farther.

The Governor of *Sultania*, whom *Mahamed* had formerly gained, chose amongst his Soldiers those whom he believed were most faithful to him, and without any notice taken of it, he placed them at one of the gates of the City, through which he meant to pass. Night being come, all *Mahamed's* deliverers met together at a Rendezvous appointed by them; they brought ladders to enter into the garden, whereof the walls were but low, as I have already observed. For whereas *Sultania* was not the residence of the *Sophi*, they had not since the loss of *Tauris*, as yet erected any magnificent buildings there. This generous Troop, passing between two Sentinels, got into the garden without any obstacle, went directly to *Mahamed's* lodging, opened one of the windows of it, without awakening him; or any of his guard who lay in his antichamber; and then he whose voyce they thought he best knew, entered into his chamber with his drawn Scymitar in his hand, approached to his bed after he had sought for it a while, and though he wakened him very softly, yet could he not so speak to him; but that he gave a great skreek, and demanded with much resolution, whether *Deliment* had sent to kill him. *Mahamed* spake so loud, that some of his guard awaked, and made a noise amongst themselves; but the Prince coming to know his voyce that spake to him, and whom he was assured was very faithful to him, held his peace, and by his silence made them of the guard who were awake, hearing nothing any longer, to get them again to sleep, believing that *Mahamed* had had some troublesome dream, which had caused him to speak so loud; being not much careful besides in guarding him, because they had order only to keep any from speaking with him, and bringing him Letters.

In the mean time *Mahamed* having understood in few words, in what manner they would deliver him, suffered himself to be conducted by him that spake to him. All this Troop received him with exceeding joy; but fearing lest they should be troubled with some cross encounter, as soon as they had put clothes upon him, which they had brought purposely along with them, they went out of the garden, and presently after forth of the City. About an hundred paces from the gate they found horses, which the Governor of *Sultania* had caused to be there ready provided, and getting upon them, they rode away with all the speed that possibly they could make. But whereas the Prince could not guide his horse, but was constrained to let him be lead by another, they could not go so fast, but that the second day of their journey they espied a Troop of Horse posting after them, which, being far more in number then they, made them believe, not only that they were pursued, but that they were all lost; nevertheless they resolved to sell their lives dearly. The Prince too, as blind as he was, caused a Scymitar to be given him, and to the end, that if they fought, he might not strike his friends in stead of his foes, he commanded his followers not to come near him without calling him by his name; and whereas his eyes did not serve him to assault any, he resolved to abide in one place, with an intention not to suffer himself to be taken alive. But whatsoever he could do, his people placed him in the midst of them, much against his will, being resolved to dye or to save him. In the mean time the Troop, which they beleved to be their enemies, came still on, and every one was already preparing for defence, when as the son of the *Satrap of Mesopotamia*, an enemy to *Deliment*, advancing foremost, and throwing his Scymitar to the ground, to let them know that he would not fight with them, made them change their resolution of defending themselves, into embracing them. Prince *Mahamed* understanding who he was, and knowing him by his voyce, caressed him exceedingly, and learnt of him, that it was long before his flight was known; because his guard, not having been accustomed to enter into his chamber but when he called them, had waited till noon without going in; that the matter being discovered, *Tachmas* at the first shewed a great deal of fury; that *Perca* had done nothing but laugh at it, and in a bitter jeering manner had wished, that *Soliman* would make him General of his Army, to the end that a man who saw so clear, might chuse out the most advantageous places for the encamping of his Troops; that for *Deliment*, whereas he hated his father, he accused him for having been privy to his escape; and that having been ill-intreated by the *Sopbi* he was retired from the Court, and had commanded him to come and offer him whatsoever lay in his power, not doubting but he had taken the resolution to repair to the place where *Axiadora* had already found a sanctuary; that in the mean time it was requisite for them to make away with all speed, in regard it might be that *Tachmas* had altered his determination, and would resolve to have them pursued. Prince *Mahamed* desired further to know of him who they were that accompanied him, which proved to be the worthiest men of the Court. The Prince made very much of them; and that he might not hazard persons to whom he was so much obliged, he sent one of his servants before to *Bisitisa*, to know of *Axiadora*, whether the place of her retreat would not be a safe one for them. This while they rode on as fast as possibly they could: but when they were come to the uttermost part of the frontire, they stayed to hear some news from him whom they had sent to *Bisitisa*. *Ulama* came and brought it them himself; and this excellent man received Prince *Mahamed* with so many testimonies of joy on either side, as they were a long time before they could separate themselves, or resolve to march forward. All the rest came afterwards to salute *Ulama*, who assured them all of his service and protection. *Mahamed* as they rode along enquired after *Axiadora's* health, but he durst not ask him any thing of *Felixana*, for fear lest he should take that care for an effect of his ancient love. And when as *Ulama* perceived so much, I thought, my Lord, said he unto him, that after I had assured you how *Axiadora* was in the estate you desired her to be, you would have demanded of me how *Felixana* did, since having heretofore judged her worthy of your affection, I might well think you would render her that proof of your good will. My dear friend, replied *Mahamed* smiling, I durst not put my Protector in mind that I had been his Rival; and though the memory of *Felixana* be infinitely dear to me, that which I owe to your friendship kept me from rendering her publicly, what I will ever render her in my heart: Let not this discourse disquiet you, continued *Mahamed*, for in acknowledging that I shall always be in love with the vertue of this discreet maid, I protest to you withall, that this love shall never beget any other desire in my Soul, then to see her



her contented, that is to wish she may be *Ulama's* wife. My Lord, answered he, *Felixana* is far more dangerous, and more to be feared than she was, when as she surmounted your heart; she hath charms and beauties, which you know not, and which peradventure will make you change your resolution. You are but too well assured, replied *Mahamed*, that I am a bad Judge of beauty, and that love enters not into my heart by the eye. Neither do I mean, continued *Ulama*, that visible beauty which renders *Felixana* the object of the admiration, as well of stupid, as of witty, of vicious, as of virtuous persons; but I mean that beauty, which is wholly celestial; which never makes any but noble Conquests; which touches none but great and generous Souls; and which, not destroyed by time, begets another love, that lasts eternally. In fine, my Lord, that which I mean is the beauty of the mind and soul of *Felixana*: When she captived you, she had wherewithall to make one believe that her thoughts were generous; ambition did not move her, and the desire to be a Queen made her not forget what she had promised. But, my Lord, *Felixana* hath done much more, for she hath despised death for *Axiamira*, she hath exposed her self for her, and this rare maid hath testified so much constancy and generosity in divers encounters, as it will be hard for you not to love her, when you shall understand it. I shall love her without doubt, replied *Mahamed*, but the more worth and vertue I shall know in her, the more shall I be obliged thereunto; and the more shall I be confirmed in the resolution, wherein I have a long time been, not to esteem my self happy, but when *Ulama* shall be so; nor to pretend to any thing from *Felixana*, but that which she cannot deny me without a crime, that is to say, her friendship. Believe, my Lord, answered *Ulama*, if there needs nothing but that to content you, you have cause to be satisfied; for I certainly know, that it would be a hard thing to judge rightly, who carries more affection to you, either *Axiamira*, *Felixana*, or my self. And be assured if you please, my Lord, that all which I have said to you hath been but to have the pleasure to speak of *Felixana*; it being most certain, that I honor her at this present so highly, and that she hath rendered the love which I bear her so perfect, as jealousy can never have any place in my Soul.

With such like discourses *Mahamed* and *Ulama*, without being heard of any but him that guided the Prince, beguiled the time; whilst the rest entertained themselves with the weakness of *Tachmas* in suffering himself to be governed in that manner, with the malice of *Perca*, the stupidity of *Ismael*, and the universal hatred that *Deliment* had drawn upon him. But at length after they had travelled a day and an half, this Troop arrived at and *Bisitifa*. *Axiamira* and *Felixana* were exceeding joyful to see Prince *Mahamed*, who not able to enjoy the same felicity, was nevertheless charmed to hear them speak. *Felixana*, who loved the Prince as much as if he had been her brother, durst not testify so much unto him; but *Ulama*, being as dextrously to discover her thoughts, as he had been in discerning those of the Prince, approached to her, and told her laughing, that he had made certain conditions with *Mahamed*, which he conjured her she should observe. Two such sage persons, answered she, could not resolve on any thing which is not just, wherefore I think that I shall not engage my self inconsiderately, when as I shall promise you not to break them. *Ulama* then told her in few words what had past between the Prince and him, and *Felixana* promised to do that he desired; whereupon he left her to go and give order for the commodious lodging of all this Troop. The Princess would needs see all them that came along with the Prince; and with her sweet carriage and address so absolutely gained them, as they would have enterprized any thing for her service. Whilst she was complementing, and *Ulama* giving direction in the Town, *Felixana* came to *Mahamed*, and such was their conversation together, as it knit their friendship fast for all their lives after. He requested her she would permit him to be *Ulama's* confidant, and would forget the misfortunes which his love had been the cause of to her; he thanked her for the services she had rendered to the Princess *Axiamira*; promised always to honor her more than any person in the world; and without speaking to her of love, he gave her to understand, that if reason had not prevailed over his inclination, he had still been *Ulama's* Rival; but it was of that power in his Soul, as he never spake a word to *Felixana*, contrary to the promise he had made her, to love her no otherwise than as his sister.

In the mean time *Ulama*, after he had lodged the Prince in the Castle, the rest in the most commodious houses of the Town, and given order for the intreating of them honorably, dispatched away a man to advertise the *Grand Signior* of that which had past, and to beseech him he would permit that *Bisitifa* might be a prison for *Mahamed*, as well as it was for *Axiamira*;

*Axiāmira*; undertaking to bring him his head, if this Prince, or any of them that followed him, enterprized ought against his service. But *Soliman* was not in an estate of thinking on the affairs of his Empire; and the *Grand Visier* melancholy was the onely thing that took up his minde. The *Persian* Embassador was come to *Constantinople*, and had oftentimes demanded audience, but could not obtain it. The *Sultan* spent the most of his time at *Ibrahim's* Palace; and though this illustrious *Bassa* was extream weak, yet walked he sometimes with the *Grand Signior* in his garden. It happened then that one morning *Soliman* came to visit him earlier then he had used to do, and having made him pass insensibly into his great chamber, leaning on a Cane garnished with gold, which he most commonly went with when he was in health, he would needs have him walk down, to the end, said he unto him, he might fortifie himself the better by taking the ayr. *Ibrahim*, who sought not the preservation of his health, did not obey the *Sultan*, for the reason alledged by him, to perswade him to walk down; but contrarily he did it, out of the belief he was in, that his weakness being exceeding great, the more he should put himself into agitation, the more would his forces diminish, and the neerer he should be to his grave. With such different designs did the *Sultan* and the *Bassa* descend into the Court; and the *Grand Signior*, seeming as though he would not have the *Bassa* make too long a walk at a time, caused him to lean on the balustrade, that divided the Court-yard of his Palace, there to rest himself with him. Scarcely had they been there a quarter of an hour, when as they saw an hundred *Janizaries* enter, attired all in cloth of gold, who ranked themselves in order on both sides. The *Grand Visier* surprized with this pomp, demanded of *Soliman* what it might be? but he told him smiling, that he must behold the end of this ceremony, before he could be cleared therein. The *Bassa* then saw the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* enter, who marched alone gorgeously appared; He was followed by the high Treasurer, whom the *Turks* call *Tefiardar*, accompanied with an hundred Slaves, carrying two and two great maunds of silver, all full of the richest ornaments that the women of the *Levant* do use. In some of them were little hats, set all over with precious stones; chopines garnished with Turkeyses and Rubies; smocks embroidered with gold and pearl; most sumptuous gowns, which being layd confusedly together, made a pleasing mixture, of curled cloth of gold, of cloth of silver, and of velvet, whose ground was gold. The last maund was not open on the sides like the rest, and appeared to be full of all sorts of jewels, of so excessive a value, as there were three or four hundred thousand crowns worth of pearls amongst them. They which carried these precious presents ranked themselves all along the balustrade, where the *Sultan* and *Ibrahim* were leaning. After this entered twelve charets full of young virgin Slaves, richly clothed, each of them drawn by six white horses, and driven by two Eunuchs. Then followed thirty other virgins, appared in cloth of gold, accompanied with so many black Slaves, having all of them chains and collars of massive gold: These Slaves being placed on their knees where the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* appointed them, there entered next two hundred Mules laden with hangings of cloth of gold, of sattin, of velvet, the ground silver; with cushions embroidered all over, which are the seats of that Country; and with a great deal of other most sumptuous furniture for a house. All this being set in a most marvelous order, four and twenty men advanced, bearing two and two twelve coffers of *China*, garnished with gold and precious stones, who being placed as the rest, made way for twelve Slaves to be seen carrying Torches in their hands, which were covered half way with plates of gold, and shined more with the precious stones that were on them, then with the flame which consumed them. Until then the *Grand Visier* had beheld this ceremony with a great deal of admiration and astonishment; but when as after these Torches he saw twelve other Slaves carry a great Canopy of crimson velvet, covered with another Canopy, higher then that, and all enriched with plates of gold, the curtains thereof close drawn, reaching to the very ground, he passed from astonishment to grief; especially when he saw that this Canopy was followed by a Charet, covered with cloth of gold, drawn by six white horses, and accompanied with thirty of the fairest Slaves that ever had been seen, being all on horseback, with their hair hanging loose upon their shoulders, and attired with as much magnificence as gallantry. For calling to minde, that this pomp was like unto that, which the *Turkish* Emperors use for their own daughters, when as they cause them to be conducted to the Palaces of them, whom they give them for husbands, he beleevd that *Soliman* would at length constrain him to marry *Asteria*, to binde him wholly

to his service; and in this thought he had already resolv'd to lose his life, both out of a sense of love, and out of a sense of Religion, before he would consent unto it. But he was strangely surprized, when as the *Grand Signior* had made a sign to the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* to draw the curtains of the Canopy, to see upon a white steed, held by two black Slaves, his incomparable *Isabella*. Ah my Lord! cry'd he out in *Italian*, Is not this an illusion? may I believe that I see? and do not my eyes beguile me? And then losing all respect in this encounter, he went maugre his weakness, and without attending *Soliman's* answer, to help the Princess off from her horse, and to clear himself thoroughly of the doubt whereinto this surprize had put him; but he could not execute his design, for the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* had rendered him that service already, and had conducted her to the half pace of the *balustrade*, where the *Bassa* received her. This Princess had not seen him yet, because at such time as the curtains, which concealed her, were drawn, the sight of so great an assembly had not permitted her to mark him, though she had carefully sought about with her eyes to finde him out. But when as *Ibrahim* advancing towards her, did by the sound of his voyce force her to look that way, she had no less joy then he, though not so much amzeement; for she knew well enough that he was at *Constantinople*, and she believed too that she had been forcibly brought away by his order, for *Rustan* would never tell her anything. And though this violent design was not pleasing to her, yet felt she nothing but joy for all that at this first view; nor did the paleness and change, which *Ibrahim's* melancholy had painted in his face, any whit afflict her; being very glad to see the marks of his love, in those of his grief. Is it possible, Madam, said *Ibrahim* unto her, that I should once more see the incomparable *Isabella*? Is it from Love or Fortune that I hold this grace? Neither from the one nor the other, replied *Soliman* in *Italian*, who was come to the top of the half pace, but from the good-will which I bear thee, and from the desire I have to preserve thy life. This voyce brought respect again unto *Ibrahim*, who told the Princess that she saw the greatest Monarch of the world, for fear she should not render unto *Soliman* the honor that was due to him. *Isabella* would instantly have cast her self at his feet, when as this Prince raising her up, against the custom of the *Grand Signiors*, and beholding her with a great deal of admiration, I do not marvel, said he unto *Ibrahim*, that love hath been stronger in thee then friendship; and that the sight of so rare a creature hath been dearer to thee then all my favors: But it is not requisite that so many persons should be spectators of thy felicity; and it will be enough, if thou suffer me to be partaker of it with thee. Saying so, he commanded the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* to cause all that had been brought thither to be carry'd into *Ibrahim's* Palace, and to send every one away but onely those which were to serve the Princess.

In the mean time *Emilia*, who came in the Charet, that followed the Canopy under the which *Isabella* had been placed, lighted out of it, and repaired to her; the Slaves that were destined to wait on her in her chamber followed her also, and in that order, the *Grand Signior* marching foremost, and leaving *Ibrahim* to lead *Isabella*, they went up the stairs, entered into his chamber, and passed into his Cabinet; where they were no sooner arrived, but the *Sultan* beginning to speak acquainted the *Bassa*, how having seen that his melancholy was invincible, and knowing that the absence of *Isabella* was the cause thereof, he had desired to make it cease without parting with him. That besides, to the end there might be nothing wanting to his felicity, he had not caus'd her to be thus brought away, without considering the sequel of it, and that the Princess might live contentedly in his Empire, where she should always have as much power as he. That for so much as regarded her Religion, she might not only be a Christian in her heart as he was, but even in the sight of all the people. That there were examples of the same in the *Othoman* family; that *Mahomet* the second was the son of the *Despot* of *Servia's* daughter, whom *Amurath* had marry'd both out of love and interest. That the same *Mahomet* had marry'd the sister of the Emperor of *Constantinople* to *Zogan Beglierbey* of the lower *Macedonia*, with permission for her to have the exercise of her Religion as freely, as if she had been amongst the Christians. That these examples sufficed to keep the people from accusing him of introducing a Novelty; but in case they should dare to murmur at it, he knew well enough how to make himself be obeyed. To all these particulars *Ibrahim* had nothing to say but to thank *Soliman*; for although upon a second thought, the joy to see *Isabella* again was cross'd with some inquietness, yet he found no occasion to complain. The Princess on her side, coming thus to learn, that it was not *Ibrahim* which had caus'd



her to be brought away, was much comforted therewith; being very glad to see that his own interest had not carryed him to expose her to such a violence.

In the mean time *Soliman* continued beholding *Isabella* with a world of admiration; for albeit the grief she had been in had a little altered her, yet the joy to see *Ibrahim*, and the agitation of her spirits, had brought a carnation into her cheeks, which covered all the marks of her melancholy; and which rendred her as fair, as ever she had been. The *Grand Signior* being surprized with too much attention in considering this Princess, desired at least-wise that the *Bassa* might not interpret it amiss; so that to conceal it in some sort, it must be acknowledged, said he unto him, that thou hadst reason to assure me, that the pictures, which thou hast placed in thy chamber, resembled this Princess but very imperfectly; for the more I seek for the ayr and features of those pictures in her face, the less comparison do I finde in them.

Hitherto the Princess had not answered to *Soliman's* discourses, save with obeyfances and submissions, but hearing her self so highly praised, she fell a speaking, and humbly besought the *Grand Signior* he would be pleased to justify the love, which *Ibrahim* bare her, by some other way, then by that of her beauty. She told him, that if he had not stronger chains then that, he would be blame-worthy for preferring her before his Highness; but without considering, either her merit, or her beauty, he was to think, that the affection which he carryed to her, was one of the inevitable effects of sympathy or fate. That she requested him to beleeve, how *Ibrahim* had done nothing, but what he could not chuse but do; that he knew without doubt as well as she, that the glory to serve so great a Prince, was to be preferred before all things; but his knowledg being the least of that which governed his will, he had abandoned Reasons party, to follow that of love. *Soliman* ravished with the wit of this Princess, desired her to pardon him for her forcible bringing away, and to remember that he had not undertaken it, but to save *Ibrahim's* life. So fair a cause, answered the Princess, could not produce a bad effect, and whatsoever can save *Ibrahim*, can never wrong *Isabella*. With such like discourses, the *Sultan* and these two illustrious Lovers entertained themselves very pleasingly; but dinner time approaching, the *Grand Signior* told the *Bassa*, that having purposed to bestow the *Sultania Asferia* upon him for a wife, and his love not permitting that he should be so happy, as to have the most excellent man upon the Earth in his alliance, he would at least-wise bring him *Isabella* with the same pomp, and with the same ceremony, as if she had been his daughter indeed. After so obliging a discourse, he retired, leaving *Isabella* extremely satisfied, both of his wit, his courtesie, and generosity.

### The Fourth Book.

AFTER the *Grand Visier* had waited upon the *Sultan* forth, he returned to *Isabella* with so much transport and joy, as he had never felt the like before; the liberty to be able to speak to her, without other witnesses then *Emilia*, was so sweet unto him, that neither the remembrance of what was past, the care of the present, the fear of the future, nor even the weakness which his melancholy had brought upon him, was sensible either to his body or his minde. I would undertake more exactly to describe the apprehensions of these two illustrious persons, were I not perswaded that one had need to have made tryal of the like misadventures, and the like pleasures, before one could worthily acquit himself thereof. After the first transports, which unexpected joys do, cause in a soul, and which for the most part do somewhat disorder Reason, *Ibrahim* and *Isabella*, coming to consider the estate wherein they were, found that Fortune had but gilded over their Irons; yet was it some consolation to them, that they might wear them together. I would not follow you to *Constantinople*, said *Isabella* to *Ibrahim*, without being your wife; nor would I likewise that love should have carryed you to make me be forcibly brought away: but since without your or my being guilty thereof, Fortune hath conducted me hither, I have courage enough to endure this noble captivity

captivity with you, until we may meet with some means to get out of it with honor.

After many other discourses *Ibrahim* caused dinner to be served up to the Princes in private, during the which he went to give order for preparing him a lodging at *Achmat's* Palace, which was not far from his, intending out of respect to leave this wholly to the Princes; but she being instantly advertised thereof by *Emilia*, who had heard him give order for it to the *Italian Slave* that served him, she sent for him, and conjured him not to do so; I am well assured, said she unto him, that in the Country where we are, I shall not clash with civility to remain here with you; and I know you to be so wise and discreet that I cannot fear any unjust designs from you; withall you understand me too well for me to doubt, that you will make any ill construction of the liberty I give you: It will be enough then for you to quit your lodging, without quitting your Palace unto me, which how fair soever it is, cannot be agreeable to me without you. This illustrious *Bassa* would not yeeld at first, but at length he obeyed the Princess.

In the mean time they who saw *Ibrahim*, could not doubt but that *Soliman* had found out the right remedy, which could thoroughly chase away his melancholy. His eye was quicker, his countenance more lively, his speech stronger, his gate more steddly, and this change was so great and sudden, that every one spake of it as of a prodigy. In fine, the presence of *Isabella* did that in a few days, which the art of the Physicians could not do in a very long time; and the *Grand Visier* found himself in so perfect an health, as he had never been in a better. But whilst he was happy, *Soliman* did not enjoy so great a tranquillity: The sight of *Isabella* through an inevitable fate had excited trouble in his soul. For whereas he had eminently met in the person of this Princess with all the beauties of *Roxelana* and *Axiamira*, and a great deal of resemblance of both of them, especially of the last, he could not chuse but be in all the passion for her alone, which he had been in for the other two. This great Prince rendered not himself for all that without fighting; and it may be he had not been vanquished, if at the beginning he had known the forces of his Enemy. But what trouble soever the first sight of *Isabella* brought to his heart, he thought notwithstanding that Reason, and his friendship to *Ibrahim*, would be stronger then his inclination. It was not because he had not tryed the weakness of the former; but for the second, he beleaved that nothing could overcome it. In this confidence, the first days of *Isabella's* being at *Constantinople*, and that *Ibrahim* was not as yet in an estate to go to the *Serraglio*, he continued visiting him as he was wont to do: But the more he saw *Isabella*, the more charming he found her; he always observed some new grace in her; and her wit making her still to be more known, his passion still augmented the more: Howbeit he perceived not the violence and power of it, till such time as civility would no longer permit him to see her. For the *Grand Visier* having recovered strength enough to go to the *Serraglio*, *Soliman* having no more pretext to visit him, saw himself deprived of the sight of *Isabella*, and by this privation he felt in his heart that this person alone could make up all his felicity, or all his misery. This Prince no sooner knew the force of this Enemy, by which he had suffered his soul to be surprized, but he would have opposed it. What! said he to himself, unjust and cruel that I am, cannot I, after the obtaining of so many Victories abroad, vanquish my self this once? must I be mine own cruellest Enemy? and must this predominant passion, that reigns in my heart, be always stronger then Reason? cannot I love, continued he, but I must be criminal? and is my destiny so unlucky, that I cannot be happy, without violating all that is most sacred in the world? All the Earth yeelds me Slaves; the fairest women of all *Greece* are in my power, and in my *Serraglio*, and in the mean time I will ravish from the onely man that I love, the onely person that he can love, the onely person that can preserve his life; he that, being the noblest of men, hath ventured it an hundred times for the safety of this Empire, and he that rather then he would break his word with me, had resolved for death in abandoning *Isabella*. Ah, no, no; let us rather dye, then consent to this unjust passion; let us deprive our selves for ever of that which onely can make us happy, since we cannot be so without ingratitude and baseness.

After so just a reasoning, *Soliman* seemed sometimes to be eased, and to have taken an immovable resolution to think no more of *Isabella's* charms. But her image no sooner presented it self to his minde, but changing his resolution, he also changed his discourse. I know very well, said he, regarding things as I do, that I owe much to *Ibrahim*, but I know

withall, that I owe very much to my self. It is not always reasonable for one to give himself death to save the life of his friend; I am not ignorant that friendship ought to be firm, but yet I know, that love hath not used to respect it. And then again, who knows whether *Ibrahim* will yeeld *Isabella* to me? he that could resolve to leave her at *Monaco* to return to *Constantinople*, may peradventure yeeld her to me for the saving of my life. For what can a man do less for me, whom I have drawn out of Irons, and from the grave, and have made the mightiest man in my Empire? Let us love then, said he, since we may do it without a crime. But alas! continued he, when as *Ibrahim* hath consented to my love, I have not vanquished *Isabella*; and then he called to minde the constancy which she had shewed ever since the first day that she had begun to love *Ibrahim*. This difficulty for all that seemed not so great unto him, but that he hoped to overcome it, if he could absent the *Grand Visier*, as the affairs of *Persia* seemed to require. Whereupon he framed the design of it, after he had a long time combated in himself, and prepared to give audience to the Embassador the *Sophi* had sent to demand *Axiamira* and *Felixana* of him; seeming to have no other thought then that of the affairs of *Persia*, nor other object, but the good of his Empire. He also let *Ulama* know, that what he had demanded for *Mahamed* was granted him; and the care of his State seemed to take him up in such sort, as albeit he became very melancholique, and that his countenance was altered, *Ibrahim* suspected no other thing, but that the uncertainty wherein he was, whether he should make use of the persons of *Axiamira*, *Mahamed*, and *Felixana*, whom he had in his hands, for the making of some propositions of peace, because he was pressed by the affairs of *Hungary*, or that he should continue the War of *Persia*.

In the mean time *Ibrahim* and *Isabella*, considering their fortune, could not well imagine by what way they might obtain their liberty; it being incredible that *Soliman* should be carryed to the design of forcibly bringing away the Princess, for to let her return again into her Country, and to deprive himself for ever of a man, from whom he seemed to be inseparable. So as not knowing what to do, or what to resolve on, the *Grand Visier* propounded unto her, considering the estate wherein things were, that she would permit him to make one warlike voyage more against the *Persians*; to the end, that having repaired the disorders which his absence had caused in that Kingdom, he might at his return come and cast himself at the *Sultan's* feet, and demand for a reward of his victories onely the liberty of returning into his Country; with the resolution, that if he did not grant that which he desired of him, not to be more generous then he, and to obtain that by flight which he had refused him, since, as it seemed to him, he might do it without injustice. At first this proposition surprized *Isabella*; and her heart perswaded her, that *Ibrahim* had not Reason on his side. What, said she, will you always abandon me? and will you finde no place in all the world where we may live together? when you were come to *Monaco*, you quitted me to return unto *Constantinople*; and now that Fortune hath brought me thither, you will abandon me to go into *Persia*; but with this grievous difference, that when as you quitted me at *Monaco*, you left me in my Country; your person was the onely thing that I lost; your absence made up all my grief; and fear found no place in my soul but for the love of you: But in this encounter I have cause to be afraid of all things. You will abandon me in a Country, whose language, manners, customs, and Religion, are different from ours, and where vertue is not found but in the person of *Soliman*. I will not make use, continued she, of the Reasons, which you made use of, when you would not let me come to *Constantinople*, in making me consider what would become of me if it happened that you should dye: But that is not my fear, seeing it is certain, that in what place soever of the Earth this misfortune should arrive unto me, I should always be equally sensible of it; that nothing can increase or diminish my grief; that I shall every where finde the remedy to finish it; and that my death would without doubt keep me from regretting yours. I do not fear you should dye without me, but I am afraid to live without you. Do not think then of abandoning me, and if you will go into *Persia*, suffer me to go along with you.

The *Bassa* hearing the Princess speak in this sort, knew not what to answer her; and though he found no other way of hoping to obtain from *Soliman* the liberty which he desired, yet durst he not oppose *Isabella's* pleasure. Do, Madam, what shall seem good unto you, said he unto her; dispose of my fortune, and my life; and beleeve, if you please, that the same reason



reason, which carried me to abandon you at *Monaco*, hath now induced me to make this proposition unto you. But do not think of following me to the war; it is the only thing wherein I may contradict you in this encounter, and I am resolved never to consent unto it. I will not go into *Persia*, if you enjoyn me to it: I will go and make *Soliman* deny me our liberty in demanding it of him; I will even endeavor to think of our flight if you will; and by all these ways expose you, it may be, to strange misadventures: I will notwithstanding consent to all these things, if you command me; but I will never endure that you shall undertake a warlike voyage. For, Madam, there is a great deal of difference between living at *Constantinople* under the protection of one of the excellentest Princes of the world, and following an Army of an hundred thousand men, who delight in nothing but fire and sword; and against whom you would have but one to protect you, if your beauty should happen to give me Rivals, or the misfortune of war should make me be vanquished by mine Enemies.

I know well enough, answered the Princess, that I am of a sex which ought not to see war save in picture; but what will you have me do? I see too well, continued she, that we are in a deplorable estate, and that we cannot seek for a remedy, whereof the event is not very doubtful. After the obligations wherein you stand engaged to *Soliman*, there is no talk of flight; yea and I feel in my heart something that resists it. On the other side, I know full well that in the estate wherein the affairs of his Empire now stand, and his friendship to you considered, it will not be easie for my tears to obtain our liberty; and from thence I judge, that nothing but generosity alone can constrain him not to refuse us. Upon the victory over the *Persians* our freedom depends, if it be so that we may ever obtain it; but I fear too, that this remedy is not very well assured. For if you prove not fortunate in this war, how dare you demand your liberty? and if you be victorious, it is to be feared that in fighting for *Soliman*, you fight not against your self; that the conquests you shall make for him, do not keep him also from resolving to part with you; and in this sort, I cannot make use of the power which you do give me to dispose of you in this occasion, my reason not being strong enough alone of it self to take any resolution.

*Ibrahim* saw that all the Princesses Objections were so powerful, as he could think of nothing able to destroy them. But at length, after well examining the matter, they found how it was true, that it might happen the voyage of *Persia* would serve them to no purpose; but they found withall, that it was the only thing that could be beneficial to them; knowing well enough, that if *Soliman* could be vanquished, it would be only by generosity. *Ibrahim* assured the Princess as much as possibly he could, that no misfortune should arrive to her in his absence, relying in such sort on *Soliman's* friendship to him, as he could not doubt but that he would be very careful in protecting her. And though he knew that the *Sultan* was very susceptible of love, and that he had feared before at *Monaco*, lest he would have been too sensibly touched with *Isabella's* beauty, if she obstinately persisted in her determination to follow him to *Constantinople*, yet had he no fear of it in this encounter. That which gave him this tranquillity of spirit, was because he knew, that this Prince had never been taken, but with the first sight of the persons whom he had loved; that love never entred into his heart but by surprizing him; and that whomsoever he had once seen without passion, was not able afterwards to touch him with any. And whereas *Soliman*, contrary to his custom, had taken great care to conceal his thoughts, he had not perceived his love to *Isabella*; but contrarily, thinking that he had seen her without loving her, he beleev'd that he was safe on that side. In this Opinion he the more easily resolved for the War of *Persia*; and whereas he knew that affairs were pressing, and that the *Sophi's* Embassador having had audience, the *Divano* would be held the next day, wherein peace or war for the interest of the Empire would be concluded, he conjured the Princess to take her last resolution. *Emilia*, who was present at this Council, was on *Ibrahim's* side, and perswaded the Princess to consent to the voyage he would undertake. And to carry her the sooner thereunto, the *Bassa* told her further, that diverting *Soliman's* Arms from *Hungary* would render a great service to Christendom; and that this action might peradventure obtain from Heaven the liberty which they so much wished for. He added moreover, that without doubt this war would not be long, because the manner of the *Persians* was, not to fortifie their Towns, so that having no important sieges to make, the business according to their custom would be decided by the gain or loss of a battel.

Upon

Upon these and many other reasons the Princefs resolv'd for this grievous separation, and *Ibrahim* having left her, after they had made new protestations of fidelity the one to the other, he went unto *Soliman* to begin the preparing of his minde to the war of *Persia*. This Prince, who never swerved from the way of vertue but by constraint, had fought so mightily with the passion wherein he was for *Isabella*, as he might perchance have defeated it, or at least-wise have never made shew of it, had not the *Grand Visier* himself contributed to his own misfortune, in propounding unto him his sending him again into *Persia*. For whereas it is very difficult to reject that which may satisfie us, it was impossible for the *Sultan* to refuse that which *Ibrahim* offered. He had had strength enough, after a long combate, and after he had an hundred times changed his opinion, to resolve not to propound this voyage unto him, since he could not undertake it without quitting *Isabella*; but he had not enough not to accept of that which could content his passion. He determin'd for all that, because the matter regarded the good of his Empire, to have it propos'd in the *Divano*, to the end the people should not murmur, and might know that he had not preferred war before peace, until he had well examined the importance of it.

The day following at seven of the clock in the morning, twelve thousand *Janizaries* appeared in Arms in the great Court of the *Serraglio*; for in regard it was a Council of War, where the *Grand Signior* assisted in person, there was more ceremony used then in the *Divano*, which was accustomed to be held for affairs of peace; the Halls of extraordinary audiences were opened, and hung with the richest hangings that the *Grand Signior* had. There was seen at one end, under a cloth of State of curled cloth of gold, a Throne, raised four degrees high, covered with gold Tinsel, and in the midst of it four cushions of the same stuff, for his Highness to sit upon. All along the Hall were little low seats, adorned with cloth of silver, for the placing of all the Officers of the Empire, who came thither very early, in the richest and bravest apparel that they had. The *Beglierbeys* of *Natalia* and *Lauandali*, with those of *Amasia*, of *Cairo*, *Siria*, *Europe*, and *Romelia*, were present there; so were also the *Capisan Bassa* Governor of *Constantinople*, and all the chiefest *Sangiacs*, namely of *Morea*, of *Nicopoli*, *Philopoli*, *Tricala*, *Negrepont*, and others; the *Aga* of the *Janizaries* was likewise there, together with the *Tesqueregibassi*, to execute his charge of principal Secretary of State if need required: In conclusion, there was not any of all the Officers of the *Turkish* Monarchy lacking there, but only *Ruslan*, who was not yet so well re-established, as to be present at Ceremonies. After they were placed according to their degrees, and that to manifest the more greatness and respect they had attended a long time with an extraordinary silence, the two *Capigibassi*, or Captains of the Port, entred into the Hall richly clad, having each of them in his hand, for a mark of their charge, an *Indian* Cane garnished with gold and stones, and went and stood on either side of *Soliman's* Throne: After them entred the *Grand Visier*, *Ibrahim*, as being chief *Bassa*, marching alone two paces before the *Sultan*, whom two *Bassa's* supported under the Arms, and behinde him three of the children of honor, who waited on him in his chamber, and carried a great cushion of cloth of gold, all set with precious stones of an inestimable value: Next after followed a many of other Officers of the Empire, and a great part of the principal Eunuchs of the *Serraglio*. When as the *Grand Signior* appeared, all they that were in the Hall, both on the right and the left hand, rose up; and as he passed by them, they saluted him after their manner, with their hands across on their breasts, and bowing their heads down even to the ground. *Ibrahim*, who marched foremost, mounted up to the Throne, whither the two *Bassa's* conducted *Soliman*, who being set, caused our illustrious *Bassa* to be placed at his feet upon the highest step; upon the second on the left hand the two *Bassa's* that had led him, with the *Cadilefcher* of *Greece*; and on the right the *Bassa* of the Sea, and the *Cadilefcher* of *Natalia*; the three children of honor, after they had set down the cushion which they had brought behinde him, retired to the Eunuchs; and the *Capigibassi* seated themselves on the lowest step, at the feet of the *Bassa's*. As soon as the *Grand Signior* had made a sign with his hand for every one to sit down, each one re-assumed his place, after they had again made a low obeysance to the *Sultan*, and keeping a most extraordinary silence for so great an assembly, they continued a while in this sort, as it were attending the *Grand Signior's* Commands; who after he had thought a little of what he was to say, began to speak unto them. He told them, that although he could resolve all things by his absolute power, yet in regard it concerned the glory of his Arms, the greatness

greatness of his Empire, and the good of his subjects, he would not frame any design, without communicating unto them the matter he had in hand; to the end that having acquainted them with the importance of it, they might give him faithful and dis-interested counsel. After that, he represented unto them the victories which he had obtained over the *Persians* through the valor of *Ibrahim*; and then, the misadventures, which his absence and *Ulama's* hurt had caused in that Country. He told them that nothing rested of all his conquests, but the remembrance that they had been made: and whereas he had an intention to carry them to a war, he aggravated with a great deal of vehemency, how shameful it would be to the Empire to make peace after they had been last beaten. He told them withall notwithstanding, that having the Princess *Axiawira* the daughter of the *Sophi*, and Prince *Mahamed* his son, in his hands, he was in an estate, if they thought fit, to tender propositions of peace unto *Tachmas*; but that they should well examine before-hand, whether that would not be dishonorable; and that they should remember, how in publique interests particular interests were not always to be considered, and that the glory of the Empire was to be preferred above all things.

After he had spoken thus unto them, he commanded them to deliver their Opinions, which proved not to be alike, for they were all carryed by different thoughts. Some, won by *Roxelana* and *Rustan*, opposed the voyage of *Persia*; others, for the sole interest of the people, were of the same opinion; some again, to please the *Sultan*, counselled the war; and others, for their particular interest likewise, opposed peace. Yet did they not for all that deliver their Opinions tumultuously, nor without giving reasons for them; but contrarily keeping a marvelous decorum in this Council, they spake all severally, and without precipitation. But whereas, according to the order which is observed amongst the *Turks*, *Ibrahim* was to deliver his Opinion first, as being the chief in dignity, he was already preparing to speak, when *Machmut*, *Cadiseher* of *Natolia*, who had been suborned by *Roxelana*, besought his Highness, that for this time onely that custom might not be followed, to the end that the Opinions, which should be given in this occasion, might be the more sincere. For, my Lord, said he unto him, I am assured if the noble *Ibrahim* propounds his Opinion first, that it will be impossible for me to deliver mine, if it happen to be contrary to his; not because I cannot take the liberty to contradict him if I could, for I know his generosity too well for that; but because his Reason renders it self so absolute a Mistress of another's, as it is not possible for one to conserve his own sense. A man cannot defend himself from him; he persuades whatsoever he pleaseth; and one cannot chuse but gainsay in his minde his own Opinions. In fine, my Lord, whether it be for the love that is born him, or for the reasons that I have alledged, I am very certain, if the generous *Ibrahim* speaks first, that his vote will carry all the rest; that there will be but one Opinion found in the whole Assembly; and that in this sort, thy Highness will not know our true sense, but wilt onely understand *Ibrahim's*, which doubtless we shall but say over again. It is not because I do not believe his counsel to be better than any other that can be given thee; but I conceive, that for divers causes, which regard *Ibrahim* himself, it is requisite thou shouldst leave us to be guided by our own Reason.

In this sort it was that the subtle *Machmut*, instructed by the cunning *Roxelana*, got the order of the *Divane* to be changed; for though this proposition displeased the *Grand Signior*, yet durst he not for all that reject it; and so much the less, because *Ibrahim* himself besought his Highness that it might be so, after he had notwithstanding told *Machmut*, that he was not so eloquent, as he would make him believe; and that he was persuaded also, how all those which he saw there, whom the *Sultan* honored with his presence, did not regard any thing, no more then he, but the interests of the Empire, and the glory of his Highness.

After this, the *Bassa Piali* spake first, and was of the opinion, that no propositions of peace should be rendered, in regard they had been last beaten; but withall he was of the minde, that without making such great preparations for war, they should onely stand upon the defensive, and retain Prince *Mahamed* and the Princess *Axiawira*, whereby without doubt the *Sophi* would soon be brought to speak first of this peace, which then might be accepted of, if it were propounded with reasonable conditions. *Scander Capisan Bassa*, speaking in his turn, said, that a great Prince and a great Politician should never be contented with being in an estate of defending himself; that he should always either carry the war to his Enemies,



Enemies, or not make it at all; that it was better to make peace, then not to make conquests; that not to assail ones Enemy, when one was in Arms, was in a manner to be vanquished, or at least-wise to testifie fear, or weakness; that in this occasion he did not see there was any choyce to be made; that it would be without example to make propositions of peace to a Prince, who was contented to offer two millions for the ransom of his daughter and *Felixana*; and that it would shew much imprudence, not to prepare for war, after the refusal of them to him: so that in regard they were not to be rendred because they were not prisoners of war, nor to be kept without being in a condition to defend them, his advice was, that to obtain peace, and oblige *Tachmas* to demand it, an Army of five hundred thousand men was to be levied, to the end that fear might carry him to propound it advantageously for the *Turkish* Empire.

*Machmus*, *Cadilescher* of *Natolia*, said, that whereas it was never counted a design either base or shameful in a Prince to procure the peace of his subjects, he conceived that if it were possible to make use of the persons of Prince *Mahamed* and the Princess *Axiandra* for the obtaining thereof, it was to be done: and so much the rather, because in continuing this war, the treasures of the *State* would be unprofitably exhausted; the power of the *Sultan* would be impaired by the loss of the *Janizaries* which would perish in it; yea and the honor of the Arms of the Empire would be once again hazarded: and all this without attending any recompence from it, it being absolutely impossible to maintain the conquests that were made in *Persia*, whereof History gave sufficient proof; and therefore if war were to be made, that it was better to fall upon the Christians with an Army of five hundred thousand men, which would strike fear into all *Europe*, amplify the limits of the Empire, and eternize the name of *Soliman*, rather then to lose them to no purpose: How it would be a shame to see one day in History, that *Soliman* had warted a long time against the *Sophi*; that at several times he had led millions of men into *Persia*, and after all, that there should not be remaining under the dominion of his successors, so much as one foot of ground of the conquests he had made there. Finally he concluded, that not this war, but the other, was to be thought on.

*Iusuf*, *Cadilescher* of *Greece*, maintained this Opinion, though out of a different meaning; for the former was carryed by the persuasions of *Roxelana*, and he by the sole consideration of the publique good. But he added to the others Reasons, that if the war of *Persia* continued longer, whole Provinces might revolt, by reason of the poverty whereunto the interruption of commerce would reduce them; in so much that this forraign war might cause a civil, more dangerous and more deadly then the other; that if this mischief should arrive, as the murmuring of the people seemed to threaten, they should then be constrained to propound a shameful peace to *Tachmas*, who it may be, to make use of this advantage, would not accept of it; that so they should have Enemies both without and within, whilst the Christians, which were but Tributaries of the Empire, might possibly undertake to shake off the yoke which had been layd upon them; and that all Christendom besides might peradventure unite their forces together, seeing *Soliman* busied elsewhere, to reconquer that which had been taken from them.

*Hali*, the *Bassa* of the Sea, was of the opinion, that not onely there should no Articles of peace be propounded, that not onely there should be preparations for war, but even that no propositions from the *Sophi* should be accepted of, if he happened to make any. How it was just that *Soliman* should surpass his predecessors in something; that they had conquered from the Christians, as well as he; but that none had conserved that which they had won from the *Persians*; that it was for him to change this order; that it was a weak reason to say, that since they had conserved themselves till then mangre all the *Oshoman* power, and that the victorious *Selim*, his Highness Father, had vanquished them with loss, therefore one could do no more; that contrarily it was a mark their ruine was neer; that Empires had their ages as well as men, and being subject to the revolutions of fortune, it was credible that this extraordinary constancy, which she had shewed in protecting of the *Persians*, would quickly change; that it being so, it was not to be doubted but that this illustrious victory was reserved for the greatest Prince, that hath been since *Alexander*, the most renowned Hero's of antiquity, and the most in veneration amongst the *Turks*; that the Empire of the *Persians* was not so flourishing as it was at such time as it was overthrown, nor *Soliman* less

less valiant, then he who had conquered it; that *in fine* it was reasonable, after the *Sultan* had travelled so much for the felicity of his Subjects, that his Subjects also should do something for his glory: so as he was of the opinion, that without considering whether the people murmured or no, an expedition should be made into *Persia* with all the Forces of the Empire.

*Achmat Bassa*, speaking in his course, consented indeed to the voyage of *Persia*, but not to the design of impairing the Empire on all parts, to make new conquests on that side; since without hazarding any loss of the one side to gain on the other, there needed no more then to oblige *Ibrahim* to make one journey more thither; that it was without doubt from his hand *Soliman* was to attend this victory; that it was easie to judg of the future by things past; and that the *Sultan* without venturing any thing, and to retain both his Subjects and his Tributaries in their duties, should abide at *Constantinople*, as in the center of his Empire, to give order for all things, and to prepare Crowns and Triumphs for the illustrious *Bassa*, who would without question return Conqueror of *Persia*.

Next was the *Beglierbey* of *Romelia* of the same opinion; He of *Carro* concurred with him; and all the rest being divided amongst the seven that had already spoken, it was for *Ibrahim* to deliver his advice; but he was constrained to attend a little, because *Machmut* said a second time to maintain his first opinion, that it would be a shame to be exposed to the loss of the advantage which they had over the Christians. *Achmat* answered, that it would be a greater to demand peace after they were beaten. The *Bassa Piali* added, that extreme resolutions were dangerous to Monarchies; and that in the end Princes, which loved their Subjects, and whose Empire was great enough, ought not to make War, but for the procuring of peace. *Isuf*, to fortifie this opinion, said further, that the people were not to be so little considerable with the Emperor, since from them came his riches, his force, his power, and his greatness; that the people had in some parts of the world been happy without Kings, but no Kings could be so without Subjects: He said likewise, that prudence never did any thing precipitously, and still would have the Prince spare the blood of his people. But the *Bassa* of the Sea replied, that it was oftentimes just and necessary to lose one part of his Subjects for the preservation of the other; and that an Empire was a great Body, for the maintenance whereof all things might be done, without considering particular interests. *Scander* added, that a great Prince was never to make peace but with the sword in his hand, and that the way to keep the people from murmuring, was to make it advantageously; that for the effecting thereof five hundred thousand men were to be raised, to the end they might obtain that by force which could not be obtained by any other mean.

This *Bassa* having given over speaking, *Ibrahim* repeated in order all the opinions that had been given; he confuted that of the *Bassa Piali*; approved that of *Scander Capitan Bassa*; mightily opposed *Machmut's* advice, as also that of *Isuf*; commended the generous resolutions of *Ali* the *Bassa* of the Sea, and the prudent considerations of *Achmat*, with exception nevertheless of the praises he had given him. But at length for a conclusion he said, that great Princes were always to give peace, and not to demand it; that if *Soliman's* children had happened to have been the *Sophi's* prisoners, all that could then have been done was but to propound it; and that even *Tachmas* was so generous as not to do it, though Prince *Mahamed* and the Princess *Axiandra* were in his Highness hands; that it was a gallant thing in the Victorious to speak of Peace, because they thereby demonstrated, that the sole desire of glory had made them fight; but that it was always shameful, how specious a pretext soever might be taken up for it, to speak of peace, when as one had been beaten. That this were to yield up the Victory, and to render ones arms to his Enemy, to implore the pity of the Conqueror, to augment the courage of his adversaries, to weaken that of his Soldiers, and even to expose himself to the hazard of having done an unworthy act unprofitably; that besides, the only mean to keep Christendom from uniting their Forces for the destruction of the *Turkish* Empire, was to let it breathe a little after so much War, because if it were further provoked, it might peradventure do that which it would not do, were it left in rest; that it was many times dangerous to prosecute ones enemies too much; that tempting Fortune so often, she might be weary of favoring; and at last abandon those whom she had protected; that to keep her from changing, we were to change our design, and suffer our selves to be conducted by her, and not force her to follow us; that after all, he did not find, that any deliberation was to be

had upon the matter in question; that *Tachmas* being in arms, and offering no Proposition of Peace, albeit his Children were under the power of his Highness, it would be an unheard of and shameful thing to think of it, especially if it might be remembered, that it was not yet a year since *Soliman* had been crowned King of *Persia* at *Bagdet*; that it would not be a shame for the *Sultan* to make no more Conquests upon the Christians, but that it would be a great one for him to let himself be vanquished by the *Persians*, or at leastwise to demand Peace of them; that for so much as regarded Prince *Mahamed* and the Princess *Axiamira*, in the estate wherein things were, they could not be rendred upon any conditions; yea, and that it would be most unworthily done to remit them into the hands of the *Sophi* for the making of Peace, because they were not prisoners of War, but contrarily were persons fled for refuge; that *Soliman* was therefore to protect them, to make War both for their sakes, and also that he might not be ingrateful to *Ulama*, whose Fortune was conjoynd to *Felixan's*; that the War had never had more juster grounds, then since the time that the Princess *Axiamira*, Prince *Mahamed*, and *Felixana*, were in the power of the *Sultan*; that one of the prime duties of a King, was to protect the oppressed; and that in this encounter there was too fair an occasion presented, to be lost; that as for him, he offered, if his Highness pleased, to return unto this War, and not to spare, either his care, his blood, or his life, for restoring the honor of his arms to the point, wherein it had been.

*Ibrahim* had no sooner made an end of speaking, but they, who had been of a contrary opinion to his, seeing the *Grand Signior* favor his party, began to change theirs in appearance; professing that his reason had cleared theirs. And *Machmus* was he alone, who seeming to yield as the rest, opposed himself still notwithstanding to this resolution: But *Soliman* having made a sign to him to hold his peace, he kept silence as well as the rest of the assembly; and the *Grand Signior*, having commanded the bringing in of the *Persian* Ambassador, spake softly to *Ibrahim*, but yet finished his discourse aloud in giving him order to answer this Ambassador according to his sense; so that as soon as he appeared, the *grand Visier* rose up, and after he had made a low obeisance to the *Sultan*, he told him how he was to assure the *Sophi* his Master from his Highness, that his State should always be an inviolable sanctuary to all oppressed Princes; that the Princess *Axiamira* and *Felixana* being no prisoners of War, the *Grand Signior*, far from accepting the ransom which was offered for them, declared by him, that he would become their Protector, as well as Prince *Mahameds*; and that he would shortly go with a very mighty Army to execute his Highness Commands, and to see Justice rendred to these exiled Princes. The *Persian* Ambassador thereupon labored to make it appear, that *Axiamira* not having been intreated as a person fled for refuge, since she had been in prison, was to be taken for a prisoner of War; and for a conclusion he added, that if she were not delivered up, the *Sophi* would come with an Army of two hundred thousand men to make her be rendred unto him. But the *grand Visier* having answered him, that he would save him the labor of coming so far, and that he would go and meet him even in his own Country, he was constrained to withdraw, as he did with satisfaction little enough. He was no sooner gone forth, but the *Grand Signior* arose, after he had commanded the Officers of the Empire, in all things to obey *Ibrahim*, as if it were himself, and in particular the *Bassa* of the Sea to prepare for his departure with the Naval Army, to go and fall upon *Mingrelia*, of purpose to make a diversion, and divide the Enemies Forces.

After this Commandment, the *Sultan* returned in the same order as he came, only one of the *Capigibassi* remained in the Hall, to the end that according to the custom he might cause all those, which had assisted in this extraordinary Council, to be presented with a rich Gown, which is given to all the Officers of the *Turkish* Monarchy, from the *Grand Signior*, so often as he honoreth the *Divans* with his presence, which happens but seldom. The two *Bassa's* which conducted the Emperor having left him alone with *Ibrahim*, he told him that there rested nothing for him now but to take his leave of *Isabella*, because all the Troops, which had been levied for the making up of his Army, being already far advanced, all that he could do was to overtake them upon the frontire; that he was sorry he was constrained to separate him from a person that was so dear unto him; but he was to remember that glory was the fairest Mistress in the world, and how it was not but for her that he abandoned the Princess. *Ibrahim* answered thereunto, that the sole glory of his Arms carried him on, for he assured his Highness, that in the voyage he was going to undertake, he considered not himself at all; and in the

mean



mean time, that he might part with some satisfaction, he besought him he would promise to protect *Isabella* in all things during his absence; and if he happened to dye in this War, that he would send her back in safety to any place which she should please to make choyce of. This discourse touched *Soliman*; he was ashamed of his own thoughts and weakness; and little lacked but that craving pardon of *Ibrahim*, he had opened his heart to him, and acknowledged his crime with repentance: Howbeit love was the stronger, and that vertue, which this Prince followed in all other encounters, was too weak in this for the resisting of so powerful an Enemy.

He abandoned himself then unto it, and with an equivocating answer promised the *Grand Visier*, that he would protect *Isabella* against all the world; that there was not any subject of his whom he would not severely punish if he should displease her; that for what he had demanded of him in case he should dye, was a thing whereunto he could not answer, that thought being too grievous for him to settle his mind upon it; that for her more safety during his absence, he held it fit that *Isabella* should not abide in his Palace, but should pass away that time in the old *Serraglio*; in the company of his mother, of his sisters, and his daughters; that the *Sultana Asferia*, to whom he was somewhat obliged, should take care to entertain her; and that for the exercise of her Religion, she should go forth as often as she would; that his making of this proposition proceeded from the remembrance of the seditious tumult, which was raised at such time as he was in *Natolia*; for whereas the people and the *Janizaries* were perswaded that this War was undertaken by his counsel, if by mischance news should come, either true or false, that he had been beaten, he feared lest the fury of the one or the other, or of both of them together, should fall foul on his Palace, and *Isabella* be involved in that disorder. *Ibrahim*, seeing a great deal of reason in that which the *Grand Signior* said, humbly thanked him for his providence, and told him that he would go and propound the matter to *Isabella*: But he knew not that this proposition was made, rather to undo then preserve her; and that this Prince, whom he beleev'd to be so generous (as indeed he was when as love did not trouble his Reason) thought not so much of the Conquest of *Persia*, as of the Conquest of *Isabella*.

In this dangerous ignorance he went to the Princess, and made that proposition to her which the *Sultan* had made to him, but not till he had rendred her an account of all that had past in the *Divano*. At first that name of the *Serraglio* affrighted her, and her modesty could not suffer him to continue speaking without interrupting him; But after she had told him I know not how often that she could not resolve to go thither, she was constrained to alter her mind, *Ibrahim* having made it appear to her, that the old *Serraglio* was the only place of all the Orient, where the most vertues, and the fewest vices were. As indeed, it is not inhabited by any but the Mother, Aunts, Daughters, and Sisters of the Emperor, who never have any commerce with the *Sultana's* of the other *Serraglio*, unless it be with the *Sultana Queen*, which lives in the *Grand Signiors* lodging. For touching the people abroad, they never see any of them; having no other entertainment then to learn Needle works and Musick, which certain Jewish women teach them; to walk in their gardens, which are very fair; to receive the visits which the *Sultan* sometimes gives them, especially when his Mother is still living; to look out at the windows, which open upon the Port and the City; and to see the publique feasts when they are celebrated at *Constantinople*: living otherways with a great deal of reservedness, until the *Sultan* marries them to some of his *Bassa's*, for a recompence of some great Conquests achieved by them. *Isabella*, having then understood all these particulars, surmounted the aversion which she had against the entering into that place, and was at length perswaded that she should be much better amongst women, then to live alone with *Emilia* and Slaves in the Palace where she was.

This resolution being taken, the *grand Visier* gave order to his servants to prepare all things for his voyage, that he might part the next day, and expressly forbid them after that from coming to speak to him of any affair, if it were not directly from the *Grand Signior*; intending to employ the small time he had resting, in talking with *Isabella*. Never was conversation so sad as theirs; and seeing that which they had resolved upon even ready to be executed, they almost repented them of the design they had undertaken. *Ibrahim* would not willingly have parted, and yet prepared to part. And the Princess in testifying to him that she could wish he would not abandon her, spake to him of their farewell and separation. Remember, said she,

unto him, that in the War, whither you are going, you must have a care, not only of your own life, but of mine. Think not so much of the victory, as not to think of preserving your self: And to oblige you thereunto, remember every time you go to fight, that in defending your life, you defend *Isabella's*; that upon your return depends her felicity; and that if you love her, you will not think so much of vanquishing, as to keep your self from being vanquished. That can I never be, Madam, answered he, after so many glorious marks, which I receive of your affection: And since in preserving mine own life, I shall preserve yours, there is no Enemy which can be redoubted of me, and which I shall not easily surmount. Remember yet, Madam, that on Victory our happiness depends; that to obtain it I must expose my self to peril; that in all other things Fortune gives the good that she does, but in War Crowns must be violently pluck'd out of the hands of Victory, if one may be permitted to speak so: One must fight to remain Master of the field; one must give an example for the Soldiers to follow, and put ones self in jeopardy of being vanquished for to be victorious. I tell you all these things, Madam, to the end you may not take it ill, if I dare assure you, that I will not remember you, but to fight with the more courage. You are a captive for the love of me, it is for me then to deliver you, and therefore do not enjoin me to manage my life with so much care. But, Madam, without anticipating our miseries through fear; and without encreasing those, which we feel through the apprehension of those which peradventure will never arrive unto us, tell me, I beseech you, whether you can forgive me all the evils which I have been the cause of to you, if you do not represent unto your self how you have favorable received the affection of a man, who was once reckoned amongst your enemies, and who by a strange fate in ceasing to be so, hath been the occasion of more misery to you in adoring you, than all your cruellest adversaries, purposing to hurt you, could have done. Do not charge your self with the crimes of Fortune, said she unto him, and believe that I am generous enough to distinguish the guilty from the innocent, and never to remember the evils which I have suffered, without remembering those withall, which you have endured for me. I am as faulty towards *Justiniano*, as *Justiniano* is towards *Isabella*; or to say better, we are equally innocent; and our innocency it may be causes our persecution, since it is ordinary with Fortune to fall foul upon none but vertuous persons. I hope nevertheless, added she, that Heaven will ere long give an end to our captivity, or to our lives. If we were, continued *Isabella*, in the hands of a Prince, that used us ill, and laded us with irons, I should methinks have the more consolation, for in murmuring against the Tyrant that persecutes us there is some to be found: But this Prince, who keeps us captives, does it not but because he loves you; and the rigor of my destiny is so great, as I must commend that in him, which is the cause of all my misery. It was in this manner that these two illustrious infortunate persons entertained one another until night, when as they parted, more out of civility, then for any desire they had to sleep.

The next morning the *grand Visier* went to take his leave of his Highness, intending to defer his bidding adieu to *Isabella*, and giving his last thoughts to one, to whom he had given all his heart, as long as possibly he could. *Soliman* received him with an inquietness, which he took for a mark of his grief to see him depart, but to speak truly of things it was the last combat which he had in his Soul. The remorse of his crime, and the shame of his weakness, had like to have carried him once more to repent him; nevertheless love was still victorious over this illustrious Conqueror. This Prince then embraced *Ibrahim*, after he had talked with him about the War, and had given him an absolute power to treat of all things without advertizing him thereof; and preventing what the *Bassa* was going to say to him, he assured him that *Isabella* should be served during his absence in all respects, as the *Sultana* Queen; and that he had given order for Charets to bring her and all her Slaves to the old *Serraglio*, where the *Sultana Asteria* should have a particular care to entertain her. After this, he dismissed *Ibrahim*, who went to the *Bassa* of the Seas Palace, to will him to set sail as soon as he could, in regard the Squadrons of *Moselin*, of *Rhodes*, of *Ciprus*, and *Alexandria*, were already joyned together; and that with all this Fleet he should steer his course for *Mingrelia*. This order given, he returned to his Palace, where he found the Charets, which the *Grand Signior* had sent, to carry *Isabella* to the old *Serraglio*. And whereas the hour of parting pressed him, he went to the Princesses chamber to advertise her of it, and to desire her that he might conduct her to the place, which was to serve for a sanctuary to her, during his absence. She granted

granted him his desire, without knowing almost what she did, so extream was her grief. And after a conversation as sad, as their Souls were afflicted, she reached him her hand, which *Ibrahim* kissed, with as great a transport of grief, as of love. And conducting her with *Emilia* to the Charet, which was prepared for her, he went and accompanied her to the gate of the old *Serraglio*, where they took their last farewell.

It was at this instant that they felt that which cannot be exprest; You had reason indeed, said the Princes to him, to steal away from me when you left me at *Monaco*, and to save me the grief of bidding you farewell; but I do not know, said she unto him, whether you have any now to make me prove it. Is it your pleasure then, Madam, answered he, that I shall not part? No, replied she, do not you stick at what I say; it is only grief that makes me speak: Go and break our chains, carry a stronger heart than I, and that you may not augment my weakness, do not oblige me to bid you farewell. As she was saying so, the gates of the *Serraglio* opened, and *Ibrahim*, seeing himself constrained to quit her in a place where men never come, assured her at this last instant, that he would quickly return a Conqueror. The Charet was no sooner entred, but he mounted on horseback, and without speaking a word more to any body, he went out of *Constantinople* with his Train, to overtake the Troops, which were marching towards *Persia*, carrying in his heart the most sensible affliction, that ever he had tried. He had this advantage nevertheless over the Princes, that he could entertain his thoughts without interruption, but it was not so with her. For as soon as she had been conducted to a stately lodging, which was prepared for her, the *Grand Signiors* Mother, although she hated *Ibrahim*, came to visit her followed by all the *Sultanaes*, thereby to please *Soliman*, who had intreated her unto it. The *Sultana Asteria*, as the favorite of the Emperor her father, had been permitted to learn the *Italian* Tongue, after the goodwill she had born to *Ibrahim* had made her to desire it; so as it was she that held up the conversation in this visit, and that expressed the compliments of the other *Sultanaes* to *Isabella*, who received them with a great deal of civility, although the extream grief she was in might have dispenced her from it. But whereas *Asteria* had address and wit, and knew that *Isabella* was afflicted, she so ordered the matter as this visit was not long. The *Sultanaes* went away then charmed with the beauty of the Princess; and *Asteria* found her self as much inclined to serve her, as she had been beforetime to save the life of *Ibrahim*. It is true, that though they were all gone but this last, yet was not *Isabella* at liberty to think of her misfortunes; For the *Sultan* sent the *Bostangibassi*, who is as it were the Superintendant of the Gardens, and one of the chiefest of the Port, to present her with three maunds of Gold engraven, full of flowers and fruits mannured with his Highness own hand; the Religion of the *Grand Signiors* obliging them, as well as their Subjects, to labor in some work, that may gain their living; it being unjust, as they beleeve, for them to be nourished at the peoples charge. And whereas agriculture hath something delightful in it, and that the gardens of the *Serraglio* are the fairest in the world, *Soliman*, to satisfy both the custom, and his Religion, which requires it, had many times watered with his own hand the flowers which he sent to *Isabella*. He gave her to understand, that had it not been for fear of incommoding her, he would have come and comforted her for the departure of *Ibrahim*.

The Princess received these presents and civilities with a great deal of respect, and desired the *Bostangibassi* by the mouth of the *Sultana Asteria*, to tell the *Grand Signior*, that if there had not been too much presumption in letting her self be perswaded, that he would do her the honor to visit her, she would have testified unto him how dear this glory was unto her; but not daring to hope for it, she contented her self with assuring his Highness, that she would share in all the obligations wherein the *grand Visier* stood engaged unto him, and that in her particular she would all the days of her life be very sensible of them. The *Bostangibassi* being gone, she craved pardon of the *Sultana Asteria* for the trouble she had put her to in serving her for her an Interpreter: and that she might find occasion to talk to her of *Ibrahim* with civility, she thanked her for saving of his life in times past, told her, that in consideration thereof she owed her all things, and since *Ibrahim* could not acknowledg it to her himself, it was for her to do it. *Asteria*, who certainly had wit, generosity, and more address, then the retirement wherein she lived seemed to permit, answered her, that her sight and acquaintance recompenced her beyond that which the service she had rendered her deserved. That pity, being a sense so natural to the sex whereof she was, she merited no great glory for having had compassion



compassion of so gallant and handfom a man as *Ibrahim*. For, continued she, although I know very well, that they talk amongst the Christians of us, as if we were barbarous; yet I can assure you, that this rule is not so general, but it hath exceptions: And pity, which is a thing quite opposite to that which is beleev'd of us, is one of the first precepts of our Religion; it extends even to unreasonable creatures; and there are found amongst us such careful Observers of the Law, as they buy up Birds to let them fly. Judg after this, whether that which I have done, deserves to be ranked in the number of extraordinary things; and whether contrarily there had not been cause to wonder, if seeing a man carried to dye, whose countenance so little resembled a Slaves, or Malefactors, I should not have had the thought to save him. And then again, added she, if any one ought to recompence me for this action, it must be the *Sultan*, since I have preserv'd him a man, whose brave actions have rendred his Empire famous, and whose merit and conversation hath made up all his felicity ever since he was here. For as for you, continued she, I do not see how you are oblig'd to me; if I had been contented with saving of *Ibrahim's* life, you might well have said so; but since it was I that was the cause of the *Sultan's* seeing, loving him, and retaining him in his service, methinks I ought rather to demand pardon of you for robbing you of him, then to attend thanks for his preservation.

*Isabella*, who did not think that *Asteria* was acquainted with all her history, knew not how to answer her, which the *Sultana* perceiving, desired her not to marvel if she understood by her discourse, that she was not ignorant of all her adventures. She told her then how the *Sultan* her father had been almost constrained to impart them unto her, for a reason which she would tell her another time, it being unjust to keep her any longer from the liberty of lamenting an absence, which could not chuse but be very grievous unto her. *Isabella* was so satisfied with the civility and wit of *Asteria*, that she felt some consolation, in finding a reasonable person in a place, where she imagined there had been nothing but stupidity; so that to oblige her she requested her with a great deal of tenderness and respect not to leave her for that reason, nor to defer to another time the acquainting her with that, which she would fain hear, although she knew it. *Asteria* then recounted unto her, what *Ibrahim* had already told her, namely, that *Soliman* had purposed to have married her to him; but she particularizing the matter further unto her, in letting her know, how this business had not been so hastily carried, but that some days were past, after the *Grand Signior* had spoken to her of it, when as *Ibrahim's* discourse oblig'd him, to propound it sooner unto him then he had intended. That whereas he could not foresee how this marriage should be disagreeable to *Ibrahim*, he had resolv'd to have had her conducted to his Palace upon the day of his Triumph, to the end he might do the more honor to the *grand Visier*, but that he had been hindred from it by a *Persian*, named *Alibech*, who came to demand Justice of him against the *Bassa* of the Sea, and had kept him till it was night in the *Hipodrome*. That having learnt all these things from the *Sultan's* own mouth, and seeing afterwards that nothing came of all this, she had cast her self at *Soliman's* feet, and besought him to let her know, for what cause *Ibrahim* had refus'd her; and that after many intreaties, having had experience of her discretion in other encounters, he had declared unto her the truth of the matter. That after this she had far more esteem'd of the *Bassa* then before; and that his fidelity to her had in such sort touch'd her heart, as far from being incens'd against him for the refusal he had made of her, she had commended him for it in her talk with *Soliman*. Do not disquiet your self, said this *Sultana* to *Isabella*, if I dare say to you, that I have been your Rival; that *Ibrahim's* glory had touch'd my inclination; and that I could have resolv'd with joy to have been his wife; since I had not thus open'd my heart unto you, if it had not been free enough to offer you all manner of service, and to assure you, that that which I felt for the *Bassa* could not be named Love, but a simple desire to marry a gallant and vertuous man. Do not regard me then as your Rival, seeing that could not be without hatred, but as a person that hath no stronger a passion, then to serve *Ibrahim* in you. You are too generous, answered *Isabella*, and *Ibrahim* too happy, for him to be indebted to you. I should condemn him nevertheless, continued she, for not failing in his fidelity to me, had he had the honor to know you, but his misfortune hath made him commit this fault: Do not accuse him then for want of judgment in preferring my conservation before your Conquest, since his ignorance hath been the cause of it; and seeing you know my whole life as well as I, lament us without accusing us. But what say I, added *Isabella*

*bella* reprehending her self, rather admire *Ibrahim's* good fortune, in that he could oblige you to save his life, and afterwards gain the affection of the greatest Prince of the Earth; and to joyn our good fortunes, as our interests are joyned, I must add further, in having procured me the honor of your acquaintance.

This conversation, having lasted an indifferent long time, combined the *Sultana Asteria* and the Princes in so strait a league of friendship, as they were almost inseparable, so long as *Isabella* continu'd in the old *Serraglio*. The day after she was come thither, *Soliman* visited her, and by this last sight made the chains which captived him stronger then before. The incertainty he was in, wholly ceased; and the combat which he had in his heart, between his friendship to the *grand Visier*, and the passion he was in for *Isabella*, was at an end; and love remaining absolutely victorious, his mind had some more peaceable moments, so that he had no other thought, then of the Conquest of *Isabella*. But whereas he knew, that to make himself be beloved, he must first please, he complied so far with her, as not to speak of any thing but *Ibrahim* in this first visit. He craved pardon of the Princess for being the cause of his absence from her; he desired her not to remember it was he that caused her to be brought away by force; and to think that she was in a place, where she might absolutely command; where she should see no body but that would obey and serve her with joy. *Isabella* answered to so obliging a discourse with all the civility and acknowledgment she was capable of: but whereas she was sad, though she constrained her self to seem otherwise, he intreated her to be as merry as she could, for fear lest melancholy diminishing her beauty, it might be layd to his charge, that he had but ill preserved so rare a thing.

The Princess having promised him all that he desired, he went away very much satisfied, and very amorous, and left her with as great an esteem of him, as *Ibrahim* could not have more. And whereas *Asteria* seldom abandoned her, she talked to her the rest of the day of nothing but of the admiration she was in of *Soliman*, of the virtues of this Prince, of the greatness of his spirit, of that exceeding and generous friendship, which he testified to our illustrious *Bassa*.

After this first visit there were nothing but magnificences in the old *Serraglio*. *Soliman* sent every day new presents to *Isabella*; and in consideration of her to the *Sultanaes*, which lived in the same place, for fear lest envying her they should come to hate her, and so lose the care of pleasing her. And whereas there passed not a day, wherein this Prince did not visit *Isabella*, *Roxelana*, who knew him to the very bottom of his heart, quickly perceived the true reason that caused these visits. Yet did not jealousy seize upon her Soul for all that; and the only design of making use of this occasion to destroy *Ibrahim*, and to labor the re-establishment of *Rustan*, was that which made her work in the manner, as shall be seen in the sequel of this discourse. But for as much as the *grand Signiors* Mother hated *Ibrahim*, because she loved *Roxelana*, she communicated her suspicions unto her, and they both concluded, that in all likelihood *Soliman's* assiduity was an effect of love; and that if it were so, it would be almost an infallible mean to destroy the *grand Visier*, who it was said was desperately in love with this person. For coming to know this passion, he would questionless do things, which would make him be banished, if he did not voluntarily banish himself.

Having held this secret counsel, *Roxelana*, far from troubling *Soliman's* designs, thought of nothing else but making him more in love with the Princess; being not jealous but of her authority, and fearing *Ibrahim's* power, much more then *Isabella's* beauty. And for this effect, whereas there is scarce any faith in *Turkey* of proof against presents, she suborned one of the Slaves, who went dayly to offer her some new liberality from the *Sultan*, to the end that according to the occasions she might invent some obliging compliment to him from *Isabella*, who ignorant of all these things, lived with as much content and rest, as the absence of the *grand Visier* would permit her. *Asteria* had so great a care of her, and *Soliman* rendred her so many devoirs, as she had scarcely any leisure to think of her misfortunes. In the meantime the *Sultan* was not a little perplexed, out of the fear he was in to discover his love to the Princess; for albeit he knew she esteemed him, yet he beleaved that it was as much for the affection which he seemed to bear to the *Bassa*, as for his own merit. So that not daring as yet to declare himself openly, he contented himself with praising her beauty, her wit, and all the excellent qualities which were in her, in talking to her of *Ibrahim*; and this name, which had been so considerable with him, was employed against him that owed it. For so often as he

he commended *Isabella*, he would exaggerate how happy *Ibrahim* was to be beloved of so marvelous a person; what judgment *Ibrahim* had shewed in the choyce he had made of her; and out of a malicious gallantry he told her many times, that *Ibrahim* was to blame for abandoning her at *Monaco*, to come and keep his word with him; that it was a great fault in him to go to the *Perſian War*, and not to dye with grief, rather then to quit her; that for him, if he had been in his place, he would never have done ſo, thinking it a great deal ſweeter to dye, then to be abſent from her. So artificial a diſcourſe, was not for all that interpreted by *Isabella* as *Soliman* deſired, and without ſeeking for any hidden ſenſe in it, ſhe beleev'd that it was a pure effect of the *Sultan's* compliance, who thinking to pleaſe her, would talk to her of *Ibrahim* in any manner whatſoever. In this ignorance, ſhe always answered him very civilly, and with a great deal of reſpect; ſo that interpreting in this ſort all that *Soliman* ſaid unto her, ſhe put him into an extream pain. For without telling her precifely, that he was in love with her beauty, he would ſain have had her perceive it; being ſo afraid to offend her, that this fear peradventure might have wrought that in him, which Reaſon could not do, had it not been for the meſſages, which the Slave whom *Roxelana* had ſuborned, at ſeveral times brought him.

But whilſt *Isabella* talked of *Soliman's* generoſity, all the *Sultanaes* had no other diſcourſe but of the love which he bore her. *Aſteria*, perceiving it as well as the reſt, and knowing to what violences this paſſion carried the *Grand Signior*, was much afflicted at it, for *Isabella's* intereſt, whom ſhe exceedingly loved. This melancholy was quickly marked by the Princeſs, and whereas her cares and her merit had given her an high place in her affection, ſhe one day conjured her to acquaint her with the cauſe of it. *Aſteria* judging with reaſon, that if ſhe ſhould tell her the truth, it would very much grieve her, excuſed her ſelf from it at firſt as well as ſhe could; but coming to conſider, that it might be the ignorance wherein *Isabella* lived, might further augment her unhappineſs, ſhe reſolved to confide in her, and to impart unto her the ſuſpicions ſhe had. That which made *Aſteria* be intereſſed ſo ſtrongly for all that concerned *Ibrahim*, as to forget the *Sultan's* intereſts, was becauſe ſhe had underſtood how mightily he had proteſted *Muſtapha* and *Gianſer* her brothers, whom ſhe had infinitely loved; and how he had always oppoſed the violences of *Roxelana*, to whom ſhe bore a ſecret hatred, whoſe chief foundation was in her proper virtue. *Aſteria*, following her reſolution, after ſhe had prepared *Isabella's* mind by a long diſcourſe, to make good uſe of the advice ſhe was going to give her, and after *Isabella* had on her ſide promiſed her all manner of fidelity, told her, that knowing the *Sultan* her father, as ſhe did, ſhe feared leſt her beauty had poſſiſt him with more love for her, then he had friendſhip for *Ibrahim*; and that at laſt his reaſon would be found weaker then his paſſion: That ſhe deſired to diſcover her ſuſpicions unto her, to the end ſhe might through her prudence examine the matter, leſt being altogether ignorant of it, ſhe might increaſe the *Grand Signior's* unjuſt deſigns by innocent civilities.

At firſt this diſcourſe ſurprized her, ſhe changed colour ever and anon, and out of the trouble ſhe was in, ſhe thought that *Aſteria* ſpoke not the truth, though ſhe could not imagin any reaſonable cauſe for this fiction. The *Sultanaes* ingenuity notwithstanding deſtroyed this ſecret accuſation, which ſhe charged her within her heart; and paſſing from one extremity to another, ſhe in an inſtant juſtified not only *Aſteria*, but *Soliman* alſo, and calling to mind all that this Prince had done for *Ibrahim*, ſhe beleev'd that the *Sultana* gave an ill interpretation to the *Grand Signiors* civilities; and took that for teſtimonies of love, which ſhe was perſwaded was but an effect of his friendſhip to *Ibrahim*. This laſt thought having quieted her mind, ſhe thanked *Aſteria* for the care ſhe had of her, commended her generoſity and wiſdom; and teſtified at laſt how ſhe could not beleve that ſo great a Prince, as *Soliman*, could be capable of letting himſelf be vanquiſhed by ſo unjuſt a paſſion, as that was whereof ſhe ſpoke. I wiſh it may be ſo, ſaid the *Sultana Aſteria*, both for the glory of *Soliman*, and your content; but take heed, as I have already told you, that your beauty be not more powerful in the Soul of the *Grand Signior*, then his friendſhip to *Ibrahim*. If that ſhould be true, replied the Princeſs, it would rather be an effect of my unhappineſs, then of my beauty; but I profeſs unto you that I ſhall never reſolve to accuſe this Prince, till I am forced thereunto by himſelf.

This converſation being ended, and the *Sultana* gone, *Isabella* found not her ſelf ſo quiet; howbeit



howbeit *Emilia* confirmed her in the opinion, that *Soliman's* respects to her proceeded only from friendship, in making her consider, that *Asteria's* conjecture was questionless grounded on the belief of all the other *Sultanas*, who supposed that the *Grand Signior* could not have any affection for a woman, but straight it must be love; and who out of jealousy for the presents that he sent her, and the civilities that he used to her, had imagined it could not be other wise. This reasoning carrying some likelihood with it, comforted the Princess a little, and after she had run over in her memory all that *Soliman* had said, she found, being willing to deceive her self, that all his discourses and all his actions, might be interpreted to his advantage: yet saw she not so much certainty in all that she imagined, that she durst absolutely rely upon it: and though she feared the sight of the *Grand Signior*, out of the doubt she was in of finding him guilty, yet had she some instants, wherein she desired it, out of a hope of justifying him.

*Roxelana* on her side, having communicated her design to *Rustan*, and he approving of it, they thought of nothing but of augmenting *Soliman's* love to *Isabella*, by the obliging messages, which that suborned Slave delivered to him dayly. It was at the same time, when as there were three marvelous beautiful Slaves presented to the *Sultan*, who without being ever a whit touched with their charms, had refused them, if he had not by chance demanded of them whence they were; but having understood that they were of *Italy*, he retained them with a purpose to bestow them on *Isabella*, seeking after nothing with more care, then to please her. He went then to visit her, after he had commanded that those three Slaves should be carried into the old *Serraglio*: And whereas *Asteria's* discourse to her had rendred her more melancholique then she used to be, he marvelled at it, and by his much pressing her to let him know the cause thereof, he made the Princess apprehend, that the *Sultana's* suspicions were justly grounded; yet destroyed she her self, this her own opinion: and having answered the *Grand Signior*, that her melancholy was derived from the remembrance of her past misfortunes, rather then from any other reason, he desired her to forget them, and not to render her self unhappy with things, which would never arrive to her again. He told her afterwards, that to comfort and delight her, he had chosen her out three Slaves, which it may be would not be disagreeable unto her; and would understand her orders better then the others which had been given her, because they were of her own Country. *Isabella* answered thereunto very civilly, and the *Grand Signior* having commanded them to be brought in, the Princess was strangely surprized, when she saw that these three Slaves were *Sophronia* the sister of *Leonora*, *Leonida*, *Alphonso's* Mistress, and *Hippolita*, *Doria's* sister. She had no sooner perceived them, but she gave a great shriek, then turning her self to *Soliman*, May it please thy Highness to pardon me, said she unto him, if I lose the respect which I owe unto thee, and if the joy to see persons that are so dear to me, is stronger in me then good manners. In saying so, after she had made a low obeysance to the *Sultan*, she went and embraced her dear friends; who were no less amazed and glad then she, to encounter her in a place, where they hoped for no consolation.

This first complement being over, *Isabella* once again besought the *Grand Signior* to pardon her, if friendship and surprizal had constrained her to fail in that which she owed to him. The incomparable *Isabella*, answered he, can owe nothing to any body; and in what place of the world soever she can be, she can never want Slaves. This civility is too excessive, replying the Princess blushing, and I shall hold my self infinitely obliged to thy Highness, if thou wilt give me for companions these three fair maids, whom Fortune hath made thy Slaves. I have already said, answered he, that *Isabella* may command absolutely; and I swear unto her further, how there is but one only thing, which she may not obtain of me.

After this speech, whereof the Princess durst not demand the explication, *Soliman* would needs know of her, whether these three beautiful persons were of *Genova*, as well as they were of *Italy*; and when she had informed him that they were, he used a great deal of civility towards them; and enquiring of *Hippolita* where her brother was, he understood that he and three of his friends were Slaves in *Constantinople*. My Lord, said *Isabella* unto him presently, in casting her self at his feet, I humbly beseech thy Highness to grant them their liberty. We have not used to refuse *Isabella* any thing, said he unto her, lifting her up; and without enquiring who *Doria's* friends be, I declare them free; and in what hands soever they are, their chains shall be instantly broken. *Sophronia*, *Hippolita*, and *Leonida* would

have fallen on their knees to render him thanks, but he not permitting it, told them, how it was *Isabella* they were to thank, and not him. And having demanded of them, to whom their friends were Slaves, they answered, that he which presented them to his Highness could tell to whom he had sold them.

The *Grand Signior*, desiring to oblige the Princess in all things, went away for to leave her at liberty to entertain her dear friends, and to take order for the delivery of those Slaves, whom she had recommended unto him. When he was gone, embraces and civilities began afresh between *Isabella* and these three fair maids: *Emilia* likewise testified the satisfaction which she had to see them; but in the midst of their first apprehensions of joy, the remembrance of their pleasures past, made them shed tears of sorrow. They demanded of one another, by what adventure they were met together in the same place; and being scarce able to believe what they saw was true, their amazement redoubled every moment. The desire of demanding one thing was lost by the curiosity of knowing another, and going both at once to ask the Princess questions, and to answer those which she asked of them, neither of them answered precisely to each other. Howbeit the Princess understood that those Friends, which were Slaves, as well as *Doria*, were *Horatio*, the *French Marquis*, and *Alphonso*. She desired to hear some news of the Count of *Lavagna*, and of *Leonora* his wife, but *Sophronia* told her sighing, that she should know their adventures too soon; and *Hipolita* added, that in a day wherein Fortune had done them so great a grace, it was not fit to remember so many misfortunes.

In the mean time *Isabella*, who feared lest the name of *Serraglio* should disquiet them, and make them conceive something to her disadvantage, acquainted them with the difference which there was between the old *Serraglio*, and that of the *Grand Signior's* women. And whereas in her discourse she many times named *Ibrahim* without thinking of it, and spake of him, as of a man, in consideration of whom the *Sultan* favored her, *Sophronia* demanded of her, who this *Ibrahim* was? This question made the Princess blush, but at length she informed them that this *Ibrahim* was *Justiniano*; it seeming unto her, that in the estate wherein their fortune stood, it was not requisite to make a secret of his adventures to them. This novelty equally surprized *Hipolita*, *Leonida*, and *Sophronia*; not being able to imagine, but that all which they were told was any other then a fiction: Their own experience forced them notwithstanding to believe, that what had been imparted to them was true, there being no more difficulty in giving credit to that which was arrived to them, then to that which had happened to *Isabella*.

When it was almost Evening, the *Bostangibassi* came to the Princess from *Soliman*, to tell her, that according to her order (for he was commanded to speak to her in those terms) he had caused *Horatio*, *Doria*, and *Alphonso* to be delivered; but for the other, he could not possibly learn as yet where he was; that all he could understand of him was, how in less then a month he had changed his Master nine or ten times; but he besought her not to be troubled at it, assuring her that he would the next day make a general review of all the Slaves in *Constantinople*, rather then fail in finding out of him, whom she desired to have: That moreover, the *Sultan* was very sorry he could not leave with her the three persons, which he had presented unto her, out of a belief that they should have been her Slaves; for in regard they were not to be increased so, it would be the abusing both of their Religion and Custom, to let so many persons of a free condition, and of a faith differing from his, be in the old *Serraglio*. Howbeit, not to deprive her altogether of a conversation that was so agreeable to her, she might go every day and visit them at *Ibrahim's* Palace, where their friends were already attending for them, and whither he had order to conduct them; assuring her that they should be served there with as much care, as respect. The Princess received this news with a great deal of grief; and she would fain have obliged him that brought her this message, to have gone and besought his Highness from her, that he would permit her to accompany her friends to the *Grand Viscers* Palace; but he answered her, that the order which had been given him was absolute, and how he could do no other then execute it.

*Isabella* it may be would have redoubled her intreaties, had not the *Sultana Asferia* arrived: who having been informed of the estate of things, counselled her not to exasperate the minde of *Soliman*, and to comply with him in this particular, which he did not desire of her without some reason; it being very certain that it was altogether extraordinary to see persons

persons, that were free and Christians, in the old *Serraglio*. *Isabella*, who knew the virtue and discretion of *Astoria*, resolved to yeeld to that which was desired of her, in taking leave of her dear friends; who left her with tears in their eyes, having this comfort notwithstanding that they were going to meet, not onely with their Brothers, but with their Lovers also; for Time, Fortune, and Slavery, had not changed their hearts: *Horatio*, *Sophronia's* Brother, loved *Hipolita* still; so did *Doria*, *Hipolita's* Brother, *Sophronia*; and in like manner *Alphonso* continued constant to *Leonida*. But for *Isabella*, she remained without any consolation, but that which was given her by the hope she had to go the next day and visit these fair infortunate ones, whose encounter had possessed her with as much grief, as joy, both by the thought that they were not Slaves, and the displeasure she was in for being so soon deprived of their sight.

### The Fifth Book.

IT was no sooner day, but *Isabella* sent to desire permission of the *Grand Signior*, that she might go and visit her dear friends, which he durst not deny, so much was he afraid to displease her; He repented him nevertheless for having made *Hipolita*, *Sophronia*, and *Leonida* go out of the *Serraglio*; and feared lest that which he had done for his content should destroy it; for it was true, that he was not carryed thereunto, so much by the requisiteness of things, as the doubt he was in, that he should not be able to speak to the Princess in private, so long as they were with her. *Isabella* then, having obtained the permission which she had demanded, went to *Ibrahim's* Palace with as much magnificence, as if she had been the *Sultana* Queen. *Horatio*, *Alphonso*, *Leonida*, *Sophronia*, and *Hipolita*, received her with exceeding satisfaction, yet was it less for all that then *Doria's*, who having understood from his sister, that *Justiniano* was in that Country, was in so extraordinary an impatience to know by what adventure he was come thither again, as he had scarcely made his first complement, when as he conjured her to acquaint him with it: But she, that was in no less to understand his, and those of his friends, and by what hap they were arrived there, told him, that he should not know it, till he had informed her what good or bad fortune had conducted them to *Constantinople*. *Hipolita* and *Horatio* protested, that that was the least thing they could pay her for the liberty which she had given them. As for *Sophronia*, she consented not without regret to this sad and pitiful relation, well foreseeing that so lamentable a discourse would cost her many a tear: howbeit she desired at least, that *Doria* might be he who might recount their misfortunes, it being impossible for her to do it. *Doria*, not using to resist *Sophronia*, was preparing to obey her, when as *Horatio* told his sister, that it would be unjust to oblige him to this relation, by reason of the name he bore; and albeit that they which were mingled in this adventure were his Enemies, yet were they still his Kinsmen. *Doria* answered thereunto smiling, that Lovers had no others but those of their Mistresses: But in the end *Alphonso* was the man that contented the curiosity of *Isabella*. As soon as for the honor of *Ibrahim's* Palace, she had led them into his Cabinet, and that they were set down there, *Alphonso*, addressing himself to *Isabella*, began to speak in this manner.

#### The History of GIOVANNI LODOVICO Count of LAVAGNA.

SEeing our misfortunes, and your retirement, have made you almost a stranger in your own Country; and that your absence hath kept you since from knowing our mishaps, I will content your curiosity, and recount all this story unto you, as if you had not been born at *Genova*, and that all the persons, of whom I am to speak, were unknown to you; Yet have you not forgotten, as I think, that the Family of the *Fiesques*, being one of the noblest, and most illustrious of all *Italy*, as having twice furnished a head to all Christendom, given so many Cardinals to *Rome*, and so many great men to the world, was that also which *Andrea Doria* had always most dreaded, ever since that action which made him merit the having of a



Statue at *Genova*. They that intermeddle with the knowledge of things, and that judge not of intentions by appearances and events, will not have the designs of *Andrea Doria* to be always so dis-interested, as they have appeared unto us; but *in fine*, this is not a place, where I am to tell you what the Count believed concerning him: As for me, that ever speaks sincerely of things, I hold that his intentions were as fair as his enterprize.

But to come to that which I am to impart to you, and to keep you from being too much surprized by the Counts last action, I am to tell you, that although in appearance he was the sweetest, the civillest, the gallantest, and of the freest and most peaceable disposition that ever had been seen, and that he gave himself to all the exercises of a man of his quality, wherein he had profited admirably, yet had he an imperious spirit, and was always possess'd with some great design. Ambition, and the desire of glory, were his predominant passions, and the only things for which he did all others. His education did not contribute ought to these thoughts; for whereas he remained yet young enough under the government of his Mother, who was the most ambitious woman that ever was, she gave him a part of her inclinations. He had had for his Governor one named *Pensa*, by *Simbaldo* his fathers appointment, whose manners were wholly noble, and that had instructed him in all the fairest knowledges, which a person of his condition might have. But this man being too moderate for the bringing up of the Count according to his mothers designs, she placed another about him, but yet without removing the former, to the end that if the one taught him the Sciences, the other should teach him not to make use of them, but to arrive at the height of sovereign greatness. These two men being opposite in all things, gave him also quite contrary counsels. The first made him in the *Roman History* observe the noble actions of those, who had exposed themselves for the safety of the Commonwealth; and the other made him oftentimes read the Conspiracy of *Catiline*, the lives of *Tiberius* and *Nero*; Nevertheless whereas the Counts inclinations were too virtuous to love crimes, he followed not the advice of this same; but his Soul being withall too ambitious to be confined within the directions of *Pensa*, he took a third way, and loved nothing so much as the reading of the lives of *Alexander* and *Cesar*, especially of this last; and he was wont to say, that they which had called him Tyrant were to blame; since he can never be so; that aspires not to the sovereign power, but for the using of it well; and they which found themselves capable of governing people, were responsible to Heaven for not employing a Talent, which might be advantageous to all the world.

These discourses were not at that time considered but by his Mother, who took incredible delight therein: but at length, the Count, being arrived at seventeen years of age, saw *Leonora*, the sister of *Julio* and *Horatio Cibo*, in an assembly, where *Jannetin Doria*, the Nephew and Favorite of *Andrea Doria*, was present as well as he. You have without doubt observed, that *Leonora*, though gentle and civil, had for all that a majestick reservedness, which shewed in her behavior that she had something of great in her Soul. I tell you this, Madam, to let you know withall, that it was with this charm, rather then with her beauty, that she began to please the Count. He regarded and observed her with care; and seeing nothing in all her actions, that was not both extream civil, and a little imperious, he began to love her; and so much the more ardently, because he knew that this alliance would not be disadvantageous to him; if he sought after either nobility of race, or commodity of riches, for that being born of a first wife of her fathers, she was her only heir. But if *Leonora* was agreeable to the eyes of the Count, it may be said, that he seemed charming to *Leonora's*: and verily I must acknowledg, that I never saw him so amiable, as in this assembly; and if I must speak the truth, I do not believe that there can scarce be found in one only person greater quality then he had. And for agreeable things, it may be well assured, that never man was more proper to make himself be beloved. His beauty, his good aspect, his conversation, his compliance, his merry and jovial humor, his address in dancing, in playing on the Lute, in singing, in riding, and all other things that can give any liking, rendred him incomparable. You may judg after this, whether *Leonora*, who had not her heart engaged elsewhere, could refuse the affection of a man, in whom she found all that she could wish for.

This springing affection was soon known of every one, but especially of *Andrea Doria*, who was advertised thereof in a time, when as the Count could not yet tell very well himself, whether he loved *Leonora* or no: for the first time that he began to consider her with in-

diff-



difference, was on the day of that assembly, which I have spoken to you of already, and where *Jannetin* was present, who always regarding the Count as his Competitor had perceived it, and therewith acquainted his Uncle. We have learnt since, that *Andrea Doria* no sooner understood of the Counts design, but falling into a deep muse he appeared very sad and unquice; and that after his musing was over, he commanded *Jannetin* to beware of the Counts designs: for, said he unto him raising up his voyce, it is fit for us to observe this young Lion. He is undertaking, and hardy, and if we suffer him to gather new forces, by allying with the house of *Cibo*, and *Leonora's* riches, he will be capable of enterprizing any thing. *Jannetin* harkened to this discourse as one that was intersted therein, and obeying *Andrea's* order, he observed the Count and *Leonora*, and confirmed himself in the opinion he had had, both by his own knowledg, and the talk of the Town. Being in no longer doubt then but that the Count was in love with *Leonora*, he advertised his Uncle of it, who without further delay commanded him to be the Counts Rival in this suit. It would not be enough, said he to *Jannetin*, if we should but break off the Counts marriage; but we must make profit of his damage, and pluck the weapons out of his hands, to destroy him therewith when we are Masters of them. You must marry *Leonora*, she is fair and amiable; but were she only noble and rich, it would be enough to oblige you to marry her. Think of it then, *Jannetin*; you are young as well as the Count, you have spirit and courage, and though it may be you have not so good a grace as he, yet you are Nephew to *Andrea Doria*, and that is to say every thing. Think then of winning *Leonora's* heart, before it be engaged; but above all, come to no violence; for it imports much, that the adoptive son of him, who hath restored *Genova* to her liberty, should not engage him to protect him in such like things. *Jannetin*, who held all his fortune from *Andrea Doria*, and who revered him more then if he had been his father, promised him to forget nothing of all that should lie in his power to satisfie him; as indeed, all that care and magnificence could contribute to gallantry, appeared in *Genova* at that time; and had not your melancholy retained you then at *Mouaco*, you would have acknowledged as well as we, that the like had never been seen.

But whereas the Count could not give place to any body, he no sooner understood *Jannetin's* design, but he overtopped him in all things. There was nothing but running at the Ring, Turneys, Serenades, Balls, and Feasts; and in all things if the Count was not more magnificent, yet was he more gentile. His apparel was braver, his horses were gallanter, his matches better made, his serenades better comforted; in fine, he had the advantage in all things. And whereas he loved *Leonora* really, all the testimonies he gave her of it, wrought another effect in her heart, then the feigned protestations of *Jannetin*, who prevailed not with her at all. Things continued a while in this manner, during the which these two Rivals lived civilly enough together, as well by reason of the order which *Jannetin* had received for it, as of *Leonora's* prudence, and the Counts address, who never made shew of perceiving his Rivals designs; though each of them did for his part all that he could to destroy his enemy. But at last Love and Fortune ceased to be blind in this occasion, and gave the prize to him that best deserved it.

The Count had *Leonora's* permission to demand her of her brothers, under whose government she had been ever since the death of her mother; he was their particular friend, so that upon the first overture which he made to them of it, they received him with incredible joy, and assured him (especially *Horatio*, who was more a friend to the Count then *Julio*) provided their sister did not oppose his content, that he was certain to be happy. The Count, who was no less discrete then passionate, would not let them know that their consent was craved to a thing already resolved, but only told them, that from their mouths he desired to understand *Leonora's* mind, and from them receive either his good or bad fortune. In the mean time *Jannetin* found that *Leonora* favored the Count to his prejudice, yea and that she was resolved never to marry any but him. He thought fit to advertise *Andrea Doria* of it, who came to know by another, to whom the Counts mother had told it, that he had spoken of his marriage to *Horatio*, who had answered her favorably, which *Andrea Doria* understanding, he told *Jannetin*, that he was to conserve with address the friendship of him, whom he could not destroy by force; that one of the greatest effects of prudence was, when one could not vanquish his enemies, to constrain them to be his friends; and not being otherways able to keep them from hurting, one must, continued he, tye their hands with a false generosity

generosity, especially when one hath for opposite an illustrious adversary, such as the Count is. Go then, *Jannetin*, said he unto him, give up a victory, which you are not able to carry away; and making shew as though you come to learn that he hath a design for *Leonora*, tell him that you prefer his content before your love, and so as he will be your friend, you will yeild him your Mistress with joy: But so order the matter, that this may be heard by some, to the end that the Count knowing how the world beleeves he is obliged to you, may also in consideration of the world, and for fear of being blamed, live hereafter with you, as if he were your friend. Madam, do not think it strange, that I should know so many particularities of *Andrea Doria's* discourses; but be pleased to understand, that a friend doth not so well know what is done in his friends house, as mighty enemies do ordinarily know what they project one against another: yet was it not equally so between the Count and *Andrea Doria*, it being certain that this last knew nothing of the Counts designs, what care soever he took for it; whereas he on the contrary could conceal none of his from him.

But to come again to *Jannetin*, he had been no sooner instructed by his Uncle, but he went home to the Count, who attended with a great deal of impatience the answer which *Horatio* was to make him, for it was he who had in charge to give it him, he quitted this musing humor to receive *Jannetin's* visit with his ordinary civility; and according to *Andrea Doria's* direction, three of *Jannetin's* friends arrived at the same time to be witnesses of these two Rivals conversation. After the first complements, *Jannetin* told the Count, that he came not only to render him a visit, but also to render him up his arms, and to demand the grace of him, that he might be one of the captives of his Triumph. I know not, answered the Count, what Triumph you mean. It is a Triumph, replied *Jannetin*, wherein for a Trophy of Arms you shall have all the chains of the Lovers of the incomparable *Leonora*; who knowing that you alone merit her, will follow you without regret or envy; at least wife I am come hither to assure you, that that is my intention: and if I had known that you had born an affection to her, I would have been your Confident, rather than your Rival; yet am I not sorry, that I have had the commodity to testify unto you, that nothing in the world is so dear to me as your friendship.

The Count understood presently *Jannetin's* cunning, yet would make no shew of it, but contrarily answered him with a great deal of civility and gallantry. I thought, said he unto him, that I had nothing to vanquish but the rigors of my Mistress, and if I had beleaved that I had had so redoubtable a Rival as you, I had not it may be undertaken to serve her: But since you are so obliging, as to content your self with meriting her, without pretending to her possession, I am ravished to know that you have judged her worthy of your esteem; and to understand that I shall have nothing more then her cruelty to surmount; since if you had continued serving her, and that she had been just, I should in your triumph have held the place, which you demand in mine; and which I do not grant you, seeing he that yeilds up a victory cannot be said to have been overcome. *Jannetin*, hearing the Count speak in this sort, beleaved, that his cunning had succeeded, and took that for a testimony of friendship and freedom, which was but an address of his wit; and that not having been able to vanquish him in love, he had at least surmounted him in subtilty, and was arrived at the end he had propounded to himself. But the Count was too clear sighted to be deceived so easily; and whereas the most dextrous guile is that which perswades our enemies that they have beguiled us, though indeed we are not; the Count said so many obliging things to *Jannetin*, as he made no doubt at all, but that he had abused his enemy; and that from thence-forward he would count himself effectively his obliged: nevertheless it proved not so, as you will understand by the sequel of this discourse.

In the mean time *Horatio* came to the Count, and having at first embraced him in naming him brother, he absolutely assured him of *Leonora's* consent. But not to stand relating to you the rejoycings of a time, whose felicity is so far from that which we have past since, I will only tell you, that a little while after the nuptials of the Count and *Leonora* were celebrated. You were invited, but you would not quit your solitude to come and see the magnificences of that feast. *Jannetin* was the forwardest of all the City, to testify the joy he was in for that of the Count, who afterwards served him in his suit to her whom he married; and lived always with him, as if he had been one of his dearest friends, albeit in his heart he had quite contrary thoughts.



The Counts Mother was ravished with her sons marriage; *Leonora* was infinitely contented; *Julio* seemed satisfied; *Horatio* esteemed himself very happy in it; and *Sophronia* was so much the more pleased with it, for that being of an age wherein delights, Mufick, and company make up the happiness of a life, she found all these things in the Counts Palace, where she lived with her sister after her marriage; for it might be said, that this house was the retreat of all worthy persons, and of all pleasures, which made the Count to be loved of every one. In the mean time the prosperous success of his love, had not smothered his ambition, but contrarily his esteem of *Leonora* seemed to have augmented it; and *Sophronia* hath assured us, how she hath often heard him say, that his Fortune was not worthy of her. This generous Soul had not it may be for all that been ever capable of the resolution which he took, though he believed it to be just, if the counsels of three men, who did but flatter his ambition to satisfy their own, had not confirmed him in that design. And truly it must be acknowledged, that one hath never heard speak of an enterprize so daring in so young an age, of a prudence so extraordinary for the conduct of so dangerous a thing, and of a success, equal to his, if Fortune had not abandoned him.

But, Madam, to make you acknowledge that which I say, you are to understand, that about two years ago the Count finding himself ill for certain days together, went as he used oftentimes to do into his Cabinet, whither his ambitious mother came to him, for to acquaint him, that *Andrea Doria*, who had adopted *Jannetin* for his son and successor a good while before, had then made him his Lieutenant to the charge he held of *Generalissimo*: And all this, continued she, whilst you are denied the pensions which the Republique gave *Simbaldo* your father; for it was true, that as long as he lived the Senate had assigned him a pension for a mark of honor, which had not been continued to the Court, because he had been suspected by *Andrea Doria*, an enemy of the *French*, to be affected to that Nation.

In the mean time to return unto my subject, the Count had no sooner heard what his Mother said unto him, but would have answered, when as she staying him told him roundly, think before thou speakest of saying nothing to me unworthy of thy self, or of me that brought thee into the world, and know that I will disavow thee for my son, if thou be so base, as to be contented with thy fortune, and to endure; that they, who do not outgo thee either in birth or merit, should mount into the Throne, and leave thee amongst the people. This discourse neded the great heart of the Count, who was but too sensible on that part, yet concealed his resentment within himself, and said no more to his Mother, but that all he could promise her was, how he would absolutely lose himself, or lose them that oppressed him; and that the sequel or end of his life should not permit her to complain of him. After this she left him, but to confirm him in this dangerous design, she had consulted with those three ambitious persons, of whom I have already spoken to you: the first was the second Governor which she had given him, named *Vincenzio Calcagna*, whose maxims were contrary to those of the generous *Penfa*; the second was called *Raphaello Sacco*, a Lawyer of *Savona*, and a cunning and dextrous man, who served him in the government of all his affairs; and the last *Baptista Verrin*, a Citizen of *Genova*, who dwelling close by the Counts Palace, had by his submissions, and his wit, so gained his friendship, as he was of all his counsel, and disposed almost absolutely of all his estate.

It was then by the means of these three pernicious Counsellors, that this ambitious woman hoped to carry the Count to the taking of some violent resolution. She had advertised them to be ready to go to her son, as soon as she should come out of his Cabinet: As indeed, she was no sooner retired, but encountering them, she said unto them; Go, my dear friends, and labor for your selves, in laboring for the Count: but above all things remember, said she to *Raphaello Sacco*, to counsel him unto nothing that is violent, which you cannot give a pretext unto of the publique good, of equity, and of glory: for, continued she, I know the Count so well, that if you propound nothing to him but his own conservation, his utility, the advancement of his fortune, and the undoing of his enemies, you will never vanquish him: You must spur his mind forward with the desire of honor, and dextrously beguile him to keep him from beguiling our hopes. They promised her then as much as she could wish, and too faithful in this occasion they kept their word with her; at leastwise *Raphaello* and *Baptista*, for as for the third, he did that out of fear, which another would have done out of vertue.

They

They went then to the *Count's* Cabinet, and to give him no cause of suspicion, they repaired to him separately. The first that came thither found him in a deep muse, and never taking notice of him, he continued walking without speaking a word: A little after, the other two arrived, making shew as if they had not seen one another of all that day. The *Count* in the mean time, not doubting of the Treason which they had plotted against his virtue; seeing the three men of the world, in whom he most confided, come by chance unto him as he believed, at a time when he had need of counsel, could not forbear testifying a great deal of joy unto them for it. *What good Angel*, said he unto them, *hath brought you so opportunely to draw me out of the thought I am in at this present?* I know not, answered *Baptista* cunningly, whether my sight be pleasing to you or no, but I know very well that I have nothing that is pleasing to tell you. We are in an age, said the Lawyer, wherein good men have no great cause to rejoyce, seeing every day the ambition of some few carry insolently away all that which ought to be the recompence of virtue. It may be some one will be found, continued *Baptista*, that will make a change in things. But, said the *Count* interrupting him, and addressing his speech to *Verrin*, what bad news have you to impart to me? My Lord, answered he, it is badder for the *République*, then for you; for *in fine*, to acquaint you that *Jannetin* hath still new honors conferred on him, is to tell you that the power of *Andrea Doria* will pass into his hands; that his Tyranny will be perpetuated in the person of his Nephew; and that we shall never have the happiness to see virtue where it ought to be.

It is certain, added *Raphaello Sacco*, that this is the sence of all good men; and in the misery of the age, it seems, said he, addressing himself to the *Count*, that all the world turn their eyes upon you. Your illustrious and great birth, accompanied with so many rare qualities as are in your person, makes all them that love the publique good desire, that your fortune were as great as your heart: And for my particular, I would gladly see your virtue on a Theater higher then that whereon you are, to the end you might be seen of every one: But you are born in so unhappy an age, as it seems you cannot aspire to the power of doing good to your Citizens; so true it is, that *Andrea* and *Jannetin Doria*, under the name of the publique liberty, have solidly established their Power, or to say better, their Tyranny. And in this sort, one may well assure, that the people do sufficiently chastise themselves for the blinde resolution, which carries them to shake off the yoke of a great and excellent Prince, to suffer to be imposed upon them that of two Tyrants, who will be so much the more cruel, by how much they are less accustomed to reign. Their weakness, being supported by the power of *Cesar*, and rendred insolent by the great number of warlike Vessels, which we see in the Port, will never suffer a couragious and resolute spirit. They will beleve the high virtue of a man of condition too dangerous for their rising fortune to endure. They will make use of the ambitious Titles, of Fathers of their Country, and Restorers of the liberty, which have been given to *Andrea Doria*, for the oppression of the most magnanimous, with the pretext of the common good. So that a man of your courage, under this unjust dominion, is more sure of offences, then of life: and if unto this day we have not seen such like things, it is because the power of *Andrea Doria*, hath not yet attained to its supreme greatness; and that his moderation hath in some sort retained the imperious humor of *Jannetin*. You know how insolent he is, how proud, and how insupportable; think then, if when he shall see himself in an estate of being able to do whatsoever he will, and followed by young people, who reverence him by reason of his Charge, whether there be any thing which will not be permitted to his capricious humors? Do you beleve, that a spirit insatiable as his is, will be restrained within the bounds of Reason? Do you beleve, that the desire or thirst of reigning, exasperated by so certain a hope, can be extinguished but with the blood of innocents? Do you beleve, that content with the power, which Fortune and the simplicity of our Citizens have given him, he will dye with the sole name of *Jannetin*? For me, I do not beleve it. His minde is not so moderate, as that he will, or knows how to contain himself, upon the point of arriving at his last felicity. He attends, as I conceive, the death of *Andrea*, which cannot be but neer at hand, that he may follow all his inclinations; and to that effect, being already in the possession of the hearts of the Nobles, he goes nourishing the people in idleness, and the gain of commerce, to the end that this effeminacy depriving them of courage, and being disaccustomed from the exercise of Arms, they may not dare to resist him, when he shall

shall enterprize any thing ; and by this means he hides a parricidal design under the vail of the publique repose and tranquillity.

But let us presuppose, that the divine providence, for the preservation of this Republique, should take him off from this dangerous design ; the continuance alone of the rank whereunto he is raised, ought to put shame and confusion into the hearts of all the other Citizens, whose births are noble. What reason is there, that in a free Province, so many men of eminent quality, which yield not unto him, either in nobility, or courage, should live as private persons, whilst he alone, with the magnificence of a Prince, regards all the rest as his inferiors, and in such sort, as they seem to depend absolutely on him ? what Law of a well-ordered Republicke consents unto it ? what Nation is there, that is not barbarous, which permits it ? in what history of civilized people is any thing seen that authorizes it ? If hitherto you have not in your particular tryed the insolency of this haughty humor, it is because there hath no occasion been offered for it ; and you know but too well the thoughts which he hath for you : But henceforward you must partake in the publique miseries ; yea I do foretell it with grief, that you will be seen, as others, to visit him, accompany him, serve him, and obey him, as our Sovereign : and *Jannetin Doria* shall reckon up amongst the Trophies of his insupportable temerity, that *Giovanni Lodovico*, Count of *Lavagna*, courted him, revered him, and basely crouched under his dominion. O ! how fitter were it, that rousing up your spirit, at the complaints of an oppressed people ; and taking a resolution worthy of your Country, of your race, and vertue, you would deliver all your Citizens from this infamy, as well as your self. But it may be that means would be wanting to you for the execution of this design ; contrarily never thing was more facile. If you turn your eyes towards *Rome*, you will finde all the succor there, that you can desire. If you seek for protection in *France*, the Enemy of *Doria* cannot fail of encountering a mighty one there. Here in *Genova*, the people, always a foe to Tyranny, will serve you for a sword and buckler. *Jannetin* blinded, or rather lulled asleep with his good fortune, will fall of himself into the nets which you shall lay for him. Your own subjects, and the Duke of *Placentia's*, will defend you from all opposition. In fine, all things invite you to victory, there is nothing wanting, saving onely your Will, not for you to fight, but to triumph. As *Andrea Doria* made use of the pretext of liberty to oppress his Country, so do you make use of the pretext of Tyranny to deliver yours. And consider, that it is absolutely necessary for you, either to command, or to serve ; to render your self dreadful to others, or to live in continual fear. And since Heaven hath given you all that can be desired for so glorious an enterprize, birth, courage, wit, conduct, and means, be sure to make a profitable use thereof ; and do not render your self worthy of the servitude that is prepared for you, in neglecting so fair an occasion to avoyd it.

*Raphaello Sacco*, could not have touched the minde of the Count in a more sensible part ; and this man being born for great matters, was extreamly pleased, in that he could perswade himself, by the reasons alledged unto him, that he might both together deliver his Country, revenge his own injuries, destroy his Enemies, content his ambition, and do nothing contrary to glory. The joy he had of it made him resolve to open his heart to his Confidants ; whereupon he acknowledged unto them, that from his tenderest years, he had felt a disposition in himself to undertake that which had been now propounded unto him ; that he had ever been an Enemy to *Jannetin*, though he appeared to be otherwise ; that his insolency was insupportable to him ; that having been his Rival in love, he would be the same in ambition : Then he recounted unto them, how *Andrea Doria* would have broken off his marriage ; and for a conclusion, he declared unto them plainly, that he would change the order of things, and for that effect crave the protection of *France*, as being very much inclined to that Kingdom.

*Vincenzio Calcagna*, seeing how ardently the Count was carryed to this design, and that he spake of it as of a thing which he had a long time before determined, was constrained to yield to his temper, which was exceeding timorous : And though he had promised the Count's Mother all that she had desired of him, and that all his life-time he had given lessons of Tyranny and Usurpation to him whom he had brought up, yet seeing the peril so neer, and doubting to be involved in it, and to lose all his fortune, in losing the Count, whom he dearly loved ; fear made him perform an action of vertue, and pushed on with zeal and dread, he spake to the Count much after this manner. If you be as strongly resolved to at-



tempt some change in the affairs of the *State*; as your speech doth witness, I may, O my dear Master, rather lament our common misfortunes, then draw any advantage by contradicting you: but if my good fortune can make your prudence give some room to second thoughts, which ordinarily are the interest, you will in this occasion make trial of the ardor and fidelity which I carry to your service, by the liberty of my discourse, as you have made trial of my diligence, in the encounters where it hath been necessary unto you. Until now you have lived in so constant a felicity, as it may be said, you have never seen Fortune displeased; and that is the cause why your imagination presents none but agreeable objects unto you; that is it which makes you, according to the custom of the happy, think of nothing but Victories, Scepters, and Crowns: But I am much afraid lest these deceiving hopes be not one day destroyed by some fatal event, which will be so much the more insupportable unto you, by how much you have less foreseen it. To go about to alter any thing in the Government of the Republicque, in a time wherein we are, is an enterprize attended with so many difficulties, and exposed to evident a peril, as I cannot force my minde to figure it unto me certain and facile, as one would perswade you. For *in fine*, you will pretend either to make use of strangers, or to hold intelligence with our Citizens; of the former I see no likelihood for it: but suppose it were possible, at least-wise the matter could not be carried with such speed and so secretly, but the City, *Doria*, or the Emperor, would have notice of it. *Italy*, for your ill fortune, is at this present in so great a trouble, as every ones eyes are open upon his neighbors affairs: And *Genova* it self, by reason of its situation on the brink of the sea, is guarded as the key of that *State*. The Duchy of *Milan*, which hath been a long time, both a prey and place of battel to the fortune of the Imperial and French Armies, makes *Cesar* regard *Genova*, as the onely defence, and sole rampart, which covers his power in *Italy*. *Doria* also serves the Emperor with twenty Gallies, but a great deal more with the good-will of the Citizens, who believe they are obliged unto him: Besides this, all the Coast of the River of *Genova*, especially towards the *Levant*, is absolutely at his devotion. The City, that is still much troubled with the Tyranny of the Duke of *Milan*, and Government of the French, detests the very name of foreign dominion. You may indeed with small forces discover your intention, but not arrive at your end. It is so much the more grievous, that enterprizes of this nature are not favorably judged of, but by their happy success, and that is it which I do not see you can obtain. For from what part hope you for great Troops? The King of *France*, on whose protection you rely, hath not so little to do, in regard of his pretensions to the Kingdom of *Naples*, and Duchy of *Milan*, but if he had even a minde to make some new stir in *Italy*, that he could come and succor you with all his forces, which are employed for the safety of his frontiers. But say that he, or any other Prince, should undertake it, could you believe that the Emperor, who for his own interest takes that of *Genova* upon him, would not oppose them with forces, if not greater, at least-wise equal to those which you should draw to your assistance? And that being so, you would see your designs but ill assured, since they would still depend on the loss or gain of a battel, whose event is always doubtful: but on which side soever the victory doth fall, you are still to follow the pleasure of the conqueror, nothing being left you that is certain, but the shame of having deprived your Country of her Liberty, for to submit it to a stranger. But if you turn your eyes to a nearer succor, by thinking to finde it in this City; either I know not the humor, and inclinations of the *Genoveses*, or your hopes are but weakly grounded. Tell me, I pray you, from which sort of our Citizens do you look for assistance? Will it be from the Nobles? into whose hands *Andrea Doria* hath put the power and government, and who being obliged to him for the authority they enjoy, live in an happy and honorable tranquillity, so that no change being able to arrive, which would not be disadvantageous to them, how would you have them say you in an enterprize, which would precipitate them into a more miserable estate then ever they were? Is it possible, that meely to comply with you, they should forget their Country, their liberty, their fortunes, their wives, and their children? Is it possible, that they should prefer your friendship, before the protection of *Doria*, whom they reverence as their common father? No, no, disabuse your self from this error; and believe too, that the people will not be more favorable unto you, since it is true, that the more hate they bear to the Nobles, the less will they trust you, who being the most illustrious amongst them, cannot easily perswade them, that you have no intent to do them hurt. But grant that some

of them could believe it, the Chief of the popular families would never consent that their welfare should come from your hand.

Again, if you pretend to usurp the Empire of the Republique, what act can be farther from meriting the good-will of the people? But it may be you will say, that you will re-establish the first form of Government, changed by *Doria*, where the popular authority did all things; and that by the declaration thereof the multitude will rise for your advantage: For my part, I am not of a contrary opinion, but believe, as well as you, that those which are ill satisfied will with joy embrace an occasion of renewing their ancient Tragedies; and so much the more ardently, for that they shall reap all the profit of it, nothing remaining for you but shame and infamy. For, for you to imagine, that the *Fregoses* and *Adornes*, who so many years together have fought one against another, to obtain the prime rank in the administration of the popular affairs, will yield it to a man of your birth, is a thing which cannot be believed without clashing with Reason. They will it may be commend your temerity, and name it valor; they will follow your Colours, as those of their Deliverer; they will rejoice to see the Noble-men put in chains, by the hand of a Noble-man; the bowels of their Country torn out by you; the common rest troubled by your fury; their Tyranny established by your fault: but a time will come when wholly discharging themselves of the sedition which you have caused, the people will give them the recompence of your travels, the glory of your enterprize, and the triumph of your combats. In what terms will you finde your self then? Which way will you turn your self for shame? Detested of the Nobles, whom you shall have betrayed; despised of the people, who will deride the means which have caused their utility and your ruine; abominable to your Country, as having ravished her of her liberty; an Enemy to *Cesar*, the Protector of the Republique; suspected of the King of *France*, who desires to have an absolute power at *Genova*; and hated of all the world, which naturally and reasonably abhors Treasons.

*In fine*, I am forced to tell you, and it is necessary that you should understand it, the extreme love which I bear you permits it me, and my fidelity enjoyns me to it. I fear, I say (and may it please God that my fear may be vain) that these thoughts of troubles and disquiets be not foretellers of your bad fortune; which it may be hath already resolved the loss of your estate, of your life and reputation. You know that *Jannetin Doria* regards you with an eye of envy, and you your self have oftentimes complained to me of the treacheries he intended against you; why then will you furnish him with Arms to destroy you? With what avidity and joy would he embrace the occasion to be revenged of you, and to content his particular hatred to your person, under the pretext of the publique good? He will rejoice in his heart at this resolution, and excess of courage, which precipitates you; and taking up Arms openly against you with all the partakers of his fortune, with what reasons will not he justify his violence? You shall be the Enemy of the peoples tranquillity; the Tyrant of the common liberty; a Rebel to the Republique; and the *Catiline* of *Genova*. With these so just reproaches, and so plausible a Manifest, what one amongst the people, or amongst the Nobles, of Citizens or Strangers, of private persons or Princes, that would not arm himself to exterminate you? It is an horror to me, not onely to say it, but to think it. It will be absolutely impossible for you not to be utterly confounded by the attempts of so many Enemies, as shall conspire against your life. Your Estate will be confiscated; as the goods of a Traytor; your memory will be abominable and dishonored in the *Annales* of *Genova*; and *Jannetin*, acknowledged for a second Deliverer of his Country, and Restorer of Liberty, will build his glory on the ruines of yours. We shall see, it may be, that the gratitude of the *Genoveses* will erect a Statue to *Jannetin*, which shall be placed neer to that of *Andrea*, in the inscription whereof shall be seen graven the name of *Giovanni Lodovico*, Count of *Lavagna*, the publique Enemy, subdued by *Jannetin Doria*, the Benefactor of his Country.

Now I beseech you, suffer not your self to be carried away by the impetuosity of age and choller to so evident a peril. Let the pity of your self, of your family, and of your subjects, arrest you. Remember what you owe to your birth, to your reputation, to your Country, and to God: Have compassion of the miseries of your wife; free the mindes of those that love you from so just a fear; consider that your youth, accompanied with so many virtues, ought not to be so precipitously thrown into the hands of Fortune. Enjoy, enjoy, the blessings

which your Predecessors have left you in so great abundance; and call to mind, for the extinguishing of your ambition, that you are in so considerable a rank, which way soever a man regards you, as you may be envied even of *Jannetin* himself. This speech could not be heard of the Count without emotion; and seeing his design combated with such powerful Reasons, by a man too of whose affection he was so well assured, he seemed very unquiet and uncertain, which *Baptista Verrin*, quickly marking, conceived, that if the Counts reason had time to fortify it self in that which was good, all the enterprize would be in doubt.

He began then with an incomparable subtlety and address gently at first to oppose *Vincenzo's* discourse, as you shall hear, and as I understood it even from *Verrin* himself, who afterwards recounted all these things to us at *Albengua*: Behold then in what manner he spoke. I would to God, said he, that the affairs of the Republique were brought to that pass, as all our Citizens might enjoy their estates with tranquility, I should not then be at this day in the necessity of wishing you an happier condition, since as *Vincenzio Calcagna* hath well observed, there is never a one in *Genova*, either for Riches, greatness of Estates, or for illustrious Birth, can match you: Neither am I ignorant, that a wise man ought not to tempt Fortune during an extream felicity, in regard it cannot change but to his disadvantage. Howbeit destiny, the enemy of your good, hath in such sort perplexed the State of the Republique, as you are enforced to attempt something that is great, or to perish. *Jannetin Doria*, who for so long a time hath regarded the Empire of *Genova*, as the term of his desires and ambition, cannot endure you; and if you do not see on his brow, and in his eyes, the marks of the extream hate he bears you; if by his actions you do not discover the excess of his pride, and his contempt of your virtue; the Gallies, which you have bought against his will, may render you a sufficient testimony thereof; and perswade you, that ambition hath its jealousies as well as love; and that *Jannetin* regarding you as his Rival, your ruine is one of his most ardent desires. His insolency carries him so far, as he will be absolute Master of the Sea, and he will not have any man so much as dare to trouble or divide his power with him: How then will you have him endure you for a Competitor in the Government of the Commonwealth, since jealousy, or the desire of reigning, spares neither the blood of brothers, of children, no not of fathers themselves?

A wicked inclination, and an opiniative humor, as *Jannetin's* is, cannot be changed but by violence: you must then, as things stand, either retire shamefully from *Genova*, and abandoning your Gallies to him, declare him victorious, in leaving him Master of the field, or rouse up that spirit and courage in you, which is to surmount him. But if nevertheless you be resolved to decline this peril with infamy, and to preserve your life, as having received it of grace from the hand of your enemy; I am willing, I consent to it, and will no longer oppose it; though it be the most deplorable estate, wherein even the hatred of *Jannetin* can wish you. But if your virtue do not deceive my hopes, in making me attend some greater and more generous thing from you, I shall see this rash man surmounted by your valor, and his pride wholly subjected to your courage. It is for you then to attempt an enterprize, which is so glorious, as even *Jannetin* himself will envy you for it. Fortune hath set between you two the whole Empire of *Liguria*; and the one cannot vanquish the other to mount into the Throne, but by passing the Charet of his Triumph over the body of his enemy. He alone shall best assure to himself the victory, who can first prevent his enemy dextrously, by taking from him the means of outstripping him. It is a necessity common to you both, for each of you to think of your conservation; and he shall be the wisest, that with the diligence of a speedy execution shall mock at his enemies sloth, in oppressing him without resistance. *In fine*, prepare your self to assault, or to be assaulted; to lay ambushes for your enemy, or to fall into the pit which he hath digged for you; to put him to death, or to suffer death your self. It may be this speech will seem harsh to the prudent *Calcagna*, but necessity, which in the most desperate affairs augmenteth valor and courage, serves also to justify the violentest actions, when the cause thereof is just, and in these occasions it may be named the buckler of innocency. Let the temerity of *Jannetin*, the baseness of the *Genoveses*, and the injustice of Fortune, which have forced you to this inevitable mischief, be accused for this enterprize. You do no body injury, when you defend your self, but only follow the ordinary Laws of Nature.

It is prudence to divert upon the head of our enemy the tempest which would overwhelm



us : And if that cannot be done without some appearance of evil, the fault shall not be yours, but destinies, which leaves you no other mean to preserve your life, but by the death of your adversary, nor will not let your virtue be able to defend it self without a crime. But what say I, a crime ! this word is for you, O too prudent *Calcagna* ; you have learned it no doubt in the School of the Vulgar, who know not the politick of Conquerors. With such like terms the actions of private persons are spoken of, but not those of the Great : And if your Rule were true, it might be said that all Empires were Robberies, because there is none of them which was not established by that natural right, which the strong impose on the weak.

Nature brought men into the world with an equality of all things, and yet left unto Virtue the power of raising them, which possess it, to the glory of reigning over others : From whence it comes, that the most part of those, who are Princes or Masters of the Earth, carry not that title, but because their Predecessors, by the address and by force of Arms, usurped the Empire over their equals. I do not deny but that there are some persons, who as well as *Vincenzio* will blame your resolution, before it be conducted to its end, in regard all hardy and dangerous actions are never commended till they are executed ; but as soon as the happy success of the event shall have justified and authorized the greatness of your enterprize, the blame will be turned into admiration ; and that which was called temerity and imprudence, will be termed valor and greatness of courage. As long as the first of the *Cæsars* was in Arms against *Pompey*, and that the *Roman* Empire was the cause of their conflicts, he had not only *Pompey* for an adversary, but even all the Nobility were his most cruel foes. In the mean time as soon as he had defeated his Enemies mighty Army in the plains of *Pharsalia*, and that this victory had put him in full possession of the *Roman* Empire, all the hatred which was born him ceased ; and he was so dearly and ardently beloved of the *Romans*, as this affection could not finish with his life, but they punished his death with a memorable revenge. Resolve then to suffer the *Genoveses* for a time to call you Tyrant, and do not take this name as a grievous injury, seeing it shall be the last insolency of their dying liberty. They will accustom themselves afterwards to acknowledg you for their lawful Prince, and as such reverence you. Behold how much I rely on your fortune, in speaking to you of the felicities of your Empire, before you have resolved to fight for the acquiring of it. But things are disposed in such sort, as you may sooner be wanting to your self, then the Empire to your virtue. For if the difficulties be great, according to *Vincenzio's* opinion, your courage is yet greater. Let us grant him, that the enterprize is dangerous and difficult ; in what History, ancient or modern, hath it been found, that the way which conducteth to glory is covered with flowers ? and that an illustrious action hath been executed without pain ? All great designs have always been followed by great perils ; and all high places are ever near to precipices : A generous man will not for all that let the fear of an uncertain evil, make him a prey to an inevitable servitude. Amongst private persons it is an effect of prudence to be contained within mediocrity ; but in affairs of State all resolutions are to be extrem, the rest being dangerous, especially in enterprizes, which begin not to break forth but by their execution. For it being then no longer in our power to retain the thing, we must of necessity arrive at the end we have proposed to our selves, or fall in the midst of the course, and be utterly lost. Yet let us not make so unhappy a preface of our designs, but let us forecast the misfortunes which may arrive to us, not to torment our selves in the expectation of them, but by prudence to take from them the power of hurting us. We are to be guided with precaution, but yet not so far, as that extrem wisdom may thereby render us more timorous and irresolute. You must, generous Count, give something to the conduct of Fortune, who having chosen you for the Deliverer of *Genova*, and Restorer of the ancient *Italian* valor, will know well enough how to find out the means to plain all difficulties before you. It is she that calls you to glory ; it is she that will conduct you to it ; only consent to your good fortune, and with an open heart receive the Crown which fate presents you with, not sharing it with any one. For to what end would it serve you to call in the *French* to the sharing of your glory ? whereas that Nation, having lost their credit in *Italy*, as well as their States, would hurt you more, then they could help you. The example of *Andrea Doria* should keep you sufficiently from it : He had served them with exceeding affection, and to their great profit, in the mean time you know how he was intreated.

And then again, what recompence could the *French* ever give you, that might be worthy  
of

of your labors? It may be they will leave you Governor in *Genova*, with the dependances which they use to exact of their Subjects; but that would be to render you mercenary in a place, where Nature hath given you part in the Dominion. If any resistance should be made by the Emperor, or by the City it self, against your designs, with what forces could they come and succor you, being in a Country so far distant from ours, and so taken up with their own affairs. Verily you are to make use of your Subjects, of your Friends, and of your Confederates. And why will you not with so generous a Troop undertake to set this Crown upon your head, which is as worthy of you, as you are worthy of it? When as your power shall be established in *Genova*, which may be said to be the Key of all *Italy* on the Sea-coast, the chiefest Kings of Christendom will seek for your alliance and amity with care. The envy of your Competitors being surmounted, the family of the Counts of *Lavagna* will be in a state, whereunto no person in *Genova* ever yet arrived. It will lie in your hands to be revenged of those enemies that despised your youth; *Jannetin* himself, yea *Jannetin Doria*, your mortal enemy, shall fall spight of his teeth at your feet, to crave pardon of you; He shall reverence you as his Lord; he shall fear you as a Prince; his actions shall be accommodated to your pleasure; your will shall rule his desires; and on you alone shall his life or death depend. Let the *French* then keep themselves in their Kingdom, and from thence only let them hear the fame of your Victories. It is for you alone to surmount all the Obstacles which may be opposed to your generous designs. Undertake it then with a confidence worthy of your birth, and of your courage; merit by this action the triumph which Heaven hath destined to you. Let all the world learn that you knew how to be the illustrious and sole Artisan of your fortune. Surpass the hopes which I have of you, although they be very great: and to say all, assure the Empire to your family, and Eternity to your name.

*Baptista Verrin* had no sooner made an end of speaking, but *Raphaello Sacco* affected to *France*, and *Vincentio Calcagna* pushed on by his timidity, by the fear of losing that repose which he had enjoyed all his life time, and by the affection which he bore to the Count, opposed themselves once more against *Baptista*. The first would have had nothing undertaken without the succor of the *French*; and the other would have had nothing undertaken at all. But *Baptista* for his own interest would be sure not to yield in this occasion: He saw, that as long as the Government was in the hands of the Nobility, he should never pretend to have any part in the sway thereof. And then again, he had brought his affairs into so strange a disorder, by the debts which he had run into, as judging that he could hardly conceal his misery longer, if the tranquility of the Republicque should last any time, he was desirous to steal it from the eyes of the world by a universal confusion. He considered also, that if the enterprize were prosperous, he should raise his fortune to an high pitch; that it contrarily the success of it should be infortunate, his ruine being accompanied with that of others, and dying in his endeavoring the execution of a great design, it would be some comfort to him to think that the infamy of his name would pass unto posterity; so true it is, that the ambition of men is so unreasonable, as to make them oftentimes to put no difference between good and bad fame, provided it be great.

*Baptista* then opposed himself with a great deal of vehemency against their Reasons that appugned his, and told the Count, that it was a thing unworthy of a noble Soul, to let himself be vanquished by fear, or to say better, by *Chimera's*. He represented unto him, that the Garrison of *Genova* consisted of no more then two hundred Soldiers; that *Doria's* Gallies, though many in number, would be unprofitable for his defence, so as the time of execution were chosen, when as they were disarmed, at their return from scouring the Seas, which they usually did every year; that *Andrea* and *Jannetin*, far from all suspicion, lived without any particular Guard, and in a confidence which would be very commodious to them; that it would be easie for him to draw into *Genova* a good number of selected men, and taken out of the Lands of his obedience, who on a sudden should go and seize upon *Doria* in his own Palace; and that at the very same time it would be facile to render himself Master of the Gallies; that the hatred of the people against the Nobles would make an end of the rest of the enterprize, and give it an happy success. He offered for his own particular to get the Citizens to rise in favor of this design; assuring him, that by his means they were wholly disposed already to rebellion. With such like Reasons, which *Verrin* amplified with a great deal of address, he became Master of the Counts mind, who plainly testified that he determined, either to  
perish,

perish, or to reign. And after he had made known, that nothing could alter his resolution, he said unto *Raphaello Sacco*, who had persuaded him to the business under the pretext of the publique good, Heaven is my witness, that if I did not believe I should make my Country more happy under my Command; then it is under the Tyranny of them that oppress it, I would chuse rather to dye, then to attempt that which I am going to undertake.

This speech ended, they all resolved with one accord, that since the Government could not be changed without the death of *Andrea* and *Jannetin Doria*, they were chiefly to think of giving such order to the matter, as the end of their lives should be the beginning of the execution thereof. This Conspiracy being made, the Count went out of his Cabinet, with a marvelous tranquillity of spirit, and we were all the evening with him, talking of Musick and Painting, as if he had had nothing else of importance in his thought. As for his Counsellors, they told her who had employed them, that she was to attend great matters from her son, without particularizing any thing unto her, for fear lest she should discover them. In the mean time, the Count, having certain days after taken great care for the Gallies, which he had bought not long before, used to go oftentimes to the places belonging to him; where with an admirable Providence he furnished his Subjects with Arms, and made them to exercise them, upon pretext of being in some fear of the Duke of *Placentia*, whose neighbor he was; but indeed, it was to render them capable of serving him in his design.

The end of Autumn being come, he returned to *Genova*, and applied all his care to gain the good-will of all the young men, of those families newly ennobled, which are called Popular. He introduced himself into their conversation with a marvelous compliance. He sent presents to some, he served others according to occasions, and offered himself to all, with an extraordinary courtesie. And whereas he had a quick and pleasing wit, and a supple and charming humor, he won their affection in so high a manner, as he was their Master, rather than their friend. When as he knew that he might begin to confide in them, and that their wills depended absolutely on his, he fell to seering, as occasion served, at the Government of *Genova*, which he termed the Tyranny of the Nobles. Sometimes he testified with interrupted speeches that he suffered in the miseries of the popular families; sometimes he seemed to tell them that the matter was not past remedy, and that they might abate the pride of the Nobles, if their hearts did not fail them; sometimes also with a bitter scoff he exhorted them to servitude; yet still leaving them a sting behind in their minds by his doubtful and uncertain words. And above all things, he aggravated the injustice of the Government, when by chance any accident fell out, that displeased the popular families. But if he were agreeable to them, he had rendered himself no less pleasing to the common people, by such means as he had carefully used for it. He most readily saluted some, he smiled upon others as he met them, he was magnificent in his apparel, gentle and courteous to every one; and that which advanced his design more was, as you know as well as I, that he was wonderful handsome, and of an exceeding jovial humor; that the air of his face was sweet and agreeable; and his carriage so noble, so free, and so fair, as one was forced to love him at the very first sight. He exercised himself also in fencing, and riding of the great horse, and that with so gallant a grace, and so great an address, as they that saw him could not chuse but love a man, who gave them so much delight.

But whereas liberality is the strongest chain, wherewith the people may be captivated, he met with no occasion of demonstrating his unto them, but he testified it with a magnificence past compare. Yet would not our prudent Conspirator cast himself so absolutely into the hands of the people, as to minister any jealousy thereby to the Nobles; but he used so just a temper in a conjuncture, where mediocrity was so hard to be observed, that the good-will of the one did not make him lose the friendship of the others. And to that effect, though *Jannetin* was become very insolent, since *Cesar* had admitted him for *Generalissimo* after the death of *Andrea*; though he would be no longer followed by young men but for interest; though he would be no longer served but for fear; though his arrogance had even carried him to offer some ill usage to the Count; yet began he not only to go often to *Andrea* then he was wont, and to shew a more particular reverence to him, but shutting up also in his heart the hatred which he bore to *Jannetin*, he conversed often with him, and demanded counsel and assistance of him in his affairs. And because that in times past the love of *Leonora* had put them at odds with one another, he used great care to take from him the memory thereof.



In the mean time, he had treated secretly with the Duke of *Placentia*, who had promised him two thousand Foot, to joyn with two thousand others, which he had pick'd forth out of all his subjects, for the service of his enterprize when time should serve. He had also caused one of his Gallies to come to *Genova* under pretext that he meant to send her forth to scour the Seas all along the Coast of *Barbary*. Howbeit during all this we observed as a most extraordinary thing in him, that he was as merry as he used to be, delighted as much in our company, and seemed to have no other greater thought, then of being agreeable to his friends.

Now *Baptista*, cunning and undertaking as he was, remained not idle; for in a very short time he had gained a great number of persons, who promised to follow and serve him faithfully in a secret design which he said he had. With these preparations, they believed that they had layd foundations solid enough for the execution of their intentions; and being assembled together to take their last resolution, the advice of *Baptista Verrin* was, that whereas there was a ceremony to be celebrated for the performance whereof every one would resort unto the Church, he would have them begin the executing of the business in that place, offering to give *Jannetin* the first stab. But the *Count's* piety being unable to consent to this proposition, he made a step or two back, crying out, He would never endure that the beginning of his enterprize should be a profanation and a sacrileg. *Raphaello Sacco* added thereunto, that the matter likewise would even be as uncertain, as it was execrable; because *Andrea Doria* might excuse himself upon the incommodity of his age, and so not come, but send *Philippo Doria* his Kinsman in his stead. To this *Verrin* answered again, that if they thought it fit he would go, whilst they were executing the business, to *Andrea's* Palace, and under colour of visiting him as he was wont to do, he would strike him to the heart with his Poignard. But the *Count* being very angry with him for it, he gave this over, and propounded another expedient worthy of his wit: He told the *Count*, that *Jannetin's* sister being shortly after to marry with *Julio Cibo*, *Leonora's* brother, he would have him desire them to sup at his house; and to render the feast the more magnificent, he should also invite *Andrea Doria* and *Jannetin*, together with a great number of Ladies, and all such amongst the Nobles, whom they might judge were most to be feared for the execution of their design; That things being thus, it would be easie for them whom they had hid for that purpose to kill them; that presently thereupon the *Count*, followed by his friends, should go through all the streets of *Genova*, sounding out the sweet name of *Liberty*, and acquainting the people that their chains were broken; That in this Tumult the Palace was to be seized upon and secured; that in the mean time he would possess the people with the *Count's* generous designs, concealing from them with address that which he had of absolutely reigning; and letting them know the necessity of reforming the Government, or to say better, the cruel Tyranny of the Nobles, for so it was that he spake; That for this effect he would crown him Duke of the Republicque, and cause them whom he had gained to take the oath of allegiance unto him; That if any one, either in woord or deed, should contradict them, he should be killed upon the place.

The *Count* found this plot indifferently well contrived, but yet he felt an extream repugnancy in resolving to violate the law of hospitality, in killing men in his house, whom he had intreated thither; but being perswaded that he should not meet with a better mean to arrive to his end, he resolved for it: And to that purpose, he commanded, that the Soldiers, which he had chosen from amongst his Subjects, should come one by one into *Genova*; And on the other side he solicited the Duke of *Placentia* to send him the succor which he had promised him. All these dispatches could not be so secretly made, especially having to do with a levy of men of war, but that *Don Fernando de Gonzagna*, who had succeeded to the *Marquis of Guast*, and commanded at that time in the Duchy of *Milan*, was advertised thereof. For whereas he was vigilant for the security of the State, which had been entrusted to his conduct, he had carefully set spies to observe the least motions of the neighboring Provinces, especially of the Princes that were suspected to him; so that he was soon informed by men, that were as dextrous as faithful, whom he had employed for that effect, that the Duke of *Placentia* had levied in his State two thousand Soldiers with extraordinary haste for the *Count of Lavagna*; and conjecturing by the silence and secrecy, which was used in this affair, that there was some great design a plotting, he sent with all speed to *Genova*, to advise *Doria*,

ria, and *Don Gomes Suarez*, the Emperors Embassador there, to stand upon their guard, because the young *Count* of *Lavagna* was conspiring some great matter.

*Andrea* received this advice, without grounding any thing thereupon; for he was so strongly perswaded of the *Count's* affection to him, and so powerfully assured, by the tranquillity which he always saw in his face, that he had no bad design in hand, as this discourse made no kind of impression in his mind; and to confirm him in his incredulity, the *Count* entred accidentally into *Andrea's* chamber, when as the Embassador and he were speaking of this affair; but he appeared with so clear a countenance, and talked to them with so much judgment, and liberty of spirit, that *Andrea Doria*, charmed with his conversation, and perswaded of his innocency, approached to the Embassador, and said to him softly in his ear, as we have learn'd since, *Judge you your self, whether this Princely look, this both modest and confident carriage, this noble and quiet soul, and this liberty of spirit, can be capable of so horrible a conspiracy?* The Embassador not able to gainsay *Andrea's* Opinion, made a sign to him that he was of his minde. And albeit that two days after *Doria* had a second advertisement, yet the *Count's* address was so great, as his sight alone destroyed whatsoever was said against him. And so wonderful was his conduct, that *Andrea Doria*, above fourscore years of age, and held for one of the greatest politicians of his time, was beguiled by a man of two and twenty.

The generous *Pansa*, who had been of none of the *Count's* counsels, was without comparison more advised. For whereas he joyned affection to prudence, it was the more easie for him to suspect something of the truth. He had exactly observed all the *Count's* actions, ever since he had bought the Gallies of the Duke of *Placentia*; and carefully examining all that he had seen or heard in divers occasions, he found that he had cause to fear lest the *Count* had some dangerous design a foot. He saw how he, who was accustomed to communicate the most important affairs of his house to him, talked no longer with him but of indifferent things; that he was often in a retired and private conversation with *Baptista Verrin*, and having followed him sometimes when as he withdrew himself into his Cabinet, he had perceived him to be musing and melancholique: For though the *Count* seemed to be merry, when as he might be seen of any body, and by that artifice admirably covered the designs which he had in his heart, yet was he no sooner retired in private, but he became quite another then what he had been seen abroad, which *Pansa* alone had marked, for he had concealed himself from *Lionora*, as well as from others. That which kept the *Count* from communicating his design to *Pansa*, was his knowledg of the affection and exceeding prudence of the man, so that he was assured he would have opposed his design, or at least wile have counselled him not to have undertaken it so precipitously; and would have had him seek for more security in an enterprize, where none had ever been.

At length, one day when as the *Count* returned to his Palace more melancholique then he used to be, carrying in his face some marks of an extraordinary unquietness, and with such a paleness, as amazement many times paints on the forehead of those, which are upon the point of executing some great design, whose event is but ill-assured; the generous *Pansa* followed him to his Cabinet, and resolved to tell him his suspicions, for fear lest if he should longer defer to do it, there would be no time left for the remedying of the evil whereof he was afraid. After he had shut the door, then he addressed his speech to the *Count*, who leaning on a Table, heard him with a great deal of unquietness. I know very well, my Lord, said he unto him, that one merits to be as much blamed, for enquiring into the secrets of another, as one ought to be esteemed, for fidelity in concealing them, when they are entrusted unto us; wherefore mine being known by so many proofs which I have rendered unto you of it, I have believed, that it was for you to discover your mindes unto me, and for me not to do any thing that might displease you. But now that the trouble of your eyes doth justify my suspicions, and redouble my unquietness, I learn to fear by the fear which I discern in your face, that doubtless betrays your thoughts; Yes, my dear Master, I fear, and am not able to tell you what it is I fear; howbeit I know very well that it is an effect of the love I bear you, and an excess of my fidelity, which puts me into doubt; but I know also, that my fear is not without probability. For how can I be perswaded that that which you are premeditating is glorious and honorable, if it hath the power to trouble the tranquillity of your Soul? Believe me, the execution of the matter you are thinking of, can be neither very assured, nor very facile,

since the only imagination thereof disquiets you. Let this fatal preface arrest you, and know, that all the enterprizes which are commenced with this repugnancy and pensiveness, whereof I behold the marks in your face, have never or seldom any prosperous success. Make profit then of the interior advertisements, which Heaven sends you. I do not press you to tell me the secret, which you will not have me to know, though I may presume to ask of you, why you retain me about you, if my faith be suspected to you, and that you no longer judge me worthy of your confidence? But only tell me, what object and what end can the conversation of these men have, who always leave you so sad and unquiet, as I never saw you so before. Alas! how do I fear, lest these secret counsels, which you hold so often with these violent persons, and whose inclinations are not very sincere, should by their address and cunning draw you out of the way of virtue! Suffer me, my dear Master, to discover the disease that I may cure it. They, from whom my suspicions arise, are not of such commendable manners, or of so exemplary a piety, as I may believe they give you counsels, which do not clash either with Virtue, or with Religion. It may be they abuse your little experience, and knowing you generous they propound unto you actions, which in appearance are great and glorious, but which in effect are rash and vain. Open your eyes then, O noble Count, and think that an inconsiderate man may make you fall into a precipice, out of which the prudence of all the wisest in the world cannot draw you. It is easie enough to set a Palace on fire, but it is not so easie to quench it: Take heed lest they that counsel you do not make use of you, to arrive at the end which they propose unto themselves; and that your undoing do not serve for the benefit of them which deceive you. It is rare to meet with men, who counsel that which is good, because it is good, without regard to their interest; and yet it is by this experience, that we are to be secured of them. Examine then seriously, whether they, which counsel you, cannot become greater or richer by that they would have you undertake. And to tell you all that I think in this occasion, I cannot be perswaded, that they, which spend their lives amongst crimes, are capable of perswading virtue unto others. For though there be great difference between deeds and words, the most important part of perswasion consists in example rather than in discourse; and commonly the mouth and the hand act alike. What would these men have of you? To what innovation would they carry you? The estate of your affairs are at such a point, as they have no need of change; there can no mutation arrive unto you, but will be to your disadvantage. Envy hath a long time sought to fasten on you, and will you let her take hold on you by the disorder whereunto they are carrying you? For you are not ignorant, how there is a great number of persons, who are inferior to you, both in Nobility, Estate, and Virtue, which endeavor to traduce you. I know that hope is sweet unto young people, especially to them which can sustain it with the greatness of their courage, but I know withall that nothing is more slippery then prosperity: Beware then lest the hope of an incertain thing do not make you lose an assured good. They which counsel you have nothing to lose, nor nothing to hazard, whether their means or their reputation be considered; and therefore it is, that these kinde of men wish for revolts, seditions, tumults, and disorders, because it is the custom of such like persons to enrich themselves with other mens losses, and to find their particular rest in a general confusion. In fine, they which are not very high, fear not falling; but you are to deal otherwise: For you are not only obliged to conserve the blessings, which Heaven hath committed to you, as it were in trust, but you are also obliged out of a sense of honor to give occasion unto fame, by the generosity of your actions, to publish, that you are the worthy successor of so many great men which have preceded you.

The Count heard the generous *Pansa* with a great deal of impatience; he told him for all that in general terms, that all his designs being great and noble, he should be assured he would do nothing unworthy of his birth; and having embraced him very tenderly, he left him, after he had conjured him not to say any thing to *Leonora* of his inquietness. In the mean time the Count and his Confederates impatiently attended the day of that fatal feast, which was to be the fourth of *January*, for the executing of their design. But they were constrained to hasten the business, because *Andrea Doria*, having been taken with a fit of the gout, that was accompanied with a fever, was not in case to keep his promise for being there: and *Jannetia* being to part from *Genova* about a very pressing affair, the Count did thereupon judge, that it would be superfluous for him, to attend the day of the feast, since the two principal sacrifices, which were to be offered, would not be present there. And considering further that the



the greatest obstacle of Conspirators is always retardment, they resolved on the second of *January* at night for the execution of their design. And to that effect the Count began to publish that he had a determination to send one of his Gallies against the Pirates; for that the Pope having allowed him entertainment but for three of them, he would have the other bring him in wherewithall to defray the charge he was at with her. Upon this pretext, and by this artifice, he caused a great part of the Soldiers, which had been sent him from *Placentia* to enter into *Genova*; saying, that out of them he would make choyce of the strongest and ablest men. And lest the number of those which came from his Lands, who were far more then were needful for a Gally, should give any suspicion, he made a great many of them to be led in chained, as Malefactors destined to the Oar; and caused the rest to enter in one after another through several gates, after they were well furnished with Arms. And the better to beguile *Jannetin*, he entrusted him with the design which he said he had for the sending of his Gally to scour the Seas, desiring him so to deal with *Andrea*, as he might give no impediment unto it; fearing (said he) lest the obligation wherein the Republique stood engaged to *Soliman* by the means of *Justiniano*, should keep *Andrea* from permitting it. *Jannetin* promised him all that he desired, and kept his word with him.

In the mean time the second of *January* being arrived, which preceded that dreadful night, the Count caused certain Soldiers of the Garison to come to his Palace, whereof some were his Subjects, and the rest such as had been placed there by him, and having left them under the Command of one of the Conspirators, he went and past away the rest of the day till evening with *Andrea Doria*, where he had never been seen more merry, or more pleasant. He intreated *Jannetin* again, who was there present, to give order at the Port, that his Gally, which was that night to set sail towards the Archipelague, might not be stayed. He advertised him also, that he would not be troubled, if he heard any noise, or any Ordinance discharged; for, as you know better then I, said he unto him, they always shoot off some for the Ceremony of parting, and these things never pass without some stir. At his coming from thence the French Marquess and I met him; but it had been hard for us to foresee what the Count had in his thought, for he talked to us of nothing but of matches of sport and delight for the ensuing days; Howbeit he gave us dextrously to understand, that he should be busie this evening in setting forth his Gally, for fear lest we should go home with him, seeming nevertheless very sorry at it, and telling us that *Leonora* and *Sophronia* would not be friends with him for it. After we were parted from him, he went to his Palace, which, as you know, was in that part of *Genova*, called *Carignan*, and which seems to be severed from all the rest of the City, and to command it, as well for its advantageous situation, as for its magnificence. You know also, that this Palace, being built upon a little hill, touched the walls of the City almost on every side; The Sea was in the face of the building, and backwards it had for prospect the pleasant Valley of *Bisagno*. I put you in mind of these things, that you may comprehend, how this Palace, being as it were an Island, was very commodiously situated for the Counts enterprize; having no nearer a neighbor then *Baptista*, who being of the Conspiracy was not to be feared. In fine, being returned home, he drew thither about the beginning of the night, a great many of armed men, of those which he had caused to enter secretly into the City, and of those which he had suborned even in *Genova* it self. He placed them for the Guard of the Gates of his Palace, whom he held to be the most courageous and faithful; with order to leave the entrance thereinto free to every one, but to let no body pass out of them.

In the mean time one of the Captains of the Garison, going to set Sentinels, perceived that some of the Soldiers were missing, and enquired of his Lieutenant whither they were gone; whereupon some of their fellows answering that they were gone to *Carignan* with the Count of *Lavagna*, it made him suspect something; so that he went instantly and gave notice thereof to the Senators that were at the Palace, and to *Andrea Doria*; and then it was that the Counts dissimulation wrought the greatest effect, and began to produce that which he had expected from it. *Jannetin* hearing this advertisement, told him, that his fidelity was to be commended, although this advice had no ground for them to fear any thing. For whereas he was prepossessed by the Counts address, who had demanded permission of him for the parting away of a Gally this night to scour the Seas towards the Levant, he assured them that all these Soldiers, which were gone to him, being of his own or the Duke of *Placentia's* Subjects,

were destined to that purpose; and that those, which were said to be at *Carignan*, were gone thither to take their farewell of some of their friends. With such like discourses, *Jannetin* made the rest give over their suspicions, and he himself served the design of his Enemy.

This while the Count, after he had given order for all things necessary at home, went to two or three of those assemblies, which are made a nights in the houses of persons of quality in *Genova*, where the small time that he stayed there, he left a new admiration of his wit. He was magnificently apparelled that day, and redoubling also his ordinary civility and gallantry, he went not out of any of those companies without augmenting the affection which they already bore unto him. But at last he went to the house of one, named *Afferese*, where he found three and twenty young Gentlemen of the Popular order, whom the cunning of *Baptista Verrin* had drawn thither. The Count caressed them exceedingly, and talking with them of divers things, and supper time being near, he desired them to go home and eat with him. He told them, that it was too fair an evening to part so soon; that the night was too light, and the Moon too clear, for them to excuse themselves upon the season; and briefly, he intreated them with so good a grace, as they went along with him. The Count led them to a back room, willing the discreet *Pansa* to go and entertain his wife, unto whom he would come ere it were long, because, said he smiling, our design will not brook the presence of Ladies. At first these young Gentlemen believed, that it was to treat them with the more liberty he did so, and so went on with him. In the mean time *Baptista Verrin* went dextrously to see if he could discover any thing about the Palace, or at *Doria's*, that might make him think they were suspected.

Things being in these terms, the Count entered into another chamber, after he had told them, that he would come to them again presently, as indeed he stayd not long before he returned. But they were mightily surprized, when as they saw him enter completely armed, and followed by two hundred Soldiers, with Partisans or Musquets, which ranged themselves round about him; He had his Viseur up, and his Sword in his hand; and beginning then to let the hatred and choller break forth, which he had for so long a time kept concealed in his heart, his face was all on fire, and fierceness and fury appeared in his eyes. He approached to a Table, and leaning on it with his left hand, he continued a while without saying any thing; then suddenly giving a great bounce on it, he said with an imperious tone, and a precipitate voice, It is done, I am resolved, O courageous and illustrious friends! a spirit touch'd with any generosity can no longer suffer it; the insolency of them that would oppress us hath incens'd my courage, and wearied my patience. My imagination presents unto me a spectacle, too horrible and too deadly, in making me see our Citizens tyrannized, and the subversion of our Country indubitable, for me not to oppose my self to a mischief, which fear, or to say better, Reason, makes me see so nigh at hand. If the evils, wherewith the Republique is mortally tainted, could hope for remedies from time, I would endure, as others do, a retardment, which might be profitable to the publique good; but since we are arriv'd at the last period of our misery, and that we see our selves quite ready to be ruined, we must of necessity go and encounter that which is to overwhelm us: and if it be possible, not only sustain, but overthrow it. How great soever the peril is, it loses much of its force, when it is courageously affronted; whereas contrarily, it encreases and becomes inevitable when it is attended with patience.

*Jannetin Doria* weary of that idle felicity which follows him, dreams of nothing but of contenting his ambition; and seeing his pernicious designs, so near to be executed, his whole thought is bestowed in contriving my death, and your servitude. It was not enough for this ambitious man to see the people of *Genova* dispoiled of the Empire of *Liguria*, and submitted to be the object of the contempt of the Nobles, but he must enterprize also to render himself tyrannically Sovereign of you: yea, more barbarous then Strangers have been unto us, so great a pride is there seen in his heart, as cannot be vanquish'd by patience, nor avoyded by humility. And to secure himself of you, he holds you besieged on the Sea-side with twenty Gallies, which in the midst of an apparant peace are in the Port, more for your ruine then for your safety. We see him always going through the City, invironed with Nobles, who by the favor of *Andrea*, having usurped the Commands which appertained unto you, render unto *Jannetin*, for a recompence of your infamy, an honor unworthy both of them and of him.

But

But that which touches me further, is, that I certainly know how under the authority of a Prince he prepares an heavy yoke for the publique liberty. And because I have without considering my birth embraced your cause, not so much for the interest of your order, as for following of Reason, and satisfying of my duty; because, I say, I have never consented to the insolent contempt, which the Nobles have used towards all them that are not of their body; because I have esteemed of vertue wheresoever I have met with it; because I have always taken part with Equity, without considering that their interests were in some sort mine; they attempt upon my life, and believe that they cannot put you into chains, unless they deprive you of him, whom they conceive to be strong enough, or contagious enough, to undertake the breaking of them.

What do we mean then, O my companions, by our sloth and our cowardise? Will we be always the Spectators of our own misery? For what enterprize shall we reserve our courage, if in the general desolation of our Country we abandon our selves? It is no time for us longer to complain of our Enemies, but to revenge our selves of them. Let us leave the use of tears to our wives, and if we be worthy the name of men, which we bear, let us employ our courage, our force, and our address, in destroying our Tyrants. We have too much already endured their insolency, which doubtless carries them to believe, that our patience is an effect of our faint-heartedness. They who leave crimes unpunished, are guilty of those, which the excess of their goodness doth make their oppressors commit afterwards; who ordinarily augment their violences, when as they see they are dissembled. What do we further expect, O generous Citizens? May it be, to have the Government, and all kind of Authority in the Republicque to be utterly lost? May it be, that you will have the heart to place *Jannetin* in the Throne? To see the Ministers of his fury go and take your goods out of your houses, ruine your families, attempt upon your lives, dishonor your wives, and commit those wickednesses, which may justly be attended from a Tyranny, that is born for the ruine of the Country, nourished by the publique dissention, increased by the miseries of the Citizens, and established by the death of so many good men? Are our courages so base, and so low brought? Have our swords so little edge, as we cannot cut off the infamous life of him, who makes a glory of our shame, who triumphs over our misfortunes, and feeds on our miseries? Shall we not pluck out of *Jannetin's* body that cowardly heart, which hath contrived so many Treasons, and which may be termed the source of all our mischiefs? Shall we suffer a simple Citizen to be our Tyrant, let him trample us under his feet, and subjecting us unto him as his Slaves, dispose of our lives and deaths as he pleaseth? For me, I profess freely unto you, that I hold it more glorious to buy liberty with a great peril, then to sweeten servitude with idleness and patience. And as I take it for a glory, that our Enemies have a design to add the loss of my life unto that of the Republicque, so do I consecrate my life with joy for the liberty of my Country, acknowledging that I should be unworthy of enjoying it, if I could prefer it before the publique utility. I desire only, O illustrious Citizens, to discover a resolution in you, if not worthy of your courage, at leastwise proportionable to the danger wherein you are. *In fine*, whether you will have me for a Soldier, or a Captain; if you will go before me, I will follow you, if I shall go before you, do you follow me. Besides, whether you be sensible of honor, or that you only think of your safety, you are always forced to take up Arms: for since I must deliver things unto you as they are, this resolution, as to generous men, is glorious for you, as to men of little courage is commodious for you, and in what manner soever it be, is necessary for you. I do not call you to an enterprize, that is unforecasted or ill conducted, I have long since considered the end and means of it: And I have not only examined the sequel of it, but I have assembled troops for it, and having distributed them in the most commodious places for execution, it is rather inviting you to the pleasing spectacle of a certain victory, then to the peril of a doubtful fight.

But without animating you by the hope of that is to come, I know very well, so as you will call to mind the outrages of the Nobles, and the insolency of *Jannetin*, I know very well, I say, that the desire of revenge being rouzed up in your Souls, you will come to fight with so much heart, as our Enemies shall to their damage admire the valor of those whom they despised; and you on the contrary shall know by your own experience, whether they have as much force in warlike occasions, as they have weakness in abandoning themselves to voluptuousness in the time of Peace. Let us go then, generous Citizens, and let this be the end of my



my discourse, and the beginning of your victory. Let us go out of this Palace, and descend into the City, where we are attended by a great number of our friends, for the ending of an enterprize so well begun. The gates are in the power of the Soldiers, whom I have gained to me, the Gallies upon a Signal given will fall into the hands of a Troop of men, as hardy to render themselves Masters of them, as prudent to conserve them. We have in the City fifteen hundred inhabitants, which are armed for us; and even now that I am speaking to you, there are in the Suburbs two thousand of my Subjects, and as many of the Duke of *Placentia's*, which are come to succor us.

Let us go then, my companions, and call the people again to liberty; let us return to the sweetness of our ancient Government; let us exterminate the Nobles and *Jannetin's* Tyranny; and in one only night, more shining then the fairest days of our lives have been; let us re-establish the glory of the popular families in their first splendor; let us for ever deface out of the memories of men our past faint-heartedness. But if any of you (as I cannot believe) be so audacious & so cowardly both together, as to oppose a design so glorious for us, and advantageous for our Country, let him behold round about him this dreadful company of Arms and Soldiers, and let him imagine that he sees at the very same instant the points of all our swords leveled at his heart. Yea, my Companions, I do protest it openly, we must of necessity either fight or dye. And that blood which shall be ingratfully denied to the succor of our Country, so near to ruine, shall be shed, in this very place, to wash away the stain of such perfidiousness. Yea, I say it once again, the first sacrifice, which shall be consecrated for the publique safety, shall even here have his throat cut with my hand, if any one undertakes to oppose my will.

These dreadful menaces amazed those to whom they were address'd; they beheld one another, and then that great number of Soldiers which environed them; and after they had been a while without speaking, they cryed all with one voyce, two excepted, that they would follow the Count even to the death; that they would be the companions of his triumph, or of his fall; and in conclusion, that they would never abandon him, but would obey him in all things. The Count embraced them then with a great deal of joy, and testimony of satisfaction; and being turned towards those two, which as yet had said nothing, they besought him to have pity of their weakness, with words wherein fear appeared so visible, as the Count could not forbear smiling. They represented unto him, that the request which they made him, was advantageous to him, as well as to them; because being so incapable of fighting, they should hurt him more then they could help him; that their fear might beget the same in others, and their flight give an ill example to his Soldiers: Briefly, they gave him so many marks of their affright and terror, as changing his determination, he only contented himself with reproaching them for their cowardise in a bitter jeer, and for the security of his enterprize he caused them to be shut up in a chamber, where he left them under a Guard, which should keep them from coming forth. After this he commanded meat to be brought in, but in such a fashion, as this meal might be rather named a collation, then a supper; fearing lest they should be too much taken up with good cheer. Whilst then that some did eat standing, and others were arming themselves with the Arms which the Count had caused to be presented unto them, he went to *Leonora's* chamber, who was talking with *Sophronia* her sister about the inquietness she was in to see so many Soldiers in her Palace. As soon as he was entered, he approached to her, and taking her by the hand, he told her in few words the design he had; desiring her to pardon him for not having spoken to her of it till then.

The great heart of *Leonora* found not it self firm enough to remain constant in this occasion; and considering the extream peril whereinto the Count was going to expose himself, affection and fear troubled her in such sort, as falling at the Counts feet, and her face all bedewed with tears, My Lord, said she unto him, imbracing his knees, to what danger are you going to expose your self? I conjure you by the thing that is dearest to you in the world, by the love which I bear to you, by that which you bear to me, by the tears which I shed, and by your own glory, to preserve my life in preserving yours. The interest of our Country is dear to me, but yours is yet far more to me. I had rather have *Jannetin* reign insolently, then to see you perish for the saving of others. And I shall resolve with joy to wear chains, rather then to see my self exposed to the hazard of wearing mourning for your death. But what say I, senseless as I am? could I preserve my life, if you were no longer living? No, no, my

my destiny is tyed to yours; and what my despair could not do in this occasion, my grief alone would execute. Let *Jannetin* then, my dear husband, usurp the Empire; let our Country be ruined; let all our Citizens be made Slaves; provided that you live it imports me not. For in the end *Jannetin* may indeed raise himself up into the Throne, but he can never surmount you in greatness of courage and vertue. You have told me an hundred times, that I made up all your felicity, what do you seek for then, O my dear husband! Is it just, that you should be so far sensible of the complaints of a people, that may be ingrateful, as to lose your life for their liberty? And that my tears should move you so little, as that you will not preserve me, in preserving your self? What will you have me do in this fatal adventure? Will you have me, letting you go, attend here the news of your death? Ah! I can never endure this thought, no more then your design. For, my Lord, what can this design be, which I see you undertake, without communicating it to your dearest friends? To whom of all those, which are in this Palace, may I entrust your life? Are you your self assured, that they will not abandon you? If I saw the generous *Justiniano*, the French Marquess, and so many other illustrious friends, which you have, about you, I could say that they would vanquish, or dye together with you. But in the estate wherein I see you, it may be that those, whom you believe to be most faithful unto you, have betrayed you; and have undertaken to destroy you. Ah! my Lord, give an end to my fears and tears; in changing so deadly a resolution. But if nevertheless you are determined, as methinks I observe by your looks, not to let your self be vanquished with my tears, suffer me at leastwise to accompany you; that I may, in this abandonment of all your friends, serve you for a buckler, to bear off all the blows which shall be made at you; that I may at least expire before your eyes, or you dye in my arms. *In fine*, my Lord, permit me to enter into your Charet of Triumph, or into your Tomb with you.

The Count, feeling himself very much moved with *Leonora's* tears, and fearing to be surmounted by them, interrupted her with embraces; do not make so ill a presage of my enterprize, said he unto her, and carry that great heart, which I have always admired in you, to higher and more happy thoughts. I am going to a place, whither Justice and Fortune call me; and if I have concealed this design from my friends, it is because I knew they loved my life too well to counsel me unto it. And then again I shall be glad, if Heaven will permit me to prevail over my Enemies, that I have given them a content which hath cost them nothing; and if I fall in so brave an enterprize, they shall at leastwise remain to comfort you. *In fine*, my dear *Leonora*, prepare your minde for all events that may arrive, either happy, or unhappy; for the business is at such a pass, as I can neither defer, or break it off: But this I can assure you, that you shall not be long in uncertainty, and that in a few hours you shall hear of my death, or victory; howsoever it be, remember, that, glory excepted, I never loved any thing more then you. Farewell, my dear *Leonora*.

At this word his ambitious Mother came and interrupted him; who knowing that the Count was touched with his Wives tears, and fearing he should be overcome by them, Go, go, said she unto him, and call to minde, that if *Coriolanus* had never been wrought upon by the tears of a woman, he had gotten himself the Empire, and preserved his life. Fear not, my son, that I will be *Volumnia* in this encounter, but contrarily I command you, as much as I can, to hasten the execution of your enterprize, for all the time which you have lost here, would already have served you for your approach to the Throne: Go then, my son, perform an action proportionable to your courage, or finde a death worthy of your birth.

The Count, having heard his Mother speak in this sort, and having told her that he would obey her, turned himself once again to *Leonora*, whom grief suffocated, and beholding her with a troubled countenance, Farewell, said he unto her, either you shall never see me more, or you shall see your self in Genoua above all others of your sex. At these last words he left her, without harkening to the generous *Pansa*, or the sage *Sophronia*; For as for *Leonora*, she was so stricken with the Count's speech and departure, as she fell into a swoon.

In the mean time *Baptista Verrin* was come back from the City, to assure the Count that there was no obstacle which could hinder his design; that his Gally was in a posture of fighting, full of a great number of Soldiers, thoroughly resolved to do their duty, and ready to shut up the mouth of the Port, by that means besieging all those of *Doria*. The Count seeing all things in such order as he could have wished, went to his friends again, and having made

made all them to take up Arms which were to follow him, he issued out of his Palace three hours after midnight. And to march in order, he made as it were a Vant-guard of an hundred and fifty of the resoluest Soldiers he had, whom he advanced forty paces before; himself he put in the head of all those young Gentlemen, which he had brought along with him; and after marched in rank, and as it were in a battalion, all the rest of his men. When he was arrived at the Suburbs, he commanded some Soldiers to go under the conduct of a natural Brother of his, named *Cornelio*, and seize upon the Bow gate, which was presently executed; *Cornelio* finding no other resistance then of a few Soldiers, who being surprized, scarce fought at all. This prosperous success redoubling the *Count's* courage, he sent *Giralamo* and *Ottobuono* his Brothers, with *Vincentio Calcagna*, who notwithstanding his natural timidity had not left following him, to render themselves Masters of Saint *Thomas* Gate. He descended afterwards through *S. Andrews* street to *S. Donat*, and passing by the place of the *Salvages* with his companions, he arrived at the point of *Catana*. *Baptista Verrin* went aboard the Gally, and *Thomaso Affereto* did what he could to seize upon the gate of *Darsene*; at first, in regard he was one of *Jannetin's* Officers, and had the word, the Guards suffered him to enter; but perceiving so great a number of armed men, wherewith he was followed, they rudely repulsed him: Nevertheless seeing it was necessary, that some one should enter to open the gate unto the *Count*, it was resolved that *Scipio*, one of his subjects, and a Captain of great courage, should cast himself with some Soldiers into little Boats, kept there of purpose, in case of necessity, and by that means enter by the Sea into the Port, where the Gallies lay, and so facilitate the entrance of the rest of the Conspirators thereinto. This design was as happily executed, as it was well thought of; for albeit they found some resistance there, yet in regard the Conspirators were more in number, and incomparably more valorous, it was easie for them to prevail.

In the mean time the *Count* was come by Land to that Gate, where with much impatience he attended the signal that was to be given him, which stayd longer then it ought, by reason the Gally with her motion and agitation had struck her self a ground, and it was above half an hour before they could set her afloat again. All these things, which could not be done without noise, began to raise a great deal; but at length the signal having been given, the *Count*, devancing all his companions, leapt with exceeding courage into *Doria's* Gallies. This unexpected violence, and the noise of Arms and Soldiers, having awaked all the Mariners and Slaves, a dreadful and confused din of chains and voyces was suddenly heard. All the Sailors cryed to Arms, all the Gally-Slaves refounded the name of *Liberty*, and labored as much as they could to break off their Irons: But the *Count*, who knew not what to do with the Gallies if he had not men, considering what a prejudice the flight of the Slaves would bring unto him, he cast himself ashore again, and went with all speed to the Admiral, which with the sudden and unuly motion of them wherewith she was filled, floated leisurely, and seemed as though she would eloin her self from the Land.

Whil'st things past thus in the Port, *Giralamo* and *Ottobuono* failed not in that which had been commanded them; for as soon as they heard the Cannon discharged, which was the signal that was given to them, they went courageously with threecore Soldiers to seize on *S. Thomas* gate, not onely to render themselves Masters of it, but to pass along unto *Doria's* Palace, which was hard by, for to kill *Andrea* and *Jannetin*. This enterprize was not so facile unto the Conspirators, as the former; the Soldiers that guarded this gate defended themselves wel enough; and *Sebastiano Lercato* with his Brother, whereof the one was the Captain, and the other the Ensign, coming in, made all the resistance that valiant men could do: But in the end, some of their Soldiers being corrupted, and the assailants fighting like men that would vanquish or dye, they were constrained to give place to the stronger, and the gate remained in the power of the Conspirators, the Captain being made a prisoner, and the Ensign slain there.

In the mean time the cries, clamors, and noise of Arms, which increased in the Port, where the Gallies were, arrived even at *Doria's* Palace, which as you know is not far distant from it, and where *Andrea* lay sick. *Jannetin's* wife first hearing it, awaked her Husband, fearing some rising of the Gally-Slaves; *Jannetin* rose instantly up, and having harkened a while, he made himself ready in haste, beleaving nevertheless that he should finde nothing else, but some dispute about pay, or some other occasion, that had fallen out amongst the people of his Gallies.



Gallies. *Andrea*, more foreseeing then he, and fearing some unlooked for accident, would not have had him gone forth, but well accompanied; His Wife cast her self at his feet to keep him from it: but he, carryed on by his destiny, contemned the counsel of the one, and the prayers of the other, and went out alone with one Groom of his Chamber, and a Page, that carried a Torch before him, without any other Arms, then his single sword. When he arrived at Saint *Thomas* gate, which he thought was guarded still by his own followers, according to his insolent humor, whereunto the choller he was in that time being joyned, he fiercely commanded them to open unto him. *Jannetin's* voyce being straightway known of the Conspirators, they opened the gate, and suffered him to enter without resistance; but scarcely was he entred, when as a showre of Musket shot fell on him, and layd him instantly dead on the ground. This adventure made *Giralomo* and *Ottobuono* change the order which the Count had given them, for going directly to *Doria's* Palace. For seeing *Jannetin* dead, who was the onely man of the Count's Enemies, that could satisfie with his person; and believing that the Count had rendred himself Master of the Gallies; they did not think that *Andrea*, fourscore years of age, and sick of the gout, could bring any great obstacle to their design. Moreover they feared, that if they should go to *Doria's* Palace, the riches of the booty would withdraw the most part of the Soldiers from the action, and make them quit their Arms, to lade themselves with the plunder of such rich movables, as it was full of.

In the mean time, the noise and disorder still increasing, *Andrea* was much troubled for *Jannetin*, not being able to imagine what should be the cause of so much stir. But at length having sent one of his servants, certainly to know the occasion of this Tumult, he brought him word, that the Count of *Lavagna* had made himself Master of *Genova*; that the Republique was in extream peril; that his Gallies were full of his Enemies; that the people re-founded all about the word of *Liberty*, and the name of *Giovanni Lodovico*; that turious men ran up and down with Arms in their hands; that there was nothing seen but blood and slaughter; and that every where was talking of outrages against the Nobles, and menaces against his life. So dreadful a relation perfwading *Andrea* that the matter was past remedy, he resolved to attend the violence of his Enemies in his Palace, and to yield to them whom he could not resist. But his wife, and his servants, with their tears, intreaties and reasons, made him at last resolve to let himself be carryed down into his Palace-yard, where they set him on an horse with much ado; in this estate they conducted him to *Mazona*, which is a Castle belonging to a Kinsman of mine, and from thence to another place, where they understood the death of *Jannetin*, with which he was sensibly touched.

In the mean time the Conspirators still advanced their design; and whereas this noise and Tumult had awaked every one, all the Count's particular friends having heard the people cry, *Long live the Count of Lavagna*, went forth with Arms in their hands to see what the matter was, and to joyn themselves with him; and amongst the rest *Doria*, the French Marquis, and I, who by chance lay together that night, going also forth to seek the Count, met some thirty paces from my lodging, *Giralomo* with all his Troop, who sought for him as well as we. All the people, that took his part, required to see their Deliverer; but though there was crying every where, *Long live the Count of Lavagna*, and that every one enquired after him, yet no body answered thereunto. This silence made us fear some disastrous success, yet did it not make them give over the design of pursuing a victory, which seemed so certain. *Giralomo* left a sufficient Guard at the gates, and sent *Ottobuono* to take a care of the Gallies, in case his Brother was not there. The French Marquis followed him, and I stay'd with *Giralomo*, who being accompanied onely with two hundred Soldiers, went, as he had resolved, through all the streets of *Genova*, to cause the people, both with his speeches, and the hope of *Liberty*, to rise. And though the Count appeared not, yet each one declared himself for him, with earnestly demanding where he was. The City in the mean space was in a general confusion and consternation; every one ran up and down in the streets, without knowing whither they went; every one asked of one another what was the cause of this dreadful disorder, without knowing what to answer; the women out of their windows, in the midst of the cries and lamentations which they made, called for their husbands, their brothers, and their children. The Nobles, in so great a disorder, would willingly for the publique interest have resorted to the Palace, that they might have advised together what to do, but their particular interest kept them from it, and the doubt they were

in, lest their houses should be plundered in their absence, retained them still there.

*Cesar's* Ambassador, surprized with this unexpected accident, was upon the point of going out of *Genova*, for fear lest the person of the Prince, to whom he belonged, should be outraged in his; but at length after he had gotten company about him, he resolved to see the matter decided, and according to occasions to take such a course as should be most advantageous for his Master. To that effect he went to the Palace, where he found Cardinal *Doria* and some others, who consulted with the Senate, whereof *Nicola Franco* was the Chief, there being no Duke at that time. They resolved that *Benifacio Lomellin*, one of the *Pallancini*, and *Antonio Calvo*, with the Ensign of the Guard and fifty Soldiers, should go and defend *S. Thomas Gate*; but having on the way encountered with the Troop where we were, they were constrained to retire into one of their friends houses, but not without leaving some of their men prisoners. Part of them went in great haste by another street to the same gate to learn some news of *Andrea*; but finding it well guarded, and *Lomellin* having at the very first been made a prisoner, they fled away with great precipitation, whereat ours were so joyful, as this prisoner escaped from them.

In the mean time it was not known where the Count was; they that were with *Giralomo* thought he was at the Port; they of the Port on the other side believed that he had left them to repair unto his brothers; *Ottobuono* not finding him there, thought that he was gone to visit the Gates, or it may be to *Doria's* Palace; they of the Gates were persuaded that he was in the City; in *fine*, every one thought any thing save the truth. But amongst all the rest, *Baptista Verrin*, as having the greatest share in the enterprize, was most earnest in asking after him. He saw the business so well carried, and the Victory so certain, as he was mad for that he could not see the Count; the Gates of the City were theirs; they were Masters of the Port; the people favored them; the Nobles seemed to make no opposition; the Senate had no Duke; *Andrea* was fled, and had left the field to his Enemies; and *Jannetin* was dead; in *fine*, there wanted nothing but that the Count should shew himself to the people for receiving the Oath of Allegiance from them. But all *Verrin's* care was in vain, so that hearing no news of him, and seeing the enterprize ruined if he did not appear, he retired in despair unto the Gally, to the end that if the Count came, he might secure him the Port still, which was a matter of extream importance; and if the enterprize were ruined by his absence, that he might have the means to fly to *Marseilles*: This resolution was the cause of very much mischief to *Giralomo*; because the Conspirators, neither seeing the Count, who was their Head, nor *Baptista Verrin*, who had been always the principal Agent in the Conspiracy, did not so much rely on the conduct of *Giralomo*, who being very young, and of an haughty humor, carried things with more impetuosity then discretion: They followed him for all that out of the hope that the Count would appear ere it were long; but it was not with that confidence, which makes one abandon his life without uneasiness, and obey without repugnancy an Head whom one esteems, and of whose prudence and valor one is assured, so that one reserves no more care then to fight and obey: but contrarily the most part began to murmur, yea and some thought already of seeking some occasion to withdraw, or at leastwise to go and enquire out the Count. On the other side, the Senate, not knowing what resolution to take, and believing that affairs were altogether remediless, desired Cardinal *Doria*, and some others, to go and find out the Count of *Lavagna*, which at first he accepted of, but some having counselled him not to expose his dignity to the insolencies of a people in fury, he refused it; and the Senate deputed for the same effect six Gentlemen of quality, with order to know of the Count what he desired. But at the same time, when as the Deputies went out of the Palace to seek for the Count, we understood, Madam, the most deplorable adventure that ever arrived: For since our ill fortune must be told you, we learned that the Count, being returned to Land (as I have already declared to you) from aboard *Doria's* Gallies, to go to the Admiral, which he meant to secure himself of, in passing over a plank, which lay with one end on the Land, and with the other on a little ladder that is near to the Poop, the Gally stirring somewhat made the plank lose its hold, so that it fell, and in falling tumbled the Count into the water, who being armed at all pieces could not disengage himself from that peril; and even those arms, which he had taken to preserve his life, were the cause of his death; for had it not been for them, he fell so near the shoar, as it was impossible he should have been drowned: the tumult and the darkness contributed also very much to his loss, which

which was not seen by any of his followers, and that was the reason it was published no sooner. We had no certain knowledge of it but by the *French* Marquess, who being gone, as I have told you, with *Ottobuoni*, and asking of every one where the Count was, two Mariners of the Admiral, who had seen him fall, and heard his voyce which they knew very well, as having served him before-times, assured him that he was dead; which having understood with extream grief, he thought it fit to come unto us, and acquaint *Giralomo* with it; for as for *Ottobuono* he had lost him in the press. He came presently away then, to acquaint us with this doleful news, but having encountered, as he told us, with a great number of armed men, which issued out of your Palace, whereof the Gate was broken up, he stayed to learn what the matter might be; and thinking that he knew the voyce of *Emilia*, whom they were carrying forcibly away, he pursued them fighting even to the Port.

*Isabella* hereupon remembered her carrying away, and interrupting *Alphonso*, B-hold, said she to *Emilia*, that which we could not comprehend, and the true cause of that dreadful disorder, whereof I thought that I had been the occasion. And then she recounted, how she had been forcibly carried away, and after she had testified her gratitude to the *French* Marquess for the succor he would have given her, and craved pardon of the company for her interrupting *Alphonso's* relation, he continued his discourse in this sort.

The *French* Marquess having been a good while pursuing those which carried you away, it was the cause that we knew not the deplorable death of the Count, till there wanted nothing but his presence, to make an end of obtaining the Victory: And judg, Madam, whether there can be any doubt of this verity, since the Count being dead almost at the beginning of the execution, it may be said that his name alone vanquished all his Enemies: And certainly if he had lived, the business had had a quite contrary event. For my part I profess unto you, that I shall never be comforted for this death. Had the enterprize succeeded ill; had any of the Conspirators betrayed him; had the people abandoned him; had the Nobles resisted him; had *Jannetin* vanquished him; I should say that these are ordinary things, that these are accidents, whereof there are examples found: But to see a man of two and twenty years of age, the goodliest, the handsomest, the most courageous, the most dextrous, the fullest of spirit, and the most generous that ever was seen, to see him, I say, after he had contrived a great design; after he had so admirably conducted it; after he had deceived *Andrea Doria*; abused the whole Republique; was come not only to the execution, but also had executed the business; *Jannetin* being dead, and *Andrea* himself fled away; after all these things, I say, to imagine, that this excellent man should fall from off a plank, and be drowned not above three or four steps from the Land in five fodd of mud, is so unupportable to me, Madam, as I cannot endure the thought of it.

But to testify unto you, that the Count alone held the Victory in his hands, I am but to tell you the end of this enterprize. The *French* Marquess had no sooner acquainted *Giralomo* with the death of his brother, but the Deputies from the Senate appeared. At first, some would have set upon them, nevertheless this tumult being appeased, one of the Deputies advanced, and demanded of *Giralomo* where the Count was, to acquaint him with what he had in charge from the Senate; *Giralomo* surprized with this demand, answered rudely and inconsiderately, that he should seek for no other Count of *Lavagna* but himself, for he was now the Count, and that to him only they were to render up the Palace, which he ordained them to do, and that with speed. The Deputies understanding by this imprudent answer that the Count was dead, returned back to advertise the Senate of the change of things by the death of the Count. This news put them in heart again, so that they instantly commanded twelve of the chiefest of them, that were come to the Palace, to go and arm as many of the people as they could, and joyning them with the ordinary guard, to use their uttermost endeavor to chase the Conspirators out of the City, or utterly to defeat them: But there was no need of fighting to put them to flight, for they were vanquished in the death of the Count; which being published over all, put one and the same resolution into the minds of all those who had taken up arms for him. And whereas the day began to break, they desired it should not be said, that they had been in arms against their Citizens; wherefore they began to retire one after another to their homes: They which had taken arms in the Counts Palace left them in the streets, for fear lest if their houses should come to be searched, they might have been convicted of being of the number of the Rebels; and they which contrarily had taken them



in their own homes, carried them thither again, for fear lest leaving them in the streets they might be accused for making use of them in this occasion. We past not one corner of a street, but it cost us above thirty Soldiers; some slyly slunk away; others ran away as hard as they could drive; and in conclusion, they which guarded the Gates abandoned them: Things went in that manner, as when *Giralomo* came to *S. Lawrence's Church*, which was fast by the Palace, he was almost alone.

In the mean time, the generous *Pansa* having been sent for by the Senate, who perfectly knew the virtue of this excellent man, he so wrought with them, that he got them to change the order they had given for fighting with *Giralomo*, into that of propounding unto him his departure out of *Genova*, his retiring unto *Montebio* which belonged to him, and pardoning in consideration of him all the Conspirators, provided they continued still in the City. *Pansa* was chosen to make this proposition, which was accepted, and executed instantly. So that the break of day arriving, one would have said, that the blood which was seen spilt on the ground; the bodies of those that had been slain; the houses that had been broken up; and so many other disorders, whereof the marks were evident; had been the work of an invisible hand. No Enemy appeared, all the Tradesmen were in their shops, every man was in his house, and *Genova* was never in a greater tranquillity, at leastwise as we were told afterwards: For as for us, as soon as we understood of the Counts death, we went directly to his Palace to save his dear *Leonora*: *Doria's* interest in *Sophronia* made him go thither with incredible speed; and though he was *Jannetin's* kinsman, yet having never affected him, and been hardly used by *Andrea*, his love met with no very mighty obstacle to overcome. The French Marquis was carried thither by his own generosity, and I by the desire I had to serve the Count in the person of *Leonora*. At such time as we left *Giralomo*, he had still some Soldiers about him, so that believing him to be in safety enough we went to the Counts Palace, fearing some violence would be offered to her; there we met with *Horatio*, come thither as well as we, and at the same instant, with a Gentleman from *Ostobondo*, who after he knew of his brothers death, had gotten with *Baptista Verrin*, *Raphaello Sacco*, and *Vincenzio Calogua*, into the Counts Gally for to fly away; but being moved with compassion for *Leonora*, he sent this Gentleman to will her that she would get her self to be safely conducted to the Port, where she might save her self with him. We being then thus all encountered here together, *Sophronia*, who had heard of our repair thither, left *Leonora* on her bed, and came out unto us; for she rightly imagined, that it may be we had some dismal news to tell, which was not fit for her to know. She presently discerned by our looks the misfortune that was arrived unto us; but it being no time to lament, we arrested our tears and her sighs, and declaring unto her the estate of things, we represented unto her, that we were not to suffer the Count to be outraged in the person of *Leonora*; that her loss was undoubted if she stayed longer in this Palace; that the people peradventure would come and set it on fire; or it may be the Senate would cause it to be razed to the ground; and that in fine it was requisite by flight to avoid outrages worse then death; that *Julio Cibo* her eldest brother hated them all; that it would be glorious for her to make away with a brother of her husbands; and in conclusion, that it was for her to persuade *Leonora* to the taking of this resolution; that for us, we protested unto her, that we would follow her fortune; and that the Counts mother, albeit the cause of his loss, was notwithstanding to be set in a place of safety, for the glory of her son; for fear lest some extraordinary violence should be used against her.

*Sophronia* having mused a while said, She was confident that *Leonora*, if once she came to know the death of the Count, would never think of preserving her life; that the only fear of it had already put her into such a violent despair, as it would be impossible to make her resolve for that which they desired of her, when she should be assured of it. *Doria*, having heard this objection, said, that *Leonora* was to be beguiled, and only told, that the Counts enterprize having succeeded ill, he was retired into his Gally, whither he willed her to repair, having to that purpose sent us for her; and for fear she should come to know the truth of the matter, his mother also was to be beguiled in the same manner.

This advice being well approved of, we entred into *Leonora's* chamber, who no sooner saw us, but she rose up, and with a dismayed countenance and tears in her eyes, she demanded of us, whether the Count were dead? we answered her as we had before resolved; and declaring the business unto her with as many circumstances as we could, to render it the more probable

probable, we so wrought with her, that she believed us, and constantly resolved for her flight. We found not the same facility in the Count's mother; What, said she unto us, doth he, who promised me to vanquish or to dye, prepare himself to fly? Ah! base and inconsiderate, cried she, I will go to find thee out, not to fly away with thee, but to oblige thee once more to fight, and if I cannot do that, I shall at leastwise have the satisfaction of reproaching thee for thy want of courage. This said, she marched foremost, and I advanced to lead her; *Sophronia* took a little casket wherein her sisters jewels were, and unto her *Doria* lent his hand; the French Marquis conducted *Leonora*; as for *Horatio*, he followed alone, being very much grieved to abandon *Hipolita*: But Fortune, who was willing to favor him, so ordered it, that being arrived just before *Doria's* house, we heard people coming in wonderful haste, which without doubt were some of them that fled; finding our selves then in so commodious a place for to let them pass by, we entered into *Doria's* house; and whereas *Hipolita* was exceedingly troubled both for her brother and her Lover, she no sooner heard their two voices, mingled with some womens, but she came down to us, and understanding our design, What, said she to her brother, will you abandon me? I do not abandon you, sister, answered he, but Love and Fortune do snatch me from you. *Hipolita's* mother was dead not long before, so that having nothing to retain her at *Genova*, and not knowing withall what should become of her, she made use of all these reasons to persuade her brother he would permit her not to abandon him, or to speak more truly, not to quit *Horatio*. What, said she unto him, will you have me stay here, that *Andrea* may revenge himself on me, for the injury which he believes he hath received from you? And having lost my mother, and seeing my self forsaken of my brother, shall I abide here without support and comfort? I do not desire you to leave *Sophronia*, but that you will permit me to follow her. *Hipolita* spake this with so much grief, that every one was touched with it. And when as *Horatio* prayed *Sophronia*, that she would oblige *Doria* to consent thereunto, *Doria* embraced his sister with a great deal of affection, and told her, that he was ravished with her generosity.

*Hipolita* having obtained her desire, and we no longer hearing any passing by, we proceeded on in our way towards the Port, where we arrived without any obstacle. *Ottobuono's* Gentleman conducted us to the Count's Gally, where we were received, and *Leonora* put into the Captains Cabin, being told that the Count would come thither to her. The Mother, when she was there, asked of every one, where the Count was? I approached to her, and told her that she should know ere it were long. In the mean time we were no sooner got aboard, but we propounded the sending to *Giralamo*, that he might come to save himself with us. *Verrin* without harkening thereunto, commanded them to steer for *Marseilles*, whereupon all the Slaves betaking them to their Oars, the Gally made from the Port, which was left free and open to the *Turks*, who had abandoned their own Vessel, and taken one of *Doria's* Gallies, named the *Temperance*. They went away in this sort, and could never be overtaken by two Gallies, which were sent after them the next day. The most part of the Gally Slaves having knocked off their Irons, stole all the Arms, and all that they could lay hold of; and getting away, they alone enjoyed the liberty, which the Count would have acquired for himself.

This while, Madam, we remained in the Gally of this illustrious unfortunate man, but with to much grief, as never voyage had so sad a beginning. *Baptista Verrin* was mad to see his enterprize broken; *Vincenzio Calcagna* upbraided him with being the cause of all this mischief; *Raphaello Sacco* repented him for having counselled so unlucky a design; and *Ottobuono*, without testifying his thoughts, continued in a silence, that would not permit us to know what they were. As for the rest of us, although we had all of us misfortunes, which diversly regarded us, yet the death of the Count prevailed over all our other sufferings, and his loss in this occasion made up all our sorrow. In the mean season, *Leonora*, not seeing him, and perceiving the Gally make from the Port, pressed *Sophronia* that she might see him, and hearing her sister make her no precise answer, she of her self knew the misfortune that was happened unto him: And when as we entered into her chamber all at one time, and that she saw him not amongst us, she cried out, and said, *There is no longer doubt but that the Count is dead.* The Count dead! said the Mother with a great deal of precipitation. Yes, Madam, continued *Vincenzio Calcagna*, who was extremely touched with this loss, and dead by your commandment: you enjoyed him to vanquish or to dye, and he hath done both, Madam;

Madam; for he is dead after the death of his Enemy. We were very sorry that this man had delivered the matter so bluntly before the unfortunate *Leonora*, who unable to support so many sorrows at once, swooned in the Arms of *Sophronia*.

As for the *Count's* Mother, she entred into a rage that cannot be represented unto you; the apprehensions of a Mother having re-assumed their place in her soul, she said all that grief, anger, repentance, fury, and despair could make one say. *Oh!* cryed she, *it is I that have layd the Count in his grave! I am thinking of my safety, and making from a place, where it may be I should be punished for the crime I have committed! Ah, no, no, I must be carryed back to Land; I must go and be torn in pieces by an enraged people: I must acquaint them that I am the onely cause of the Conspiracy, and so losing my life by their fury, receive the punishment which I deserve.*

But whil'st this ambitious woman repented her of her violence, and punished her self for her own fault, the unhappy *Leonora* came out of her swoon; she had no sooner opened her eyes, but turning her self to her sister, she demanded of her where the *Count's* body was, and pray'd her that at least-wife they would let her see it. We thought then, to the end her grief might not be renewed another time, that it was best to tell her the truth of the matter, and acquaint her, that being drowned, his body was not in our power. This last circumstance of the *Count's* misfortune, redoubled *Leonora's* affliction. *Could I not at least,* said she with a languishing voyce, *have had the consolation to be inclosed with him in the same Tomb?* scarcely had she ended those words, but suddenly passing from one extremity to another, she rose up with violence, and intreated us that we would leave her on the shore, there to spend her life in seeking for the body of her dear Husband. And when as we resisted her intreaties, she termed us ingrateful, cruel, and insensible; nay she would have rid her self out of our hands, to have gone and cast her self into the Sea; but at length the excess of her grief, and her weakness, made her tumble down again into *Sophronia's* arms, almost without any sense; and after that, as long as we were upon the Sea, we never heard her speak but once onely, which was the next day at night, when as there arose so furious a tempest, as we verily believed we should have suffered shipwrack. *Leonora*, having observed by the cries of the Mariners that we were in danger, seemed to receive some consolation from it; then looking on *Sophronia* and *Hipolita*, whom the fear of death, which they believed to be so near, possessed with strange inquietness; *Do not afflict your selves,* said she unto them, *I am too unhappy to suffer shipwrack, and death will be sure not to succor me.*

But not to weary you with so doleful a relation, I shall tell you in few words, that the tempest redoubled in such sort, that it drove us to *Albengua*, where *Leonora* having a house, was gone thither a good while before. We had no sooner cast anchor, but having been advertised of the mishap of her dear friends, she came to visit them, and would so far take part with them in their afflictions, that when we had furnished our selves with another Vessel at *Albengua*, and were putting forth again to Sea, she would not abandon them. But I forget that it is not yet time to speak of our departure from *Albengua*; you shall understand then that at such time as we arrived there, *Leonora* suffered her self to be carried whither soever one would, and without so much as demanding where we were, so exceedingly was her Soul possess'd with sorrow. As for the *Counts* mother, the distemper whereinto she had put her self with her crying, lamentations, and repentance, brought her to so violent a fever, as refusing all kind of remedies she dyed a little after. And to make an end of telling you the whole sequel of the *Counts* Conspiracy, you are to understand that which we learned at *Albengua*, where we carry'd a good while, which is, that after we parted from *Genova*, and that *Giralomo* was retired to *Montobio*, the *Count's* body was found; and dead as he was, remained still a terror to his Enemies. *Andrea* would not suffer him to be expos'd to the view of the people, for fear lest so deplorable an object should cause some sedition, and the love which was born to him should renew the passed disorders.

In the mean time *Ottobuono* took our Gally, and left us at *Albengua*, that he might with the more speed get to *Marseilles*; *Baptista Verrin*, and his two friends, abandoned us also, and putting themselves into *Montobio*, the Senate, having elected a Duke, retracted the abolition they had given to the Conspirators. And for that effect, they confiscated all the *Count's* Estate, declared his two Brothers Rebels to the Republique, and then sent *Pansa* to perswade *Giralomo* to render up *Montobio*, where he had fortified himself. But *Giralomo*, who by nature



nature was boisterous, answered him as if he had a minde to augment the suspicion which they had of him, that he held that place in the name of a Prince, more mighty then the Senate, meaning in this occasion the King of *France*, unto whom the illustrious family of the *Counts of Lavagna*, have always been much affected. This answer exasperated things in such sort, as shortly after *Montebio* was besieged by *Augustino Spinola*, on whom this employment was conferred, and so hardly layd unto, that *Baptista Verrin* counsell'd *Giralomo* to render at discretion, which he instantly did. But within a while *Baptista Verrin* had cause to repent him of his bad counsel; for *Andrea Doria*, seeing the Senate inclined to clemency, came thither in person, and spake with so much vehemency, as he caus'd them to change their mindes, and carry'd matters to their uttermost violence, by making them to be put to death against the publique sence.

Behold, Madam, what the deplorable fortune of the *Count* hath been; as for the rest of us, after we had taken another Vessel at *Albengua*, and being put again to Sea would have directed our course for *Marseilles*, our navigation was not more prosperous this second time then formerly it had been; for we were not far from the Port, when as the tempest began again with such fury, as during six days and six nights we were continually in expectation of being cast away. At length a calm having succeeded the storm, we came to discover Land; but we were mightily surprized, when as our Pilot assured us, that that which we saw was the City of *Marocco*. Our Vessel was so bruised, as we resolv'd to land there; and this design being executed, the King of *Marocco* received us with a great deal of courtesie. Now for that which arriv'd unto us there, and for that which brought us to *Constantinople*, I think it will be requisite to refer the relation thereof to another time: And whereas the beautiful *Hipolita* and *Sophronia* have a greater share in it then I, you shall, if you please, learn the sequel of our fortune from their mouths.

It is without doubt very deplorable, said *Isabella*, and I can assure you, that I have not felt that motion in my heart, which they say is so ordinary with every one, and causes us in some sort to be comforted for our miseries, when we see others infortunate as well as our selves; but contrarily I finde my sorrow augmented thereby. That proceeds from your generosity, said *Sophronia* unto her, but do not lament the *Count* so much, as not to reserve some sighs for my sister, whom we have lost as well as he, with the grief she took for his death. The Princess hereupon redoubled her complaints, which had not finished so soon, if a *Capigibassi* had not come and told her, that it was time to return to the old *Serraglio*, because the gates thereof were always us'd to be shut somewhat early. *Isabella* rose up blushing, and without any resistance, parted somewhat unwillingly from her dear friends, promising to come and see them again the next day: Howbeit she would needs conduct these three fair persons to their lodging first, for they would at no hand lie asunder in several chambers. And after that she had rendred them this civility whether they would or no; and after that *Doria*, *Horatio*, and *Alphonso* had waited upon her and *Emilia* to her Charet, she returned to the old *Serraglio* with the same magnificence, as she came from thence.

МИНАРЕ

# IBRAHIM:

## OR, THE

# ILLUSTRIOUS

# BASSA.

### The Fourth Part.

#### *The First Book.*

**I***sabella* was no sooner awake the next day, but the Slave, which *Roxellana* had suborned, came and told her from the *Grand Signior*, that at length his care had not been in vain; that after a very exact search, the Slave, whose liberty she had desired, had been found out, and sent immediately to *Ibrahim's* Palace unto his other friends; and that the *Sultan* intreated she would be pleased he might come and visit her. *Isabella* not daring to refuse a favor unto a Prince, who accorded her so many, answered, that the *Sultan* did her too much honor, and how she was very glad that in coming to visit her he gave her the opportunity to thank him for the new obligation wherein she stood engaged unto him. This Slave then left the Princess, and went unto *Soliman*, to whom, according to the directions she had for it, she amplified *Isabella's* civilities, and with that which she delivered, persuaded him, that the Princess might be acquainted, without any great offence, with the passion he was in for her. In this opinion he went to the old *Serraglio*, with a determination to use some artifice to keep her from going so often to visit her friends. In the mean time *Isabella* had used such diligence in making her self ready, as she had leisure to go, before *Soliman* repaired to her lodging, and intreat the *Sultana Aferia*, that she would be with her when as the *Grand Signior* should come to see her, as he had sent her word he would, imagining that her presence might stop him from saying any thing to her that would offend her, if it were so that he had a mind thereunto. *Aferia*, who loved *Isabella*, would by no means deny her, so that when the *Sultan* arrived there, he found them both together; yet durst he not testify how much he was displeased at it, but contrarily magnified *Aferia's* good hap, in that she could always be with her; commended her for the care she had taken to make her self agreeable to her; thanked *Isabella* for the affection she shewed her; and after a long complement, which still gave her occasion to increase her suspicions, he suffered her at length to render him thanks for the *French* Maquets his liberty, and to crave his permission for her to go and rejoyce her self with her dear friends.



*Soliman* blusht at this request, and after he had stood a pretty while silent, he assured her that she might absolutely do whatsoever she pleased: Nevertheless if she would permit him to speak freely in this occasion, he would confess unto her, that he should be glad she would not go forth every day, because the people might at length find something to say, upon seeing so extraordinary a liberty of going in and out of the *Serraglio*; that the *Sultana* Queen, who might do so when she would, seldom or never made use of that liberty: Wherefore he prayed her to have some regard to the waywardness of the people, who peradventure might fall into some sedition, wherein her friends might be involved; that he did not desire she should not go thither any more, but only that she should not go every particular day; howsoever he assured her that she might do as she pleased, chusing rather to expose his Empire to all things, then to expose himself to the hazard of her displeasure by constraining her in any thing. *Isabella* answered as she ought to so obliging a discourse, howbeit she requested the *Sultan* to permit her to visit them for two or three days more together, because she had an extream desire to understand all their adventures, and after that she promised his Highness she would not see them so often. The *Sultan*, who was willing to win the heart of *Isabella*, and to vanquish her rather with courtesie then with violence, consented to her request, and the more to comply with her also, he went away from her sooner then he had determined, to give her the longer time for the visiting of her friends; unto whom likewise for a greater demonstration of his favor unto her, he sent most magnificent presents, as soon as he was returned to his *Serraglio*.

In the mean time *Isabella*, after she had given thanks to the *Sultana Asteria* for her assistance, and had intreated her to continue it to her, entred into a Charet with *Emilia*, and went unto *Ibrahim's* Palace, where she found a great deal of joy for the return of the *French* Marquess, who in his particular was not a little glad to learn from his friends the happy encounter they had made of *Isabella*, which had caused both their liberty and his. He no sooner knew then that she was arrived, but he descended in all haste to go and receive her: And whereas the change of places, misfortune, and slavery, had brought none to his humor, he scarcely saw her appear before he advanced to kiss her robe; I do not know, Madam, said he unto her, whether I ought rather to give you thanks for breaking my chains here in *Constantinople*, or to complain of you for that you are going to give me others in making me see *Emilia* again. *Isabella* not able sufficiently to admire the tranquillity of the Marquess his mind; I should not have believed, answered she him smiling, that ever I could have envied you, but I acknowledge to you now, that I would willingly be almost of your humor, for *in fine*, be it virtue or insensibility, you are ever happy. The Marquess was going to answer her, but the arrival of *Sopronia*, *Hipolita*, and *Leonida*, of *Horatio*, *Doria*, and *Alphonso*, kept him from it, whereof he was not sorry, to the end he might make a complement in particular to *Emilia*, who without doubt was somewhat joyful to see the Marquess; for although she had no great affection for him, because she was not capable of it, yet did she infinitely esteem of him, and bore a great deal of good-will to his person.

After this fair Troop had used many civilities to one another, they entred all into *Ibrahim's* chamber, where *Isabella*, to husband the time which she had to be with a company, that was so agreeable to her, desired them to acquaint her with the sequel of their misfortunes. The Marquess, beginning first to speak, said, that for his part he had none but good fortunes to relate unto her since his coming to *Constantinople*. Therefore, said the Princess, they shall be kept for the last, as indeed it is fittest that I should understand things in order as they fell out. *Hipolita* seeing it was but reason, intreated her brother *Doria*, that he would take the pains to do it, upon condition nevertheless that he should spare her in some parts of his relation, by omitting certain things, which he called Caprichioes, and which she was perswaded was an effect of sovereign reason. *Doria* accepted of this commission, but howsoever he told his sister, that he would be a true Historian, and since she believed that Reason always ruled her thoughts, she needed not to fear they should be known. *Isabella* apprehending that this dispute would make *Doria* lose time, prayed him not to harken to *Hipolita*, who questionless could not take it ill, that any thing should be known which she had done. *Doria*, according to the Princess's desire, without giving any further ear to his sister, began to speak thus, as soon as ever this fair Troop was set.

*The History of HIPOLITA, SOPHRONIA, and LEONIDA.*

I Will not renew *Sophronia's* sorrow in particularizing unto you the loss of *Leonora*, since it will suffice me to tell you, that her end had no other cause but her affliction; and that her destiny was such, as dying on the main Sea, we were constrained to give her the same Tomb, which the injustice of Fortune had given her illustrious husband: But to get away speedily from so lamentable an adventure, you shall understand, that we were no sooner arrived at *Marocco*, but we lost all that the Tempest had left us, that is to say, the wreck of the Vessel and our liberty. For whereas they knew us at the first sight to be Christians, hardly had we cast anchor when as they made us Slaves. Indeed it is true, that in the beginning our servitude was easie enough; for as our good Fortune would have it, the Princess *Mariama*, sister to King *Abdalla*, who reigns at *Marocco*, passed accidentally along by the Port when as we were making into it; and this Princess seeing our ship without sails, without rudder, the tackle torn, the sail-yards broken, and every part of it almost battered in pieces, she caused the Charet, wherein she was, to stay, that she might see us land, and know of what Nation we were: for the Tempest had left our Vessel no marks, whereby it might be known. When as we came near the Port, whither the wind, rather than the skill of the Pilot, conducted us, there was not one in the Ship which got not up on the deck to behold this Land, where we hoped, if we did not find a refuge, at leastwise we should escape casting away: So that the Princess *Mariama*, having observed women amongst us, redoubled her curiosity and compassion much the more. As soon as ever we touched Land, then she commanded us to be brought unto her, that she her self might know who we were, and what our fortune had been. This order having been observed, they led us before this Princess; and verily this first encounter was an happy presage for us, and an extream consolation for the beautiful *Sophronia*, *Leonida*, and *Hipolita*; for this Princess hath so much majesty and sweetness, as she caused in us both a great deal of respect, and a great deal of hope. And whereas she had noted by our apparel that we were of *Italy*, and not understanding that Tongue, she would not stand to send for an Interpreter, but thought that some of us peradventure could speak *Spanish*, which she understood perfectly, and is common enough throughout all the Kingdoms of *Fez*, *Tunis*, and *Marocco*, by reason of the neighborhood of *Spain* with this part of *Affrica*, and of the Wars and Commerce, which in former times they have had one with another, especially before the Kings of *Granado*, who were originally Moors, were subdued by *Ferdinando* and *Isabella*. And truly she was not deceived in her conjecture, for there was not any of us but spake it well, or at leastwise could make our selves be understood in it.

When as this Princess saw that her design had succeeded, she testified as much joy for it as we did; and having demanded of us whither we were going, of whence we were, and in what place we had been taken with the Tempest? we told her all things as they had past, without acquainting her nevertheless with the occasion that had caused us to part from *Genova*, and without telling her our names, and falling at her feet we besought her to protect us; for by the respect which was rendred to her, and by her train, we believed she was Queen of *Marocco*. This excellent Princess made us rise up with a great deal of courtesie; and being touched with the charms of those whom we conducted, she took an affection to us, and resolved to serve us as much as she could. But whereas she was willing to observe in all things the respect which she owed to the King her brother, she took up *Sophronia*, *Leonida*, and my sister, into the Charet to her, and commanding us to follow her, she willed some of the Guard that attended upon her, to lend us their horses. We went in this manner to *Abdalla's* Palace, whom we found alone with his Favorite, called *Ali-Ben Ducar*, a man of a great spirit, but cruel and ambitious. As soon as *Mariama* appeared, and that the King saw her followed by so many unknown persons, and chiefly of three fair women (if my sister can suffer me to put her in that number) he was so surprized therewith, that advancing presently towards her, he said to her in her language, (as *Mariama* recounted unto us afterwards,) What adventure is befallen you? from what War are you come? what Conquest have you made? and by what good hap have you met with so fair a Troop? The Princess *Mariama*, who had so much goodness, as that she would not be suspected of us, said unto him in *Spanish*, (for he understood it as well as she,) that Fortune having put so many afflicted

persons into her hands, she came to crave permission of him, that she might take care of them, protect them, and restore them to their liberty.

*Aly*, who understood this Tongue, and that all the time of *Mariama's* discourse had eyed *Hipolita*, as well as *Abdalla*, with a great deal of attention, and it may be already with a great deal of love, approached and said in *Spanish*, that one must needs be very inhumane, which would not protect such beautiful persons; but, continued he, speaking to *Mariama* in her natural Tongue, you may not, Madam, deprive these three fair creatures, of the honor of being your Slaves; Liberty cannot be so happy to them as this servitude, and you will be cruel to them in using them otherwise. *Aly* hath reason, replied the King in his language, and to content you and them to, I permit you to take care of them, and to protect them; and I do withall conjure you to retain them in your service. You know that all the Christians are our Enemies, so that to set them at liberty, when we have them in our hands, were to violate our Religion, and to infringe our Laws, wherefore accept of these fair strangers for your Slaves: But whereas their beauty deserves a gentler usage than others, give them no other, said he smiling, but cords of silk to retain them. My Lord, answered *Mariama*, the greatest of all good things is Liberty, and by consequence the greatest of all evils is servitude; there are no chains that are not heavy, and the less they be, the more do they straiten him that wears them; *In fine*, my Lord, either they do load him, or they do wring him, and both the one and the other is always grievous.

It was in this sort, Madam, that the Princess *Mariama* spake to obtain our liberty; and that which carried her yet more to oblige us, was, because *Aly*, whom she extremely hated, had at first opposed our deliverance with speeches of gallantry. But at length, seeing her persist too much in her demand, he by an artificial discourse coloured the matter with the publique good, and gave the King a pretext to follow his inclination, by obliging *Mariama* to retain these three fair Slaves in her service. It being so resolved then, the King used them with a great deal of civility, and having demanded of them what we were unto them? they answered, that we were their brothers, and besought him that we might not be separated from them. As for us, seeing we might be understood, we humbly requested the King to intreat us as free men; and to consider that we had been driven into *Morocco* by a Tempest; that howsoever if he would notwithstanding have a ransom of us, we desired he would be pleased to set it down, to the end we might seek out the means to satisfy him. But thereunto he answered no otherwise, but that the next day we should receive his pleasure; and instantly we were conducted to a lodging, which was in the outward Court of the Palace, where we had a Guard set upon us. In the mean time the Princess *Mariama*, being moved with the tears and intreaties of these three afflicted ones, permitted them to remain with us, on condition that they should spend three or four hours of the day at her lodging, praying them not to be grieved, and to hope for all things from her assistance.

But, Madam, that you may the better comprehend the sequel of our History, I am to relate unto you a part of *Mariama's*, and acquaint you in what estate the Court of *Morocco* was at that time. I will not stand for all that to tell you by what Artifices, two *Xeriffes*, that is to say amongst them, two holy men, and descended of the race of their Prophet *Mahomet*, invaded the two Kingdoms of *Morocco* and *Taradant*; but I will only tell you, that these two *Xeriffes*, though they were brothers, could not content themselves with the partition they had made of their Conquests; and after many breaches of promise on either side, they came at last to Arms. Whilst they were in good terms together, *Hamet*, who was the eldest, and to whom the Kingdom of *Morocco* was fallen for his share, had married *Mariama*, daughter to *Mahomet* his brother, King of *Sus* or *Taradant*, to *Muley Zidan*, the eldest of his sons; so that when the War began between these two brothers, the fair and virtuous *Mariama* found her self on the party of her fathers enemy; and whatsoever she could do, it was impossible for her to make them change their resolution. Seeing then that her prayers, her tears, and persuasions were all to no purpose with her father-in-law *Hamet*, and that *Muley Zidan*, her husband, told her, how he could not but follow him in this War, who had given him birth; that he was not an enemy to *Mahomet*, but only an obedient son; that it was not for children to ask who were the enemies of those to whom they owed their lives, but only to hazard them against whomsoever they were, for the conservation of the lives of them, who had given them theirs. This wise Princess seeing, I say, things in this estate, abode in



in *Marocco*, and without making vows for the victory, either of the one or the other, she wished that their Arms would fall out of their hands, and that Reason might be stronger in them than ambition. But things went not after this sort; for after many encounters, wherein the Kings of *Marocco*, and *Taradant*, had each in their turn had the better and the worse, the chance of war being fallen in the end on *Hamet*, she saw *Muley Zidan* her Husband return almost alone of all his whole Army, which had been utterly defeated, and acquaint her with tears in his eyes, that his Father, and a Brother which he had, named *Muley Buacon*, were prisoners in the hands of *Mahomet*. This vertuous Princess hearing this news, had generosity enough to weep for the victories of her Father; and when as she saw that her Husband, after he had assembled together all the *Alfaquis*, Cavaliers, and Captains that were in *Marocco* to advise on that which might be done, found out no expedient which could be commodious for him, she presented her self unto the Council, and demanded the permission to go and cast her self at the feet of *Mahomet* her Father, to endeavor the effecting of a peace; or to offer her self, and three children she had, for the ransom of *Hamet*; or to obtain at least that she might serve him during his captivity, if her tears could not move her Father's heart.

So generous a proposition was approved of by the whole Assembly; and *Muley Zidan* went himself to conduct his wife and his children forth of the Gates of the City; yet was he in some trouble to part with her, out of the fear he was in, lest *Mahomet*, knowing how ardently she was beloved of him, should retain her without rendering up his Father, and without harkening to peace. But she assured him, that when as she could no longer be useful to her Father-in-law, nothing but death alone should keep her from returning back to him again. The voyage of this sage Princess was not fruitless; and albeit that her Father was one of the greatest Politicians in the World, and one of the most ambitious Princes on the Earth, yet her Reasons, her Tears, and her Prayers drew him to grant her the liberty of *Hamet* and *Muley Buacon*, and by a Treaty, as reasonable as if *Hamet* had not been a prisoner, they contracted a peace which seemed inviolable.

But scarcely was *Mariama* re-entred into *Marocco* as it were in triumph, after she had brought the King thither again; scarcely had *Muley Zidan* her Husband rendred her thanks for so brave an action, but that *Hamet* began to assemble new forces, and to say, that whatsoever he had promised in prison, was not to be kept; and for that effect he went out of *Marocco* to go and make new Levies himself; but at this time the victory fell to the juster side. For during *Hamet*'s absence, *Mahomet* having been advertised of his designs, came to *Marocco*, and made himself Master of the City, partly by force, and partly also by the revolt of some, who could not approve of *Hamet*'s changings: So that when he thought to return to *Marocco*, with *Muley Zidan*, who had followed after him with an intent to divert him from the design he had to make war, he understood that he was a King without a Kingdom; and that the people, who ever follow the victorious party, had acknowledged *Mahomet* for King of *Marocco*. This Prince was so mightily stricken with this adventure, that abandoning all things he retired to one, named *Cidy Ben Ceey*, who lived solitarily in the Mountains, and past amongst them for a very great and holy person. As for *Muley Zidan*, he retired to the King of *Fez* their confederate.

In the mean time, *Mariama*, who was in the City when it was taken, carried by her ordinary generosity, and fearing lest she should have been suspected for contributing somewhat thereunto, cast her self at her Father's feet to obtain leave of him to follow the unfortunate party. And when as he refused her, she suborned one of the Captains that guarded the gates, and accompanied with two women, and some of her servants, she got out one night, and went to *Cidy Ben Ceey*'s retirement. This action so touched *Mahomet*'s heart, as it carried him once again to treat with his Brother, but it was upon condition, that he should not re-enter into *Marocco*, because he had promised so much to the inhabitants, who feared to be ill-intreated by him.

But not to prolong this discourse any further, you shall understand that *Hamet* recommenced the War four or five times, and that so often *Mariama* obtained his liberty, and always followed his and her Husband's fortune. Howbeit in the end *Mahomet*, after he had conquered the Kingdom of *Fez*, took him in the last War, and committed him to close prison, with four of his children, and three of *Mariama*'s, because he accused *Muley Zidan* her Husband,

Husband, for having succored the King of *Fez*, whilst he made war upon him : And the unhappy *Zidan* having been taken, lost his life, by the command of him, whose daughter he had married. True indeed it is, that it was by the counsel of *Aly*, who afterwards was *Abdalla's* favorite, and in the absence of *Mariama*, who at that time was not with her Father. In fine, not to aggravate the sorrow of this excellent Princess, *Mahomet* dyed a little while after, and *Abdalla* the eldest of his children succeeded him ; having ordained by his Testament, that after him the second of his sons should succeed, and in order all his other brothers, without any pretence to be made by any of *Abdalla's* children to the Crowns of *Marocco*, *Fez*, and *Taradant*, as long as their Uncles lived. At such time as *Mahomet* dyed, *Abdalla* was not at *Marocco*, so that when the news of his death arrived there, *Aly*, who commanded in the City, and was *Viser* of the Kingdom, which is the next dignity to the King, fearing lest the people should revolt, and should draw *Hamet* and *Mariama's* children out of prison, to set them on the Throne which appertained to them, carried by an inconsiderate zeal, and an extream cruelty, caused the unfortunate *Hamet*, and his children, together with *Mariama's*, to be put to death, for the affuring of the Crown to *Abdalla*, whose favorite he would be, as he had been *Mahomet's*. And truly it was not hard for him to be so ; for whereas this man was very great in riches, most mighty in friends, of an extraordinary courage, having a great deal of prudence and wit, and much more ambition, there would have been folly, and no little hazard, for whomsoever would have enterprized to disoblige him.

*Abdalla*, though grieved with that which *Aly* had done, yet named it an excess of zeal and affection, rather than inhumanity ; and continuing him in his Commands, committed unto him almost the whole sway of his Kingdoms. But in some sort to repair this cruelty, he took care to dry up the tears of the Princess *Mariama*, inforced her to return to the Court, made her to be revered as the Queen of all his States, would have perswaded her that *Aly* was not altogether culpable of the death of *Hamet* and her children, and would exact no other thing of her, but to live in good terms with *Aly*. This Princess, who was no less prudent than virtuous, made as if she believed that which the King her Brother told her, albeit in her heart she bare an irreconcilable hatred to *Aly*. And indeed she lived so well with him, without doing any thing for all that unworthy of her great minde, as it was believed, that the consideration of her Brother, and her own virtue, had made her forget, that *Aly* had counselled the death of her Husband, and had caused her Father-in-law, and her children to be killed. But you shall perceive by the sequel of this History, that she had other manner of designs.

Behold then, Madam, the estate wherein the Court of *Marocco* was at such time as we were driven thither by tempest. *Abdalla* was peaceable in his Estates, the Princess *Mariama* was very powerful with him, and *Aly* shared with her in *Abdalla's* heart. I think that after this you will be less marvel, when you shall come to know that this virtuous Princess set her self so strongly and so readily to protect us, in regard she was carryed thereunto, both by her own virtue, and the hate she bare to *Aly*, as you shall understand by the sequel of this discourse. But to come to that which touches us directly, I am to tell you, that whether *Sophronia's* extream affliction had rendered her eyes less powerful than they used to be, or *Leonida's* negligence had taken off some of her charms, or that my sister, having a complexion not so clear as her fellows, was the more suitable to that of the Country, it was she that made *Abdalla* and *Aly* her Slaves ; and who by consequence was the cause that we were so too.

You have promised, said *Horatio* interrupting him, to be a faithful Historian ; wherefore, without digressing from your subject, relate onely the effects of *Hipolita's* beauty, and not establish your self the judg thereof. The Marquis could not forbear laughing at this discourse, no more then *Sophronia* and *Leonida*, nor *Hipolita* blushing, and all out of different apprehensions : but at length after some civilities had past betwixt them, *Doria* continued his discourse in this sort. *Hipolita* then having seemed beautiful, both to the King, and to his Favorite, they had both of them a design not to give liberty to a person, who had already somewhat engaged theirs : But whereas this first sense of love was not yet very strong in their soul, they said nothing of it to one another, and onely resolved together, that we should be retained as Slaves ; but whereas ill fortune had brought us to *Marocco*, and that we were not  
their

their Enemies, but because we were Christians, therefore we should be treated very gently, yea and hope given us that in time we might obtain our liberty. This resolution taken, all our Soldiers and Mariners were the next day committed to safe custody, without any other ill usage offered unto them; and for us, they contented themselves with leaving us under the guard they had formerly assigned us, with this difference nevertheless, that we were separated from *Sophonisa*, *Leonida*, and *Hipolita*; for it was *Abdalla's* absolute pleasure, that they should abide in the service of the Princess *Mariama*, and that they should lie in her lodgings; but with this grace for us, that we should be permitted to go sometimes and see them, or they to come and visit us. This extraordinary favor having been granted to us, against the custom of the Country, by the goodness of *Mariama*, whom these new Slaves always found ready to render them all kinde of good offices. It is certain that this separation was grievous unto us, and seeing the terms wherein we stood, we were almost sorry that we had not suffered shipwrack, at least-wise me-thought I observed such like apprehensions in the mindes of *Horatio* and *Alphonso*: But as for the Marquis, it is to be spoken for his glory, that never man was so soon comforted as he, and I was not a little surprized, to hear him say laughing, a quarter of an hour after we were returned from conducting the persons, who were so deere unto us, to the Princess *Mariama's* lodgings, that the *Affricans* Love could tell how to use his bow better, then he of *Europe*; it being very true, said he, that he had never been so suddenly stricken to the heart, as he had lately been by the charms of a sister of the Princess *Mariama*, who was called *Lela Mahabit*, onely with seeing her at a window.

For me, said the Marquis interrupting him, who had neither Sister nor Mistress to grieve for, nor was afflicted but out of a sense of friendship, I am not to be blamed, if, to render my self more like unto those with whom I conversed, I suffered my self to be surprized with the passion which possessed their Soules. If I be always interrupted in this manner, said *Doria*, it will be hard for me to relate this day that which you desire to know of me. *Isabella*, finding that *Doria* had Reason, made all the company pass their word that they would not speak any more until he had ended their History; so that every one keeping silence, and *Isabella* having renewed her attention, *Doria* prosecuted his discourse in this sort.

These new Slaves were no sooner come to the Princess *Mariama's* lodgings, but *Abdalla*, who visited them very often, repaired thither, accompanied with *Aly*. And whereas he found her with them, and that therefore they would out of respect have withdrawn, he would not permit it, telling them that the name of Slave, which he had imposed upon them, was rather an artifice to retain them about the Princess his sister, then a design to keep them in servitude. This complement was seconded by another which *Aly* used to them, and with a sincere protestation made to them by *Mariama* for the treating of them as her sisters, rather then as her Slaves. This second view yet more augmented the love, which the King of *Marocco* and *Aly* already bore to *Hipolita*; and whereas *Aly* was cunning and dextrous, and had out of a sense of ambition for a long time before taken great care to observe all *Abdalla's* motions, he quickly perceived that the beauty of *Hipolita* had touched his heart, and that his Master was his Rival. And whereas he knew very well that Love, no more then Royalty, endures not any companion, he resolved to conceal from the King the design which he had in his head. It was not long, before his suspicions were fully cleared; for *Abdalla* being become passionately in love, and fearing lest if he should talk too often with *Hipolita*, his sister, to whom he carried a great respect, would come to know his intentions, he opened his heart wholly to *Aly*, discovered his passion unto him, conjured him to finde out the means to acquaint her with it, who had caused it. *Aly*, as we understood afterwards, testified a great deal of joy unto him, for that he being fallen in love, as he said, with one of those Slaves, he had been so happy as not to prove his Rival. The King demanded of him then, whether it were so that he loved any of them? and the other answered him with a false confidence, that *Leonida* had touched his heart. That which obliged him to this lye, was his belief, that by this mean the King would never be jealous of him, nor would fear his falling in love with *Hipolita*, being perswaded that his affection was engaged otherwhere; and indeed the matter fell out as he imagined. The King gave him the conduct of his Love, as well as that of his Estates; commanded him always to follow him whensoever he went to the Princess *Mariama*; and not to lose any occasion of speaking to *Hipolita* concerning him.

In the mean time, as if Fortune would give a particular persecution to each of these three  
fair



fair Slaves, a younger Brother of *Abdalla's*, named *Abdelcadar*, became desperately in love with *Sophronia*. For the rest of us, except it were the Marquis, we had no new passion; and mishap in this encounter, appeared not to us at first, but in the semblance of good fortune. The King sent to visit us with presents, and many times made us come to his lodgings for to entertain him. *Aly* resorted to us himself, and assured us of his protection: We had also the liberty to see and speak with our sisters, or to say better, our Mistresses; for in these occasions, love always prevailed over friendship.

*In fine*, the greatest of our inquietnesses was, that we could not foresee the end of our present felicities, nor divine wherefore they treated us so favorably, and yet would not deliver us. Howbeit we were not long without discovering it, for the King's and *Aly's* love still augmenting, whereas gallantry seems to be natural to all the *Moors*, they were willing to restore *Hipolita* to her former joy, before they would speak to her of their passion. For notwithstanding all the caresses which these fair maids received from the Princess *Mariama*, and the affection which they carried to her, yet melancholy appeared still in all their discourses, and in all their actions: So that to delight them, there were nothing but publique feasts, turneys, balls, and rejoycings. But in all these encounters *Aly* so carried the matter, as all the parties, whereof he was the Head, were, both braver, and more magnificent, then that of others, without the Kings ever suspecting any thing of his true intent, because his minde was prepossessed with the opinion, that it was *Leonida* he was in love withall, and not *Hipolita*. And surely he should have been very melancholique, that could not have taken pleasure in these assemblies; it being certain, that nothing is seen which is more agreeable even in *Europe*, especially for dancing. For whereas, since the desolation of *Granado*, many persons of quality retired to *Fez*, *Tunis*, and *Marocco*, though the remembrance of their misfortunes ought to have made them renounce all manner of delights, yet their desire to please *Abdalla* who protected them, caused them to be present at all these feasts. And truly I do not marvel, if the *Spaniards* in conquering their Kingdom, though they be conquerors severe enough, have not forbore taking some of their gallantries, chiefly that dance, called *Sarabanda*: But it must be acknowledged that they are but bad imitators of them, no more then we, who have taken it from the *Spaniards*; it being most certain that they dance it in a manner wherein there is so much art and grace, as we come nothing near it. And whereas out of a particular favor we were present at all these feasts, I remember one amongst the rest, wherein the Marquis made an end of losing his liberty by a *Sarabanda*, which the Princess *Lela Mahabit* danced. For whereas all the features of her face were excellent, her eyes sparkling and passionate, her shape advantageous and comely, her carriage free and majestic, although the colour of her skin was not very agreeable, yet her whole person together appeared infinitely pleasing in this Assembly, where she danced a *Sarabanda* with a negligence so full of charms, with so graceful a disposition, and so gallant and amorous an air, as the Marquis was in a minde solemnly to renounce his ordinary humor, and become constant for this Princess.

And to testify unto you, how great an impression she made in his heart, I only can tell you, that in four days the Marquis, who was desirous to transform himself into the person beloved as much as possibly he could, learned this dance so miraculously, that having demanded permission of *Aly* to intermingle himself amongst a Troop of *Granadins*, who were to dance disguised in one of these Assemblies, he charmed all the company in such sort, as the Princess *Lela Mahabit*, who was an equitable Judge of such like things, would needs know who he was: But she was much amazed, when as she perceived that he was not a *Granadin*, but one of the favorite Slaves, for so we were called; *Sophronia*, *Leonida*, and *Hipolita* were no less then she, to see that they had admired him without knowing him, never dreaming it should be he, though they discerned him not amongst us. In the mean time this adventure was not displeasing to her, for after that, there past not an Assembly (and there was one almost every day) wherein he spake not to her, wherein he danced not before her, and wherein with his address, and accustomed confidence, he gave her not some mark of his affection, yet without passing those bounds of respect which he owed to her. But whereas all these Feasts were made upon design, the King solicited *Aly* to speak to *Hipolita* of his love, which he did soon after, but in such a manner, as seemed at first sight infinitely to oblige my sister: For after a reasonable long discourse he besought her to consider what he owed to the King his Master, to the end that afterwards she might receive that which he was going to say to her, as a pure  
effect

effect of his obedience to *Abdalla*, and not as a matter he approved of. He told her then, that he had such a particular esteem of her, as he would rather expose himself to the hazard of losing his life and his fortune, then to that of displeasing her.

*In fine*, after a preparation long enough, and when as he believed that he had given sufficient good impressions of his virtue to *Hipolita*, he told her that her beauty had touched the heart of *Abdalla*, and that he had commanded him to acquaint her with his love; but, said he unto her with a seeming sincerity, whereas you can never be but his Slave, Heaven shield me from contributing ought to so bad a design; contrarily, I will do my uttermost to hinder such a misfortune; and that you may furnish me with means to serve you, make known to the King, added he, if he happens to speak with you, that I have acquitted my self of the commission which he gave me; in the mean time assure your self that there is not any thing which I will not undertake for your service.

*Hipolita* was strangely surprized with this discourse, for coming to consider all *Abdalla's* liberalities, and the manner wherein he had lived with her for a good while before, she made no question but that *Aly's* discourse was true. Nevertheless, whereas she is naturally suspicious and mistrustful, she doubted of *Aly's* sincerity in some things; howbeit she answered civilly enough to the offers he had made her; but for so much as regarded the Kings love, she spake to him with so much firmness, as he seemed to be very blank at it. It was not because he desired she should accept of *Abdalla's* love, but seeing in what manner she refused the Kings affection, he feared lest when he should come to discover his own, he should be worse intreated. And whereas *Hipolita* perceived his unquietness; for what reason, said she unto him, are you afflicted to see me resolved to oppose my self with all my power against an affection which you seem not to approve of? It is, answered *Aly*, with as much cunning as malice, because knowing by your discourse, how much that which I have used to you hath troubled your mind, I cannot chuse but grieve for that the King hath pick'd out to persecute you, the only man in the world that honors you most: But believe, fair *Hipolita*, continued he, that this unjust love touches me as much as you, and that there is not any thing which I will not do to deliver you from it. After this *Aly* quitted her, and left her in such an unquietness, as the like was scarcely ever heard of. Not only the Kings affection afflicted her; not only the sadness, which she had observed in *Aly's* face, troubled her; not only the uncertainty wherein she was, whether she should discover *Abdalla's* love to the Princess *Mariama*, disquieted her; but an odd and altogether extraordinary jealousy put her mind upon the rack. She did not complain of *Horatio's* looking on any other person; she did not accuse him of infidelity; but she was jealous because he was not jealous: For when as *Aly* talked to her, she had marked how *Horatio's* eyes were still fixed on her, and albeit he had seen that man entertain her a long time, yet had he not appeared the more unquiet for it. And as it is the custom of passionate persons to aggravate things, according to the apprehensions which they have, so *Hipolita* had the injustice to believe, that her Lover must needs perceive the Kings love, which she her self had not known. If he loved me ardently, said she (for she declared it unto us afterwards) the fear of losing me would have made him fear all things; he would have taken notice of the Kings civilities; his liberalities would have been suspected unto him; I should have seen some unquietness in his eyes, when as *Aly* talked so earnestly to me: *in fine*, concluded she in her heart, either he loves me not, or he loves me but a little; and if he loves me but a little, he loves me not at all, since love never endures any mediocrity.

Whilst she reasoned in this manner, *Aly*, who desired to persuade the King that he was in love with *Leonida*, took great care that notice might be taken how she was pleasing to him. And whereas *Alphonso* hath not by nature so quiet a mind as *Horatio*, he seemed to us almost as much troubled as *Hipolita*, though it were in a different manner. He was not jealous of *Leonida*, but he was vexed to think that *Aly* was amorous of her. He did not fear that she would be unfaithful to him, but he was angry that another was passionate for her; it being his humor, as I conceive, that the person whom he loves should never see any but him, nor should be seen of any but him. As for me, that am of a contrary mind; that would have all the Earth raise up altars to my Mistress; that cannot be jealous no more than *Horatio*; that places all my felicity in having Rivals, to the end I may possess the glory of being better intreated than they, and may no longer doubt, but that I am loved as well out of choyce, as out of inclination; I saw *Abdelcader*, as long as this Assembly lasted, employ all his address

to please the fair *Sopronia*, without being troubled at it; but contrarily I beheld with pleasure the admiration which her beauty put him into, as well as all the rest of the company, and it seemed unto me, that in commending her, they commended my judgment, and augmented my glory.

Behold, Madam, in what sort this Assembly ended; The King retired with a great deal of impatience to know what answer *Hipolita* had given to *Aly*; this false Confident very sorry for having encountered with so much firmness in my sister's mind; *Sopronia* sufficiently displeased with *Abdelcader's* complacency; *Leonida* in a humor of laughing at the affection which *Aly* seemed to bear her; *Alphonso* nettled with having a Rival, though he would not acknowledge it to us; the Marquis exceedingly contented with having a Mistress; *Lela Mahabid* well satisfied with the Marquis's gallantry; *Horatio* with a mind indifferent enough for all that had past; and I sufficiently contented in our misfortune, and even with a secret sense of joy, to see that the beauty of *Sopronia* was so perfect, as she made her self be adored of all Nations.

In the mean time, the Princess *Mariana*, who hath a quick and piercing wit, perceived all the divers interests of this Assembly: and though she could not discover them perfectly, yet knew she that the King was in some passion; that *Aly* was not exempted from it; that *Abdelcader* her brother did not hate *Sopronia*; and that *Lela Mahabid* was too civil towards a Slave. This wise Princess resolved for all that, not to make any shew of all these things, till she was more certain of them; but it was not long before she was cleared therein. For my sister being retired with her companions, and having acquainted them with *Aly's* discourse, they resolved to advertise the Princess *Mariana* of it, and absolutely to confide in her virtue. *Sopronia* was notwithstanding of the opinion, to ask counsel of us first; so that the next morning, according to the permission they had for it, they sent for us. And when as *Sopronia* had propounded the matter unto us, and that I began already to give my advice, Let *Horatio* speak first, said *Hipolita* unto me, with precipitation enough; for if to give good counsel one hath need of a quiet mind, it may well be said that he is in such an estate as he ought to be, to counsel us as we should be. Were it true, replied *Horatio* mightily surprized, that I had a quiet mind, the manner wherewithal you have spoken is enough to trouble it in such sort, as to render me incapable of counselling others. Since your rest is so dear unto you, answered she, as you even seek a pretext not to assist afflicted persons with your advice, leave us at leastwise to think of what we have to do. *Horatio* seeing her so bitter, would not answer her out of prudence and respect; for fear lest her fantastical humor should appear too visibly unto us. As for me, who comprehended nothing in this discourse, I said unto my sister half laughing, that I believed the King of *Ataracta's* love had possessed her with pride, rather than with melancholy, if she continued speaking in that fashion. But in the end we resolved, that these four Slaves should absolutely confide in the Princess *Mariana*, for fear lest if they should not advertise her of the truth of the matter, she might have cause to think, should she discover it some other way, that it was not displeasing to them, since they made a mystery of it. We contrived that from her alone they were to hope for their protection, and their liberty, and consequently that it was requisite they should make all their virtue known to this Princess; who out of sympathy and conformity, would without doubt be always carried to serve them.

After we had a long time reasoned of all these things; after that *Sopronia* had acquainted us with her new Conquest, and *Leonida* with that which she thought she had made; after, I say, we had spoken of all this in general, *Horatio*, who desired to know what he was accused of, separated *Hipolita* demonstrously from us, and having led her to a window, where she leaned, he conjured her to tell him what had obliged her to speak with so much bitterness unto him, (at leastwise he related it so unto us,) I know full well, said she unto her, that I am not faulty; but I do not know of what crime I am accused: Be so good unto me then as to acquaint me with it, that I may justify myself; but if you will have me speak like an offender, although I be none, let me know what fault I have committed, to the end I may repent me of it, and amend it. You may peradventure do the former, answered she, but it is impossible for you to do the other. I have a long time known, that there would be some injustice in accusing you of an insensibility, which you cannot chuse but have; howbeit I cannot also chuse but complain of my hard fortune, in having a mind so sensible for a man,

that



that is so little himself. The more you complain, said *Horatio* unto her, the less do I comprehend of what fault I am accused; for to say that the beautiful *Hipolita* does not touch my heart sensibly, and that she alone makes not up my felicity, is a thing without all likelihood. You have reason, said she unto him with a bitter smile; *Hipolita* can do something upon your felicity, but she can do nothing upon your misfortune: She can sometimes with a favorable look, or with her discourses, give you happy moments, but she can never with her coldness, or the love that she shews to others, beget any sadness in you: verily, continued she, you are the happiest Lover that ever was; nothing displeases you, nothing molests you; neither fear nor jealousy trouble you; you hope without inquietness; you desire without impatience, and of all the thoughts which Love inspires, you know none without doubt, but those that lead to joy. You interpret all things, as you say, to the advantage of the person beloved; but to speak more reasonably, it is to the disadvantage of your love: For whosoever loves truly, can never hold himself so assured of the person whom he loves, but that fear will be stronger in him than hope; now for your part, you hope all things, and fear nothing. It is certain, said *Horatio* unto her, that you oftentimes reduce me to an estate of fearing nothing, and of having recourse unto hope to comfort me. For *in fine*, whereas the greatest of misfortunes is to see you in choller, I behold my self so many times exposed thereunto, that I have nothing else to fear. No, no, said *Hipolita* unto him, you are yet more ingenuous than so; my very choller gives you joy; you regard it as a mark of my affection; and thus making profit of all things, you are never unhappy. Might it please Heaven, said he unto her, that you spake true! Confess to me, added she interrupting him, that if I had said nothing to you of the long conversation which I had yesterday with *Aly*, whether you would have suspected any thing of it. Any other but you would have been troubled at it, continued she, and whereas love renders the mind clear-sighted, you would have imagined something of the truth. But as for you, doubtless you believed that he entertained me with the Government of the King of *Morocco's* State; that policy was the object of our conversation, whilst you could in the mean time look without inquietness upon the Princess *Lela Mahabid*, because she danced with a good grace. Are these, rigorous *Hipolita*, said *Horatio* unto her, all the crimes which I have committed? Have I done nothing but see you talking with *Aly*, without divining what he said unto you, and without afflicting my self at it? No, answered she, you have done nothing else; but this indifferency, or to say better, this insensibility, and this stupid love so vexes me, as in the state whereunto it hath reduced my mind for a long time together, I had rather see you desperately in love with another, than to see you so quiet: for either the spight of your change would set me at rest; or if I had not resolution enough for that, I should say in flattering my self; he will come out of his error, he will repent him of his inconstancy, and since he can tell how to love, he may be capable of returning and repenting, and of having as much affection for me, as he hath for another. But in the case wherein I see you at this present, you will be always insensible and always happy, and I always unfortunate. That cannot be, answered *Horatio*, my destiny and yours are not separated so easily. But, amiable *Hipolita*, why will you not have me live innocently, why will you have me render my self faulty, in suspecting you amiss? Why will you have me make my self unhappy voluntarily, and abandoning Reason, form monsters to my self to combat withall? and why will you not on the contrary have me confide in your virtue, rely on your fidelity, and without rendering me infortunate, suffer me to be in some rest? Would you know, said *Hipolita* unto him, why I will not have it so, it is because I do not seek in you for a Wiseman, and a Philosopher, but for a Lover. Love hath a Reason, which is wholly particular unto it; reasonable persons, who are touched with this passion, never abandon Virtue for it, but withall they do not follow that severe Reason, which will have one receive with an equal temper, both good and bad fortune. Love ought to be stronger than Reason; it doth not destroy it, but it troubles it. I blush, *Horatio*, at that which I say, and at the grief I am in, for that if I am to know these things, it hath not been rather by your actions, than by mine own experience, that I have understood them. You ought to have taught me, that love is suspicious, impatient, unquiet, and curious; that it wishes for that which it hath not; that it seareth to lose that which it possesseth; you ought to have learnt me, that none of the actions of the person beloved can be indifferent; that she alone ought to be more considerable, than all the world besides; and that the only desire to please her, and the fear to offend her, should make a Lover act. By this reason, answered *Horatio*, I should not dare to accuse you,

no not when you had given me occasion to complain, being perswaded that all those words of cruel, unjust, and inexorable, ought not to be said to a worthy person, but in songs, and if it were possible for me to be angry with you, respect should force me to conceal it. You are in an error, replied she, choller and jealousy are the true marks of love, and provided that one does not continue in them, one never offends the person whom one loves; but you speak so, because you know not how to love. Nay but I speak in his sort, answered *Horatio*, because I know how to love well, and that I respect you. Respect, replied *Hipolita*, can be but a mark of esteem, and not a mark of love: And tell me, I pray you, by what way pretend you to testify yours unto me. In protesting to you, answered *Horatio*, that you are all my felicity; in absolutely remitting unto you the conduct of my fortune; and in assuring you that I would lose my life with joy for your service. One may do all these things out of esteem, and out of generosity, replied she, but one can never be jealous without love; all other passions may receive interpretations, but this same leaves no room to doubt of the cause of it; and jealousy is the only assured mark of this passion. If I could cease from esteeming of you, replied *Horatio*, I should be jealous, I should be unquiet. Say, answered she lifting up her voyce, and quitting him, that if you could cease from being insensible, you should be a Lover. She spake this so loud, as *Sophonra*, *Leonida*, the Marquess, *Alphonso*, and I, heard her, and we judged that there was some little disorder between them, especially when I saw a Carnation colour on my sisters cheeks, which used not to be there, and a certain constrained and artificial smile, which anger always produceth in her face. *Sophonra* willing to play the good sister in this occasion would needs know their dispute; and when as *Horatio* had recounted it unto her, notwithstanding *Hipolita's* resistance to the contrary, we made their peace, after they had on either part said all that their wit and passion could furnish them with.

Thereupon we retired to our lodging, and these three fair Slaves to the Princess *Mariama's*; where after the first civilities they besought her to give them a particular audience. *Mariama*, having granted them their demand, commanded her women to leave her alone; which was no sooner done, but the fair *Sophonra*, who had in charge to speak in the name of all the three, requested her to remember the promise she had made to protect them; and then she related unto her the discourse which *Aly* had used to *Hipolita* and *Leonida*: but not able to obtain so much confidence from her modesty, as to tell her withall, that *Abdelcader* had testified a great deal of affection to her, my sister acquainted the Princess with the conquest that *Sophonra* had made. *Mariama* being very much satisfied with their freedom and their vertue, redoubled the care and good-will which she had for them; and to shew that she put as much confidence in their discretion, as they done in hers; and to let them see also, how much interest she had to oppose all the bad designs of *Aly*, she recounted all his adventures unto them, namely, all that I imparted to you at the beginning of this History: And thereupon assured them, that whatsoever came from a spirit so artificial as *Aly's*, was ever to be suspected. She told them moreover, that whereas he did always work with cunning, he was always to be delt with in the same manner: that to that effect, great care was to be taken to keep him from discovering, that they had acquainted her either with the Kings love, or his; that it was likewise requisite, that *Hipolita* should seem to place some confidence in that false generosity, which he had feigned to have in speaking to her of the Kings love. For, said *Mariama* unto them, I know *Aly*, he would never have delt in that sort with *Hipolita*, had not some passion, more powerful then his malice, carryed him thereunto. Hitherto he hath never contraried the King in any thing; hitherto he hath affected a blind obedience to all his will, and an exterior fidelity, which hath not permitted me as yet to revenge the mischiefs he hath done me. Nevertheless I see something in his heart, since the time that I have obtained of my self to speak with him oftner then I used to do, which puts me in hope that I shall finde the means for it. In fine, believe it, said she to *Hipolita*, that *Aly* hath not declared the Kings love unto you, and promised to protect you against him, without some secret reason that induces him thereunto, and without some particular interest. But for discovery; we must dissemble as well as he, and not speak so severely of the love which he saith the King bears you, that we may see what he will be at. *Leonida*, for her part, must endeavor to discover his designs; and *Sophonra*, carrying her self according to her humor and her vertue, will no doubt punish *Abdelcader* rigorously enough; for suffering himself to be

surprized

surprized by the splendor of her beauty ; howbeit I will take care that he shall no longer importune her. In the mean time, continued she, fear no violence, unless it be from *Aly* ; for touching the King, I know that he hath some respect to my person, and doth carefully endeavor to make me forget the cruelties which *Aly* hath done, under the pretext of assuring the Crown unto him. And grant also that the wickedness of this man should prove contagious to the King, be assured that I will never abandon you, and will hazard all things to keep you from having any violence offered unto you.

These fair Slaves gave her thanks for a discourse that was so advantageous unto them ; commended her virtue and her generosity ; lamented the misfortunes that had arrived unto her ; detested the cruelty of *Aly* : and making an exchange of their own sorrows, it might have been said that *Mariama* felt their miseries more than her own : and that these fair Slaves, who were no less generous, nor less sensible than she, had as much sense of her past fortunes, as of their present mishaps.

After that so sad a conversation had lasted some time, and that out of the compassion, which they had one of another, they had in some sort mitigated their griefs, the Princess *Mariama* told them smiling, how it would not be just, that whilst she was thinking of their protection, one of their Troop should undertake to revenge *Hipolita* of the Kings love, with another love ; desiring them to advertise the Slave, which danced with so good a grace, that the Princess *Lela Mahabid* was her sister ; because she believed, that either he knew not so much, or that he had forgotten it. *Sophronia* perceiving by *Mariama's* speech, that she meant the Marquis ; and that she also had taken notice of his inclination to the Princess *Lela Mahabid*, thought it was best to acquaint her with his humor, to the end she might not be offended if he continued the gallantry he had begun. *Sophronia* then drew the Marquis his picture so agreeably, and so advantageously for him, as the Princess told her that she was very glad of the conquest her sister had made, and what she might in some sort share with her therein, it was fit she should more particularly know so extraordinary a man : and so, the Princess *Mariama*, and *Sophronia*, became his Confidants, without having any purpose to be so, and procured him the pleasure to see the Princess *Lela Mahabid* almost every day at the Princess *Mariama's* lodging. The first time he was there, I remember that we brought him thither with some kind of repugnancy ; for he had understood from *Sophronia* her self, in what manner she had spoken of him. It is not, said he unto us, because I am angry that *Sophronia* hath spoken the truth ; but it is because I do not feel my self in a disposition to make it appear by experience, that I am as inconstant as she hath described me : it being very certain, that I am perswaded I cannot love any think here but the Princess *Lela Mahabid*.

With this little vexation the Marquis was brought to *Mariama's* lodging, where all those fair Slaves were present, as well as the Princess *Lela Mahabid*, who received him with a great deal of civility. At first *Mariama* commended his address, and remembering how admirably he had danced in the last Assemblies, she marvelled how he could in so short a space surmount all the *Moors* in gallantry and a good grace. The *Moors*, said he unto her, Madam, have not had so good a Master as I. And when as *Mariama* had demanded of him, who he was ? he answered her, that Love had taught him all that he knew ; it being most sure, as he said, that without him he had been the ignorantest of all men. For, continued he, the sole desire to please the person whom I loved hath taught me all that I know. If that be so, answered *Mariama*, and that which hath been told me of you be true, you should be one of the most universally knowing men in the world, since by that reason, the diversity of persons whom you have loved, should have taught you a wonderful diversity of things.

Truly, Madam, you have Reason, replied he, but that which makes me know them but superficially, is, because I have stayd so little a while in one school, as I have had no more leisure then to learn to speak a little of things, without any perfect knowledge of them. The first person, of whom I was enamored, loved valor, and that was the cause why I took care not to appear cowardly. She that touched my heart next loved musique, and instantly I learned to sing, to play on the Lute and the Gittern. Another, placing her greatest delight in reading of verses, inspired me with the desire of making some. One of my Mistresses, loving *Romanzas* above any thing else, possessed me with the desire to furnish the subject of one with mine own adventures.



ventures. I learned also to be fit for all compliance; I became a Painter, an Astrologer, and a Mathematician: Love made me learn languages; by him I grew many times eloquent, liberal, discreet, and pleasing; *in fine*, I do not know a virtue, for which I am not indebted to this noble passion.

I profess, said the Princess *Mariama*, that this is the finest way of commending ones self that ever was heard of. But, said she to the Marquis, how comes it to pass, that in so little a time as you have been here, you have so perfectly attained to that, which the *Granadins*, who are our masters in gallantry, are so long a learning? for, as you say your self, there are things which you understand but superficially, because your love to those that affected them was not long enough. It is, Madam, answered he, because I have at this present a greater desire to please, then ever I had in all my life.

She that hath given you this desire, said the Princess *Lela Mahabid* unto him, should have a great deal of merit, or should be very much obliged to you. She hath so many excellent qualities, replied the Marquis, as I may say, that in this illustrious person I love all those whom I have loved in all my life-time: it being most certain, that I have never admired any thing in all the others, whom I have served, which I do not finde yet more eminently in her whom now I adore. She is wonderfully fair; she hath a spirit as full of brightness, as her eyes are of light; and there is seen in her whole person, a charm so powerful and so extraordinary, that it is impossible to conserve so much reason, as to remember that one ought not to have any other then veneration for her; one must of necessity give place to love; she cannot inspire other thoughts; and not working like ordinary beauties, which makes one pass from admiration to esteem, and from esteem to love, she renders her self at the first instant absolute Mistress of all their souls that behold her. One cannot have indifferent thoughts for her; one must, either not see her, or adore her: and from the very first moment that I beheld her, I had all at once both admiration, esteem, and love. I was no longer mine own, I was absolutely hers; and though I know full well that I am unworthy of this honor, yet can I not imagine that I am faulty. It seems to me also (at least-wise I flatter my self with this opinion) that by a particular priviledge, and to render her conquests the more illustrious, she purifies all the hearts which she enflames; that she darts forth a beam of that divinity which I adore in her, and therewith illuminates them that come neer her; that in making her virtues known, she communicates a part of them; and that one is no sooner her Slave, but he is worthy to command others.

The Princess *Lela Mahabid*, not able to forbear from blushing at the Marquis his discourse, would at leastwise make a gallantry of it. I leave you to judge, said she unto him, how much you would make your Mistress modesty to suffer, if she were here, since I could not chuse but change colour at this excessive praise, though I have no part in it. I fear, Madam, replied he, that in this occasion you take one virtue for another; and that this change, which hath appeared in your face, be not rather an effect of your great heart, then of your modesty, seeing it may be you take it not well, that a Slave should lose the respect which he owes you, so far, as to dare to entertain you with his passion. You speak so agreeably hereof, said the Princess *Mariama* interrupting him, that if my sister will be persuaded by me, she shall always be your Confident. I am not inconsiderate enough for that, answered the Marquis; and the thoughts of respect and adoration which I have for her, will not permit me to commit this fault.

*Sopronia*, seeing that hereupon there was a great silence amongst the company, which might trouble the Marquis, said to him with a great deal of address, that she was glad to see a passion in him, which made her hope that at last he might be constant; since finding in a person whom he loved, all the beauties of the body, all the graces of the minde, and all the virtues of the soul, it was impossible for him to meet with any thing that was amiable in another, which was not in her. You have Reason, answered the Marquis, but not altogether to renounce my natural inclination, though I love none, or to say better, adore none, but this excellent person, yet have I found the means to mingle an inconsistency with the love I bear her, whereof she cannot be jealous. I have much ado to conceive this new mystery, added my sister; and I do not think, that she, who is the cause of your love, will reign in a divided heart. My heart is wholly hers, replied the Marquis, and to explain my thoughts unto you, know, that the person, whom I adore, is so marvelous, as it would be a crime in me, hav-

ing

ing but one heart and one affection, to offer to love all that is amiable in her at one and the same time: so that to love her the more perfectly, and in some sort also to follow this inclination, which predominates over all mine, I give every day a new object to my passion. To day I adore her eyes; to morrow I love the beauty of her shape; the next day I suffer my self to be charmed with the graces of her mind; another time her goodly aspect ravishes me; and by this means yielding my heart wholly to each of those excellent qualities which she possesses, I shall love her as much as she deserves to be; and without being inconstant to her, I shall yet be always so much, as never to be weary of my servitude. This new way of loving so mightily surprized all the company, as albeit they had no great cause of joy, yet could they not forbear laughing at it. I should never have done, if I should rehearse all the pleasing passages, which the Marquis delivered in all the visits which he gave to these two Princesses; it shall suffice then to tell you, that the Princess *Lela Mahabid* had all the esteem and all the affection for him, which a Princess, gallant enough, and who for all that was virtuous, was capable of.

In the mean time you are to know, that *Aly* had not failed in rendering an account to the King of the commission which he had given him: but whereas he was a Lover and cunning, he had disguised the truth of that which he had said to *Hipolita*, and of that which *Hipolita* had answered him. For though my sister had testified sufficiently unto him, that *Abdalla's* affection could never please her, yet he feared that if the King should undertake to speak to her himself, she might at length be perswaded; so that to keep him from it, he told him, that albeit *Hipolita* had not favorably received the declaration which he had made her of his love, yet he held it not absolutely impossible to touch her heart; it having seemed unto him how he had observed, that the greatest fear *Hipolita* had, was lest the Princess *Mariama* should perceive this affection. Wherefore, my Lord, said he unto him, it must be by me that she must be acquainted with all the thoughts which you have for her, until such time as by great hopes we have chased away this fear from her heart. For there is no doubt, added he, considering the estate wherein I saw her mind, if you enterprize to speak to her your self, but you will be very ill satisfied of her, for the reason I have told you.

*Abdalla*, though very amorous, and consequently very impatient and very suspicious, yet made no question of *Aly's* discourse; and remitting himself absolutely to his conduct, he conjured him to remember, that on the conquest of *Hipolita* all his felicity depended. In the mean while, albeit he had promised *Aly* to give my sister the least testimony of his affection that he could, yet was it impossible for him to conceal his passion: for he no sooner entered into *Mariama's* lodging, but he asked for *Hipolita*; he no sooner saw her, but a new joy appeared in his face; *Hipolita's* looks guided his whether he would or no; he followed her with his eyes wheresoever she went; and seldom did he make a visit without praising some beauty, or some virtue, which he said he had not yet marked in her. These praises did not please *Aly* at the beginning, nevertheless seeing he could not hinder them, whereas sovereign prudence, or to say better, extreme cunning, consists in making all things serve for the design that one hath, he labored to draw some advantage from the love, which the King seemed to bear to *Hipolita*. But before I acquaint you with it, I am to tell you, that after many conversations which he had with her, wherein he always shewed, how much he esteemed of her virtue, and approved of the refusals she had made of the Kings love; one day, when as he found her the most civilly disposed for him (as he thought) and the most incensed against the King, he undertook to discover unto her the passion he was in for her. And whereas she was exceedingly surprized with such a kinde of discourse, and hath naturally an imperious spirit; Is it possible, said she unto him, that you can speak to me in this sort, and conserve any memory and judgment? Do you believe, added she, that a person, which refuses the affection of your King, can receive yours? Do you not remember, that you have an hundred times commended the resolution which I have taken to dye, rather then to satisfy him? Shall I be more virtuous, in harkening favorably to your love, then to *Abdalla's*? What part do you play, said she unto him, without giving him time to interrupt her? You betray your Master in speaking to me of your love; and if you will pass for my Lover, you do me an injury in charging your self with moving the Kings to me: and howsoever it be, I ought to hate and despise you more then him.

After *Hipolita* had testified all her resentment and her anger, *Aly*, nothing daunted, nor displeased

displeased, besought her not to condemn him without hearing. For, fair *Hipolita*, said he unto her, it may be you will finde some difference between the love that *Abdalla* bears you, and that which I bear you: He onely loves the beauty of *Hipolita*, and I adore the vertue of *Hipolita*. He is not your servant, but to make you his Slave; and I do not love you, but to marry you. His flame is unjust, and mine is lawful; the end of his love is his own satisfaction, and that of mine is your glory, and your conservation. For *in fine*, continued he, if it be true that you love honor, you will have some indulgence for the affection which I carry to you; seeing there rests no other mean to warrant you from the violences of *Abdalla's* love, but that of receiving the same which I offer you. I acknowledg, said he further to her, that I am an ill subject, but it is not but to be a faithful Lover, and because I will not expose you to the greatest miseries, which a vertuous person can suffer. For, if you will, said he unto her, all the Kings love, all his force, and all his power, shall not keep me, from protecting and marrying you.

*Aly* having made an end of speaking, left *Hipolita*, for that he would not have her, said he, answer him without advisement, in a matter whereon all his happiness or unhappiness depended. From thence he went to the Princess *Mariama*, to whom in appearance he bore a great deal of respect. And whereas for some time past, this Princess had given him more commodity to speak to her then before, out of the design she had to discover his intentions concerning him that was to succeed *Abdalla*, it was not difficult for him to talk with her in private; so that after he had protested an inviolable fidelity to her, and had sworn to her, that next to the glory and interests of *Abdalla*, nothing in the world was so dear to him as hers; he told her, that knowing her exceeding vertue and prudence, he thought he was obliged to acquaint her, how the King was so desperately in love with *Hipolita*, as he feared that his passion would carry him to lose the respect which he owed to her, in drawing him to use some violence to this maid: That if in this occasion he might be permitted to give advices and counsel both together, he conceived that the best course could be taken, would be to remove *Hipolita* out of the way, or to marry her; That, as her Slave, she might dispose of her, without the Kings having any lawful pretext to contradict her, since he himself had bestowed her on her.

The Princess received this discourse of *Aly's*, as if she were obliged to him for it; and although she knew not as yet the interest which he had in this affair, because she had not seen *Hipolita*; yet she believed that this generosity, which appeared in his speech, was not in his heart: She thanked him notwithstanding for the advice he had given her; promised him to observe the Kings and *Hipolita's* actions; and then told him, that she would resolve of nothing in this affair, without demanding his counsel about it; and that he on his part should not fail to advertise her of all that he knew. *Aly*, to let the Princess see that he lyed not, desired her to call to minde all the testimonies of unquietness and affection, which the King could not conceal in the visits he had rendred her for some time past. And when as she had told him that she remembered them very well, he went very well satisfied of her. For knowing the vertue and prudence of this Princess, he doubted not but that now understanding the love which the King bore to *Hipolita*, she would oppose it with all her power; and so, if it happened that *Hipolita* should tell her the proposition he had made to marry her, she would not contradict it; because it would be a mean to keep the King from committing a fault; and because she would believe also by this way to put him out of grace with *Abdalla*, which he feared not much, in regard that all the force of the Kingdom was in his hands; that all the Governors of Places depended on him; and that it was impossible for *Abdalla* to rid himself of him, but by taking away his life; which he stood in no doubt of, for he could not imagine, that a Prince to whom he had conserved the Crown, could make him lose his head. And after this manner he resolved to make a shew of confiding in the Princess *Mariama*; judging that nothing could arrive therein that would not be advantageous to him.

In the mean time *Abdelcader* had his designs both of love and ambition, as well as *Aly*; and though he was no very excellent Prince, yet the desire of reigning is so natural in men, as it found a place in his heart, and so much the more strongly, because he knew that according to equity the Crown of *Marocco* appertained to him after the death of his brother, though *Abdalla* had a son; for that the *Xeriff Mahomet* had so ordained by his Testament. In this thought, he had a long time already very much courted *Aly*, to the end he might gain him



as much as he could; out of the hope that if *Abdalla* came to dye, he would side with him, or at leastwise remain a neuter between the son of *Abdalla* and him.

Nevertheless, whereas at that time *Aly* had other designs, he never said any thing to *Abdelcader*, which might make him hope for ought from him. But whereas he was dextrous, and knew not certainly whether he should let *Abdalla's* son reign, or reign himself, he had never disoblighd him, but was contented to tell him still, upon the divers propositions which he had made unto him, that for matters regarding the *State*, he was not the servant of the person of *Abdalla*, but of the King of *Marocco*; That as for him, he was perswaded, how it was neither reason, nor justice, that ordinarily made Kings, but Fortune only; And without considering whether she were blind or no in the distribution of Crowns, he was resolv'd always to serve the *State* with fidelity, in the person of those whom she would place on the Throne of *Marocco*. But in the terms wherein things then were, he nevertheless altered his mind, albeit he had an hundred times promised *Abdalla*, if he should happen to dye before him, to conserve the Crown for his son, to the prejudice of *Abdelcader*: And whereas *Aly* undertook not this design, but for his particular interest, for in making a young King to reign, he should in a manner be King himself; that interest coming to change, he also changed his resolution. For after he had well examined both the Kings love and his own, he found that what industry soever he could use, it would be impossible for him to marry *Hipolita* with *Abdalla's* consent; who should no sooner be incens'd against him, but the Princess *Mariama*, joyning her credit and address to the just occasion she had to wish him ill, would no doubt constrain him to have recourse to extream remedies.

With such like thoughts it was that *Aly* had entertained himself a good while already, when as *Abdelcader*, who believed he was in love with *Leonida*, and consequently hoped, that he would excuse the passion he had for *Sophronia*, came unto him with an intent dextrously to learn of him what designs he had for that maid, to the end he might rule his by those of a man, who, as he believed, durst not condemn that in another, which he suffered in himself.

All their conversation at first was but of indifferent things, and of the beauty of *Mariama's* Slaves. And whereas *Aly* was not ignorant of *Abdelcader's* passion for *Sophronia*, he was willing in this occasion to incense the mind of this Prince against *Abdalla*, and wholly to gain him to himself, to the end that if he were to make a universal subversion in this State, *Abdelcader* might furnish him with a pretext specious enough, by giving the people to understand, that *Abdalla* by a testament, which always remained in *Aly's* hands, intended his son should reign to his prejudice: For howsoever, *Abdelcader* was *Mahomet's* son, as well as *Abdalla*; and albeit he was no very able Prince, yet had he no vices, so that the people did not hate him. *Aly* considered further, that if he should come to extream violence, and dispossess *Abdalla*, that *Abdelcader* might reign, he should make a King, without ceasing to be one; it being certain, that he would have need of him for the Government of his *State*.

After this reasoning which *Aly* had within himself, and after an indifferent long discourse which he us'd to *Abdelcader*, to prepare him for that he was going to say to him, he gave him to understand, that *Abdalla*, very far from approving the love which he bore to a Slave, would not consent to his marriage with the greatest Prince of the Earth; because both by interest, and for the better assuring of the Crown to his son, <sup>he</sup> would have the matter go in that sort. I leave you to judge, what effect this discourse wrought in the Soul of a man, who was at one instant deprived of the hope of ever possessing the object of his love, and of his ambition, which are two of the most violent of all passions.

*Aly*, perceiving by the trouble which appeared in *Abdelcader's* face, how much he was moved; and judging by his silence that he confided not in him, seeing he concealed his resentment, said unto him to confirm him, that he had always done what he could to oppose such violent maxims; that he remembered he was the son of his ancient Master; and that he assured him he would never omit any occasion to serve him. But after many conversations on this subject, *Aly* seeing that the Kings love augmented dayly, and finding that his own always became stronger, propounded at length to *Abdelcader* the putting him in possession, both of his Mistress, and of the Crown of *Marocco*. So bold a proposition made *Abdelcader* doubt, that this was rather a discourse to tempt him, and to discover his intentions, than to serve him. But *Aly* made him soon change his opinion; for having shewed him *Abdalla's* testa-

testament, which he had in his keeping, whereby he left the Crown of *Morocco* to his son, to the prejudice of *Abdelcader*, he no longer doubted but that he might absolutely confide in him; so that after this they thought of nothing but of executing their designs. *Aly* had for so long a time had the whole Government of this State, as there was not an Officer in all the Kingdom, that was not obliged to him for the Charge which he exercised: He was very powerful of himself; all the Kings Treasures were in his hands; all strong places depended on him; the memory of the *Xerife Mahomet* reigned still amongst these people; and the violent death of *Hannes* was the cause that *Abdalla* was not universally beloved: for the people believed that *Aly* had not put him to death but by his commandment, though it was not true.

Now to carry the matter with more certainty, *Aly* told *Abdelcader*, that the principal point was to render themselves Masters of *Morocco*: for by the experience of the past Wars, and by a fatality which seemed inevitable, all they who had seized on it had at the very same instant subjected all the rest of the Kingdom; That to do it without danger he was to make show, at such time as *Abdelcader* should enterprize the executing of the business, of being still faithful to the King, to the end he might give him bad counsel, and seize upon his and *Mariama*'s person, when time should serve for it, to put them in the same prison, where *Hannes*, *Muley Zidan*, and his children had lyen. But that it was first requisite to make it be detestably bruited amongst the people, that *Abdalla* would defraud him of the right he had to the Crown, and for that effect would not suffer him to marry; That to render the matter more plausible, he should in a publique audience go and demand permission to marry a grand-child of the last King of *Tunis*, who was in the Court of *Morocco*; but said *Abdelcader* then to him, If she should be granted unto me, I should be extremely perplex; for indeed I do not desire the Crown of *Morocco*, but to share it with the Slave *Sophronia*. Fear not that, said he unto him, for I shall be of the Council, and I will oblige *Abdalla* to severely to refuse her to you, as you shall then have a pretext specious enough to make use of the Soldiers, which I shall give you to begin the revolt. And to let the people see *Abdalla*'s bad faith, and to oblige him not to doubt of me, until such time as I am sure of him, you must go to my Palace to offer some violence there, as it were charging me with the outrage you have received: And after you have made as though you had plunder'd it, you shall shew the people *Abdalla*'s testament, which I will give you before-hand. In the mean time be assured that I will take so good an order for all things, as you shall meet but with few enemies to fight with; and that in a little time I will deliver you the key of the prison, wherein I shall have shut up *Abdalla*, his son, and *Mariama*; and after this you shall have the Crown and *Sophronia*, whom you may marry if you think good; or according to our Laws treat as a Slave, since she shall be yours: And for me, said he unto him, *Hipolita* is the only recompence which I demand of you. You mistake the name, said *Abdelcader* to him, and you would no doubt speak of *Laenida*. No, no, replied *Aly*; and then he declared unto him the truth of the matter, and so they parted, after they had well examined their enterprize again, and fully resolved not to let a day pass, without laboring to advance the execution thereof as much as they could.

In the mean space *Abdalla* lived still in some hope, that he should be able to touch the heart of *Hipolita*, especially since a conspiracy of *Abdelcader*; for the subtle *Aly* since that, to busy his mind the more pleasantly, had assured him, that provided he would continue living with her, as he had done certain days before, he despaired not to obtain of her more then he had thought he should. The Princess *Mariama* on her part had imparted to *Hipolita*, and her companions, the conversation which she had had with *Aly*; and *Hipolita* had also acquainted *Mariama* with the declaration of love which he had made unto her, which possessed the Princess with a great deal of inquietness. I well foresaw, said she unto them, that *Aly* was not disinterested in this affair; but when as she sought for means to get out of this perplexity, she could not imagine them. She knew that the King was so strongly preoccupied with the opinion of *Aly*'s fidelity, that unless he learnt his crime from his own mouth, he would never believe it. She was indeed generous enough to venture any thing for the saving of these three maids, who craved protection of her with tears; but she feared too, lest if she should enterprize it, and it should come to be discovered, she might expose them to mischiefs, which would be past remedy. She resolved then first to observe *Aly* with care; to talk with  
him

him oftner then she had used to do; and if she found any likelihood of being able to hurt him, to hazard all things for the executing of that secret hatred upon him which she had so long a time concealed in her heart. And whereas she had much address, she courted *Abdalla* more then she was accustomed to do, that she might still gain further power over his mind for the destroying of that which *Aly* had gotten there. As for us, we lived in extream discontent; for being advertised of all the Princess *Mariama's* and her fair Slaves unquietness, and foreseeing no end to so many miseries, we led an idle and melancholick life, which was insupportable to us all, except the Marquis, who without regarding our misfortunes, esteemed himself the happiest man in the world; for being favorably looked upon by the Princess *Lela Mahabid*.

But not to prolong my discourse with matters which are not necessary for you to know, I shall tell you, that in four or five conversations the Princesses address was so great, that she knew with as much certainty as strong conjectures could give of it, that *Aly* had ill intentions for the Kings children. And without being able to divine that they were in some sort to the advantage of *Abdelcader*, she knew that if the King came to dye, he would not conferre the Crown for his son. That which made *Mariama* more easily discover *Aly's* designs was, that seeing the civility which she had shewed to him some days before, and the vertue of this Princess being more dreaded of him then all *Abdalla's* authority, he had used certain obscure discourses unto her, to make her apprehend, that if she would embrace his friendship, he would cause the Crown of *Marocco* to fall upon the head of whomsoever she would. For whereas she was the widow of *Muley Zidan*, to whom of right the Kingdom appertained, if they had let him live, he thought that it may be she was capable of the desire to remount into the Throne of her Fathers. But that being no intention of hers, she seemed not to understand any of *Aly's* speeches in that manner, though indeed she marked them very exactly. After she had thoroughly run over again in her mind, even to the least circumstances, whatsoever might either increase or diminish her suspicions, she resolved to advertise the King thereof. But to prepare his mind for the entertaining of some distrust of *Aly's* fidelity, she willed *Hipolita* to make *Abdalla* perceive, as often as she saw him, that she took great care to decline his encounter, to the end she might be the more credited, when she should assure him that *Aly* had offered to marry her, for the securing of her from his violences. The Princess *Mariama*, who did nothing inconsiderately, resolved for all that to tarry some time yet for the discovering of her suspicions.

In the mean season *Aly* took order for all things necessary to his enterprize, and according to the plot which he and *Abdelcader* had layd, one morning when as the King of *Marocco* gave audience to all them which had any thing to request of him, *Abdelcader*, followed by certain of his Partisans, went and besought the King to grant him the permission to marry the grand-child of the last King of *Tunis*, and to give him a portion answerable to a person of his condition; He told him that he was not ignorant how Princes, which might pretend to the Crown, were not their own, but the *States*, and for that reason he would not dispose of himself without his leave: He added further, that the choyce which he had made could not be blamed, since it was a person of birth equal to his; and a person whom by reason of State he was to marry, or else they should resolve never to marry him: it being unlikely that they would bestow her on a forraign Prince, which might make use of the right she had to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, for the troubling of that of *Marocco*.

*Abdelcader* by *Aly's* counsel made this proposition, rather as imposing a Law, then craving a consent; and whereas he feared nothing so much as the obtaining of that, which he seemed to desire so earnestly, when he found that *Abdalla* made no shew in his countenance of being any whit troubled with this proposition, he, notwithstanding his confidence in *Aly's* promise to him to hinder it, added so many things more to those he had already delivered, as *Abdalla*, after he had answered him, that the affair, whereof he spake, was of two great importance to be resolved on precipitously, commanded him to hold his peace, and to withdraw. Hereupon *Abdalla*, who in his heart did not disapprove of the matter, demanded counsel of *Aly* in private concerning it, who after he had protested, that the sole good of his State made him speak, represented unto him, that in the design which he had to preserve the Crown for his son, it imported much that *Abdelcader* should not be married; and less yet to the Princess of *Tunis*, then to any other; because in this sort it was to give him right a second time



to his Estates, and to furnish him with a pretext to make War as often as he met with an occasion for it; That to take from him the boldness thence-forward to offer such like propositions, he was to tell him absolutely, that this marriage did not please him, even without colouring the matter with any apparent reasons, as he might do; because, said he, *Abdelcader's* boldness could not be sufficiently punished.

*Abdalla* following *Aly's* opinion in all things, contradicted him not in this, where he thought his interest alone was regarded. He sent *Abdelcader* word then, that he forbade him to think of marrying himself, either to the Princess of *Tunis*, or to any other; that he should leave to him the care of choosing a wife for him; and that if he did otherwise, he should then be declared guilty of High Treason. *Abdelcader* no sooner received this answer, but every one in *Marocco* knew it, and every one murmured at it. The Princess *Mariama* could not comprehend this business; for she knew that *Abdelcader* had testified a great deal of love to *Sophronia* in divers occasions; and knew also that he had never regarded the Princess of *Tunis* but with indifference; and that if there had not been some hidden thing in his design, she should have been the first to whom he would have spoken of it: but howsoever she reasoned thereupon, she could not discover the truth. And whereas *Hipolita* had for some time together lived with the King, as she had ordained her, she observed that *Abdalla* perceived this change; so that seeing the matter in this estate, she went one morning to his lodging, where she craved the favor of him to talk with him in private, and the King having granted it to her, she besought him to promise her, that if he did not give credit to what she was going to tell him, he at leastwise would never speak of it again; being fully resolved not to acquaint him with that she had to communicate unto him, unless he would engage his word unto her to do so.

The King, being touched with an extraordinary curiosity, and yet fearing that *Mariama* would speak to him of his love to *Hipolita*, stood a while without answering her; but at length having promised her as much as she had desired of him, she began to prepare his mind with a very particular address. I know, said she unto him, that for this which I am going to tell you I ought to be suspected of you, either of malice, or of preoccupation: I know also, that *Aly* being so mightily established in your affection, I shall expose my self to the hazard of displeasing you, in telling you that I suspect he is not so faithful unto you, as his birth and obligations to you ought to make him: I know too, that in what manner soever you hear the business, it will be still offensive unto you; for if you beleeve there is any malice in my discourse, you will no doubt be sorry to find a stain in the Soul of a person that is so dear unto you; and if on the contrary you find that I am not to blame, the displeasure of having been betrayed by a man whom you have so much obliged will disquiet you; and whether it be out of a sense of glory, or of tenderness, you will be grieved: Judge then, my Lord, if the matter which I am to tell you be not important, since bearing you all the respect and all the affection that I ought to have for a Prince, who is both my King and my brother, I expose my self notwithstanding to the hazard of troubling his rest, and getting his hatred, which is to me my surest misfortune.

*Abdalla*, amazed with *Mariama's* discourse, though he did not believe that she could tell him any thing which was true against *Aly's* fidelity, yet left he not to assure her, that in case the suspicions which she said she had against *Aly* proved not to be well grounded, he would judge well of her intentions, and be always obliged unto her for her zeal and affection. After this *Mariama*, to stir up some trouble in *Abdalla's* mind, and touch his heart where it was most sensible, imparted unto him how *Aly*, forgetting the respect which he owed to him, had been so daring as to profess love to the Slave *Hipolita*, who belonged to her; but this prudent Prince did not let *Abdalla* know, that she understood any thing of his affection; so that without standing longer on this discourse, yet this is not that, said she unto him, which obliges me to speak to you of *Aly*, but the design which he hath, if you chance to dye before him, to break the testament you have made him, by taking the Crown from off the head of your son, to dispose of it according to his pleasure, or it may be to set it on his own head.

So strange an accusation did not at first encounter with any great belief in *Abdalla's* mind, thinking that the secret hate, which this Princess bore *Aly*, made her judge of him in this sort for that which regarded his State; but for that which concerned his love, though it was

more

more unlikely then the other, because he might conceive, that *Mariama* had taken his Confidence for a Lover of *Hipolita*, yet he believed more of it then she would have had him. And making shew of being more moved with *Aly's* want of respect to her, then with his own interest, he demanded of her very exactly, how she came to perceive *Aly's* passion; and whether the conjectures she had of it were strong enough? because if it proved to be so, he meant to punish him for his boldness. My Lord, said this Prince unto him, you do me too much favor, rather to think of me, then of the good of your State; but to imitate your generosity, be pleased, without considering me, to let me regard nothing but your person alone, and by some invention let me furnish you with means, either to convince or justify *Aly*. And then, without *Abdalla's* demanding it, she recounted all those things unto him which had been cause of her suspicions: but at length the trouble of this Prince's mind being somewhat appeased, he believed that *Aly* might be his Rival, but believed not that he had any design upon his Crown. Howbeit *Mariama* said so much unto him, that in the end with her entreaties and reasons she obtained of him, that for fifteen days space he would do whatsoever she would have him for the clearing of the business. This Prince had much ado to resolve upon making any doubt of *Aly's* fidelity, so far forth as to seek out the means of convincing him; but at last the consideration of *Mariama*, and a little touch of jealousy carried him unto it: yet was it upon condition, that if *Aly* were found innocent, she should from thence-forward have as much goodness for him, as she had had aversion.

*Mariama* having promised *Abdalla* all that he desired, she began the very same day one of the most extraordinary Artifices, as ever was made use of, for the discovery of the thoughts of an ambitious man and a Traytor; and lo, how she proceeded. She obliged *Abdalla* to keep his chamber certain days, and not to let himself be seen of any but his Physicians, and the Slaves which served him. At first *Aly* marvelled not to see the door kept fast against all the Great ones of the Kingdom, because he knew that it is the custom of the Kings of *Morocco* to shut themselves up many times whole Moneths together with their wives and Slaves, to the end that suffering not themselves to be seen so often, the people may respect them the more: neither did he find it strange, that he himself was not permitted to enter there, by reason *Mariama*, who kept her design concealed, told him, that *Abdalla* was not well, and that they which looked to him, had forbidden any body from seeing him; as indeed the Physicians had a command from the King to say so, and to be always very frequent about him, that it might be believed he was sick. During this, *Aly* was somewhat jealous and fearful, that this retirement proceeded rather from *Abdalla's* love, then from any malady; but at length the knowledge he had of *Mariama's* vertue dissipated this suspicion, and he believed, as all others did, that the King was effectively sick. In the mean time, *Abdallah* and he thought of the design they had in hand; and they brought the business to such a pass, as it wanted not above eight days of being in an estate to be ready to break forth, when as *Mariama* began to tell *Aly*, that the King was in danger; that his disease became every day worse and worse; and that if he mended not the sooner, his Physicians were out of hope of him.

This Prince had carried the matter with such Art, as all those of the Palace were in tears; for she had so well instructed all the persons that saw the Prince, as with a feigned melancholy they possessed every one that spake to them with a true one. This false news stayed *Abdallah's* designs; for *Aly* represented unto him, that if the King should happen to dye, it would be a more favorable conjuncture for them, then that wherein they were, to make the business which they had projected, succeed; because then they should have a lawful cause to take up Arms for the executing of the *Xeriffe Mahomet's* Testament, to the prejudice of *Abdalla's*: That in the mean season they were not to neglect giving order for all things; and to cause as many Soldiers, as they could, of all the Garrisons which depended the most absolutely of *Aly*, to come secretly into *Morocco*, to the end they might make use of them, as soon as *Abdalla* should be dead, or escaped from the danger wherein they thought him to be. *Aly* in this incertainty went twenty times a day to *Mariama's* lodging, to know how the King did; but though he was one of the most dextrous men in the world, yet was this Prince more then he. In the beginning of this fiction she sighed, and shewed as much affliction, as if that which she said had been true; but when it came near to the time, wherein she had resolved to finish her design, as often as *Aly* saw her she composed her countenance in that manner,

manner, as it seem'd she took great care to conceal a part of her grief; and that her Soul was more nearly touch'd, then she made shew of. This Artifice fail'd not to work that which she expected from it; for *Aly*, thinking he had observ'd, how this Princess affect'd to appear more constant, then she was, believ'd that *Abdalla* was dead; and that *Mariama*, for some secret design, or to seize upon the Crown, or to conserve it for *Abdalla's* son, would not publish it as yet.

When as *Mariama* perceiv'd *Aly's* thought, she advertis'd *Abdalla*, that the next day she would either convince, or justify his favorite: And having instruct'd him in that which she would have him to do, she caus'd a Guard to come in for to seize on *Aly*, in case there should be need of it; and took order for all things so secretly, as no body discover'd any thing. The day following *Aly* early in the morning came to *Mariama*, with an intent to employ all his address for the clearing of the doubt wherein he was: for ambition and love gave him so much impatience, as he had no rest. And verily in this occasion the protection of Heaven appear'd visibly, both to revenge *Mariama* of *Aly's* cruelty, and to preserve us. For it is certain, that as the matter was carried, *Abdalla* and *Mariama* had been lost; *Saphronia* had been expos'd to the violences of *Abdelcader*; *Hipolita* to the brutishness of *Aly*, and the rest of us to be constrain'd to dye in defending them, or not to survive their loss, had not *Mariama* wrought as she did.

But in fine, *Aly*, being come one morning, as I have told you, to the Princesses chamber, and she having us'd as much address in talking with him, as she had done at other times, augmented in such sort the opinion which he had that *Abdalla* was dead, as not able to let himself be any longer guided by prudence, he in plain terms desired the Princess to tell him whether the King were not dead? because, said he, if it be so, it were fit that the affairs of the Kingdom were speedily provided for. *Mariama*, seeing so fair a beginning to her design, did not answer him but with a great sigh, and without saying any thing unto him, she led him into *Abdalla's* chamber. Now albeit he was already perswaded that the King was dead, yet left he not to be mightily surpriz'd to see all this chamber hung with black Velvet, all the windows shut, in the midst a great bed of State environ'd with a balustrade of Ebony, set all about with flaming Torches, and upon Cushions near to the Bed, the Mantle Royal, the Scepter, the Crown, and the Turbant of *Abdalla*, with his Scymitar at the feet of the Bed, whereupon was a large black Cloth trailing a great way on the ground, which seem'd to cover the body of the King; some of his Wives and Slaves were about the Balustrade, who testified by their countenance so sensible a sorrow, as would have drawn tears from any other but *Aly*. The Princess having conducted him then into this chamber of mourning, and perceiving that this sad object had sufficiently perswaded him that which she desired he should believe, she began to shew an extream affliction, and to request him with feigned tears, that he would perform the Kings last Will, in conserving the Crown for his son, according to the Testament he had made, whereof he had the custody, though it was contrary to the *Xeriffe Mahomet's* intention. And then, said she unto him, he hath commanded me to restore the Slave *Hipolita*, and her fellows, to their liberty; in regard it had seem'd unto him that he had violat'd the Law of Nations in retaining persons in slavery, who by Tempest had been driven into *Morocco*. But, continued she, generous *Aly*, this last thing imports not much; nor have I told it you, but that I would not fail in any thing which my King, my brother, and my Lord, hath given me in charge at his death. For so much as regards the Prince his son, perform what you have promis'd him, and what you ought to do.

If *Abdalla*, answer'd *Aly* insolently, would have me conserve the Crown for his son, he should have liv'd a longer time; for it shall never be reproach'd unto me, that I have plac'd an Infant on the Throne of *Morocco*. The same Testament, added he, which gave the Crown to *Abdalla*, shall set it on the head of some other; for in conclusion, it is for men to govern children, and not for children to govern men, no more then for women to give Councils of State. And, continued he, for the Slave *Hipolita*, he that shall be King shall dispose of her; and until then, whereas the Charge which I hold gives me absolute power over the State, whosoever an interraign happens, remit her presently into my hands, to the end that ceasing to be a Slave, I may at leastwise perform *Abdalla's* will, in breaking off her chains.

Ah, vile Traytor! cry'd *Abdalla*, in coming out from under that Cloth of black Velvet,  
under



under which he was hidden; thy perfidiousness must be punished with my hand; saying so, *Abdalla* layd hold on his Scymitar, and all the Guard, which lay concealed for that effect, rushing into the chamber, *Aly* was so surprized, and so confounded, as he knew not at first whether it were an apparition, or whether effectively this Prince, whom he had beleev'd to be dead, was living. In so great a trouble *Abdalla* without doubt had killed him, if the Princess *Mariama*, who would not have him dye by so illustrious an hand, had not hindred him; which was the cause, that *Aly*, being come to himself again, and freeing himself from the Guard which would have seiz'd upon him, opened a window when as they were not aware of it, and whereas all the houses of that Country, as they are here, are exceeding low, he leaped into the Court-yard, and was so fortunate as he did not hurt himself, but got slier away out of the Palace; leaving *Abdalla* so amazed and afflicted at his perfidiousness, and *Mariama* so satisfied with the happy success of her design, that if the displeasure of seeing *Aly* escaped had not moderated her joy, it would have been too violent.

*Abdalla* instantly commanded him to be pursued with all speed, and alive or dead to be brought unto him: But *Aly* was already gotten into a mans house, whose life before times he had saved. For in what disorder soever his soul was, yet had he judgment enough not to go to his own home; imagining rightly that he would be fought for there. In the mean time, the fear he had left the King should cause the gates of the City to be shut, made him seek out all kinde of inventions to escape. For albeit the plot which he had layd with *Abdelcader* was ready to be executed, yet wanted it so much time, as he durst not enterprize it, especially out of the thought he had, that they would not have made use of so extraordinary an invention to discover his intentions, without having taken order for all things. He sent word then secretly to *Abdelcader*, that he should attempt nothing until he was in one of the places of their intelligence, to the end they might be assured of a retreat, if their affairs should go ill. After that, he disguised himself like a woman; for whereas they are all veiled in that Country, he believed that getting speedily out of the City, before any exact order was given at the gates, it would be easie for him to save himself, as indeed it fell out. He that serv'd him in this occasion promised to bring him an horse to a place, which was not above a mile from the Town; and then *Aly*, being disguised in the manner that I have related, went out of *Marocco* a very little before the Guards had been placed at the Gates, with a Command to suffer no body to pass out upon any pretext whatsoever. In the mean space *Abdalla* had sent to search for *Aly* in his Palace, and afterward caus'd it to be proclaimed over all the City, that whosoever could bring *Aly* unto him should have a recompence able to enrich him for all his life.

The people, no sooner understood that *Aly* was in disgrace, but falling into an uproar, and manifesting their secret hatred unto him, plundered his Palace; and this wretched man had not a friend, who for his own security did not at least-wise seem to be otherwise. But whereas the people are inconstant in their resolutions, after they had committed an hundred outrages, there ran a bruit amongst this multitude, that *Abdalla* was dead; and that the proclamation which had been made was an artifice of *Aly*, who meant to discover by this fiction, whether he were beloved, or hated. And whereas all extraordinary novelties easily finde credit with the people, they believed this same; and carry'd by despair for that they had used too much precipitation, they went to the Court in Arms for to see *Abdalla*; who, not knowing whether these which used this violence were *Aly's* partakers or no, durst not go forth to shew himself to them; not having scarce any body with him, because he had sent all them of his ordinary Guard in search of *Aly*. The people in the meanwhile not seeing *Abdalla* appear, were confirm'd in their opinion, and augmenting their despair and fury they attempted to force the Palace; and they had already broken up the first gate, when as *Abdalla*, causing himself to be armed, and we being plac'd about him, appeas'd this storm with his presence, and by his speech assur'd the people that *Aly* had incurred his indignation.

In the mean time the man, who had promised to bring him an horse, found himself to be very much perplexed for the keeping of his word with him; for when as he presented himself to get forth, upon pretext of some business that he had in the Country, the Guards were already set, and having been at all the gates in vain, yet would he not give over so, but thought that another might be more fortunate then he; wherefore he confided in one of *Aly's* friends,

who



who taking the same horse which the other had made use of before, he went to one of the gates to get forth, but he had the like success as the former; who, willing to hazard all for *Aly*, sent a third person thither: which was the cause, that one of the Guard, who had more brain than the rest, perceived, that although three several men had presented themselves for to go out of the City, yet it had been still with one and the same horse; so that he certainly believed there was some mystery in this adventure, and how it might well be that *Aly* was not far off. This Soldier having imparted his thought to him that commanded the gate, he conceived that his opinion was not ill grounded; wherefore, to clear himself therein, he made shew of being perswaded by the intreaties of this man who desired to be let forth; but whilst to gain time he made yet some new difficulties, he sent for three horses, to the end he might follow him a far off with two of his companions; which were no sooner come, but having let him go out, and set them selves to follow him, they saw that contrary to the custom of all such as fear to be followed, he went on still without turning his head to the place from whence he parted, so great a desire he had to arrive where the unhappy *Aly* waited for him. Seeing then that they might follow him without his being aware of it, they approached neerer to him, then they would have done if he had behaved himself otherwise, and quitting the high-way as well as he, when they came neer to a wood, whither this man seemed to have a purpose to go, they espied a woman, who having discovered them, hid her self in the thickest of the bushes. This action made him, that was carrying the horse to *Aly*, turn about his head; who knowing that he was followed, would have taken more on the left hand, and not have gone to the place where he was attended; but this trick would not serve his turn: howsoever it was not because those which had observed her believed that this woman was effectively *Aly*, but being neer unto it, they would needs know certainly what this adventure was. The Captain then, having given order to the two Soldiers to seize on this man, went to the place where he had seen the woman hide her self, and had not gone fifty paces but he found her at the foot of a tree; where, keeping down her vail still about her, she besought him, in counterfeiting her voyce, not to do her any violence. And when she saw that this man had no intent to use her civilly, and seemed fully resolved to discover what she was, she would have tempted this Captain with the hope of a great recompence; so that suddenly lifting up her vail, *Thou seest*, said she, *the unfortunate Aly, who can make thee happy if thou beest wise; for if thou wilt resolve to let me escape, I will put thee in a condition that thou shalt never need to ask any thing more of Fortune.* This Captain, who was faithful, or it may be did not believe that *Aly* in the case he was in could recompence him as much as he said, answered him, that he would never enrich himself by a Treason, and without further delay he called his companions, who, having tyed the man, on whom they had seized, to a tree, went to help him to take the miserable *Aly*, who, though without Arms, left not off resisting them for while. But at last they brought him to *Marocco*, and having conducted him before *Abdalla*, this Prince reviled him with all imaginable reproaches. And whereas *Aly* had always been happy, this one blow of unhappiness so mightily surprized him, as that judgment and prudence, which had rendred him so considerable in his prosperity, wholly abandoned him in his misfortune: so that in stead of seeking to colour his fault, he confessed it as it was, and related unto *Abdalla* all that he had said and thought, just in the same manner as I have delivered it unto you, for the Princess *Mariama* had the goodness to recount it unto us afterwards; in so much as *Abdalla* regarding *Aly*, not onely as a Traytor, but as his Rival, the tenderness which he had at other times had for him, was of no power to excite any thought of pity in his heart; but contrarily the remembrance of the good-will he had born him incensed his minde the more. At last, love, anger, interest of *State*, and jealousy, made the King without further delay, as soon as *Abdelcader* was apprehended, even the very same day take off the ambitious *Aly's* head, who seeing his loss inevitable resolved for it with constancy enough. Thus was the Princess *Mariama* revenged on this man for his cruelty, and *Hipolita* delivered from one of her persecutors. *Aly* was no sooner dead, but the Princess *Mariama*, always generous, went and cast her self at the Kings feet, to beg *Abdelcader's* life of him, which he granted to her tears, upon condition that he should remain for some time a prisoner: For albeit he was guilty of high Treason, as well as *Aly*, for intending to usurp the Kingdom during his life, yet was there this difference, that *Abdelcader* was *Abdalla's* Brother, and was not his Rival.

But

But, Madam, to make an end of telling you at once, both the goodness of *Mariama*, and our fortune, you shall understand, that in the confusion wherein all the City of *Marocco* was this day, when as the Princess *Mariama* entred into a Chamber where these three fair Slaves were, and saw them all in tears, especially *Hipolita*, who knew well that she was in part cause of all this disorder; this Princess, I say, seeing them in this estate, had so much generosity, though she loved them very tenderly, as to deprive her self for ever of them: It may be also, that the design of taking from the King an object of passion, which might trouble his rest; from *Abdelcader* that which had made him fail in this duty; and from the Princess *Lela Mahabid* another, which might make her in some sort forget the rank which she held, carryed her to this resolution. But in conclusion, a little interest, and a great deal of generosity, made her tell them, that profit was to be made of others misfortune: so that before the King had leisure to ask for them, she caused them to be secretly conveyed to the house of a man, who absolutely depended on her; and having advertised us to repair thither, we continued concealed there above eight days. She in like sort caused the Mariners and Soldiers, which we had brought to *Marocco*, to be delivered; for the ambitious *Aly* being dead, the Princess *Mariama* was as powerful in the State as the King himself.

The day following, *Abdalla*, seeing the Princess *Mariama* with a feigned melancholy in her face, which yet he believed to be true, demanded of her, whether revenge, which is said to be one of the greatest pleasures of Kings, did not give her some? My Lord, said she unto him, present misfortunes are doubtless more sensible then past pleasures; the loss of the Slaves which you gave me, is cause of more grief to me, then that of *Aly* hath made me feel joy. So strange a discourse surprized the King extremely; and whereas he desired to be cleared therein, the Princess *Mariama* told him, that in the confusion wherein all things were the day before, whether *Aly* had caused them to be carryed away by force, or whether we had contributed any thing thereunto, so it was, that returning in the Evening to her lodging, she had not found them there, neither could she possibly learn any news of them. I will not repeat unto you all that *Abdalla* said in this occasion, although the Princess *Mariama* acquainted us with it: But in conclusion, it suffices you should know, that *Abdalla* took this adventure as an amorous Prince would do; and after he had caused search to be made over all the City, except in the place where we were, which by the care of the Princess was exempted, she had the goodness to come secretly and bid her dear Slaves farewell, to whom also she gave very rich gifts: And the night following, having disposed of all things for our departure, she caused us to be imbarqued in a Merchants Vessel, that set sail the same night; and whereof the Captain, who was of *Palermo*, undertook to carry us whithersoever we would go, in consideration of an excessive sum of money which she gave him for that purpose.

Now, Madam, before I leave *Marocco*, I am to tell you, that the Marquis was not so glad of the liberty which we hoped to enjoy, as for that he should no longer be exposed to the hazard of being constant. I should have dyed, said he unto us, had I not escaped from so great a danger; for if I had tarried longer at *Marocco*, I was in jeopardy of changing my humor, in not changing my Mistress: But in the end, Madam, we had no great leisure to laugh at the Marquis his agreeable humor, for we had not made two days sail, when as we encountered a Vessel, by the *Turks* called a *Carmossal*, which having set upon ours, that was but ill provided of things necessary for war, became Master of it, notwithstanding any resistance we could make; and the *Turks*, which commanded this Vessel, took us, and brought us to be sold here at *Constantinople*, where our destiny hath been such as you have understood.

*Isabella* thanked *Doria* for the pains he had taken in recounting this History unto her: As for me, said *Hipolita*, I am not contented with my Brother, for me-thinks he stood a little too much in examining that which he calls fantasticalness in my humor. It is not for that you complain, answered *Horatio* smiling, but rather because you apprehend, that we do not judge of the greatness of your affection but by that of your jealousy. For my part, said the Marquis, I do not complain of *Doria*; and I have taken more delight in hearing him relate my love, then I took in it when I was in *Marocco*. And for so much as regards me, added *Leonida*, I am the least satisfied with his relation, seeing I served but for a pretext to *Aly's* love: Let us not jest so soon, said *Sophronia* interrupting her, for in fine we are still at *Constantinople*. You have Reason, answered *Isabella* sighing, and would it might please Heaven;



that I could as readily procure your departure from thence, and mine own with you, as I can assure you that you are in safety there; but we must hope, continued she, re-assuming a more quiet countenance, that the return of *Justiniano* will cause ours soon after. *Sophronia's* humor, being very serious, and consequently more agreeing, then the rest, with *Isabella's* melancholly, begot a particular conversation with her. The Marquis approached to *Emilia*, and intermixing his discourse with *Hipolita's*, *Horatio's*, *Leonida's*, *Alphonso's*, and *Doria's*, they entertain'd one another, as persons whom the hope of a future good had made to forget all the evils past. But at length night coming on, and *Isabella* rememb'ring the counsel which the *Sultana Aferia* had given her, not to incense the mind of *Soliman*, she took leave of this dear Troop, and returned to the old *Serraglio*; where *Aferia* had been in much impatience for her return, fearing lest the *Sultan* her Father should be displeased, if she did not observe the order he had given.

*The End of the First Book.*



*The*



## The Second Book.

**R**oxelana in the mean time was not without inquietness, in knowing by her Spies, that Soliman's friendship to Ibrahim, and the respect which he had to Isabella, had kept him until then from discovering his love plainly to her that caused it. For whereas ambition was the only thing that reigned in her heart, she might well be jealous of the power of Ibrahim, but not of the beauty of Isabella. She knew that the *grand Visier* would never give her the means to ruine him, nor do any thing against the service of the *Grand Signior*, were he not constrained thereunto by some very sensible outrage. She knew also, that Soliman would never disoblige Ibrahim if some mighty passion did not force him to it. In fine, the love to Isabella was that, which begat a hope in her heart of destroying a man, whom she did not hate, but because he was too generous, and that she would reign alone. And whereas she saw that if Isabella went every day out of the *Serraglio*, it might come to pass that Soliman seeing her but seldom might peradventure change his mind, she resolved, for the preventing thereof, to complain of the liberty she had, and to let the *Sultan* understand, how the *Muphti* had advertised her, that the people began already to murmur at it. There needed no further matter to oblige Soliman to a thing, which he desired far more than she. But whereas the fear of displeasing Isabella was so much the greater, as his love was the stronger, he could not resolve, not only to forbid her from going forth, but to see her that day wherein she should receive this order; neither knew he what person to chuse that might deliver this rude message unto her: At last upon good advisement he sent for the *Sultana Asteria*, whom he enjoyed, after he had extremely caressed her, so to order the matter, that Isabella might go but very seldom out of the *Serraglio*.

My Lord, said Asteria unto him, hath thy Highness forgot what thou saidst to her yesterday with thine own mouth? No, said the *Grand Signior* unto her, and therefore it is why I will not make a prohibition which contravenes the civilities I have used to her, but I would willingly, that by thy counsel and address, without any shew of my constraining her, she should be carried of her self to do that which I desire; for the *Sultana* Queen complains of the liberty which I give her, the people murmur at it, all the *Sultanaes* take it ill, and hate her for it.

My Lord, answered Asteria, after that which thy Highness hath said to Isabella, I doubt that my counsel and speeches will be suspected of her; and that she will give more credit to thy words, then to all that I can say to her. I perceive well, said Soliman then to her, that thou lovest not to carry displeasing news; but howsoever it concerns thee to please and obey me. I do not refuse either the one or the other, replied the *Sultana* with a great deal of submission, but if I might be permitted to say what I think, I would beseech thy Highness to consider if there be not a kind of rigor in keeping Isabella from visiting the only persons which are dear to her in *Constantinople*; and by a constraint, whereunto she is not accustomed, to make the place of her refuge become her prison. In truth, my Lord, continued she, the virtue of this Princess, and the services of Ibrahim, should deserve methinks, that our Customs should not be so much considered as their Interests. Soliman, not being able to answer the *Sultana Asteria*, grew angry with her; you have your Reasons, said he unto her, and I have mine; but if I had none, I would not for all that but be obeyed: Go then, and do what I command you, for otherwise you alone shall be responsible to me for Isabella's actions. Asteria seeing so much anger in Soliman's eyes, no longer doubted but that this passion was occasioned by another, so that fearing to hurt Isabella in thinking to serve her, she besought the *Sultan* to pardon her, and went away, after she had promised him to perform his pleasure.

The *Sultana Asteria*, being extremely afflicted for the commission she had received, went to Isabella's lodging, who seeing her enter with an extraordinary melancholy; Is it in your person, or in mine, said she unto her, that I am unhappy? I could wish, answered Asteria

embracing her, that you were in a condition of having no other grief, but that of the compassion which others miseries might give you, but Fortune will not treat you so favorably. *Isabella* suddenly blushed, and according to the custom of those that love well, she presently thought of that which was most dear to her, and imagined that some misfortune was befallen the *grand Visier*; so that beholding *Asteria* with an extraordinary attention, Is there, said she unto her, any unlucky accident hapned unto *Ibrahim*? hath he been beaten? is he dead, or a prisoner? No, answered *Asteria*, there is not any of that arrived; and that which I am to tell you, is indeed enough to make you murmur, but not enough to possess you with any extream grief; and if you discern any melancholy in my face, it is rather a mark of the part which I take in all that concerns you, then of the greatness of your misfortune. And then *Asteria*, not to hold her longer in pain, recounted unto her all the conversation which she had had with *Soliman*, and thereupon advised her to comply so far with him. For truly, said she unto her, either the *Sultan* does love you, or he does not; if he does not, and that he desires you should abide here, to satisfy *Roxelana*, and the custom, you are not to oppose his pleasure: and contrarily, if it be true, that he is in passion for you, the less occasion you shall give him to be carried to some violence, will be the most advantageous and sure. A Lover in choller (as I conceive) is more to be feared then another; for whereas choller doth most commonly banish away respect from the Souls of those whom it possesseth, one must forbear as long as is possible from exposing ones self to the hazard of angering an amorous Prince, who being able to do whatsoever he will, is always in an estate to be feared. You have reason, generous *Asteria*, said *Isabella* unto her, but what will my friends say, when they shall see that I do not visit them any more, and that I abandon them? Will they not have cause to think, that the magnificences of the *Serraglio* have blinded me? and it may be something yet worse. No, no, said *Asteria*, for we will cause them to be advertised of the truth of the matter, or at leastwise of the pretext which they have made use of to retain you here. But, added *Isabella*, what end can I foresee of my misery? The return of *Ibrahim*, replied *Asteria*, will make it cease; and he shall no sooner be at *Constantinople*, but the *Sultan* will no longer have other then just desires, and you shall recover your liberty. After that these two virtuous persons had entertained themselves a while, they parted; *Asteria* promising *Isabella*, if she would write to her Friends, to see her Letter conveyed unto them the next morning, as indeed she failed not to do.

This news strangely surprized all this fair Troop; but whereas the pretext, whereof *Soliman* made use, was not without probability, and that *Isabella* by her Letter had rendred it more likely unto them, to the end she might keep them from conceiving any thing to her disadvantage, they believed it to be as it was represented unto them, without seeking for any other explication thereof; comforting themselves in some sort with the hope which *Isabella* gave them of visiting them sometimes: For to make their separation the easier, though she could not hear from *Ibrahim* as yet, she left not for all that to assure them that he would be back in a little space; and so consequently they should ere long be in an estate of going to see their Country again.

This hope failed not to work the effect which *Isabella* expected from it; all this company was more jovial and more sociable, and whereas *Ibrahim's* Palace was wonderful fair, and that they were served there by the *Grand Signior's* order exceeding magnificently, their exile no doubt was supportable enough; sometimes they walked in the Garden; sometimes they romed up and down in the Grot, or sat in the shade of the Grove of Orange Trees, which was hard by; other-whiles they bestowed their time in the Gallery of the *Turkish* Emperors; and many times also in the Library, where they met with that which diverted their sorrow, or contented their curiosity. But one day when as they met all together in *Ibrahim's* Cabinet, after they had called to mind all their mishaps, and had admired by what adventure Fortune had conducted them into a place, where they had encountered *Isabella*, passing insensibly from one discourse to another, they bethought them that they had not been yet acquainted with that which had arrived to the Marquiss. Whereupon *Leonida* demanded of him why he had not related it unto them? You have shewed your selves so little curious of it, replied he, that I am resolved not to give you this satisfaction without some recompence. You have too noble a Soul, said *Leonida* to him smiling, to be mercenary; and then again, what can you ask of exiled persons, and such too as do not enjoy their liberty? To put you yet into  
more



more pain, replied the Marquess, I must tell you, that you alone can pay me in that manner as I desire; and it is you alone that can oblige me to recount my last adventures. If you do not explain your self better, answered *Leonida*, we shall not make up our match; but whereas the entertainment of the company is exceeding dear to me, tell me, what recompence do you demand? I desire, said he unto her, that before I relate that unto you which befell me, you will let us know what discontent that was which made you quit *Genova* to go to *Albengua*; what moved you to marry a man whom you did not love, and banish one whom you did not hate: For to speak freely unto you, it hath been imparted unto me at *Genova* in such a manner, as gives me a great deal of curiosity, and makes me desire to know whether I have been told the truth or no. As for me, said *Hipolita*, I have intended a long time since to intreat *Leonida* she would acquaint me with it; but Fortune hath so cruelly persecuted us, as we have scarce had any leisure but to feel new miseries, without remembering those which were already past. Certainly, added *Doria*, if I durst joyn my intreaties to those of the Company, I would request *Leonida* to grant us this favor. For my part, said *Sophronia*, I have not the same curiosity, for I am so fully informed of this History, as I do not know any thing that hath hapned to my self better. If the company, said *Leonida* to her, will needs know it, I shall make advantage of it if you will take the pains to relate it unto them; for as for me, I am fully resolved not to expose my self a second time to the vexation which this relation hath been the cause of to me. Do not reproach my old error unto me, said *Alphonso* interrupting her; and to deliver you from this uneasiness, and for fear lest I should find my self too weak to hear a thing without grief which hath given me so much, I will go and walk in the Garden, or entertain my self with a Book.

*Alphonso*, after he had said this, went without attending *Leonida*'s answer forth of the Cabin, and would not return thither again, though the Marquess called him more then once. His absence did not for all that change *Leonida*'s opinion, and whatsoever could be said unto her, she would not recount her own History; but she requested *Sophronia* to take the trouble of it upon her. This fair maid, seeing that the whole company desired this complacency of her, resolved to satisfy them, after she had prayed *Leonida*, that if she forgot any thing she would put her in mind of it; and *Leonida* having promised her to do so, she then made the Marquess to swear, that as soon as ever she had finished her relation, he should begin his: And when as he had assured her that he would not fail therein, and had told her that he had at least wife as much desire to recount his adventures unto her, as she had to know them, *Sophronia* began, and spake in this sort.

### The History of LEONIDA.

THE Adventures of *Leonida* have something so extraordinary in them, as they are to be related in somewhat a particular manner; for to render the recital of them the more agreeable and intelligible unto you, I am not to say any thing to you yet of the beginning of her life, of her first Conquests, nor of her marriage, but only acquaint you with *Alphonso*'s love, which I believe took its beginning presently upon *Justiniano*'s return, and a year and half after the death of *Leonida*'s husband. This Conquest without doubt was not disagreeable unto her; for, as you know, *Alphonso* hath merit, wisdom, and wit; and if after these, which certainly are the greatest and most essential good things, it is fit to consider the rest, you are not ignorant that *Alphonso* is rich enough, and of a race illustrious enough to touch a heart on the side of interest and glory, as well as of affection. In fine, whether *Leonida* were capable of love or ambition, she found in the person of *Alphonso*, wherewith to beget these two passions in her heart, and wherewith to render them excusable. If *Leonida* were not present, I would tell you, that whereas she hath a great deal of wit, Love in this encounter was introduced into her Soul rather by Reason, then by sense and inclination.

But not to stand upon small things, you shall understand that *Alphonso*, who you have always seen so assidual in serving her, after he had rendered her all the testimonies of love, that a worthy person can desire of a man infinitely passionate, he knew at length from her own mouth, that his vows were not rejected, and that he was not forbidden to hope. After the day that she had permitted him to entertain her openly with his passion, it is certain that *Leo-*  
*nida*

*nida* had continually all the complacency for him, which a vertuous woman was capable of. And whereas you know that *Leonida* hath naturally a gallant wit, and a very jovial humor, she oftentimes gave him the pleasure to hear her jeer his Rivals in his presence, and an hundred times made her Conquests serve for his glory. *Alphonso* then lived in this sort with more content, then the extream love which he bore her seemed to permit; for, as I have heard it said, this passion seldom leaves any great tranquillity in the Souls of those whom it possesseth.

But for *Alphonso*, he was the most generous Lover that ever was; his inclination had not been blind; all the world approved of his choyce; he loved an amiable person, and was beloved of her; she took care not to give him any cause of jealousy; his very Rivals served for his delight and felicity by the usage that she gave them; his father did not contradict his affection; *Leonida* was of a free condition, and might dispose of her self; yea and to keep him from being deprived of the pleasure of hoping for the possession of a person that could render him contented, *Leonida*, to assure her self yet further of his love, would not so much as let him make use of his friends for the motioning of their marriage. In so happy an estate methinks it is hard to imagine what could trouble his felicity, especially when I shall have told you, that *Leonida* used him still as favorably as before, and without any change arriving in her, yet there arrived a change in him. I well perceive, continued *Sophronia*, after she had been a while without speaking, that you cannot divine what it was which troubled *Alphonso's* happiness; and certainly I cannot think it strange, seeing according to my sense this adventure is so extraordinary, as it is impossible to conjecture it. You shall understand then, that one day *Alphonso* being gone to see a kinsman of his, whereas the person beloved is a part of all conversations, and a man infinitely amorous speaks without choyce and judgment of his Mistress to every one; he came to speak of *Leonida* to his kinsman, though to say truth he was not worthy of that honor; for this man is both malicious and blockish; According then to his humor and stupidity he rudely asked of *Alphonso*, whether he believed that he had been the first which ever had been affected of *Leonida*?

Now whereas *Alphonso* had been a long time in the voyage, from whence *Justiniano* brought him back, he had understood nothing of what had hapned to *Leonida*, for being fallen in love with her presently after his return, no body had been so uncivil as to say any such thing to him. It was not, as you shall know by the sequel of this History, because that which arrived unto *Leonida* was not glorious for her; but because love is a passion that renders the spirit so sensible and delicate, as it is impossible to hear that the person whom one loves, should have affection for another, without some sense of grief. And verily *Alphonso* tried it but too well in this occasion; he believed at first notwithstanding, that this was an effect of the malice of his kinsman, who regarding his succession, had perchance a design to do what he could for the rendring *Leonida* less amiable: but when as continuing his incivility he had told him, that one, named *Octavio*, of the House of the *Pallavicini*, and who was dead since, had in times past loved her, and that he had been infinitely loved of her, he did not believe that this man durst have told him things so precisely, if they had not been true.

At length *Alphonso*, having made his visit, retired with some uneasiness; nevertheless, whereas he had not yet lost his Reason, he did not find that he had any cause to complain of *Leonida*, for that she had been loved of *Octavio*, or for that she had loved him in a time when as he was not known to her. For, said he, I should be unjust to desire, that the eyes of *Leonida* should not have begun to make Conquests before they captivated me; and I should be unreasonable to desire also that she should have been absolutely insensible of the affection of a man, who it may be was of more worth then my self. Now whereas Love is ingenious to torment those which are under his Empire, *Alphonso* did not complain of having a Rival, that had not been hated, but for that *Leonida* had made a secret of it to him: This uneasiness was not for all that very strong, but you shall understand by the sequel of my discourse, that it carried him to another, which put him to a great deal of pain.

*Alphonso* had no sooner the commodity to speak with *Leonida* in private, but making shew as if it were without design he took occasion to name *Octavio*; this name, which had been so dear to *Leonida*, could not be heard of her without touching her heart; and her heart could not be moved, without giving some marks of it in her face: For her Sense preventing her Reason, she blusht and sigh'd both at an instant; howbeit desiring to conceal this disorder from

from *Alphonso*, she layd her hand over her eyes, and endeavoring to change discourse, he was thereby perswaded, that this touched her heart exceeding sensibly; augmented his curiosity; and made him resolve to testify it to her plainly.

In pursuance of so precipitous a design, *Alphonso*, without deferring the execution of it any further, said unto her, I would fain, fair *Leonida*, be assured, that after my being dead for your service, my name should be so happy as to make you blush and sigh, as the blessed *Ottavio's* hath done. You should do better, answered *Leonida* sighing a second time, to call him unfortunate *Ottavio*. Whosoever hath been loved of you, replied *Alphonso*, could never be unhappy, notwithstanding any thing that could arrive to him otherwise. I wish for all that, said *Leonida*, that you never make tryal of the like felicity: But, continued she with an altered countenance, why have you spoken to me of *Ottavio*? Let us leave him to enjoy that rest which he could never finde in this life; let us not trouble ours in troubling his; and let us, I pray you, have so much regard to him, as to leave his ashes in peace. Please you to pardon me, said *Alphonso* then unto her, if without losing the respect which I owe to you, I dare crave of you, for a mark of your affection, that you will take the pains to relate exactly unto me, that which *Ottavio* in times past bore unto you, that which you bore to him, and briefly all that befell you till the time of his death; otherwise you will give me cause to complain of you. *Leonida* would not at first accord to *Alphonso* that which he desired of her; for as she knew how highly her heart had been touched for *Ottavio*, so she knew likewise that it would be impossible for her to remember all their felicities, and all their misfortunes, without a great deal of unquietness; wherefore she excused herself from it as much as she could; nevertheless seeing that *Alphonso* took this refusal for a wrong, she promised to grant him his desire, so as he would give her some time; and in this sort many days past away, *Alphonso* being unable to make her keep her word with him. But at length, his curiosity being grown the stronger by *Leonida's* resistance, he testified unto her one day so seriously, that he should hold himself disobliged by her, if she continued in the resolution which she seemed to have, as having appointed him a time to come to her for that purpose, she resolved to content him. If one had then demanded of *Alphonso* why his curiosity was so strong, he could not have told, at least-wise he hath acknowledged so much to *Leonida* since: For whereas he was perswaded that she had loved *Ottavio*, both by that which his Kinsman had told him, by that which he had also learned other-where concerning it, and by the marks which he had seen of it in her countenance, if in her speech nevertheless she had disguised the truth, that lying would have given him a great deal of unquietness; and yet he felt in his heart, that if contrarily she should avouch unto him, that she had loved him very much, this discourse would not please him. But at last, carryed by a secret motion, which he could not resist, he went with an extream impatience to the assignation which *Leonida* had given him. He found her more sad then ordinary; for whereas her imagination was filled with displeasing ideas, that charming and jovial ay, which she hath usually in her face, was somewhat changed. After she had caused *Alphonso* to sit down, and had told him, that she was going to render him the greatest proof of her affection that he had ever yet received, she was ready to impart unto him what her fortune had been, when as *Alphonso*, before he would give her leisure so to do, conjured her once again not to omit any part of all that which had arrived unto her. But he had no need to intreat her thereunto, for *Leonida* had no sooner began to speak, but forgetting that she was recounting her History to her Lover, she suffered herself to be charmed with her own relation; and shewing grief or joy, according as the matters which she related gave her occasion for, she omitted not any thing of all that happened unto her. She imparted to him, that *Ottavio's* house being neer to hers, she had no sooner opened her eyes, but she was acquainted with him; and that he had no sooner beheld her in his tenderest infancy, but he was pleased with her. That their Fathers being friends, they had a thousand times seen one another in that innocent age, wherein decency did not require one yet to live with so great a restraint; and that then, without knowing what it was to love, they forbore not carrying affection to each other. She told him further, that in this age, wherein feigning and dissimulation have no part, and wherein the inclinations of the Soul appear such as they are, so great a correspondence was seen betwixt *Ottavio's*, and hers, as no difference could be found therein. But, said she to *Alphonso* sighing, neither he nor I knew, that this sympathy, which so straitly united our hearts and mindes, should disunite us eternally;



nally ; that this springing love should one day be the cause of his death, and cost me so many tears ; and without dreaming of any such thing, the pleasure alone of seeing one another and talking together, took up all our Souls. We knew not as yet for all that, added she, what those thoughts were which we had one for the other ; neither did we perceive them, till decency would not permit us to see one another so often. The privation of a good makes us know the greatness of it, and the design which we had to conceal our affection began to make me suspect ~~that~~ there was something in it more than good-will : I did then all that I could to disengage my minde from a passion, which I had always heard to be very dangerous ; but whereas it was more ancient in me than Reason, Reason was not strong enough to chase it out of my Soul ; but contrarily it was she which engaged me further in it, and that speaking to me of *Othavio*, drew the picture of the worthiest man that ever was. She told him moreover that, which she felt in her heart, when as by any reason of honor, or business, he was constrained to be absent from *Genova* ; the small delight she took in Assemblies when he was not there ; and how much she enforced her self to seem merry during his absence. She acquainted him also, how exact *Othavio* was in following her pleasure in all things ; what care he used to take from her all occasion of suspecting his fidelity ; and with what discretion he still demeaned himself towards her all the time of his serving her.

But, said *Alphonso* interrupting her, had you never any of those petty disorders, which augment love, rather than diminish it ? No, no, answered *Leonida*, *Othavio* never gave me cause to complain ; besides, our affection had no need of that artifice to render it the stronger ; since it is certain that never any person loved more perfectly than we. *Alphonso* would fain have assured *Leonida*, that he loved her yet better than *Othavio* had loved her, but his minde was so unquiet, as he could scarce speak. And then again, *Leonida* gave him not leisure to do it ; for she was so attentive in exactly relating all that had past betwixt *Othavio* and her, as she never took heed of all the several changes which her discourse made in his face. She continued then telling him, that after an indifferent long love, *Othavio*, having obtained permission of her to demand her of her parents, believed that his happiness was so sure, as he had no doubt at all of it ; for whereas his Father and hers had always lived as good friends together, and their fortunes were equal, he could foresee no impediment in it. But he knew not, said *Leonida* then looking on *Alphonso*, that a passion less noble than that which reigned in his heart opposed his ; and that avarice, which is far more powerful in the minds of old men, than love is in that of young folks, should destroy his and my hopes, and should finish our love by his death, for to settle a grief in my soul, which I shall conserve there eternally.

In sequel hereof, *Leonida* likewise declared to *Alphonso*, that one named *Livio*, of the Family of the *Frigozes*, a man very rich in the goods of fortune, but very poor in those of the minde, being touched with her beauty, without any thought of discovering his affection to her, or gaining her favor, went the very same day that he fell in love with her, and demanded her of her Father ; prescribing him no other conditions, then that of giving him his daughter ; and that this old man, who knew *Livio's* wealth, being more mightily touched with the love of riches, then *Livio* was with the beauty of *Leonida*, had promised him to bestow her on him, and had engaged his word to him in such sort, as nothing was able to make him break it. So that *Othavio* arriving an hour after that *Livio* was gone, and making his proposition, he was wonderfully surprized to learn from *Leonida's* Father, that he had promised his daughter, and that it would be in vain for him to hope he might make him change his resolution. *Othavio* could not apprehend, that *Leonida* could be promised to any one, and she not know of it ; and on the other side, said *Leonida* to *Alphonso*, my fidelity was so well known to him, as he durst not doubt of it. In so deplorable an estate, continued she, he left my Father, and came and found me out at an Aunts of mine, who favored our affection, and where I had appointed him to come and acquaint me with the answer he should receive. But O Heaven ! cried she, I did not foresee that this sentence should be that of *Othavio's* death, and of the loss of all the felicity that I attended from it. He came then, but with so much melancholy in his face, as at first I made no doubt but that he had some fatal news to impart unto me : When as he had obtained permission of his grief to speak to me, and that he had acquainted me, that not onely I should not be his, but that I was already anothers, my affliction was so strong, that albeit *Othavio's* was exceeding great,

great, yet was it for him notwithstanding to comfort me. He told me that our misfortune it may be was not without remedy; and that if I had as much steadfastness, as he had love, I should vanquish my Fathers rigor. Alas! said I unto him sighing, I will not bewail the tears which I shall shed, if they may move his cruelty: but if they prove unprofitable to me, continued she, what arms shall I make use of? Of those of your constancy, said the infortunate *Ottavio* to me. Alas! cried *Leonida* in making this relation to *Alphonso*, how often have I repented me for not believing him! and rather chusing to obey my Father, then to be faithful to my Lover.

After this transport of affection, she recounted unto him all the resistances she had made against her Parents pleasure; her grief and despair, when as she saw that neither her prayers, her tears, nor her reasons could avail; the pain she was in not to grant *Ottavio* the permission to steal her away, or to rid himself of his Rival; and for a conclusion, she acquainted him, how the tyranny of her Father, and the consideration of her honor, having forced her to abandon *Ottavio*, to marry *Livio*, she saw her self in so deplorable an estate, as that which would have made up the bitterest grief of another, was her only consolation. For, said she to *Alphonso*, I had no other in this encounter, then to know that I married a man whom I could never love, no not if time should cure me of the passion I was in. It was not because I was not resolved for my own glory to live well with him, but because I had at least-wise this consolation, that *Ottavio* could not suspect me of infidelity; yea and I hoped too, that the more peevish *Livio* should be in his humor, and the more cankered and displeasing he should be, the more he would shorten my days. Judg then, said she unto him, if these were the most agreeable thoughts that I had, what the rest were.

But in the end, said *Alphonso* unto her, you married *Livio*? Yes, answered *Leonida* with tears; and the infortunate *Ottavio*, unable to resolve to see me in the possession of another, departed from *Genova* to go and seek for the death which he found soon after. For although I had done an hundred things beyond what was fitting, to oppose my self against my Fathers will, yet he believed with reason, notwithstanding he knew that I loved nothing but him, that seeing I could not be married without mine own consent, I should never have granted it, and that I should rather have resolved to dye, then abandon him. In so reasonable a thought, despair seizing on his soul, he went to the Emperors Army, and arrived there so unluckily, both for himself, and for me, and so opportunely for the design which he had, that the next day there was a battel fought; but before he entred into it, he desired to let me understand, that he went not so much to expose his life for the Emperor, as for the love of me. In saying so, *Leonida* let him see the Letter which *Ottavio* had written unto her; and whereas I have found it extremely moving, and that it is not long, I think if I do not remember the words precisely, I shall meet with at least-wise the true sense of it.

#### OCTAVIO'S Letter to LEONIDA.

Being unable either to cease from loving you, or to see you in the possession of another, I am going to seek for death, as the onely remedy which I can finde for my grief. And without complaining, or murmuring, I wish that the blood, which I am going to shed, may not cost you too many tears, and that the end of my life may not trouble the tranquillity of yours.

When as *Leonida* had made *Alphonso* read this doleful Letter, what shall I say to you more, said she unto him with her eyes full of tears? *Ottavio*, after he had given this Letter unto a man that served him, with an expresse charge to keep it, and deliver it to mine own hand, if he returned not from the danger, whereunto he was going to expose himself in that deadly battel. Whereupon he put himself into the foremost Troops, without any other Arms then his Sword, to the end he might not fail in his design: Yet left he not for all that to sell his life very dear to the Enemy, for he was seen to do wonders. But when he heard the retreat sounded, because night approached, far from retiring with the rest, he ran into the midst of a body of Horse, and defending himself no otherwise but to provoke them the

X x x

more,

more, and to keep himself from being made a prisoner, he fell at length, and found the death which he sought for. But alas, he dyed rather by my hand, then by the Enemies! After this, said she, I concealed our affection no longer, and I gave so many marks of despair, as my Father himself repented his having rendred me so unhappy. A while after, *Livia* fell sick and dyed, and left me the liberty to weep. Behold *Alphonso*, said *Leonida* unto him, with as much grief as if *Octavio* had dyed the very same day, that which you desired to know of me; but never speak to me more of him, I beseech you; for as you perceive there is a kinde of inhumanity in renewing so sensible an affliction in my heart, and for which I should never be comforted, had I not found in you some resemblance of the humor and disposition of the unfortunate *Octavio*.

*Leonida*, having finished her relation, and wiped her eyes, thanked *Alphonso* for the sadness which appeared in his countenance; imagining that it was an effect of the compassion he took of her past misfortunes. But she knew not, that the same which she believed to be a sense of pity, was one of the most violent jealousies that ever an amorous spirit was tormented with. For he so strongly perswaded himself that *Leonida* could not have the same apprehensions for him, which she had had for *Octavio*, as he went away from her, with an affliction the like whereof was never seen; yet he left her without giving her any notice thereof; but when he was come home, and had shut himself up alone in his Chamber, he ran over all that, word for word, which *Leonida* had told him, for they had made so powerful an impression in his Soul, as I think there elapsed not so much as one out of his memory. The more he considered the matter, the more was he confirmed in his jealousy. He remembered, that she had loved *Octavio*, out of sympathy, out of acknowledgment, and out of reason; that their affection began from their infancy, and continued all their life. Now, said he to himself, *Octavio* is not dead in the heart of *Leonida*, he lives there still in despite of me, and in such a manner as I cannot chase him from thence. He is not only dead to keep me from being revenged of him, but he is also dead to reign eternally in her soul. For, added he, quite transported with grief, unfortunate *Alphonso*, *Leonida* loves thee not neither but for the love of him; thou knowest it from her own mouth, and thou canst not doubt of thy unhappiness. Ah how wretched I am, continued he, and how imprudent have I been in laboring mine own ruine my self! If I had not been curious, I had been the happiest of men, and I have rendred my self the most unfortunate that ever was. That which I have seen, that which I have heard; the tears of *Leonida*, her sighs, her speeches, and the marks of love and tenderness, which she hath rendred to the memory of *Octavio*, have not only destroyed my present pleasures, and all those which I hoped for, but also my pleasures past. I no longer marvel, continued he, if *Leonida* ill-intreats my Rivals, it is for the ashes of *Octavio* that she hath this respect and this fidelity, and not for me. O blessed *Octavio*, cryed he, how worthy of envy is thy fate, and how unhappy is mine! This fantastical jealousy got such deep rooting in his heart, as he lost all rest, and almost his Reason. He wished sometimes that *Octavio* were still living, to the end he might be revenged of him; and by and by after in another quite contrary thought he considered, that if he had been living *Leonida* had never loved him, and in this manner he was in some sort glad that he was dead. Sometimes likewise, he comforted himself for that *Leonida* had not loved *Octavio* so much as to marry him against the will of her Parents; but then when he came to remember the last marks of affection which *Leonida* had received from *Octavio*, and what resentment she had testified for it in relating it to him, he entred into despair again. What can I do, said he, that can ever perswade her that I love her as well as *Octavio*? When I shall tell her, that she reigns in my heart; that her will may dispose of mine; that she is absolute Mistress of my soul; and in conclusion, that I live not but for her alone; with one onely word, she will set *Octavio* above all that I have said; for telling me that he dyed to testify his affection to her, is to tell me, that he hath incomparably done more then I; that he reigns always in her minde; and that I can never pretend to the first place.

Of all the thoughts that afflicted *Alphonso*, that of his not being loved by *Leonida* but because he had some conformity with *Octavio*, was the most inhumane; and the opinion which he had, that since this was the cause of his Mistress's affection, she could not therefore see him without remembering *Octavio*, troubled him in such sort, as he continued certain days unable to resolve to visit her. Nevertheless there were some instants, wherein he condemned his transports;



transports; and demanding of himself what he desired of *Leonida* in this occasion? he knew not very well what he would have; but these good intervals lasted so little a while, as it might have been said that he had no rest at all. If I had a Rival, said he sometimes, I should spend a part of my anguish in seeking occasion to hurt him, and to set him at odds with her I loved; and whom he should love; I should observe their actions, and knowing them, I should make use of them, either to trouble their designs, or to advance mine, or to cure me of my passion. But as the case stands, I have a secret Rival in the heart of *Leonida*; whom she entertains, I not knowing, nor being able to hinder it: She weeps, she sighs, even as she is talking with me, for this blessed Phantasm, which she loves still, and ever will love, since he is no longer in a condition to be able to do any thing that can displease her. As for me, said he, I am in far other terms; for I can easily displease her, and I cannot be agreeable unto her, but because I resemble *Octavio*. Who ever saw, continued he, such another thing? I am jealous, and yet I have no Rival; I am beloved, and yet I am not happy; and through an extravagancy of my destiny, or of my humor, I shall never be; let *Leonida* do what she will, it is impossible that ever I should be so. For say I should marry her, it would always run in my mind, that if by a miracle *Octavio* could rise again, she would abandon me for him: Yea and I believe, added he, that if she could buy his life with my death, she would consent unto it with joy.

This deadly thought seized so strongly on *Alphonso's* heart, as there were certain moments in which he had as much hatred for *Leonida*, as he was capable of. For whereas this extraordinary jealousy agitated all his passions, and principally hate and anger, not finding a nearer object to employ them upon, he had for her no doubt very different thoughts, and wholly replenished with violence. Love remained nevertheless still victorious over all the rest, or to speak more rightly, all those several passions were but effects of that same.

But in the end, after *Alphonso* had spent some days in the entertainment of his anguish of mind, without seeing *Leonida*, the extreme love which he bore her, carried him to her whether he would or no. He hath told her since, that being gone out of his lodging, with an intent to walk in some place out of the way, that he might muse by himself better than at home, and exactly run over all the favors which *Leonida* had conferred on him, to the end he might compare them with those which *Octavio* had received from her; he acquainted her, I say, that against his purpose, and without being aware of it, his steps conducted him to her door, where he no sooner was, but without consulting what he was to do, he knocked there, and understanding that *Leonida* was within, he went up directly to her chamber without advertising her of it, though it was not his custom so to do; for *Leonida* seldom ever saw him at her house, when he was alone there; but at this time *Alphonso* was not in a case regularly to observe good manners. When as *Leonida* first saw him, she received him somewhat coldly; for whereas he had been a good while without sending to her, or enquiring after her, she thought it was but just to use him so.

As for *Alphonso*, how disordered soever his mind was, yet durst he not make shew at the beginning of that which he had in his heart; for respect and Reason had so much power over him, as he could not resolve to discover his suffering to a person who caused it, until he should be extremely pressed thereunto by her. After *Leonida* had received him somewhat coldly, and had observed the change which jealousy had made in *Alphonso's* face, the anger wherein she was in for his neglect turned into unquietness. She was afraid lest some mishap had befallen him; or through some adventure, which was unknown to her, *Alphonso* should accuse her unjustly of some defect of affection: In this belief she used him more favorably; asked of him whether his melancholy was feigned or true; and urging him to answer her, she forced him to tell her a lye, in such perplexed and obscure terms, as she doubted not but that he had some unpleasant thought in his mind. She employed all her address then to discover it by the several questions she asked him: but seeing she nothing prevailed thereby, and that the more she demanded of him, the less she was satisfied, she did him the favor to deal with him as a Mistress, and absolutely commanded him to tell her what that trouble was which he had in his Soul. You have assured me an hundred times, said she unto him, that I could do any thing with you, and that your heart was not so much in your own dispose as in mine, wherefore then, if you have not deceived me, do you not obey me? When as I promised you that which you say, replied *Alphonso*, I hoped that I might, if not reign in your heart, at least wife not be surmounted there by any body.

*Leonida* perceiving then, that jealousy was the disease that tormented him, and knowing that she had given him no reasonable occasion for it, fell a smiling, and reaching him her hand with that gallantry, which is so natural unto her, Afflict not your self, said this amiable creature, nor fear that I will be displeased to understand that you are jealous; I know, said she unto him still smiling, that we fear to lose the good which is extream dear to us; that jealousy is an undoubted sign of a strong passion, and of the merit of the person whom one loves, because if she were not amiable she would have no Lovers, and consequently she would give no cause of jealousy. And I am the less offended, continued she, to see you touched with this passion, in regard it is easie for me to help you. For to speak more seriously to you, added *Leonida*, you have no Rivals which can keep me from giving you the pleasure when you will to hear me termed by them, cruel, inhumane, rigorous, and inexorable. In fine, said she unto him, you have a malady, whereof you shall no sooner have acquainted me with the cause, but you shall be cured of it.

I do not think, answered *Alphonso*, with as much anguish, as *Leonida* had gallantry, that it is as easie for you to restore tranquillity unto my Soul, as it was easie for you to deprive me of it: for, continued he, I have no Rivals, whom you can ill intreat; and yet I am the most jealous that ever was. I do not understand you, said *Leonida* to him with more coldness then before; and if you do not explain your self better, I shall believe that either you have lost your Reason, or that with a premeditated design you purpose to break off with me: But take heed *Alphonso*, of leaving me long in this suspicion, for fear lest, whereas I am proud and disdainful, I do not prevent you, and it be too late for you then to have recourse to my goodness.

*Alphonso*, surprized both with *Leonida's* discourse, and the manner wherewith she spake, resolv'd at length freely to tell her the cause of his grief. I know very well, said he unto her, that I am going to speak in vain for my self, and indeed it is rather out of despair then Reason that I am entred to obey you. Know then, continued he, that I am jealous, and that I shall be so eternally, since the Rival that surmounts me in your heart can never dye; for to conceal the truth from you no longer, the blessed *Osavio* is the object of my jealousy. The tears which you shed for his memory are the cause of those which I shall pour forth all my life time; the sighs which you fetch for him, shall always make me sigh, and his past felicity shall beget the misery of all the rest of my days. You have loved him so much, continued he, and you love him so much still, that I can find no place in your Soul: He must reign there alone, for indeed you do not suffer me there but only to conserve the memory of him the better. Ah cruel man I cryed *Leonida* hearing him speak in this sort, is it possible that you have the inhumanity to open the Tomb of *Osavio* to persecute me? and in stead of weeping with me, or at leastwise of bemoaning and comforting me, you are so audacious as to give me marks of your hatred to a person, whom I have so much loved, and whose memory is still so dear unto me; and yet in grateful as you are, said she to him, you owe the affection which I bear you to that little resemblance you have with *Osavio*; but as this unfortunate creature hath been the cause of it, so shall he likewise give an end to it: for in regard of that which you have said to me, I ordain you never to speak to me, and never to see me more. Why do not you shut your self up then in *Osavio's* Tomb, answered *Alphonso*, since you can love none but him? Reply no further to me, inhumane that you are, said she to him, and take from my sight the persecutor of *Leonida*, and the enemy of *Osavio*.

*Alphonso* seeing *Leonida* in such choller, and not able to give her a good reason, either for the maintaining of his error, or for the obtaining of his pardon, went away more jealous then before. Alas, said he to himself, how sensible she is on that side! what a powerful mark of her love is her choller! if she had loved me, she would have used me after another manner; she would have taken pity of my weakness; she would have given me some new proof of her affection; but she could not disguise her heart; all her thoughts have been for *Osavio*, and all her words have been against me. In this opinion *Alphonso* got him home, with an intent to obey *Leonida* exactly, and never to see her again. As indeed he came no more at her, and that he might avoyd meeting with her any where, he feigned himself sick. *Leonida*, seeing to what a madness this ill-grounded jealousy carried him, desired at leastwise to conceal it from the eyes of the world; and to that effect she advanced a voyage which she was to make to *Albengua*, where, as you know, she hath some means and affairs. She departed then from

Genova,

*Genova*, so incensed against *Alphonso*, that she could not so much as resolve to do him the favor to complain of him by a Letter. Her departure did not cure *Alphonso* of his frensie, but contrarily it augmented it; for he beleev'd that *Leonida* did not abandon *Genova*, but to bewail *Octavio* with the more liberty. This thought for all that was not the most powerful in his heart; the impossibility of seeing *Leonida*, redoubled his desire of it, and love being stronger still then jealousy, he purpos'd an hundred times to go to *Albengna*, to cast himself at *Leonida*'s feet; to crave her pardon; and to obtain an oblivion of his fault of her. But no sooner did the Phantasm of *Octavio* present it self to his imagination, no sooner did he call the tears and sighs of *Leonida* to remembrance, but he re-entr'd into his former furies. He made an hundred impossible wishes, which destroyed one another, and led a very irksom and melancholick life. During that time he wrote divers Letters to *Leonida*, according to the divers thoughts wherein he was; but when as she perceived so great an inequality in his mind, and such marks of an unsted Reason, she returned no answer thereunto; and although she lov'd *Alphonso* so much, as to be extremely grieved to lose him, yet could she not imagine how she might cure him of this fantasie: so that finding no expedient for it, and being very much incensed against him, she liv'd with so much anguish, that if *Alphonso* had known her most secret thoughts, he would have been healed of his jealousy, and would have been assur'd that she did not grieve more for the death of *Octavio*, then for the loss of his affection. It was in this sort then that *Leonida* and *Alphonso* liv'd until that unfortunate day, wherein we were constrained to forsake *Genova*. And I make no doubt but that *Alphonso*'s despair induc'd him to follow us, as well as the generosity which he testified to us in this occasion, in not abandoning us in the sorrow we were in, since he absented himself from a place where *Leonida* was not. You know in like manner, what that Tempest was, which luckily for him drove us to *Albengna*; neither are you ignorant how the compassion and generosity of *Leonida* oblig'd her to imbarque her self with us: But doubtless you do not know, what *Alphonso*'s and her thoughts were, when as, after they had had the goodness to lament our misfortunes, they had the leisure to think of the terms wherein they stood. For whereas we had scarcely been upon the Sea without a Tempest, without fear of death, and without extreme sorrow for the loss we sustained there, they had never talk'd together in private during this troublesome Navigation; but when we were at *Marocco*, and at those times, wherein we had the liberty to see and speak to one another, *Leonida*, who desir'd to conceal the terms wherein she was with *Alphonso*, entertaining him with indifferent things, found that his understanding was as deeply wounded at *Marocco*, as it had been at *Genova*, with this difference nevertheless, that at the first time he spake to her he mov'd her to anger, and the second time he mov'd her to pity. What is the reason, said he to her with tears, that I can neither continue loving you, nor begin to hate you? and wherefore, since you are capable of some affection for me, must I not only share it with another, but I must owe it wholly to him? and without being able, either to change my passion, or revenge my self, I must eternally be the most wretched of men.

He that imposeth a necessity on himself, replied *Leonida*, cannot complain with reason, seeing he himself is the cause of the evil that arriveth to him. Ah, cry'd *Alphonso*, that you said true! and that I could dispose of my thoughts! Yes, *Leonida*, said he unto her, would I could love you less, to the end I might love you always, and live happily in sharing your affection with another: But to endure, that in speaking to me you should always think of *Octavio*, that whilst I sigh for love, you should sigh for affliction, and having absolutely given you my heart, I should have but a piece of yours, is that which I cannot suffer. But how is it possible, said *Leonida* interrupting him, unjust and cruel *Alphonso*, that a man, who is no longer in an estate to have any affection for me, can give you jealousy? You do not comprehend, replied he, what is the true cause of jealousy; the affection which any one should bear you, would not displease me; it is of your thoughts that I am jealous, and not of those of others. I would be willing that you should be lov'd, and that you should be ador'd; but I would have you love none but me. I should not care to see you have an hundred Lovers, provided I were alone in your heart; I do not hate my Rivals in their person, but in yours only; it is you that can increase or diminish the hatred which I have for them, by the good or bad usage you shall give them; and whereas you may love *Octavio* as well, though he is not in being, as if he were living, you are not to think it strange that I am jealous. *In fine,*

continued



continued he, you reduce me to those terms, that I had rather you should not love me at all, so as you would love nothing, then to love me as you do, in loving *Octavio* better than me. But *Octavio* is no longer in being, said *Leonida* to him sighing. Yet he is still in your Soul, answered *Alphonso*, and this sigh which you fetched testifies it but too much unto me. No, no, *Leonida*, said he unto her, that which I suffer is without remedy; one may sometimes make present misshaps cease, and decline those which may happen unto us in time to come, but when we are unhappy by the remembrance of that which is past, death alone can finish our pains: It is not in your power to forbear sighing, shedding of tears, and to say all, loving of *Octavio* more than *Alphonso*, wherefore marvel not if it be not in your power to cure my mind of the jealousy that possesseth it.

It was much after this sort that the first conversation ended, which *Leonida* and *Alphonso* had together at *Marocco*. But whereas *Leonida* affected him, and saw the estate wherunto this fantastical jealousy reduced him, she opened her heart to me, and having asked my advice what she should do, I counselled her, I think, as she desired to be, and as indeed was just. I told her then, that she was to do all that she could to set his heart at rest; that this capriciousness proceeding merely from an excess of love, she was to pardon so bad an effect, since it came from so noble a cause, and labor to restore his Reason to him, which she had deprived him of. I agree with you, said she unto me, that *Alphonso* is to be eased, but in what manner do you think I may do it? if he were jealous of the *French* Marquis, of *Doria*, or of any other, it would not be difficult for me to satisfy him. The coldness which I would shew to them, should soon set him at rest; and if there were no other means for it, I would deprive my self absolutely of their company to preserve it; but as the case stands I know no remedy for it. It is from my self that *Alphonso* hath learnt the affection which I have born to *Octavio*, I cannot unsay it; and if I should be so base as to swear to him that I have not loved him so much as he imagines, I should tell a lye to no purpose; it being very certain that he would give more credit to my tears, then to my latter speeches; and then again, that is a thing I could never do. Counsel me then, continued she, how I shall carry my self. I profess unto you, that I was then very much perplexed what counsel to give her, for I saw no assured means that could cure *Alphonso*: Nevertheless after I had mused a little, my opinion was, that the only thing which she could do was, to endeavor to persuade *Alphonso*, that she loved him as much as she had loved *Octavio*, as indeed, I think I did not oblige her to tell an untruth.

At first *Leonida* told me that this would serve to no purpose, but finding nothing to stand with more reason, she resolved to follow my advice: So that the first time she could speak with *Alphonso* in private, his melancholy still increasing, she demanded of him, whether he were resolved to live long in that manner? Truly no, answered he, for I do not doubt, but from the misery which I feel, death will come shortly and deliver me. Is it not possible, said she, that *Alphonso* should make use of his Reason in this encounter? I perceive very well, answered he, that you have some pity of the hurt you have done me, but know that it is not that which I desire, in the estate wherein *Octavio* is I could endure that you should have compassion for him, provided you would have affection for me; but I could not endure, that you should have love for him, &c have nothing but pity for *Alphonso*. What change, said she unto him, is there come to me, since the time that you were contented with my affection? have I loved *Octavio* more, or have I loved you less then I did? in no wise at all, I swear unto you. Wherefore then since I am not changed for you, are you changed for me? If I had known my unhappiness sooner, replied he, I should have been less unhappy; it being certain, that I should not have engaged my self so straitly in the love of a person, that could never love so much as she had loved. It is true, said she unto him, that I have loved *Octavio* as much as I was able to love in the age wherein I was; and it is true also that his memory is dear and precious unto me: but who hath told you that I have not the same thoughts for you? I know it from your own mouth, replied he; for in having assured me that you loved me less then he, you have let me understand that you have done that for his consideration, which you have never done for mine. You loved him as soon as ever you opened your eyes, said *Alphonso* unto her; he was agreeable unto you as soon as ever you knew him; and your Reason hath told you since, that you would have done out of choyce, what you had done out of inclination; he hath had the happiness to please you always, without ever giving you cause to be displeased; you have sighed for him

in divers occasions; you have many times bewailed his absence as much, as I could pretend to be lamented by you, if I had lost my life in your service, and for my last unhappiness he dyed in speaking to you of love. It may be, if he had lived longer, you would have repented the tears, which now you shed for him; but as the case stands, there is a shadow of *Octavio* remaining, which is in stead of his person to you, that possessor your soul, and will not suffer you to have such thoughts for another.

How unjust you are, said *Leonida* unto him, to speak to me thus! howsoever, since I am resolved to try whether I can draw your mind out of that disorder, whereunto this strange jealousy hath carryed it, promise me, that if by my discourse I can let you see, that you have received more testimonies of my affection, then I have given to the unfortunate *Octavio*, you will then repent you of your error, restore tranquillity to your soul, and leave mine in rest. *Alphonso*, after he had withstood it a while, in saying that she propounded an impossible thing to him, and by consequence he was not to answer unto it, resolved for all that to hear her, and promised her that if she kept her word with him, he would crave pardon for his fault, and would live better for the future. After they had made this agreement; tell me, *Alphonso*, said she unto him, if I can make it appear to you, that since the day wherein I permitted you to leave me, you never have had occasion to complain of me; and if I can shew you, that the unhappy *Octavio*, if he were living, might with justice accuse me of little affection; would you not have reason then to be contented? That will not be enough, answered *Alphonso*, for it may be that you have never given me just cause to complain, and that you have given *Octavio* occasion so to do, and yet for all that I cannot be happy: But that which I desire is, you would let me know, that you have not done any thing for *Octavio*, which you would not have done for me, and that I think will not be easie for you to perform.

I will peradventure shew you yet more, replied *Leonida*, and to begin to cure you, is it not true, *Alphonso*, that the original of the affection which I bear to you, is far more advantageous to you, then that which I have born *Octavio*? when I began to wish him well, continued she, I was in an age, wherein perchance that which I then called love, was none; wherein I counted for great services petty things, which now I should not regard; and wherein I acted without knowledge, and without judgment. I, said *Alphonso* interrupting her, but not without inclination, which is that which renders affections the stronger and more durable. I agree with you therein, said she unto him, but howsoever I had this inclination in an age, wherein at first my reason did not combat with it, for I had none at that time. That is the cause, said *Alphonso*, why it is so well settled in your soul. And that is the cause, replied *Leonida*, why I do not know whether it were any whit strong, since I did not make resistance against it. But as for you *Alphonso*, when as you began to please me, and that my inclination carryed me to like of your services, I was in an age wherein my Reason was in a condition to oppose it self against it; as indeed, it did resist it as much as it could. You had to vanquish in my heart, not onely that wisdom and that modesty, which permits not a woman to engage her self lightly in affection to a man; but had also the memory of *Octavio* to surmount, in forcing me, if one may say so, to commit a greater infidelity against him, then when as I abandoned him to obey my Father; seeing it is certain that I married *Livio* without loving him, and that I could not keep the promise which I had made to my self, never to love any thing more after the death of *Octavio*.

This discourse is very subtil, replied *Alphonso*; but have you not told me that you did not love me but because I resembled *Octavio*? I have indeed told you, answered she, that by this resemblance you comforted me for the loss of *Octavio*; but not, that this conformity, which you have with him, was the onely cause of the good-will which I bear you. And certes, to speak truly, since I must retract what I have said with shame, if there had been no other then this reason, and that my inclination, your services, and your merit, had not constrained me; I should rather have avoyded the sight of you, then sought it: It was not yet so long since I lost *Octavio*, that I could behold his picture without tears and sorrow; I should rather then have shunned you with care, then received you favorably, had I not been forced by a power, which I could not resist. You make me new wounds, said *Alphonso* thereupon to her, in seeking to cure the old; for if it be true that you have this intention, why do you tell me that the sight alone of one of *Octavio*'s pictures hath made you weep? I told it you, replied she,

she, to let you see, that a man which could comfort me for so excessive a grief must needs have a great deal of power over my soul.

*Alphonso*, not able to contradict *Leonida*, suffered her to continue her discourse. You perceive very well then, said she unto him, that in the beginning of our good-will I gave you more marks of a strong inclination, then ever *Octavio* received of me, seeing when I loved him, I was in an age, wherein flattery, complacency, and gallantry, do extremely touch the minde. *Octavio* was my first conquest, and the first man that told me I had something that was pleasing in me: and by this reason, it was almost impossible for me not to have admitted of his affection: But for yours, I accepted of it in such a manner, as would not permit you to doubt of mine, if you be reasonable. And to pass from the beginning to the progress of it, tell me, I pray you, what is that I have done for him as long as he lived? All things, answered *Alphonso*; and whereas more marks of affection are given by grief, then by joy, without running over all the complacencies which you have had for him, I will only say that you have wept an hundred times for him, and that all the love which I have born you hath not cost you a tear.

It is not time yet to discover my weakness unto you, replied *Leonida*; and to answer precisely to that which you say, as long as we lived well together, it is true that I have not wept, but it was because you were not unhappy; and I doubt not but if our affection had been thwarted as *Octavio's* and mine was, I should have had the same sorrow. And then again you have this advantage over that unfortunate man, that I have not forsaken you, as I did him; for indeed if I had known how to love perfectly, I had not married *Livio*, I had not abandoned *Octavio*, I had not been the cause of his death. Therefore it is, answered *Alphonso*, that to repair that failing, in not loving *Octavio* enough, you love his ashes and his Tomb; you cannot speak of him without tears; you cannot think of him without sighing; and it may be if I should lose my life, I should not give you a minute of uneasiness. Ah cruel creature! cried *Leonida*, must I acknowledg my weakness unto you? Yes, insensible as you are, said she unto him, I will resolve to do it, to the end I may cure your minde, or have so just an occasion to complain of you, as absolutely to cease from loving you. It is true, said she unto him, that I have wept for *Octavio*; but it is true too, that spite of the grief, which your capricious humor hath possessed me with, I can assure you, not onely that I should dye with affliction, if your death should happen, but that I cannot call that a life which I have led since thus unjust passion hath troubled my rest in troubling yours. In fine, *Alphonso*, I have shed as many tears for the fear alone of losing your good-will, though you were faulty towards me, as ever I shed for *Octavio*, who dyed for my sake; so that if I am unjust, it is onely to him, and no way to you. It is true, that he hath rendred me all the testimonies of affection that I could attend from him; but it is true also, that I have not done the same; I abandoned him to marry *Livio*, and I have been capable of a second love, which without doubt must be stronger then the other was, because it hath been able to comfort me for the loss I had sustained: For you, *Alphonso*, it is not so; you have no occasion to complain of me, I have done for you all that reasonably I could do; and when I gave you a mark of my desire to please you, it is come to pass that out of an unheard of inhumanity, you have made use of the same Arms, which I gave you, to combat me; my ingenuity hath been the cause of your malice; and mine innocency hath made your crime. In conclusion, *Alphonso*, said she unto him, with a countenance wherein appeared more grief then choller, you must resolve upon the choyce of two things, either to quit your error, or never to see me more. For, continued she, I can no longer endure to see you in the disposition you are in; but know, unjust and cruel as you are, that if you chuse the last, you will peradventure be constrained to have, whether you will or no, ere it be long, more affection for the ashes of *Leonida*, then you have had for her her-self.

*Alphonso*, touched with so obliging a discourse, and not able to resolve to see *Leonida* no more, cast himself at her feet, and having not the power, either to repent him of his error, or to crave pardon for it, or to say any thing that might shew he was not yet cured of it, he gave her so many testimonies of an extream love, both by his silence and by his tears, as *Leonida* being sensibly touched with compassion, asked of him once again what it was he desired of her? I know not, answered he, onely I know that I can never cease from loving you, nor ever separate my self from you. Be reasonable then, said she unto him, and believe

lieve



lieve that nothing in the world is so dear to me as *Alphonso*. Have pity of my weakness, answered he, and if you will have me comfort my self, say not, that nothing in the world is so dear to you as *Alphonso*, but say without reserve, that nothing is so dear to you as *Alphonso*. I know not, said she unto him, whether I have ill expressed my self or no, but my intention was such as you would have my words to be.

I should never have done if I should repeat all *Alphonso's* questions, and all *Leonida's* answers; it shall suffice me then to say, that after an hundred odd precautions, to assure himself of the love of *Leonida* against *Octavio's* phantasm, whereunto this amiable creature out of her goodness answered seriously, he returned to Reason, and certain days after craved pardon of her for his error, and absolutely promised her never to fall into it again. I believe notwithstanding that he was not so soon rid of it, and though he hath not spoken to *Leonida* since of it, because it was one of their conditions, yet he hath not for all that left off having many times very odd thoughts. This dispute and this peace were so secret amongst us, that I was the alone who was acquainted with it; and that was it which perswaded *Horatio* and the rest, that *Alphonso's* melancholy proceeded from the jealousy he was in of the affection which *Aly* seemed to carry to *Leonida*; but indeed it was that which I have declared unto you.

The Marquis seeing that *Sophronia* held her peace, and that *Leonida* was going to speak, as if she would have excused *Alphonso*: It must be acknowledged, said he, that there is a marvelous diversity amongst men; and that which makes me most to wonder, is to see by example, that *Alphonso*, who in all other encounters hath a great deal of wit and discretion, and would in indifferent matters without doubt think the same things that I do, should fall into an imagination so far distant from all good sense. I think, answered *Leonida* smiling, that in matter of love, it may be said that you are both of you an object of admiration and wonder the one to the other, but with this glorious difference for *Alphonso*, that his fantastical jealousy was not derived but from an excess of passion; and that your inconstancy proceeds not but from a defect of love.

If the very excess of Reason, replied the Marquis, comes near to folly, I believe that this excess of love is not far from it: and if it be true, that by the effects one may judg of the cause, acknowledg, fair *Leonida*, that this inconstancy, which you call defect of love in me, gave you not so much inquietness, when I abandoned you for another, as this excess of passion hath been the cause of to you; and confels withall at least, that it were better to be loved of a man of my humor, then of that of *Alphonso*. It would be more advantageous, replied *Leonida* very roundly, because as long as one should not be loved but by an inconstant man as you are, one should not be exposed to the hazard of too much engaging ones self in this affection. And then again, continued she, there is this difference betwixt you too, that I have cured *Alphonso* of his error, and that nothing can cure you of yours. You believe it to be just, and you finde it pleasant; judg then whether your disease be not incurable?

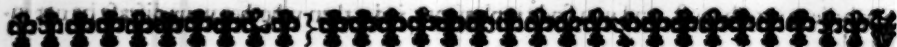
For my part, said *Hipolita*, (who according to her humor always took jealousies part) I cannot condemn *Alphonso*; nor should I be sorry that a man would render me this proof of affection. You speak in this sort, said *Doria* interrupting her, rather out of temperature, then reason; but whatsoever you can say, I do not think that *Horatio* will become jealous out of complacency, and will open Tombs to finde a Rival there: It would be easier for me questionless to enter into them never to come out again, answered *Horatio*, then to give this unjust mark of love, to the person I affect. I believe what you say, replied *Hipolita*, it being likely enough, that a man, who could see an hundred Lovers at the feet of his Mistress without being disquieted at it, would be never a whit moved to know that she should grieve for a dead man.

As for me, added the Marquis smiling, if by an inversion of all the ages it might come to pass, that a person whom I should love had been beloved of all the Heroes of antiquity; that they had all dyed for her, and that the ashes of the *Cesars* and the *Alexanders* had been the object of her tears, and of her love, I should be less jealous thereof then of the least amongst the living; and there is not a man, how mis-shapen soever he could be, that would not more disquiet me to see him on his knees before my Mistress, then *Alexander* would in the state wherein he is, should he reign in her heart, as he reigned over all the Earth.

I confess, said *Sophronia* laughing, as well as the rest of the Assembly, that in this occasion I am of the Marquis his side, for I cannot but follow Reason wheresoever I meet with it. I perceive, said *Leonida* then, that all the world abandons me, and that I have need of *Alphonso's* assistance for the vanquishing of so many Enemies. I am generous enough, answered the Marquis, to go and fetch him my self; and saying so, he went and called *Alphonso*, who was almost ashamed to come unto the Company again, making no question but that they had condemned his jealous humor. And whereas *Leonida* perceived it, Fear not, said she unto him, as long as I am on your side, you will have no Enemies which you may not overcome; and doubt not that the remembrance of an error, which I have pardoned, can make me angry with you. I believe you to be too just, replied he, for me to suspect you of any such thing, only I fear that you will be accused for using too much goodness towards me, and that by this means I should be the cause of condemning a virtue in you, which makes one to be commended in all the world besides.

If we engage our selves in making of complements, said *Sophronia* interrupting him, the Marquis will not be able to pay me that to day which he owes me, and so we should spend the time less pleasantly then otherwise we might do it: we gave him audience, for I assure my self that he cannot tell us any thing but what will delight us. I do not know, answered the Marquis, whether this discourse be advantageous to me or no, howsoever, since I have promised to relate that unto you which befell me here in *Constantinople*, I will not break my word. And then again, continued he, to speak sincerely unto you, I shall have a share in the pleasure which I shall give you; it being most certain, that I am of a humor to receive more satisfaction by recounting the adventures which have happened unto me, be they never so happy, then I had at such time as they arived unto me. *In fine*, continued he, I comfort my self for mishaps in telling them to others, and I augment my good fortune in publishing it.

Seeing it is so, said *Leonida*, haste you to satisfy *Sophronia*, in satisfying your self, and be not of the number of those, who make one hope so long for an indifferent pleasure, as one is not obliged to them for it. All the Company having added their intreaties to *Leonida's* discourse, the Marquis acquitted himself of his promise in this sort.



The

## The History of the too good Slave.

NEVER was any so happy in servitude as I, and never did happiness produce an effect like unto that which I am going to recount unto you. You remember without doubt, that when we arrived all at *Constantinople*, and landed at the Port, there was a man, who rightly imagining by the chains we had on us, that we were destined to be sold, and finding something in my person that pleased him, bought me for the price that was demanded of him. This man, who was my first Master, carried me home to his house; and whereas he was one of the mightiest men in *Constantinople*, I was comforted in my misfortune to see, that at leastwise if I were a Slave, it should be in a place where I should have companions. I was no sooner come thither, but to testify that he had some inclination for me, he caused the chains that I had on me to be taken off, to give me lighter; so that desiring to be acknowledged for this favor, and render my slavery also more easie, by making my self be beloved of those, who might ill-intreat me, I became in two hours the best Slave that was in *Constantinople*. I did not only that which was ordained me, but I also helped others to do that which had been commanded them. And whereas it is the custom of the *Turks*, as I learned afterwards, carefully to observe all their new Slaves at their first coming, my Master was a witness of all the services which I rendered him, and seemed to be so satisfied with me; that all the other Slaves began already to hate me.

The first day being past over in this sort, the next morning my Master would needs have two wives that he had to see me; he commanded then that I should go to their lodging, and whereas I knew not whither they led me, I was so surprized with their beauty, as I could not forbear testifying a great deal of joy by my carriage at it. I found them so much the fairer, because for four and twenty hours before I had seen none but black Slaves; I saluted them then very civilly, and beheld them at leastwise with as much attention, as they had in considering me: and without regarding whether my Master took it well or no, and without remembering that I was a Slave, I thought of nothing but of making shew with low obeysances, as often as I could judge by their behavior that they spoke of me, that I was as respectful for them, as I was serviceable and diligent for their husband. But at length he commanded me to withdraw, which presently I did; true indeed it is, that it was not without turning back my look to the place where I left two fair women, and truly I felt some pain in separating my self from them.

I was no sooner gone down, and had done something which had been enjoined me, but I went with all speed into a back Court, upon which the windows of these womens chamber opened, out of a hope that I might peradventure see them again: But by ill fortune my Master was there as well as they; so as having observed that I had nothing to do there, I cannot tell you whether he suspected the truth or no, howsoever without having any cause to complain of me, he commanded me to be conducted the next morning to the Market where Slaves are sold, and that there they should rid themselves of me at any price whatsoever. I must confess to you that this change surprized me; nevertheless whereas I comfort my self easily, as you know, in all things, I resolved for patience.

He that next bought me was a Merchant of *Tripoli*, whom I served as exactly as the other: And whereas in these kind of houses the restraint is not so great, as in those of persons of quality, I had some content to see that in serving my Master, I should at leastwise have the satisfaction to meet sometimes with a wife that he had, and two *Greek* Slaves that served her; and that certainly did not shame their Nation. I got their good-will the very first day, without being able to tell you how I did it. If they saw that I had a purpose to go forth, they went in all haste to open me the door; if I carried any thing, they presently offered to help me; in conclusion I won their inclination in such sort, as my Master hated me for it. For when he was withdrawn to his chamber, his Wife and the Slaves praised me so much, as out of jealousy and covetousness he resolved to be rid of me. He feared lest his wife would love me too well, and that his Slaves would agree together with me to rob him.

In this thought, he conducted me himself to the Market; but whereas he was known to



be one of the most avaricious men in the world, it was not very easie for him to get me another Master: For although he assured them which cheapened me, that I was the most dextrous, the most serviceable, and most diligent Slave that ever he had had, yet no body would beleve him; because out of the intention he had to rid himself speedily of me he set me at too cheap a rate. Certainly, said they who were willing to buy me, this Slave must have some great defect, which we know not of, seeing the most avaricious man that is resolves to part with him at so low a price. He is young, he is not unhandsome, he seems not to be melancholick; so that without doubt he hath taken him in some theft, or else he would never be so forward to sell him.

In this opinion no body bought me the first day, nor on the second neither. Howbeit my Master, having observed that his Wife and Slaves were very glad to see me brought home again, he purposed to part with me for less then he had intended, hoping thereby to be the sooner rid of me. But he considered not, that out of the opinion the world had of him, the less he should ask for me, the more he would be troubled to sell me. And verily there was never any pleasanter thing, then the choller of this covetous wretch when as he could not resolve to lose his money, and was constrained in the evening to carry back to his house a man, whom he beheld as his Rival, and yet had no cause to complain of him. For whereas I was not ignorant, that Slaves in this Country are at their Masters mercy, the fear of some cross adventure made me very prudent, so that as long as my Master could see me I did not answer the complacencies of his Slaves. Wherefore not being able either to sell me, to complain of me, or to resolve to give me my liberty, because he would not lose but a part of the money he had given for me, he was in an inquietness which I am not able to represent unto you.

But at last on the third day a *Boluchbassi*, who had cheapened me when first he would have sold me, and who imagined that I could have no other defect then of being unfaithful, tempted by the good peniworth, resolved to take me into his service. And to secure himself from the vice whereof he suspected me, he purposed to employ me in his Garden, untill such time as he had made tryal of my fidelity. I was then conducted home to his house, where I no sooner was, but having given me wherewith to labor the ground I found my self at first somewhat troubled. Nevertheless whereas I had whilst I was in the Wars helped many times out of a bravery to cast up Trenches, and raise Forts, I became in two hours so good a Gardiner, as I levelled an Alley better then all they of *Constantinople* could have done.

My address having pleased my Master, he brought three Wives that he had, followed by all their Slaves, to see my work, which they admired; and passing from the commendation of my work to that of my person, they said too much for themselves, if they took any pleasure in seeing me. Nevertheless it was not that alone which made me change my dwelling, but it was for that, my Master being gone a little way off, and that I saw all these women walking still about me, without making shew of heeding them, and as if it had been to render my labor the less irksome, I set my self to sing indifferent loud. My voyce pleased them in such sort, as I thought they would never have left me; and when I perceived the satisfaction they received by it, I did nothing but sing, out of a hope that at leastwise I should not always be alone in this Garden. But for fear my Master should think that it was only for his Wives, or for their Slaves that I sung, I never gave over; so that if I had continued in that manner any long time, I should, to speak poetically, have dyed like a Swan. My invention failed not in the expected success, as also it failed not in making me to be turned away. For I no sooner began to work, but I began to sing; and presently not only all the Slaves, not only all the Officers of the house, but even my Masters wives, who were wont to fear the Sun, and to walk but very seldom, came in all haste to hear me: A Slave could not be sent any whither, but she would still make it her way to go out at one of the Garden doors; and how pressing soever the matter was about which she was sent, she would hide her self behind some hedge to hear me; and in this sort, though I wrought very diligently, yet left I not incommodating my Master, because I kept all his servants from doing their duties. This man had so much goodness, as he could not easily resolve to forbid me from singing; imagining that I had no other design then to drive away melancholy in doing my work. Howbeit, seeing at length that he could not be served by his people, and that even his Wives could not be kept

in the house, he absolutely forbid me from it, and I obeyed him without resistance. But this which he thought to do for his quiet, and to retain me in his service, was that which troubled him the more, and made me to be turned away. For no sooner did his Wives and his Slaves know of the prohibition he had made me, but there was a strange disorder in the house. Both the one and the others murmured alike; *Who ever saw such cruelty, said they, as to forbid a man, laden with irons, and that does his duty so well, from singing? this tyranny is so excessive, as is not to be endured, and certainly the like was never heard of.* In fine, this murmuring and this revolt went so far, that this man to be at rest resolved to sell me away, which he did the next day with a great deal of regret, because I pleased him extremely.

It was my destiny to be bought by an *Arabian* Physician; for whereas he had asked to what employment I had been put in my Masters house, and had been answered that I was an excellent Gardiner, he imagined that I knew some Simples, and consequently might be useful to him, by reason the Physick of this Country consists much therein. In effect, he acknowledged that he had never been served more diligently; and albeit I was very ignorant in all the things that he made me do, yet my address and confidence supplied that defect. This Physician had two daughters, who having lost their mother lived alone with him; so that whilst he was in his visits, I had sometimes the pleasure to see them. For whereas the women of *Constantinople* are very curious of their beauty, the desire they had to gain me, to the end I might give them certain waters for the face, which their father would not let them have, made them use me very civilly; and for fear I should be put away, they taught me all that I had to do the best they could.

I had no sooner made an end of whatsoever the *Arabian* Physician had commanded me to do at his going forth, but I went to entertain his daughters at a lattice window that was very low, and teach them new means to become fair, which I said I had learnt in *Italy*; so that when my Master came home, he never found me amongst his essences: yet he could not complain of me, because whatsoever he had ordained me to do, was always performed. He imagined then, that since I was so diligent, he was to give me more employment, for fear lest out of idleness I should have too much conversation with his daughters; but whereas they were dextrous, they perceived his design, so as finding that to busie me, besides necessary things he had left me great store of Grite roots to prepare for the Baths, which are so frequent in this Country, they made me give them part of them; so that all three working, the business was quickly dispatched, and we had time enough besides for conversation: In so much that my Master coming home in the evening, with an opinion that he should find me very busie, and a belief that he had met with an excellent expedient to keep me from entertaining his daughters, he was strangely surprized to see me labor no more then I was wont to do. Nevertheless he could not resolve to quarrel with me, having never been so well served as by me.

In this inquietness he took a new resolution, which was to enjoin me to wait upon him in the streets, and to leave him in my place who was usually to accompany him. But these maids were no less witty in this occasion then the other; they won this Slave with money, and dealt in such sort, as when we came home, there was nothing done of all that had been ordained him; and this out of the hope that their father would alter his mind, and not carry me any more abroad with him. This slight notwithstanding wrought that which they expected not; for the Physician, seeing that when he carried me abroad with him, none of his work was done; and that when I stayed at home, his daughters always sent for me, resolved to sell me. And truly I was not sorry for it, in regard I had but little knowledge in the mingling of Drugs; and in my ignorance, I could not find out a better invention, then when as my Master named one to me, which I knew not, to chuse another, which had no ill quality; to the end that at leastwise if I did no good, I would do no harm.

In going from thence, I was bought by two *Janizaries*, who having demanded of me in that corrupted *Italian*, which every one understands at *Constantinople* for the commodity of commerce, whether I could carry their Arms, and keep them bright? When as I answered them, that I would do it as well as I could, they agreed of the price, and carried me home with them. And whereas I was better seen in the use of a Scymitar, then in the knowledge of the vertue of Simples, the manner where with I handled theirs when they came to their house

house pleas'd them in such sort, as I was their well beloved Slave. I looked upon the blade of it like a man that was not ignorant thereof; I knew of what temper it was, and by my behavior they judg'd, that War without doubt had been my Trade.

Now you must understand, that these two *Janizaries* had each of them a fair Slave; and that as long as I was with them, though they were both of one company, yet were they of a different Squadron, so that they were not both upon the Guard at one and the same day; by which means one of them always remained at home, as it were the Guardian of the two Slaves. In the mean time I acquitted my self admirably of the employment had been confer'd on me; and never had their Arms been so well kept, as since the time that I had been in their service. But if they were contented with me, no less were the two Slaves, though I contributed nothing thereunto: For by reason of that which I told you in the beginning, I was never less a Lover, then in all these several encounters, albeit I was never so much beloved. These fair Slaves did not for all that testifie unto me both at once the good-will they bore me; and out of a particular address they chose the day wherein the *Janizary* that was their Master was upon the Guard, so that he which stay'd at home very well perceived the care and complacency which his friends Slave had for me; but whereas he was contented with my service, and saw that I contributed nothing thereunto, he did not advertise him of it. The same reason which this Soldier had, the other had also: and by this means I was for some time equally beloved of both the two *Janizaries*, and of the two Slaves. It hapn'd at length, that by order of War these two *Janizaries* were put into one and the same Squadron, and thereby would have been constrain'd to leave me alone with their Slaves, being oblig'd to go upon the Guard the same day, had they not bethought themselves of telling one another that which they knew concerning the good-will these Wench'es bore me. Wherefore considering how they were equally interest'd in the business, they disput'd a good while betwixt themselves what they were to do. At last, though they loved me exceedingly, they sold me that very day, not being able to resolve to leave me alone with their Slaves.

The fantasticalness of my fortune so wrought, that a Musician of this Country, who taught to play on the only Instrument which they have at *Constantinople*, and that holds somewhat of the form of the Lutes of *Italy*, took me into his service, and carried me home with him. The next day after my coming thither, when he was gone abroad, I took one of those *Turkish* Lutes (for he had many of them,) and whereas this Instrument hath but one string, I thought, that if I could put more to it, this Harmony it may be would please my Master, and might obtain my liberty. I took one of those Lutes then secretly, and going to one of those that makes them, who dwelt hard by this Musicians house, and whom I had by chance taken notice of as I came thither, I directed him how I would have it done. At length I made him fit this Lute for seven ranks of strings; and whereas I had still one of those enamell'd Gold rings left, which are worn rather out of gallantry, then for their value, I gave it him for payment of his pains. Being return'd home, I put strings to this Lute, and beginning to touch it, I drew to me with my harmony my Masters wife, two sisters that he had, and three Slaves. So that when he return'd, he found me in the midst of all these women, who harken'd to me with a great deal of delight and attention. At first he was angry, both with them, and with me; but coming to hear me himself, he pardon'd them their curiosity, and hoping to gain good store of money by my means, he caress'd me extraordinarily. He undertook notwithstanding to maintain against me, that in something their Lutes were more perfect then ours; because, said he, having but one string they can never be out of tune. This pleasant reason being nothing hard to be destroy'd, I made him easily comprehend, that my Musick was better then his; and the very next day he carried me to all the houses, whither he us'd to go; where they had no sooner heard me, but they would hear him no more. This man being as proud as he was covetous, although I might have got him a great deal of money, yet could he not resolve to carry me any more along with him; so that purposing to learn to play as I did, he left me at home; and mornings and evenings only I took him out Lessons. But I was not long both his Master and his Slave; for whereas he was no less jealous then proud, knowing that his Wife, his Sisters, and his Slaves, did nothing but harken to me, out of a capriciousness worthy of him, he resolv'd to sell me. Nevertheless it was not without a great conflict in his mind; and vanity, covetousness, and jealousy, gave him no little trouble.

This



This last passion being the stronger, he sought to rid himself, me; and had so much malice, that to keep me from teaching some other that which he would not learn of me himself, he went to sell me at the Port, where I was presently bought by the Captain of a Galley, who was upon going forth to scour the Seas. I confess, that this adventure vexed me; for considering that I left you all at *Constantinople*, without knowing whither I went, I was out of quiet above an hour at least; howbeit I hoped to meet with some good fortune which I did not foresee; and in this thought I served my new Master with as much care as I could, yet was I not long with him, for whereas he was avaricious, and had no need, but of one Slave, that could row, he was perswaded that he might sell me for so much, as he might therewith get two in stead of one; so that all the endeavor which I had used for two days space, to shew him the greatest address I could possibly express, served not but to make me be sold away the sooner, and to give me a Master of an higher condition then those last I had had; for whereas the price which he asked for me was great enough, I was no longer cheapped but by persons of quality. The *Cadifquer*, then of *Natalia* became my Master, and to his house I was carried; but from him I parted a little after for the like reasons; then was I entertained by the *Muphti*; and the next day after I past into the service of the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*, where they that sought for me by the *Grand Signior's* command found me. Indeed it is true, that I should not have been long there, for I was to have been sold away again the very same day.

In conclusion, after I had had for my Master a great man of the Port, a Merchant of *Tripoli*, an *Arabian* Physician, two *Janizaries*, a Player upon the Lute, an *African* Captain of a Galley, the *Cadifquer* of *Natalia*, the *Muphti*, and the *Aga* of the *Janizaries*; after, I say, I had equally satisfied them all, Fortune at last restored me to liberty. And truly I was not a little obliged to her for so far complying with my humor, as not to let me wear the same chains long; it being most certain that I should have been dead with grief, if she had used the matter otherwife. For is it credible, continued the Marquis, that a man, who could not live long under the Empire of one onely Mistress, whose dominion is incomparably more gentle then a Merchant of *Tripoli's*, could have lived long under that of an imperious Master? And to say all in a word, it is easie to be imagined, that if I had still worn but one chain, it would have seemed very heavy to me, seeing even bracelets of hair would incommode me if I should wear them long. Change is the charm of all pleasures, and the ease of all sorrows. There is not an evil, how little soever it be, that would not become insupportable to me, if I should always endure it after the same manner; nor is there any which I should not bear with patience, if it were not always the same. For *in fine*, whether it be for the pains of the body, or for the pains of the minde, one cannot pass from one evil to another, without some moments of rest. Change hath this marvellous in it, that in pain it self, mangleth that which we feel, it diverts, it eases, and fortifies us. And of what humor soever we be, we think not so much of the evil that is arrived to us, but that we have some joy for that which hath left us.

You are too eloquent on this subject, said *Leonida* interrupting the Marquis, and if I might be credited herein, both for the interest of publique society, and good manners, you should be prohibited from ever speaking in the behalf of inconstancy: For whereas you have a great of wit; whereas also you speak as a man interested; and as a man that maintains his own cause, you may at length pervert the good thoughts of some. If it be true, added *Sophronia*, that one easily perswades others, when as one is mightily perswaded himself, I acknowledg that by this reason, the Marquis should be the most dangerous Orator in the world. If I had established my doctrine well, answered he, you should be constrained to acknowledg, that it is not contrary either to common society, or the publique good. For never hath any inconstant man precipitated himself; never hath any inconstant man killed his Rivals, nor ill-treated his Mistresses; and fire, sword, and poyson, are things of no use in nature to him; but he leaves them to the disposing of all those obstinate Lovers, who always render themselves unhappy, in following this constancy, which you term the Queen of all Vertues. We are not to judg always of things, replied *Doria*, by the event; and then in this occasion, it is not Constancy that makes Lovers unhappy, but Fortune, that delights to persecute Vertue; and in this sort, even unhappinefs serves for the glory of which are constant.

For a conclusion, answered the Marquis, I know full well, that if *Iustiniano* had not been constant,

Constant, he should not be now absent from his Mistress; he had not been banished from his Country; he had not been a Slave; he should not be in *Persia*, and in jeopardy to dye there. If *Isabella* had not been constant, she should not be in the old *Serraglio*; and if all you that are here had not followed this goodly vertue, you had not sigh'd so much as you have done, and peradventure you should not be at *Constantinople*. If that be a punishment of our fidelity, replied *Alphonso*, you must at least-wise acknowledg, that that which you call our chastisement, is your recompence, seeing you are here as well as we. It easily appears, answered the Marquis, that I am not unhappy but for your sakes; for do not you see how Fortune hath made be beloved of all my Masters, of all their Wives, and of all their Slaves? and to work a prodigy in favor of me, she hath caus'd them all to turn me away without hating me. I must confess, said *Hipolita*, that this adventure is altogether extraordinary, and that it is not a little strange to imagine, that that which should have made you use but one chain, hath made you change it so often. You know me but ill, fair *Hipolita*, answered the Marquis, when you speak to me thus; for I can always break my chains, but never wear them out.

After this, all this fair Troop ran over the Marquis his adventures again, and not able to forbear laughing at their imagining him a Slave to two *Janisaries*, a Gardiner, a Physician, and a Merchant, they figur'd him such to themselves as he had been in all those divers employments which he had had. And he himself represent'd them unto them in so diverting a manner, as mauer their ancient miseries, and those wherein they still were, they pass'd away all that day without annoy, without care, and without melancholy.

### *The End of the second Book.*



*The.*



## The Third Book.

WHilst this agreeable Company endeavored to forget their present misfortunes, by remembering those which they had avoyded; *Isabella* was in an extraordinary melancholy, although she was as yet but in the apprehension of an evil that was to arrive unto her. Every time that she heard her chamber door open, she always believed that *Soliman* was come to discover his unjust passion to her; and every time that the *Sultana Asteria* went from her, it seemed to her that she abandoned her to the *Sultan's* violence. There were yet some times wherein she condemned her own thoughts; and wherein *Emilia's* speeches gave her some consolation. These good intervals for all that lasted not long; and how constant soever *Isabella* was, she was always nearer to despair then to tranquillity. On the other side, *Soliman* was in no less pain; his love, his virtue, and his irresolution upon that which he was to do, put his Soul into so great a disorder, as he then merited to be as much lamented, as blamed.

But at length, whereas it is hard to consent to the rendring of ones self unhappy for anothers felicity, and to renounce things out of generosity which one ardently affects, *Soliman's* Reason being combated by his own desires, by a violent passion, and by the Artifices of *Roxelana*, it found it self in the end so weak, as he absolutely resolved to speak to *Isabella* of his passion. I know very well, said he to himself, that this is to betray the friendship which I have promised to *Ibrahim*; but I know withall, that it would be the betraying of my self, and the cause of my death, if I should bereave my self of the hope which I have of prevailing one day with *Isabella*.

In this resolution, *Soliman* went to the Princesses chamber on a time when as the *Sultana Asteria* was come from her, and that none but *Emilia* was with her. When as first the Princess saw him, she changed colour; and *Soliman* on his part, who very much respected her, and that still loved *Ibrahim*, thought to alter his resolution; and in this sort, fear troubling *Isabella*, and respect silencing *Soliman*, they were a while unable to speak to one another. The *Sultan* was he at last that began the Conversation, in craving pardon of *Isabella* for the constraint wherein she lived. My Lord, said she unto him, since it concerns the quiet of thy State, I dare not murmur at it; and though the privation of my friends be a displeasure sensible enough, I do endure it without complaining of thy Highness; I do accuse Fortune, and do justify *Soliman*, who without doubt will never be but equitable. Would to Heaven, said he unto her, I might be sure that you would speak thus always! My Lord, replied she, this is a thing which will absolutely depend on thy Highness; it being most certain that I shall ever be reasonable, and not be so inconsiderate as to think ought to the disadvantage of thy Majesty, if I be not constrained thereunto by thy self. I could have wished, replied *Soliman*, that without exception you had promised me never to think amiss of me; for it may be you will learn from mine own mouth that I am faulty.

*Isabella* blisht at this discourse, and casting down her eyes without daring to look any more on *Soliman*, and being unable to answer him, she was a pretty while in this uncertainty: but on a sudden, *Soliman*, carried away by his passion, resolved to discover it unto her. I know full well, said he unto her, that I am going to destroy my self; that in acquainting you with my thoughts, I am going to make you hate me; but I would fain have you tell me, added he, before I confess my crime unto you, whether an error, which is not voluntary, merits as much chastisement, as a premeditated malice? My Lord, answered *Isabella*, all persons that have great Souls like thy Highness can never commit faults but voluntarily. There is nothing that can force Reason when one will make use of it; and the most violent passions without doubt are but the pretext of weak ones, when as they will excuse the bad actions which they do; it being certain, that it is not impossible to surmount them. I knew well enough, said *Soliman* interrupting her, that you would be a rigorous Judge to me; that you



would judge of others by your self, and that you would condemn in another, that which is not found in you. But, amiable *Isabella*, continued he, you are unjust to deal so; seeing it is impossible that ever your Soul should be put to so difficult a trial, as that is which I have encountered. You have but weak enemies to fight with, and a great deal of virtue to resist them; your Reason, in what a occasion soever you find your self, is always on your side; but, amiable *Isabella*, in this wherein I am, my Reason is my cruellest enemy. It is not because she hath not opposed all my thoughts as much as she could; and this is it which puts me out of all hope of vanquishing, having no longer arms to defend me. For my Reason hath been so absolutely surmounted, as it is rather by her than by my passion, that I am resolved to discover my hurt unto her which hath caused it. Let thy Highness take heed, said *Isabella* to him then, that in discovering it thou make it not the worse; and that that which thou believest would be a remedy for thy grief, be not a means to increase it. That which you say, answered *Soliman*, may easily fall out; but, continued he, what would you have a Prince do, who is no longer Master, either of his heart, of his soul, or of his will; who sees his death indubitable, if he conceals the disease wherewith he is stricken? and who is absolutely resolved to dye, or to move the person whom he adores with love or pity.

*Isabella*, knowing not what to answer to a discourse which she understood but too well for her rest, fetched a great sigh in lifting up her eyes to Heaven, as it were craving succor from thence; which *Soliman* having observed; I perceive, said he unto her, incomparable *Isabella*, that you have understood me; that you are not ignorant of the Conquest you have made; and I thank Fortune, for that she hath not compelled me to tell you that I love you, so to make you know it; for it is certain that I should have been much troubled to execute the resolution which I had taken for it. But after I have perswaded you, continued he, without giving her leisure to answer him, that *Soliman* adores you, suffer not that, which hath accustomed to be beneficial to all Lovers, to be prejudicial to me. For, added he, I see very well, that the more I shall perswade you that I love you, the more you will hold your self injured by me. But to take away at leastwise the means from you of reproaching me with my crime, I will acknowledge, divine *Isabella*, that I know being your Protector, I ought not to be your Lover; that loving *Ibrahim* as I do, I ought not to be his Rival; that respecting you as I ought, I should not use any discourse to you that offends you; that loving glory, I ought not to endure an affection which may blemish it; but I know, more than all this, that love never shews it self, either greater, or more perfect, then when it destroys friendship, forces Reason, and without considering either honor or glory, carries us to dye, or to make our selves be beloved of the person whom we adore. This, incomparable *Isabella*, is the estate wherunto you have reduced my Soul; but if notwithstanding I may be permitted to employ Reason for the obliging of you to pity, remember that you would be unjust in causing the death of a Prince, who heretofore hath saved *Ibrahim's* life; and that cruelty can never pass for a virtue. Be then in some sort indulgent to my passion, and at leastwise bemoan the hurt which you have done me.

*Soliman* holding his peace, and *Isabella* being somewhat come to her self again; Is it possible, said she unto him, that this which I hear is true? and that the greatest Prince of the Earth should be the weakest amongst men? No, I cannot think it; and the discourse which thy Highness hath used to me, is doubtless a design to prove my constancy and resolution. But, my Lord, to oblige thee no longer to continue so dangerous a fiction, know, that if it were true that thy Highness had for me the violentest affection that ever was heard spoken of, it should not serve but to hasten my death; it being most certain, that the most terrible and horriblemest torments that can be imagined should never carry me to be wanting, either to that which I owe to *Ibrahim*, to my self, or to thy Highness. No, my Lord, I should never be a Complice of great *Soliman's* fault; and for his own interest I ought always oppose my self against him. But, continued she, it is in some sort an injury to thy Majesty to answer so precisely to a discourse, whose foundation is not true. Would to Heaven, replied *Soliman*, both for your content and mine, that it were so! But, amiable *Isabella*, it is but too true what I say; and if there be any feigning in my discourse, it is that I have not said all that I feel. I confess, that I am faulty towards Heaven; that I am so towards *Ibrahim*; that I betray the friendship which I have promised him; that I forget the care of my glory and honor; and that I betray my self; but in conclusion, being faulty towards all the world, I am innocent

innocent towards you ; since it is certain, that a violent love, to speak reasonably, can never offend the person that hath begotten it. And how constant soever you be for *Ibrahim*, how rigorous soever you be for me, you cannot without injustice but take pity of the deplorable estate wherein I am. I do not demand of you your love as yet, but some compassion ; and at least bemoan me, if you cannot love me.

Great Princes, replied *Isabella*, ought to be sensible of pity, but they never ought to put themselves into a condition of being the object of it to others : Neither will I be drawn to believe that *Soliman* hath a thought so unworthy of himself. For, my Lord, how can I think that thy Highness will stab a Poignard into the heart of *Ibrahim*, after thou hast saved his life ? if it should be so, it had better, both for him, for me, and for thy Highness, that he had been left to languish in his irons, or to dye of melancholy, then to save him for to kill him the more cruelly. Let thy Majesty consult well with thy self, and thou wilt find without doubt, that thy heart agrees not with thy mouth ; that thy words betray thy thoughts ; and that *Ibrahim* is yet more powerful in thy Soul, then the fatal beauty of *Isabella*. No, said *Soliman* interrupting her, do not justify me in this sort ; since in the terms wherein I am, I have no other design, then to let you know, that I am the most faulty of all men, in persuading you, that I am the most amorous. Ah, my Lord, said she to him weeping, doth not thy Highness consider, that at this very time it may be, wherein thy Highness useth so strange a discourse unto me, *Ibrahim* is fighting with thine enemies, is hazarding his life for thy service, and shedding his blood for a Prince, who makes me shed tears, and who without doubt will bring me to my grave, if his unjust love doth continue ?

*Soliman* being moved with so pressing a discourse, stood a while without answering thereunto ; but at length his passion still surmounting his vertue in this occasion ; I know, said he unto her, that *Ibrahim's* life ought to be dear unto me ; but I know withall that mine ought to be considerable to me : and I am certain, that what exploits soever he can do in *Persia*, I have done more yet in consideration of him. I have fought for him against my self ; I have felt my self in the flame without daring to complain ; love and friendship have torn my heart ; and I know no torments so terrible which I have not endured since the first instant that I saw you, rather then to do any thing against the affection which I bear him. But being come to the terms, either of dying, or speaking, I chose the last ; and so much the rather, because I do not think but a man, who could abandon you at *Monace*, to come unto me to *Constantinople*, will easily enough resolve to quit you, for the saving of a Princes life, to whom he is indebted for his own. Ah, my Lord ! cried *Isabella*, if *Ibrahim* be faulty in this occasion, it is against me, and not against thy Highness, who by this very fault art yet the more straitly obliged not to commit one against him. For what doth not a man deserve, who rather then he would fail in his word which he had given thee, resolved to abandon, not only his Country, not only his Friends ; but the only person whom he could love ; who was in stead to him of all the world ; and without whom his life had been irksome, and death the term of his desires ? No, my Lord, continued she, flatter not thy self in this occasion ; think better, both of *Ibrahim* and of *Isabella*, and be most assured, that as I am certain he would dye a thousand times rather then abandon me, so should I do the like, rather then be unfaithful to him. And if by some prodigy, which I cannot fear should happen, *Ibrahim* should consent to thy passion ; if he himself should speak to me of thy love, yet let thy Highness know, that I am not capable of failing by example. I should cease to love *Ibrahim*, if he ceased to be generous, but I should love thee never a whit the more ; contrarily, I should regard thee then, both as having outraged me, and as having bereaved me of a virtuous Lover.

*Isabella* was going on in her discourse, and *Soliman* was going to interrupt her, when as the generous *Astoria* entred : And whereas the *Sultan* had still some respect for *Isabella*, he would not command the *Sultana* to withdraw ; but being unable withall in the estate wherein his Soul was to begin an indifferent Conversation, he went away, leaving *Isabella* with an affliction, that may be better imagined then described. He was no sooner departed, but *Astoria*, who had observed a great deal of alteration in *Isabella's* and *Soliman's* faces, demanded of her with much impatience and grief, what it was that had caused the trouble wherein she saw her. Alas ! answered the Princess, how have my fears been too well grounded, and how true have your suspicions been ! and then she recounted unto her what had past between her and *Soliman*, with so many testimonies of resentment, that the *Sultana*

*Astoria* was exceedingly moved therewith. This misfortune did not altogether surprize her for all that; because she had sufficiently observed in divers occasions, that the *Sultan* her father was desperately in love with *Isabella*; but she had nevertheless conserved some remainder of hope, that his reason, and the friendship which he bore to *Ibrahim*, would surmount his passion, or at leastwise keep him from discovering it to her. *Isabella* for her part had thought as much, so that being equally surprized, one might almost say, that they were equally afflicted: For whereas the *Sultana Astoria* was extremely generous, she was grieved not only for *Isabella's* interest, whom she very much loved, but also for the *Sultan* her Father; who by this unjust passion blemished his glory, and did a thing unworthy of himself. She feared likewise that this love might have dangerous consequences; for she was not ignorant to what extremities this passion had carried the minde of *Soliman* in divers occasions; and so being in much unquietness, she was very incapable of comforting *Isabella*.

It was in vain for them to seek for some remedy to their misery; it was too great to find one for it. *Emilia* propounded nevertheless unto them, the advertising *Ibrahim* of the outrage was done her; but whereas he was too far off for them to hope for any succor from him, this advice was but a weak consolation to *Isabella*. Howbeit she desired the *Sultana Astoria* to endeavor the finding out of means to convey a Letter to *Ibrahim*, which the *Sultana* promised her to do; upon condition that she might obtain of her generosity, that he should be contented with delivering her, without enterprizing to be revenged on *Soliman*; for, said the *Sultana* to her, Were not the *Grand Signior* my Father, knowing him as I do, I could not chuse but have compassion of the estate wherein I see him. If he were not generous, he were not to be lamented; but I am well assured, continued she, that he punishes himself in offending you; that the remorse which he hath in his Soul torments him as much as his passion; that at the very same time when as he speaks to you of his unjust passion, he craves pardon in his heart of the generous *Ibrahim*; and that he repents at that very instant wherein he commits the fault. Alas, cryed *Isabella*, how dangerous is this unprofitable generosity! and how little difference is there betwixt a man that doth ill without knowing it, and another that knoweth vertue, and is not able to follow it. Repentance, continued she, that begets no change in the minde of him that repents, is rather a weakness, then a remorse. But, said she to *Astoria*, I desire you to pardon me for not remembering that you are the daughter of *Soliman*; and I promise you, if *Ibrahim* can return before the *Sultan's* love hath layd me in my grave, and that he can deliver me, to obtain of him that he shall not think of revenge: and I am very certain, added she, that what affection soever *Ibrahim* bears to me, he will be grieved to hear that which we will write to him, but will not conceive any hatred against *Soliman*.

After that these three afflicted persons had talked a good while of this subject; and that *Isabella*, having written to *Ibrahim*, had given her Letter to the *Sultana Astoria*, she tried with gifts to gain one of the Eunuchs that served them, to the end he might fly out of the *Serraglio*, and carry this Letter to *Ibrahim* with as much speed as possibly might be: but it fell out, that after *Soliman* had been at the Princesses lodging, there had been such an express Order given, that none should be suffered to go out of the old *Serraglio*, as it was impossible for her to execute her design, and that was it which redoubled her affliction, and that of *Emilia* and *Isabella*. But if these three persons were afflicted, *Soliman* was not without unquietness; that constancy which he had noted in *Isabella's* minde extremely afflicted him, by making him see an impossibility in his design; yet out of an altogether extraordinary persecution, that which opposed his love augmented it; and that steadfastness which he had found in the Soul of the Princess was a new charm, which rendred her yet more amiable.

*Roxelana* in the mean time, being advertised of all the *Grand Signior's* thoughts, by that Slave whom he had made his Confident, carryed him still on by the means of the same Slave to violent resolutions; but whereas respect never quits love, but when as fury and despair take up the place of it, *Soliman* suffered not himself to be perswaded with facility to employ menaces, where submissions are ordinarily most powerful. He continued then a long time in testifying his love to *Isabella* with high respects, magnificent presents, frequent visits, with tears, and intreaties: but the more submission he used, the more constancy *Isabella* shewed, and the more she made it appear that her vertue was invincible. Nevertheless for all her rigor, and that love cannot subsist, as they say, without hope, yet *Soliman* ceased to hope without ceasing to love; and contrarily his passion becoming more violent, that little reason, which

had



had always made him retain some fear of displeasing *Isabella*, being almost quite banished from his soul, he resolv'd to speak to her once for all, to see if he could gain her. That which carried him the rather to this extream resolution, was the thought he had that it would not peradventure be long before *Ibrahim* returned; and that a conqueror or conquered, the love which he bare to *Isabella* would make him soon finish this war: for when as *Ibrahim* went away with an absolute power to treat of all things, without having new order from *Soliman*, he had assured him, that he would come and render him an account of his voyage himself, without ever sending to him before.

The *Sultan*, not knowing then at what time *Ibrahim* would return, and well foreseeing that his voyage would not be long, if by ill fortune he had not received his last order, as he began to doubt, meant to try if he could obtain that by fear, which he could not obtain by love. In the mean time *Isabella* lived in so great a melancholy, that all her vertue and constancy were not strong enough to keep her from wishing, that death would speedily deliver her out of the deplorable estate wherein she was. She saw her self far from *Ibrahim*, without means to hear from him, the place of her refuge become her prison, the sight of her friends forbidden her, *Soliman's* persecution daily redoubling; in fine, she was expos'd to most sensible miseries without other consolation, then that of the *Sultana Asferia's*, and her dear Kinswomans tears. Her friends on the other side, were not without inquietness; so long an abode at *Constantinople* possessed them with a great deal of grief; and the privation of the sight of *Isabella* very much troubled them; but at length, nothing resting for them but patience to mitigate their displeasure, they comforted themselves as well as they could with the hope of *Ibrahim's* return, wherewith they were still entertained from *Isabella*; who not able to diminish her own misfortunes, endeavored at leastwise to flatter those of others with this hope that she gave them: for the *Grand Signior* had still permitted her to send unto them by a *Capigibassi*, in whom he absolutely confided.

All these illustrious persons being in this deplorable estate, *Soliman*, thrust on by despair and his love, went one day to *Isabella's* lodging, having first sent a Command to the *Sultana Asferia* to go to that of *Roxelana*, for she had for a pretty while before been seldom absent from the Princess. This command exceedingly disquieted the *Sultana*; but not able to do any other then voluntarily obey a Prince, who had power and right to constrain her thereunto; she left *Isabella* with *Emilia*, without letting her know any thing of the fear she was in, that *Soliman* had a purpose to use some displeasing discourse to her, seeing he removed her from her. Scarcely was she gone out of her chamber, when as *Soliman* came in to it; and whereas it seem'd to her that he had less civility for her then he was wont; and that his looks gave more signs of choller, then of love; she was in some joy, hoping that it may be her constancy had so far provoked him, as to oblige him to turn her out of the *Serraglio*; but she soon understood, that this incivility, and this choller was an effect of his love. I see very well, said he unto her, that my visits do importune you; that my presence displeases you; that my passion begets your hatred; that my respects augment your pride; that my prayers render you inexorable; and that tears do harden your heart; Wherefore, continued he, I am resolv'd to take another course. I have treated you too long as a Mistress, it is just then, since you will not be so, that I cease to be a Slave: but whereas I cannot cease to be a Lover, I must tell you once for all, that if by your cruelty I am reduced to despair, I shall be capable of undoing others in undoing my self. How, my Lord, said *Isabella* then to him, can thy Highness perswade me that which thou sayst? No, no, continued she, I know thy vertue too well; and it is as equally impossible for thee to possess me with fear, as with love; thou mayst have unjust desires, but I hold thee incapable of a wicked action. Thou mayst, I say, have weakness, but not cruelty; and love cannot produce in thee the effects of hatred. It is not, added she, because I do not wish with all my heart, both for thy glory, and my content, that either out of choller or hatred thou couldst resolve to chase me from thy presence, and never to see me more.

The opinion wherein you are, replied *Soliman*, that the same passion, which carries me to persecute you, will keep me from hurting you, is that without doubt which makes you speak with so much confidence; but know, that a Prince, who sees nothing in his choyce, but death or your affection, ought to enterprize any thing for the avoyding of the one, and obtaining of the other: It can never be unjust for him to think of his preservation; that ought to be preferred

preferred before all other things. I have friendship for *Ibrahim*; I have veneration for you; but I have also some interest in my life. I have done what I could to procure my content, without troubling yours; but at length, seeing I cannot do it, and that there is a fate which will not let me live without you, I must seek out the means for it. Remember then, that he which craves your affection, can command you; that he which offers you his heart, is not unworthy your love; that *Ibrahim* owing his life to me, ought to render it me in this occasion; that after so many services, submissions, respects, sighs, and tears, the anger and spite of being despised may seize upon my Soul: and for a conclusion remember, that revenge is the delight of incensed Kings; that *Ibrahim* is in my Armies; that you have in *Constantinople* persons which are dear to you; and that you are in the *Serraglio*.

It is true, my Lord, replied *Isabella*, that I cannot be ignorant of all these things; but I know withall, that thy Highness commands, both in thy Armies, in *Constantinople*, and in the *Serraglio*; and that consequently I have no cause to fear any thing; but contrarily I think that *Ibrahim*, my friends, and I, are in more safety in thy Estates, then in our own Country. And then again, my Lord, I cannot imagine that the remembrance of *Ibrahim* is utterly defaced out of thy memory; that a man whom thy Highness hath so much loved, and so much obliged, can be ill-intreated by thee; nor can I believe that *Isabella* can inspire thee with such unjust thoughts; no, my Lord, I cannot think it.

*Isabella*, replied *Soliman*, hath not possit me with unreasonable thoughts, I have nothing but love for her; howbeit I must confess, that her cruelty possesses me with fury; and that she may carry me to destroy all that I shall think can ravish her from me; and consequently to do all that I shall believe can serve my turn concerning her. This being so, answered *Isabella*, I need not be threatened in the person of my friends, nor in that of *Ibrahim*, since on my onely will that absolutely depends which thy Highness calls rigor, and which I term an effect of Reason and Vertue. For, my Lord, continued she, were not my heart, nor my word engaged to *Ibrahim*; nay, had I as much affection for thy Highness as I am capable of, yet should I not give thee more testimonies of it then I have done. Were not my Religion, I say, different from thine, yet in that I could not be thy wife, I should not be thy Slave, since the heart of *Isabella* can never have thoughts contrary to her honor and her glory. The Slaves of *Soliman*, replied he, are more then Queens of other Nations; and then again, to say the truth, to have you command absolutely in my heart and soul, is not to treat you as a Slave.

*Isabella*, thinking she was to speak more throughly to the *Grand Signior*, then as yet she had done, and believing, that when he had no more hope, he would have no more love, said to him with a more confident voyce then before: Finally, my Lord, all that I can say to thy Highness, is, that if, forgetting thy usual mildness and generosity, thou couldst resolve to carry me by fear to that, which thou couldst not get by love; and for that effect wouldst persecute me in the person of *Ibrahim*, who is dearer then my self, to me I would see him dye rather then change my resolution. Let thy Highness judg after this, whether death can fright me, and whether fear hath any power over my Soul. Consider then that though thou hast no hope left thee, yet thou hast a mean left thee to be generous; but *in fine*, added she, let thy love in this occasion suffer it self to be surmounted, either by reason, or by choller; have hatred, or friendship for me; be my Protector or my Enemy: let thy Highness not see me but to comfort me for the absence of *Ibrahim*, or never see me more. I know, continued she, that I speak with a great deal of boldness; but, my Lord, since my complaints, my tears, my prayers, and Reason it self have not been able to obtain any thing of thee, it seems just unto me to tell thee once for all, that nothing can change my minde; that neither ambition, nor fear, have any power over my soul; that vertue onely reigns there; and that thy Highness forgets thine own glory to no purpose.

*Isabella* made this speech with so much firmness, as *Soliman* not able to be moved with compassion, suffered himself to be transported with fury; but in such a manner, as there were not any threatenings which he used not to the Princes. And for a conclusion, he said unto her as he was going away, if fear can no whit prevail on your soul, no more shall pity on mine: we shall see in the end, if you be not changed in eight days, whether your minde will be as constant as you say; and you shall know, but it may be too late, that *Soliman*, when he pleases, can tell how to make himself be obeyed at *Constantinople*. After he had said this, he left *Isabella*, and abandoned her to her grief; which *Emilia* saw to be so just,

just, as she could not condemn her; and all that she could do in this encounter was to weep with her. What a misery is mine! said this infortunate Princess, after she had been a while without speaking; who ever saw, continued she, a like adventure? The greatest and best Prince of the Earth is become the basest and cruellest amongst men; he pays a generosity with ingratitude; he betrays the friendship which he hath promised; he violates the law of Nations; my protector is grown to be my Tyrant; and whilst *Ibrahim* is venturing his life for his glory, this unjust Prince would make me forget mine; but what say I? it may be that his cruelty will not rest there; he that can betray what is most sacred in this world, that harkens not to reason, that no longer knows virtue, may also be capable of a design to destroy *Ibrahim*: And of all this, continued this Princess, *Isabella* is the cause: she alone is the source of his misfortunes; she alone gave him encouragement to follow his generosity, when as she made him return to *Constantinople*; for, continued she, if I had effectually testified that I would not have had him gone; if I had told him that the chiefest duty carries all the rest; that he was to have considered nothing but me in that encounter; that one ought not to be generous to the prejudice of the person beloved; and that in the end I had joyned force to intreaty; he had not returned; I had not been carryed away by force; I should not be at *Constantinople*; *Soliman* should not be my persecutor, and we should not be separated: yet this is not my last fault, added she, I should not have let him go into *Persia*, or resolved to have gone along with him my self: but alas! who would not have been deceived therein, and how could I have believed that which now I see; my heart indeed advertised me that our separation would be fatal to me; but I foresaw not the mischief which was to arrive unto me; it had not been so great, if it could have been foreseen. In fine, said this illustrious Princess, I am come to that pass, as I can scarce fear new miseries: I am in fear for my friends, I am in fear for my self, and I am in fear for *Ibrahim*. There is a design on my glory, and on the life of the person that is dearest to me in the world: after this, let Fortune do what she will, she cannot increase my misery more. The like was never seen in any age; the infortunate illustrious persons of Antiquity had at least this advantage, to be perswaded by the error wherein they lived, that their despair was without crime; and that they might with glory finish their torments in finishing their lives: but for me, I am to attend this succor from the pleasure of Heaven, and from my grief alone; it is true indeed that I feel it so great, as it makes me hope it will not be long.

Ah, Madam, said *Emilia* to her then, do not abandon me! and to oblige you thereunto, remember that your death would be the cause of *Ibrahim's*. Let us not call him any more so, said *Isabella* to her sighing, since that name hath been given him by our Enemies. Remember then, added *Emilia*, that *Justiniano* cannot live without you. But remember you, replied the Princess, that *Isabella* cannot live without glory; and that it will be far more advantageous for her to be lamented by *Justiniano*, then to be exposed to the violence of a Prince, who can be no longer moved, neither by my tears, by my prayers, nor by his own interest. Saying thus, she perceived the *Sultana Asferia* coming in, who seeing her weep, could not forbear weeping too, though she knew not certainly the cause of it; and not daring to ask of her what she ailed, nor *Isabella* able to tell her, so much was she oppress'd with sorrow, they stood a pretty while without speaking; but at length, the *Sultana* rightly imagining that *Soliman* was the cause of this redoubling of grief, approached to the Princess, and taking her by the hand: I do not ask, said she unto her, what makes you to weep, but I ask of you, whether another bodies crime doth not set me at odds with you, and whether you can endure that the daughter of a Prince, who persecutes you, dare still assure you, that she shares with you in all your sorrows. You may without doubt, replied *Isabella*, and your compassion is so much the more generous, by how much you are the less obliged thereunto; it being certain that you have more occasion to regard me as the object of your hatred, then *Soliman* hath to consider me as the object of his love; for if this Prince had not seen me, he would not be unjust; his violences would not give you inquietness; and your Soul would not endure the pain that it feels, in condemning the thoughts of a Father: but generous *Sultana*, shall we not finde a remedy for the curing of this deadly passion, and to set me in safety against his violence? *Soliman's* interest ought to carry you unto it; and since *Justiniano* is already indebted to you for his life, make him indebted to you also, if it be possible, for my glory, which doubtless is dearer to him than his own; you have drawn him out of Irons;

draw



draw me out of servitude ; and by this noble action render your self worthy of immortal renown.

*Asteria*, not able to endure that *Isabella* should longer intreat a thing of her, which she desired as much as she, assured her that she was capable of undertaking any thing for her service ; but that she was afraid all her endeavors for it would do her no good. Thereupon *Emilia* and she bent their minds to seek out some way, whereby they believed they might get out of the pain wherein they were ; they propounded an hundred expedients, whereof the execution was impossible ; and at last, after a vain search they concluded that no succor could come to them but from Heaven ; and in this belief they abandoned themselves all three to grief ; and said so many things, made such moan, and shed so many tears, that if *Soliman* had been a Spectator of so sad a Conversation, he would peradventure have been moved to repentance, but he was in far other thoughts. It was not because, to render him the more unhappy, he had not still some instants, wherein a beam of light cleared his mind, and made him see his fault ; but love was ever stronger then all his other apprehensions. *Isabella's* resistance, the fear of our illustrious *Bassa's* return, and the counsels of that Slave whom *Roxelana* had seduced, carried him to violence ; and albeit he had sent an Order to *Ibrahim* a good while before, whereby he forbid him, upon some pretext that regarded the good of his Empire, from returning to *Constantinople*, until he had a new commandment from him ; yet not being assured whether he had received it or no, he was always in fear of his return ; for he felt not his Soul so powerfully settled on his crime, that he could resolve, if the *grand Visier* returned before he could obtain *Isabella's* consent, to tell him that he would not restore her to him. And for this reason it was, that he was in such fear he had not received the Order which he had sent him ; and truly, this apprehension was not ill grounded, for he that had this secret Command was drowned in passing over the river *Tigris*, before he could get to *Ibrahim* ; whose fortune had been as happy, as his dear *Isabella's* was deplorable. It was not because the absence of a person whom he loved so passionately, was not extremely sensible to him, nor possess his heart with the greatest displeasure that a Lover can be capable of ; but the thought he had, that he was going to fight for the deliverance of *Isabella*, gave him strength to support his grief ; which became less violent, when as being arrived at the general Rendezvous, he understood of *Ulama*, who was come thither, and had commanded in his absence, that all the Troops, which had been sent for the fortifying of the Army, were the bravest in the world ; and that by the intelligence which they had from the enemy, it seemed that he had a design to decide the matter by the loss or gain of a battel ; how it was advertised that *Tachmas* was in person in the Camp ; that *Deliment* was there too ; and that by this means, if the victory inclined to their side, they should be in an estate of vanquishing all their enemies together. Howbeit that he had a request to make unto him on the behalf of the Princess *Aximira*, whom he had left at *Bitilisa* ; which was to spare the person of *Tachmas*, as much as the confusion of the fight would permit him ; and to promise her if the chance of War gave him the advantage, not to make other use of it then the concluding of a peace between the two Empires, and the re-entring of her into her Country without all future fear of *Deliment's* violences.

*Ibrahim* answered to this discourse with as much generosity, as *Ulama* had testified affection in making it to him : and after they had spent some time in talking of the order they were to observe in this War, they took a resolution to make a review two days after of the Army, by a general Muster thereof, to the end that afterwards they might march on courageously against the Enemy. All the Commanders having received this Order, and having imparted it to their Soldiers, they thought of nothing else for those two days, but of appearing as gallant as possibly they could ; and those which could not be rich in Clothes, endeavored at least to have their Arms neat and bright. At length the morning being come, wherein *Ibrahim* had resolved to make a review of his Troops, he went accompanied with *Ulama* to an indifferent great Plain ; and being placed on a rising ground, they began to muster before him. The first that appeared were composed of fourteen thousand *Tartars*, who by their precipitate march gave hope, that they would not be the last at the fight when occasion served. Fifteen thousand *Azapes* went next commanded by a *Sangiac* ; and after them as many *Spachis*, who being past, made way for a like number of *Croatians*, which at last left six thousand *Janizaries* to be seen, the gallantest and best armed in all this Empire. All the Infantry

fantry having past, the Cavalry followed after; twelve thousand Archers first appeared; next to them ten thousand *Accangis* with Scymitars and Battel-axes; and last of all fifteen thousand *Timariots* with Guns. In the end *Ibrahim* found, that his Foot being three score and five thousand, and his Horse thirty and seven thousand, his Army amounted to above an hundred thousand fighting men. All these Troops being past, the Artillery appeared, consisting of above an hundred pieces of Ordnance, part of them for battery, and part for the field, with the greatest train that almost hath been heard spoken of, were it for the abundance of Powder, and Shot, or Waggons for the carriage of things necessary to furnish the Camp.

This review being ended, and *Ibrahim* thoroughly contented with it, he no longer thought of any thing but of hastening his victory or defeature: so that to advance it the sooner, after he had encamped his Army, and learnt in what place the Enemy was, he resolved to write unto the *Sophy*, to the end he might oblige him to the terminating of this War by a Battel. And to colour the matter with the publique interest, though in this occasion it was effectively for the interest of *Isabella*, he wrote to him in these terms.

**IBRAHIM BASSA**, *By the Grace of  
Alla supream Secretary, and chief Visier of  
the most mighty and most invincible Monarch,  
Sultan Soliman, his Lieutenant General, and  
absolute Governor of the Affairs of his State,  
throughout the whole extent of his most flourishing and great Empire.*

**TO TACHMAS SOPHY** of *Persia.*

**T**He Emperor, whom I serve, having done me the honor absolutely to refer unto me the managing of the interests, which are between his Highness and your Majesty; and knowing that all great Princes ought never to make War, but to give the more sure foundations to Peace; and that they ought to spare the blood of their Subjects, and keep them from ruine, as much as possibly they may; I have beleev'd, that without doing ought against the service of the Sultan, or against the respect which is due to persons of your quality, I may at the request of the Princess *Axi-mira*, yield to the motion she hath made unto me, not to destroy your people with a long War. And to this effect, if your Majesty pleaseth, we will shorten it with a Battel, which may decide the matter, and render the victorious party Master of a Country replenish'd with Subjects, and not of a Desert. But whereas it seems to me that the choyce of Arms appertains to him that is challenged; even amongst equal persons, knowing what I owe to your Majesty, it is for you to make choyce of the day of Battel, and of the place of fighting; for so as it be equally advantageous, I shall receive it with joy, since whatsoever shall happen in that day cannot be ignominious to me: For if I be vanquish'd, the glory of the Vanquisher will make me to be so without disgrace; and if the chance of War shall make me happy, nothing will equal my glory, but the courtesie which I shall have for your Highness, if Fortune doth furnish me with means for it. I shall expect then your Majesties pleasure thereupon,

Aaaa

with

with the same respect, as I would have in all other encounters, the interests of my Master preserved.

## IBRAHIM.

After the *grand Visier* had finished this Letter, he sent for *Ulama* to shew it to him, who having approved of it, besought him withall, that he would permit him to send a Challenge to *Deliment*, thereby to oblige him to a single Combat before the Battel, if it hapned that *Tachmas* should resolve to accept of it. *Ibrahim* did what he could to divert him from this design, perswading him, in regard *Deliment's* birth was so unequal to his, that he should do him too much honor. But *Ulama's* great heart, together with the desire of revenging the Princess *Axiamira*, and pleasing of *Felixana* in punishing *Deliment*, would not suffer him to be perswaded: So that having obtained that which he demanded, he went presently to draw up his Challenge, which he wrote in these terms.

## ULAMA's Challenge to DELIMENT.

Of the fear I am in lest the day of Battel proving fatal unto you I shall not be able to revenge the Princess *Axiamira* with mine own hand, I thus send to offer you the Combat; and though there be some inequality between us, yet will I appear at the place of Battel, without other advantage then that of having the right on my side. And whereas valor is the only good quality which is in you, lose not the occasion which now I present you with to justify it.

## ULAMA.

After this Challenge was finished, and that *Ulama*, to render the civility to *Ibrahim* which he had used towards him, had shewed it unto him, he gave it to a Trumpet, who was to conduct a *Boluchbassi*, unto whom *Ibrahim* had committed the Letter which he wrote to the *Sophy*; and having dismissed them with order carefully to observe all that should be said to them, and all that they should see, they parted instantly away, and the next day arrived at the Enemies Camp. As soon as they were there, they were conducted to the *Sophy's* Tent, whom they found invironed with the most part of the Commanders of his Army. After that the *Boluchbassi* had made a low obeysance to the *Sophy*, and told him from whom he came, he presented him with *Ibrahim's* Letter, which the *Sophy* read softly with some change of countenance; Then lifting up his voyce after he had read it over, I am too much obliged to *Ibrahim*, said he with both an obliging and generous smile, for the care he takes to preserve my Subjects: Yes, yes, continued he, addressing his speech to the *Boluchbassi*, I will accept of the Battel, or to say better, I will go and present it to him; and within this hour you shall carry him the news of it.

When as the *Sophy* had given over speaking, the Trumpet advanced, and after a low obeysance also to him, Which of you, said he, turning himself to all them that were about *Tachmas*, is called *Deliment*? It is I, answered *Deliment*, severing himself from the rest: Why then, replied the Trumpet, I present you here with a Challenge from *Ulama*. *Ulama*, cryed the *Sophy* then: Yes, my Lord, said *Deliment*; and if your Majesty will give me leave, I will see that which he hath sent me. The *Sophy* having permitted him so to do, he opened the Challenge, and read it aloud, but with so much choller when he came to the two last lines, as he lost the respect which he owed to the *Sophy* with his insolency in threatening *Ulama*; true indeed it is, that he knew well enough he should not offend him thereby: for regarding *Ulama* as his Rival, all that he said against him could not but please him. At length the *Boluchbassi* and the Trumpet having been committed to the guard of those which had conducted them to the *Sophy's* Tent, an hour after *Tachmas* and *Deliment's* Answer was brought unto them; and having been conveyed out of the Camp, they returned to *Ibrahim*, whom they found alone in his Tent with *Ulama*. They delivered him the Letter which was directed to him, and to *Ulama Deliment's* Answer; and when as they had declared all that they had observed in the *Boemics* Camp, they withdrew, and *Ibrahim* having opened the *Sophy's* Letter, saw that it was thus.

S C A C H



SCACH TACHMAS, Great King of Persia, Universal Caliph of the Sect of Aly; Chief of the Caselbas; Monarch of Parthia, Media, Assiria, and Armenia; the beloved Son, and just Observer of the Laws of the Prophet Mahomet; Subduer of Rebels; Expug-nator of all the Tyrants of the Orient; Prince of the great City of Smarcand; the lawful Successor of great Ismael; the invincible Sophy; the greatest and most redoubted Lord of all the Seas and Lands of the Orient.

To the generous IBRAHIM.

**T**hey which will fight never use long discourses; all that I can say to you for answer is, that precisely within eight days I will attend you in the great Plain of Nephates in the head of my Army ranged in Battel array; being absolutely resolved, for the lessening of your disgrace if you be vanquished, or for the augmenting of your glory if I be, to fight in person in this Battel; and to be your Conqueror or your Captive: if it prove to be the last, death shall soon set me at liberty; and if the other shall happen, be assured that the esteem which I make of your vertue, of your fidelity to your Master, and of your courage, shall make you receive more marks of my clemency and courtesie, then I shall have rendred you of my valor in surmounting you.

TACHMAS.

Ibrahim, having found a great deal of generosity in this Letter, and being exceeding joyful to see that the War would not last long, obliged Ulama to read the Answer which Deliment made him.

DELIMENT'S Answer to ULAMA'S Challenge.

**I** Accept of the Combat with joy which you offer me; being glad that in the view of two hundred thousand men the Princess Axiamira may learn by your defeat, that he whom she terms her Enemy, and that will notwithstanding be always her Lover, hath more courage then he whom she hath chosen for her Protector. For in fine, I hope that right will not side so absolutely with a rebellious Subject, as to keep the victory from being mine, and me from punishing with my arm at one instant, both my particular enemy, and the enemy of the State.

DELIMENT.

This injurious reproach vexed not Ulama so much, as the hope of being able to punish De-  
 Aaaa 2 liment

liment gave him joy ; so that *Ibrahim* and he being equally satisfied, thought of nothing more then preparing themselves for the Battel. *Tachmas* and *Deliment* on their parts, thought no less of it ; and during these eight days, both the Armies were in impatience for the arrival of this Battel, which was to accumulate them with glory or confusion. And whereas the news of this particular Combat was spread over all both Camps, a superstition crept in amongst the Soldiers, which perswaded them that the event of this Combat would be a presage of that of the Battel ; so that each one on either side made vows for the advantage of his party ; but above all the rest *Tachmas* earnestly wish'd, that *Deliment* might be victorious over *Ulama* ; yet was it not so much for his conservation and his glory, although he loved him infinitely, as for to have the satisfaction of seeing *Ulama* dye, whom he beheld in this occasion, not as a revolted Subject, but as the Lover of *Felixana*, and his Rival ; and it might be said, that he had rather *Deliment* should vanquish him, on condition that he lost the Battel, then that he should win it without the loss of *Ulama*. Out of this thought also was it that he permitted the Combat to *Deliment*. At length the sixth day being come, both the two Armies marched to the Plain of *Niphates*, and encamped in the sight of one another, to the end that reposing themselves one whole day they might fight with the more courage. Never was there a goodlier or gallanter thing seen then these two Camps ; nor Peace with all its abundance, what publique feasts soever it hath capied, ever shewed more state, then War did at that time in these two Armies. For *Soliman* out of a particular grace was pleased that *Ibrahim* should march with the same pomp in this voyage, as if he had been there in person ; that the Officers, which are not accustomed to serve in it, but when he is there, should accompany him ; that those Ensigns, which are never displayed but in his preference, should be set up ; that the *Spachis*, who fight not but before him, should be present there ; and that the same pavillions, which he himself used, should be his. And whereas the custom of the *Turks* and *Persians* is to lodge all the Soldiers in Tents, and that ordinarily they are all very sumptuous, these two Camps shewed the goodliest object that can fall under the eye of man. There was nothing but Cloth of Gold and Tinsel in all *Ibrahim's* Pavillions, with Silver Crests, Penons, and Streamers on the top of them. The least Tents were painted on the out-side with Arabesque foliage of Gold and Silver, intermixt with different colours ; and those of the very Slaves were of Cotton Cloth of lively colours, and woven Checquerwise. *Ibrahim* in the evening, out of a warlike gallantry, sent to tell the *Sophy* that he was arrived, and desired to receive his pleasure : whereunto *Tachmas* answered, that the next morning at Sun-rising he should see him in the head of his Army. At last this so long expected day being come, scarcely had the first beams of the Sun begun to gild the tops of those four high mountains which environ this Plain, but *Ibrahim*, as well as *Tachmas*, drawing his Army out of their Trenches, put it into Battel array ; and whereas he followed the order of the *Turks* in the greatest part of exterior things, he ranged his Troops into the form of a Cresent, but with this difference nevertheless, that contrary to the custom of their Generals of Armies, he would be the foremost ; and for that effect he placed himself between the right horn and the left, in the head of a Battalion of six thousand *Janizaries*. He gave the Command of the left to the *Begliarbey* of *Amasia*, and of the right to the *Bassa Pialli*. He caused part of his Ordnance to be set in the midst ; and to surprize the Enemy the more, the rest was placed between two Battalions of Foot. He chose four thousand also from out of his Horse to ride up and down about the Camp for the succoring of those that were in need. He placed his best Troops in the head and body of the Battel, leaving the rear-ward to the conduct of the *Sangiac* of *Morea*. And whereas the *Persians* have more Horse then Foot, he so well disposed of his, that on what side soever they were assauled, his Squadrons might make head on all parts. Order being given then every where, and *Ibrahim* having gone more then once from Battalion to Battalion, and from rank to rank, to see that every one performed his duty, he began at length to speak to his Troops much after this sort.

IBRAHIM'S Oration to his Soldiers.

**F**ellow Soldiers, It is rather to follow the custom then for necessity that I come shew to speak to you, seeing sufficiently by your faces that you are resolved to do well ; and that you have not forgotten how these enemies, which we are going to fight withall, are the very same whom we have heretofore vanquished ; so that without standing on vain discourses, remember

remember only, that all the design I have in this battel is to vanquish or to dye; that flying is sometimes more deadly then fighting; and that a noble death is to be preferred before an ignominious life. Let us go then, Fellow-Soldiers, to seek out the Victory which is attending so crown us. In fine, I demand but one thing of you, which is, that you will not lose the fight of me, and to go only so far as I will lead you.

*Ibrahim*, having made an end of speaking, and his Soldiers having assured him that they would follow him, by a joyful shout which they gave all together, alighted from his horse, and went and put himself in the head of six thousand *Janizaries*, whom he had placed between the left horn and the right. And whereas this action made all them that saw it give a great shout: You see, said he, Fellow-Soldiers, that I have no intent to abandon you, since I deprive my self of the means to fly. After this he commanded to march on; and that great body, composed of so many different parts, began to advance with so regular a motion, as it might be said, that one spirit made it move.

In the mean time *Tachmas*, who knew the manner of the *Turks* fight, had ranged his Army in battel array much after the same sort, with this difference nevertheless, that whereas he had more Horse then Foot, behinde the battalion which corresponded to that of the *Janizaries*, in the head of whom *Ibrahim* had set himself, was a Squadron of the most courageous Nobility of all his Empire, in the midst of whom he was. And when as he saw that his Enemies Army moved, he caused his to set forward, so that these two great bodies advancing equally came within five hundred paces one of another; and by the manner of their marching, it had been a very difficult matter to discern to which side the victory would lead.

When as they were at this distance, *Ulama*, after he had obtained permission of *Ibrahim* for it, severed himself from the Army, and went directly towards the Enemies with his Scymitar in his hand; but scarcely was he advanced fifteen paces, when as *Deliment*, having also severed himself from his party, came and encountered him in the same sort; and these two brave Cavaliers joyned together just in the middle of the place of battel. The two Armies made a stand to see this combat, which was beheld by both parts almost as an infallible preface of the victory to that side of them two which should carry it from the other. As soon as *Ulama* and *Deliment* were met, they fell to fighting, either of them having too great a heart for to stand reproaching and reviling one another. At first, *Deliment* fought like a desperate man, and *Ulama* like one, who without losing his judgment, or otherwise transported, made it nevertheless sufficiently appear by the manner of his carriage, that he was resolved either to vanquish or to dye. Signs of fury were seen in the one, and proofs of an invincible courage in the other; the first struck with violence, and inconsiderately; and the last, exposing himself valiantly some times to his Enemies blows, assaulted him with judgment, and warded with address: But at length after they had made an hundred passades to no purpose; had tried in vain to gain the crupper, and had been a long time without hurting one another; *Ulama* seeming to be vexed for staying so long from vanquishing or dying, redoubled his endeavors, and pressing his Enemy more vively then before, he had at length the satisfaction to see his blood first, with a blow of his Scymitar, which he layd at his shoulder but lighted on his thigh. This first advantage more augmented *Ulama's* courage, and redoubled *Deliment's* rage; for after that it was impossible to discern the blows they gave each another: *Deliment* was in continual action, *Ulama*, no more then he, lost not a minutes time; and without either recoyling, or taking breath, they fought very neer an hour, and yet it could not be judged to which side the victory inclined. *Ulama's* Turbant was all in pieces, he had also received a wound on his left arm, his Scymitar was dyed with the blood of *Deliment*, whom he had hurt in two places, when as in an instant flying violently at him, he discharged so great a blow with his Scymitar on his neck, that falling from his horse, he extended him dead at his feet. This fall made all those of *Ulama's* party to shout for joy, but he without longer tarrying in that place, galloped back to *Ibrahim*, and with as much tranquillity of spirit, as if he had not fought at all, said to him smiling, that he came from rough-hewing the victory for him. If I obtain it, replied the illustrious *Bassa*, it will be less glorious to me, then that which you have gotten, since you share it with none, whereas I shall owe the other, both to your valor, and to that of an hundred thousand men that follow me.

After this, *Ibrahim*, having observed that *Ulama* was wounded on the left arm by the blood



blood which came out of it, would not have had him fought; but *Ulama* not consenting thereunto, onely caused his arm to be bound up with a piece of linnen cloth of a Turbant; and placing himself by *Ibrahim*, and all the Trumpets, Drums, and *Attaballes* having sounded a charge, they began to march with those great cries, which all the *Oriental Nations* make at the beginning of battels; but yet with this difference, that *Ibrahim's* Soldiers seemed to be almost assured of the victory, whereas the others on the contrary seemed to have no other design in fighting, then to revenge the death of *Delment*: It was not for that he was beloved, but because the *Sophy* shewed so much resentment for it, as it pass'd even into the hearts of his men. In the end these two Armies being provoked, the one by the desire of glory, and the other by that of revenge, they encountered together. And to give yet a further courage to *Ibrahim's* forces, it happened that *Tachmas*, being arrived first in the field, had seized on an high piece of ground, upon the which he had planted his Ordnance; but that which he conceived would have been advantageous, proved unprofitable unto him; for when as the two Armies caused their Cannon to play on either part, that of the *Persians* did no hurt to the *Turks*, because all the shot passed over their heads in regard it was planted too high. *Ibrahim's* Ordnance wrought another effect, and his first discharge lighting just in the midst of that Squadron, where the *Sophy* was in person, cleared all the ranks, with the slaughter of a world of men. But when as the *Sophy*, who lost not his judgment in this occasion, had commanded those behinde to take the place of them before, *Ibrahim* on his side, caused two battalions, behinde the which were the rest of his Ordnance, to open, and the Soldiers having accordingly divided themselves to the right hand and to the left, the remainder of his Ordnance discharged all together through the voyd space that was between the ranks, and put his Enemies into so strange a disorder, as the like was never heard of. And truly it was advantageous to the *Persians*, that the thickness of the smoke and dust, which enveloped these two Armies, kept them from seeing the horridness of this execution, for otherwise peradventure they would not have had so much heart to fight, as they testified afterwards.

At length, *Tachmas* having formed his battalions anew, for repairing of the disorder which the great Ordnance had made, and *Ibrahim's* Soldiers having re-assumed their stations, these two Armies came to cope with one another. *Ibrahim*, followed by *Ulama*, gave first into the battalion, behinde the which was that broken squadron, where the *Sophy* and *Ismael* were in person. And it was there, where out of a prodigious valor he did things, which would not finde belief with posterity, if they were written. He made way through all opposition, and not contented with carrying fear and terror wheresoever he went; with defending his own life, and giving death to his Enemies; but took care also for the conservation of his own party. He saved the *Bassa Sinan* from being killed, by discharging a great blow with his Scymitar upon him that was striking him: now though he performed the Soldier in this encounter, yet left he not for all that to behave himself like the General of the Army, and to have an eye to all things. Sometimes he sent to succor those that stood in need; sometimes he went to them in person, and joyning both prudence and valor together, it might be said, that never two several men exercised them so nobly, as *Ibrahim* in his person alone made them to appear in this occasion. And the course that he held was such, in sending his directions to every part, as it might also be affirmed, that he was in all the fights that were in the field, and that he might with reason be termed the soul of his Army. *Ulama* in like manner worthily seconded his valor; and all the *Janizaries*, seeing in the head of them so courageous a Chieftain, performed their parts so well in this encounter, that they pierced quite through this battalion, and so absolutely defeated it, as all that the squadron which was behinde it could do, was to set the person of *Tachmas* out of danger.

But whilst *Ibrahim* fought so prosperously, the *Beglierbey* of *Amasia*, who commanded the left wing, had not the like fortune; for finding himself opposed to the best Soldiers of the Enemies Army, who were commanded by one *Basingir*, a man of great consideration with the *Persians*, his battalion had been broken at the very first, and the Enemies intermingling amongst them, had killed part of them, and made the rest to fly, in beating them even to the body of their battel. *Ibrahim*, having been advertised of this disorder, left *Ulama* to prosecute the victory, which he was already well entred into, and mounting on a horse, he went galloping, followed onely by an hundred *Accangis*, whom he drew from their body, towards the place where the greatest disorder was. When he arrived there, and saw his men

men basely flying, and suffering themselves to be killed, scarcely making defence, he went directly to them with his Scymitar in his hand; but being loth to cover them with shame, in letting them see that he perceived their cowardice: You mistake, said he, Fellow-Soldiers, your valor transports you too much, the Enemy is not that way, turn about, and follow me. This speech filled them with confusion, and this confusion having redoubled their courage they rallied themselves about him. But when as notwithstanding he saw that those words were not sufficient to make them fight valiantly enough, he went to one of those who carried the Arms of the Empire, and taking the Ensign out of his hand, he threw it with all his force into the midst of the Enemies, and turning about to his men; *Come, Fellow-Soldiers*, said he unto them, *We must dye, or recover it*. This action gave new strength to the *Turks*; for whereas amongst them the greatest disgrace that can arrive to their Troops, is to let the Enemies with whom they fight take the Arms of the Empire: the design of recovering this Ensign, which *Ibrahim* had thrown amongst the Enemies, infused the desire of glory, and fear of infamy into their souls. At length the one side purposing to keep it, and the other to regain it, there began so fierce a fight betwixt them, as it was in this place where the greatest slaughter was made. Wounds, in stead of weakening those which received them, seemed to incense their fury. There were men seen covered all over with blood and hurts, who in falling down dead gave death unto others. They too who had already lost their lives, served still to make others lose theirs; for divers encountering with this great number of bodies under their feet, stumbled many times against their wills, and so gave their Enemies the opportunity to run them through; and of all this infinite company of men that fought in this place, there was not one which was not dyed, either with his own blood, or that of his Enemies. But at last after a very long conflict, the very same hand which had thrown the *Turks* Ensign to the *Persians*, wrung it out of the hand of *Basingir*, who had seized upon it, by depriving him of his life; and he not onely recovered his own Standart, but he also gained that of the Enemies. This so noble and brave an action abated the courage of the *Persians*, and augmented that of the *Turks*, so that after this, those which had fled in their turn pursued the very same adversaries, who had routed them; and *Ibrahim* went beating them to the very place where he had left *Ulama*; who on his side had almost made an end of vanquishing all that had made resistance against him. Howbeit he remembred in this occasion that he was *Tachmas* subject, for having found *Ismael* inclosed by five or six *Turks*, who seeing that he would neither defend, nor render himself, would without doubt have killed him, he drew him out of their hands, and reproaching them for standing in that sort upon the getting of so weak a victory, having so many Enemies yet to fight withall, he gave him the opportunity to escape to his own party.

In the mean time the *Bassa Pialli*, who commanded the left wing, was still bickering with one, named *Alamut*, who commanded the *Persians* left wing; and they had fought with so equal an advantage, as it could not be said to which side the victory leaned. But the *Grand Visier* being her favorite in this battel, she followed him also in this occasion. His arrival made the face of things to change; the *Persian* Horse basely fell off, and a battalion of Foot was wholly overthrown: the *Accangis* in this encounter did wonders, the *Timariots* likewise performed their duty, and albeit the *Persian* Cavalry is better then the *Turks*, yet this day they proved the weaker.

The *Sophy* seeing his whole battel broken, a great part of his men dead, and fear in all the rest, thought no longer but of making a retreat, and putting his person in safety, that he might not fall into the power of his Enemies; and to facilitate the means thereof, he commanded six thousand Horse, which were coasting the Army, to set upon *Ibrahim's* Reer-guard, who had not yet fought; thinking thereby to make a diversion, and give him the means to retire with some order, things being no longer in terms for him to hope that he could keep the field. But this design succeeded no better then the rest; for these six thousand Horse having encountered those, which *Ibrahim* had commanded to ride up and down about his Camp, there fell out a particular fight betwixt them, wherein the *Persians* were also vanquished: So that *Tachmas*, missing of this hope too, thought no longer of retreating, but of flying. And whereas of all apprehensions fear is that which more speedily passeth from one heart to another amongst the Soldiers, the *Sophy* was no sooner seen to think of retiring, but his Troops were straightway posselt with terror: The Enemy appeared more redoubtable to them

them then before, and losing the hope of victory, they lost the will to fight.

*Ibrahim* in the mean while omitted no time; and perceiving by the Enemies countenance, that they were no longer carried by the desire of vanquishing, but only by that of saving themselves, he redoubled his endeavors, and causing all the Troops of his Army, which had not yet fought, to fall on all together, he put that of the Enemies into so fearful a disorder, that it was no longer either fighting, retreating, or flying, but to say better, it was all the three together. For in one place, a battalion was seen to stand firm, and continue fighting; in another a Squadron that retired without breaking; but almost every where the Horse and Foot were seen mingled together; the Souldiers abandoning their Colours, and throwing away their Arms; some yielding themselves to their Enemies; others killing Horse-men, that they might have their Horses to fly away with the more speed and safety; the Cannon left without defence; the baggage exposed to plunder; all the Commanders without any power over their Soldiers; the most of them not knowing themselves what they would command; in the end, if the night had not arrived, I believe that not one of the *Persians* had been in an estate to fight, and that *Tachmas* would have fallen into the power of *Ibrahim*; but darkness coming on stole him from his victory: For *Tachmas*, having rallied all the Nobles about him that he had left, commanded four Thousand Horse, and two Thousand Foot, to go and amuse the Enemy, whilst he retired. And these Troops were they alone, which shewed in the conclusion of this battel, that they merited not their misfortune; for at length, by the resistance which they made, though it was not long, they gave *Tachmas* opportunity to retire into *Sultrania*.

In the mean time *Ibrahim*, to keep the victory from destroying his Army, after that he and *Ulama* had pursued those which fled, as far as day-light would permit them to distinguish between the Enemies and their own men, forbade his Soldiers from plundering the *Persian* Camp, promising to give them the whole booty of it; and causing every one to repair to his Colours, he passed the night in the place of battel; absolutely victorious, without being wounded, or losing above two thousand men; where after the slaughter of twenty thousand Enemies, of taking their baggage, their Cannon, and their Colours, he might without fear, and in safety, have remained in the field of his triumph, without thinking of any thing but of enjoying his victory: Yet did not he so, for after he had commanded that *Ulama* should be dress'd, who was slightly hurt, he went himself to place the Guards, to see if all things were as they should be, and to visit such of the Commanders as were wounded. But in the end, after he was returned to his dear *Ulama*, and had reflect'd a while on himself, he in his heart offered his whole victory to *Isabella*, as believing it to be rather an effect of her vows, than of his valor. And the thought which he had that this happy day might make him obtain her liberty, was the only pleasure that this famous victory gave him, and the recompence of all his travels.

### *The End of the Third Book.*





## The Fourth Book.

Whereas it is not enough to have vanquished, if one does not know how to use the victory, the Illustrious Bassa knew too well how to make use of the advantages of fortune, for to neglect his enemy after he had surmounted him. He was not ignorant that the chance of war is inconstant; that Conquerors may oftentimes be Slaves to those whom they have put in chains; and that the Crowns which Victory hath set on the head of those whom she favours, are not so well settled, but that they may be plucked from thence. Out of so just a reasoning, *Ibrahim* took as much care to have good order observed in his Army, as if that of *Tachmas* had been still in the field, and had not been defeated. He discamped then the next day, and still advancing into the Enemies Countrey, without incounting any obstacle, he carried terror over all the Persian Empire. For whereas the Sophies Army had been utterly routed, they which had not followed him to *Sultania*, and that had escaped killing in the battell, fled to the next adjoining Provinces, and by their report wrought that in the mindes of those that heard them, which the Arms of *Ibrahim* had wrought in them, possessing their hearts with fear and terror. And whereas it is naturall enough for a man to seek to excuse himself, they made the Army of the Turks far greater than it was, for the justifying of their flight; they commended the valour of *Ibrahim* to cover their own cowardice, and fighting for him in this occasion, they induced many Towns to render themselves, who otherwise had at leastwise attended the Canon, and the sight of their Enemy. But whereas the most part of the Palaces in this Empire are not much fortified; and are commonly his that keeps the field, *Ibrahim* being become so absolutely Master of it, as there was not an enemy appearing, he had no other imployment after the battell of *Niphates*, than to receive the Deputies of Towns which came to bring him the keyes thereof, and one would have said, considering in what manner things past, that *Ibrahim* was rather a lawfull King, that rode in progress about his Kingdom to make himself known to his Subjects, than a Conqueror, which received the submissions of the people whom he had subdued. In fine, the matter went in that sort, as in two moneths space the Grand Visier restored unto *Solimans* obedience all the places which he had formerly conquered, and that had revolted after *Ulamas* defeat, and during the time of his sickness. In the mean while he had sent to Prince *Mahamed* and to *Axiamera*, to assure them that he did not conquer their Countrey but only to oblige the Sophy to demand peace; and if it should be long before he heard from him, he would send to propound it unto him, with such just conditions, as he could not refuse it. *Ulama* likewise on his part had written to the Princess and *Felixana*, who had not failed to testifie unto him by their Letters a great deal of acknowledgement for the victory which he had obtained of *Deliment*. *Axiamera* was nevertheless much disquieted, to understand by all them which came from the Camp to *Bitilisa*, that since *Tachmas* entred into *Sultania*, there had been no news of him: For albeit the Sophy had intreated her very ill, yet still he was her Father, and the apprehensions of Nature were yet stronger in her heart, than the remembrance of injuries was sensible unto her. This inquietness was not particular to her, and though it was after a different fashion, yet certain it is, that the Grand Visier was troubled, for that he could learn nothing of *Tachmas*; not being able to imagine what design he should have in shutting himself up in *Sultania*, and never appearing since, nor giving any order for setting some forces on foot again. One morning as he was talking with *Ulama* about it, and that neither of them knew what to think of it, one came and told him, that one named *Morath*, Captain of a Galley of the Bassa of the Seas Fleet, desired to speak with him. *Ibrahim*, who knew the order which this Bassa had had to make some descent into *Mingrelia*, thereby to divert the enemies forces, believed that he came to give him an account thereof, and therefore commanded him to be brought in: Which was no

sooner done, but *Morath*, after he had saluted him with an high respect, told him, that having been acquainted by fame with the prosperous success of his Arms, and that he was in a condition to impose Laws on the vanquished, he was sent from the Bassa of the Sea to beg a grace of him in favour of *Arsalon*. This name equally surprized both *Ibrahim* and *Ulama*; for the Grand Visier remembered very well that this *Arsalon* was he who had taken *Doria* near to *Naples*; that he was Father to *Alibech*, whom *Osman* the Bassa of the Seas son had married; but he could not comprehend how they should meet together, and be made friends: *Ulama* knew too, by report, that the Satrap *Arsalon* was become the famousst Pirate of all the Seas of the *Levant*; so that both of them provoked by curiosity, pressed *Morath* to explain himself more clearly. My Lord, said he to *Ibrahim*, before I tell you what *Arsalon* desires, may you be pleased to let me relate unto you the sequels of an History, the beginning whereof you are acquainted with, to the end that by the knowledge you shall have thereof, you may be the more easilier carried to grant the favour which is desired of your generosity. *Ibrahim* having consented thereunto, caused every one to go out of his Tent, except *Ulama*, and they two being set, *Morath* spake in this sort.

### *The Sequels of the History of Osman and Alibech.*

**I** Make no doubt, my Lord, but if the generosity of *Alibech* moved you at such time, as by your goodness you got the Grand Signior to judge her cause to her advantage, I make no doubt, I say, but that which I am going to impart unto you will carry you to serve her. I will not stand to run over her first adventures, thereby to make you understand the rest, since I hold it impossible that you should not still remember, that she is the daughter of *Arsalon* the Pirate, or to say better, of a Satrap of *Persia*, whom ill fortune hath made a Pirate. And I do not think you have forgot that this Pirate took *Osman* prisoner, who in a few dayes became desperately in love with the vertuous *Alibech*, and that she delivering him, saved her self with him, upon condition that he should marry her when he came to *Constantinople*. No more can you be ignorant, that the Bassa of the Sea would never have permitted his son to have kept his word with her, had not the Grand Signior by his commandment, and by his liberality, forced him to receive this fair Maid, in whom he found no other defect but poverty. Now since that, my Lord, I can assure you, that *Alibech* hath not rendred her self unworthy of the grace you did her, nor of that which yet she attends from your goodness. She hath lived with the Bassa of the Sea in as much obedience to him, as if she had been his own daughter; and with her submissions and respects hath in such sort acquired his affection, as he loves not his son with more tenderness. As for *Osman*, there hath never been heard speak of a more violent, or more durable love than his, and every day too he sees some new grace in his dear *Alibech*; for whereas the beauty of her soul is far greater than that of her face, she hath given him so many new marks of her virtue, of her courage, of her love, and of her generosity, as he should be the ingratefullest of men, if the affection which he bears her, could enter into comparison with any other. This person then, being so straightly linked in good will to her Father-in-Law, and to her husband, could not resolve to abandon them, at such time as the Bassa of the Sea was constrained to imbarck himself for to go and command the Fleet, which was sent into *Mingrelia*. And although, out of the fear they were in lest she should receive some incommodie, they did all they could to keep her from it, yet was it impossible for them to prevail with her. No, no, said she to *Osman*, I cannot leave you; and seeing I could follow a father out of obedience, I can better follow an husband out of affection. I am already inured to the discommodities of the Sea, which no doubt will be sweeter to me, sharing them with you, than rest would be agreeable unto me, if I should enjoy it without you. If you fight with advantage, added she, the joy which I shall have of your victory will redouble yours;

yours; and if by misfortune you be vanquished, which Heaven forsend, my tears shall fight for you, when you no longer can. In fine, said she further, tempests, war, slavery, yea and death it self, would be sweeter to me, than a long absence. *Alibech* having in this sort touched the heart of *Osman*, and the Bassa of the Sea being overcome by her intreaties, she imbarqued her self with her husband, who was Vice-Admirall under his Father. Their Navigation having been prosperous enough, untill they came to *Mingrelia*, they thought of no hing more than of choosing a place where they might make a descent, according to the order they had for it: but a horrible tempest that arose, destroyed all their designs. It was so great, so long, and so extraordinary; that the whole Fleet was dispersed; so that when it grew to be calm again, three Vessells were scarce found together: Howbeit so great was our good fortune, as in four or five dayes the whole Navy rejoyned, and albeit most of the ships had something or other broken, yet we rejoyned to see them all shattered as they were, after we had believed they were lost. The two Vessells of *Osman*, and of the Bassa of the Sea, were only wanting to the Fleet; but at length that of *Osman* comming in, made us hope that the Bassa would return in like manner. After he had been attended some dayes with an impatience, which well demonstrated the love which *Osman*, and the generosity which *Alibech* had for him; and after that many Vessells had been sent out to cros up and down the Sea, for to try if they could meet with him, one day as *Osman* was looking forth himself to see if he could descry any thing, he discovered a Vessell: and though it was so far off as he could not discern of what Nation she was, yet the extreme desire which he had that it might be his fathers, perswaded him that it was he. In this belief he caused his dear *Alibech* to come upon the deck to let her see that which all the rest of his Vessell saw as well as he; they continued a pretty while in this sort, between hope and fear, but at length this Vessell approaching by little and little, destroyed the first, and increased the other; for *Osman* certainly knew that this Vessell was a Brigantine, and not that of his father, whose fortune had been very different from his. The tempest having severed him from his Fleet, and the storm having mightily bruised his Vessell, he had been so unhappy as to encounter with a Pirate; who having found him in so deplorable an estate, had set upon him, or to say better, had taken him, he not being able to make any resistance. The Bassa of the Sea after this misfortune, was perswaded, that to be the more gently used, and to get the sooner out of his enemies hands, he was to tell who he was, to the end that offering a great ransom he might be restored to his liberty; the rather, for that in this occasion the affairs of the Empire being much concerned, he should have committed a crime, if he had concealed his name for the saving of money. But that which he thought would conduce most to the getting himself out of trouble, gave him the more; for he pleased to know, that by an encounter altogether prodigious, he that had taken him was the Pirate *Arsalm*, father to the vertuous *Alibech*; who no sooner understood that this prisoner was the Bassa of the Sea, but he appeared to be mightily incensed with anger. What, said he unto him, are you the father then of the Traytor *Osman*, or to say better, of the Ravisher of my daughter? and hath fortune, who hath alwayes persecuted me so cruelly, at last furnished me with means to be revenged? Speak, said he unto him, but disguise not the truth, lest I be drawn to make you tell it by force. The Bassa of the Sea surprised with this discourse, and perceiving very well that this Pirate was *Arsalm*, thought nevertheless, since he had said so much already, that the best would be not to dissemble, and to indeavour by the assurance which he would give him that *Alibech* was *Osman*s wife, and that he had alwayes used her as if she had been his own daughter, to induce him to use him also with the more humanity. In this resolution, I acknowledge, sayd he unto him, that I am the Bassa of the Sea, that I am the father of *Osman*, and the father of the ravisher of *Alibech*; but withall, you are to acknowledge to me also, that I am the father of your daughter, seeing she hath married my sonne; and you are consequently to confess, that since love a-



None hath been the cause of their fault; you ought to pardon them for it; if so be you have not lost the remembrance, that the very same passion made you in times past forget all things. I have not lost the remembrance of it, replied *Arsalon*, but I remember the punishment too that was inflicted on me; and if I treat my daughter after the same manner, she will have no just occasion to complain. If you knew, answered the *Bassa* of the sea, what the affection of *Osman* and *Alibech* were, it would touch your heart: It is so great, continued he, that in the voyage, which I have so unhappily undertaken, she would by no means abandon her husband. *Arsalon* hearing this discourse, made him explain it more particularly unto him; and knew that his daughter was not very far from him: Whereat he testified a great deal of joy, and beholding the *Bassa* with a smile full of bitterness, to shew you, said he unto him, that I am generous, and that I will not confound the innocent with the guilty; I will not use you ill; nay I will not require sonne, though as my slave I might do it; but I will only have that which appertains to me, that is to say, the ingratefull and unnaturall *Alibech*. I do you a good office, sayd he unto him, raising his voice; for since she could betray her father, and abandon him, she would quit you no doubt, and betray you as well as me. The *Bassa*, surprised with this discourse and demand, stood a while without answering thereunto; nevertheless, whereas he is generous, and that the virtue of *Alibech* hath won his heart, he could by no means agree to what was required of him. No, sayd he to *Arsalon*, I will never be ingratefull to your daughter; she restored my sonne to his liberty, and I will lose mine to preserve her that which she enjoys. And then again, said he unto him, I am not master of her, she is *Osman*, who commanding the Navy in my absence, is in an estate to refuse her unto me, if I should be so base as to demand her, which I will never do. We shall see, said *Arsalon* then to him, whether you will not change your mind; and after they had disputed yet a while, he commanded him to be loaden with chains, and told him once again, that he should never have his liberty, and that every day he would make him try new torments, if he did not write to his sonne to oblige him to deliver *Alibech* into the hands of those whom he would send to him for that purpose; promising him, that she should be no sooner in his power, but he would restore him to his liberty. The *Bassa* in so cross a conjuncture, knew not what to think, or what to resolve on. He knew by the report of his sonne, and of *Alibech* too, that *Arsalon* was firm in his resolutions, and of a severe and cruell inclination. He knew that his absence would prejudice the affairs of the Empire; yea and he was perswaded, that his sonne, loving *Alibech* more than his life, would never resolve to lose her for the saving of him; he felt a strange repugnancy in his heart too against the making of this request unto him; and not knowing what to do in so deplorable a case, he lamented his misfortune, accused *Arsalon* cruelty, and without framing any design, indured the sharpest grief that any soul can be capable of. In the mean time *Arsalon*, fearing lest the *Bassa* of the Seas Fleet should remove further from him, and that then he should not have *Alibech* so easily, pressed him to take his last resolution: but what threatnings soever he could use unto him, he could not possibly draw him to write to *Osman* to oblige him to give *Alibech* for his ransom. *Arsalon* did all that he could to shake his resolution; he assured him of a perpetuall slavery; he made him see that his death was indubitable; and perceiving at last that he no whit prevailed, he chose out one of the most understanding and resolute men of his company, and giving him a Brigantine, he sent him towards a Cape, where he had learnt the Fleet was reassembled; and having told him he would stay for him at a creek which was not far from thence, he willed him to search so diligently, that he might find out the *Bassa* of the Seas Navy; and having found it, that he should deliver to *Osman* his sonne, who commanded in his absence, the message which he would impart unto him; whereupon rowning him softly in the ear, he instructed him with his intentions, and dispatched him instantly away. This man, who was a Persian by Nation, exactly obeyed him, and was so fortunate, as he sayled directly to the place

place where the Bassa of the Seas Fleet were all joyned together again. And it was, my Lord, the very same vessell which *Osman* discovered at sea, which a far off gave him so much hope, and which approaching so mightily redoubled his grief, to see that it was a Brigantine, that the sight to be so deceived, made him resolve to fight with her: For which effect he commanded two of his vessels to attack her; but the Persian who had no design to endanger himself to no purpose, perceiving the intention of them that were making towards him, knock sayl, hung out a flag of truce, and putting himself into the skiff, with three of his companions, to testifie the more confidence, he went in this sort to encounter those which were advanced towards him. When he was so near them as he might be heard, the Persian, to have audience the sooner, required to speak with *Osman* from the Bassa of the Sea his father. This name made them all to moan for joy that heard it; and the word passing from Vessell to Vessell, and from Gally to Gally, there was a generall rejoycing over all the whole Fleet. In the mean time *Osman* having been advertised of it, attended with as much joy as impatience, him, that brought him news of his father. And whereas he shared all his bad, and all his hood haps with his dear wife, she was with him at such time as the Persian was conducted unto him. The sight of this man made the virtuous *Alibech* change colour, for she presently knew him, as having seen him with her father, all the time that she lived at sea. This first motion was quickly seconded with an extreme grief; for when as *Osman*, out of an impatience derived from his affection, had demanded of this man where his father was; My Lord, said he unto him, with a great deal of boldness, he is in a place from whence you may easily draw him, and to clear the matter unto you, know, that the chance of War, or rather the equity of Heaven, hath made him fall into the power of the invincible *Arsalon*. Alas, said *Alibech*, looking on *Osman*, what have I heard! and what a destiny is ours like to be! What, said *Osman*, interrupting her, and all amazed, is my father in the hands of *Arsalon*? Yes, my Lord, replied the Persian, and it is from him that I come to tell you, that you shall never see the Bassa your father more, if you do not render him his daughter: This is the price he hath set for his liberty, and it is that which you ought to pay him. I know that I speak boldly, and that in some sort I endanger my self; but be-think you that you have a person in the power of *Arsalon*, which ought to keep you from entreating me ill. I leave you to judge, generous *Ibrahim*, what this proposition effected in the minds of *Osman* and *Alibech*, and what a combat that was, where one must resolve to abandon a father, or lose a wife; yea a wife, to whom *Osman* owed his life and liberty: which made up all his felicity; and which was both his wife and his mistress. Nature and Love could not be satisfied in this occasion: *Osman* could not be acknowledging without being ingratefull; and finding cruelty in both the parties, he knew not what resolution to take. *Osman* never reasoned at first for all that on this adventure, but without sticking a whit at it, he told him that had spoken to him, how he could not render his wife, neither could he abandon his father, but he knew well enough how to destroy *Arsalon*. Ah, my Lord, cryed *Alibech* then, who had done nothing as yet but weep, being scarce able to form a word; If the Bassa of the sea is your father, *Arsalon* is mine; and you cannot hurt him without wronging me. *Osman* being come again out of this first transport, and ravished with *Alibech's* generosity, craved pardon of her: and this Persian returning to speak, I know, my Lord, sayd he unto him, that this choise is hard to be made, wherefore permit me to go back to my vessell, and let me within a day have your answer; but consult with your reason, remember that *Alibech* is the daughter of him that demands her, and that the Bassa of the Sea is the father of a man that stole her away. If *Osman* had followed his first thoughts, he had caused this man to be thrown into the Sea, but fearing lest such violence should prejudice his father, he chose rather to grant his demand. When he was gone away, and that without other witnesses than his dear *Alibech* he might let his grief break forth; Do not think, sayd he unto her, that I consult whether I should deliver you into the hands

of *Arsalon*; no, that is not my thought; but I am considering which way I may deliver my Father: For in fine, it is equally impossible for me to resolve to love him, and abandon you. I ow my life to both of you; I ow obedience to my Father, and love to *Alibech*: If my death could satisfie you both, I should dye no doubt with joy; but fortune that delights to pick me out extraordinary miseries, will not let any thing be able to succour me. The more I consider the matter, the less remedy do I finde for it; which way soever I look upon it, I am still guilty, and still unhappy. I cannot break my fathers chains without giving them to you; I cannot end his punishment, but in beginning yours; I cannot restore him his liberty, but in depriving you of it, nor can save his life, but in putting yours in jeopardy; and that is it which is absolutely impossible for me to do. But, added he; if I conserve you, I load my father with irons; I my self fasten the shackles wherewith he is bound; I am the cause of his captivity, and it may be of his death; I am a parricide, and I stab a dagger into the heart of him that gave me life. See generous *Alibech*, said he unto her, what the choice is which I can make in so cross an adventure. My Lord, said she unto him, wholly dissolved into tears, you require a counsell of me which is very hard to be given; it is not because I fear the rigor of my father so much, as I cannot resolve without pain to indure it to deliver yours; but, my Lord, it is because I cannot do it without abandoning you. Yet I must, continued she; for whereas I am the daughter of *Arsalon*, it is for me to receive the chastisement of her fault; and whereas I am in part the cause of his captivity, it is for me also to deliver him; and it is for me also to dry up the tears which you shed for him: Suffer me then to go and undo his chains, and wear his irons. Ah! too generous *Alibech*, answered *Osman*, do not offer me a remedy worse than the disease, and which I cannot accept of: My father is too generous too, continued he, to indure it; and he would disavow me for his sonne, if I were capable of such a baseness. To have such thoughts would be a thing worthy of his great heart, replied *Alibech*, but it would also be a thing unworthy both of you, and of me, if I could suffer you to be cruell to the Bassa your father, and that he should lose his life by my means. No, *Osman*, it is that which I can never indure; and since we cannot live happy together, let us at leastwise die innocent. Do what you ought for your father; owing him your life, you ow him all things; sacrifice your wife to deliver him, it is just, and she desires it. I must, added she, for the love of you, deprive my self of you; and fear not that I will accuse you of want of affection, whenas you shall consent thereunto; no, *Osman*, I should not be glad that your love to me should stifle the motions of nature in you. Reason must be stronger than all other things; and he that could abandon his father, might also in some other occasion abandon his wife. Permit me to do what I ought, and leave the rest to the conduct of fortune. That would not be just, answered *Osman*. What will you do then, replied *Alibech*? I do not know, answered he; onely I know that the estate wherein my soul is, I can neither be wanting to my father, nor to you; and yet being unable to save you both, I see that nothing but death can succour me. After this, *Osman* fell a musing, then suddenly comming to himself again, he seemed to take the resolution to go and seek out *Arsalon* for to fight with him. But *Alibech* having apprehended his design, What, my Lord, said she unto him, casting her self at his feet, could you command your men to shoot at a Vessell where your father or mine might be killed, and it may be both of them? Could that so generous heart of yours permit you to dip your hands in my blood or in yours? Think well, my Lord, of that which you say; and know that I am capable of taking away mine own life, rather than see you blemish your glory with so strange an action; whereas then you would not be carried thereunto, but only to save my life, whenas I should be deprived of it, you would deal in another manner. It is true, my Lord, that my father is cruell, and inhuman; but remember, that when the Bassa your father would have banished us from his house, I left not respecting him; have the same thought for *Arsalon*: Regard him rather as a man whom misfortune hath bereft of reason, than as one that is wicked; and to

say



say all, consider him as my father. I do not refuse to deliver yours, but contrarily, I conjure you to permit me to do it, but have also the goodness to spare mine. Heaven can witness, answered *Osman*, after he had raised her up, whether I have any intent to hurt *Arsalon*; no, *Alibech*, I will never do it; but in the disorder wherein my soul is, I say whatsoever my grief suggests unto me, without giving my reason leisure to examine whether the thing be just, or whether it be not. In fine, generous *Ibrahim*, after so long and so sad a conversation, *Osman*, not able either to deliver his father, or deprive himself of his wife, or fight with *Arsalon*, resolved at least, and made *Alibech* resolve so too, to go with all his Fleet, and set himself in the sight of that of *Arsalon*; for all the Pirates of the seas of the *Levant* had a little before betaken themselves to him, and acknowledged him for their Chieftain. It was nevertheless after he had promised *Alibech*, that he would not fight with him; and that it should be only to endeavour to make him do that by fear vvhich he could not make him do by reason. All the difficultie of the matter was but to know precisely where he was; but this obstacle lasted not long: for *Osman* having sent for the *Persian* to come again to him, he talked to him with so much address, that he learnt the place of his retreat; after which he told this man in a gentle manner, for fear his father should be ill intreated, that before he answered directly to the proposition which had been made to him, he would willingly have a Letter from his father, to the end that being sure he was living, he might deal with the more certainty. The *Persian* finding some justice in *Osman's* demand, presently left him, with a promise to return him an answer of it within a few days; but take heed, sayd he unto him, that you go not away, for fear lest *Arsalon* should revenge himself on your father, if you should deceive him. So *Osman* having assured him that he vvhould not stir; and this *Persian* having set sayl, he made his whole Fleet to steer the same course; so that two dayes after, at the break of day, the Pirate *Arsalon*, who could not oblige the *Bassa* to write to his sonne, saw his whole Navy appear. At first his design was to fight with it, and to that effect, he caused also his Fleet to be made ready; but when as that of *Osman* approached, and that enlarging it self, he could distinctly count all the vessels, whereof it was composed, he found it so great, and his so small in comparison of it, as seeing that it would have been temerity and folly in him, to hope for the Victory with so unequall a number, he took another resolution: And after he had instructed the same *Persian* whom he had formerly employed, with his intentions, he sent him back to *Osman*; who seeing a vessell loose from *Arsalon's* Fleet, and coming towards him, hoped that it might be his design had succeeded. *Alibech* was not of this opinion; and fear so absolutely oppressed her soul, as there was no place left for hope: And truly she had reason; for this man was no sooner brought before *Osman*, but he made it appear by the confusion which he had in his countenance, that the message which he was to deliver was fatal. I come hither, my Lord, sayd he unto him, to tell you, that if you do not render *Alibech*, and do attempt to set upon *Arsalon*, he will make your father be slain before your eyes; and to deprive you too of the pleasure of revenge, if he happen to have the worst in the fight, he will blow up himself, and so steal from your victory. This strange discourse surprised *Osman* and *Alibech* in such sort, as they stood a good while beholding one another, and not able to speak, but their resentment suddenly breaking forth, they sayd all that an extreme grief can make one think. It is no longer time to consult, said the generous *Alibech*, our love would be criminall if it could produce so strange an effect. Suffer me, my dear *Osman*, suffer me to go and make tryall all alone of my fathers fury; for provided I can restore you yours, death will not be altogether cruell to me. In vain you seek for other remedies to your miserie; and as things stand, I ow my self not only to him which hath given you life, but I ow my self also to *Arsalon*, to the end I may keep him from dipping his hands in innocent blood. As for me, he may deal with me as he pleaseth; I am his daughter; I have abandoned him; I have robbed him of two slaves; and if he can complain of any one, it must doubtless be of me. Your accusing of your self in this sort, said *Os-*

man

man then, is to put me in remembrance of the obligations wherein I stand engaged to you; and it is to say to me also, Do not abandon me. Do not you abandon me, answered she, but suffer me to abandon you. I cannot, replied *Osman*. But could you indeed, sayd *Alibech* to him, see a dagger in my fathers hand to stab the heart of yours? For my part, continued she, I would rather dye. Let us die then, said *Osman* to her; for I tell you once again, that it is as equally impossible for me to resolve to lose my father, as to abandon you. In pursuance of this discourse, *Alibech* did yet what she could to obtain her husbands permission that she might go to her father: She joyned tears to her prayers, and albeit that which she desired would destroy her felicity, bereave her of her liberty, expose her to the fury of her father, and deprive her of her husband, yet was she so generous, as to omit nothing of whatsoever she thought was capable of perswading him not to refuse her that she demanded. But seeing at last that she entreated in vain, and that *Osman* unable to resolve on any thing, yet seemed to be resolved not to render her, she purposed to make use of a kinsman of the Bassa of the sea, whom she had won after the first time that *Arsalons* Messenger came thither: And that she might talk with him at liberty, and without suspicion, I see very well, sayd she to *Osman*, that the tears which I shed to move your heart, do but harden it the more, and that as long as you see me, you can resolve of nothing, wherefore suffer me to withdraw my self, and remember, sayd she unto him, that the life of your father is in question. After this, she retired into the Captains cabbin; whither having sent for the Bassa of the Seas kinsman, who she knew was very much affected, and greatly obliged to him, as holding his fortune of him; When he was come, and that she could speak to him without witnesses, she summoned him to the performance of the promise he had made her two dayes before, to do any thing for the deliverance of the Bassa of the sea, when she should furnish him with means for it. For rightly foreseeing that *Osman* would never resolve to remit her into the hands of *Arsalon*, though he was very generous, and that he loved his father exceedingly, this courageous woman had forecast a way how to beguile him. After then that she had asked of him, who was to serve her in her design, whether he was resolved for it or no? and that she had told him how all that she would have of him was, that he would give her the opportunity the night following to go to *Arsalon* in the vessel which he commanded. This man, albeit very much obliged to the Bassa of the Sea, was notwithstanding somewhat unwilling to consent thereunto. But *Alibech* adding art to her entreaties, undertook to perswade that to him, which she did not beleieve her self. She told him that her father would let himself be moved with her tears; that without doubt this generous action would touch him; and that so without exposing her to any great danger, she should deliver the Bassa of the Sea. This man then suffering himself to be carried to what she pleased, promised her not to go aboard his vessel till it was very late, and that the night was far spent, to the end that stealing away, he might get her into the skiff that was to carry him thither; which without doubt might be easily enough done, it being credible, that in the agitation wherein the mind of *Osman* was, he would not take much heed to things. The execution of this enterprise proved yet more facile than *Alibech* had imagined it, as you shall understand by and by. *Osman*, not knowing what to do in so cross an encounter, after that *Alibech* was withdrawn, fell into a deep muse, and began to cast in his mind what he might doe. He no sooner formed one thought, but it was destroyed by another; his imagination propounded nothing unto him which his judgement could approve of; the motions of nature combated those of love; and without vanquishing one another, *Osman* was not surmounted but by his own grief. He saw in every thing cause of despair, and whereas he had a noble and generous Soul, being unable to take any resolution which was not criminall, he remained alwayes irresolute. But at last, after he had a long time debated with himself; after that love and nature had made him think of all that they could inspire in a like encounter; after that he had sought for an hundred unprofitable meanes how

to deliver his father, without losing his wife ; no, no, said he to himselfe, I cannot lose *Alibech*, but I must lose my self too. Let us resolve upon it then, and make the Bassa our Father see, that we doe for him all that we can. He hath given me life, I am ready to render it to him again ; and I cannot think that Heaven would approve of the delivering of an innocent to the crueltie of *Arsalon* ; neither doe I think too, added he, but his revenge would be more satisfied with having me in his hands, than with having *Alibech*. And albeit he hath not demanded me as well as she, it was doubtles because he beleaved, that I would render him my wife, rather than render him my self. But alas cryed he, how was he ill informed of my thoughts ! As for my Father, said he, I may not beleeve that he can complain of me, since I indanger my self for the love of him. And as for *Arsalon*, he will in my person find an object worthy of his wrath ; it is I that stole away his daughter from him ; it is I that was the cause of the flight of that generous Slave, from whom hee expected so many things ; in fine, I alone am culpable ; and if there be any justice in his cruelty, I alone too shall be punished. He shall deliver my Father, or at leastwise I shall wear yrons with him ; and if rage carries him to take away my life, I shall howsoever have the satisfaction to dye, without having abandoned, either my Father, or my wife. I owe my life to my Father, and I shall render it to him again, in losing it for his sake. I owe my liberty to the generous *Alibech*, and charging my self with the same chaines which are prepared for her, I shall have done for her all that the unhappiness of my destiny permits me to do. Let us goe then, added he, let us goe to *Arsalon*, since it is as equally impossible for me, to abandon my Father, as to lose *Alibech*. This designe being strongly imprinted in his heart, hee drew the Persian aside, and told him softly, that as soon as night was come hee should have satisfaction of him ; and assured him besides, that if he did not render *Alibech* to him, he would at leastwise goe along with him in his vessell, and carry his answer himself to *Arsalon*. This man, being able to doe nothing else, resolved to wait the time he had appointed ; in the mean space *Osman* sent for one, named *Mahomet*, a man of command, and one that you know hath courage and experience ; and having told him that he was going the next night to try if hee could deliver his father, by meanes of an intelligence which hee had with *Arsalon*s messenger, he willed him, if by misfortune his designe should not succeed, to command the fleet in his absence, and not to fail in taking speciall heed to *Alibech*, and to send her back to *Constantinople* in a vessell ; but not before hee had tarried some dayes in the view of *Arsalon*s fleet ; and whatsoever should happen not to fight with him. This man, who was prudent, would faine have been a little better cleared of *Osman*s designe ; but whatsoever he could do, he could not oblige him unto it ; and *Osman* making use of his absolute power, hee could doe no other but obey. After this, *Osman* went to *Alibech*, but whereas both of them had each their designe, although they had an hundred things to say to one another, out of the opinion wherein they were, that they should never meet again, the desire they had to execute their enterprize made them say little, fearing lest their conversation being too long, they should not beguile one another, as they purposed to do. So that after *Osman*, to deceive *Alibech*, had told her that he had put off the sending away of the Persian till the next day, because hee would write to *Arsalon* to see if he could perswade with him, he left her for to goe and make the visit about his fleet in a barque, as he used to do every evening, for feare said he, of some surprize ; but indeed it was to goe and imbarque himself in the Persians Brigantine. *Alibech* ravished with this favorable occasion, counfelled him so to doe, and looking on him as he was going out of the Cabin with her eyes full of teares, she encountred those of *Osman*, who beleaving that hee should never see her more, had turned about his face towards her, as it were to give her his last farwell. After it was night, and that *Osman* was gone out of his vessell, he that was to serve *Alibech* came to her cabin at such time as all her slaves were already asleep ; and by the favour of the darke he got her into the skiff, that was to carry them to his vessell, as accordingly it did. He was no sooner aboard then, but he set sail ; and his Pilot getting clear of the



other vessells as well as he could, steered directly to *Arsalons* Fleet. *Osman*, on his side, being gotten aboard of the Persians Brigantine, had taken the same course; so that when the broad of day began to appear, and that *Arsalon*, awakened by his fury, and by the impatience hee was in for the return of him he had sent, and was mounted on the deck, he saw two vessells appear, one on the right hand, & the other on the left, which as though they had had a purpose to advance equally, made with full sailes towards the place where he was. He knew at first his Brigantine, but for the other, he could not apprehend who it was. *Osman* on the other part, was not a little troubled to perceive, that the vessell vvhich he saw vvas one of his; howe- be it he beleaved that his dear *Alibech* hearing of his departure, had sent some one of the Commanders of his Fleet after him to reta in him; but he vvas much amazed; whenas these vessells coming neer to one another, hee saw *Alibech* standing on the deck. Whereupon he gave a great skreack, and litle lacked but through a transport for which he could give no reason he had not cast himself into the Sea to get to her. How unhappy am I cryed he! I parted from my fleet to save *Alibech*, and my departure alone delivers her into the hands of her father; and so I came not without doubt but to be a spectator of her punishment. But if *Osman* was amazed, no less was *Alibech*; for some of her vessell having known *Osman*, and having told it to her, she was infinitely afflicted, & beleaved the same of *Osman* which he had beleaved of her. In the mean time *Arsalon*, having sent to discover this vessell, was much surprised to understand, that *Alibech* came in that, and not in his Brigantine; which still approaching as well as the other, made him see *Osman* on the poop. Now albeit he could not comprehend that which he saw, yet was he glad to see more in his hands than he had hoped for; and causing the Bassa of the Sea, laden with chaines, to mount upon the deck, Come said he unto him, give your yrons to this Slave that betrayed me, and to this ingratefull daughter that abandoned me. The Bassa discerning his Son, was extremely afflicted; and *Osman* seeing his Father in that estate, was sensibly touched therewith. At length these two vessells being come up to *Arsalons*, and *Alibech* & *Osman* being brought before him, Behold, said he as they were approaching to him, these worthy objects of my hatred & wrath, whom their treachery had drawn out of my power, and whom fortune hath restored unto me. We are rather an object of your pity, answered *Alibech*, who was formost, & fallen on her knee when shee came neer to *Arsalon*; but, continued she, I came not hither to moove you to compassion; I beleve that your wrath is equitable, & your hatred just. And seeing I hold it impossible to recouer into your favor, I come to break his chaines who hath been in stead of a father to me, ever since I abandoned you; doe not think that *Osman* hath consented to that which I doe, it is a pure effect of mine own will. Alas! cryed *Osman* then, beholding the Bassa of the Sea, pardon me dear father, if I could not resolve to give my wife for to save you; but to testifie unto you, that I doe whatsoever I can, I am come hither to take your chaines upon me, and to obtain your liberty with the loss of my life. Wherefore, said he to *Arsalon*, deliver my Father, and put the chaines on me that he weares. I alone am faulty, and I alone am to be punished; for as for *Alibech*, all her crime is nothing else but having compassion of others misfortunes. *Arsalon*, seeing two persons so neer him, by whom he thought he had been much abused, could not contain his former fury, and commanded that the Bassa of the Sea should be loosed, and his chaines divided betwixt *Osman* and *Alibech*: but the Bassa being touched with the generosity, both of *Alibech* and of *Osman*, would not suffer himself to be set at liberty. I will not quit my yrons, said he to *Arsalon*, to charge my children with them; for I beleve, since you have no more feeling of a father for the vertuous *Alibech*, that I may be permitted to call her my daughter. Could you remember the time said he to her, when I forbad you my house, and yet could you resolve to give your liberty for a man, who once treated you as a slave? My Lord, answered she, it well appears by what hath arrived this day, that you had reason to be unwilling I should be your sons wife, since that fatall marriage is the cause of your unhappiness. But, said she, turning her self towards her father, if I dare put you in mind of that tendernes which you have had for me, I humbly beseech you

you, that without regarding either the generosity of the Bassa, or the prayers of *Osman*, you will choose me alone for the object of your anger and revenge, and will set them at liberty. What, said *Osman* unto her then, can you desire that we should be separated? Yes, said she unto him, I can; for since we cannot live happy together, it is best that you should enjoy your liberty, and that I alone should be unfortunate. Dispute not hereupon, ingrateful child as thou art, said *Arsalon* interrupting her, for if thou art mine by the law of nature, he who is also my slave, & my guilty slave, shall also be the companion of thy punishment. Alas! my Lord, said she unto him, for I dare not call you father, of what crime can you accuse *Osman*? Would you have had him refuse the liberty which I offered him? Do not justine me, said *Osman*, interrupting her, I alone am culpable; it was I that stole you away; it was I that caused the Slave whom *Arsalon* loved so much to fly away; in fine, it was I that have done all these things: so that my father being innocent as well as you, I am to demand justice for you both; render it unto them then in this occasion, said he to *Arsalon*, and let me suffer all imaginable torments; for provided I may see these two persons set at liberty, I shall dye willingly, and without grief. We will not have it with the price of your blood, cried then both the Bassa of the Sea, and the generous *Alibech*, and to save you we are even ready to shed ours. Why will you not have me deliver my Father, said *Osman* to her then? For that answered *Alibech*, as I am the cause of his misfortune, it is just I should be so too of his liberty. But said she to *Arsalon*, consult no further hereupon, *Osman* loves me to that height, as he will never yeeld but by violence. And fear not, my Lord, said she unto him, to give him his liberty, you will punish him enough in punishing me; and the irons which I shall wear, will be more heavy to him without doubt than to me. *Arsalon* not able to forbear from being moved with so much generosity, and *Alibech* having incountred his eyes, where she saw (as she thought) some marks of tenderness, continued her discourse, and redoubled her prayers. My Lord, said she unto him, I believe that I my self labour mine own ruin, and that confessing my self guilty, without seeking excuses for my crime, I render my self unworthy to obtain that which I desire of you: Wherefore, continued she, permit me for the lessening of my fault to put you in remembrance of that blessed time, when as the Pirate *Arsalon* was a Satrape of *Persia*; you know, my Lord, that my Mother abandoned her Parents to follow you, and that then you called that excess of love and generosity in her, which now you term an horrible crime in me. It is true, that I have followed *Osman*, but it was not as a slave, it was as my husband; and let heaven be my witness, whether in abandoning you, I do not quit a part of my self; and whether I have not ever since made vows for your preservation. This mighty Fleet which is ready to set upon me (said *Arsalon* to her, who yet did not yeeld) is without doubt an effect of your prayers and affection. Alas! answered *Alibech*, if *Osman* would have fought with you, he would not have come and put himself into your hands without Arms. Consider then, my Lord, if there be any sense of pity resting in you, whether you can with justice resolve the destruction of a man, who seeing his father in captivity, hath notwithstanding had that respect for you, as not to fight with you because you were mine; you see too that he is not an unnaturall sonne, since he comes himself to offer you his liberty and his life to deliver his father. I conjure you then by the memory of the onely person of the world whom you have most dearly loved, and who gave me life, to surmount your resentment in this occasion; and to vanquish us in generosity; you may do it my Lord, if you will, and a greater cannot be than to vanquish ones self. If you regard us as your children, you will easily pardon us; and if you consider us as your enemies, we are so wretched, and so absolutely depending on you, that compassion will be of more power in your soul, than the desire of revenge, it being most certain that a generous spirit cannot resolve to oppress the feeble. And then again, my Lord, if you consider it well, you cannot tell how to punish us, in punishing us. If you retain the Bassa still a prisoner, you will do but that which he demands, for he will not have his liberty, unless his sonne doth enjoy it too. If you

load *Osman* with Irons, you satisfy the desire he hath to testify to his father, that he would do any thing for him; and if you lay them on me, they will be instead of a favour to me, being absolutely resolved to follow the fortune of these unfortunate ones. What *Arsalon*! cried the Bassa of the sea then, shall not the generosity of this woman, which would move a Barbarian, move a father? What my Lord! added *Osman*, cannot *Alibech*'s tears obtain her and my father's liberty? at leastwise yet let the loss of my life oblige you unto it. During this discourse, and this noble dispute, where the prize of the victory was the loss of liberty, *Arsalon* had his mind filled with divers thoughts; the desire of revenge, and a will to pardon, agitated his soul; but in the end, whereas reason and nature were both of a side, he began to be moved. He could no longer behold his daughter, but with tears in his eyes; and both *Osman* and his father's generosity possessing him with confusion, whereas naturally he loved glory, and was not cruel, but out of an habit and despair, he suddenly changed his thoughts, and embracing his daughter with tenderness, I am overcome, said he unto her, thy virtue is stronger than my cruelty. This happy change begot shouts of joy, not only from the Bassa, not only from *Alibech*, not only from *Osman*, but from all those of the vessel. In the mean time *Osman* casting himself at the feet of *Arsalon*, My Lord, said he unto him, load me with Irons, and joyn together all the torments which ever have been invented; I shall give you thanks in enduring them. *Arsalon* hearing him speak thus, lifted him up very kindly, and unloosing the Bassa of the Sea himself, I should not have done a grace to *Alibech*, said he unto him, if I had not done it to you too, since your life is here. In sequels hereof, my Lord, it is easie to imagine what these three persons and *Arsalon* said, who certainly for his part shewed such marks of his repentance, and spake so many generous, and obliging things, as it was easie to perceive that he had not always been a Pirate. Now, my Lord, that I may not prolong this relation any further, you shall understand, that *Arsalon* not only pardoned his daughter, promised an inviolable affection to the Bassa of the sea and his sonne, but also took the resolution to cease from being a Pirate: For which effect he obtained the Bassa of the seas permission to dismis all them that had ranged themselves under his obedience; who although they were sorry to lose so courageous a Chieftain, yet were they comforted with the greatness of the booty which he left them; and embarking himself in the same vessel which had brought *Alibech* thither, without reserving any part of the riches which he had gotten; You see, said he, smiling to the Bassa of the sea and his sonne, how I render myself at discretion; and how I confide in your generosity. After this, my Lord, they went to the Fleet, where was so universall a rejoycing, as the like hath never been heard spoken of. In the mean while, whereas a part of the Gallies and Vessels had been bruised with the tempest, we made to land; that we might put them in a condition to follow the first design. And it was there, generous *Ibrahim*, where we learned that your Victory had no need of our succour. This good news being made known to *Arsalon*, who had been acquainted by *Alibech* with the obligation wherein she was engaged unto you, he desired the Bassa of the sea to obtain of you, that if any treaty of peace were to be made between the Sultan and the Sophy, you would be pleased to take the care of making his, and getting him the liberty to go and end his days in his country, from whence love in times past had banished him. I desire this grace of you then on the behalf of *Arsalon*, of the Bassa of the sea, of *Osman*, and of the virtuous *Alibech*, who beseeches you that you will be her protection yet a second time. *Morath* having given over speaking, left *Ibrahim* and *Ulama* so ravished with his relation, and the generosity of *Alibech*, as they thought they should never have done praising her. *Ibrahim* promised *Morath* to re-establish *Arsalon*; and having sent him back again the next day, because he assured them that he should find them still abiding in the Port, where he had left them, he commanded him to bring *Arsalon* to him with as much speed as possibly he could, and to assure all those generous persons, that he should never be concerned till



till their virtue were worthily acknowledged. And verily it might be sayd, that *Ibrahim* knew what would happen; for scarcely was *Morab* a dayes journey from the Camp, when as he was advertised that there were Deputies from *Sultana* that desired to speak with him; he was told also that these deputies were all in mourning, and seemed to be extremely afflicted. This novelty surpris'd him, and whereas *Alana* was not present at such time as this message was delivered unto him, he sent for him in all hast, and when he was come to his Tent, and the Deputies likewise, one amongst them, after he had begun his discourse with an Elogium of *Ibrahim*, the better to prepare him not to refuse them that which they purposed to crave of him, acquainted him with all that had past at *Sultana*, since the battell of *Niphates*, wherewith *Alana* and he were strangely surpris'd: And truly this relation was extraordinary enough, to beget no mean amazement. For it had fallen out, that after that day which had proved so glorious to *Ibrahim*, and so fatal to the Sophy, the death of *Delimem*, and the displeasure for having been vanquished, possessed him with so much grief, as he fell sick at the very same instant. As for the ambitious *Perca*, she rejoiced in her heart at the death of *Delimem*, as a thing which she had long wish'd for; the sickness of *Tachmas* did not disquiet her, but contrarily she believed, that the less able he should be to direct, the more power she should have. As for the stupid *Ismael*, she did not regard him as any great obstacle to her design; she was notwithstanding very much vexed, when she understood of him, after the loss of the battell, that in the heat of the fight *Alana* had given him his life and his liberty, in drawing him out of the hands of a great many soldiers, who would have either taken or killed him: For albeit she forbade him to publish this action, yet was he so filled with joy for his escape out of that perill, as it was impossible for her to keep him from telling it to divers persons, though it was not out of any acknowledgement. *Perca* was not ignorant, that *Alana* had a number of secret friends, who watch'd but for an occasion to declare themselves for his advantage. She knew likewise, that all which were of *Mahmudes* and *Acimirus*'s party, sought but for a pretext to stir; so as she feared that this action coming to be known, in the estate wherein things were, use might be made of it for the making of some propositions to *Tachmas*, which might be prejudiciall unto her, in the design which she had to reign. But this unfortunate Prince was not long in a condition to think of the affaires of his Empire; for albeit his Physicians had employ'd all their skill for the preservation of his life, yet could they not possibly save him; and the fourth day after the loss of the battell, death stix'd that poison in his heart, which had made him do so much injustice. As soon as he had given up his last breath, *Perca*, without amusing her self in unprofitable tears, took great care to conceal it, until such time as she was assur'd of the minds of the principall persons of *Sultana*; for as for the men of command, so great a number were slain in the day of battell, as there scarcely rest'd any considerable enough, strongly to oppose what she meant to undertake. She caus'd the Council then to be assembled in the name of the Sophy, where she and *Ismael* appeared in mourning; and whereas she had wit and subtilty, after she had with feigned tears made the hearts of those that heard her pliant, she acquainted them with the death of the Sophy, crav'd their assistance for the direction of *Ismael*, and in conclusion shew'd them a paper, which indeed she had made *Tachmas* to sign, without knowing what he did, whereby he declared, that in case *Ismael* should prove incapable of reigning, his intent then was that the Empire should devolve to *Perca*, not holding them for his lawfull successors, which had cast themselves into the armes of his enemy. All these things exceedingly astonish'd those which heard them; the death of *Tachmas* afflict'd them; the order which he had left did not please; *Ismael*'s Sovereignty was a thing they could not resolve for; and that of *Perca* seem'd yet worse to them. They would willingly have call'd home again *Mahmud*, *Acimirus*, and *Alana*; but besides that it was not a proposition to be made to *Perca*, they were not ignorant that the exil'd Princes were no longer in their own power, but in theirs that protect'd them;

them; and that consequently, they were not to go tumultuously and acquaint the enemy with the death of *Tachmas*, for fear lest he should make use of this advantage to ruin them; yea, and those persons too whom he had in his hands, and which were so infinitely dear unto them. The most of them then resolved, without making any shew thereof, to defer the manifestation of their hatred to *Perca*, of their contempt of *Ismael*, and of their affection to *Mahamed*, *Axiamira*, and *Vlama*, untill such time as they had recovered new forces, to the end they might oppose *Perca*, and to the end also that in making some propositions of peace, they might yet be in a condition to defend themselves, if it were refused. Concealing then their true meaning, after they had lamented the death of *Tachmas*, they acknowledged *Ismael* for their lawfull Prince; saying nevertheless to *Perca*, that shee was to assist him with her counsell, and that she should raaign under the name of *Ismael*. This Princess, who thought that the most faithfull might be corrupted, and that particular interest was alwaies preferred before honor and glory, because such were her true thoughts, beleaved, that if shee enriched all these which were in this counsell, she should absolutely gain them to her selfe, and oblige them to set the crown on her head. To which effect, whenas the Assembly was ready to break up, shee said further, that the Sophy her Father having given all his treasure unto her, by a testament which he had made in her favor (as indeed it was true) she did not think that she could better dispose of it, than in distributing it amongst those, that were capable of aiding *Ismael* to sustain the Scepter which he was going to bear. After this, she made them pass, though they were unwilling to it, into a great room, where she had caused all the Sophyes riches, and treasure, to be laid; to the end that by the sight of so tempting an object, their hearts might be overcome with the desire of making themselves masters of it. They proved notwithstanding more generous than she imagined; for although they testified a great deal of acknowledgement to her for her liberality, yet would they not accept of it. In the mean time they resolved to let no body go out of the City, which might acquaint the enemy with the death of *Tachmas*; for being so powerfull as he was, it might give him a minde to come and assault them in *Sultania*, which otherwise it may bee hee would not doe. During all these things, every one had their designes; *Perca* thought of nothing but of making *Ismael* to be hated; the friends of *Mahamed*, *Axiamira*, and *Vlama*, attended with impatience the troopes which were to come unto them from the remote Provinces, to the end they might doe that which they thought would be most requisite; *Ismael* sought how he might free himself from the care of affaires. Things having continued some time in this sort, it hapned in the end that the same facility, which she had so much liked in *Ismaels* disposition, gave her a great deal of unquietness, for even in the like manner as she had made her self mistress of it, so did others: he was no sooner out of his sight, but this Prince altered his mind according to the humor of those that talked with him; and whereas every one was enemy to *Perca*, as often as she returned to him, she found him changed; and thought it was not difficult for her to bring him to her bow again, yet shee feared that at some time or other use would be made of his name to undoe her. They, unto whom *Ismael* had told that *Vlama* had saved his life, having reported it to others, all the people came to know it, and began to murmur far more than before. And whereas in such like occasions a weak beginning hath many times great and long consequences; *Perca* going about to punish one of *Ulamas* ancient domestick servants, for something he had said against her, the people mutined in such sort, as they went and besieged her in her Palace. The servants of *Mahamed* and *Axiamira* began then to discover their true intents, in not opposing asmuch as they might the fury of his incensed people, who began to cry in the streets, let the cruell *Perca* dye, and long live *Mahamed* and *Axiamira*. In the mean time *Perca*, finding her self in so great a danger, would have made use of *Ismael* to reduce this multitude to their duty, by obliging him to take up armes and shew himself to the people. But *Ismael* who naturally was cowardly and fearefull, seeing the danger neer, little company about him, and hearing from the chamber where he was that horrible noyse which

which alwaies accompanies sedition, answered her trembling, that for his part, hee had rather yield the Crown to *Mahamed*, than to expose himself to the loss of his life. Ah base coward, cryed this ambitious Princess, whosoever is capable of yielding up a Crown, is not worthy to live! In the mean season, the first gates of the Palace were forced, there wanted no more but breaking up the rest for to get in, they which garded them having abandoned them. In this dreadfull estate, *Perca* taking a dagger, which had been brought to *Ismael* out of a beleef that he would have armed himself, and seeing that she could not avoyd falling into the power of a people filled with fury, did yet what she could to get him to shew himself. Shee joyned threatnings to intreaties, and perceiving at last that all which shee said was in vain, & that in an instant she should no longer be mistress of her self, rage so seized on her soul, as presenting the dagger unto him with an extreme transport, *Chuse*, said she unto him, either to pierce my heart, or to doe what I would have you. And when as *Ismael* had told her, that he would not doe either the one or the other, and that she heard a great noyse, whereby she knew that the last door was broken open; since thou knowest not, said she unto him, either how to reign, or how to obey, I will keep thee at leastwise from dying a shamefull death; saying so shee stabbed the dagger into *Ismaels* heart, who presently fell down dead, and without further delay struck it into her ovvn bosom, and falling down upon her brothers body, she ceased to be ambitious in ceasing to live. These conspirators being entred into the Palace, and having learned from some of the Princesses women the cause of *Ismaels* death, and likewise that of *Perca*, they redoubled their cryes, and testified asmuch joy, as if all their enemies had been defeated. In the mean time the wisest and the most considerable of *Sultania* had begun to oppose the people, although they loved not *Perca*; but coming to understand the success of the business, they held it not fit to incense them, but rather in so strange an accident to make use of their zeal in favor of *Mahamed* and *Axiamira*. After then that they had let them know, how there was no further need of taking up armes, since the object of their hate was no longer in an estate to hurt them; after that for the calming of their fury, they had removed the bodies of *Ismael* and *Perca* out of the way; and after that they had promised speedily to settle a peace for them, and call home their exiled Princes, every one rettyred to his own house: and the Councell being set, it was advised, that it was no time any longer to defer the propounding of a peace; because if the newes of this strange accident should be spread over the Provinces, it might furnish them with a pretext to revolt, and work the utter subversion of this Empire; and that in fine, it was better to yeeld something unto the enemy, than to put in hazard the losing of all. After this, they chose the most understanding amongst them to bee sent as Deputies to *Ibrahim*, with an absolute power to treat of all things. The grand Visior, as I have said, having received them in the presence of *Plama*, and they having acquainted him with this horrible adventure, he that spake for all the rest, added further, that knowing his generosity they came to propound a peace unto him, upon reasonable conditions; and to demand Prince *Mahamed*, the Princess *Axiamira*, and *Plama* of him, for the restoring of them to the rank which they ought to hold. That if so be *Soliman* was their protector, hee was to testifie it in this occasion; that to draw an unjust advantage from these illustrious persons being in his power, would bee the violating of the Law of Nations, and naturall equity, since they were there as those that fled to him for refuge, and not as prisoners; but to be contented with the glory of vanquishing, and restoring of those to the Sophies Throne, which might lawfully pretend unto it, was to do a brave and famous action; that there were more examples found of such as had conquered Empires, than of such as had rendred up Kingdoms; and that there were more which knew how to vanquish their Enemies, than surmount their own ambition. After that this man had said all that he believed was capable to advance the business which he propounded, *Ibrahim* answered him, that being thoroughly informed of all the Sultans intentions, and having power to resolve on anything without receiving new directions,



rections, he could assure them that they should have cause to commend him; that his grief was, he could not keep *Mahamed* and *Axiamera* from receiving this peace with tears, since they had so lamentable an occasion for it; but whereas this affair directly concerned them, they were to treat with them about it; that in the mean time he held it requisite, that one of them should return to *Sultania*, to assure the people that ere long they should see their lawfull Princes again; and that the rest should go to *Bitilisa*, to do their duty to *Mahamed* and *Axiamera*; that to comfort them for the grief which so dolefull an accident would bring them, *Ulama* should take the pains both to conduct them thither, and also to accompany the Prince, Princess, and *Felixana* back when they returned. *Ulama* perceiving that *Ibrahim* in turning himself towards him, seemed to demand his consent for that which he had spoken, assured him that he was very ready to do it. And whereas he was generous, I doubt not, said he, but the Prince and *Axiamera* will be sensibly touched with this loss, since I that am not obliged thereunto by so strict bonds, and that have seen my self the object of the hatred and persecution of those whom I bewail, cannot choose but be grieved at the accident which is befallen them. After that *Ulama* had given sufficient proof of his generosity by his sorrow, and that *Ibrahim* had commended him for so noble a resentment, he gave him commission to take care of the Deputies of *Sultania* till the next day, when he thought it fit they should depart for to go and fetch *Mahamed*, which accordingly was executed. *Ulama* parted with those that were to accompany him, carrying Letters from *Ibrahim* to the Princess; one of the Deputies went to *Sultania*, and the Grand Visier remained with a joy that cannot be exprest; for whereas he was persuaded that the beginning of his felicity depended on the happy end of this war, seeing the favourable means which fortune presented him with to terminate it speedily and with glory, he could not render thanks enough to heaven for so advantageous a success. And whereas he knew that the people generally desired peace, he was assured that the treaty of it would be agreeable to every body; not knowing that *Soliman* had any other interest in this war, than that of the glory of his Arms. In this thought it might be said, that never any Lover absent from his Mistress was so happy as he, whilst he entertained himself with so sweet a hope. In the mean time *Ulama* arrived at *Bitilisa*, presented the Deputies to Prince *Mahamed* and the Princess *Axiamera*, and delivering *Ibrahim*'s letter to her, and acquainting them with the loss they had sustained, they being generous instantly forgot all the persecutions they had suffered, and no longer remembered ought but that *Tachmas* was their father, *Ismael* was their brother, and *Perca* their sister; in the thought whereof they were extremely afflicted with their loss. But at length, *Ulama* having imparted to them the generous designs of *Ibrahim*, and how necessary their presence was to their people for their consolation against so many miseries as they had endured, they set forth on their way. As for *Ulama*, the sight of his dear *Felixana* comforted him for the loss of his enemies, and the Princes and Princesses sorrow was to both of them their greatest displeasure. In the end after they had travelled with as much speed as the accommodation of *Axiamera* would permit, they arrived at *Ibrahim*'s Camp; who understanding that they were at hand went to receive them with three thousand of his own quarter; and to testify the more respect unto them he appeared that day in mourning, and said so many generous and obliging things unto them, as they were constrained to acknowledge, that if fortune had done him right, he should have been King of all the world. When as *Ibrahim* had conducted them to their Tents, which he had caused to be prepared for them with a great deal of magnificence, and had treated *Mahamed*, as being Sophy of *Persia*, he said unto him, that he was happy amidst his unhappiness, in beginning his reign with the end of the war, and in being able to make the first declaration, which he should publish to his people, be a Treaty of peace; but that he might not defer this pleasure to them, and this glory to himself, it behoved him to propound such a one as he would have. It is not for the vanquished, said *Mahamed*, to impose a Law on the vanquishers, but onely for

them

them to receive it. He that knowes to use a victory so well, said *Axiamira* interrupting him, as to speak in this sort to them which ow their lives and libertie to him, ought alone to make it such as he pleaseth, since it is certain that he can doe nothing that is unjust. After that these illustrious persons had rendred all the civilities to one another which their generosity obliged them unto, they fell to accord upon the Articles of this peace, which were so advantageous for the two Empires, and so glorious for *Ibrahim*, as the people and the souldiers, who will meddle with judging of all things without knowledge, and out of interest, could finde nothing to murmur at. This Treaty, having been signed by *Axiamira*, for the supplying of *Mahameds* defect, was also signed by *Ibrahim*, by *Ulama*, by the Deputies of *Sultania*, and by the chieft of *Ibrahims* Army. After this, *Mahamed*, who had alwayes loved *Axiamira* exceedingly, desired her that she would share in his power, and having requested her that she would be his guide, she promised him, that as she had never had a design to marry, so she would neither think of it, nor abandon him. And in this manner she satisfied that which she owed to her own inclination, that which *Mahamed* desired of her, and that which the memory of Prince *Gianger* required of her generosity. *Mahamed* then asked of *Ulama*, whether he would not enjoy the felicity of his reign? And think not, said he unto him, that succeeding to the Sophy, I will succeed to his passions; I shall be your Prince, and your Friend, but I shall never be your Rivall. *Ulama* answered to this discourse with a great deal of generosity; and whereas the love to ones Countrey is strong enough in every mans soul; and whereas there was a very straght union between all these illustrious persons; though *Ulama* was exceedingly obliged to the Sultan, and that he loved *Ibrahim* as much as himself, yet he resolved to abandon his protector for to follow his lawfull Prince. Things being in this estate, *Arsalon* arrived luckily for himself, accompanied with *Osman* and *Alibech*; and whereas *Ibrahim* was presently advertised thereof, he went and received them, and conducted them to *Axiamiras* Tent, where *Mahamed* was: and after he had recounted unto them the history of *Arsalon*, whereof the beginning was not unknown to them; after he had commended the generosity of *Osman* and *Alibech*, and excused the violence of her father, he obtained this grace of the new Sophy, who ingaged his word to him to restore him to his former dignity. In the mean time the Articles of the Peace had been published, both in the Army, and in *Sultania*, with great signs of rejoycing on either side; and the hour of separation being come, the Sophy said to *Ibrahim*, that owing his Life, his Liberty, and the Crown which he was going to wear, unto him, he felt himself obliged to tell him, that he should alwayes finde him ready to hazzard them for his service: In fine, said he unto him, generous *Ibrahim*, I ow unto you not onely that which you have done for me, not onely the good which my Empire receives from you, but also that which you have done for the Princess *Axiamira*, for *Felixana*, and for *Ulama*. Judge after this, if without being ingratefull I can be meanly acknowledging. And I profess unto you, added he, in taking his last farewell of him, that the most sensible sorrow which ever my blindness gave me, is that which I now feel, for that I cannot see my Protector. *Ibrahim* going to answer him, was hindred from it by *Axiamira*; Defend not your self, said she unto him, with an unjust modesty, and permit, that now at parting, we may testifie unto you, how not finding means to oblige you, we are not unworthy to be obliged, since we know how to prize your vertue, and esteem of the rare qualities that are in you. And for my particular, added she, I hold *Soliman* to be greater, more mighty, and more happy in having you for his Subject, than in being Master of so great a number of Provinces, which make him to be redoubted over all the earth. You so confound me, Madam, answered *Ibrahim*, with an high respect, as I cannot answer you; but know, said he, that into what part of the world soever fortune carries me, you shall ever have of me a faithfull and passionate servant. If one might be a Subject out of choice, you would have too many, said he unto them, your vertue would make defects of all

your Neighbours Kingdoms; and this conquest would be so much the more glorious to you, for that it would not extend to any but to reasonable persons; for that you would have none but illustrious subjects; and for that without arms you would disarm all your Enemies. After many other civilities, *Mahamed* being mounted alone into a Chariot, and *Axiomira* into another with her dear *Felixana*, who in her particular had rendred thanks unto *Ibrahim* for all the happiness of her life; *Alama* stayed yet a little while with him; and though they sayd little, yet left they not testifying the extreme affection which they bore to one another; since maugre the interests which were to separate them, they felt a world of grief. *Arsalon* in like manner thanked *Ibrahim* for the grace he had obtained for him, and for that which he had formerly done to *Alibech*; who seeing her father part could not forbear shedding of tears; *Osman* did the like; and the Grand Visier having promised *Arsalon* to take care of them, and to protect them as much as he could, this generous Pirate comforting his daughter, told her, that owing more to her husband than to him, it was just that she should follow his fortune; and that she had done enough in getting him the honour and liberty to go & die in his country, to make it appear she had quitted her self towards him for the life he had given her. At last all these generous persons being separated, *Osman* and *Alibech* began their journey, and *Ibrahim* having given them a Convoy to secure them from the outrage of disbanded Souldiers, which they should happen to meet with, thought of nothing but of withdrawing his troupes out of the enemies country; to the end that being upon the frontire, he might quit the Army, and go to carry the news himself of his Victory, and of the Peace to *Soliman*. He discamped then the next day with a great deal of order and diligence; howbeit he had the satisfaction before his going out of *Persia* to understand, that *Mahamed* had been received into the throne of his Fathers with joy; that *Alama* had married *Felixana*; that *Arsalon* was received to his dignity; and that after so many misfortunes those illustrious persons were happy: For *Mahamed* and *Axiomira* took care to advertise him of it, in sending him so magnificent a Present, as there was no King in the world but it was worthy of. *Axiomira* wrote also to *Soliman* in the name of the Sophy and of her self, wherein with a great deal of address she found the means to make the illustrious Bassaes Elogium. In the mean time he advanced as much as he could, and they were no sooner in *Solimans* Territories, but he committed the conduct of them to the Bassa *Fiali*; and after he had sent one of his servants certain daies before hand to *Pera*, he took the same way, followed by some of the Commanders: and wholly filled with hope, love, and joy, he arrived there when as it was so late in the night, as the Port was shut, and the Guards set; so that how impatient soever he was to see *Isabella*, he was constrained to attend till the next morning, being unwilling for this time to make use of the privilege which he had.



## The Fifth Book.

THE Illustrious Bassa having past the whole night without sleeping, so much had the hope of seeing *Isabella* pleasingly entertained him, sent as soon as the Sun appeared to know whether *Soliman* would be pleased that he should come wait upon him, and render him an account of his voyage. The Sultran surpris'd with a thing which he had not much apprehended, in regard he thought it not so near, gave not his answer so speedily. He marvelled at the grand Visers return, considering the order which he had sent him, not to come back before he heard from him, what prosperous success soever he should happen to have; but in fine, it being no longer time to reason on things past, and being constrained to answer precisely to that which was demanded of him, his mind was in a great disorder. The name of *Ibrahim*, vvho vvvas so near, possessed him with some remorse of his fault, but the thought then of losing the Princess, made him instantly repent him of so good a motion, and with never to see *Ibrahim* more, that he might still retain *Isabella*, whom he had not seen since that cruell instant, wherein out of his fear of the Bassas return he had joynd threatnings to entreaties, and given her but only eight dayes time to resolve once for all, whereof six were already past when as the Bassa came back to *Constantinople*; and he had been three moneths away without any news at all of him, so exactly had the resolution which he had taken for it been executed. But in fine, how violent soever *Solimans* love was, yet could he not resolve to see *Ibrahim*, and keep *Isabella* from him: For whereas he had alwaies a strong disposition in his heart to good, and some thoughts of friendship for the Grand Visier, the shame of his crime, the small hope he had of vanquishing *Isabella*, and the short time he had to resolve in, made him send *Ibrahim* word that he might come presently; and that at his arrivall he should find *Isabella* at his Palace, whither he was going to return her: This Prince certainly would never have yeelded to this, had he had any hope left of gaining the Princesses heart; but since the day that he had last spoken with her, and that he had taken great care to have her narrowly observed, he had learnt, that she was in so great an affliction, as he was afraid the extremity of her grief would kill her: So that considering he should commit a crime to no purpose, if he should retain *Isabella*, he was the more easily induced to let her go forth of the Seraglio. In this thought he would not see her, but sent for the Sultana *Asteria*, vvho vvvas no sooner come to him, but he commanded her to go and tell *Isabella*, that *Ibrahim* was returned, and that out of an excess of bounty he permitted her to go out of the Seraglio; but that she should beware of acquainting the Grand Visier with ought that he had said unto her, because an extreme mischief might thereby arrive both to him, and to her. *Asteria* went and executed her commission with a great deal of pleasure; for albeit she loved *Isabella* very dearly, yet the desire of her conservation was stronger in her soul, than her own content. The Princess received this news with so excessive a joy, as her heart was not capable of resenting it sufficiently; *Emilia* likewise was infinitely glad of it: At first *Isabella* could not beleieve it; after she had beleieved it she gainsayd her self; and she was so accustomed to misfortune, as she could not think so great a good hap was befallen her. In the mean time the Chariot, which was to carry her to *Ibrahims* Palace, being come, she embraced the Sultana *Asteria*; promised her that *Soliman* should have no cause to complain of her; gave her thanks for her goodness in protecting her; assured her that she would never lose the memory of it; and then she got into the Chariot vvith *Emilia*, and went to *Ibrahims* Palace to meet with her friends, to whom shee gave a greater and a purer joy, than that which shee felt her self, for as she was going into the Chariot, that Slave, whom *Soliman* had so often

employed to her, came and told her from him, that in going out of the Seraglio she did not goe out of his power, and that he would not fail to send to know her resolution; that nevertheless he would to favor her give her yet eight dayes longer for it. For as if the Prince had undertaken to be his own enemy, and to punish his own fault, he scarcely formed a designe but he straightway destroyed it; so that he had no sooner let *Isabella* know that she should goe out of the Seraglio, but he seemed to repent it, and sent that slave, *Roxolanaes* confident, with that message to her: and she was no sooner gon, but his love, and the desire of seeing her augmented; nevertheless in regard the thing was done, and that *Ibrahim* was suddenly to arrive, he changed not his order. In the mean time the grand Visier, having made no doubt but that he should easily obtain the permission which he had desired of *Soliman*, caused a stately Galliot, which he knew was in the Arsenal at *Pera*, to be launched into the water; and it was for this purpose that hee had sent one of his servants certain dayes before, to the end he should give order secretly for the having of it in a readines against he came. As soon then as he understood the Sultans pleasure hee imbarqued himself, attended by all the Commanders which had accompanied him: and truly there was never a more magnificent or more agreeable object seen than this Galliot, especially when *Ibrahim* was aboard it. All that was looked upon was painted and gilt; the whole Poop was hung with Persian Tapestry, whose ground was gold; it was covered all over with flags and streamers of divers colours; all the slaves that rowed were fastned with silver chaines, and all of them had garments of cloth of gold; twelve Trumpeters were on the Coursey cloathed in velvet, whose ground was gold; all the Commanders apparell was imbroidered with pearles and diamonds; and in the midst of this stately troupe stood *Ibrahim* alone, though he had six great cushions of cloth of gold at his feet; He held in his hand a battoun of command, and was so superbly apparelled, as it was easie to perceive that this petty triumph was an effect of peace, since riches and abundance were every where seen, and very few marks of war. *Ibrahim* had that day on a robe of cloth of silver, imbroidered with gold and diamonds, intermixed with certain carnation silk twist, which added very much to the beauty of that habit; His turbant was covered all over with carnation and white plumes of feathers, set up with jewels of diamonds of an inestimable value; His Scymitar, and the golden chaines whereunto it was fastned, were answerable to the gorgeoufness of his garment: now although silk, silver, gold, pearl, and diamonds richly appeared there, yet might it be said with truth, that *Ibrahim* gave rather a new lustre to all those things, than that he recived any from them. His shape was goodly, well made, and advantageous; his cariage free and noble; his face ovall; his eyes black, and full of fire and sweetness; his mouth agreeable; his complexion neither too delicate, nor too gross, neither too pale, nor too red; but such as *Mars* is painted, when as he is amorously represented unto us; His hayr was of chesnut color; and his nose somewhat aquilin, yet so as it served to give him the better aspect; His physiognomy was promising and sprightfull; his soul was seen in his eyes, his courage and his affabilitie appeared equally in them; and without having ought of the beauty of a woman, he was the goodliest man that ever was beheld. In fine there was seen in his whole person, a lofty ayr without pride, a gallanterie without affectation, a neglectfull handsomness, a freeness without artifice, a civility without constraint, and something so great and so high therein, as one could not behold him without judging him worthy to wear a crown. All these naturall graces had a new lustre the day wherein *Ibrahim* entred into *Constantinople*, and the hope of seeing *Isabella* had painted such a joy in his face, as gave him a certain extraordinary agreeableness. This petty triumph was not without spectators; for *Ibrahim*'s return being known, whereas he was universally beloved, all the Grandees of the Port, and all the people of *Constantinople*, repaired to the Haven, and by the shouts which they gave as soon as the Galliot approached, they testified their zeal and affection to him. *Soliman*, more provoked than by the agitation of his soul, and by an im-

patience

patience without reason, than by the good will which he bore to *Ibrahim*, had also placed himself upon a Terrace with a Ballustrade of Jasper, which lookes to the Sea on that side; and when every one still continued their shouts of joy, Must all these people, sayd hee to himself, reproach mee vvith my fault; must the sight of *Ibrahim* cause more joy in them than in me? and must he be more beloved of them than of me, who am obliged thereunto by so many reasons? Yes, said he, Love and *Isabella* will have it so, and I cannot hinder it. But at length *Ibrahim*, Galliot being come so near, as it permitted him to discern *Soliman*, who was leaning on the Balustrade, he saluted him with a profound respect, and being landed, all the people redoubled their shouts. The most considerable approached to salute him, and they that could not do so, did at the least what they could to be seen of him. After that this multitude had sufficiently considered him, whom they acknowledged for their Protector, *Ibrahim*, followed by all the Grandees, and all the people, went to the Seraglio, where he entred alone; for *Soliman* feeling the disorder of his soul, vvould not give him any but a private audience. When as he was come into the Sultans chamber, *Soliman* could not chuse but be somewhat glad, yet was he possessed with confusion at the very same instant, and received not the Bassa with that freeness, wherewith he was wont to testifie the affection which he bore him. Before time, he would rather have spoken to him of the grief his absence had been the cause of to him; of the fear he was in for him; of the health of *Isabella*; and of the joy he had for his return; than of affairs of State: but in this encounter, he would needs have him at the very first render him an accompt of the War; and although he had resolved to give *Ibrahim* no marks of the disorder of his soul, yet could he not forbear it. In the midst of his relation he asked of him, whether he had not received a new order which he had sent him? And when as *Ibrahim* had assured him that he had not, he seemed to be vexed at it, without telling him what it was: And at such time as the Grand Visier had informed him, how advantageous the peace which he had made in *Persia* was for him, he could not chuse but tell him things, which might make him judge, that he would have been glad he had not terminated the War as yet. Howbeit *Ibrahim* suspected nothing else of it, but that during his absence *Roxlana* and *Rustan* had perswaded him from making a Peace so soon. This thought gave him some unquietness, nevertheless it presently diminished; for *Soliman* perceiving what he had done, disguised his mind a little better; and out of a sense of jealousy, he began to caress *Ibrahim* more, to the end that retaining him the longer with him, he should not go so soon to see *Isabella*; it being certain that out of an excess of passion, *Soliman* looked no more on the Bassa after his return, but with that unquietness, which the sight of a favoured Rivall gives. But at length *Ibrahim*, who did not penetrate into the truth of things, seeing that the Sultan still retained him, and that he had no sooner answered to one question, but straightway he asked him another; My Lord, sayd he unto him (with the same freedom wherewith he was used to talk to him) wil thy highness be pleased to permit me, now that I have given an account of my voyage to my Master, that I may go and do my duty to my Mistris. *Soliman* blusht at this discourse, and desiring to conceal his confusion from the Bassa, he dismissed him sooner than otherwise he would have done; and remained in so extraordinary an unquietness, as he thought twenty times to call back *Ibrahim*, to send and seise upon *Isabella*, to secure himself of the one, to cause the other to be brought into the Seraglio again, and in the end to proceed to the last violence. A little beam of light, and a great deal of confusion, kept him nevertheless from executing his bad designs; and his soul was never so resolved for evill, as that he could do it without repugnancy. In the mean time *Ibrahim* went to his Palace, where he was expected with a great deal of impatience; but he was exceedingly surprised, when as he found, *Doria*, *Horatio*, *Alphonso*, and the French Marquis waiting for him in the Fore-Court. At first he doubted of the report of his eyes, yea and was a good while hearing his friends talk, before he could



could absolutely believe that which he saw to be true. He embraced them all with as much transport of joy, as he had affection for them; for all those that had followed him, had out of respect and by his commandment left him at the first entrance into his Palace. But above all the rest he could not chuse but behold *Doria* with amazement, and ask of him whether it were true indeed that it was he? As they were standing there, *Ibrahim* chancing to cast up his eyes was yet more amazed, when as he espyed on the foot-pace of the Ballustrade that divided his Court, *Isabella* coming towards him, accompanied with *Sophronia*, *Hipolita*, *Emilia*, and *Leonida*. What enchantment, cryed he in advancing towards *Isabella*, makes me see so many wonders together? am I at *Constantinople*, or at *Genova*? and may I believe what I see? You are still in a place, sayd *Isabella*, where you have been extremely wished for, and where vows have been made for your return. You see, Madam, said he unto her, in kissing her hand which she had given him, that they have not been in vain, since I can assure you, that my voyage hath been prosperous, and that I am still absolutely yours. After this, *Ibrahim* saluted these four beautifull companions of the unfortunate *Isabella*, who each of them in their particular made him a complement; and then *Ibrahim* having lent the Princess his hand, this fair troop entred into the Palace, and went to *Isabella's* chamber. It was there where these illustrious friends testified the true thoughts which they had for one another; *Ibrahim* nevertheless marvelled to see fewer marks of joy in *Isabella's* face, than in that of all the rest, which had not so much interest in his person: Notwithstanding whereas he saw that her complexion was a little pale, he believed that it was an effect of some sickness which she had had; and in this thought he went on in entertaining his friends with liberty enough of spirit. He understood confusedly, and in few words, that which had brought them to *Constantinople*, but not without grief was he acquainted with the Count of *Lavagnas* and *Leonora's* deplorable death. You see, said *Isabella* to him then sighing, that there is never any joy so pure for us, but it is mixed with some bitterness. She said this in such a fashion, as gave him cause to think that *Isabella* had some thing which was displeasing in her minde; so that he resolved as soon as in civility he could speak to her without being heard, not to lose the occasion for it, which instantly presented it self. For all those persons were too intelligent, and knew too well how to love, to be ignorant, that after a long absence it would have been some inhumanity to keep two hearts that loved one another so perfectly, from communicating their thoughts in private; so that presently after they were risen from meat, some went into the Cabinet, some into the Gallery, and *Emilia* alone remained in a corner of the chamber with the French Marquis. In the mean time *Isabella* was not without uneasiness, the remembrance of what *Soliman* had said to her possessed all her soul, and the uncertainty wherein she was, whether she should impart it to *Ibrahim*, or whether she should not speak to him of it, put her minde upon the wrack. What shall I do, said she to her self, in so cross an encounter? If I conceal the truth of that which hath befallen me from him, I trespass against our affection, and it may be put his life and my honor in jeopardy: But if I tell it to him, continued she, and he cannot forbear testifying somewhat of it, when as the Sultan hath enjoined me not to speak of it, we are undone, and nothing can save us. If I stay too, added she, till *Soliman* sends to me for the answer, which he will have me give him within eight days, what shall I do then? and what shall I say to *Ibrahim*? And if I come to the point to be constrained to acquaint him with his unhappiness and mine, what may he think of my silence? and what lawfull excuse can I make to him for it? But if it should happen too, that *Soliman* hath repented him, and that he sent not the slave to me, but onely to try my discretion, I should be guilty of all the mischiefs that might follow thereupon, if by my imprudence and by my inconsideration I should go and acquaint *Ibrahim* with a thing which certainly he could never conceal. In this uncertainty was the Princess, when as  
*Ibrahim*

*Ibrahim* remained alone with her; and whereas this thought made her extremely musing: May I, said he unto her, Madam, without losing the respect which I owe unto you, complain to you of your self, in reproaching you for that you have not as much joy for my return, as you had grief for my departure? If this be a crime, said the Princess, it is true that I am guilty of it; yet can I assure you, added she, that it is not occasioned by any defect of affection, but by an habit which I have gotten of melancholy, I am afflicted more easily than I am comforted; I am more sensible of grief, than of joy; and in the estate wherein I finde my self, there needs more things by far to content me, than there needs to render me infinitely unhappy. It is not, continued she, because your return doth not give me all the joy that I am capable of, and even to that height, as without this remedy I am perswaded I should not have lived long; but in conclusion we are at *Constantinople*, and that is no little evil. *Ibrahim* hearing *Isabella* speak in this sort; and observing her eyes and her face, he confirmed himself yet more in the opinion which he had; so that to be the better cleared therein, I confess, said he unto her, that we are always neerer to bad fortune, than to good; but you must confess unto me withall, that untill such time as *Soliman* hath refused us the liberty which I am to ask of him, you have not so much cause to be melancholick, as you had when I parted for *Persia*. The event of the war was doubtfull; it might have been long; I might have been beaten; I might have dyed there; and since none of these hath hapned, and that I may justly demand my liberty for a recompence, why do I, Madam, see more signs of grief in your minde, than when we had all to fear, and nothing to hope for? The Princess not answering precisely to *Ibrahim*, began to make him partake her unquietness. He believed then that he was more unhappy than he thought he was; and suddenly calling to minde the change which he had noted in *Soliman's* face, he no longer doubted but that there was something which *Isabella* did not tell him. What accident, said he unto her, Madam, is befallen us? Hath fortune invented some new torment to persecute us withall? Speak I earnestly beseech you, and whatsoever it may be, be pleased to let me know it. *Isabella* would then have put him off, with assuring him that she had no new matter to acquaint him with; but the more she stood off, the more unquietness she gave him: Wherefore he began to cast in his minde what the mischief might be, which would not be told him; Hath any one, said he unto her, wronged you during my absence? hath any body conspired against your life? hath the hate which *Roxelana* bears me, carried her to seek the means to hurt you? would she have sacrificed you to her revenge, as she hath sacrificed Prince *Mustapha* to her rage? would they have forced you to change your Religion? hath *Rustan* plotted any thing against me? and (that which would be my last misery, and which I think cannot possibly be) is *Soliman* become my Rivall, or mine Enemy? The Princess thereupon not able to retain her tears, put her hand before her eyes to conceal them from *Ibrahim*. Ah! Madam, said he unto her then, gently pulling down her arm, do you answer me with tears? can it be possible, that this Prince should hate me, or love you too much? leave me not long in pain, and I beseech you, Madam, express your self more clearly. I would I could draw you out of it, answered the Princess still weeping, but since I cannot conceal that from you, which I have been commanded not to let you know, and that my tears have betrayed me, believe what they have told you, for it is but too true, and save me the labor of using any longer discourse to you on so strange a subject. What, cried out *Ibrahim* then, wholly transported with grief, doth *Soliman* love you! He hath told me so, replied she, and in such a manner, as makes me look upon death as the onely remedy that is left us to avoid his fury. After this, *Ibrahim* having in an instant exactly run over all that the Grand Signior had said to him, no longer doubted of his unhappiness, and in this certainty he said all that a just resentment could make one say in a like adventure. What, cried he out, this Prince, who is so great, so generous, who hath loved me so tenderly; and who hath seen me ready to dye, because I was absent from the incomparable

comparable *Isabella*, will he ravish her from me for ever ; and stab a dagger into the heart of a man, that hath hazarded his life for his glory, and that had committed this illustrious person to his protection ! after this, said hee to *Isabella*, I will no longer trust my self ; I belevee, Madam, that I can betray you ; I belevee that I can abandon you ; and that I can be your enemy ; since the greatest Prince of the earth hath been capable of violating the law of Nations, as well as naturall equity ; of betraying the friendship which he had promised me ; of forgetting the services which I have done for him ; of despising vertue ; of not harkning to reason ; and of blemishing his own glory with an unjust passion. But, Madam, added hee, I am too blame my self, and I am the cause of your misery : for why should not I fear any thing from a Prince, who had dipt his hands in the blood of his son for an unjust love ? he that had been capable of so cruell a thought, might easily forget the respect which he owed to your vertue ; & I am not excusable for abandoning you. It is no time to speak of that which is past, said the Princess unto him, but to think of that which is to come. *Ibrahim* was not for all that in an estate to give counsaile, for his minde was filled with so many severall thoughts, as hee scarcely understood what *Isabella* said unto him. He was possessed with grief, anger, and repentance ; hatred and jelousie had also some place in his soul ; nevertheless in the midst of his transports, and although the interest of *Isabella* prevailed over all others, yet had he loved *Soliman* so much, that there were some instants, wherein without considering *Isabella*, and without considering himself, he was afflicted for that this Prince had given this blemish to his life. But when as he surprised himself in this thought, he repented of it, as of a crime, and reentred into his former fury. At length, after that *Isabella* and he had said all that their grief and affection could suggest, and that the Princess had related to *Ibrahim* all that she beleved was necessary hee should know, the better to advise on that which they had to doe, they found that their reason was too much troubled, and they themselves too much interested in the business in question, for to judge soundly thereof. They resolved then to call unto this counsell, both their he and she friends ; to the end that all of them together might seek out the meanes to avoyd the mischief that menaced them. *Isabella* for that effect willed *Emilia* to call them, and the French Marquis taking this employment upon him, brought this fair troupe a little after into the Princess chamber, who with teares in her eyes craved pardon of her deer friends, for having made a secret to them of a thing, which she would faine have concealed from her self ; and then, having recounted the estate wherein thee was with *Soliman*, she filled their hearts with grief, both for the interest which they had in her fortune, and for their own ; knowing very well that their liberty depended on *Ibrahim* and *Isabella*, who being at odds themselves with *Soliman*, were not like to obtain that for others, which they could not obtain for themselves. This misery then being common, they all fell to think of what might be done. Some would have *Ibrahim*, without testifying any knowledge of this unjust love, pursue his first designe, and demand his liberty of *Soliman*, because, said they, it may be that this Prince being ashamed of his fault, and incensed with *Isabella*'s constancie, will grant him his request, and resolve to deprive himself of the sight of a man whom he can no longer look upon but with confusion, and of a person, whom it is impossible for him to conquer. But *Ibrahim* opposed this opinion ; for whereas he knew *Soliman* full well, he was sure that love being once entred into his heart, would never goe out of it again but with violence ; and that he could not be capable of repenting, but when as the crimes which love made him commit, were far greater than his passion. Then it was propounded, that no resolution should be taken, till the eight dayes, which *Soliman* had given *Isabella* to make her answer in, were expired ; because the sight of *Ibrahim* it might be had revived the friendship which he bore him, and had banished, or diminished the love which he carried to her. But if *Ibrahim* was opposite to the first advice that was given, the Princess said that she would never consent to this second : for in conclusion, said she, after that which *Soliman* hath spoken to me, there are but



but two remedies to be chosen, either death or flight. The last is the best, replied the Marquis, and if I may be beleaved, it shall be the only thing we will think of. This advise having been found the surest and the easiest, there was nothing more thought of, than of seeking out the meanes to execute it. It was not because *Ibrahim* did not upon the first apprehension of it follow this opinion with repugnancy, but because he was perswaded, that a Prince, who committed so great an infidelity against him, could not complain of him with reason for his going out of his Empire without his consent. In this thought he considered with the rest, which way they might draw themselves out of captivity; in the end the resolution was, that *Ibrahim*, being able to doe what he would, should secretly assure himself of a vessell; and that untill it was ready to part, he should see *Soliman* as often as possible hee could, and take great care to keep him from suspecting that *Isabella* had spoken to him of his love to her. The rest of the day being spent in this sort, the next morning the Grand Visier having understood that there was a Christian Vessell which was to set sail the day ensuing, wrought in such manner as he absolutely assured himself of her; and without any bodies being aware of it, he caused a great many Christian slaves, which were newly delivered, to enter into her. After he had taken this order, he went to see *Soliman* again, but it was with so much repugnance, as it fell out well for him that he did not see him; it being most certain, that whereas he was not accustomed to disguise his thoughts, it would have been impossible for him not to have testified somewhat of that which he had in his heart. When he arrived at the Seraglio, he was told that the Grand Signior was at the Sultana Queens lodging; and whereas it was the onely place in the outward Seraglio, where *Ibrahim* entred not, he returned to his Palace; and there as long as the day lasted, he received the visits of all the Bassaes, Beglerbeis, and Sangiacs, that were at *Constantinople*. In the meantime *Soliman* was not without uneasiness, he would willingly have had *Ibrahim* alwaies with him, to keep him from being with *Isabella*, and would willingly withall never have seen him, since he could not do so without being ashamed of his fault; and indeed it was out of this consideration that he was gone to the Sultanaes lodging, that he might decline the sight of him. It was not because his mind was quieter in that place than in another; for he carried his torment in his heart. His love, *Isabellaes* constancy, and *Ibrahims* return, possessed him with strange thoughts; and in the disorder wherein his soul was, he made wishes against his own glory, and would that *Ibrahim* had been beaten in *Persia*; that his Army had been defeated; and that with a lavvasfull pretext he could banish him from the Port, and retain *Isabella*. It was not because he knew not that his designs were unjust, but it was because his passion was instead of reason to him, and made him deal in this sort. *Roxelana* on her side was not in a little pain; she saw *Isabella* out of the Seraglio; and albeit the Slave, her confident, had assured her, that *Soliman* had not changed his mind for this Princess, yet she feared that seeing her no longer, and seeing *Ibrahim*, the love which he bare to *Isabella* would diminish, and that his good will to the Bassa would reassume new forces. Howbeit she hoped that *Isabella* would acquaint the Grand Visier with the love that the Sultan bore her; and that thereupon he would do something which might give him opportunity to ruin him. In this belief an hour after *Isabella* was gone out of the Seraglio she sent to will *Rustan* that he should carefully observe all *Ibrahims* actions by the same Slave which before times had informed him of the Love that he carried to *Isabella*. *Rustan* obeyed her so exactly, that what care soever the Grand Visier took to conceal his design, yet did he suspect it. First he understood that the Bassa had enquired, whether there were any Christian vessels in the Port that were to set sail in a few dayes, and that he had been told that one was to part the night following; he understood likewise by the Slave which was his confident, that after all strangers were gone from him, he went into the Princesses chamber, and that without heeding him he had sayd to her, that he came from receiving the last visits of his Courtiers. This man told him also, that the Italian Slave, in whom the Grand Vi-

her greatly confided, seemed to be very buſie; as indeed it was he, who had in charge to ſee that the veſſell was made ready to ſet ſayl; and who by *Ibrahim*'s order had provided all things neceſſary for their departure. *Ruſtan* having received this advice, juſt as it was night, let not for all that to go to the Seraglio, to advertiſe *Roxelana* of it; but whereas it was an unſeaſonable hour, he was conſtrained to give to a *Capigibaffi* a Letter which he had written in caſe he could not ſpeak with her. *Roxelana* had no ſooner received it, but ſhe went her ſelf without further conſulting to acquaint *Soliman* with what *Ruſtan* had certified; and whereas this Prince, blinded by his paſſion, ſought but for a pretext to complain of *Ibrahim*, he hearkned to her with a great deal of impatience, which *Roxelana* having obſerved, ſhe made uſe of the occaſion, and told him, how ſhe had a long time known that *Ibrahim* favoured the Chriſtians; that without doubt he had ſome hidden deſign, which could not be comprehended; and adding yet more to that which *Ruſtan* had written, ſhe ſo wrought, that *Soliman*, to be cleared in the buſineſs, reſolved to ſend to *Ibrahim*'s Palace for him. And whereas there was no body about him whom he judged fit for it, *Roxelana* having propounded *Ruſtan* unto him, who ſhe ſaid was at the gate of the Seraglio, he conſented thereunto; and having cauſed him to enter, the Sultan commanded him to go to *Ibrahim*'s Palace, and will him to come preſently to him. For *Soliman* doubted not, if it were true that he had cauſed a veſſell to be made ready, but that it was for *Iſabella*, or for his friends; and that ſo, which ſoever it were, he ſhould have (according to the mind he was in) a juſt occaſion to ruin *Ibrahim*. But *Ruſtan* was not like to find him at home; for as ſoon as it was night, he had cauſed *Iſabella*, *Sophronia*, *Hipolita*, *Leonida*, *Emilia*, with the reſt of their troupe to go ſecretly out of his Palace; and he himſelf had got out after them thorough a door of his Garden, which was towards the Port, to embarque himſelf in that veſſell which he had made to be prepared, and whereof the Captain and the Pilot were abſolutely his, by means of the mony which he had cauſed to be given to them. Before his departure he had written a Letter to *Soliman*, and had left it with one of his ſervants, with order, that if any one came to aſk for him from the Grand Signior, to deliver it unto him; ſo that *Ruſtan* arriving at his houſe, found him not. It was in vain that he enquired after him; and what care ſoever he took for it, he could learn no other, than that he was not in his Palace; that *Iſabella*, his friends, and her friends, were not there neither; and that he had left a Letter for the Grand Signior. *Ruſtan* having taken it, ſent to the Port to learn whether any veſſell had ſet ſail, and then went in all haſt to the Sultan, to acquaint him with *Ibrahim*'s flight, and preſent him with the Letter which he had written to him; for he durſt not conceal it, though gladly he would, becauſe many had ſeen it delivered to him. My Lord, ſaid he when he was come unto him, *Ibrahim* is no longer at *Conſtantinople*. This ſpeech amazed *Soliman*; but when he knew that *Iſabella* was out of his power he felt a redoubling of love, jealouſie, anger, hatred, diſpair, and fury. And when as *Ruſtan* had given him *Ibrahim*'s Letter, he broke up the ſeal with violence, and not knowing whether he ſhould read or tear it, he ſtood a pretty while without ſpeaking; but at length carried by his curioſity, or rather by his paſſion, he opened it ſighing, and found that it was thus.

#### Ibrahims Letter to Soliman.

Heaven be my witneſs, whether I could not more eaſily reſolve to quit my life, than go on toſ thy Empire, without taking leave of thy Highneſs, were I not forced thereunto, both by an intereſt of honour, and by a ſenſe of love. Thou knoweſt too well how exactly I have kept my word with thee, in coming to take my former chains upon me again, for thee to ſuſpect I would commit a fault lightly. I could in conſideration of thy Highneſs, quit *Iſabella* at *Monaco*, but I confeſs that I could not abandon her at *Conſtantinople*. In ſine, my Lord, to excuſe my fault, conſider what love hath made thee do; this paſſion hath made thee forget the friendſhip which thou haſt promiſed me; it hath carried

carried thee to hate me, it hath constrained thee to banish reason from thy soul, and no longer to remember, that this Ibrahim from whom thou wouldest take away his life, in taking Isabella from him, is the same who in times past quitted Isabella for the love of thee, and who would dye with joy for thy service. Thou seest then, my Lord, to what this passion hath carried thee, in regard whereof excuse that which it compels me to do. I doe not fly from Soliman, but from the passion which masters him; and without complaining of him, I accuse the beauty of Isabella; and I part away the unhappiest man that is, because I cannot do so without displeasing thy Highness.

Justiniano.

Soliman nothing moved with this Letter, tore it after he had read it; and the confusion which it brought to his soul, instead of begetting repentance, augmented his fury the more. Let this ingratefull wretch, said he to Rustan, be pursued, and let all that is possible be done to return him into my power. Roxelana entring hereupon into Solimans chamber, from whence she had gone a little after Rustans departure, and perceiving his mind to be in the tears wherein she had long desired to have it, provoked his anger yet more; and propounded unto him the employing of Rustan in the pursuit of Ibrahim: But that which she thought cunningly to do succeeded not with her; her intention was so to use the matter, as Rustan should not find Ibrahim: For whereas her interest was, that he should no longer have power, nor be longer at the Port, she feared if he should be brought back again, that she should not oblige Soliman to ruin him utterly; and so he might return into grace again. Howbeit this design was not executed; for besides that she could not speak with Rustan in private, the Grand Signior so absolutely commanded him to bring him back Ibrahim and Isabella, or never to return, as she was constrained to let him go without saying any thing to him. He went then in all haste to take a Galley to pursue him, because he had understood from him whom he had sent to the Port, that a Christian vessell had set sayl by the Grand Vissiers order a little before. He imbarqued himself then with all the speed that possibly he could; and not doubting but that he took the way of the Archipelago, he made his Pilot hold the same course. In the mean time Soliman was not without uneasiness; the privation of a good which he ardently desired, made him regard it as a thing yet more precious; Isabella appeared to him more amiable than ever he had seen her; yea he beleevved that it may be he might one day have won her heart; and in this belief he was infinitely afflicted. He looked upon Ibrahim with hatred, and this Prince was so unjust, as no longer to remember either his merit, his courage, or the friendship he had born him; nor to consider him in this occasion but as his Rivall, and as a man who had stollen a person from him, of whom he was infinitely amorous. In this unjust thought he termed him ingratefull, he called him ravisher, unfaithfull, and perfidious; and thinking of nothing but how to find out means to ruin him, out of a sense of jealousy he said, Were I sure that I should never touch the heart of Isabella, yet I shall alwaies have this advantage, if they be brought back to me again, that I can separate them for ever; and I shall at leastwise have this satisfaction, that if Isabella be not mine, she shall never be any bodies else. Whilst Soliman was incensing his fury and his rage, Isabella and that dear troupe, which she loved so much, were already thinking of giving thanks to Heaven for their deliverance. For whereas they had imbarqued themselves at the beginning of the night, they beleevved that when their flight came the next day to be known, they should be then far enough off from being taken any more: So that Isabellæ mind was quiet enough; and the hope of being soon out of the Grand Signiors power, entertained her so agreeably, as fear had scarcely any place in her soul. Her friends began also to be no longer affraid of Soliman, and to be in doubt of nothing but Pirates and Tempests. Doria, Horatio, and Alphonso prepared themselves for all that might happen with constancy enough; the French Marquis began already to talk according to his accustomed humor; when as Justi-



*niana*, who was not so well assured of his good fortune, but that he had as much fear as hope, began to cry out that they were pursued, and that he saw a Galley which made towards them again: Indeed he discovered *Rustans* Galley, even as they were near to that strait where the two Castles of *Sestos* and *Abidus* are situated, which the *Turks* at this day call *Dardanelli*. *Justiniano*, having seen this Galley, turned himself to *Isabella*, and asked her whether she would not permit him to dye in defending her? Your death, sayd she unto him, I may not endure; but that excepted, I will consent to any thing rather than to fall again into the hands of *Soliman*. After this discourse, *Justiniano* and his freinds began to prepare themselves for defence; and though he had but few men, for to carry the business the more secretly he durst bring no more, yet were they not easie to be vanquished, for as well slaves as Merchants were sufficiently obliged to fight; and the others had not only their lives & liberties to defend, but their Sisters & their Mistresses too. On the other part *Rustan* knowing that this vessel was the same which he sought for, and fearing that the Christian slaves which were in his Galley would not row speedily enough, he promised them their liberty, if they employed all their force in this occasion, and that by their means he might stay *Ibrahim*; so that carried by this hope, and without inquiring whether those which they would take were *Turks* or Christians, they rowed with so much vigor, as in a little time his Galley was within Cannon shot of *Ibrahim's* Vessell. And to keep him from flying, he discharged a piece of Ordnance, to advertise them that were of the Guard in the Castles of *Sestos* and *Abidus*, that enemies vessells were in that place. This device failed not to work the expected effect; for *Ibrahim* knowing that there were on both sides of this straight forty pieces of Ordnance planted even with the water, which without doubt would after this signall discharge upon him if he attempted to pass, found himself strangely troubled. For of one side he feared lest he should see *Isabella* carried away with a Cannon-shot; on the other, *Rustans* violence was little less terrible to him; and in this unquietness he commanded his Pilot to doe one thing, and by and by unsayd it again. *Isabella* would have had them expose themselves rather to the fury of the Cannon, than to fight with *Rustan*; but they were not long in an estate to choose what they had to doe; for this Galley which pursued them having overtaken them, and spite of their utmost endeavours to the contrary having grappled her self to them, *Ibrahim*, followed by his friends, performed such things in this occasion, as surpassed the valour of the most illustrious *Heroes*. He wounded *Rustan* with his own hand; all those that presented themselves against him, fell presently dead, either at his feet, or into the Sea. All *Rustans* souldiers fled from his encounter, and chose rather to set upon ten others, than defend themselves from him alone. In the mean time fresh succor came to *Rustan*; for they of the two Castles of *Sestos* and *Abidus*, hearing the piece which he had caused to be shot off, came in Frigots with a great number of souldiers to see what the matter was; and finding a Christian Vessell set upon by *Turks*, they never inquired further, but joyned with them; and *Ibrahim* seeing his enemies redoubled, redoubled his courage too. One would have said that he had recovered new forces; he past from one place to another in an instant; he maintained his own men, assaulted his enemies, and fighting desperately, yet without losing his judgement, he might peradventure have wearied and vanquished them that assaulted him, had not *Rustan*, whilst he was busie in defending himself from six which fought with him together, bethought him of a wile, which alone made him victor. He went with some souldiers to the Captains Cabbin, with his Scymitar in his hand, where the Princess and her dear friends, were more dead than alive, in attending the event of the fight. When first he entred, *Isabella* gave a great shriek; but this cruell man, without hearkning to her complaints, drawing her with one hand, and holding his Scymitar in the other, pulled her to the Cabbin-door, and calling to *Ibrahim*, who turned his head that way, Resolve thy self, said he unto him, to render up thy arms, or if thou dost it not, to see the head of her I hold here taken from her shoulders. This dreadful speech made *Ibrahim* stop

stop a little, during the which *Isabella* without daunting, prayed him not to yeeld for to keep her from death, seeing she desired it. But *Ibrahim* being about to advance towards *Rustan*, and seeing him lift up his arm to strike *Isabella*, hold said he unto him, throwing down his arms, and tendring his hands to them that invironed him; spare the life of this person, since I did not fight but to preserve it; set her free, and make me a slave; and if I may obtain this of thee, I will not complain of thy cruelty. Alas! cried *Isabella* then, the laying of you in irons is not giving me liberty, nor is the putting your life in the power of your enemies, the preserving of mine! In the mean time *Doria*, *Alphonso*, *Horatio*, and the French Marquis were still endeavouring to doe their uttermost; but *Ibrahim* fearing lest some out-rage should be done to *Isabella*, cryed to them to render themselves, which they were constrained to doe; for *Ibrahim* fighting no longer, and being loaden with chains by *Rustans* commandment, they had all the enemies upon them; so that fight how they could, number prevailed over valour, and *Rustan* made himself Master of the Vessell, and of the persons whom he sought for; and having forced them to pass into his Galley he returned to *Constantinople*. These infortunate ones had yet the consolation to make this voyage together without being separated; for *Rustan*, busied about stopping the blood which he lost at the wound he had received, had not the inhumanity to keep them from talking together. *Ibrahim* was likewise as well as *Horatio*, *Alphonso*, *Doria*, and the French Marquis, loaden with chains, which had been knocked off from some of those slaves, who had been the cause of their taking by rowing with such speed. *Isabella* and her friends, being with them, and not able to succour them, augmented their torments yet more with the extreme affliction that appeared in them. Alas! said *Isabella* to *Ibrahim*, if I were sure that death would be the greatest misery that can arrive unto me in the place whither we are going, I should easily comfort myself; yea and I should regard it as an happiness rather than a misfortune: but the crueltie of our enemies will not stay there; for whereas *Soliman* knowes that I fear neither torments nor death, he will make me suffer in your person, and that makes up all my grief. Fear not for me, said *Ibrahim* unto her, but onely think of preserving your self: *Soliman* loves you, labour then to move his heart rather than to incense it, and be confident that death cannot be grievous to me, if I were assured of your life. No, no, answered *Isabella*, this is not the way I mean to hold, and you would blame me without doubt if I should follow your counsell: I will die as well as you, and if my prayers can obtain any thing of *Soliman*, it shall be that we may die together. Augment not my torments, replied the Illustrious Bassa, and speak not of your death, if you will not have me advance mine; live, my dear *Isabella*, and let me alone perish. I live, cried *Isabella*; Ah! no, no, *Isabella* knows not how to survive her glory, and *Iustiniano*, which are the only things that can make her life agreeable, & without the which she wil not preserve it. I may, added she, live unhappy, infortunate, laden with chains, exiled from my country, without means, and without liberty; but I cannot live without honor, and without *Iustiniano*; so that if *Soliman* will ravish me of my glory, and bereave me of the onely person that I love, I shall not waver between death and life; and I know what course I am to take. Ah! too generous *Isabella*, cryed *Ibrahim* then; why have I loved you, to cause you to fall into so many miseries? Why have I not alwaies been your enemy, to keep you from having such cruell ones? But what say I, senseless man, continued he, I merit the torments which I suffer, if I can repent me of having loved you: No, Madam, I cannot doe it; I would that my death might hinder yours, I would that I might indure all things for you, but I cannot with that I could not adore you. That wish would be unjust, replied she, and would questionless doe great wrong to our affection; which is not the cause of our misfortunes; it is too pure, and too innocent, to bee punished for a crime: and the onely thing which comforts me in our miseries, is the belief I am in, that wee doe not deserve them; and that Heaven sends them to us, rather to try our vertue, than to correct our faults. But added she, before we are seperated (as without doubt we shall be) promise me, that what artifice soever our enemies may use to perswade you

you unto any thing to my disadvantage, you will never beleeve it. For hold it for most assured, that *Isabella* will dye a thousand times, rather than do any thing unworthy of her vertue, and yours. Let me then have the satisfaction to hope, that the malice of our persecutors shall make you beleeve nothing to my prejudice. Ah! Madam, cryed *Ibrahim*, it is for me to demand this favour of you; for whereas I have not rendred you so many markes of my affection, as I have received from your vertue, you may the more easily doubt of it. But beleeve, Madam, that I will dye adoring you; and if the loss of my life may oblige *Soliman* to restore you to your liberty, as I purpose to beseech it of him, I shall dye even with pleasure. Let us not separate our destinies, answered the Princess; either let us live together, or let us dye together. After so sad a discourse, the excess of their affection forced them to hold their peace; and their displeasure being shut up in their heart, they felt it more vively than they did, whom as they eased themselves with their complaints. The unhappines of the persons which were engaged in their misfortune afflicted them the more; and they saw all about them so many occasions of despair, as it might be said, that never was the vertue of a person put to so hard a triall. *Hipolita*, *Sophonis*, *Emilia*, and *Leonida*, were wholly dissolved into teares; *Alphonso*, *Doria*, *Horatio*, and the French Marquis, were also infinitely afflicted: and if *Rustan* could have been touched with any compassion, hee had been doubtles with so lamentable an object. But far from having any humanity for another, he was cruell to himself; for though he were wounded, yet the desire which he had to destroy *Ibrahim*, and to finish a thing which he had so well begun, made him instead of repaying to his house to look to his wound, to goe directly to the Seraglio as soon as he arrived at *Constantinople*, and to behave himself so as if he had not been hurt at all. Presently upon his landing, hee sent to advertise *Soliman* of his return, and of the success of his voyage. And whereas this Princee had increased his fury with his solitariness, he instantly commanded, that *Ibrahim* and *Isabella* should be brought into the Seraglio, and put into severall places with a sure guard; and that all those which had followed them should bee put likewise into another place. Never was so deplorable a thing seen, as the execution of this commandment; *Isabella* would not quit *Ibrahim*, he too would not abandon her; and though they had well enough foreseen that they should be separated, yet could they not for all that consent thereunto. Their friends likewise would not leave them, and if *Soliman* could have been a spectator of so sad a conversation, hee might peradventure have been moved to pity. But at length *Ibrahim* and *Isabella*, being constrained to resolve for that which they could not avoyd, took their farwell of each other, as persons that were never to see one another again; and following each other with their eyes as far as they could, they swore unto themselves to dye loving one another as faithfully as they had mutually promised. After *Rustan* had conducted *Ibrahim* to one quarter of the Seraglio, caused *Isabella* to be carried to another, and their friends to a third, he went to *Soliman*, whose minde had never been quiet, since he knew the success of his voyage. For seeing *Ibrahim* and *Isabella* in his hands, he scarcely knew what resolution to take; for in the estate wherein things were, he must destroy the Bassa, or render him his Mistress. Regarding him as the Lover of *Isabella*, he desired his death; considering him as a fugitive, he found it just; but remembering the affection which he had born him, hee had much ado to resolve to destroy him. What shall I do, said he to himself, with this ingratefull creature, who after so many favors which he hath received from me, so many honors which I have conferred on him, so many marks which I have rendred him of my good will, goes out of my Empire without my leave? This perfidious man, cried he, should have considered me-thinks, how I had heretofore broken his chains to share my Empire with him, and how he to whom he owed his life and his liberty, ought to have obliged him to a more exact fidelity. But this wretch preferring the possession of a woman before the greatness wherein I had set him, and my friendship, quits and abandons me; and not content to steal a person from me whom I love, and without whom I cannot live, he gets him away it may be with intelligences that he hath in my Empire to make war upon me, and to recover from me that which



which he saith appertains unto him: But he was never of the Race of the *Paleologues*; And then, continued he, if he could perswade me to it, that would be yet a further reason to oblige me to destroy him. It behoves he should die out of reason of State; as I pretend he shall die out of reason of Love. If I regard him as a slave, I have power over his life, since every slave that breaks his irons deserves to lose it. If I regard him as my subject, he is worthy of death for going out of my Empire without my consent. If I regard him as a Christian, I cannot hate him enough; and if I consider him as an Enemy-Prince, it behoves he should die, that the end of his life may make an end of settling my Throne to my successors. *Soliman* having, as it seemed to him, settled his resolution firmly enough, felt some rest in his minde. Howbeit suddenly some beam of light coming to him again, he was ashamed of his own thoughts; yet would he not oppose them, but rather sought how he might fortifie them; nevertheless there was one thing that retained his fury for a while: Suppose, said he, that I resolve to destroy *Ibrahim*; that he be already punished for his ingratitude and perfidiousness; that the end of his life hath ended the love which he bears to *Isabella*; let us see after this, whether in thinking to do our self service, we do not hurt our self: For can she love a Prince, who bereaves her of the person that is dearest to her in the world? But can she, continued he, love any other than *Ibrahim*, as long as he is living? No, no, sayd he raising his voyce, it behoves hee should dye; and I shall alwayes have this consolation, that if shee love not mee, shee shall at leastwise love nothing in the world. But (cried he again, after he had continued a while without speaking) he whom I will destroy, is the same *Ibrahim* who hath done me such important service, and whom I have so much loved; howbeit, continued he, it is *Isabella's* Lover; it is a fugitive slave; it is a revolted subject; it is a Prince my enemy; or it may be an impostor. In such like thoughts as these was the Grand Signior, when as *Rustan* came to him, who out of his malice carried him to further violence against *Ibrahim*, by forging matters, which he affirmed he had heard him speak against him. Presently therupon *Roxelana* entred, who, making as if she did not know, that there was any interest of love in the hatred which *Soliman* bore to *Ibrahim*, spake not but of the good of the State, and of the glory of the Empire. She represented to *Soliman*, how mightily he had alwayes protected the Christians in all occasions that had been presented; as indeed she lyed not. But although the most part of those things were done by *Solimans* consent in the favor of *Ibrahim*, yet was this Prince so unjust, as to hearken to this accusation, as if he had been acquainted with new crimes. After then that this wicked woman had made him resolve to put *Ibrahim* to death, she told him moreover, that if he were not made to take away his life, the people undoubtedly would rise to save him; for, said she, out of the design which he hath had to usurp the Empire, he hath alwayes taken great care to make himself to be beloved of them. *Soliman* seeing himself upon the point of absolutely resolving the matter, felt a new combat in his heart; love, hatred, jealousy, friendship, shame, and glory, did their last and uttermost endeavor to vanquish one another; but at length vertue was surmounted in this occasion by the wickedness of *Roxelana* and *Rustan*: And *Soliman* consented that without further delay he should go and execute this fatal sentence, which their hatred, rather than he, pronounced against the illustrious *Ibrahim*. Away he went with a great deal of speed, for fear lest the Sultan should alter his mind. Nevertheless not daring wholly to fall in the usuall form, he sent for *Ibrahim* to come to supper; and this perfidious wretch, who feared a revolt, kept all that were in the Seraglio from going forth. In the mean time *Ibrahim* being set at table as the rest, *Rustan* in the midst of the meal presented him with a robe of black velvet, which was an undoubted mark, that the end of this fatal feast should be the end of his life: For after this manner is the news of death denounced to persons of quality, that are to lose their lives in the Seraglio. *Ibrahim* seeing his ruin certain, received this robe for all that with a great deal of constancie. And whereas it was presented to him by *Rustan*, because no body else would tender him this strange present; I receive it, sayd he unto him, without fearing the death which it presageth, and without being any whit surprised therewith, knowing full well that it is a dependence of the charge which I have possesse, and that few Grand Vissiers have dyed otherwaies: But I receive it with grief, because it blemisheth the glory of a Prince whom

whom I have loved, and for that it is offered to me by the hand of *Rustan*. This ceremony much afflicted all them that saw it; yet did not *Ibrahim* rise til the time which custom requires in such like occasions was past; nor forbear talking to some Officers of the Empire, which were at this fatal supper by *Rustan's* order in the grand Signiors name; for he feared if they should have gone forth, and acquainted the people, that *Ibrahim* was going to be put to death, they would have risen before he had been executed. And truly this design was not amiss; for whereas *Ibrahim* was infinitely beloved, their eyes were all bedew'd with tears, and certainly had they had arms, they would have attempted to succor him, or at leastwise would have lost themselves with him. Never was there a more deplorable feast than this same; none that were present at it did eat any thing; they seemed all to be condemned to death; and *Ibrahim* only testified by the tranquillity of his countenance, and by his constancy, that he was in case to comfort the rest. Four mutes, which were to strangle him, stood before him, with each of them a black silk bow-string in his hand, which was to serve for that deadly office. Now though this object possess all those that considered it, with terror and pitié, *Ibrahim* seemed no more sensible of fear, than *Rustan* was of compassion. This illustrious Bassa was seen with an admirable tranquillity, and with a constancy without affectation; he endured his misery without murmuring; he beheld the tears of others, without shedding any; and if any sign of sadness appeared in his face, the interest of *Isabella* alone was the cause of it; & indeed this thought made him suffer very much. The regret of being separated from her; the uncertainty of what should become of her after his death, which was scarcely irksome unto him, but for the grief which *Isabella* would take at it, replenished him with heavy thoughts. Whilst he was in this estate; whilst he attended the time of his execution; and whilst he was preparing to intreat some of them that were about him, to say something to *Soliman* for the preservation of *Isabella*, the Sultan was not without inquietness; *Roxelana*, who had still remained with him, had not only kept his mind from inclining to compassion, but contrarily had so incensed it, as he many times seemed to be very impatient, for that he could not receive news of *Ibrahim's* death. Nevertheless he had no sooner had such a like thought, but straightway he was of another opinion: He would have a thing, and he would not have it; and in this incertainty his imagination represented unto him all *Ibrahim's* whole life. He sought not for all that to remember the friendship which he had born him, and the marks which he had given him of it, but to hate him the more. This ingratull man, said he, could not resolve to comply with a Prince, who would have given him his daughter in marriage; who would have allied himself to him; and who, besides yeelding up his Throne to him, hath done all things for him. This remembrance wrought a strange effect in *Soliman*; he suddenly changed colour, & after he had mused a little, as it were to call something to his memory, he cried out with strange precipitation, to have *Rustan* fetched back again, and looking about him, the matter is at an end, said he, wholly transported with fury; I cannot destroy mine enemy; he must live, since I have sworn it; let one go with all speed, said he, to some of his attendants, and revoke the sentence which I have given; but no delay must be made, for otherwise I shal draw the heavy wrath of heaven upon my head. *Roxelana*, surprised with this discourse, would have kept them from obeying the grand Signior, untill she knew from whence this mutation came. But having commanded a second time, that one should go; & do that which he had ordained, she was compelled to consent unto it. What so sudden a change, said she unto him, is arrived in thy Highness mind? is it possible that *Soliman*, whom I have heard an hundred times say, that repentance is a weakness, whereof he was not capable, should at length be possessed with it at this present? No, said *Soliman* to her, I do not repent, but contrariwise that I may not repent, and that I may keep my word, I am carried to that which I do. The Sultana having obliged him to explain himself more clearly, he informed her, how as he was laboring to remember the obligations wherein *Ibrahim* was engaged to him, to the end he might detest his ingratitude so much the more, his memory had represented unto him, how he would once have given him the *Sultana Asferia* to wife, & how at the same time, & on the same day, to secure *Ibrahim* from the fear which he seemed to have of the change of his fortune, he had sworn to him by *Alla*, that as long as he lived he should not dy a violent death. After this, said he to her, Never ask me what hath made me alter my minde: I do not repent, I would still have *Ibrahim* destroyed, but being unable to put him to death without violating

violating my Oath ; I must no longer think of it ; mine Enemy must live ; I must not be re-  
venged ; and all this is, because I my self have tyed the hand, which should strike a dagger in-  
to his heart.

The *Sultana*, who was not so scrupulous as *Soliman*, nor made so exact a profession of  
keeping her word, did what she could to persuade him not to keep his. No, said he unto her,  
I may not fail in it ; and had I promised my Empire and my Liberty, I should descend from  
my Throne, and put on the Irons my self which I was to wear. *Ibrahim* must live, since I  
have promised it ; I have sworn by *ALLA*, and that is to say all that can be said. I should  
draw down the wrath of Heaven upon me ; and I should do that which I have never done,  
if I should do otherwise. I have observed all that ever I have promised in my life, even with-  
out an Oath ; having then sworn so solemnly, I may by no means break it. I should destroy  
mine enemy, but thereby I should bring one into my heart, that would persecute me eternally ;  
and repentance, which is a motion unknown to me, would without doubt find place in my  
Soul. At length after a long contestation, *Roxelana* persuaded *Soliman*, to take the advice  
of the *Muphti*, who she knew was absolutely hers, as having gotten him the place which he  
held during *Ibrahim's* absence. And albeit *Soliman* did not think that this man could find  
out any thing that would satisfy him, yet he sent for him. When he was come, and that  
*Roxelana*, in propounding the matter unto him, had dextrously signified to him that she de-  
sired the death of *Ibrahim* ; this man, who naturally had wit, malice, and cunning, was never-  
theless sufficiently troubled to answer precisely unto that which was demanded of him for the  
contenting of *Roxelana*. He said then that this affair was not to be spoken of precipitously ;  
and having required an hours time to think of it, after he had caused *Soliman* to repeat unto  
him the very same words, which he had before-time used to *Ibrahim*, he fell deeply a musing :  
But he was not long in searching out that which he did not think to find ; My Lord, said he to  
*Soliman*, the Prophet, whom we worship, hath no doubt inspired me with that which I  
am going to tell thy Highness, that thou mayst be able to punish him whom thou wouldst  
destroy. And when as *Soliman* had asked him how he thought to perform that which he said,  
he obliged him to repeat once more unto him the promise which he had made to *Ibrahim*. I re-  
member it but too well, answered the *Sultan*, and lo the very words which I spake. Re-  
member (said I unto him) how I swear unto thee by *ALLA*, that as long as *Soliman* lives,  
thou shalt not dye a violent death. This sufficeth, replied the *Muphti*, for, my Lord ; to  
express my thought to thy Highness ; is it not true, that the promise, which thou hast made  
to *Ibrahim*, is a thing which cannot secure him but only during thy life ? and is it not cer-  
tain, that thy Successors should not be obliged to preserve him ? It being so, my Lord, said  
he unto him, it will not be hard for me to content thee. For thy Highness having promised  
*Ibrahim*, that he shall not dye a violent death, as long as *Soliman* lives ; if I can make it ap-  
pear to thee, that there are every day some hours, wherein *Soliman* doth not live, it will ap-  
pear to thee by the same reason, that during the said time *Ibrahim* may dye, without breaking  
of thy Highness word.

The *Sultan* hearing him speak thus, beleaved that this man knew not very well what he  
would say ; but the other nothing daunted, and speaking to him with as much confidence,  
as if he had been inspired from Heaven ; My Lord, said he unto him, it is a matter whereof  
nobody is ignorant, that Sleep is called the brother of Death by all Nations, and in all Lan-  
guages ; and truly it is not without cause that he is termed so, it being certain, that a man  
which is asleep cannot with reason be said to be living, since we see that he is deprived of all  
the functions of a reasonable life, which alone is the life of man : I confess indeed how in  
that estate he still enjoys the life of plants, but not that of man, which consists not but in the  
use of Reason, whereof he is wholly bereft in that estate. Sleep equals Kings and Shepherds  
as well as Death, the stupid and the witty, the happy and the unhappy, good men and bad ;  
and there is no difference seen between them, but that sleep is a short death, and death an  
eternal sleep. Wherefore it being evident, that a man asleep cannot (to speak reasonably)  
be said to be living, I conclude from thence, that thy Highness, without breaking thy word,  
may take away *Ibrahim's* life when as sleep hath thoroughly benumbed thy sense and Reason.  
*Roxelana* failed not to approve of this advice, and maintained that he had spoken judiciously :  
But for *Soliman*, he yielded not with so much facility ; he made many objections to the  
*Muphti*, whereunto he still answered, with as much cunning as wickedness.



Thus, although this Prince had a very piercing wit in all other things, yet the desire which he had to make away *Ibrahim*, perswaded him that the *Aduphi* had Reason; and that he might put the *grand Visier* to death when he was asleep. For, this wicked man said to him, thy Highness hath not absolutely promised him, nor to put him to death, but only, *that he should not dye a violent death, as long as Soliman lives*, and *Soliman* shall not live, when as the *Bassa* shall dye. This design being concluded, it was resolved, that they should tarry till night was come for the executing of it. For whereas sleep is not a voluntary act, they thought it requisite to attend till the time of sleep was come.

In the mean season *Ibrahim* had been brought back to the place which served him for a prison, not knowing whether grace would be shewed him, or whether his execution was but deferred. This incertainty was almost as displeasing, as the assurance of an approaching death had been grievous to him; yet did he not ask any thing that regarded himself directly, but only enquired after *Isabella*, who on her part was not without a world of grief. She had understood, that *Ibrahim* had been lead to a place, where oftentimes the *grand Visiers* had been deprived of their lives, and that made her to be as much afflicted, as if she had already seen him breathe out his last. It may be, said she, that now whilst I am speaking *Justiniano* is defending himself against his Executioners; it may be he is yielding up his last breath, and is thinking of me once for all. Ah! if it be so, cried she, I beseech Heaven at leastwise to spare me the affliction that I may not hear of his loss, and by my death to keep me from the grief of lamenting his. Howbeit I fear, said she, that my prayers will not be heard, and that *Soliman's* cruelty will let me live to persecute me: But let him arm his Executioners, let him invent torments, I will complain no more after this sorrow; he that shall acquaint me with the loss of *Justiniano*, shall render me insensible to all others. Alas! what say I? added she, it seems in hearing me speak, that I will conserve my life after he shall be deprived of his; no, no, *Isabella* will not survive *Justiniano*; and that which the rage of *Soliman* will not do, grief alone shall execute: Let this unjust Prince do what he will, I hope, that I shall get out of his power, by getting out of my life; Heaven is interested in the prayer which I make unto it; I beg this grace of it to preserve mine innocence; and if my despair be a fault, I hope it will pardon it in regard of the greatness of my misfortune, of the purity of my affection, and of mine own weakness.

In this deplorable estate, *Isabella* having understood, that *Ibrahim* had been brought back to his quarter, hope began again to find some place in her Soul; and she believed that *Soliman* having desired to see him, had peradventure been moved to compassion: *Sophronia*, *Hipolita*, *Leonida*, *Emilia*, and the rest of their Troop, which were in another place, had the same hope, hearing what had past: But the matter went otherwise; for as soon as night was come, *Rufsan*, who wholly governed this deadly ceremony, went himself a second time to fetch *Ibrahim* by the *Grand Signior's* Command. He led him then into the same Hall, where formerly he had been; and having left him in the company of four mutes, which were to strangle him, as soon as *Soliman* was asleep, he returned to this Prince, who had at that time no greater a longing then to make away *Ibrahim*. As for him, although he did not fear death, and was exceeding peaceable, yet had his Soul great agitations. Ah, said he to himself, I shall never see *Isabella* more! and I shall not only be deprived of her sight, but I shall abandon her to the violence of a Prince, who I believed had been her Protector: and who it may be, provoked by her virtue, will take away her life, as well as mine; for since *Soliman* can consent to my death, he may well sign hers. Alas, continued he, to what an estate am I reduced! If I wish that she should live, I make wishes against her glory; I consent to the exposing of her to the rigor of a violent and amorous Prince. I cannot wish her her life, without doing her wrong; and then again, not only I cannot desire her death, but I cannot so much as think of it, without a despair that is not to be paralleled. If this Prince, who is my Rival, could be her husband, I would make vows against my self, and I love *Isabella* so much, as to be willing to save her life with the loss of all my felicity. But as the case stands, she cannot be his, not only without infidelity, not only without infamy, but with an horrible crime. Alas! added he, if it were not so, my loss should not be without comfort; loving me as she doth, she would live without pleasure, but also without shame. She would bewail my death without other interest then that of conserving my memory; and fear having no place in her heart, the grief alone of having lost me would wholly possess her Soul. If I dyed,

died, added he, in defending *Isabella*; if the loss of my life could restore her to her liberty; I should be happy, and I should think my fortune worthy of envy. But I dye to leave her in the power of her enemy; I dye without serving her, and without delivering her; nay I dye without bidding her farewell.

Hereat *Ibrahim* redoubled his grief, and his mind seeking for new occasions to torment him, he was taken with a remorse of Conscience for having so long a time worn a *Turkish* habit. He was perswaded that the misery whereinto he was fallen was a punishment for this dissimulation. He thought he had been ill counselled, and though his intention had been pure, and that he had not done it but out of a design to serve Christendom, to whom it had been very profitable, and that his faith had never been shaken, yet he believed notwithstanding that he was faulty. This reflexion made him lift up his spirit to Heaven; crave pardon for his levity; repent him of his misdeeds; and then pray that *Isabella's* innocency might not be involved in the chastisement of his crime.

The last thing that yet afflicted *Ibrahim* was, that in his misfortune he could not find any that would tell the *Sultan* that which he had resolved to request of him in the favor of *Isabella*, for *Rustan* had taken order to the contrary. He had also by the power of *Roxelana* kept every body from going out of the *Serraglio*, after *Ibrahim* was entred into it; so that although it was known in *Constantinople*, that there was some great disorder between *Soliman* and *Ibrahim*, yet the people did not suspect, that the *Sultan* could hate him with so much violence; for it they had been of that opinion, loving *Ibrahim* as they did, they would without doubt have set fire on the *Serraglio*, rather then not have succored him.

In the mean time *Rustan* being returned to *Soliman*, whose mind was full of nothing but deadly thoughts, this Prince, to satisfy that fantastick scruple, which obliged him not to believe the death of *Ibrahim* to be unjust, but because he had promised him, that he should not dye as long as he lived, commanded him to keep at his beds head, and to be sure not to go to put *Ibrahim* to death, till he was fast asleep. After this order given, *Soliman* layd him down with an intention (if one may be permitted to speak so) as it were to summon sleep with silence and quietness. He did what he could to divert his mind from all kind of objects; to the end that ceasing to think, he might the more easily let himself be vanquished by this invisible Enemy, who always surmounts those more easily which resist him, then those which seek him.

The *Sultan*, being thus recollected within himself, remained a while with so much tranquillity in appearance, as *Rustan* believed that he was asleep, and that he might go and put *Ibrahim* to death; But he had scarcely made one step, when as this Prince rising up in his bed, Stay, said he unto him, I am not asleep; and I will not have thee part from hence, till thou art certain I am so. *Rustan*, not daring to contradict the *Grand Signior*, and fearing to make him more awake then he was, if he talked longer to him, only promised him not to offer any more to go out of his chamber, till he was well assured that he could hear nothing. After this *Soliman* did yet all that he could to sleep; howbeit he had no sooner closed his eyes, but his unquietness augmented; he was vexed that he could not be master of his thoughts, and that that which he did to provoke sleep, was that which awakened him the more. He turned him on one side, and then on the other, and yet was not able to find any rest. One might have said that he met with thorns every where; that the change of place redoubled his unquietness; and when of purpose he forbore from speaking, and complaining aloud, his sighs gave *Rustan* but too many signs that he was not asleep. *Soliman's* impatience growing stronger, he thought if he walked a while, that it may be he should become drowsy with weariness: He got out of his bed then, and walking sometimes with violence, and sometimes with less precipitation, it might have been said, that he was the cause of as much unquietness to *Rustan*, as he felt himself, to see that he gave him not the means to execute the desires of the cruel *Roxelana*. He stood still many times, and then began again to walk faster then he had done. Afterwards he leaned down in one place, and then in another, scarcely knowing what he did, nor what he would do. When as he had walked a long time, and that through weariness he had layd himself down again upon his bed, he found yet less disposition to sleep then before; for his agitation having dissipated some vapors, which peradventure might have lulled his Reason, and charmed his displeasure, he no sooner had a mind to close his eyes, but his imagination represented things yet more lively unto him; And whereas a long time before

he had had none but violent passions, such then too were all his thoughts. How unhappy am I, said he to himself! I find an impossibility in all that I desire; the least things are forbidden me; even sleep, which all my Subjects enjoy, is to me a prohibited good; that which I do to get it, is that which deprives me of it; and though I change place, yet still is it all one with me; surely I must be separated from my self, if I will find the rest which I seek for. In fine, I am more an enemy to my self, than *Ibrahim* is, yea and I am more unhappy than he.

After his uneasiness had made him change place an hundred times, *Rustan*, seeing day approach, would have persuaded him not to amuse himself about this scruple, and to permit him to go and strangle *Ibrahim* with his own hands, to punish him, said he, for the uneasiness which he gives thy Highness. But *Soliman* spake unto him with so much fury, as he was constrained to hold his peace. This cruel motion of *Rustan's*, struck this Prince with horror, and whereas it is a way to compassion, leaning on a table, which was near to his bed, his imagination insensibly presented him with other objects. He saw *Isabella* all in tears for the death of *Ibrahim*; yea it represented to him the deplorable estate wherein he was; he remembered the time when he was his Slave; and that glorious day, wherein laden with chains he had saved him his Empire and his life: And comparing it with that wherein he was then, he could not chuse but be moved at it. After this, the sight of *Rustan* brought to his memory all the miseries of his house, and all the violences which he had done by his, and *Roxelana's* counsel. The death of *Axusapha*, that of *Sarrasin*, of her son, of *Giunger*, the forcible carrying away of *Axumira*, her imprisonment, the War of *Persia*, the things which *Ibrahim* had performed therein, the death of *Zelchib*, and many other such like things, which filled his mind with too many deadly ideas, as the love which he bore to *Isabella* began to be too weak to dissipate them. He felt some repugnancy in his heart for that which he did; and his Reason being suddenly unclogged, What do I, said he to himself, think that I am, not to consider, that the impossibility which I find to destroy a disarmed man, whom I hold in my hands, who is laden with irons, and who is without defence in the midst of his Executioners, is without doubt a sign that Heaven protects him. For if it were not so, I had destroyed him ere this; I had not promised him so long ago that I would not put him to death; I had not remembered it so precisely; this Artifice, which they have found out for me to be revenged, had succeeded; I had slept, and *Ibrahim* had been dead. But I see plainly, as I have said, that Heaven guards him, and that it will not let me be revenged. But alas! said he still to himself, for what crime, for what injury, for what outrage will I be revenged? No, no, continued he, *Ibrahim* is not guilty, and I alone am the offender; for I owe all things to him, and he owes nothing to me. It is true, that he would have gone out of my Empire without my leave, but it was to save his Mistress; and this generous man, who might have overthrown all my State, to secure himself, and to be revenged of the infidelity which I have used to him, was contented to fly away like a simple Slave. Let us harken to Reason which speaks to us; let us listen to the voice of the Prophet who holds our hand; and let us harken no longer to this unjust love that possesseth us.

Here *Soliman* could not retain his tears, and the love which he bore to *Isabella* made him, that he still found some difficulty in resolving to be deprived of her: But *Rustan's* endeavoring once more to carry him to violence, made him incline wholly to Vertue's side. No, no, said he unto him, baste thou art, I will commit no more crimes by thy counsel; the Prophet, who guards me, will keep me from dipping my hands in the blood of *Ibrahim*; and if I am to shed any, it must be theirs, who blemish my glory with their pernicious counsels. *Rustan*, hearing *Soliman* speak in this manner, thought that he had lost his Reason; for whereas nothing new had happened, he could not comprehend, how in so short a time so great a change should arrive unto him. But he knew not, that they, which have virtuous inclinations, and which are not wicked but by a violent passion, or the counsel of others, have need but of a moment to carry them to that which is good. Their Reason is no sooner cleared, but they find a mighty sutor in themselves; and so soon as they have a will to fight, the victory is certainly theirs. *Soliman* gave an illustrious example of this verity in this occasion; it being most rare, that never was there a greater or more sudden change made, than that which was made in his Soul. He charged *Rustan* not to go out of his chamber, and commanded another to go and fetch *Ibrahim* and *Isabella* to him, who little thought what Vertue was doing for their advantage. This Prince nevertheless had great uneasiness still; he seemed uncertain in his resolutions;



resolutions; and during the agitations of his Soul, he cryed out sometimes, O Heaven! must *Ibrahim* be destroyed? then suddenly checking himself; but also, said he, can I resolve to lose *Isabella*? After this, he sat him down on four Cushions, and hiding his face with both his hands, leaning on a table, as it were the better to think of that which he would resolve of, *Rustan* remained in strange pain.

In the mean time *Ibrahim* could not comprehend, for what reason they made him attend so long for his death. He feared lest some violence should be done to *Isabella*; he doubted lest they should be so cruel as to put her to death before his eyes; and in this pain, death no doubt would have been a remedy unto him, had not the thought of never seeing *Isabella* again rendred it more grievous to him, for that consideration, then for the loss of his life. The disorders of his Soul for all that appeared not in his face; and one would hardly have beleev'd in looking on him, that he did think he should dye every minute. *Isabella*, on her part, was not without trouble; for having understood, that they came to fetch *Ibrahim*, she certainly beleev'd that he was lost, and was already preparing to follow him, when as they, who had order to go for her, entred all into her chamber. As soon as she saw them, and that they had told her how they had order to carry her before *Soliman*; if it be to put me to death in his presence, answered she, I will give him thanks: But acquaint me at leastwise, whether *Ibrahim* be living, and whether we shall dye together or no. These men, not knowing *Soliman's* intentions, durst scarce answer her; only they assured her that she should see the *grand Visier* very suddenly, as indeed they led her into the Hall where he was, attending the time of his execution. There were seen about him his Guards weeping, and four Mutes that were to strangle him, and that having in their hands Bow strings of black silk for that purpose, seem'd also to have some compassion of him.

This doleful object having touch'd the heart of *Isabella*, she could not forbear giving a great shriek: Alas, said she, how do I repent me of my wish! and how much more supportable had it been for me to dye alone, then to dye with you? *Ibrahim* seeing and hearing her speak thus; What, Madam, said he unto her, will they attempt upon your life? Ah! no, no, continued he, turning him to those that environed him, it is a thing I shall never endure: when they shall meddle with none but me, I will tender my neck to them without resistance; but if they attempt any thing on this Princess, I protest that I will strangle him with mine own hands that shall offer any outrage to her. This is not that which I will have, answered she; defend not my life, if they attempt upon yours, since they are to be inseparable. I have not wish'd to live, but only that I may not see you dye. As they would have continued speaking, they that came for them told them, that they had nothing else in charge but to carry them before the *Grand Signior*. Let us go then, said the Princess to him, let us go my dear *Justiniano*; I repent me of my weakness, and since I must dye, provided that I dye in your presence, I shall be glad that we may dye together: Let us go then and beg for death of *Soliman* as a grace. Ah! Madam, cryed the illustrious *Bassa*, speak not of your death, if you will not have me dye in despair. Let us go, Madam, let us go rather to beg your liberty of *Soliman*, and obtain of him that the loss of my life may be the price of it. I will not have it without you, answered she, wherefore persist not in wishing to save me.

In the mean time they arriv'd at *Soliman's* Chamber, whom they found still leaning on a Table, and in a posture, that they could not see his face. As soon as they were there, *Ibrahim* and *Isabella* cast themselves at his feet; My Lord, said the Princess, if I may obtain the grace of thee, that I may dye with *Justiniano*, I will not complain of thy Highness; but contrarily I will praise thy justice. I am guilty, my Lord, and of an horrible crime against thee. I have made thee despise the friendship which thou barest to *Justiniano*; I have made thee abandon Reason; I have put a stain on thy life; I have blemish'd thy glory; I have troubled thy rest; and I have constrained the greatest Prince of the Earth to oppose all his inclinations, which carry him to virtue, for to follow an unjust passion. Thou plainly seest, my Lord, that wrath ought to have a more just foundation in thy soul, then this Love, which afflicts thee, and persecutes me. Change thy passion in my favor, but in such sort, that as I have been the object of thy love, so I may be likewise of thy hate. Think of revenging thy self on the true cause of thy uneasiness; think of destroying, and not of gaining me; the last is impossible, and the other is very easie for thee. It is not because, if my tears could move thee, I can yet assure thee that hate should have a place in my soul: For know, my Lord,  
that

that even *Justiniano*, from whom thou wilt take away, both his honor, his life, and my person, which is as dear to him as both the other, yet cannot hate thee. I have seen it in his eyes, I have known it by his discourse; he complains of fortune; he accuses that which thy Highness calls beauty in me; he names that weakness, which another would name injustice; *in fine*, my Lord, being ready to dye innocently by thy directions and command, yet am I well assured, that he will dye without hatred; and that even in dying, he will make vows to obtain of Heaven an advantageous change for thee. Judge after this, whether thou oughtest to refuse me the grace that I may dye, and that he may be saved, since I am guilty and he is innocent.

My Lord, said *Justiniano* interrupting her, harken not to the vertuous *Isabella*, but to admire the greatness of her courage, and suffer not thy self to be perswaded to that which she desires of thee. I will not stand to examine whether I am culpable, or whether I am not, since to be hated of thee, is to be so; but, my Lord, I will only tell thee, that if the sentence of my death shall be pronounced by thy mouth, I will not murmur at it. I confess my weakness to thee, my Lord; I cannot yet believe, but that all that which I have seen since my return, is an enchantment, and not a truth. For how can it be imagined, that great *Soliman*, who hath loved me so tenderly, and given me so glorious marks thereof, can be carryed at this present to such unjust designs? That with the same hand, wherewith he broke my chains, and put the reins of his Empire into mine, he can put about my neck the string which is to strangle me. Doth thy Highness no longer remember the thoughts which thou hadst, at such time as, seeing me ready to enter into the grave, rather then displease thee with craving my liberty of thee, thou resolvdest to have the incomparable *Isabella* be brought away by force. Was it then, my Lord, out of a design to ravish her from me, to persecute her, to blemish thy glory, and to take away my life, in having unjust thoughts for her? Think not, my Lord, of the services I have done thee, but of those which I purposed to do thee; yet think not of them, my Lord, for to pardon me, but think of them to save *Isabella*. Restore her to her liberty, make not me the cause of her undoing, send her back into her Country, and after that put me to death here. But grant me at leastwise the grace to pronounce my sentence unto me; for I confess to thee once more, that I doubt whether it be possible, that thou shouldst be the same *Soliman* which hath so dearly loved me.

It is in vain for you to desire, said *Isabella*, that we should be separated; that thought is unjust, and does wrong to our affection; it is a motion whereof I repent me, and whereof you ought to repent you. Beg then of *Soliman*, that we may dye, or that we may live together; for provided he will grant us this, I will attend his sentence, without grief, and without unquietness. You shall live, said *Soliman* then to her, discovering his face, which he had all bached with tears; you shall live, generous Princess, *Ibrahim's* vertue hath surmounted me. Approach, said he unto him, and if it be so that thou dost not hate me still, believe for a certain, that the good-will which I have born thee is recovering its place in my Soul: Repentance, which was a motion unknown to me, chases the love of *Isabella* from it, therein to re-establish my friendship to *Ibrahim*; I feel it coming, my Reason re-assumes its use; I see my injustice and my violence with confusion; I see the vertue of *Isabella*, and no longer see her beauty; she strikes me with admiration, and no longer strikes me with love; I wish I could imitate her generosity, and no longer desire the possession of her. *In fine*, said he to *Ibrahim*, know, that of all the marks of affection, that which thou receivest from me at this present, is without doubt the greatest: and to give no bounds to it, and to make thee see, that knowing my fault, I will punish it, and to keep my self from falling into it a second time, I do not only give thee thy life, which I would have unjustly taken from thee, but I do also give thee thy liberty, as well as that of the incomparable *Isabella*.

Oh! my Lord, cried *Ibrahim*, I hear the voyce of *Soliman*; they which spake to me from him have betrayed his true thoughts. No, continued *Ibrahim*, let us speak no more of this doleful adventure, but as of a fable; and without thinking of that which is past, suffer me only to give thee thanks for thy clemency. As for me, added *Isabella*, who eternally remembers benefits, and very easily forgets injuries; if it be so, that great *Soliman* hath vanquished himself, I promise thy Highness to make vows as long as I live for thy glory.

Doubt

Doubt not of that which I say, replied *Soliman*, and the better to assure you thereof, I permit you, said he unto her with a voice interrupted with sighs, to go out of my Empire when you please: I should also be generous enough to share it with *Ibrahim*, to whom it appertains more justly then to me, if I could infuse into the hearts of my subjects the thoughts which are in mine.

During this discourse *Rustan* was in a strange inquietness; and when as he believed that *Soliman* had his minde busied, and did not think of him, he would have slipped out of the Chamber, to go and advertise *Roxelana* of that which was doing: But *Soliman* perceiving it, stay, said he unto him, infamous wretch; and then he commanded him to be turned out of the *Serraglio*, without permitting him to speak to any body; and charged him with a great deal of fury never to shew himself more before him. After this, he sent for the virtuous *Achmat*, and the *Sultana Asferia*. It is by these two persons, said he to *Ibrahim*, that I will be counselled, to know what way we may take, that *Justiniano* may cease to be *Ibrahim*, without making a noise amongst the people, which might prejudice my State: For as for my self, continued he sighing, it is so little a while since my Reason hath recovered its place, as I dare not yet rely upon it. *Ibrahim*, whom we will call most commonly hereafter *Justiniano*, answered the Grand Signior with as much generosity as joy; for whereas he had exceedingly loved this Prince, how great soever that was which he felt, to see *Isabella* escaped from so great a danger, yet was he not a little glad also to see in *Soliman* the marks of his ancient vertue again.

In the mean time, after that the *Sultan* had acquainted the sage *Achmat*, and the generous *Asferia* with the business in question, in such terms, as well declared the repentance of his soul; and after they had commended the resolution he was in, and mightily confirmed him in the design which he had to restore *Justiniano* and *Isabella* to their liberty; *Achmat*, who never knew of *Justiniano*'s disguising till then, counselled, since the matter was so far advanced, that the people should be made to believe, how the Grand Signior had put *Ibrahim* to death, upon some discovery that he had held intelligence with the Emperor *Charls*, and favored the Christians in all things; yea and that some letters too should be forged, which should be said he had been made to confess, by which means the matter would easily be credited, because it was true that every one knew, how the illustrious *Bassa* had always protected the Christians. He said moreover, that if the business was not carried in that sort, it would be impossible to finde out a plausible pretext to keep the people from suspecting some trick in the absence of *Ibrahim*, which might produce dangerous consequences.

This advice being approved of, yet because *Justiniano* and *Isabella* could not be sent away towards *Genova* presently, it was thought requisite to have them secretly conveyed to *Pera*, and there to remain concealed with those *Greek Priests*, whom *Justiniano* had so much favored, until such time as a vessel could be made ready for them. This farewell could not be taken without shedding of a world of tears; *Soliman* craved pardon of *Justiniano* and *Isabella*, who after they had answered him with tenderness and submission, and assured him that they would forget what was past, desired him he would be pleased to give their friends their liberty, which the *Sultan* having granted them, they were sent for and conducted along with them to *Pera*. The *Sultana Asferia* and *Isabella* said to one another all that a most strict friendship could make two generous persons say in such like encounters. And the prudent *Achmat*, charging himself with the conduct of *Justiniano* and his Mistress, conveyed them with all their Troop aboard a *Buque*, which carried them to *Pera*. *Soliman* could not for all that see *Isabella* part, without following her with his eyes, nor could he see *Ibrahim* go away without forgetting *Isabella*; it being most certain, that never was there a truer repentance, then that of this great Prince.

In the mean time to make it be beleevied that *Ibrahim* was dead, a black Standart was set up before the gate of his Palace: *Achmat*, fearing a sedition, put all the *Janizaries* into arms, and gave them to understand, that *Ibrahim* was a Traytor, that he had gone about to overthrow the Empire, and that his death had been absolutely necessary for the preservation of the State. He shewed them also certain forged Letters, to give the more credit to that which he said; But whatsoever he could say, no sooner was the black Standart seen before the gate of his Palace, but all the people began to murmur; There was nothing but weeping and crying all over *Constantinople*.

Those



Those *Janizaries* that had been the best perswaded, left not for all that to be exceedingly afflicted; for he was so universally beloved, as there was not any body which did not lament and commend him. Some said, that *Roxelana* without doubt was the cause of this mischief; and that she still remembred, how he had been the Protector of Prince *Mustapha*. Some cryed out to have at leastwise the body of their Defender given unto them; others, that his Executioners might be delivered into their hands; and all of them together agreed in the belief, that *Soliman* had lost the force of his Empire, and the support of his *State*.

During this tumult, *Rustan* passing through a street, the people, who had understood by some that had been in the *Serraglio*, how it was he which had been made use of for this deadly Ceremony, and that he had put *Ibrahim* to death, fell upon him with so many imprecations, and with such fury, as they tore him in a thousand pieces. From thence they went to his Palace, to set it on fire; but at length the prudent *Achmat*, having appeased this sedition, returned to the *Serraglio*, where he found that Heaven had made an end of revenging *Justiniano* on his enemies. For *Roxelana* having understood that he was not dead, and that *Rustan* had been torn in pieces by the people, this fierce and proud spirit, was so sensibly touched with spight for that she could not exercise all her whole fury, that after she had continued three hours together without speaking a word, she dyed for very rage and madness; and *Justiniano* had the satisfaction to know, that he was lamented of all the world, and that the only persons which could rejoyce at his death had been punished for their injustices.

In the mean time *Achmat* by *Soliman's* Command caused the same Christian Vessel to be made ready, which *Justiniano* had formerly used to get from *Constantinople*; and in one night he sent aboard her all the riches of *Ibrahim's* Palace, and a great deal more, which he was constrained to accept of against his inclination. The Sultan wrote also with his own hand to the illustrious *Bassa*, and again assured him of his repentance and affection, whereunto *Justiniano* and *Isabella* answered with a great deal of generosity. The death of *Roxelana* touched *Soliman* less, then it would have done at any other time. For as he could not but remember that she had been the object of his affection; so could he not but much more remember, that she had been the cause of all his misfortunes, and of all his crimes, and that she would have carried him to put to death the only man of the world whom most he loved.

This feigned death of *Ibrahim* was carried with so much address by the prudent *Achmat*, that every body beleaved it to be so; and that is it which hath made *Paulus Jovius*, and all those which have spoken of the reign of *Soliman*, to say, that the grand *Visier* perished in that sort; but indeed the matter past as I have delivered it: For a *Greek Caloyer*, who had this History from *Justiniano's* and *Isabella's* own mouth, left a relation thereof, which is come even unto us.

In the mean time, three days after the feigned death of *Ibrahim*, the true *Justiniano*, *Isabella*, *Sophronia*, *Hipolita*, *Emilia*, *Leonida*, *Horatio*, *Alphonso*, *Doria*, the French Marquess, and a number of Christian Slaves, whose liberty *Justiniano* had obtained, imbarqued themselves one night, and set sail for *Genova*, without fear of other enemies, then the winds and the Seas; but Fortune had made too much tryal of their virtue, for to inflict new disasters on them; and indeed she was so favorable unto them, that never was there a more prosperous Navigation heard of.

During this Voyage, these illustrious persons had no other entertainment, then to talk of the dangers which they had avoyded. And whereas *Justiniano* and *Isabella* had promised that they would be inseparable in their felicity, as they had been in their unhappiness; that *Horatio* and *Hipolita* had done the like; that *Sophronia* and *Doria* had sworn never to quit one another; and that *Alphonso* and *Leonida* following the others example had taken the same resolution; it fell out that only the French Marquiss and *Emilia* remained without matching together, yea and that would never match with any. For one day as this fair company were talking together in the Captains Cabbin, *Leonida* having demanded of the French Marquiss laughing, what end he propounded to himself in the affection, which he bore to *Emilia*? No other, answered he, but that of loving her as long as my inclination shall carry me thereunto. I am of the same mind, replied *Emilia*, and I could never without aversion behold a man, who of my self should become my Master, or at leastwise mine Equal. O, cryed the Marquiss, how much I am for this humor! for to speak freely, and acquaint you with a secret,

secret, which I have never told to any body; know, that the true cause of my inconstancy hath been the fear of marriage: I have always been so afraid of engaging my self therein, as to avoid the occasions of it, I have used to change Mistress often. But if I can obtain of *Emilia*, that she will not oblige me to be her husband, I will be eternally her Slave. All the company then burst out a laughing, and believing that their discourse was nothing but sport, every one fell to pressing of *Emilia*, that she would make him become constant, in not marrying him. Whereupon the Marquess and she made a Satyre against marriage, wherein on either part they said very pleasant things. And for a conclusion, that which was believed to be but jesting, proved to be their true thoughts; and they took as much care to promise one another that they would never marry, as the others took to obtain of their Mistresses, that as soon as they should come to *Genova*, they would render their fortunes inseparable, as indeed they did. The wind having been extremely favorable to them, they arrived in a few days at *Monaco*; where the Princess was received of her Subjects with as much astonishment as joy. The brute of their return being presently got to *Genova*, the chief of the Senate came thither to visit them.

These illustrious persons concealed so much of their adventures, as they thought was not fit to be spoken of; and having been treated by their friends, that they would after so many misfortunes celebrate the ceremony of their nuptials at *Genova*; *Isabella* yielded thereunto with blushing: for which effect they parted away the next day, and shortly after the Marriages of *Justiniano* and *Isabella*, of *Ebratio* and *Hipolita*, of *Doria* and *Sophonisa*, and of *Alphonso* and *Leonida*, were solemnized with all possible magnificences. The French Marquis and *Emilia* promised anew an inviolable friendship to one another, with an oath that neither of them would ever marry: and during certain days there were nothing but Balls, running at the Ring, and publique Feasts. After which *Justiniano* and *Isabella* being re-entred into the possession of all that belonged unto them, they were conducted with a great deal of state to *Monaco*; where they lived with as much satisfaction, they had had mis-haps; *Justiniano* esteeming himself more happy in the possession of *Isabella*, than if he had reconquered the Empire of his Fathers. But by a revolution which not only arrives in all things, it is come to pass, that the Principality of *Monaco* is returned into a branch of the

House of the *Grimaldies*, which possesseth it at this day, under the protection of

*Spain*; nothing remaining of *Justiniano* but the memory of his glorious actions; which certainly are great and famous enough, to oblige Posterity never to lose the remembrance of

THE ILLUSTRIOUS BASSA.